UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 8-K

CURRENT REPORT
Pursuant to Section 13 OR 15(d) of the
Securities Exchange Act of 1934

Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported): **August 4, 2025**

TMC THE METALS COMPANY INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

British Columbia, Canada (State or other jurisdiction of incorporation)	**001-39281** (Commission File Number)	**Not Applicable** (IRS Employer Identification No.)
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor **Vancouver, British Columbia** (Address of principal executive offices)		**V6E 2J3** (Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: **(888) 458-3420**

Not applicable
(Former name or former address, if changed since last report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K filing is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

☐ Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)

☐ Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)

☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))

☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
TMC Common Shares without par value	TMC	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC
Redeemable warrants, each whole warrant exercisable for one TMC Common Share, each at an exercise price of $11.50 per share	TMCWW	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§240.12b-2 of this chapter).

Emerging growth company ☒

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

Item 7.01. Regulation FD Disclosure.

Technical Reports

On August 4, 2025, TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company") issued a press release (the "Press Release") announcing (i) the release of the results of a pre-feasibility study in a report titled *S-K 1300 NORI Area D Technical Report*, dated August 4, 2025 (the "TRS"), and (ii) the release of an initial assessment in a report titled *Technical Report Summary—Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone*, dated August 4, 2025 (the "Initial Assessment" together with the TRS, the "Technical Reports"). A copy of the Press Release is furnished as Exhibit 99.1 to this Current Report on Form 8-K.

The information contained in this Item 7.01, including the Press Release, is being furnished and shall not be deemed "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, nor shall it be deemed incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, except as expressly set forth by specific reference in such a filing.

Item 8.01. Other Events.

New Technical Report – NORI Area D

On August 4, 2025, the Company published the TRS, prepared in accordance with Regulation S-K, Subpart 1300 (17 C.F.R. §§ 229.601 and 1300–1305). The TRS was prepared by a combination of third-party and Company-affiliated Qualified Persons, as defined under Regulation S-K, Subpart 1300. The following third-party Qualified Persons contributed to the TRS:

- Dr. Ian Stevenson, Geoscience Consultant, MARGIN – Marine Geoscience Innovation
- John Buckell, Consultant, APYS Subsea Ltd
- Cameron Harris, Principal: Smelting, Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
- Brett Roughan, Principal, Lanasera Pty Ltd
- Andrew Hall, CEO, AMC Consultants Pty Ltd

In addition, the following personnel of the Company served as Qualified Persons for certain sections of the TRS:

- Anthony O'Sullivan, Chief Development Officer
- Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer
- Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Program Director
- Adam Price, Project Control Manager

Each of the third-party Qualified Persons listed above is independent of the Company, as defined in Regulation S-K, Subpart 1300.

A copy of the TRS is filed as Exhibit 96.1 to this Current Report on Form 8-K.

New Initial Assessment – TOML and NORI Properties

On August 4, 2025, the Company published the Initial Assessment, also prepared in accordance with Regulation S-K, Subpart 1300. The Initial Assessment was prepared by the same group of third-party and Company-affiliated Qualified Persons identified above, as follows:

- Dr. Ian Stevenson, Geoscience Consultant, MARGIN – Marine Geoscience Innovation
- John Buckell, Consultant, APYS Subsea Ltd
- Cameron Harris, Principal: Smelting, Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd

---

- Brett Roughan, Principal, Lanasera
- Andrew Hall, CEO, AMC Consultants Pty Ltd

In addition, the following personnel of the Company served as Qualified Persons for certain sections of the Initial Assessment:

- Anthony O'Sullivan, Chief Development Officer
- Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer
- Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Program Director
- Adam Price, Project Control Manager

Each of the third-party Qualified Persons listed above is independent of the Company, as defined in Regulation S-K, Subpart 1300.

A copy of the Initial Assessment is filed as Exhibit 96.2 to this Current Report on Form 8-K.

Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.

Except for historical information contained in this Current Report on Form 8-K (including Exhibits 96.1, 96.2, and 99.1) this report contains forward-looking statements which involve certain risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied. Please refer to the cautionary statements included in the TRS, filed as Exhibit 96.1, the Initial Assessment, filed as Exhibit 96.2, and the Press Release, furnished as Exhibit 99.1 to this Current Report on Form 8-K, respectively.

Cautionary Statements Regarding the TRS and the Initial Assessment

The Technical Reports included as Exhibits 96.1 and 96.2 to this Current Report on Form 8-K contain forward-looking information derived from preliminary economic assessments and conceptual development scenarios that are subject to significant uncertainty. The TRS does not represent a feasibility study and does not support a development decision. Similarly, the Initial Assessment contract areas is not a declaration of mineral reserves and is not sufficient to determine the economic viability of a mining project. In addition, such Initial Assessment reports inferred mineral resources, which have a high degree of uncertainty as to their existence and to whether they can be economically or legally commercialized, under the Securities and Exchange Commission rules may not form the basis of an economic analysis and for which you cannot assume any part thereof will ever be upgraded to a higher category. Until mineral deposits are actually mined and processed, mineral resources and mineral reserves must be considered as estimates only. The estimates, projections, and analyses contained in the Technical Reports are based on numerous assumptions, including those related to recovery methods, costs, infrastructure, financing, regulatory approvals, and market conditions, many of which are beyond the Company's control. Actual results may differ materially from those presented. Investors are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these Technical Reports and are encouraged to review the full summaries and underlying assumptions, which are filed as Exhibits 96.1 and 96.2 to this Current Report on Form 8-K.

Item 9.01. Financial Statements and Exhibits.

(d) Exhibits.

Exhibit No.	Description
23.1	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) - AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
23.2	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) - MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation
23.3	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) - APYS Subsea Ltd
23.4	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) - Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
23.5	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) – Lanasera Pty Ltd
23.6	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) – Anthony O'Sullivan
23.7	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) – Rutger Bosland
23.8	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) – Dr. Michael Clarke
23.9	Consent of Qualified Person (TRS) – Adam Price

23.10	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) - AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
23.11	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) - MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation
23.12	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) - APYS Subsea Ltd
23.13	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) - Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
23.14	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) – Lanasera Pty Ltd
23.15	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) – Anthony O'Sullivan
23.16	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) – Rutger Bosland
23.17	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) – Dr. Michael Clarke
23.18	Consent of Qualified Person (IA) – Adam Price
96.1	S-K 1300 NORI Area D Technical Report, dated August 4, 2025
96.2	Technical Report Summary—Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, dated August 4, 2025
99.1*	Press Release dated August 4, 2025
104	Cover Page Interactive Data File (embedded within the Inline XBRL document)

* The foregoing exhibit relating to Item 7.01 is intended to be furnished to, not filed with, the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Regulation FD.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

TMC THE METALS COMPANY INC.

Date: August 4, 2025

By: /s/ Craig Shesky
Name: Craig Shesky
Title: Chief Financial Officer

Exhibit 23.1

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
Level 12, 477 Collins Street
Melbourne
Victoria, 3000, Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd ("AMC"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;
- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 3-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");
- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and
- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

AMC is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.4, 1.10, 1.13, 2, 4, 5, 7.3.6, 7.4, 7.5.1 – 7.5.3, 7.5.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8.2, 7.10 - 7.12, 8.2 – 8.3, 9, 11, 12.1,12.2.5,12.2.6, 12.2.8, 12.2.10, 12.3 – 12.5, 12.7, 20, 22.2, 22.4, 22.5, 24, and 25 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Andrew Hall

Andrew Hall
Chief Executive Officer
Signature of Authorized Person for
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.2

Margin – Marine Geoscience Innovation
21 Kalang Circuit
Coffs Harbour, 2450, NSW, Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Margin - Marine Geoscience Innovation ("MMGI"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

MMGI is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 6, 7.1, 7.2.1 – 7.2.7, 7.2.9, 7.2.10, 7.3.1 – 7.3.3, 7.3.5, 7.8.1, 7.9, 7.13, 8.1 and 12.2.4. of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Ian Stevenson
Dr. Ian Stevenson
Marine Geoscience Consultant
Signature of Authorized Person for
Margin - Marine Geoscience Innovation, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.3

APYS Subsea Ltd
1 The Macies
Bath, United Kingdom, BA1 4HS

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

APYS Subsea Ltd (“APYS”), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the “Form 8-K”), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the “Company”), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled “Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone” with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the “Technical Report Summary”), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“S-K 1300”), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company’s Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the “Registration Statements”);

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or “qualified person” (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

APYS is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 7.2.8, 7.3.4, 7.5.4, 7.14 and 12.2.2. of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ John Buckell
John Buckell
Consultant
Signature of Authorized Person for
APYS Subsea Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.4

Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
2544 Weston Road, Unit 208
Toronto, ON M9N 2A6
CANADA

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd ("CEA"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

CEA is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.7, 10, 12.2.11, 14, 15 and 22.7 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this 30th day of July, 2025

/s/ Cameron Harris
Cameron Harris
Co-Founder
Signature of Authorized Person for
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.5

Lanasera Pty Ltd
29 Ellen Street
Oxley QLD 4075
Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Lanasera Pty Ltd ("Lanasera"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

Lanasera is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.12, 12.6, 19 and 22.12 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this 31st July 2025

/s/ Brett Roughan
Brett Roughan
Principal
Signature of Authorized Person for
Lanasera Pty Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.6

Anthony O'Sullivan
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Anthony O'Sullivan (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.5, 1.8, 3, 12.2.1, 12.2.12-12.2.14, 16, 21, 22.1, 22.3, 22.8, 22.9, 22.12 and 23 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this 4th August, 2025

/s/ Anthony O'Sullivan
Anthony O'Sullivan, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.7

Rutger Bosland
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Rutger Bosland (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.6, 12.2.3, 12.2.7, 12.2.9, 13 and 22.6 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Rutger Bosland
Rutger Bosland, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.8

Dr. Michael Clarke
c/o TMC The Metals Company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Dr. Michael Clarke (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.9, 12.2.1, 17 and 22.10 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this 30 July, 2025

/s/ Michael Clarke
Dr. Michael Clarke, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.9

Adam Price
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Adam Price (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), ofTMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4. 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-2653.19, 333-270875, 333-270876. 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260 I 26) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary. or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.11, 18 and 22.11 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Adam Price
Adam Price, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.10

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
Level 12
477 Collins Street
Melbourne VIC 3000
Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd ("AMC"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

AMC is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.1, 1.4, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 4, 5.1, 5.3, 6.8, 6.9, 6.10, 6.11.2, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 8.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.2, 8.3, 9.2, 11, 12, 13.7, 13.8.1, 13.8.2, 13.9, 20, 21, 22.2, 22.4, 22.6, 23, 24 and 25 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Andrew Hall

Andrew Hall
Chief Executive Officer
Signature of Authorized Person for
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.11

Margin – Marine Geoscience Innovation
21 Kalang Circuit
Coffs Harbour NSW 2450
Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Margin - Marine Geoscience Innovation ("MMGI"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

MMGI is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, 6.5, 6.6, 6.11.1, 7.6.2, 7.6.3, 7.6.4 and 7.6.5 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Ian Stevenson
Dr. Ian Stevenson
Geoscience Consultant
Signature of Authorized Person for
Margin - Marine Geoscience Innovation, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.12

APYS Subsea Ltd
1 The Macies
Bath, United Kingdom
BA1 4HS

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

APYS Subsea Ltd ("APYS"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

APYS is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 7.6.6 and 7.7.6 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ John Buckell
John Buckell
Consultant
Signature of Authorized Person for
APYS Subsea Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.13

Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
2544 Weston Road, Unit 208
Toronto, ON M9N 2A6
Canada

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd ("CEA"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

CEA is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.6, 10, 14, 15, 22.3, 22.7, and 22.8 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Cameron Harris
Cameron Harris
Principal: Smelting
Signature of Authorized Person for
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.14

Lanasera Pty Ltd
29 Ellen Street
Oxley QLD 4075
Australia

CONSENT OF THIRD-PARTY QUALIFIED PERSON

Lanasera Pty Ltd ("Lanasera"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, our name, including our status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300), in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by us, that we supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by us, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

Lanasera is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.10, 19 and 22.12 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this 30 July 2025.

/s/ Brett Roughan
Brett Roughan
Principal
Signature of Authorized Person for
Lanasera Pty Ltd, a Qualified Third-Party Firm

Exhibit 23.15

Anthony O'Sullivan
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Anthony O'Sullivan (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.2, 1.3, 1.7, 3.1, 3.1.1, 3.1.1.1, 3.1.2, 3.1.2.1, 3.2, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 5.2, 5.4, 6.7, 6.11.3, 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.6.1, 7.7.1, 7.7.2, 7.7.3, 7.7.4, 7.7.5, 8.2, 9.1, 16, 22.1 and 22.9 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Anthony O'Sullivan
Anthony O'Sullivan, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.16

Rutger Bosland
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Rutger Bosland (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.5, 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, 13.6, 13.8.3, and 22.5 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Rutger Bosland
Rutger Bosland, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.17

Dr. Michael Clarke
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Dr. Michael Clarke (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.8, 17, and 22.10 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Michael Clarke

Dr. Michael Clarke, a Qualified Person

Exhibit 23.18

Adam Price
c/o TMC the metals company Inc.
1111 West Hastings Street, 15th Floor
Vancouver, BC V6E 2J3
CANADA

CONSENT OF QUALIFIED PERSON

Adam Price (the "Qualified Person"), in connection with the Current Report on Form 8-K, dated on or about the date hereof (the "Form 8-K"), of TMC the metals company Inc. (the "Company"), consents to:

- the filing and use of the technical report summary titled "Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" with an effective date of August 4, 2025 (the "Technical Report Summary"), prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("S-K 1300"), as an exhibit to and referenced in the Form 8-K;

- the incorporation by reference of the Technical Report Summary into the Company's Registration Statements on Form S-8 (File Nos. 333-261221, 333-265318, 333-265319, 333-270875, 333-270876, 333-278222, 333-278223, 333-286191 and 333-286192) and Form S-3 (File Nos. 333-267479, 333-275822 and 333-260126) (collectively, including any amendments or supplements thereto or any other Registration Statement relating thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the "Registration Statements");

- the use of, and references to, my name, including my status as an expert or "qualified person" (as defined in S-K 1300) and my role and position with the Company, in the Form 8-K, the Technical Report Summary and the Registration Statements; and

- the use of the information derived, summarized, quoted or referenced from the Technical Report Summary, or portions thereof, that was prepared by me, that I supervised the preparation of and/or that was reviewed and approved by me, that is included in or incorporated by reference into the Form 8-K and the Registration Statements.

The Qualified Person is responsible for authoring, and this consent pertains to, Sections 1.9, 18, and 22.11 of the Technical Report Summary.

Dated this August 4, 2025

/s/ Adam Price

Adam Price Qualified Person

Exhibit 96.1

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
ABN 58 008 129 164

Level 12, 477 Collins Street
Melbourne Vic 3000
Australia

T +61 3 8601 3300
E melbourne@amcconsultants.com

amcconsultants.com

Report

Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone
TMC the metals company Inc.

AMC Project 0225054
30 July 2025
Effective Date: 4 August 2025

Qualified Persons:
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation
APYS Subsea Ltd
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
Lanasera Pty Ltd
Anthony O'Sullivan, Chief Development Officer, TMC the metals company Inc.
Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Manager, TMC the metals company Inc.
Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer, TMC the metals company Inc.
Adam Price, Project Controls Manager, TMC the metals company Inc.

mine smarter

Contents

1 Executive summary 24
1.1 Property description (including mineral rights) and ownership 24
1.2 Location 26
1.3 Regulatory environment and the NORI tenement 26
1.4 Geology and Mineral Resources 27
1.5 Development plan 30
1.6 Mining concept 30
1.7 Mineral Processing and metallurgical testing 31
1.8 Market studies 32
1.9 Environmental studies, permitting, community, or social impact 33
1.10 Mining and Mineral Reserve estimates 34
1.11 Summary capital and operating cost estimates 36
1.12 PFS economic assessment 37
1.13 Qualified Person's conclusions and recommendations 39

2 Introduction 40
2.1 Registrant, terms of reference and purpose of report 40
2.2 Sources of information 40
2.3 Qualified Persons and personal inspections 40
2.4 Update to a previously filed Technical Report 43

3 Property description 44
3.1 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) 44
3.1.1 International Seabed Authority (ISA) 46
3.2 Tenements and permits under the ISA 47
3.3 NORI obligations and sponsorship under the ISA 48
3.3.1 Work Program under the ISA 49
3.4 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA) 50
3.4.1 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 50
3.4.2 License and permit applications under NOAA 51
3.5 Royalties and taxes 51

4 Accessibility, climate, local resources, infrastructure and physiography 53
4.1 Accessibility and infrastructure 53
4.2 Climate 53

5 History 54
5.1 Overview 54
5.2 Pioneer Investors 54
5.3 Sampling methods 56
5.4 Sample preparation and analysis 58
5.4.1 Ocean Minerals Company 58
5.4.2 Yuzhmorgeologiya 59

5.4.3 IOM 59
5.4.4 Preussag 59
5.5 Quality Assurance/Quality Control Procedures 60
5.6 Pioneer Investor sample data supplied to NORI 60

6 Geological setting, mineralization, and deposit 63
6.1 Global distribution of nodules 63
6.2 Sedimentation and nodule formation 64
6.3 Polymetallic mineralization 65
6.3.1 Nodule grades 65
6.3.2 Nodule abundance 65
6.3.3 Nodule facies 71

6.4 Geological domains 74
6.5 Nodule morphology and formation 75

7 Exploration 76
7.1 NORI 2012 campaign 76
7.2 NORI 2018 campaign 77
7.2.1 Objectives and approach 77
7.2.2 AUV survey 78
7.2.3 Camera imagery 81
7.2.4 Box coring 81
7.2.5 Nodule sampling 86
7.2.6 Image classification and size measurement 87
7.2.7 Biological sampling 88
7.2.8 Geotechnical sampling 88
7.2.9 Exploration results 89
7.2.9.1 Box core abundance 89
7.2.9.2 Buried nodules 93
7.2.9.3 AUV data 93
7.2.10 Nodule abundance estimation derived from AUV camera data 95
7.3 NORI 2019 campaign 100
7.3.1 Box coring 100
7.3.2 Nodule sampling 101
7.3.3 Biological sampling 103
7.3.4 Geotechnical sampling 103
7.3.5 Exploration results 107
7.3.6 Analysis of grade distribution by size fraction 114
7.4 The 2022 test mining campaign 117
7.5 NORI 2022 Campaign 7A and 7B 117
7.5.1 Box coring 117
7.5.2 Nodule sampling 118
7.5.3 Biological sampling 119
7.5.4 Geotechnical sampling 119
7.5.5 Exploration results 123
7.5.5.1 Campaign 7A 123
7.5.5.2 Campaign 7B 125
7.6 NORI 2023 Campaign 8a 131
7.6.1 Box coring 131
7.6.2 Nodule sampling 131
7.6.3 Biological sampling 131
7.6.4 Exploration results 131
7.7 Analysis of abundance of nodules 134
7.8 Analysis of nodule size distribution 136
7.8.1 Physical measurement of size and estimation of abundance from nodule dimensions 137
7.8.2 Measurement of nodule dimensions using ImageJ software 137
7.9 Analysis of nodule shape, texture and fragmentation 142
7.10 Analysis of moisture content of nodules 144
7.11 Analysis of density of nodules 147
7.12 Multielement chemistry 149
7.12.1 Nodules 149
7.12.2 Sediments 150
7.13 Analysis of bathymetric data 151
7.13.1 Geological domains 153

7.13.2 Seafloor slopes 159
7.13.2.1 Background 159
7.13.2.2 Observations at different mapping scales (Data resolutions) 159
7.13.2.3 Slope prediction using EM120 dataset 161
7.13.2.4 Summary 164
7.13.3 Geo-obstacles 164

7.13.3.1 Background 164
7.13.3.2 Geo obstacle mapping 167
7.13.3.3 Geo-obstacle probability model mapping 171
7.13.3.4 Model calibration and improvement 172
7.14 Analysis of geotechnical data 176
7.14.1 Data collection campaigns 176
7.14.2 Geotechnical soils summary 179
7.14.3 Shear strength 180
7.14.4 Soil classification 185
7.14.5 Variation in seafloor soil measurements 185

8 Sample preparation, analyses, and security 187
8.1 Sample security 187
8.2 Sample preparation and assaying 188
8.3 Quality Assurance and Quality Control procedures 189
8.3.1 Certified Reference Materials 189
8.3.2 Blanks 190
8.3.3 Duplicates 192
8.3.3.1 Campaign 3, 2018 192
8.3.3.2 Campaign 6, 2018 193
8.3.3.3 Campaign 7A, 2022 196
8.3.3.4 Campaign 8A, 2023 198

9 Data verification 200

10 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing 201
10.1 Bulk sample collection testwork 202
10.2 Bulk sampling testing laboratories 203
10.3 Summary of test work results 203
10.3.1 Round robin assaying program 203
10.3.2 Key findings of calcination at FLS 207
10.3.3 Piloting – Electric furnace smelting at XPS – Metallurgical summary 207
10.3.4 Smelting: metallurgical results 209
10.3.4.1 Partition coefficients (PC) in smelting 209
10.3.4.2 Slag chemistry 213
10.3.4.3 Elemental distribution – partition coefficients in converting 214
10.3.5 Demonstration scale trials at PAMCO 218
10.3.6 Hydrometallurgical refinery bench scale testing 219
10.3.6.1 Two-stage leaching 219
10.3.6.2 Cobalt refining 220
10.3.6.3 Nickel refining 221
10.4 Processing factors or deleterious elements that may impact extraction 221
10.5 Summary and QP's opinion 222

11 Mineral Resource estimates for NORI Area D 223
11.1 Software 223
11.2 Sample data 223
11.2.1 TOML sample data 223
11.2.1.1 NORI 2018 sample data 223
11.2.1.2 NORI 2019 sample data 224

11.2.1.3 NORI 2022 sample data 225
11.2.1.4 NORI 2023 sample data 225
11.2.1.5 Representativeness of sampling 225
11.3 Backscatter 226
11.4 Bathymetry 226
11.5 Geological domains 226
11.6 Nodule type and sediment drift 228
11.7 Data processing 230
11.7.1 Exploratory data analysis 230
11.7.2 Top-cuts 232
11.7.3 Relationships between nodules and domains 234
11.7.4 Relationships between nodule abundance and backscatter 237
11.7.5 Data transformations 239
11.7.6 Spatial continuity 239
11.7.6.1 Nodule abundance and nodule grades 239
11.7.7 Estimation of nodule abundance and grades 244
11.8 Cut-off grade 246
11.9 Mineral Resource classification 247
11.10 Estimation results 250
11.11 Comparison with previous resource estimates 252

12 Mineral Reserve estimates 254
12.1 Introduction 254
12.1.1 Basis of the mine plan 254
12.1.2 Qualified Person responsibility 256
12.2 Key assumptions and methods used 257
12.2.1 Environmental Modifying Factors 257
12.2.2 Geotechnical analysis Modifying Factors 257

12.2.3 Geotechnical design Modifying Factors 258
12.2.4 Seafloor topography model Modifying Factors 259
12.2.5 Nodule loss from Geo-obstacle Modifying Factors 260
12.2.6 Resource model Modifying Factors 261
12.2.7 Nodule collection Modifying Factors 261
12.2.8 Nodule recovery Modifying Factors 267
12.2.9 Marine operations Modifying Factors 271
12.2.10 Mine planning Modifying Factors 271
12.2.11 Nodule processing Modifying Factors 273
12.2.12 Nodule marketing Modifying Factors 274
12.2.13 Production target Modifying Factors summary 275
12.2.14 Economic Modifying Factors 276
12.2.15 Mine planning method 277
12.2.16 Resource model used for conversion to Mineral Reserves 277
12.2.17 Consideration of losses during mining 278
12.2.18 Defining economic limits of extraction 278
12.2.19 Initial Mining Area (Project Zero) development strategy 281
12.3 Mineral Reserve estimate 287
12.4 Cut-off values to define ore 287
12.5 Economic assessment 288
12.6 Mineral Reserve classification 288
12.7 Qualified Persons conclusion on risk factors 288

13 Mining methods 291
13.1 Overview 291
13.2 Production Vessel (PV) 291
13.2.1 Collector System 293

13.2.1.1 Collector propulsion system 294
13.2.1.2 Nodule pick-up and internal separation system 295
13.2.1.3 Power, control and monitoring system 298
13.2.2 Launch and Recovery System 298
13.2.3 Vertical Transport System (VTS) – Overview 299
13.2.4 Vertical transport system – functional description 301
13.2.4.1 Riser 301
13.2.4.2 Riser head 302
13.2.4.3 Contingency overflow tank 302
13.2.4.4 Compressor spread 302
13.2.5 Riser/jumper handling equipment 303
13.2.6 Nodule dewatering and storage system 303
13.2.7 Nodule handling system – functional description 305
13.2.7.1 Nodule dewatering system 305
13.2.7.2 Bulk cargo classification 306
13.2.7.3 Return water system 306
13.2.7.4 Nodule storage system 307
13.2.7.5 Nodule storage holds 309
13.2.7.6 Nodule offloading system 309
13.2.8 Nodule Transfer Vessel (TV) 314

14 Processing and recovery methods 316
14.1 Overview 316
14.2 Flowsheet options screening and selection 317
14.2.1 Manganese product and associated market 317
14.2.2 Near zero solid waste generation 319
14.3 Process description 319
14.3.1 Alloy production 320
14.3.2 Matte production 320
14.3.3 Matte refining 321
14.4 Flowsheet development 321
14.4.1 Literature review 321
14.4.2 Bench-scale test work 322
14.4.3 Concept engineering 322
14.4.4 Piloting 323
14.4.4.1 Piloting overview 323
14.4.4.2 Calcining at FLSmidth 323
14.4.4.3 Smelting, sulfidizing and converting at XPS 324
14.4.5 Demonstration scale calcining and smelting trial 326
14.4.6 Manganese silicate slag quality 328

15 Metallurgical plant (onshore) 330
15.1 Strategy of employing existing assets 331
15.1.1 Overview and context 331
15.1.2 Ramp up of commercial operations 331
15.2 PAMCO 332
15.2.1 Overview and context 332
15.2.2 Plant 332
15.2.2.1 PAMCO RKEF Plant 334
15.2.3 PAMCO MOU 338
15.2.4 Basis for tolling fee 338

15.2.5 Alloy to matte 339
15.2.6 Product quality specifications 341
15.2.7 PAMCO Sustainability 342
15.3 Long-Term Processing Strategy 342

15.3.1 Nodule Processing Beyond 1.3 Mwmtpa 342
15.3.2 Indonesian processing cost benchmarking 344
15.3.3 Further processing of nodules in the United States 345
15.4 Production Plan 345

16 Market studies 347
16.1 TMC offtake agreement 347
16.2 Marketing analysis 347
16.3 Market outlook 348
16.3.1 Nickel 348
16.3.2 Cobalt 349
16.3.3 Manganese 350
16.3.3.1 EMM and $MnSO_4$ 350
16.3.4 Copper 350
16.4 TMC manganese silicate 351
16.5 TMC matte 352
16.6 TMC alloy 352
16.7 Refinery Products 352
16.8 Revenue forecasts 352

17 Environmental studies, permitting, and plans, negotiations, or agreements with local individuals or groups 355
17.1 Permitting process 355
17.1.1 Overview of Environmental Regulatory Frameworks under international law and the law of the United States of America 355
17.1.1.1 International Seabed Authority (ISA) 355
17.1.1.2 Role of Sponsoring States 356
17.1.1.3 ISA Regulatory Framework 356
17.1.1.6 Relevance to the Project 358
17.1.1.7 ISA Compliance Status 359
17.1.2 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 359
17.1.2.1 NOAA Regulatory Framework 359
17.1.2.1.1.DSHMRA Regulations for Exploration Licenses 360
17.1.2.1.2.DSHMRA Regulations for Commercial Recovery Permit 360
17.1.2.2 Relevance to the Project 362
17.1.2.3 Compliance status 362
17.2 Project approval pathway 362
17.3 Environmental Impact Assessment status 363
17.4 Environmental Impacts and Mitigation 365
17.4.1 Nodule removal 365
17.4.2 Benthic plume 366
17.4.3 Return water plume 367
17.4.4 Carbon 367
17.4.5 Noise 368
17.4.6 Biodiversity loss 368
17.4.7 Reduction in habitat quality and ecosystem function 368
17.5 Commitments to local benefits 369
17.5.1 Updated Sponsorship Agreement 369
17.5.2 Scholarships 369
17.5.3 Community Investment 369
17.5.4 Stakeholder engagement 370

18 Capital and operating costs 372
18.1 Execution strategy 372
18.2 Detailed operations plan 373

18.3 Baseline operating assumptions 374
18.4 CAPEX and OPEX estimate preparation 375
18.5 CAPEX 375
18.5.1 Production vessel 376
18.5.2 Transfer vessel/bulk carriers 379
18.5.3 Support vessels 379
18.5.4 Processing 379
18.5.5 Operations Facilities initial setup 380
18.5.6 Professional Services 380
18.5.7 Project owners cost 380
18.5.8 Contingency 381
18.5.9 Escalation 381
18.5.10 Allseas capital contribution 381

18.5.11 System #2, #3, #4 381
18.5.12 Refining facility 382
18.5.13 Sustaining CAPEX 382
18.5.14 Closure CAPEX 383
18.5.15 CAPEX exclusions 383
18.6 OPEX 384
18.6.1 Collection Cost 385
18.6.2 Transfer and Shipping Costs 386
18.6.3 Contractor (offshore) Costs 387
18.6.4 Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs 387
18.6.5 Processing Costs 388
18.6.6 Refining Costs 389
18.6.7 Corporate Costs 390

19 Economic analysis 391
19.1 Cautionary statement regarding forward-looking information 391
19.2 Methodology used 392
19.3 Economic model parameters 392
19.4 Total capital costs 392
19.5 Total sustaining costs 393
19.6 Total closure costs 393
19.7 Total operating costs 393
19.8 Commodity prices 393
19.9 Recovery rates 394
19.10 Payable terms 394
19.11 Royalty/continuity payments 394
19.11.1 Nauru Continuity Benefits 395
19.11.2 Low Carbon Royalty (LCR) 395
19.12 Taxes 395
19.13 Economic analysis 395
19.14 Sensitivity analysis 417
19.15 Cash Cost Analysis 418
19.16 Conclusion Economic Analysis 419

20 Adjacent properties 420
21 Other relevant data and information 421
22 Interpretation and conclusions 422
22.1 Mineral tenure 422
22.2 Exploration and data verification 422
22.3 Mineral processing testwork 424
22.4 Mineral Resource 424

22.5 Mineral Reserve 425
22.6 Mining methods 426
22.7 Processing 427
22.8 Infrastructure 427
22.9 Market studies 428
22.10 Environmental studies 428
22.11 Capital and operating costs 428
22.12 Economic evaluation 429
23 Recommendations 430
24 References 431
25 Reliance on information provided by registrant 436

Tables

Table 1.1 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m2 abundance cut-off inclusive of Mineral Reserve 29
Table 1.2 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m2 abundance cut-off exclusive of Mineral Reserve 29
Table 1.3 Metallurgical recoveries 32
Table 1.4 NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025 34
Table 1.5 Project CAPEX system #1 summary 36
Table 1.6 Project CAPEX US refining summary 36
Table 1.7 NORI Area D operating cost summary 37
Table 1.8 Average product prices assumed in PFS 37
Table 2.1 List of Qualified Persons responsible for each Section 40
Table 2.2 TMC Qualified Persons responsible for each section 41
Table 3.1 NORI Area extents 48
Table 3.2 NORI Area block details 48
Table 5.1 Summary of historical FFG samples in the NORI Area 61
Table 6.1 Nodule Facies in NORI Area D 71
Table 7.1 Summary of Data Types Collected by the AUV during the 2018 NORI Campaign 80
Table 7.2 Sampling protocol 86
Table 7.3 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights- Campaign 3 90
Table 7.4 Box core sample coordinates and nodule weights – Campaign 6 107
Table 7.5 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights - Campaign 7A 124
Table 7.6 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights - Campaign 7B 126
Table 7.7 Summary of the nodule abundance for the paired sites before and after the test mining 127
Table 7.8 Box core sample coordinates and nodule weights - Campaign 8A 132
Table 7.9 Masses of nodules recovered by depth and campaign 136

Table 7.10 Shape, texture and fragmentation descriptors 142
Table 7.11 Summary statistics of multielement chemistry of nodule samples from box cores 149
Table 7.12 Summary statistics of multielement chemistry of sediment samples from box cores 151
Table 7.13 Chronological summary of MBES acquisition, processing and analysis for NORI Area D. 152

Table 7.14 NORI Area D summary geotechnical soil classification 179
Table 8.1 Assay results for NOD-P-1 from off-shore campaigns in 2018, 2019, and 2023 190
Table 8.2 Assay results for NOD-P-1 from off-shore campaigns in 2018, 2019, and 2023 191
Table 8.3 Duplicate average sample grades by laboratory 193
Table 8.4 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS 194
Table 8.5 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS and BV 195
Table 8.6 Primary and duplicate average sample grades from ALS 197
Table 8.7 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS 199
Table 10.1 Comparison of bulk sample analyses with NORI Area D measured resource for the test mining area 202
Table 10.2 Location and testing methods of laboratories used 203
Table 10.3 Analytical methods undertaken by each laboratory 204
Table 10.4 Nickel laboratory results 205
Table 10.5 Copper laboratory results 205
Table 10.6 Cobalt laboratory results 206
Table 10.7 Manganese laboratory results 206
Table 10.8 CRM results for each laboratory 206
Table 10.9 Updates to process design criteria after pilot kiln test work 207
Table 10.10 Pilot calcine blend assay vs. PEA update mass balance 207
Table 10.11 Pilot metal assays vs. PEA update mass balance 208
Table 10.12 Pilot smelting slag assays vs. PEA update mass balance 208
Table 10.13 Pilot matte assays vs. PEA update mass balance 209
Table 10.14 Optimum leach parameters and extractions 219
Table 10.15 Optimum leach assays 220
Table 10.16 Assays of input and output streams from the CoSX 220
Table 10.17 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals with an external third-party specification 220
Table 10.18 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated nickel sulfate crystals with two external third-party specifications 221
Table 10.19 Target specifications for manganese silicate 222
Table 11.1 Summary statistics of TOML Area F nodule assays 223
Table 11.2 Summary statistics of the 2018 NORI Area D primary assay data 224
Table 11.3 Summary statistics of the 2019 NORI Area D primary assay data 224
Table 11.4 Summary statistics of the 2022 NORI Area D primary assay data 225
Table 11.5 Summary statistics of the 2023 NORI Area D primary assay data 225
Table 11.6 Variogram models 241
Table 11.7 NORI Area D Grid Model Extents 244
Table 11.8 NORI-TOML breakeven cut-off abundance estimate 247
Table 11.9 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m2 abundance cut-off inclusive of Mineral Reserve 251
Table 11.10 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m2 abundance cut-off exclusive of Mineral Reserve 252
Table 12.1 Environmental Modifying Factors 257
Table 12.2 Geotechnical Modifying Factors 259
Table 12.3 Geo-obstacle probability in Run 19 by probability class 261
Table 12.4 Resource model Modifying Factors 261
Table 12.5 Collector system Modifying Factors 267
Table 12.6 Nodule Recovery by collection system component (Type 1 nodules) 268
Table 12.7 Estimated Nodule Recovery by boxcore location (Type 1 nodules) 268
Table 12.8 Deltares test run 6 base case Type 1 Nodule Recovery results 269
Table 12.9 Deltares test run 10 Type 2/3 Nodule Recovery results 271
Table 12.10 Collection recovery by type and probability class Modifying Factors 271
Table 12.11 Nodule processing Modifying Factors 274
Table 12.12 Commodity price Modifying Factors 275

Table 12.13 Production targets 276
Table 12.14 NORI Area D production schedule 284
Table 12.15 NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025 287
Table 14.1 Simple screening process for various nodule processing flowsheet options 317
Table 14.2 Summary of bench-scale test work 322
Table 14.3 Summary of pilot scale test work 323
Table 15.1 Key Data for PAMCO’s core unit operations at the hachinohe site 334
Table 15.2 Agreed upon grades of key pay metals for the alloy as set in the Binding MOU between TMC and PAMCO. 341
Table 15.3 Specification for the manganese silicate product generated at PAMCO per the Binding MOU between TMC and PAMCO 341
Table 15.4 Total Indonesian processing cost 345
Table 15.5 TMC USA PFS production plan, updated July 2025 346
Table 16.1 Metal and metal sulfate price forecasts 2026 onwards (real US$ 2025) 352
Table 16.2 Metallurgical recoveries 353
Table 16.3 NiCoCu Alloy/Matte Payable terms percentage of LME benchmark prices 353
Table 16.4 Forecast payable metal production - metal in alloy 353
Table 16.5 Forecast payable metal production - metal in matte 353

Table 16.6 Forecast payable refined metal production - metal in sulfate and cathode 354
Table 16.7 Forecast production – Mn in Mn silicate 354
Table 16.8 Revenue Forecast US$ 2025 Real 354
Table 17.1 Stakeholder analysis and engagement 370
Table 18.1 Project CAPEX system #1 summary 376
Table 18.2 Project CAPEX US refining summary 376
Table 18.3 Production vessel CAPEX 377
Table 18.4 Transfer vessel/bulk carrier CAPEX 379
Table 18.5 Support Vessels CAPEX 379
Table 18.6 Operations Facilities CAPEX 380
Table 18.7 Professional Services CAPEX 380
Table 18.8 Project owners cost CAPEX 380
Table 18.9 System #2, #3, #4 recovered summary 381
Table 18.10 Refining facility summary 382
Table 18.11 Sustaining CAPEX summary 382
Table 18.12 Closure CAPEX summary 383

Table 18.13 OPEX Summary 385
Table 18.14 OPEX Unit Cost US$/wmt Summary 385
Table 18.15 Collection Cost OPEX 385
Table 18.16 Transfer and Shipping OPEX 386
Table 18.17 Contractor (offshore) costs OPEX 387
Table 18.18 Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs 387
Table 18.19 Processing Costs 388
Table 18.20 Refining Costs 389
Table 18.21 Corporate Costs 390
Table 19.1 Project capital system #1 costs 392
Table 19.2 Project capital us refining costs 393
Table 19.3 Total operating costs 393
Table 19.4 Average LOM commodity prices 394
Table 19.5 Recovery rates 394
Table 19.6 LOM Average Payable Terms 394
Table 19.7 Nauru Continuity Benefits Payment Schedule 395
Table 19.8 Summary of forecast Project economics 396
Table 19.9 Project Cash Flow on an Annualized basis 399
Table 19.10 C1 Nickel Cash Cost 418
Table 19.11 All-in Sustaining Cost 418
Table 20.1 TOML Area F Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at a 4 kg/m2 nodule abundance cut-off 420
Table 20.2 Summary of Mineral Resources reported for BGR exploration contract area 420

Figures

Figure 1.1 Forecast Project Post-Tax Cash Flow (US$M) 38
Figure 1.2 Tornado diagram of NPV sensitivity to variables 39
Figure 3.1 Map of seafloor jurisdictions 45
Figure 3.2 Maritime space under the 1982 UNCLOS 46
Figure 3.3 Location of NORI and other exploration areas within the CCZ 47
Figure 3.4 Location of NORI blocks in the CCZ 48
Figure 4.1 Global cargo shipping network in 2007 53
Figure 5.1 Schematic of Lockheed Group's 1970s trial mining system 55
Figure 5.2 Remote operated collector used by the Lockheed Group in 1970s trial mining 56
Figure 5.3 Free fall grab sampler operation 57
Figure 5.4 Box core sampler operation 57
Figure 5.5 Box plot sample grades in NORI Area compared with data from Reserved Blocks 62
Figure 6.1. Location of the CCZ and other deep sea nodule fields 63
Figure 6.2. Bathymetric map of the Clarion-Clipperton fracture zone 64
Figure 6.3 Map of nickel grade distribution in the CCZ 66
Figure 6.4 Map of cobalt grade distribution in the CCZ 67
Figure 6.5 Map of copper grade distribution in the CCZ 68
Figure 6.6 Map of manganese grade distribution in the CCZ 69
Figure 6.7 Map of nodule abundance distribution in the CCZ 70

Figure 6.8 Camera Imagery Showing Change from Type 3 Nodules (right) to Type 2 (left) 72
Figure 6.9 Map of Nodule Classification According to Photographic Traversing by AUV Compared to Backscatter Intensity 73
Figure 6.10 Nodule types 75
Figure 7.1 Map showing NORI Area D Bathymetry 76
Figure 7.2 Reprocessed EM120 Backscatter Data from NORI Area D 2012 Survey 78
Figure 7.3 Deployment ESVII Kongsberg Hugin AUV from the stern of the Maersk Launcher 79
Figure 7.4 AUV Geosurvey Data Acquired during the 2018 NORI Campaign 80
Figure 7.5 KC Denmark 0.75 m² box corer 82
Figure 7.6 Box core locations for 2018 NORI Campaign 3 83

Figure 7.7	Sequence of Box Core Land-out Footage from GoPro Camera	84
Figure 7.8	On-deck sample processing	85
Figure 7.9	Coning and quartering process	87
Figure 7.10	Comparison of Image Classifier Results vs. Caliper Measurements	88
Figure 7.11	Plan of Box Core locations and Abundance (in wet kg/m²) Campaign 3	92
Figure 7.12	Profile of Nodule Weight by Depth in BC_043	93
Figure 7.13	Comparison of AUV MBES Data (Ribbon) against EM120 Vessel-based MBES	94
Figure 7.14	Example of AUV Camera Photo Mosaic and Insets, Showing Nodules	95
Figure 7.15	Comparison of Nodule Long Axis Measurements, Taken Using Digital Callipers, and Individual Nodule Wet Weight for BC_001, BC_002, BC_003, and BC_005	96
Figure 7.16	Detail of image processing	97
Figure 7.17	Comparison of mean long axes lengths from AUV camera imagery and box cores	97
Figure 7.18	Comparison of Felix method and multiple linear regression method	98
Figure 7.19	Multiple linear regression model for nodule abundance	99
Figure 7.20	Plan of nodule abundance estimates in the test mining site	100
Figure 7.21	Box corer on deck showing the USBL beacon mounting position	101
Figure 7.22	Box core processing flow sheet for campaign 6B	102
Figure 7.23	Plan of box core and gravity core locations, 2019 Campaign 6	105
Figure 7.24	Photographs of geotechnical vane and CPT (left) and plate load test (right)	106
Figure 7.25	Photographs of biological and geotechnical tube sampling (C6A left, C6B right)	106
Figure 7.26	Plan of NORI Area D showing box core abundances and bathymetry	113
Figure 7.27	Relative difference of grade by size fraction - NiO (%)	114
Figure 7.28	Relative difference of grade by size fraction - CuO (%)	115
Figure 7.29	Relative difference of grade by size fraction - CoO (%)	115
Figure 7.30	Relative difference of grade by size fraction - MnO (%)	116
Figure 7.31	Proportions of size fractions by mass (relative percentage)	116
Figure 7.32	Layout of the nodule processing side of the geology laboratory	118
Figure 7.33	Plan of location of CPT tests in box cores and in situ on the seafloor (ROV CPT), Campaign 7A	120
Figure 7.34	Box core testing set-up with biological zone divider in place	121
Figure 7.35	10 kN Seabed CPT system mounted to Schilling HD WROV	122
Figure 7.36	Plan of test mining site showing C7A box core locations, abundances and bathymetry	128

Figure 7.37	Plan of test mining site showing C7B box core locations, abundances and bathymetry	129
Figure 7.38	Plan of box core abundances for campaign 7A and 7B and test mining runs	130
Figure 7.39	Plan of C8a box core locations, abundances and bathymetry	133
Figure 7.40	Schematic representation of average weight of nodules by depth in the box cores in campaign C3	134
Figure 7.41	Scatter plots showing the contribution by layer to total nodule abundance in box cores	135
Figure 7.42	Scatter plot comparing axis lengths of 500 manually measured nodules	137
Figure 7.43	Scatter plot of nodule major axis dimension versus nodule intermediate axis dimension for all nodules	139
Figure 7.44	Box plots of nodule major axis dimension for all box cores	140
Figure 7.45	Log probability plot of nodule major axis dimensions, subdivided by interpreted nodule type domain	141
Figure 7.46	Examples of nodules recovered during the NORI 2018 campaign	143
Figure 7.47	Pie graphs showing morphology of nodules collected during the 2018 campaign	144
Figure 7.48	Histograms of nodule moisture content, NORI Area D	146
Figure 7.49	Density data from TOML Areas B, C, D and F and data from Hessler and Jumars (1974)	148
Figure 7.50	EM120 bathymetric slope plotted against occurrence of outcropping footwall (hardground), based on SBP, camera and backscatter interpretations (top), and volcanic outcrop occurrence (bottom)	154
Figure 7.51	SBP profile and AUV camera transect across outcropping hardground associated with an abyssal hill.	155
Figure 7.52	Map of Reprocessed EM120 MBES Slope derivative data	156
Figure 7.53	Map of Footwall domains	157
Figure 7.54	Map of Nodule facies domains produced from backscatter interpretations, plotted with nodule type from box core logging	158
Figure 7.55	Comparison of EM120 vessel-based MBES and AUV EM2040 MBES over an abyssal hill	160
Figure 7.56	Comparison of EM120 vessel-based MBES and AUV EM2040 MBES over hummocky terrain.	160
Figure 7.57	Map of Slope Probability for NORI Area D	162
Figure 7.58	Detail of probability map, showing relationship of intermediate slope probability values with Type 2 and 3 nodule distribution and associated hummocky terrain.	163
Figure 7.59	Map of collector test survey site and test mining site, showing location of type-examples of geo-obstacles	166
Figure 7.60	Bathymetric derivatives	168
Figure 7.61	Comparison of 1 m resolution slope attribute (left) with focal statistic slope, based on a 15 x 15 m focal statistic kernel	169
Figure 7.62	Geo-obstacle depression features detected within the collector test survey area	170
Figure 7.63	Geo-obstacle data points – including data from collector test survey site and DSAO survey	171
Figure 7.64	Geo-obstacle probability heat map	174
Figure 7.65	Detail of the northern end of the Campaign 8B survey, showing geo-obstacle mapping	175
Figure 7.66	Overview of NORI Area D with geotechnical sample locations	177

Figure 7.67	NORI Area D collector Test Area with geotechnical locations	178
Figure 7.68	NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa by Laboratory Vane) 0.00 to 0.10 m depth	181
Figure 7.69	NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa Laboratory Vane) 0.11 to 0.15 m depth	182
Figure 7.70	NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa Laboratory Vane) 0.15 to 0.45 m depth	183
Figure 7.71	Initial Mining Area measured undrained shear strength by depth	184
Figure 7.72	Overlay of in situ seafloor CPT and in Box Core CPT Profiles	186
Figure 8.1	Sample storage	187
Figure 8.2	Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS	192

Figure 8.3 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at BV 193
Figure 8.4 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS 194
Figure 8.5 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at BV 195
Figure 8.6 Comparison of primary and duplicate samples assayed at ALS 197
Figure 8.7 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS 198
Figure 10.1 Bulk sampling dredge used to collect the bulk sample for metallurgical pilot tests 203
Figure 10.2 Copper partition coefficients during smelting 210
Figure 10.3 Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting 211
Figure 10.4 Manganese in metal vs. iron in slag 212
Figure 10.5 Phosphorus partition coefficients 213
Figure 10.6 Manganese and phosphorus in slag versus iron in slag 214
Figure 10.7 Nickel partition coefficients in converting 215
Figure 10.8 Copper partition coefficients in converting 216
Figure 10.9 Cobalt partition coefficients in converting 217
Figure 10.10 Manganese partition coefficients in converting 218
Figure 11.1 Map of geological domains in NORI Area D 227
Figure 11.2 Proportions of geological domains in NORI Area D 228
Figure 11.3 Map of nodule type domains in NORI Area D 229
Figure 11.4 Map of Location of Data Points and the NORI Area D Boundary 230
Figure 11.5 Pairs plot showing correlations between NORI Area D sample values 231
Figure 11.6 Histogram, cumulative probability and mean-variance plots of abundance and grades for NORI Area D nodule samples 232
Figure 11.7 Histogram, cumulative probability and mean-variance plots of abundance and grades for NORI Area D nodule samples 233
Figure 11.8 Frequency of NORI Area D nodule samples by geological domains 234
Figure 11.9 Frequency of NORI Area D nodule samples by nodule type domains 234
Figure 11.10 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule abundance and assays by geological domain 235
Figure 11.11 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule grades by slope angle 236
Figure 11.12 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule abundance and assays by nodule facies domain 237

Figure 11.13 Scatter plot of NORI Area D nodule abundance versus backscatter 238
Figure 11.14 Omni-directional, 065° and 155° directional variograms of acoustic backscatter 238
Figure 11.15 Variogram maps of NORI Area D nodule sample assays 240
Figure 11.16 Abundance omni-directional, 075° and 165° directional variograms 241
Figure 11.17 Nickel omni-directional, 075° and 165° directional variograms 241
Figure 11.18 Copper omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 242
Figure 11.19 Cobalt omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 242
Figure 11.20 Manganese omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 242
Figure 11.21. Silicon omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 243
Figure 11.22 Iron omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 243
Figure 11.23 Phosphorus omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms 243
Figure 11.24. NORI Area D 500 m by 500 m grid model showing percentage coverage of nodules 244
Figure 11.25 Cumulative probability plots comparing nodule samples with IDW and SK estimates 246
Figure 11.26 Abundance: probability of exceeding 15% of mean at 90% confidence for quarterly and yearly production 248
Figure 11.27 Mineral Resource classification boundaries 249
Figure 11.28 Nodule abundance and nodule grades 3.5 km by 3.5 km SK panel estimates for NORI Area D 250
Figure 11.29 NORI Area D abundance-tonnage curve 251
Figure 12.1 Graphic depicting nodule collection system 254
Figure 12.2 Graphic depicting the collector 255
Figure 12.3 Graphic depicting seafloor Geo-obstacles in the central section of Runs 19 and 20 260
Figure 12.4 Basic working principle of airlift 265
Figure 12.5 Main components of the VTS 266
Figure 12.6 Deltares base case Type 1 Nodule Recovery photos 270
Figure 12.7 Initial Mining Area within the proposed NORI Area D 280
Figure 12.8 Proposed Initial Mining area long collector paths 281
Figure 12.9 Proposed Initial Mining Area systematic collector paths 283
Figure 12.10 NORI Area D nodule tonnage (wet) production graph 285
Figure 12.11 NORI Area D nodule grade 286
Figure 12.12 Collector paths mined by year 286
Figure 13.1 Illustration of proposed PV (Hidden Gem) with a collector and TV alongside 290
Figure 13.2 Drone picture of Hidden Gem, September 2022 292
Figure 13.3 Illustration of the proposed 15 m wide collector on seabed 293
Figure 13.4 Illustration of collector track system 294
Figure 13.5 Illustration of collector thrust system 295
Figure 13.6 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule pick-up and internal separation system 296
Figure 13.7 Illustration of General Arrangement – nozzle height adjustment sensor layout 297
Figure 13.8 Flow mixture overview – nodule pick-up system 297
Figure 13.9 Illustration of General Arrangement – LARS 299
Figure 13.10 Basic airlift configuration 300

Figure 13.11 Block diagram – VTS 301
Figure 13.12 General Arrangement – riser handling equipment 303
Figure 13.13 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule handling and storage system 304
Figure 13.14 Block diagram – nodule dewatering, handling and storage system 305
Figure 13.15 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule dewatering 306

Figure 13.16 Illustration of feeder belt and transverse shuttle conveyor belt, conveyor cover is transparent blue 307
Figure 13.17 Illustration of Transverse shuttle conveyor belts, conveyor cover is transparent blue 308
Figure 13.18 Illustration of Longitudinal shuttle conveyor belt, conveyor cover in blue 308
Figure 13.19 Illustration of General Arrangement – storage holds 309
Figure 13.20 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule offloading system 310
Figure 13.21 Illustration of transverse conveyor 311
Figure 13.22 Illustration of C-Loop vertical transport conveyor 312
Figure 13.23 Illustration of reversible transfer conveyor 312
Figure 13.24 Illustration of portside elevating conveyor 313
Figure 13.25 Illustration of portside unloading conveyor boom 314
Figure 13.26 Illustration of typical Allseas designed nodule transfer vessel 314
Figure 13.27 Illustration of TV 315
Figure 14.1 2018 production of manganese ore (blue) compared to TMC's equivalent project (green) 318
Figure 14.2 2017 Manganese ore consumption by end-use project 318
Figure 14.3 Major equipment and associated stream from the pyrometallurgical complex 319
Figure 14.4 Major equipment and associated stream from the hydrometallurgical refinery 321
Figure 14.5 Schematic of kiln and ancillary equipment as originally configured 325
Figure 14.6 Pilot plant rotary kiln, feed-end to right. 326
Figure 14.7 Pilot plant dc furnace and ancillary equipment 327
Figure 14.8 DC Furnace Dimensions 328
Figure 15.1 Google satellite view of the PAMCO facility and adjacent port and stockyard 333
Figure 15.2 Google satellite view of the port unloading area and identification of conveying system used to transport nodules into process plant 334
Figure 15.3 Nodules are fed into the PAMCO kiln through a conveying system 335
Figure 15.4 PAMCO's #6 kiln 336
Figure 15.5 PAMCO's slag storage area: slag is left to cool and organized before shipment 337
Figure 15.6 Molten alloy tapped into moulds at PAMCO 337
Figure 15.7 PAMCO facility layout with potential location of converter aisle 340
Figure 15.8 Total 2023 production capacity for ferronickel and nickel pig iron smelting, and number of existing smelting facilities by country 342
Figure 15.9 Rapid increase in Indonesian laterite ore demand, decreasing saprolite ore grades and increased ore imports from the Philippines. 343
Figure 17.1 Plan of Work approval process 358
Figure 17.2 Commercial Recovery Permit Approval Process 361
Figure 17.3 Status of the NORI Area D the environmental assessment process 363
Figure 17.4 Data to inform the NORI D Environmental Impact Statement has been collected from 22 offshore campaigns over 12 years 364

Figure 17.5 Primary work packages and list of original studies 364
Figure 17.6 Qualitative data show individual organisms are present and alive one year following collection test, even right next to the collector tracks 365
Figure 17.7 Test mining footage showing that the benthic plume stays just above the seafloor 367
Figure 18.1 Illustration depicting proposed execution strategy 373
Figure 19.1 Forecast Project post-tax free cash flow (US$ M) 396
Figure 19.2 Tornado Graph 417

List of acronyms

AAS	Atomic absorption spectroscopy
AC	Alternating current
AL	Atmospheric Leach
ALS	ALS Laboratory Group
AMC	AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
AMR	Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe
APEI	Area of Particular Environmental Interest
AUV	Autonomous underwater vehicle
BC	Box core
BGR	German Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources
BMI	Benchmark Mineral Intelligence
BV	Bureau Veritas laboratory
CAGR	Compound annual growth rate
CCZ	Clarion-Clipperton Zone
CIF	Cost, insurance and freight
CIM	Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum
CoV	Coefficient of variation
CRU	CRU International Limited
CV	Collector vehicle
The Convention	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982
DC	Direct current
DeepGreen	DeepGreen Metals Inc.
DGE	DeepGreen Engineering Pte. Ltd.
DHI	DHI Water and Environment
DISCOL	Disturbance and Recolonisation Experiment
DOMES	Deep Ocean Mining Environmental Study
DP	Dynamic positioning

DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DSHMRA	Deep Sea Hard Mineral Resources Act
EF	Electric furnace
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EMMP	Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan
EMS	Environmental Management System
ESG	Environment, social and governance
ESIA	Environmental and social impact assessment
EV	Electric vehicle
FFG	Free-fall grab samplers
FLS	FLSmidth
FOB	Free on board
FV	Finishing vessel
Glencore	Glencore International Ag
Golder	Golder Associates Pty Ltd.
HPAL	High-pressure acid leaching

HPMSM	High-purity $MnSO_4$ monohydrate
Hs	Significant wave height
IA	Initial Assessment
ICP-MS	Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry
ID	Inside diameter
IDW	Inverse Distance Weighting – an estimation method utilising distance-weighted local averages
Inco	International Nickel Corporation
IOM	lnteroceanmetal Joint Organisation
IMDG	The International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code
IMSBC	International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes Code
IRR	Internal rate of return
ISA	International Seabed Authority
IX	Ion exchange
KPM	Kingston Process Metallurgy
LARS	Launch and recovery system
LED	Light-emitting diode
LME	London Metal Exchange
LRMC	Long Run Marginal Cost
MBES	Multi-beam echo sounder
MHP	mixed hydroxide precipitate
MSP	mixed sulfide precipitate
MOU	Memorandum of understanding
NI 43-101	Canadian National Instrument 43-101
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NORI	Nauru Ocean Resources Inc.
NN	Nearest neighbour estimation method
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NPI	Nickel pig iron
NPV	Net present value
OD	Outside diameter
OK	Ordinary kriging – an estimation method utilising distance-weighted local averages
OMI	Ocean Mining Inc.
OMCO	Ocean Minerals Company
PAMCO	Pacific Metals Company
PEA	Preliminary economic assessment
PFS	Pre-feasibility study
PLS	Pregnant liquor/leach solution
POX	Pressure oxidative leaching
PRZ	Preservation reference zone
PSD	Particle size distribution
PV	Production vessel
QA/QC	Quality assurance and quality control
QP	Qualified Person, as defined by Canadian National Instrument 43-101
R-type	Rough type nodules
Regulations	Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules in the Area
ROV	Remotely operated vehicle

RKEF	Rotary kiln and electric furnace
SBP	Sub-bottom profiler

SGS	SGS Lakefield, Ontario
SLN	Société le Niquel
SMM	Shanghai Metal Markets
S-R-type	Smooth-rough type nodules
SSS	Sidescan sonar
S-K 1300	Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the US Securities and Exchange Commission
S-type	Smooth type nodules
SV	Support vessel
SVP	Sound velocity profiler
SX	Solvent extraction
TOC	Total organic carbon
TOML	Tonga Off-shore Mining Limited
TMC	TMC the metals company Inc.
TMC USA	The Metals Company USA LLC
TV	Transfer vessel
UN	United Nations
UNCLOS	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea
USBL	Ultra-short baseline
U.S.	United States
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator Cartesian coordinate system
UTP	Underwater transponder array
Var	Variance
VTS	Vertical transport system
WROV	Work Class remotely operated vehicle
XPS	eXpert Process Solutions, a division of Glencore
XRF	X-ray fluorescence analysis
Yuzhmorgeologiya	State Enterprise Yuzhmorgeologiya (Russian Federation)

List of elements

Al	Aluminium
As	arsenic
Ba	barium
Ca	calcium
Cd	cadmium
Ce	cerium
Cl	chlorine
Co	cobalt
Cu	copper
Fe	iron
H_2O	hydrogen dioxide
H_2S	hydrogen sulphide
K	potassium
La	lanthanum
Mg	magnesium
Mn	manganese
MnO	manganese oxide
MnO2	manganese dioxide
Mo	molybdenum
Na	sodium
NaHS	sodium hydro sulphide
Na_2S	sodium sulphide
Nd	neodymium
Ni	nickel
P	phosphorus
Pb	lead
REE	rare earth elements
S	sulphur
SiO2	silicon dioxide
Sr	strontium
Ti	titanium
V	vanadium
Y	yttrium
Zn	zinc
Zr	zirconium

List of units

°	degree
°C	degrees Celsius
%	percent
% w/w	% mass/mass or weight
µm	microns
cm	centimetre
cm/s	centimetre per second
dmtu	dry metric tonne unit
G	gram
GWh	gigawatt-hours
kg	kilogram
kg/m²	kilograms per square metre (surface abundance)
km	kilometre
km²	square kilometre
kPa	kilopascal
kt	kilotonne (metric)
kt/a	kilotonnes (metric) per annum
kWh/h	kilowatt hours per hour
kWh/t	kilowatt hours per tonne
Kn	Knots (nautical miles per hour)
Lb	pound
m	metre
m/h	metres per hours
m/s	metres per second
m^2	square metre
m^3	cubic metre
m³/y	cubic metres per year
mbsl	metres below sea level
mg/L	milligrams per litre
mm	millimetre
MPa	megapascal
mt	metric tonnes
Mmt	million tonnes
Mmtpa	million tonnes per annum
Mwmt	million wet metric tonnes
Mwmtpa	million wet metric tonnes per annum
mV	millivolt
MW	megawatt
nm	nautical mile
ppm	parts per million
ppmw	parts per million weight
s	second
t	tonne (metric)
t/d	tonnes (metric) per day
t/h	tonnes (metric) per hour
US$	United States dollar
wmt	Wet metric tonnes
y	year

1 Executive summary

1.1 Property description (including mineral rights) and ownership

The world's largest undeveloped deposit of manganese, nickel and cobalt and significant copper resource is hosted by polymetallic nodules (nodules) located on the seafloor in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone (CCZ) of the north-east Pacific Ocean. TMC the metals company Inc. (TMC) has identified the potential to recover metals from polymetallic nodules to support increasing demand from electrification, electric vehicle battery and stainless-steel demand. TMC, working with offshore partner Allseas SA (Allseas) and onshore partner Pacific Metals Co Ltd (PAMCO), has developed and demonstrated nodule collection and processing systems that can generate nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese products with little to no solid waste.

Four consortia of offshore development companies demonstrated the technical feasibility of collecting, lifting, and converting nodules into metals in the 1970s, but development of the industry was frustrated by the absence of regulation and a governing body. In 1994, the United Nations (UN) established the International Seabed Authority (ISA) pursuant to the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS). The ISA governs the development of seabed resources for UNCLOS member states in the territories beyond the exclusive economic zones governed by coastal states. This international territory is known as the Area.

In 2010, the ISA adopted Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules in the Area. In July 2011, the ISA granted TMC subsidiary, Nauru Ocean Resources Inc (NORI) an exploration contract covering four areas in the CCZ (NORI Area A, B, C, and D (the Property)). The NORI Exploration Contract was granted by the ISA for a period of 15 years which may be extended for periods of five years at a time, provided NORI has made efforts in good faith to comply with the requirements of the plan of work. The Exploration Contract does not confer any commercial production rights. A separate Plan of Work for exploitation must be submitted and approved by the ISA Council in accordance with the Mining Code before any commercial recovery may occur.

NORI is sponsored, under the ISA, to carry out its mineral exploration activities in the Property by the Republic of Nauru, pursuant to a certificate of sponsorship signed by the Government of Nauru on 11 April 2011.

The ISA is in the process of negotiating the exploitation regulations for development of seabed resources from the CCZ and other resources in the Area. At the time of this report, the ISA is yet to finalize the Mining Code, including Regulations on the Exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area as required under UNCLOS.

In 1980, the United States (U.S.) enacted the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act ((DSHMRA) 30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.) authorizing the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to issue licenses for exploration and permits for commercial recovery from the deep seabed. These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure that U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite the United States not being a party to the UNCLOS or the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary The Metals Company USA LLC (TMC USA) applied for exploration licences and commercial recovery permits over the NORI D area under DSHMRA. The relevant applications are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ.
- Commercial Recovery Permit for USA-A which covers 25,160 km^2 in the CCZ (NORI Area D).
- USA-A includes the existing ISA approved exploration Area identified as NORI Area D.

These applications are still under review and commencement of Commercial Recovery by TMC USA is subject to approval of the license and permit under DSHMRA.

At the time of writing this report, TMC USA does not hold any exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits under the DSHMRA framework. However as stated above, TMC USA has submitted applications for such rights, and subject to regulatory review and approval, anticipates that any future commercial recovery activities would be conducted pursuant to a permit issued by NOAA under the U.S. legal regime. Any reference in this Technical Report Summary to activities proposed to be conducted by TMC USA is inherently uncertain and should be considered forward-looking in nature. No assurance can be given that any permit under DSHMRA will be issued, or that if issued, such permit will contain terms and conditions commercially or operationally viable for the Project.

TMC, in conjunction with Allseas, PAMCO, and specialist service providers, has now completed a pre-feasibility study (PFS) to evaluate collection and processing systems and the technical and economic viability of collecting, transporting and processing nodules from NORI Area D and marketing the products. As part of that PFS, TMC commissioned AMC Consultants Pty Ltd (AMC) to provide specialist independent advice throughout the PFS, develop an updated estimate of Mineral Resources contained in NORI Area D, undertake evaluation of relevant modifying factors required to convert Mineral Resources to Mineral Reserves at a minimum of a PFS level of assessment, and compile a Technical Report Summary, compliant with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300), to report the updated Mineral Resource and the initial Mineral Reserve.

A phased development is outlined for NORI Area D. Each offshore collection system comprises collectors on the seafloor, a vertical transport system, and production vessel that will collect polymetallic nodules. The nodules will be transferred from the production vessel to a transfer vessel. The transfer vessel will load bulk carriers, and thepolymetallic nodules will be shipped to on-shore processing facilities, where established processing technology will be used to produce manganese silicate, a feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production used in steel making, and nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and nickel-cobalt-copper matte, which is used in energy, defense, manufacturing, and infrastructure.

TMC, Allseas, and AMC have developed a mine plan for NORI Area D including an Initial Mining Area. The Initial Mining Area was selected based on similarity to the Test Mining Area and includes planned initial runs 19 and 20.

A converted drillship, the Hidden Gem, reclassed as the world's first deepwater mining ship, was used by NORI to support successful test mining in 2022 (Test Mining), where 3,000 wet metric tonnes (wmt) of nodules were lifted to the surface. Learnings from the Test Mining and further testing and modelling completed by Allseas has informed development of the commercial-scale system, which will initially involve further modification of the *Hidden Gem* to incorporate two 15 m collectors (one operating on the seabed and one on deck being maintained) to commence production with an annual production rate of 1.5 million wet metric tonnes per annum (Mwmtpa). Production will be upgraded to two collectors operating in parallel on the seabed once operating procedures are refined (3.0 Mwmtpa per production vessel). This PFS envisages that subsequently, three further production vessels will be progressively deployed to achieve a nominal production rate of 12 Mwmtpa and average annual production of 10.5 Mwmtpa nodules (allowing for 5 yearly vessel dry dock inspections). This phased approach to development allows TMC USA to manage risk by progressively developing engineering and operating systems and adopting an adaptive management approach to environmental management. This development plan is preliminary in nature and subject to significant regulatory, technical, and financing contingencies.

In November 2023, TMC signed a binding memorandum of understanding (MOU) with PAMCO to complete a feasibility study (PAMCO FS) to process nodules through their Hachinohe facility to produce nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and nickel-cobalt-copper matte, and manganese silicate product. This followed flowsheet definition and piloting at 70 mt scale by TMC, in association with Hatch Pty Ltd (Hatch), FLSmidth Inc. (FLS) and XPS Expert Process Solutions (XPS, is a subsidiary of Glencore) and completion of a PFS by PAMCO, during which a 22 mt nodule sample was tested.

TMC and PAMCO together conducted the first commercial scale calcining operations on nodules. NORI supplied 2,000 wmt of nodules from their Test Mining, with roughly 500 wmt of calcined material generated. A subsequent commercial scale smelting test using PAMCO's 4,000 kVA furnace, previously used for fly ash processing, was completed in Q1 2025.

As of the effective date of this Report, no binding commercial agreement has been entered into for the processing of NORI nodules by PAMCO, and all references to tolling or processing in Japan are forward-looking and contingent on further negotiation, permitting, and technical validation.

Existing capacity to process and refine nodules does not currently exist in the United States, and this has informed TMC's strategy to use PAMCO and Indonesia to generate matte. In early years of operation, the matte will be sold to customers who will then process in their existing refineries. Beginning in Year 6 of operations, TMC USA intends to begin processing matte at a newly built US-based refinery. The refining facility will produce nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate, copper cathode, and ammonium sulfate.

TMC recently completed a study evaluating possible refinery site locations in the U.S. The study also included a preliminary refinery design, plant layout, permitting and construction execution schedule schedules and 2025 basis capital and operating costs.

For the PFS, TMC has adopted an execution strategy in the economic analysis based on capital-light strategic partnerships. The PFS indicates that development of the NORI Area D Property is technically and economically viable.

1.2 Location

The CCZ is located in international waters between Hawaii and Mexico. The western end of the CCZ is approximately 1,000 km south of the Hawaiian island group. From here, the CCZ extends over 4,500 km east-northeast, in an approximately 750 km wide trend, with the eastern limits approximately 2,000 km west of southern Mexico. The region is well-located to ship nodules to the American continent or across the Pacific to Japan and Indonesia.NORI Area D, for which the Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve were estimated, covers 25,160 km^2 and is the easternmost of the four NORI exploration areas. Its center point is at latitude 10° 29' N and longitude 116° 57' W, approximately 850 km due west of the nearest land—the uninhabited Clipperton Island.

1.3 Regulatory environment and the NORI tenement

The principal regulatory environments governing the international seabed area include:

- The UN Convention on the Law of the Sea, of 10 December 1982 (The Convention).
- The 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (the 1994 implementation Agreement).
- The Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA) (30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.)

Part XI of the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement deals with mineral exploration and exploitation in the Area, providing a framework for entities to obtain legal title to areas of the seafloor from the ISA for the purpose of exploration and eventually exploitation of resources.

The Convention entered into force on 16 November 1994. As of October 2024, the Convention had been signed by 169 States Parties[1] and the European Union. The United States of America is currently not a party to the Convention.

The Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act, enacted in 1980 by the U.S., authorizes the issuance of Exploration Licenses and Commercial Recovery Permits over the deep seabed. These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite not being party to UNCLOS.

To date, the ISA has issued regulations on prospecting and exploration for polymetallic nodules in the Area.

At the time of this report, the ISA is yet to finalize the Mining Code, including Regulations on the Exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area as required under UNCLOS.

Consequently, TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary TMC USA on 28 April 2025 submitted applications for two exploration licenses and a commercial recovery permit under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA.

These applications are still under review and TMC's claim to these areas under DSHMRA are subject to approval of these licenses and permits by NOAA. NOAA has advised TMC USA that the exploration license applications are substantially complete, which provides TMC USA with the priority right to areas subject to application, which includes NORI Area D, for the duration of the application process. TMC hold minerals rights to the NORI Area D through their subsidiary NORI under an Exploration Contract with the ISA.

1.4 Geology and Mineral Resources

Seafloor polymetallic nodules occur in all oceans, but the CCZ hosts a relatively high abundance of particularly nickel and copper-rich nodules. The CCZ seafloor forms part of the Abyssal Plains, which are the largest physiographic province on Earth.

The average depth of the seafloor in the Project Area is 3,800 to 4,200 m. The Abyssal Plains are traversed by ridges, with amplitude of 50 to 300 m (maximum 1,000 m) to the west and wavelength of 1 to 10 km. The Abyssal Plains are punctuated by inactive volcanoes rising 500 to 2,000 m above the seafloor.

Seafloor polymetallic nodules rest on the seafloor at the seawater - sediment interface. They are composed of nuclei and concentric layers of manganese and iron hydroxides and are formed by precipitation of metals from surrounding seawater and sediment pore waters. Nickel, cobalt and copper are also precipitated and occur within the structure of the manganese and iron minerals.

Nodules are abundant in abyssal areas with oxygenated bottom waters and low sedimentation rates (less than 10 cm per thousand years). Nodules generally range from about 1 to 12 cm in their longest dimension. Nodules of 1 to 5 cm are typically the most common in NORI Area D, where they have been classified as Type 1 nodules.

The specific conditions of the CCZ (water depth, latitude, and seafloor sediment type) are considered to be the key controls for the formation of polymetallic nodules.

Information on the mineralization within NORI Area D comprises a combination of sampling undertaken by NORI as well as free-fall grab sampler (FFG) and box core sampler (BC) data supplied by the ISA at the time of the NORI Area D exploration application. Additional regional data, assembled by the ISA as part of its Geological Model Project during 2008 to 2010 (ISA 2010), are available. The data provides significant coverage over NORI Area D and indicates a high abundance of nodules in this region, as has been confirmed by NORI's exploration.

1 https://itlos.org/en/main/the-tribunal/states-parties/

NORI completed offshore exploration campaigns in 2012, 2013, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, and 2023 / 2024. During these campaigns, a variety of resource evaluation data was collected including:

- Bathymetric mapping of the whole of NORI Area D using a hull-mounted Kongsberg Simrad EM120 12 kHz, full-ocean depth multibeam echo-sounding system (MBES). This system also provided backscatter data from which seafloor characteristics could be interpreted.
- Detailed seafloor survey work with an autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV), utilizing an MBES, Side Scan Sonar (SSS), Sub-Bottom Profiler (SBP), and camera payload.
- A total of 252 box core samples collected using a 0.75 m^2 box corer, mainly on a 10 km by 10 km square grid.
- Additional 36 box core samples were collected to better define resources ahead of the 2022 Test Mining and to evaluate mining nodule recovery.
- 57 in-situ cone penetrometer tests were completed ahead of and following the 2022 Test Mining.

The nodules in the box cores were collected and their characteristics measured and recorded in detail. Samples of nodules were collected in duplicate and for initial campaigns assayed at two reputable, well-qualified laboratories: ALS Limited (ALS) and Bureau Veritas SA (Bureau Veritas). Subsequently, samples were assayed at ALS, with every tenth samples checked by Bureau Veritas. Certified reference material, and blank samples were inserted to provide additional levels of quality control. No significant issues were identified with the assay results.

The backscatter data and the sidescan sonar and seafloor photography indicate strong continuity of nodule abundance across NORI Area D. There is a clear relationship between nodule long axis length and nodule weight and, therefore, it is possible to estimate nodule abundance from photographs. Several estimation techniques were tested, and methodologies were developed that are suitable for closely packed (Type 1) and less closely packed (Type 2 and 3) nodules.

Interpretation of detailed AUV derived bathymetric data identified geo-obstacles that have the potential to impact nodule collection efficiency. A computer model was developed to predict where these features are likely to occur. The model used data about slopes, ruggedness, and other landscape details and identified patterns linked to geological structures like ridges and volcanic seamounts. The model, correlating well with observed data, highlights geological trends influencing obstacle distribution and informs mine-planning by predicting regions likely to impact collector performance.

Mineral Resources were estimated using a two-dimensional block model. Estimates of nodule abundance and nickel, manganese, cobalt, and copper grades were performed using kriging. A variety of methods was used to validate the estimates, including conditional simulation. The estimates of nodule abundance were used to calculate the tonnage of the Mineral Resources.

Bathymetric mapping enabled the interpretation of parts of seafloor that are possibly too steep for recovery of nodules using the systems considered in this Technical Report summary. Seafloor areas with slopes steeper than 6° were excised from the 2024 Mineral Resource estimate.

The Mineral Resource at 30 June 2025, at an abundance cut-off of 4 wet kg/m^2, and in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300) (S-K 1300) is stated inclusive of those Mineral Resources converted to Mineral Reserves in Table 1.1. Estimates are reported on a wet nodule abundance basis, assuming 28% moisture content (mass of water)/(mass of solids + water).

Table 1.1 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m^2 abundance cut-off inclusive of Mineral Reserve

Category	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)	MnO: SiO_2
Inferred	11	15.4	1.38	1.14	0.12	30.96	5.46	6.92	0.16	3.42
Indicated	347	17.4	1.40	1.14	0.14	31.15	5.45	6.84	0.16	3.46
Measured	5	20.6	1.41	1.15	0.13	31.91	5.16	6.59	0.15	3.73
All	**363**	**17.4**	**1.40**	**1.14**	**0.14**	**31.15**	**5.44**	**6.83**	**0.16**	**3.46**

Notes:

1. Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 30 June 2025.
2. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
3. The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.
4. Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
5. Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
6. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Mineral Resource at 30 June 2025, at an abundance cut-off of 4 wet kg/m^2, and in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300) (S-K 1300) exclusive of those Mineral Resources converted to Mineral Reserves is stated in Table 1.1. Estimates are reported on a wet nodule abundance basis, assuming 28% moisture content (mass of water)/(mass of solids + water).

Table 1.2 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m^2 abundance cut-off exclusive of Mineral Reserve

Category	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)	MnO: SiO_2
Inferred	10	15.4	1.4	1.1	0.12	31	5.46	6.92	0.16	3.42
Indicated	261	17.4	1.4	1.1	0.14	31	5.45	6.84	0.16	3.46
Measured	4	20.6	1.4	1.2	0.13	32	5.16	6.59	0.15	3.73
All	**274**	**17.4**	**1.4**	**1.1**	**0.14**	**31**	**5.44**	**6.83**	**0.16**	**3.46**

Notes:

1. Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 30 June 2025.
2. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
3. The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.
4. Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
5. Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
6. Si, Fe, P, MnO:SiO_2 are not tracked in Mineral Reserve estimation and Mineral Resource averages are used.
7. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Mineral Resource was classified on the basis of the quality and uncertainty of the sample data and sample spacing, in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300).

The Inferred Mineral Resource was assigned to the areas of abyssal plain in the southeast corner of NORI Area D that are largely unsampled. The volcanic high in the southeast corner was excluded from the Mineral Resource estimate due to the high level of uncertainty about nodule abundance and grades in this domain.

The Indicated Mineral Resource was assigned to the area within NORI Area D where box-core sampling was conducted on a nominal spacing of 7 km by 7 km or 10 km by 10 km but without additional photo-estimates of nodule abundance.

Measured Mineral Resource classification was assigned to the area within NORI Area D where box-core sampling was conducted on a nominal 7 km by 7 km spacing and infilled with estimates of nodule abundance from seafloor photography to a spacing of 3.5 km by 3.5 km.

1.5 Development plan

TMC proposes to implement the Project in multiple phases that will allow the seafloor mining systems to be commissioned and then nodule production to be ramped up. The phased approach will facilitate de-risking of the project for relatively low initial capital investment. Additionally, this phased development will allow for an adaptive approach to environmental management providing learning at small-scale which will be applied as the development increases in scale.

The mine plan proposed for seafloor production development phases is as follows:

- Commencement of production with a single collector deployed from the Hidden Gem with a nominal production rate of 1.5 Mwmtpa of nodules.
- Deployment of a second collector from the Hidden Gem, operating in tandem on the seafloor, with a nominal system production rate of 3.0 Mwmtpa of nodules.

Once operating procedures have been refined and operating and environmental monitoring systems have demonstrated that collection of nodules can be undertaken satisfactorily, TMC expects further phased development as follows:

- Development and deployment of a second vessel, essentially similar to the *Hidden Gem*, providing additional production of 3.0 Mwmtpa of nodules for a combined nominal production rate of 6.0 Mwmtpa.
- Development and deployment of a third and fourth production vessel, each adding nominal production of 3.0 Mtpa of nodules, for an average full system production rate of 10.5 Mwmtpa of nodules, once the required 5-year dry dock inspections are taken into account.

Processing of polymetallic nodules will also be ramped up in a similar phased approach:

- TMC proposes to toll treat polymetallic nodules at existing rotary kiln electric furnace (RKEF) smelters, utilizing excess industry capacity.
- Production is planned to commence at PAMCO at a rate of 1.3 Mwmtpa of nodules initially, producing nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and subsequently nickel-cobalt-copper matte, once alloy to matte conversion facilities have been installed.
- Tolling will then be scaled up to meet the 3 Mwmtpa of the Hidden Gem by utilizing excess RKEF processing capacity that has been developed in Indonesia in the last 5 years.
- Additional production up to the 12 Mwmtpa mine plan rate will utilize existing RKEF processing plants, most likely in Indonesia, and refining capacity at a greenfield hydrometallurgical plant in the United States.
- From year 6 matte product from 6 Mwmtpa of nodules will be shipped to the United States, most likely Texas, with all matte products expected to be shipped to the US from year 10.
- Refining in the U.S. will produce nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate and copper cathode.

1.6 Mining concept

In 2022, NORI completed Test Mining, where 4,500 wmt of nodules were collected and approximately 3,000 wmt of nodules were lifted to surface. The Test Mining demonstrated the mining concept and provided information for detailed design of the commercial-scale system. The Test Mining was monitored from both the *Hidden Gem* and a second vessel, the *Island Pride*, where AUVs, remotely operated vehicles (ROV), and bottom mounted sensors and samplers collected environmental data to understand the system's environmental impacts to inform completion of the NORI Area D Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Monitoring and Management Plans.

The main items of offshore infrastructure proposed are the nodule collectors, the vertical transport system (VTS), production vessels (PV) and transfer vessel (TV) required to transfer nodules from the PV to bulk carrier vessels.

The nodules will be collected from the seafloor by self-propelled, tracked, collectors. No rock cutting, digging, drill-and-blast, or other breakage will be required at the point of collection. The collectors will be remotely controlled and supplied with electric power via umbilical cables from the PV. The collectors will traverse the seabed at a speed of approximately 0.4 m/s. Coandă nozzles on each collector will entrain nodules, sediment, and water from the seafloor. A hopper on each vehicle will separate sediment and excess water from the nodules, which will pass out of the hopper overflow and diffusers and be emitted behind the collector. The hopper underflow, comprising higher concentration nodule slurry, will be pumped via a flexible hose (jumper) to the VTS.

The VTS consists of a riser, which is a steel pipe through which nodules will be transferred to the surface by means of an airlift. The riser system consists of three main sections, each designed to meet specific flow dynamics and operational requirements. Above the air injection point, the upper section conveys a three-phase mixture of nodules, sediment, water, and air. This section also includes an auxiliary line for the supply of compressed air. To accommodate the expansion of air during the lift process, the riser diameter gradually increases from the air injection point upward. The airlift works by lowering the average density of the slurry inside the riser to less than the surrounding seawater. The difference between the hydrostatic pressure of the seawater at depth and the pressure inside the riser forces the slurry column to rise. The energy to achieve the lift will be supplied by air compressors housed on the PV, which will be capable of generating high air pressures.

The PVs will support the collector and riser system and its handling equipment, house the airlift compressors, collector control stations, and material handling equipment. All power for offshore equipment, including the nodule collecting vehicles, will be generated on the PVs. The PVs will be equipped with controllable thrusters and will be capable of dynamic positioning (DP), which will allow the vessels to track the collectors on the seafloor. Nodules will be pumped by the VTS to the PV, where air is released to atmosphere and the nodules will be dewatered using screens and cyclones and temporarily stored in the hold of the PV No processing involving the use of chemicals or the generation of tailings will be undertaken on the PV.

Nodules will be recovered from the hold of the PV using axial conveyors located beneath the storage holds. They will then be lifted to deck level via sandwich conveyors and offloaded through a boom conveyor system capable of both luffing and slewing. Offloading will occur at a rate of 2,500 wmt per hour to a dynamically positioned transfer vessel with 50,000 mt storage capacity. The transfer vessel will in subsequently load Capesize bulk carriers, each with a storage capacity of approximately 200,000 mt, using a similar recovery and offloading system.

1.7 Mineral Processing and metallurgical testing

TMC initially developed a combined pyrometallurgical and hydrometallurgical flowsheet to produce nickel and cobalt sulfate Li-ion battery cathode feedstocks, copper cathode, and manganese silicate. TMC completed bench-scale test-work and pilot-scale testing demonstrating the feasibility of this proposed flowsheet. As work progressed, TMC identified the opportunity to pursue a lower capital cost development by utilizing existing RKEF processing plants that were underutilized as a result of the decision by the Government of Indonesia to ban the export of unprocessed (nickel laterite) ores, resulting in facilities outside of Indonesia being underutilised as they cannot source feedstock laterite ore. Additionally, an overbuild of RKEF processing capacity in Indonesia has resulted in significant available processing capacity. It was decided to focus initially on production of intermediate products – nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and nickel-cobalt-copper matte to further reduce capital costs. In early years of operation, the matte will be sold to customers who will then process in their existing refineries.

In November 2023, TMC signed a binding MOU with PAMCO to complete a feasibility study to process nodules through their Hachinohe facility in Japan to produce nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and nickel-cobalt-copper matte and manganese silicate product. This followed flowsheet definition and piloting at 70 mt scale, by TMC in association with Hatch, FLS and XPS and completion of a PFS by PAMCO where they tested a 22 mt nodule sample. The PAMCO commercial scale testing of a 2,000 mt nodule sample has been successfully completed.

The plant will use RKEF lines that calcine and smelt the nodules to form an alloy. The alloy will then be sulfidized to form a matte and converted in a Peirce-Smith converter operation.

The pyrometallurgical process generates a manganese silicate stream that can be sold to the manganese industry and a small converter slag stream that can be used for industrial applications. No value has been ascribed to converter slag. The flowsheet has neither tailings ponds nor permanent slag repositories and does not generate substantial waste streams.

The development plan envisages construction and operation of hydrometallurgical refining facilities in Texas commencing in the sixth year of operations. The refinery will process matte to produce nickel and cobalt sulfate crystal, copper cathode and ammonium sulfate fertilizer.

The initial mine plan in this Technical Report targets 3 Mwmtpa of nodules from the first vessel, the*Hidden Gem*. However, as discussed above, the average targeted processing rate at full capacity is proposed to be 10.5 Mwmtpa of nodules.

Expected metallurgical recoveries used in the mine plan and economic evaluation are summarized in Table 1.3.

Table 1.3 Metallurgical recoveries

Process Step		Nickel Recovery (%)	Cobalt Recovery (%)	Copper Recovery (%)
Nodule to alloy	96.9%	93.1%	93.6%	
Nodule to matte	94.8%	77.5%	86.4%	
Nodule to sulfate	94.6%	77.2%	86.2%	

In addition to the above base metals, 98.9% of the manganese contained in the feed will be recovered to the manganese silicate product, containing 52.6% MnO.

1.8 Market studies

Benchmark Mineral Intelligence (BMI) was contracted by TMC to provide market overviews for three commodities from NORI and TOML areas: nickel, cobalt, and copper and to provide forecasts for the premia/discounts that nickel and cobalt sulfate over nickel metal price forecasts.

CRU International Limited (CRU) was requested by NORI to examine the marketability and pricing for the three intermediate products that will be produced by TMC USA for the NORI and TOML areas (CRU report dated 24 September 2024):

- Nickel-cobalt-copper alloy.
- Nickel-cobalt-copper matte.
- Manganese silicate.

Additionally, CRU was retained to provide manganese ore market forecasts.

The global market for critical metals like nickel, cobalt, and copper is forecast to grow significantly, driven by demand from sectors such as the transportation, electrical infrastructure and consumer goods sectors. BMI and CRU forecast the following metal supply, demand and price scenarios:

- Nickel production, led by Indonesia, is expected to rise from 3.6 Mt in 2025 to 4.9 Mt by 2035, fuelled by about equally its demand in stainless steel and EV batteries.
- Cobalt demand expected to grow at a 5.8% compound annual growth rate through 2030, dominated by battery production, with supply heavily reliant on the Democratic Republic of Congo and China. But as mines begin to run through reserves and the visibility for new assets into the 2030s is limited, BMI expectation for mine supply is a slight decline into the 2030s.
- Manganese remains essential for steelmaking, although projected demand is forecast to remain flat. However, this is expected to be tempered by rapid demand growth in battery-grade products.

- Copper, critical for green energy infrastructure, faces an 8 Mt shortfall by 2035, despite production increases in Africa.
- Prices for these metals are forecast to rise steadily due to tightening supply-demand dynamics.

TMC manganese silicate and TMC matte are expected by CRU to gain market traction given their inherent high quality. CRU expects market acceptance for TMC products will be as follows:

- TMC manganese silicate offers advantages as feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production and battery applications, with demand projected to grow alongside manganese markets.
- TMC matte, used in refining processes, requires stable partnerships with key facilities to maximize its value amid a buyer-dominated market.
- Limited immediate demand for TMC alloy, can be mitigated through strategic blending, partnerships, to enhance market acceptance and value over time for the nickel-cobalt-copper alloy product.

1.9 Environmental studies, permitting, community, or social impact

Historically, a significant amount of technical work has been undertaken within the CCZ by the ISA and a significant body of information has been acquired during the past 50 years on the likely environmental impacts of collecting nodules from the sea floor.

NORI has completed the most extensive environmental baseline for the deep ocean extending from below the seabed, the seabed, the water column and above the sea surface. In total, more than 100 separate studies have been undertaken by world leading scientific and commercial organizations. This involved a comprehensive program of physical and chemical oceanographic studies, full characterization of biota from micro to mega and detailed seafloor studies at the Test Mining site and control sites in NORI Area D. Studies have been designed to define temporal and spatial variation with at least three years of baseline data and sufficient sampling to define spatial variation.

In 2022, NORI undertook Test Mining, which was subject to thorough environmental monitoring, particularly for critical impacts during testing: Benthic sediment plume, mid water discharge plume and sound impacts. Baseline studies were completed ahead of Test Mining, repeated immediately on completion, and then again 12 months later to differentiate the impacts from the Test Mining from natural temporal and spatial variation. This data is now being compiled with impact assessment methodologies, including expert workshops to inform the NORI Area D EIA and NORI Area D Project Environmental Impact Study.

TMC intends to manage the Project under the governance of an Environmental Management System (EMS), which is to be developed in accordance with the international EMS standard, ISO 14001:2004. The EMS will provide the overall framework for the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan (EMMP) that will be required.

The EMMP will specify the objectives and purpose of all monitoring requirements, the components to be monitored, frequency of monitoring, methods of monitoring, analysis required in each monitoring component, monitoring data management and reporting. The plan will involve an ecosystem approach incorporating an adaptive management system.

The CCZ is uninhabited by people, and there are no landowners associated with the NORI Area D project. No significant commercial fishing is carried out in the area. The Project will provide financial benefits and training to Nauru, and a source of supply of minerals critical to industrial development.

The planned metallurgical process will not generate significant volumes of solid waste products such as tailings and residues, indicating that with careful management the environmental impacts of the onshore processing operation could be very low. Other emissions will be within best practice benchmarks and compliance regulations.

1.10 Mining and Mineral Reserve estimates

The NORI Area D Mineral Reserve is defined in the selected Initial Mining Area, which has similar geo-habitat as that encountered in the Test Mining. Unmined buffers of 1,000 m were left around the lease boundary and environmentally sensitive zones. The underlying Mine Plan was developed in conjunction with an experienced marine contractor, Allseas, and TMC to reflect the characteristics of the proposed nodule collection system.

The NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025, under the guidelines of Regulation S-K subpart 1300, is stated in Table 1.4.

Table 1.4 NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025

Classification	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Co (%)	Cu (%)	Mn (%)	Ni (%)
Proven	-	-	-	-	-
Probable	51	0.13	1.1	31	1.4
Total	**51**	**0.13**	**1.1**	**31**	**1.4**

Notes:

1. Mineral Reserve estimated in Initial Mining Area only with 1,000 m buffers for the lease and seamounts.
2. Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources are converted to probable Mineral Reserves.
3. Grades are quoted on a dry basis.
4. Zero abundance cut-off used, with nodules <4 kg/m^2 used to define the Mineral Resource included as dilution to generate viable mining blocks.
5. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
6. Metal prices US$20,295/t Ni, US$21,633/t Ni sulfate, US$11,440/t Cu, US$56,117/t Co, US$55,198/t Co sulfate, US$5.45/dmtu Mn in manganese-silicate.
7. Nodule recovery by the Collector is estimated as 77% for Type 1 and 62% for Type 2 and 3 nodules.
8. Metallurgical recovery to sulfate is estimated as 94.6% Ni, 77.2% Co and 86.2% Cu, and to matte is 94.8% Ni, 77.5% Co, 86.4% Cu and for 98.9% for Mn.
9. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Initial Mining Area contains approximately 25% of the NORI Area D Mineral Resource and conversion of Mineral Resources in the Initial Mining Area to Mineral Reserves is approximately 57%.

The QPs responsible for the Mineral Reserve are set out in Table 2.1. The Mineral Reserves are classified by the QPs as Probable Mineral Reserve, due to:

- Lack of operating experience with the nodule collection system proposed for NORI Area D to confirm production rates, nodule recovery assumptions, field efficiencies, and operating and capital cost parameters.
- Lack of other commercial nodule operations to confirm the reasonableness of mine planning parameters, Modifying Factors and Mine Plan outcomes.
- Lack of commercial recovery permit terms and conditions issued by NOAA on how management of nodule collection operations will be regulated and with which the Mine Plan needs to comply.

Mine planning parameters were developed from results observed during the Test Mining, extensive test work and analysis undertaken by Allseas and TMC. Numerous workshops were conducted with Allseas, TMC and technical specialists to develop the nodule collection strategy on which the mine plan is based. Testwork and analysis by marine specialists engaged by TMC included seafloor geotechnical data collection and analysis, analysis of seafloor surveys, plume modelling of disturbed sediments and geological data to identify and characterise the seafloor areas suitable for nodule collection. Testwork undertaken by Allseas while developing the nodule collection system included nodule collection simulation trials, and testwork specific to identifying the design and operating parameters for each of the various components of the system, and the Test Mining, using a 40% width scale prototype collector.

The mine plan for the Initial Assessment completed by AMC in 2021 followed a strategy of using relatively equidimensional mining blocks aligned N-S, targeting the highest value blocks first. The experience gained in the Test Mining and analysis by Allseas resulted in a revision to the mining strategy to adopt long Collector runs to maximize the time collecting nodules and minimize turning times to achieve high field efficiencies. Collector paths were designed along a preferred mining direction of NNW-SSE to align with the strike of seafloor ridges.

Although the mine plan covered the whole of the NORI Area D, initial mining for the first eight years was confined to a subset of NORI Area D in the southwest of the lease, referred to as Project Zero by TMC. This area is close to the Test Mining area and so confidence in the modifying factors is sufficient to define Mineral Reserves. It was also largely devoid of steep (>4) terrain and so was considered the most suitable area for initial collection operations. The collector runs for the initial two years were generated to be as long as possible to allow for initial operations to be as simple as possible while operating procedures are refined. As a result, the initial collector runs (dubbed Runs 19-20) were forced to deviate from the preferred NNW-SSE trend to avoid seamounts and the proposed environmental impact reference zone (see section 17.4.1). Mining blocks subsequent to Runs 19-20 were generated in a more systematic fashion along the NNW-SSE direction. While this resulted in shorter mining blocks, it is expected that short term planning will be able to amalgamate adjacent mining blocks to form longer collector runs that enable production and cost targets to be maintained.

Key inputs used to estimate the Mineral Reserve are the Mineral Resource model developed by AMC, the nodule collection system specifications provided by TMC to Allseas (including production capability and ability to collect on slopes up to 4°), collector dimensions and capabilities provided by Allseas, geotechnical data reports and specific location analysis by APYS Subsea Ltd (APYS), analysis and modelling by Allseas to determine seafloor trafficability, geological analysis by Marine Geoscience Innovation (MARGIN) to determine areas where nodules could be collected (geo-obstacle probability model), and the parameters developed by AMC from the work of all of the above. Key physical parameters used by AMC to estimate the Mineral Reserve included collector recovery, geo-obstacle probability, gap left between collection paths to ensure collector efficiency, and metallurgical recoveries for each of the proposed products. An economic model of production, product prices, payabilities, revenue, and operating and capital costs developed by TMC was used to assess economic viability.

1.11 Summary capital and operating cost estimates

Capital and operating costs were prepared using the AACE (Association for the Advancement of Cost Engineering) Recommended Practice 47R-11 Class 4 estimate standards for Mining and Mineral Processing Industries. Through June 2025 Production Vessel engineering was 21.6% complete (Allseas Monthly Report), with some elements already approaching the technical maturity required for a Class 3 estimate. The project capital cost estimate to develop a phased 12 Mtwmpa nodule operation as per the mine plan is US$4,971M comprising of US$544.8M for Production Vessel #1 and associated costs (System #1) inclusive of Allseas credit[2] and is summarized in Table 1.5 and US$4,426M for two 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent refining facilities in the US, is summarized in Table 1.6.

Table 1.5 Project CAPEX system #1 summary

Description	US$ M
Production Vessel	468.4
Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carriers	89.6
Support Vessel	15.2
Processing/Refining	-
Operations Facilities initial setup	2.3
Direct Subtotal	575.5
Professional Services	59.4
Owners Cost	44.6
Indirect Subtotal	104.0
Contingency	101.4
Escalation	53.3
Allseas Credit	(289.3)
Total Project CAPEX	**544.8**

Table 1.6 Project CAPEX US refining summary

Description	US$ M
General/Infrastructure	144.8
Port Facilities	281.1
Hydrometallurgy	1027.7
Direct Subtotal	1,453.7
Indirect Costs	477.2
Contingency	282.2
Refining Facility Capital	2,213.0
Number of 6 Mwtpa refining facility	2
Total Project CAPEX	**4,426.0**

The operating cost estimate for a phased 12 Mwmtpa operation as per the mine plan is reported in 30 June 2025 US$ as total life-of-mine (LOM) and unit costs per wet metric tonne in Table 1.7.

2 Allseas is a strategic partner. Refer to 10-K disclosures on the non-binding agreement and intention of NORI and Allseas to equally finance all costs related to developing and getting the Offshore Nodule Collection System into production.

Table 1.7 NORI Area D operating cost summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Unit Cost (US$/wmt)	LOM Cost (%)
Collection Costs	12,344	75.2	30.9
Transfer & Shipping Costs	3,071	18.7	7.7
Contractor (offshore) Costs	1,855	11.3	4.6
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	3,848	23.4	9.6
Processing Cost	13,622	83.0	34.1
Refining Cost	3,254	19.8	8.1
Corporate Cost	1,985	12.1	5.0
Total OPEX	**39,978**	**243.6**	**100**

1.12 PFS economic assessment

The PFS used manganese silicate product prices forecast by CRU (CRU, 2024) and metals prices forecast by Benchmark (BMI, 2025). The averages of the forecast prices used (from 2027 onwards) are listed in Table 1.8.

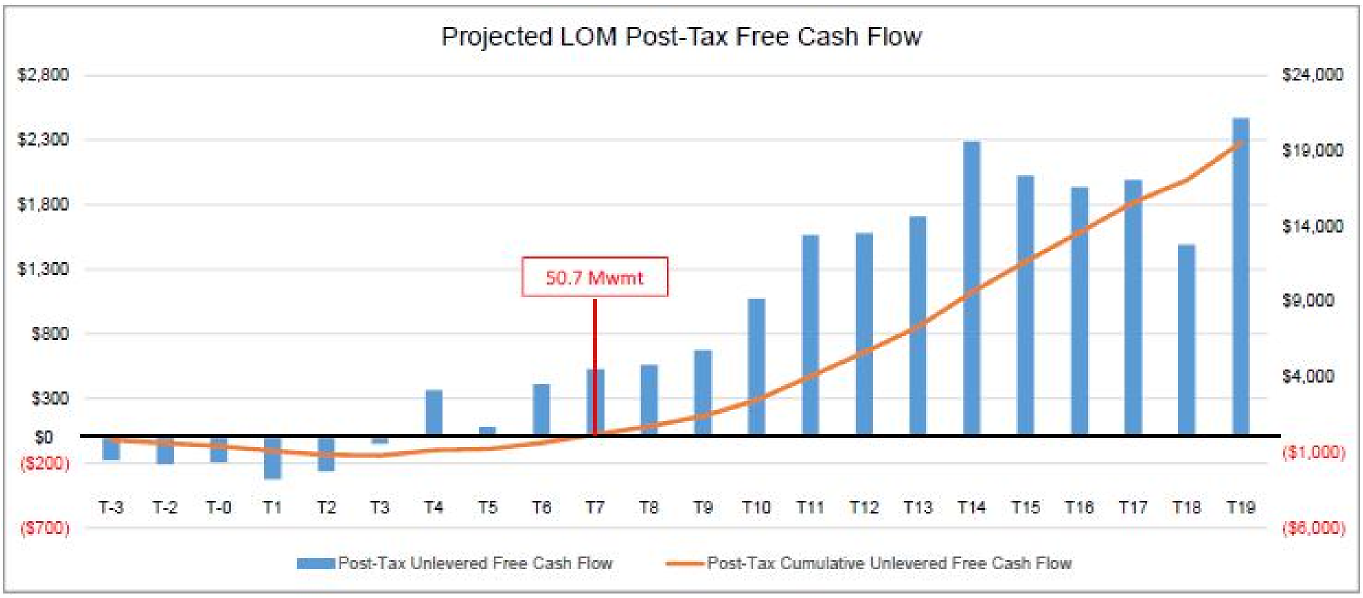
Table 1.8 Average product prices assumed in PFS

Parameter	Unit	Value
Ni metal (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	20,295
Ni contained in Ni sulfate	Avg. US$/t	21,633
Manganese	Avg. US$/t	545
Manganese	Avg. US$/dmtu	5.45
Cu Cathode (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	11,440
Co metal (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	56,117
Co contained in Co sulfate	Avg. US$/t	55,198

The PFS indicates a positive economic outcome. Undiscounted post-tax net cash flow of US$20.0 billion is expected. An internal rate of return of 26.8% has been estimated from the financial model. Discounted cash flow analysis of real cash flows, discounting at 8% per annum, indicates a post-tax project net present value (NPV) of US$5.51 billion. The forecast project post-tax unlevered cash flow (US$M) is shown in Figure 1.1.

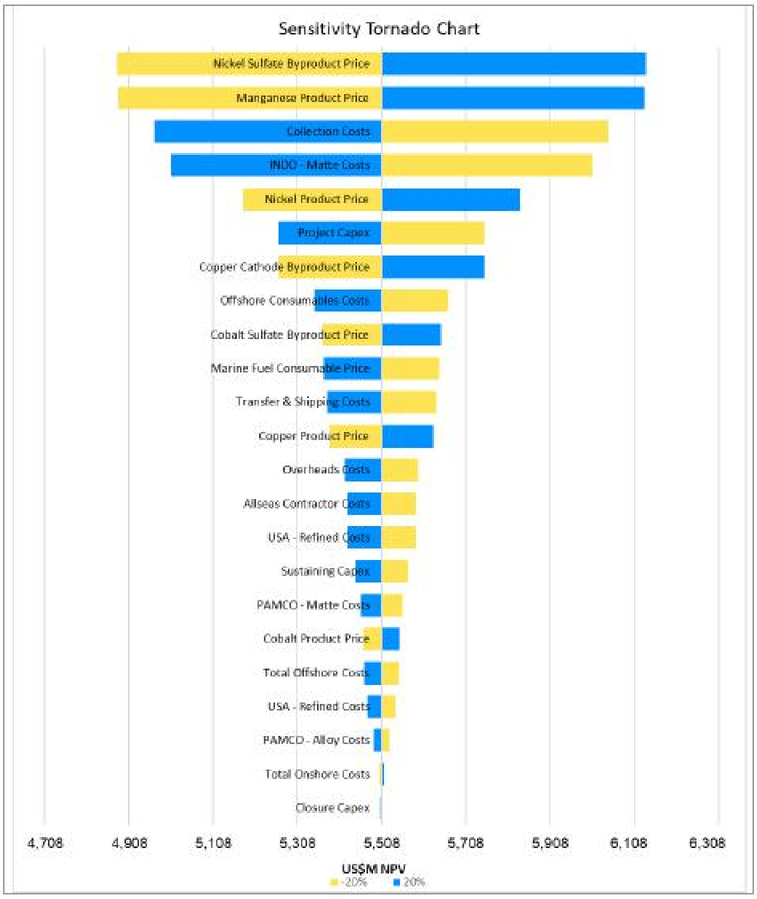
The project payback is 7 years and the Probable Mineral Reserve in the Initial Mining Area of 51 Mwmt is all mined by the end of year 7 (50.7 Mwmt) with a post-tax cumulative free cash flow of US$170.2M (year 7). The development plan then assumes that an additional 113 Mwmt of Mineral Resource (based on the same modifying factors as the Initial Mining area) will be recoverable to market outside the Initial Mining Area (NORI Area D Total = 164 Mwmt).

Figure 1.1 Forecast Project Post-Tax Cash Flow (US$M)



The sensitivity of project economics to changes in the main variables was tested by selecting high and low values that represent a likely range of potential operating conditions. The variables with the biggest negative impact on NPV are nickel sulfate and manganese prices, OPEX items, and metal prices. In general, revenue drivers have the biggest impact, followed by OPEX variables (Figure 1.2).

Figure 1.2 Tornado diagram of NPV sensitivity to variables



1.13 Qualified Person's conclusions and recommendations

The key risks to the Mineral Reserve identified by the QPs are:

- NOAA has not yet granted an exploration license and commercial recovery permit to TMC USA to extract the nodules contained within the Mineral Reserve.
- NOAA has not yet finalized the terms and conditions of the commercial recovery permit, and the mine plan may need to be revised to comply with provisions.
- Lack of other commercial operations against which comparison and validation of production rates, OPEX, and CAPEX could be made.
- The price forecasts for the proposed products.
- Nodule recovery, which is a function of collector recovery, geo-obstacle loss, gap between collector runs, and seafloor slope domains.
- Impact of sedimentation and seafloor currents.
- The design of the nodule collection system has not yet been finalized, nor has the system been constructed to demonstrate that scale up from the 40% scale prototype used in the Test Mining can be successful.

To account for these risks, the Mineral Reserve has been classified as Probable.

The QPs consider that sufficient testwork and analysis on being able to collect the nodules within NORI Area D has been undertaken to achieve a PFS level of assessment on the modifying factors used to convert the Mineral Resource to Mineral Reserve. Specifically, the QPs have estimated the tonnage and grade of the Probable Mineral Reserve, that in the opinion of the QPs, can be the basis of an economically viable project. Modifying factors were evaluated and applied in the areas of mining, processing, metallurgy, infrastructure, economic evaluation, marketing, legal, and environmental compliance.

2 Introduction

2.1 Registrant, terms of reference and purpose of report

The registrant is TMC the metals company Inc. (TMC). TMC commissioned AMC Consultants Pty Ltd (AMC) to compile a Technical Report Summary (Technical Report) for the recovery of polymetallic nodules (nodules) located on the seafloor of NORI Area D in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone (CCZ) of the north-east Pacific Ocean.

The Technical Report presents an update to the Mineral Resource estimates and the first estimate of Mineral Reserves for NORI Area D under Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the US Securities and Exchange Commission (S-K 1300).

2.2 Sources of information

The primary source of information used for the Technical Report is the NORI Area D pre-feasibility study (PFS) report (Nauru Ocean Resources Inc (NORI), 2025)

(TMC 2024) and supporting documentation undertaken by TMC, working with offshore partner Allseas SA (Allseas) and onshore partner Pacific Metals Co Ltd (PAMCO) and several specialist service providers. Key documents used in the preparation of this Technical Report are listed in Section 24 References.

2.3 Qualified Persons and personal inspections

This Technical Report is authored by several experts or “qualified persons” (QPs), as defined in S-K 1300. Not all of the QPs have visited the site, as the nodules, which are the subject of the Technical Report, are located in the north-east Pacific Ocean and lie at a depth of approximately 4,500 m below sea level. As permitted by Item 1302(b)(2)(iii), personal inspection has been substituted with inspection of sample material and survey data collected using remotely operated vehicles, which the QPs consider reasonable given the depth and location of the deposit. Nodules are only accessible to autonomous or remotely operated specialist underwater vehicles. Those QPs that have visited the site, have done so in the process of collecting and analyzing specialist aspects of seafloor samples from surface vessels.

The Sections that each QP was responsible for are summarized in Table 2.1 and Table 2.2, noting whether the QP has visited the site.

Table 2.1 List of Qualified Persons responsible for each Section

Qualified Person	**Responsible for the following report Sections:**
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd	Sections, 1.4, 1.10, 1.13, 2, 4, 5, 7.3.6, 7.4, 7.5.1 – 7.5.3, 7.5.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8.2, 7.10 - 7.12, 8.2 – 8.3, 9, 11, 12.1,12.2.5,12.2.6, 12.2.8, 12.2.10, 12.3 – 12.5, 12.7, 20, 22.2, 22.4, 22.5, 24, and 25.
MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation	Sections 6, 7.1, 7.2.1 – 7.2.7, 7.2.9, 7.2.10, 7.3.1 – 7.3.3, 7.3.5, 7.8.1, 7.9, 7.13, 8.1, and 12.2.4.
APYS Subsea Ltd	Sections 7.2.8, 7.3.4, 7.5.4, 7.14, and 12.2.2.
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd	Sections 1.7, 10, 12.2.11, 14, 15, and 22.7.
Lanasera Pty Ltd	Sections 1.12, 12.6, 19 and 22.12
TMC the metals company Inc.	Sections 1.1 - 1.3, 1.5, 1.6, 1.8, 1.9, 1.11, 3, 7.1, 12.2.1, 12.2.3, 12.2.7, 12.2.9, 12.2.12-12.2.14, 13, 16 - 18, 21, 22.1, 22.3, 22.6, 22.8 - 22.11, and 23.

Table 2.2 TMC Qualified Persons responsible for each section

Qualified Person	**Responsible for the following report sections:**
Anthony O’Sullivan, Chief Development Officer Anthony is a mining executive with over 30 years of experience in mineral exploration and project development. As Chief Development Officer at TMC, he oversees technical and strategic development of deep-sea polymetallic nodule projects. He has over 20 years’ experience in subsea resource development with 10 of these years’ experience in polymetallic nodule development involving, exploration, development of environmental impact statements and permitting, project development, offshore equipment design, onshore processing and product marketing. He has held senior roles at Nautilus Minerals and BHP Billiton, and is a co-inventor on multiple subsea mining patents. He is a current fellow of the AusIMM.	Sections 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.5, 1.8, 3, 12.2.12-12.2.14, 16, 21, 22.1, 22.3, 22.8, 22.9, 22.12, and 23.
Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer Rutger is an offshore engineer and project leader with a track record of delivering pioneering technologies in deep-sea mining and heavy-lift engineering. He led the technical development of *Pioneering Spirit*, the world’s largest offshore construction vessel, and oversaw the successful design, build, and testing of Allseas’ integrated nodule collection system aboard *Hidden Gem*. Under his direction, Allseas executed the first integrated nodule collection trials in the Pacific Ocean since the 1970s. At TMC, he now leads the development and commercial scaling of the polymetallic nodule collection system. He is a current member of AusIMM.	Sections 1.6, 12.2.3, 12.2.7, 12.2.9, 13, and 22.6..
Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Program Director Michael is an environmental scientist with extensive experience in marine biology, mining, environmental impact assessments, and regulatory compliance. At TMC, he leads the Environmental Program for the project, overseeing baseline studies, monitoring, and stakeholder engagement. He has contributed to the development of novel adaptive management systems and environmental monitoring protocols tailored to deep-sea mining. Michael is certified as an Environmental Practitioner and Impact Assessment Specialist by the Environmental Institute of Australia and New Zealand (EIANZ) and has participated in the planning and offshore execution of multiple research campaigns to the NORI Area D site.	Sections 1.9, 12.2.1, 17, and 22.10.

Qualified Person	**Responsible for the following report sections:**

Adam Price, Project Control Manager Adam is a seasoned project controls and analysis professional with over 15 years' of experience managing estimate, cost, schedule, financial economics/planning /reporting and risk performance across large-scale, complex construction and infrastructure projects. In his current role at TMC, Adam leads the strategic planning, capital and operating estimating, economic analysis, modelling, implementation, and oversight of integrated project controls systems across all phases of project delivery—from Pre-Feasibility (PFS) and Feasibility Studies (FS) through to execution. Adam has worked across a wide range of estimating and contracting models and has a deep understanding of commercial structures and their implications on project performance and risk. His expertise spans the full project lifecycle, with a strong focus on establishing robust estimates, baselines, developing earned value management systems, and driving data-informed decision-making to optimize outcomes. Adam is a member of AACE International and AusIMM.	Sections 1.11, 18, and 22.11.

Personal inspections were undertaken by the following QPs:

- Margin - Marine Geoscience Innovation was a participant in the 2018 offshore campaign (Campaign 3) on board the Maersk Launcher, which carried out surveys and sampling in NORI Area D from 26 April - 4 June 2018 and the bulk-dredging campaign C4B from 6 January – 7 February 2020 also onboard Maersk Launcher as the Client Representative.
- APYS Subsea Ltd was either Offshore or Onshore Geotechnical Team Leader/Project Manager in campaigns 6A, 6B, 7A, and 7B during the periods August to December 2019, October to September 2020, July to September 2022, and November to December 2022 respectively. Work undertaken was carrying out seabed sampling, on-deck soil testing and analysis, including in-situ seabed testing from onboard remotely operated vehicle systems and soil logging alongside geological and environmental sampling, technical support to offshore geotechnical soil sampling and testing development of techniques and methodology for soil testing and study, including development of ultra deep-water deployable systems and the deployment and testing strategy.
- AMC was involved in the development of sampling strategies and procedures and was in daily contact with the offshore sampling campaigns as they were implemented, providing input as required to ensure data quality and veracity.
- TMC, through their wholly owned subsidiary NORI, participated in multiple exploration campaigns and test mining within NORI Area D. These campaigns included direct physical sampling of nodules and sediments, deployment and recovery of autonomous underwater vehicles (AUVs), and monitoring of the Test Mining. TMC personnel and qualified experts participated in these offshore operations to oversee data quality, conduct geological and environmental assessments, and support the development and refinement of mining and environmental management plans. These personnel include:

  - **Rutger Bosland:** Was the lead Allseas representative on the Test Mining conducted in NORI Area D and responsible for deep sea mining development from 2019 until 2024. Mr. Bosland's qualifications are based on his direct inspection, leadership, and technical oversight of the pilot nodule collection program conducted in NORI Area D in 2022 and subsequent development into 1st generation commercial mining system. The pilot program provided the engineering foundation and operational experience that underpin the design and risk mitigation strategies of the current system.

  - **Michael Clarke**: Dr Michael Clarke was the client representative on Campaign 5A to the NORI Area D site in the CCZ. This campaign ran from 22 October to 6 December 2020 and focused on sampling of benthic biota and sediment geochemistry.

- Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd (CEA) are consulting engineers specializing in non-ferrous pyrometallurgical processing plants and have been supporting the project with process calculations relating to the on-shore plant. CEA has considerable experience in the RKEF technology that will be applied to the nodules to produce various products. CEA visited the PAMCO site in Hachinohe Japan and reviewed the operation, paying attention to the size and type of equipment, its current physical state and quality of maintenance, along with the technical and operating skill of the personnel. CEA also reviewed the necessary changes that will be required to be made so PAMCO is ready to accept nodules.

2.4 Update to a previously filed Technical Report

This Technical Report discloses the results of continuing investigations and evaluation at a pre-feasibility level of assessment on recovery, transport, processing and marketing of nodules, and is an update of the "Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone" for Deep Green Metals Inc prepared by AMC in March 2021 (AMC 2021). Unlike the Initial Assessment, this Technical Report includes Mineral Reserve estimates, and economic analysis demonstrating economic viability as required by Item 1302(e).

3 Property description

3.1 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS)

The international seabed area (otherwise known as the Area) is defined as the seabed and subsoil beyond the limits of national jurisdiction (UNCLOS Article 1).

The principal policy documents governing the Area under UNCLOS include:

- The UN Convention on the Law of the Sea, of 10 December 1982 (The Convention).
- The 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (the 1994 implementation Agreement).

The Convention deals with, among other things, navigational rights, territorial sea limits, exclusive economic zone jurisdiction, the continental shelf, freedom of the high seas, legal status of resources on the seabed beyond the limits of national jurisdiction, passage of ships through narrow straits, conservation and management of living marine resources in the high seas, protection of the marine environment, marine scientific research, and settlement of disputes.

Part XI of the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement deals with mineral exploration and exploitation in the Area, providing a framework for entities to obtain legal title to areas of the seafloor from the ISA for the purpose of exploration and eventually exploitation of resources.

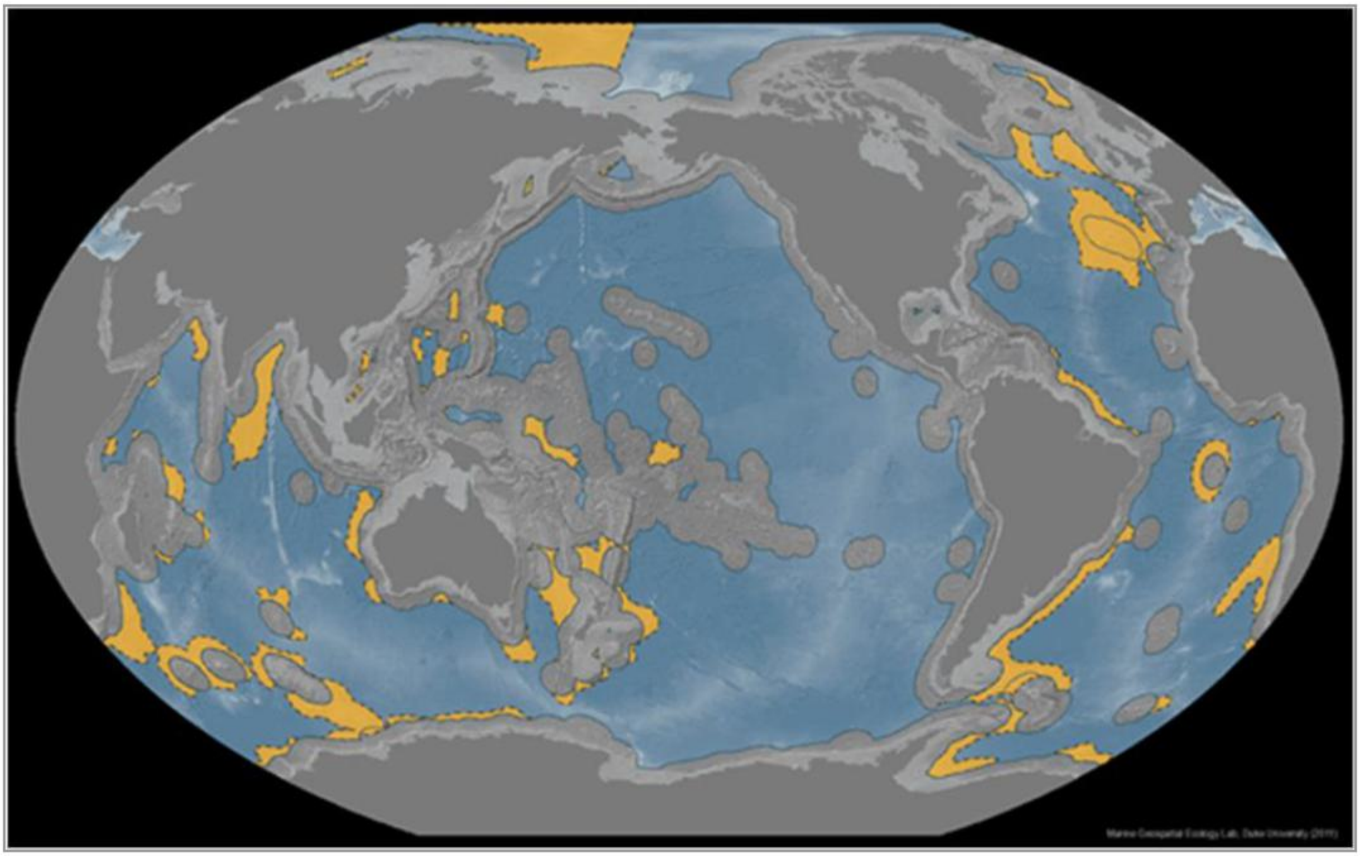
The Convention entered into force on 16 November 1994. A subsequent agreement relating to the implementation of Part XI of the Convention was adopted on 28 July 1994 and entered into force on 28 July 1996. The 1994 Implementation Agreement and Part XI of the Convention are to be interpreted and applied together as a single instrument.

The Convention has been ratified by 170 States Parties[3], which includes 169 states (166 UN member states plus the UN observer state, Palestine, and non-member states, the Cook Islands and Niue) and the European Union. An additional 14 UN member states have signed but not ratified the Convention. The United States of America (USA) is currently not a party to the Convention.

Figure 3.1 shows a map of the Area (blue zone) as well as 200 nautical mile exclusive economic zones (grey zone) and extended continental shelf zones (orange zone). Figure 3.2 shows the relationships between depth, distance, and jurisdiction.

3 https://itlos.org/en/main/the-tribunal/states-parties/

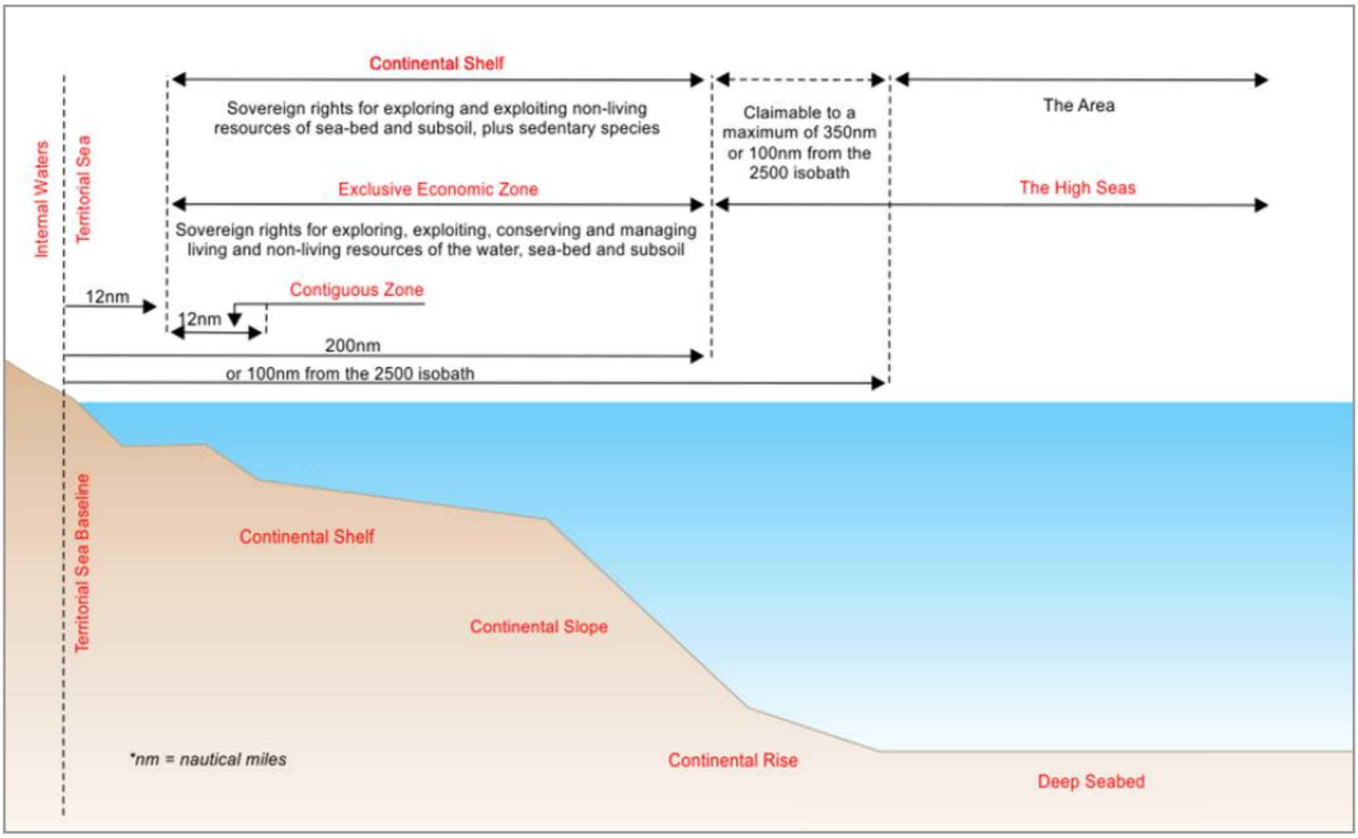
Figure 3.1 Map of seafloor jurisdictions



Note: International seabed area map (blue zone) as well as 200 nautical mile exclusive economic zones (grey zone) and extended continental shelf zones (orange zone).

Source: Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Duke University (2011).

Figure 3.2 Maritime space under the 1982 UNCLOS



Source: DeepGreen - adapted from UNCLOS, 1982

3.1.1 International Seabed Authority (ISA)

The ISA is an autonomous international organization established under the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement to organize and control activities in the Area, particularly with a view to administering and regulating the development of the resources of the Area in accordance with the legal regime established in the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

All rules, regulations, and procedures issued by the ISA to regulate prospecting, exploration, and exploitation of marine minerals in the Area are issued within a general legal framework established by the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

To date, the ISA has issued (https://www.isa.org.jm/mining-code/ Regulations):

- The 2010 Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules in the Area (adopted 13 July 2000; the Regulations); amended by the 2013 Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules in the Area and Related Matters (Amended)[4]
- The Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Sulphides (adopted 7 May 2010).
- The Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Cobalt-Rich Ferromanganese Crusts in the Area (July 2012).

The ISA is currently working on the development of the legal framework to regulate the exploitation of nodules in the Area.

4 2013 Regulations in Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules (Amended) adopted on 25 July 2013.

In February 2024, the Council of the ISA released draft regulations on exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area (ISBA/29/C/CRP.1) which formed the basis for this Technical Report.

3.2 Tenements and permits under the ISA

In July 2011, NORI was granted a nodule exploration contract by the ISA (NORI Exploration Contract). The contract was granted for a term of 15 years with a program of activities for the first five-year period (NORI Exploration Contract). The contract also formalises the rights of NORI around tenure. This contract does not convey exploitation rights. As of the effective date of this Report, no exploitation contract has been granted. In addition, as of the effective date of this Report, the International Seabed Authority has never granted an exploitation contract.

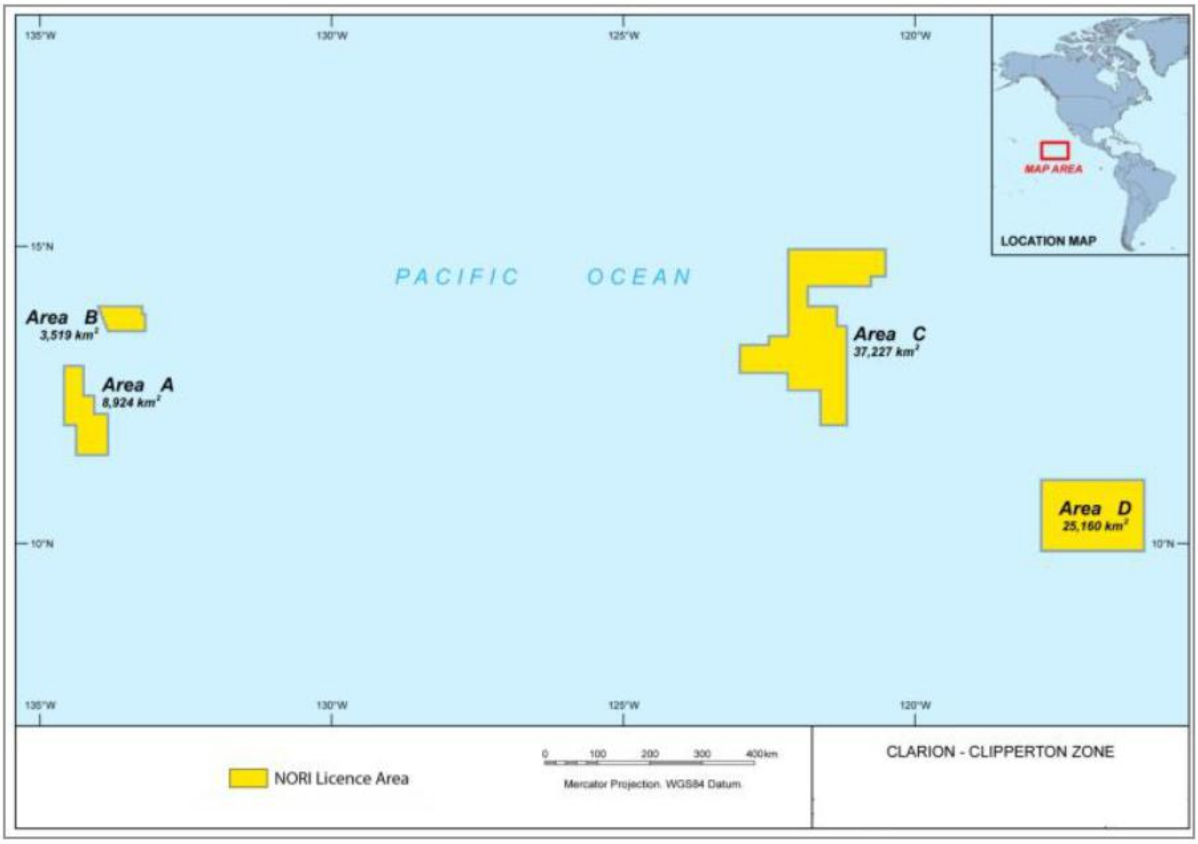
The NORI Property is located within the CCZ of the northeast Pacific Ocean (Figure 3.3). The CCZ is located in international waters between Hawaii and Mexico. The western end of the CCZ is approximately 1,000 km south of the Hawaiian island group. From here, the CCZ extends over 4,500 km east-northeast, in an approximately 750 km wide trend, with the eastern limits approximately 2,000 km west of southern Mexico. The region is well-located to ship nodules to the American continent or across the Pacific to Asian markets.

Figure 3.3 Location of NORI and other exploration areas within the CCZ

Source: https://www.isa.org.jm/map/clarion-clipperton-fracture-zone, downloaded 7 February 2025.

The NORI contract area comprises four separate blocks (A, B, C and D) in the CCZ with a combined area of 74,830 km^2 (Figure 3.4 and Table 3.1). These areas were previously explored by three Pioneer Investors (Table 3.2).

Figure 3.4 Location of NORI blocks in the CCZ



Source: NORI

Table 3.1 NORI Area extents

Area	Minimum Latitude (DD)	Maximum Latitude (DD)	Minimum Longitude (DD)	Maximum Longitude (DD)	Minimum UTM X (m)	Maximum UTM X (m)	Minimum UTM Y (m)	Maximum UTM Y (m)	UTM Zone
A	11.5000	13.00000	-134.5830	-133.8330	545220.4	627276.0	1271339	1437255	8
B	13.5801	14.00000	-134.0000	-133.2000	607995.7	694759.8	1501590	1548425	8
C	12.0000	14.93500	-123.0000	-120.5000	500000.0	769458.3	1326941	1652649	10
D	9.8950	11.08333	-117.8167	-116.0667	410465.2	602326.1	1093913	1225353	11

Note: DD – Decimal degrees, UTM – Universal Transverse Mercator map projection

Table 3.2 NORI Area block details

Area	Size (km^2)	ISA block number	Pioneer investor
A	8,924	13	Yuzhmorgeologiya
B	3,519	15	Yuzhmorgeologiya
C	37,227	22	Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation (IOM)
D	25,160	25	Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe (AMR)

Source: NORI

To date, no ISA exploitation licences for extracting minerals from the seafloor within the Area have been granted.

3.3 NORI obligations and sponsorship under the ISA

During exploration NORI, is required to, among other things:

- Submit an annual report to the ISA.
- Meet certain performance and expenditure commitments.

- Pay an annual overhead charge (currently US$60,000) to cover the costs incurred by the ISA in administering and supervising the contract.
- Implement training programs for personnel of the ISA and developing countries in accordance with a training program proposed by NORI in its licence application and five-year work plans.
- Take measures to prevent, reduce, and control pollution and other hazards to the marine environment arising from its activities in the Area.
- Maintain appropriate insurance policies.
- Establish environmental baselines against which to assess the likely effects of its program of activities on the marine environment.
- Establish and implement a program to monitor and report on such effects.

NORI is sponsored to carry out its mineral exploration activities in the Area by the Republic of Nauru, pursuant to a certificate of sponsorship signed by the Government of Nauru on 11 April 2011. Sponsorship of an entity requires the sponsoring State to certify that it assumes responsibility for the entity's activities in the Area in accordance with the Convention. NORI is a Nauruan incorporated entity and is subject to applicable Nauruan legislation and regulations.

In 2015 the Republic of Nauru enacted the International Seabed Minerals Act 2015, which establishes the Nauru Seabed Minerals Authority to administer Nauru's sponsorship of activities carried out in the Area by companies sponsored by Nauru.

In June 2017, the Republic of Nauru and NORI entered into a Sponsorship Agreement formalising certain obligations of the parties in relation to NORI's exploration and potential exploitation of the NORI Contract Area of the CCZ.

Under the Sponsorship Agreement, NORI has the exclusive right to explore for nodules in the Area pursuant to the contract for exploration dated 11 July 2011 between the ISA and NORI (the "Exploration Contract").

The term of the Sponsorship Agreement is aligned with the duration of the Exploration Contract (15 years) and contains provisions for automatic extension for a further 20 years upon NORI reaching the Minimum Recovery Level (as such term is defined in the Sponsorship Agreement). This agreement was revised on 4 June 2025, to allow for TMC USA application under DSHMRA as outlined in the section below.

3.3.1 Work Program under the ISA

As of the date of this Technical Report, NORI is in the fourteenth year of its exploration contract.

NORI's current 5-year program, covering the period from 2022 to 2026, includes the following key elements:

- Collector Test and Exploitation Application: Conducting a full system collector test completed in late-2022 (Test Mining), which included deploying and testing a collector and airlift riser system, as well as collecting 3,000 wmt of nodules, with intent to submit an application for exploitation.
- Environmental Management: The program emphasizes ongoing environmental baseline studies, delivery of an Environmental Impact Statement to support any application for exploitation and development and implementation of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan (EMMP) upon project approval, including an adaptive management system for ongoing operations.

- Training and Capacity Building: Providing training opportunities for developing state nationals, including participation in offshore campaigns and support for relevant degree programs at the University of South Pacific.
- Stakeholder Engagement: The program includes enhanced stakeholder engagement efforts to maintain transparency and gather input on project activities, particularly ahead of the submission of the application for an exploitation contract.

NORI submits detailed annual reports to the ISA which include financial statements on levels of expenditure on the NORI Contract Area. The NORI Exploration Contract may be extended for periods of 5 years at a time beyond the initial 15-year period, provided NORI has made efforts in good faith to comply with the requirements of the plan of work.

3.4 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA)

The U.S. legal framework for seabed mineral activities in areas beyond national jurisdiction is primarily governed by the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), enacted in 1980 (30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.). This Act authorizes the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to issue licenses for exploration and permits for commercial recovery of polymetallic nodules containing manganese, nickel, cobalt, and copper from the deep seabed.

These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure that U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite the United States not being a party to the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) or the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

Under DSHMRA, NOAA is responsible for reviewing and processing applications for exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits, which include environmental assessments and opportunities for public comment.

While the International Seabed Authority (ISA) regulates seabed mining for UNCLOS member states, the U.S. maintains its own regulatory regime under DSHMRA. In April 2025, a Presidential Executive Order reaffirmed U.S. commitment to advancing leadership in seabed mineral exploration and responsible commercial recovery, emphasizing both economic and environmental priorities.

3.4.1 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)

NOAA is the U.S. federal agency responsible for administering the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), which establishes a legal regime for the exploration and commercial recovery of hard Mineral Resources from the deep seabed in areas beyond national jurisdiction. All rules, regulations, and procedures issued by NOAA to regulate prospecting, exploration, and recovery of marine minerals under DSHMRA are issued within the legal framework established by the Act and its implementing regulations under 15 CFR, Subchapter D. To date, NOAA has issued:

- The regulations governing the issuance of exploration licenses for polymetallic nodules in areas beyond national jurisdiction (15 CFR Part 970).
- The regulations governing the issuance of commercial recovery permits for polymetallic nodules (15 CFR Part 971).

NOAA is currently responsible for reviewing and processing applications for both exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits submitted by U.S. entities.

In May 2025, NOAA released a draft update to its DSHMRA regulatory framework, including proposed revisions to streamline the application process for commercial recovery permits and enhance environmental safeguards. The draft incorporated feedback from interagency consultations, industry stakeholders, and environmental groups, and was published for public comment via the Federal Register. NOAA has stated its intent to finalize the revised regulations by early 2026, in alignment with the Executive Order's directive to modernize the permitting process and ensure timely access to critical minerals.

Pursuant to DSHMRA and 15 CFR § 970.209, a licensee who submits a timely and substantially complete application for a commercial recovery permit for the same area covered by their exploration license is granted a priority of right over other applicants, provided regulatory requirements are met.

3.4.2 License and permit applications under NOAA

TMC USA currently does not hold any exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits under the DSHMRA framework. However, TMC USA has submitted applications for such rights, and subject to regulatory review and approval, anticipates that any future commercial recovery activities would be conducted pursuant to a permit issued by NOAA under the U.S. legal regime.

In April 2025, TMC USA has submitted application requests directly to NOAA under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA. The relevant applications for NORI Area D are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ.
- Commercial Recovery Permit for USA-A which covers 25,160 km^2 in the CCZ (the area defined as NORI Area D under the ISA exploration contract).

On 28 May 2025 NOAA advised TMC USA that the exploration licence application for USA-A is substantially compliant with requirements under DSHMRA, and have a priority right providing exclusivity to the areas subject to the exploration license application for the duration of application process. No assurance can be given that exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits will be granted or that regulatory approvals will be obtained on the anticipated timeline or terms.

Further details regarding DSHMRA application process and timelines are defined in Section 17.1.

As of the effective date of this Report, no license or permit has been issued, and no rights under DSHMRA currently exist. In addition, any references to processing within the U.S. are forward-looking and contingent on receipt of such license or permit. In addition, as of the date of this report NOAA has never issued a Commercial Recovery Permit under DSHMRA.

3.5 Royalties and taxes

Under the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), royalties and taxes payable on any future commercial recovery of polymetallic nodules by U.S. entities in areas beyond national jurisdiction are governed by domestic U.S. law rather than international frameworks such as UNCLOS, to which the U.S. is not a party.

DSHMRA does not prescribe specific royalty rates, it authorizes the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to issue exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits, with terms and conditions that may include financial obligations. These obligations are determined on a case-by-case basis during the permitting process and are designed to ensure that U.S. seabed mining activities are conducted responsibly and in alignment with national interests, specifically the sourcing of critical minerals.

NOAA's regulatory framework under DSHMRA includes provisions for public comment and environmental review but does not currently mandate a fixed royalty or taxation regime akin to the ISA's proposed ad valorem models. As such, financial terms are negotiated individually and may evolve with future legislative or executive directives, such as the April 2025 Executive Order promoting U.S. leadership in seabed mineral recovery.

In June 2025, the Government of Nauru and TMC's subsidiary, Nauru Ocean Resources Inc. (NORI), signed a revised Sponsorship Agreement updating the terms of their agreement signed in 2017. This agreement ensures that the Republic of Nauru will continue to receive financial benefits, training, and community development support. The revised agreement introduces "continuity benefits" that will be activated once commercial production begins, either by NORI or another TMC subsidiary.

Until such time as the minimum recovery level is reached within the tenement area, no continuity benefits, or other amounts or payments, are payable by TMC to the Republic of Nauru, except for the Administration Fee contemplated in the Sponsorship Agreement. This is discussed in more detail in Section 19 of this report.

TMC will comply with all applicable tax laws and regulations in the USA. Taxation is discussed in more detail in Section 19 of this report.

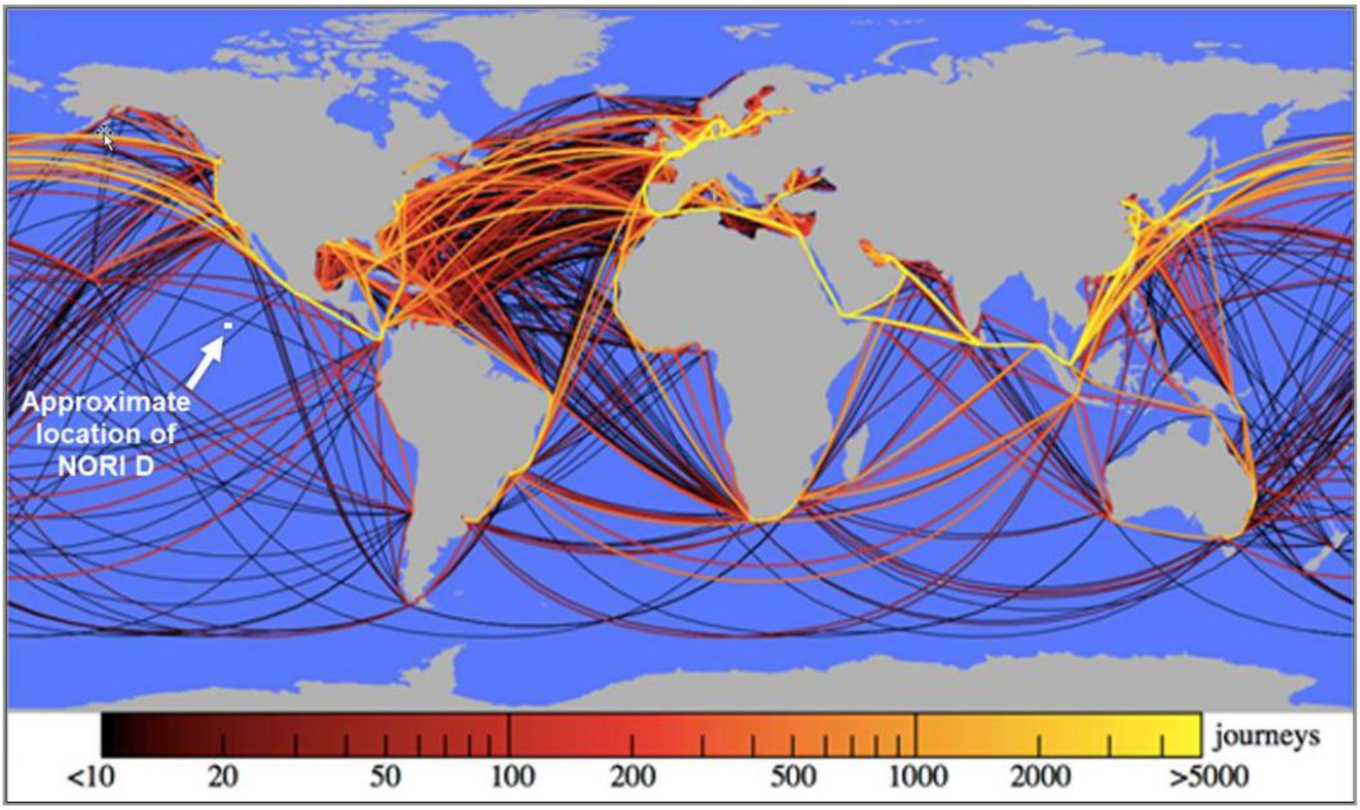
4 Accessibility, climate, local resources, infrastructure and physiography

4.1 Accessibility and infrastructure

The CCZ lies between Hawaii and Mexico and is accessible by ship from various ports in the USA and South America. The CCZ deposit does not include any habitable land and is not near coastal waters. All personnel and material will be transported to the project area by ship. The region is well located to ship nodules to the American continent or across the Pacific Ocean to Asian markets. The CCZ is generally outside major shipping lanes as indicated in Figure 4.1 which depicts the global cargo shipping network during 2007, illustrating the trajectories of all cargo ships bigger than 10,000 t gross.

There are no permanent facilities in the Project area, and all operations are contingent on marine infrastructure. The absence of fixed infrastructure increases dependence on vessel availability, which introduces material risks under Item 1302(e)(7).

Figure 4.1 Global cargo shipping network in 2007



Note: The colour scale indicates the number of journeys along each route.

Source: Adapted from Kaluza et al. 2010.

4.2 Climate

The CCZ has a tropical oceanic climate, with average temperatures between 20 to 32°C. Minimum and maximum temperatures generally occur in March and September, respectively (ISA 2001), and the average sea surface temperature is 25°C. The CCZ is located in open ocean and is subject to tropical weather patterns.

Off-shore operations are planned to run throughout the year, with the exception of hurricane events, which are expected to occur once every three years. Tropical hurricanes are difficult to predict due to their erratic frequency but have high intensity over short periods and occur mostly during the period from May to October (Tilot 2006 and GSR 2018).

5 History

5.1 Overview

Submarine ferromanganese concretions were first discovered in the Kara Sea off Siberia in 1868 (ISA 2010, citing Earney 1990). HMS Challenger, during its round the world expedition from 1873 to 1876, collected many small dark brown balls, rich in manganese and iron, which were named manganese nodules (ISA 2010 citing Murray and Reynard [1891], Manheim [1978], and Earney [1990]).

Since the 1960s, nodules have been recognized as a potential source of nickel, copper, cobalt, and manganese, and have been comparatively well studied because of their potential economic importance (Mero 1965). Scientific expeditions demonstrated that nodules have a widespread occurrence in the world's oceans although their metal content and concentration vary from region to region.

During the International Decade of Ocean Exploration and prior to the implementation of UNCLOS, many offshore exploration campaigns were completed by international organizations and consortia. A number of at-sea trial mining operations were successfully carried out in the CCZ in the 1970s to test potential mining concepts. These system tests evaluated the performance of a self-propelled and several towed collection and mining devices, along with submersible pumps and airlift technology for lifting the nodules from the deep ocean floor to the support vessel.

The US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) monitored some of these tests as the principal effort of the Deep Ocean Mining Effects Study (DOMES II) program. The information collected during these activities provided key inputs to the impact analysis presented by NOAA in its Final Programmatic Deep-Sea Mining Environmental Impact Statement.

5.2 Pioneer Investors

For the purpose of this report the Pioneer Investors include those entities that carried out substantial exploration in the Area prior to the entry into force of the Convention, as well as those entities that inherited such exploration data. This Section describes some of the more important activities of the Pioneer Investors.

NORI Area D was originally explored by Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe (AMR). AMR subsequently joined Ocean Management Inc. (OMI). The OMI consortium comprised Inco Ltd (Canada), AMR (Federal Republic of Germany), SEDCO Inc. (US), and Deep Ocean Mining Co. Ltd (Japan). OMI completed a successful trial mining operation in 1978. Hydraulic pumps, an air lift system, and towed collectors were tested in approximately 4,500 m of water. Approximately 800 t of nodules were recovered.

Kennecott consortium (now a division of Rio Tinto) first became seriously interested in nodules in 1962 (Agarwal et al. 1979). In the 1970s, Kennecott developed and tested components and subsystems of a seafloor mining system and also carried out significant nodule metallurgical processing test work.

Using a different system to OMI, Ocean Mining Associates recovered approximately 500 t of nodules during its trial mining in the 1970s.

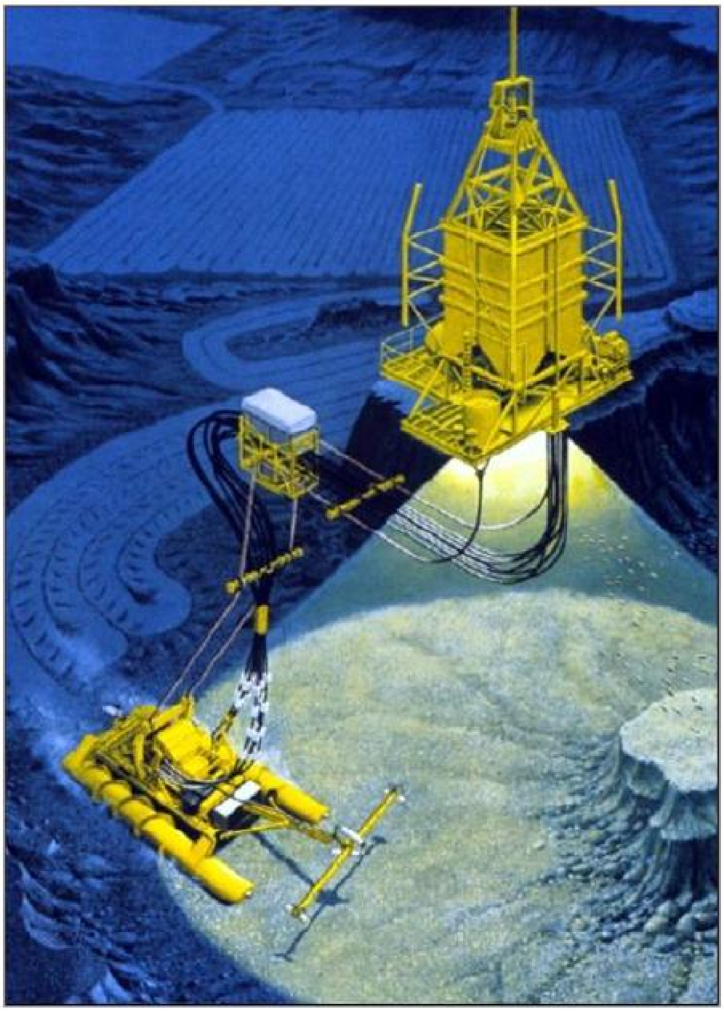
Between 1969 and 1974, Deepsea Ventures Inc. carried out 16 survey cruises of three to four weeks' duration each, to define the extent of the nodule deposit discovered by them in 1969 in the CCZ. As reported by Deepsea Ventures Inc:

"These activities included the taking of some 294 discrete samples, including the bulk dredging of some 164 tons of manganese nodules from some 263 dredge stations, 28 core stations and three grab sample stations, cutting of some 28 cores, approximately 1000 lineal miles of survey of seafloor recorded by television and still photography, etc. As a result, the deposit of nodules identified with the discovery has been proved to extend generally throughout the entire area (American Society of International Law, 1975)."

Also active in the CCZ was the Ocean Minerals Company (OMCO), comprising Amoco Minerals Co. (USA), Lockheed Missiles and Space Company Inc. (USA), Billiton International Metals BV, and dredging company Bos Kalis Westminster (Netherlands). In a program lasting 16 years, OMCO collected thousands of free-fall grab and box core samples of nodules from its claim area (Spickermann 2012) and carried out trial mining. Lockheed's design efforts resulted in over 80 patents, a seafloor production system that consisted of a remote-controlled collector and crusher, a seafloor to surface slurry riser system, the first industrial scale dynamic positioning system for a vessel, and a metallurgical processing plant (Spickermann 2012).

In 1978, OMCO used a remote controlled fully manoeuvrable self-propelled miner with conveyor and crusher (Figure 5.1 and Figure 5.2) to trial mine nodules in the CCZ at approximately 4,500 m below sea level. The miner used an Archimedes screw drive system to provide traction and accurate manoeuvrability on the seafloor. Nodules were picked up by the miner and transferred to the buffer, where they were to be pumped to the surface by an airlift system.

Figure 5.1 Schematic of Lockheed Group's 1970s trial mining system



Source: Deep Green. Used with permission of Prof. Jin Chung

Figure 5.2 Remote operated collector used by the Lockheed Group in 1970s trial mining

Source: Spickerman 2012

5.3 Sampling methods

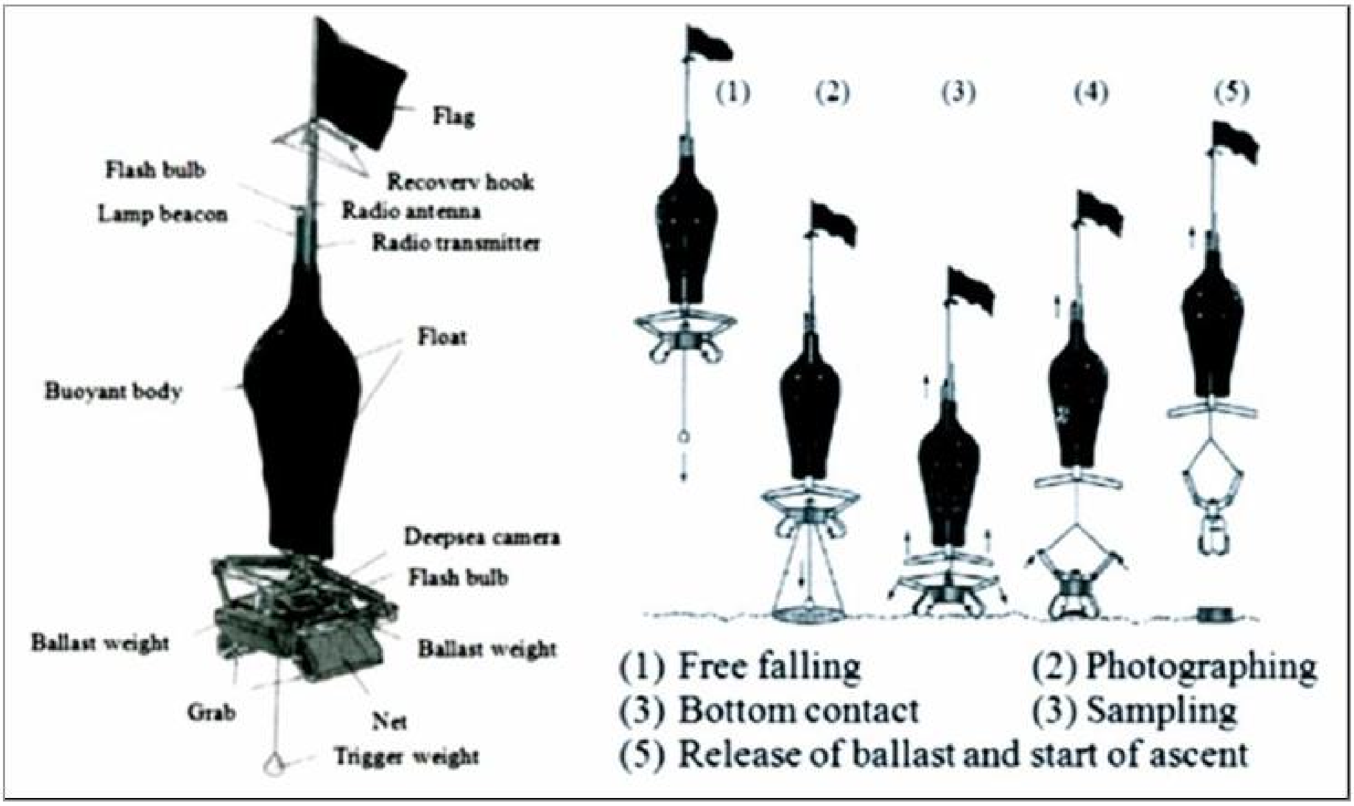
Prior to NORI obtaining its exploration contract, sampling of nodules within the NORI Area was conducted by three Pioneer Investors: AMR, State Enterprise Yuzhmorgeologiya of the Russian Federation and lnteroceanmetal Joint Organisation (IOM), a consortium formed by Bulgaria, Cuba, the Czech Republic, Poland, the Russian Federation, and Slovakia.

Nodule samples collected by the Pioneer Investors from within the NORI Area were obtained by free-fall grab samplers (FFG) along with a few from box corers. For each sample the nodule abundance (wet kg/m^2) was derived by dividing the weight of recovered nodules by the surface area covered by the open jaws of the sampler or corer (typically 0.25 to 0.5 m^2 but in some cases as much as 1 m^2). Sample splits were dried and assayed by atomic absorption spectrophotometry (AAS) and X-ray fluorescence (XRF).

Free-fall grab samplers are currently the most productive tool available for sampling nodules. This is because a number of them can be deployed at any one time from the survey vessel allowing an order of magnitude increase in collection efficiency compared to box core sampling (i.e., approximately 10 to 20 samples per day for a FFG versus 2 to 3 samples per day for a box core (BC) that is winched to and from the seafloor). Figure 5.3 shows the operation of an FFG sampler.

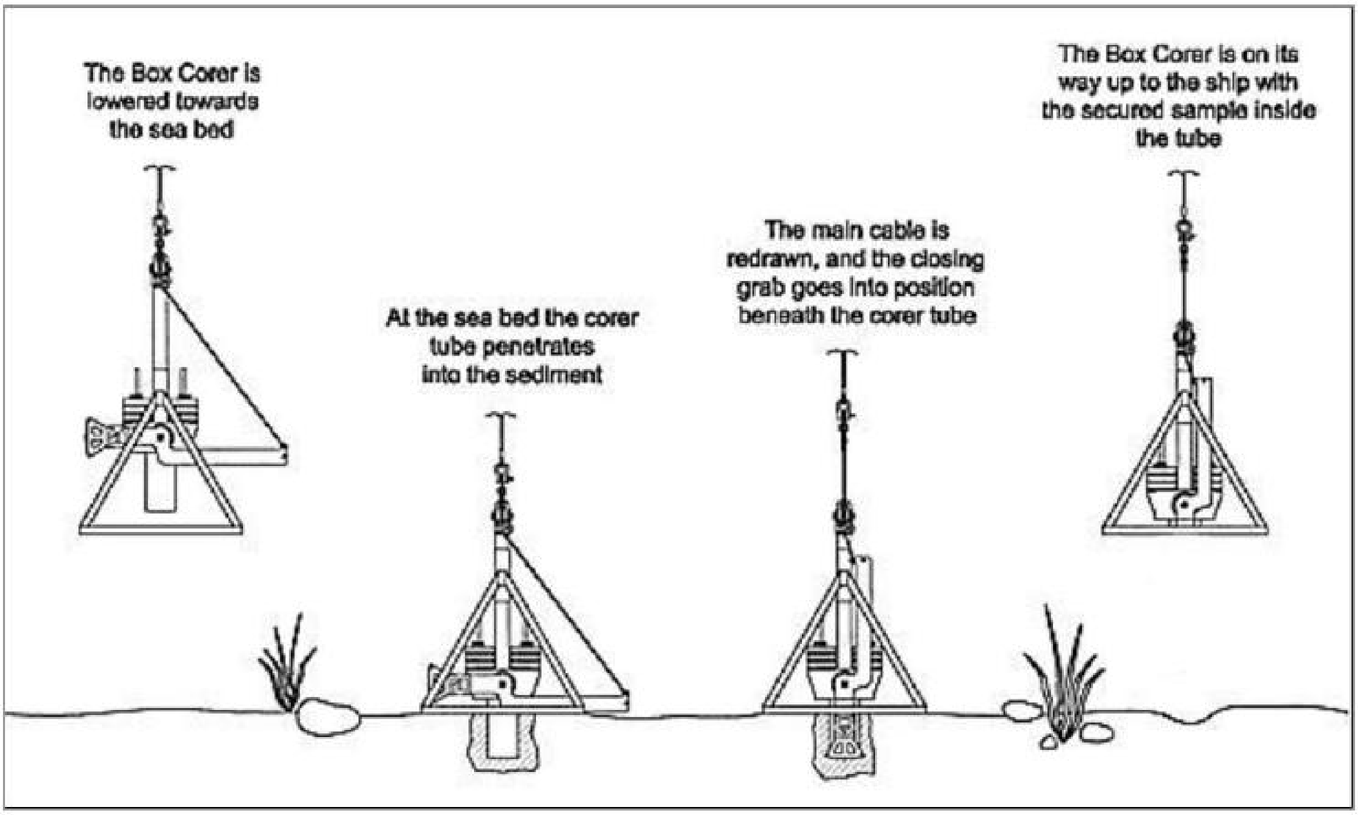
The box core is the preferred sampling method for retrieving nodule samples for resource evaluation and environmental studies. The box core consists of a trigger, plunger, and cutting shovel. Upon land out on the seafloor, the trigger is released which allows the plunger to push a box cutter into the substrate during retraction. Upon retraction, the cutting shovel rotates under the box while cutting into the seafloor and sealing the sample box from below (Figure 5.4).

Figure 5.3 Free fall grab sampler operation



Source: ISA 1999b

Figure 5.4 Box core sampler operation



Source: KC Denmark box corer manual

Comparison of nodule abundance measurements by free-fall grab samplers and box cores suggests that free-fall grab samplers commonly underestimate the actual abundance. This is due to smaller nodules escaping the sampler during ascent and larger nodules around the edge of the sampler being knocked out during the sampling process. Additionally, free-fall grab samplers occasionally fail to return any nodules where nodule abundance is known to be very high because the sampler fails to penetrate the layer of nodules.

Lee et al. (2008) examined correction factors between FFG and BC in some detail. They found a wide range but consistent differences with FFG under-reporting compared to BC. They recommended an overall correction factor of 1.4 to convert FFG abundance to BC abundance. However, they acknowledged that any simple factor lacks precision. One of the key issues is the size of the FFG or BC relative to the nodule diameter.

The FFG data were not used in the 2024 estimates of Mineral Resources in NORI Area D.

5.4 Sample preparation and analysis

Information on sample preparation and analysis by the Pioneer Investors is summarized below.

5.4.1 Ocean Minerals Company

While OMCO data are not included in the datasets used for resource estimation in the NORI Area, they are discussed here as the method described below is believed to be similar to the method practiced by those contractors that did contribute to the NORI Area data.

Nodule samples were laid out separately on a white surface marked with a scaled grid and photographed to permit determination of nodule size distribution. They were then sealed in labelled fiberglass-reinforced collection bags and stored in the ship's hold for the balance of the exploration cruise. The samples were transported from the ship to the Lockheed Ocean Laboratory in San Diego.

Prior to weighing, the samples were removed from the sample bags and placed in a single layer in labelled open trays on tables in the air-conditioned laboratory for at least 12 hours to ensure a uniform degree of air drying. The samples were then weighed using a high-capacity laboratory scale and divided into two subsamples of approximately equal weight.

The second subsample was crushed using a jaw crusher to produce a product with a maximum size of less than about 1 mm. The crushed sample was then mixed and passed through a laboratory sample splitter to produce a 5 to 10 g subsample. The subsample was further ground to a fine powder using a laboratory ball mill prior to assaying.

The powdered subsample was placed in an oven at 110°C for at least six hours to remove adsorbed water. It was then immediately transferred to a sealed desiccator to cool to ambient temperature.

A three-acid digest was used to dissolve the samples before analysis by AAS using a Hewlett Packard instrument. Standard analysis included determination of manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, silica, calcium, and magnesium.

Analytical accuracy was confirmed by periodic introduction of standards made from crushed, mixed, and powdered bulk nodule samples that had also been sent to three independent commercial laboratories for determination of these metal contents. Additional confirmation was achieved using standards formulated by the US Geological Survey (A-1 and P-1; Flanagan and Gottfried 1980). These standards were subjected to the entire preparation procedure to ensure that no significant contamination was occurring and that no systematic analytical errors were being included in the process.

5.4.2 Yuzhmorgeologiya

The Yuzhmorgeologiya method was very similar to the method practiced by OMCO. The Yuzhmorgeologiya data cover NORI Area A and B.

The measurement of abundance of nodules at the sample site was carried out using an "enclosed" Ocean-0.25 FFG sampler with a 0.25 m^2 gripped surface and a depth of sampling of approximately 30 cm. The FFG sampler was combined with GFU-6-8 photography unit. This device took ocean bottom photos at the sampling point.

The procedure for sub-sampling was as follows:

1. Extraction of all nodules from the grab sampler.
2. Crushing of all nodules to a maximum particle size of up to 10 mm.
3. Drying (approximately 24 h) of all samples at 105°C until constant weight was achieved.
4. Crushing of all samples to 1 to 2 mm particle size and splitting of 400 to 500 g using a splitting device.
5. Pulverising of the split sample (not less than 400 g) was carried out in the vibrating grinder up to 100 mesh particle size (0.074 mm).
6. Formation of analytical sample (200 g) and its duplicate (200 g).

Chemical analyses were carried out on subsamples with an approximate weight of 0.5 g, selected from the analytical sample. Determination of nickel, copper, cobalt, and iron content was carried out by AAS and the content of manganese by a method of photometric (electrometric) titration.

5.4.3 IOM

Information regarding IOM procedures is not available. However, procedures used by IOM for sample collection and assaying are likely to be similar to the sampling and assaying procedures used by the other Pioneer Investors. The results of the IOM sampling are consistent with the results obtained by other Pioneer Investors within the NORI area and within the broader CCZ.

5.4.4 Preussag

Preussag completed nodule exploration programs in the CCZ aboard the Valdivia in the 1970s. Nodule sampling was mainly carried out using free-fall grab samplers and box corers.

After the sampling devices arrived on the working deck of the research vessel, nodules were removed from the sediment surface (box corer) or taken from the FFG samplers and transported in plastic boxes to the geological laboratory. There, several sample treatments were carried out:

- Nodules were cleaned (if necessary) from adhering mud using filtered seawater.
- Nodules were carefully dried with paper towels.
- Nodules were photographed on the surface with a scaled grid.

· Individual nodules were measured.
· Individual nodules and the total nodules from one device were weighed with a special balance (determination of wet weight).

A detailed description including the identification of the types of nodules was conducted.

One part of the nodules was used for further investigations in the ship's laboratory. The other nodules were stored in plastic bags, which were weighed once more. Then the plastic bags were filled with seawater in order to keep the nodules in a water-saturated state. These samples were required for further studies and investigations in the home laboratories (e.g., physical properties, detailed chemical analyses, X-ray phase analysis, metallurgical tests, polished sections).

The first part of the nodules taken from one sampling device were crushed to a particle size smaller than 10 mm and then dried in an oven at ±105°C until constant weight was achieved. Further steps of grinding in the ship's laboratory took place with a final procedure of pulverising with a ball mill producing a fine powder with a particle size of less than 100 mesh (less than 74 µm). Then the sample was passed through a laboratory sample splitter to produce several representative subsamples.

One subsample was taken as representative archive sample. Two other subsamples were dried again for at least five hours to remove the rest of adsorbed water prior to analysis.

Two methods were used to determine key metals of nickel, copper, cobalt, manganese, iron, and zinc. The first was AAS analysis to measure nickel, copper, zinc, and cobalt, and the second was energy-dispersive XRF with ratio-isotope excitation to determine manganese and iron. A sample digestion was necessary to carry out the AAS determination. For this, the dried powder was treated with a mixture of acids in a high-pressure Teflon vessel and heated for several hours to complete the digestion. The digested fluid was diluted with distilled water and analysed with the spectrometer, and the residue was weighed. The XRF analysis was performed with the powder (pressed tablets). Data quality and analytical reliability were confirmed by intermediate introduction and measurement of reference nodule samples. These reference standards consisted of powdered material which was subjected to the same procedure as described above.

5.5 Quality Assurance/Quality Control Procedures

Free-fall grab samplers are considered to underestimate the actual abundance but provide adequate samples for determining the grade of the nodules (Hennigar et al. 1986).

Quality Assurance/Quality Control was known to be undertaken at the time of sampling as part of the scientific process used by each Pioneer Investor. However, no systematic quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC) information is available for these programs, as this information was not provided by the ISA. Nonetheless, the acceptance of the data by the ISA suggests the ISA was satisfied with the quality of the data.

The quality of the data was assessed (Golder 2015) using comparative measures between the different datasets. The QP considers that correlation of data from different sources, including Pioneer Investors and government scientific institutes, provides a satisfactory level of quality assurance to support Mineral Resource estimates at an Inferred level of confidence.

For the estimate of Mineral Resources at NORI Area D described in this report, the availability of higher quality data collected by NORI since 2012 made it unnecessary to rely on the Pioneer Contractor data. Therefore, the Pioneer Contractor data was not used in the estimation of Mineral Resources for NORI Area D in 2025.

5.6 Pioneer Investor sample data supplied to NORI

Upon making an application, the Pioneer Investors were required to submit sufficient data and information to enable designation of a reserved area based on the estimated commercial value. These sample data provide the basis of a database held by the ISA and were used initially to define the areas of the NORI application.

The sample sites were sampled by a combination of grab samplers and box corers of different sizes and designs, with the full details of the sampling tools at a given site mostly being unavailable. As a result, sample quality, spacing, and assay reliability vary from contractor to contractor, sample to sample, and block to block. Average sample spacing (based on the data supplied by the ISA) varies across the CCZ, ranging from less than 1 km and averaging approximately 10 km within the NORI Area.

Statistics for the samples that contain both abundance and grade data inside the NORI Area are tabulated in Table 5.1 and illustrated as boxplots in Figure 5.5. The box plots show the range of grades; the box represents the range of grades in the middle 50% of the samples, centered on the median (middle value) and box width reflects number of samples. The dashed lines represent the range of the lowest 25% and highest 25% of the data.

Cobalt in NORI Area D is significantly lower than other NORI areas and abundance consistently higher in NORI Area D than other NORI areas and CCZ Reserved Blocks in general (Figure 5.5).

The range of the assays (as summarized by the coefficient of variation) is remarkably low compared to most terrestrial Mineral Resources. Abundance values vary more widely, making abundance estimates the key variable of uncertainty in Mineral Resource estimation.

The abundance of buried nodules is poorly known at this time. Thus, buried nodules are not included in exploration information or Mineral Resource estimates.

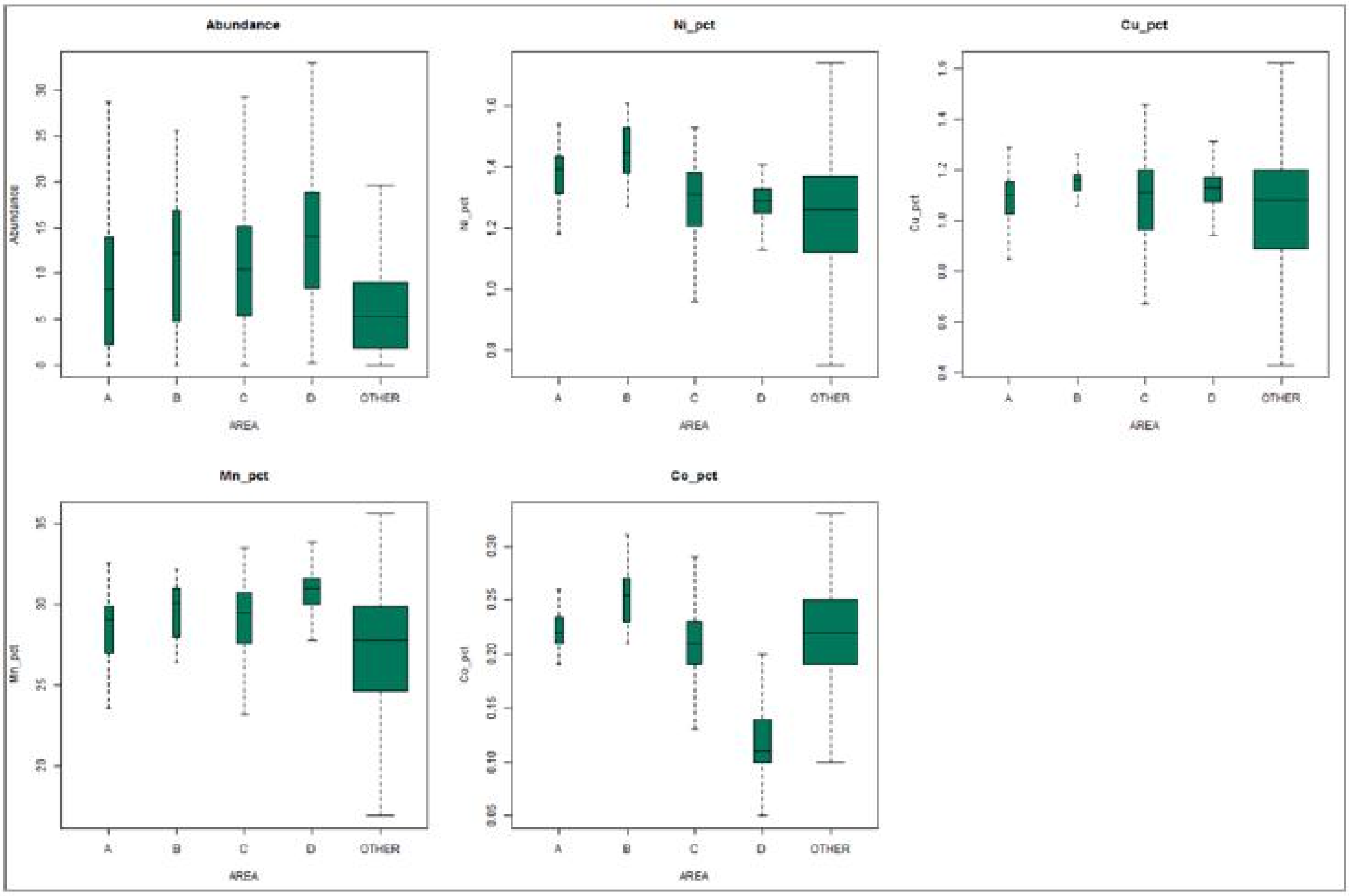
Table 5.1 Summary of historical FFG samples in the NORI Area

NORI Area	Grade	Number	Missing	Min	Max	Mean	Median	Var	cv
A	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	50	0	0	28.7	9.3	8.2	57.366	0.81
	Ni (%)	40	10	1.04	1.75	1.37	1.39	0.016	0.09
	Cu (%)	40	10	0.66	1.29	1.07	1.1	0.017	0.12
	Mn (%)	40	10	19.77	32.6	28.06	28.98	8.577	0.1
	Co (%)	40	10	0.16	0.28	0.22	0.22	0.001	0.11
B	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	31	0	0	25.55	11.24	12	50.536	0.63
	Ni (%)	26	5	1.01	1.61	1.42	1.44	0.021	0.1
	Cu (%)	26	5	0.72	1.26	1.12	1.16	0.016	0.11

	Mn (%)	26	5	20.8	32.2	28.88	29.8	9.939	0.11
	Co (%)	26	5	0.21	0.31	0.25	0.25	0.001	0.09
C	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	152	0	0	44.1	10.55	10.33	52.902	0.69
	Ni (%)	135	17	0.68	1.53	1.27	1.31	0.025	0.12
	Cu (%)	135	17	0.4	1.46	1.05	1.11	0.048	0.21
	Mn (%)	135	17	12.84	33.54	28.63	29.42	11.648	0.12
	Co (%)	135	17	0.12	0.33	0.21	0.21	0.001	0.17
D	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	159	0	0.2	52.2	14.12	13.9	72.243	0.6
	Ni (%)	159	0	1.09	1.41	1.28	1.29	0.004	0.05
	Cu (%)	159	0	0.88	1.5	1.14	1.13	0.012	0.1
	Mn (%)	159	0	23.8	33.9	30.58	31	3.12	0.06
	Co (%)	159	0	0.05	0.2	0.12	0.11	0.001	0.26

Note: Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Figure 5.5 Box plot sample grades in NORI Area compared with data from Reserved Blocks



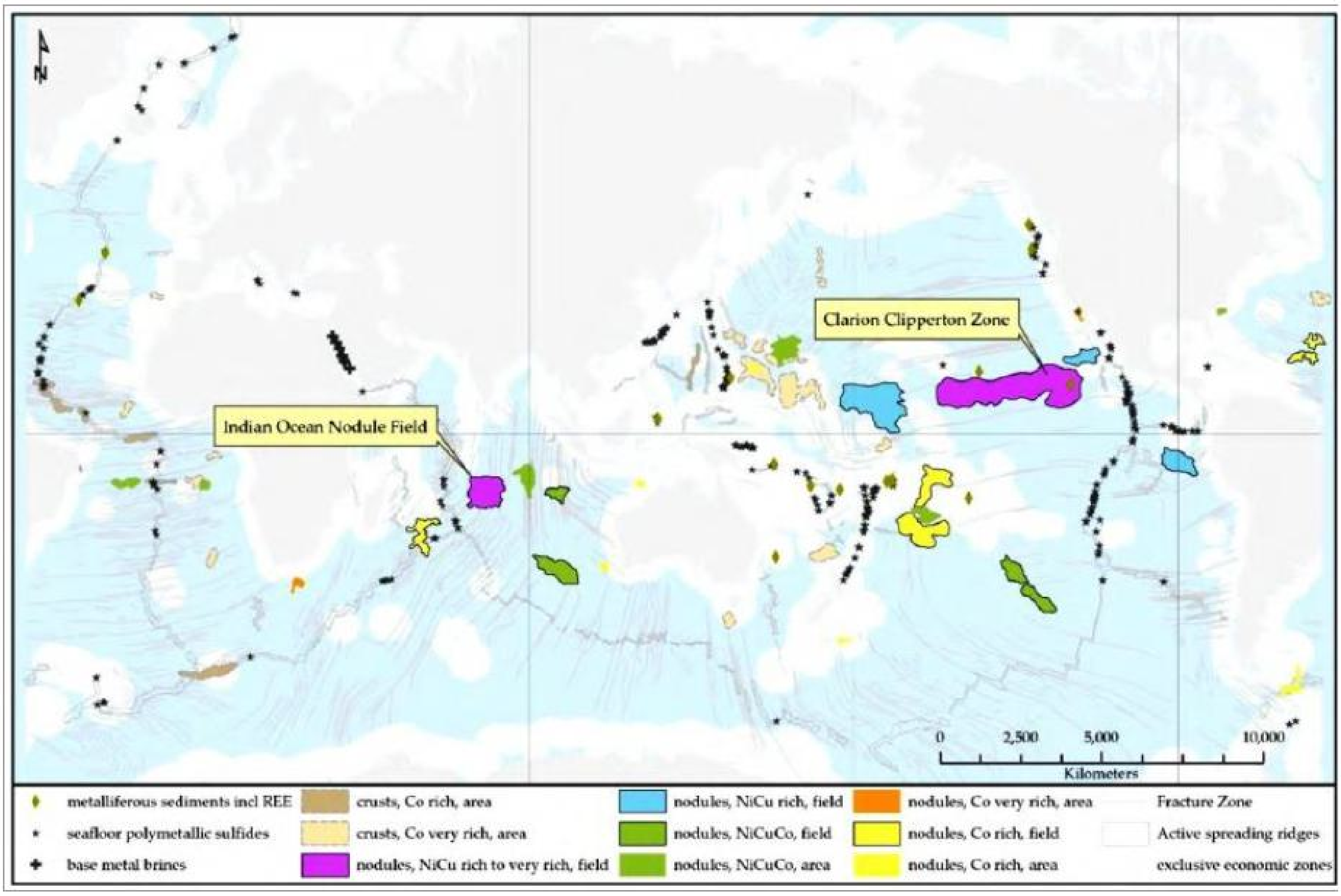
Note: Box size represents 1st and 3rd quartiles centred on the median and box width reflects number of samples

6 Geological setting, mineralization, and deposit

6.1 Global distribution of nodules

Nodules occur in all oceans, and the CCZ hosts a relatively high abundance of nodules. Other zones of nodules with relatively high base-metal content and high abundance are found in the Peru Basin in the southeast Pacific, the center of the north Indian Ocean, and the Cook Islands (Figure 6.1). Metal grades vary significantly between these zones.

Figure 6.1. Location of the CCZ and other deep sea nodule fields



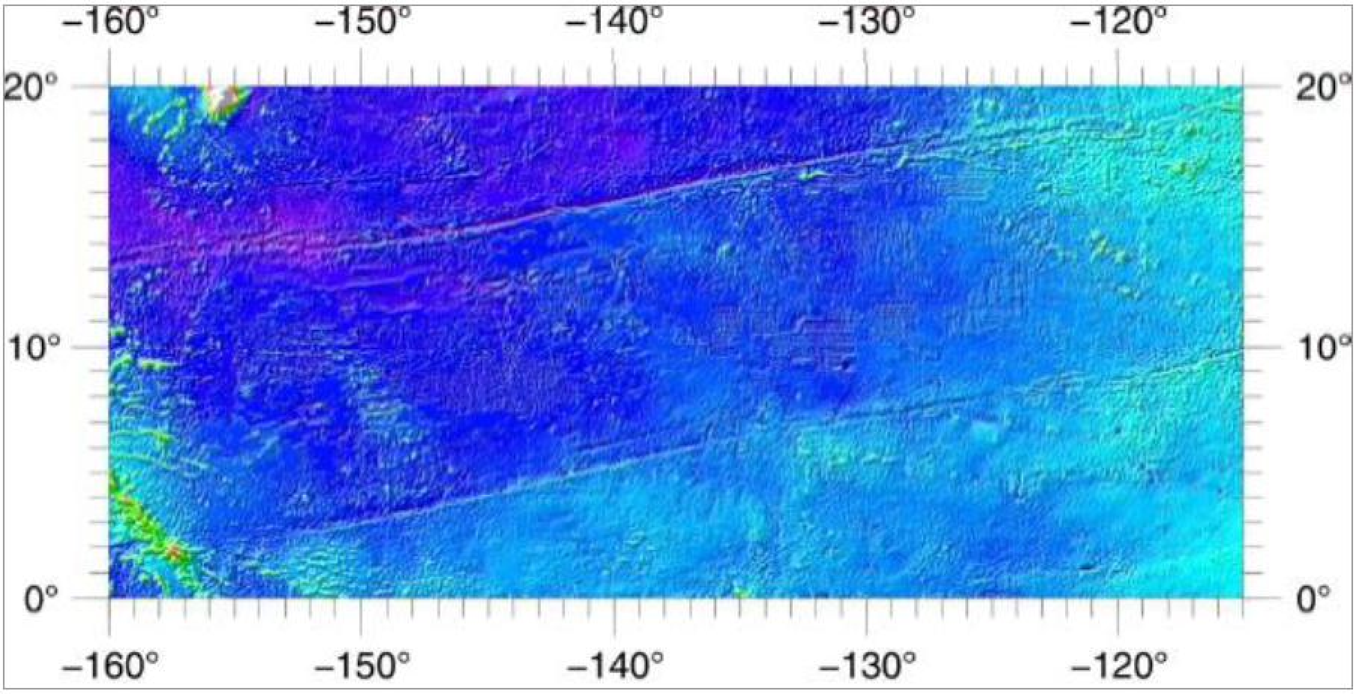
Source: Parianos 2021

Two major west-south-west and east-north-east trending fracture zones that run through the seafloor define the CCZ: the Clipperton Fracture Zone to the south and the Clarion Fracture Zone to the north. These fractures zones can be seen clearly on the bathymetric map (see Figure 6.2). The eastern and western limits can be defined by the Mathematicians Seamounts or Ridge in the east and the Republic of Kiribati or Line Islands in the west.

The CCZ seafloor is part of the abyssal plain, the largest physiographic habitat type on Earth that covers approximately 70% of ocean basins and 30% of the Earth's surface (UN Division for Ocean Affairs and the Law of the Sea and the ISA, 2004). Ridges believed to have formed from the process of seafloor spreading traverse the CCZ. The ridges have a north-north-west to south-south-east (locally ±20˚) orientation with amplitudes of 50 to 300 m (maximum 1,000 m; Hoffert, 2008) and wavelengths of 1 to 10 km. The bathymetric map of NORI Area D (The whole of NORI Area D (25,439 km^2) was surveyed. Due to swath width and vessel orientation relative to course-made-good, some data was recorded beyond the bounds of those areas. An image of the bathymetric data for NORI Area D, in plan view, is shown in Figure 7.1) shows these ridges clearly.

Extinct volcanoes that rise 500 to 2,000 m above the seafloor punctuate the seafloor of the CCZ. Depth in the CCZ increases from 3,800 to 4,200 m at 115˚ west to 4,800 to 5,200 m at 130˚ west and 5,400 to 5,600 m at 145˚ west. The sediment types exhibit trends perpendicular to the bounding fracture zones, from predominant carbonate sediments in the south-eastern extreme to predominant siliceous red clay in the west north-west.

Figure 6.2. Bathymetric map of the Clarion-Clipperton fracture zone



Source: ISA, 2010a

6.2 Sedimentation and nodule formation

Nodules comprise nuclei and concentric layers of iron and manganese hydroxides and form via the precipitation of metals from seawater and sediment pore-water. The metal accumulates slowly, and it generally takes millions of years for a nodule to form (Skowronek et al. 2021).

Nodules are abundant in abyssal areas with oxygenated bottom waters, low sedimentation rates (less than 10 cm per thousand years), and where sources of abundant nuclei occur (Hein et al., 2013). Nodules grow on 0.1 to 1 cm nuclei (e.g., pieces of pumice and older broken nodules) and generally range from about 1 to 12 cm in their longest dimension, with the low to middle-range typically the most common (1 to 5 cm).

The specific conditions of the CCZ (water depth, latitude, and seafloor sediment type) are considered to be the key controls for nodule formation along with the following factors:

- Supply of metals to the growing surface
- Presence of a nucleus
- The corrosive / erosive forces caused by benthic currents
- Occurrence of a semi-liquid surface layer on the seafloor (sediment water interface)
- Bioturbation

The highest values of metals in nodules are thought to be best developed on the seafloor in the equatorial regions away from land sources of sediments. In these regions, surface waters have high primary productivity. Tiny plants and animals concentrate the metals from seawater and, when they die, they sink to the seafloor, dissolve, and release the metals into the pore water of seafloor sediments. It is believed that the upper portion of the nodules accumulate metals that precipitate from seawater, while the lower portion of the nodules, partially buried in sediment, accumulate metals from pore water in the underlying sediments.

Sediments from the CCZ consist mostly of clays and siliceous biological casts. Sands and larger sediments are not generally found so far from land, and the commonly formed carbonate biological casts dissolve on the seafloor in these deep-water regions faster than they accumulate.

6.3 Polymetallic mineralization

The ISA completed a geological modelling project in 2009, based on data collected by contractors over the preceding 30 years (ISA, 2009, 2010a, 2010b).

6.3.1 Nodule grades

Nodule chemistry varies only slightly within the CCZ. Figure 6.3 to Figure 6.6 show the distribution of nickel, cobalt, copper, and manganese grades across the CCZ, as estimated by the ISA (ISA, 2009). The high continuity and low variability of grades across vast distances is remarkable. Copper and manganese generally increase towards the southeast, cobalt is generally higher towards the north, and nickel is generally higher towards the center and southwest of the CCZ. The reason for these very large-scale trends is not clear. The German data for NORI Area D were not included in the ISA geological model.

6.3.2 Nodule abundance

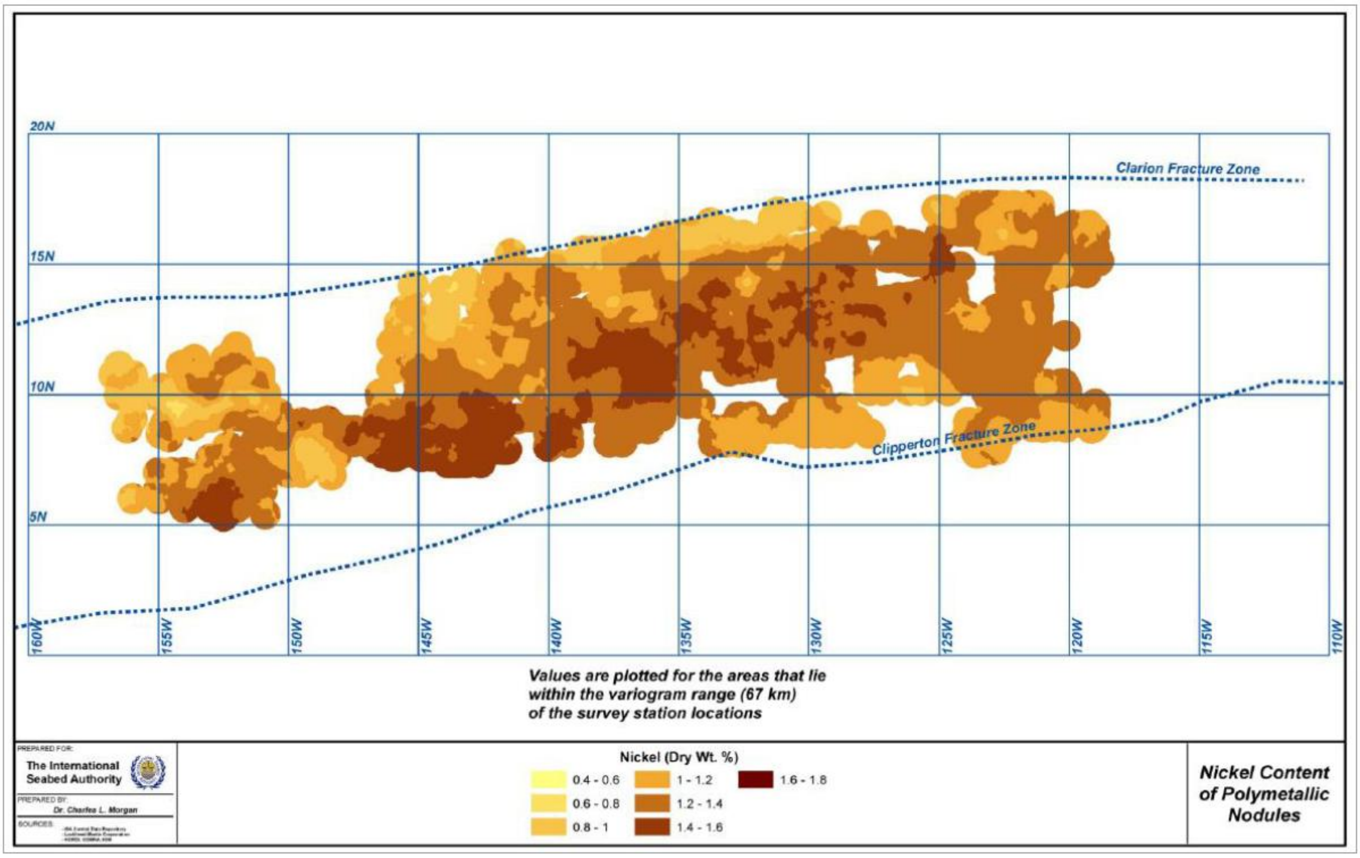
Nodules lie on the seafloor sediment, often partly buried. Some nodules are completely buried, although the frequencies of such subsurface occurrences are very poorly defined. Kotlinski and Stoyanova (2006) document up to five discrete layers of buried nodules, although all were within 45 cm of the surface despite using sediment cores of 250 to 380 cm depth (i.e., all of these nodules are near surface). Other images of box corers also suggest that all or most of the nodules are at the surface. Consequently, drilling is not required for defining the Mineral Resources.

During the 2018 – 2022 NORI Area D campaigns, 93% of nodules sampled were situated at surface These include nodules on the surface and nodules with their top surfaces in the upper 1 cm of sediment. At least 96% are inferred to be within the top 5 cm of sediment. A few nodules were found at depth; most of these were usually clustered around the edges of the box core and are considered to have been pushed below surface by the box coring process.

Nodules vary in abundance, in some cases touching one another and covering more than 70% of the seafloor. The highest concentrations of nodules have been found on abyssal plains between 4,000 and 6,000 m below sea level.

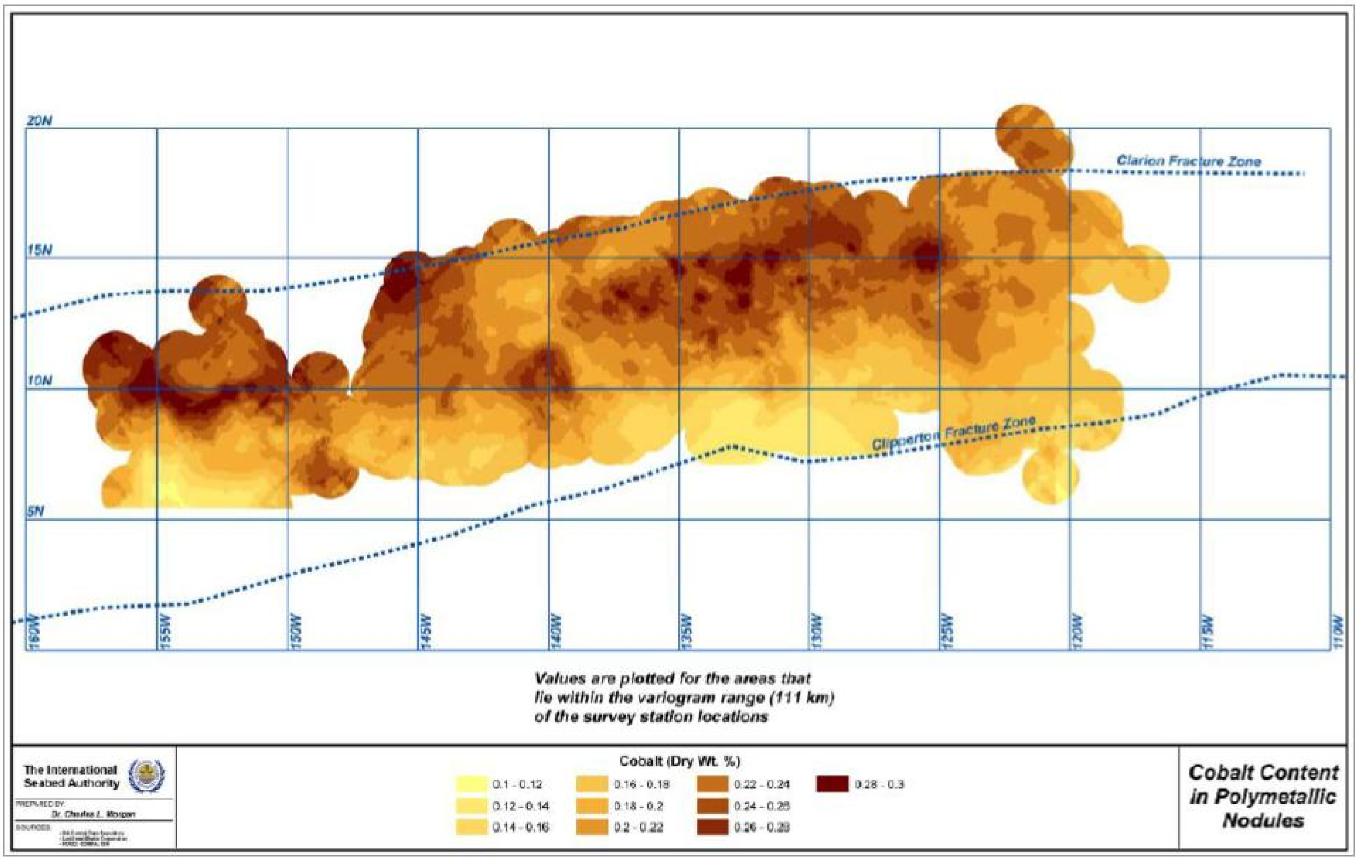
Figure 6.7 shows estimated nodule abundance data from the ISA geological model project. Data analysis shows that variability of nodule abundance is significantly higher than variability of metal grades.

Figure 6.3 Map of nickel grade distribution in the CCZ



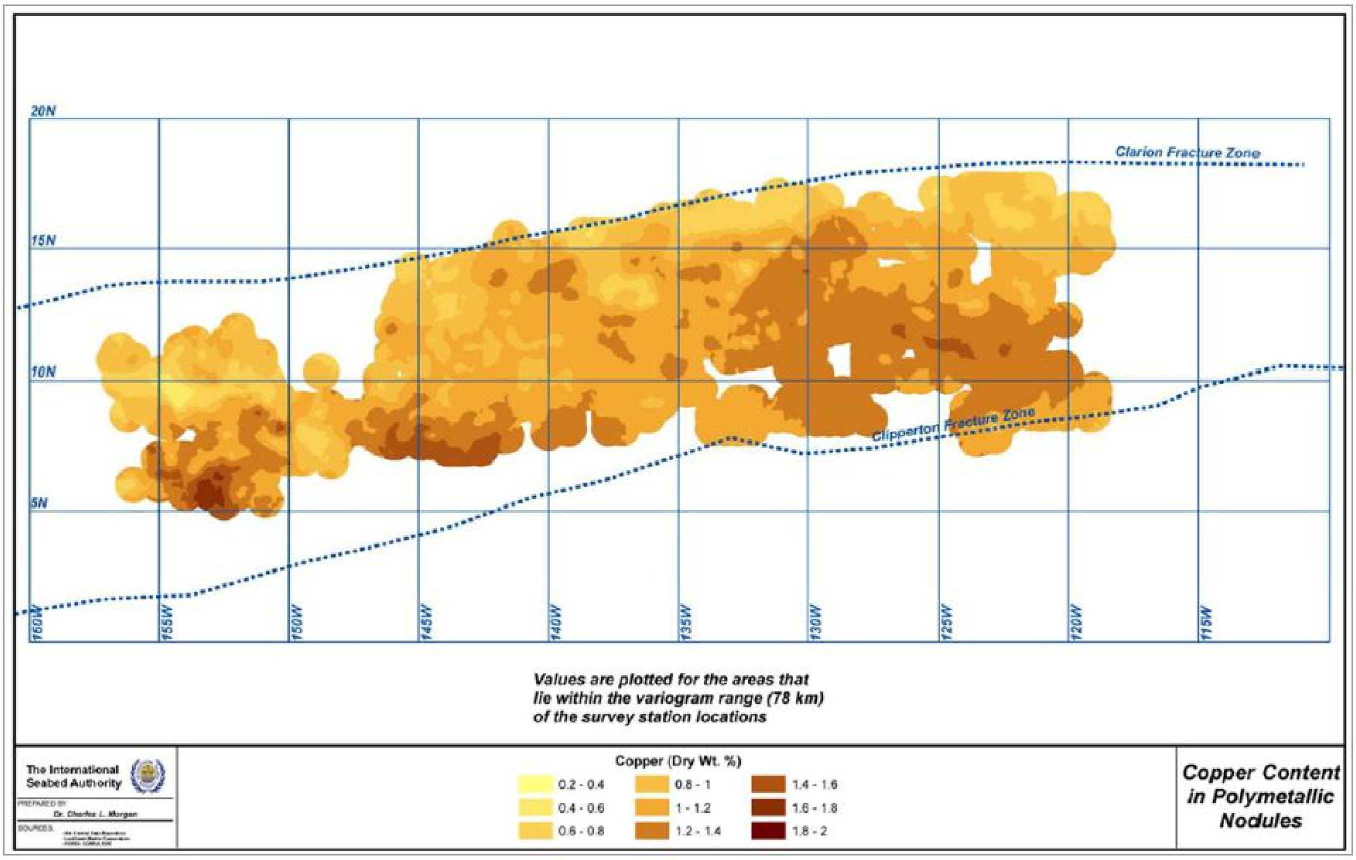
Source: ISA, 2009

Figure 6.4 Map of cobalt grade distribution in the CCZ



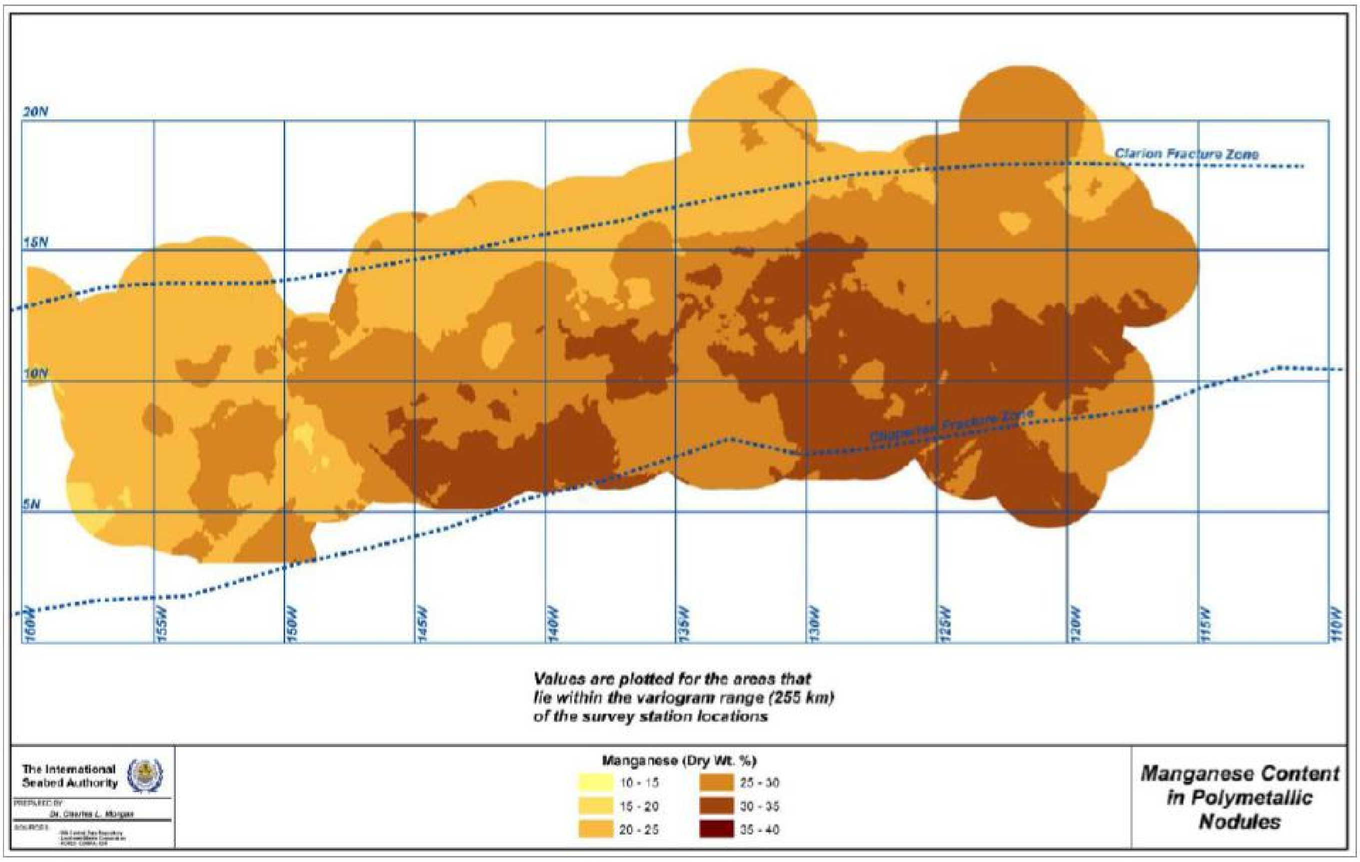
Source: ISA, 2009

Figure 6.5 Map of copper grade distribution in the CCZ



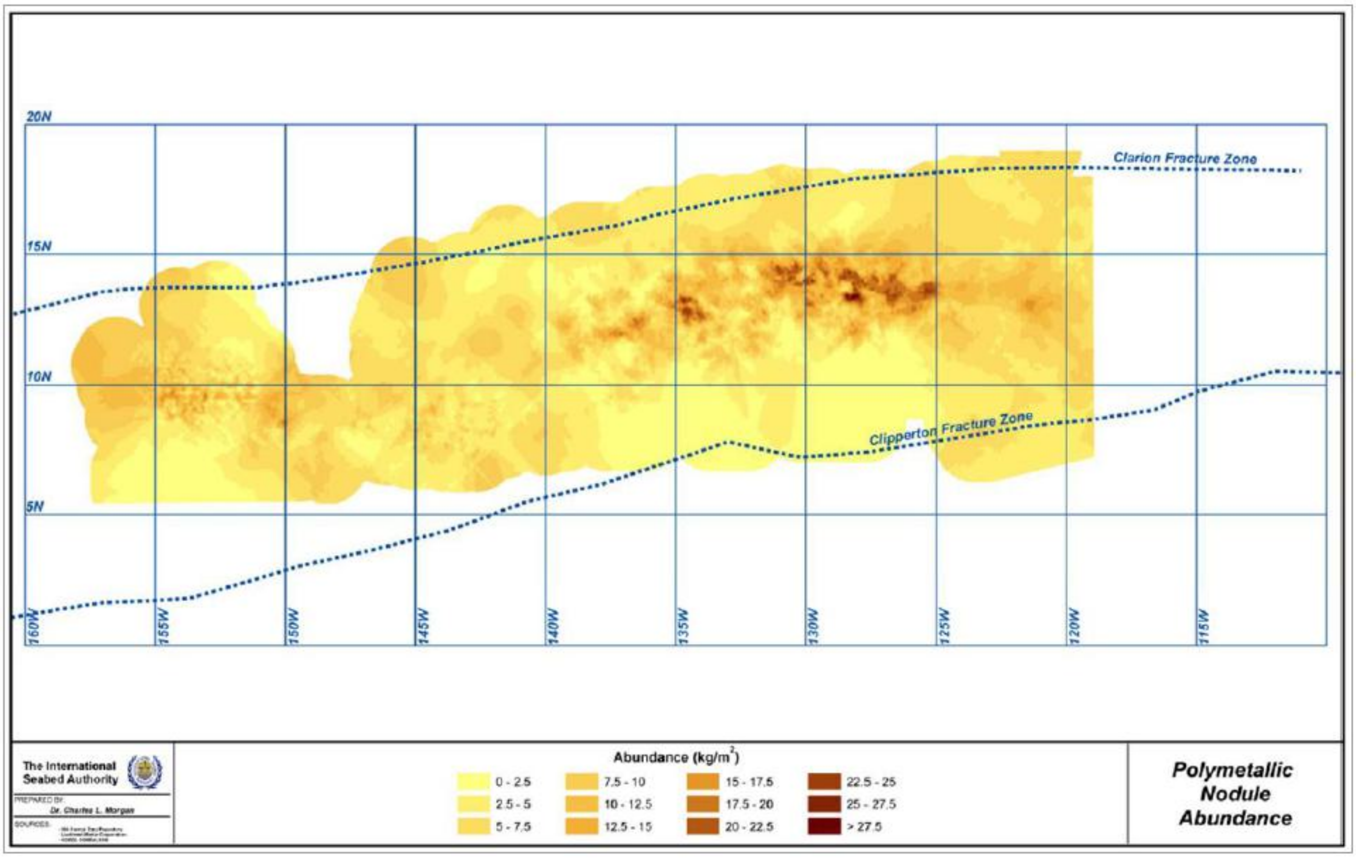
Source: ISA, 2009

Figure 6.6 Map of manganese grade distribution in the CCZ



Source: ISA, 2009

Figure 6.7 Map of nodule abundance distribution in the CCZ

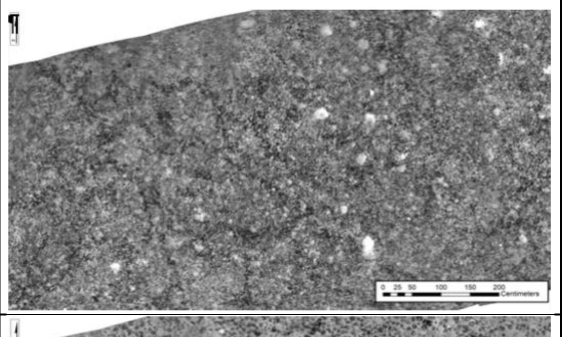
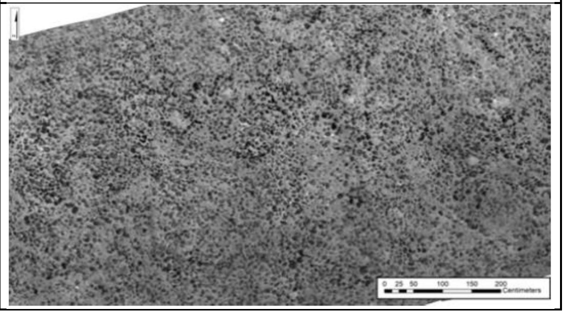


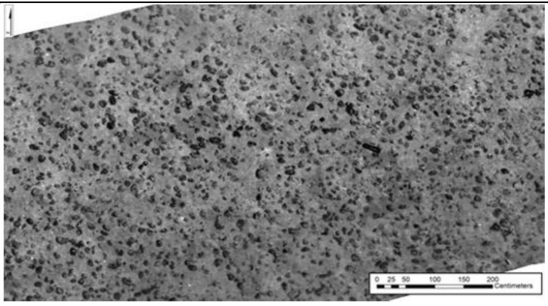
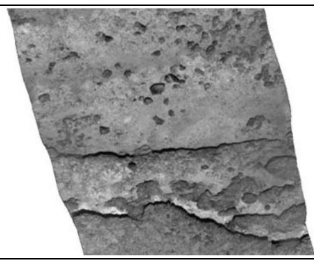
Source: ISA, 2009

6.3.3 Nodule facies

NORI identified three broad facies of nodule distribution on the seafloor (distribution pattern with similar nodule coverage and nodule sizes), based on camera imagery. They are summarized in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1 Nodule Facies in NORI Area D

Nodule camera facies type	Description	Example
Type 1 - densely packed / interconnected	>50% of seafloor covered by nodules ~1 – 10 cm length	
Type 2 - mostly individual / locally interconnected	~20 – 40% of seafloor covered by nodules Mostly 5 – 20 cm length	

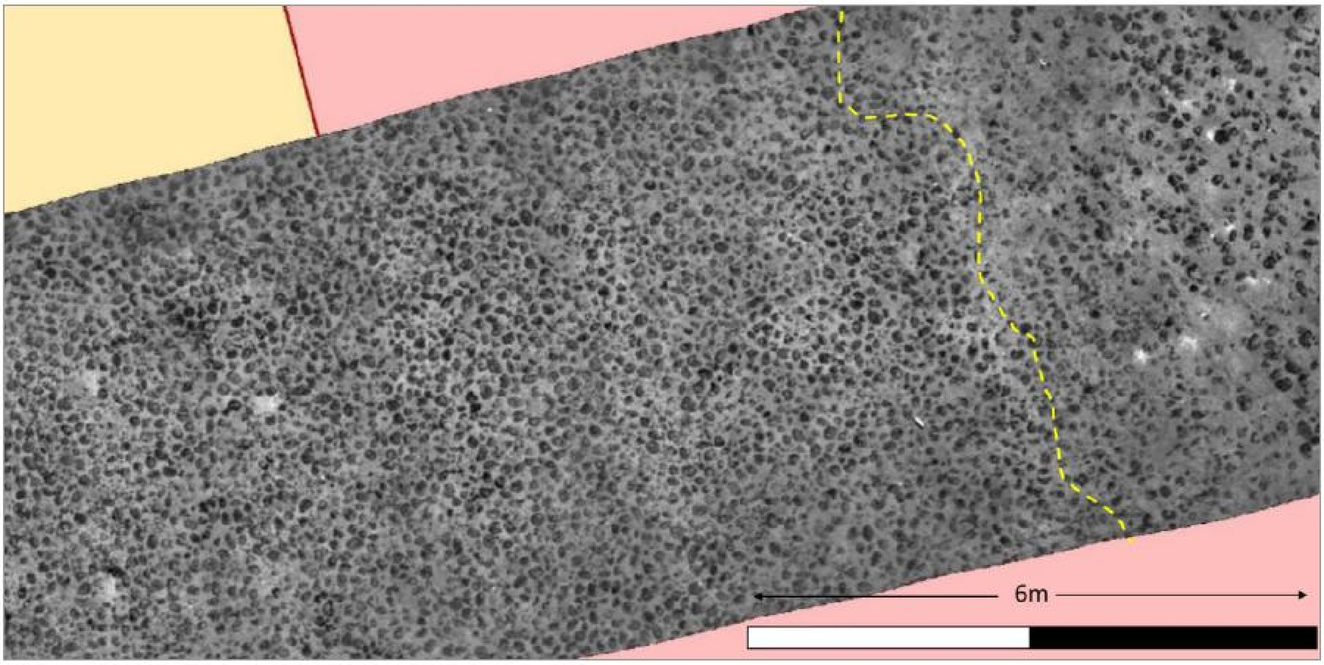
Type 3 – mostly individual / sparse	10 – 20% of seafloor covered by nodules Mostly 5 – 20 cm length	
Other	Volcanic outcrop - associated with NW-SE ridges	

Type 1 nodule facies is typically characterized by >50% nodules (by area of coverage). The majority of these nodules are typically medium-sized and are closely packed, with many nodules in contact with their neighbors.

Types 2 and 3 are characterized by larger nodules, and the nodules are typically separated (i.e., there are noticeable sediment gaps between individual nodules).

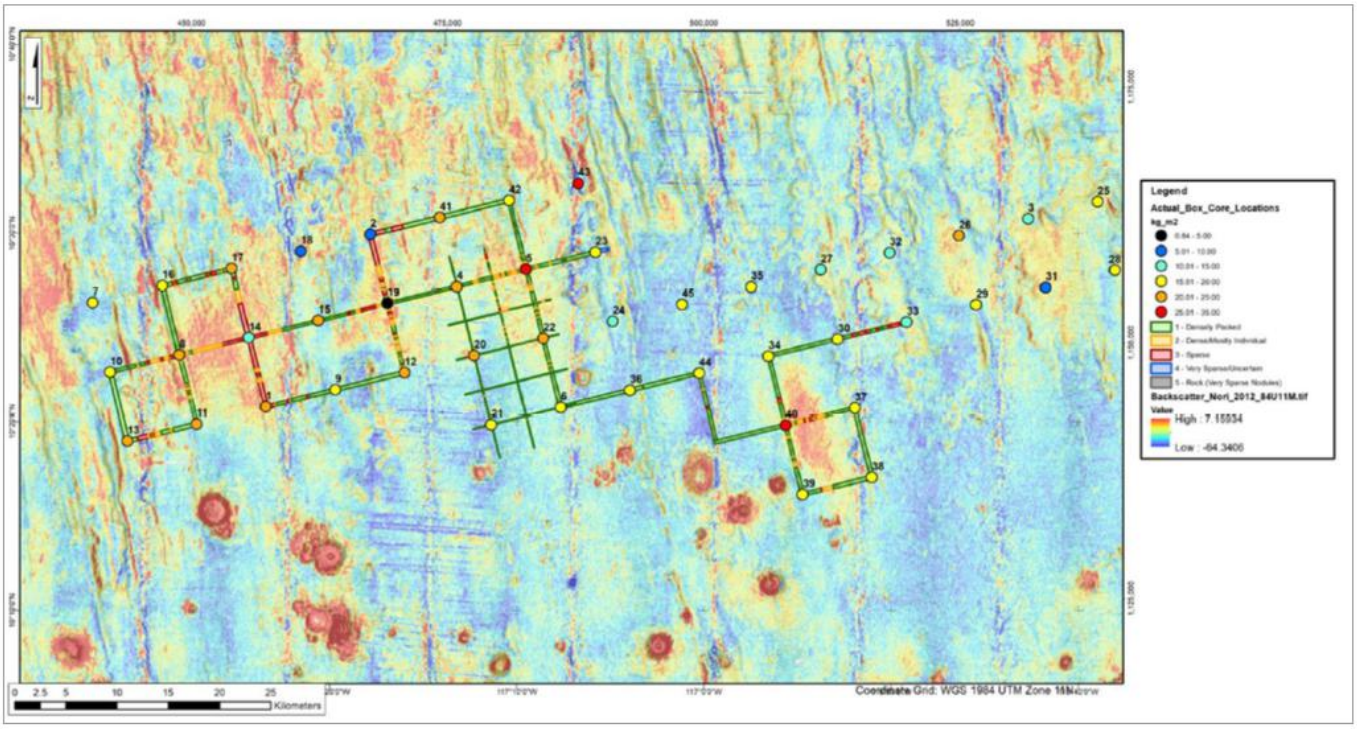
In high-resolution camera imagery, facies boundaries may be quite sharp (i.e., not gradational) and variable over short distances (<100 m), as illustrated in Figure 6.8.

Figure 6.8 Camera Imagery Showing Change from Type 3 Nodules (right) to Type 2 (left)



Nodule distributions can be mapped by measuring the backscatter (return signal) response from multi-beam echo sounding (MBES) from vessels on the ocean surface. Type 1 nodule facies correlates with moderate-amplitude backscatter areas and is the most common facies. Type 2 and 3 nodule facies typically correlate with higher-amplitude backscatter areas. These correlations are shown in Figure 6.9, which shows nodule classification according to photographic traversing by autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV). In Figure 6.9, the ribbon-tracks are colored as Type 1 (green), Type 2 (yellow), Type 3 (red) against a background of backscatter data. The backscatter data are colored by amplitude; high-amplitude areas associated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies shown in warmer colors, with Type 1 represented by colder colors. The highest amplitude signals indicate volcanic outcrops associated with seamounts and ridge-tops.

Figure 6.9 Map of Nodule Classification According to Photographic Traversing by AUV Compared to Backscatter Intensity[5]



5 Note: box core locations are labelled with box core number and coloured by abundance. Ribbon-track coloured by facies Type: Type 1 (green), Type 2 (yellow), Type 3 (red)) against a background of backscatter data. The backscatter responses are coloured by amplitude; high-amplitude areas associated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies shown in warmer colours, with Type 1 represented by colder colours.

6.4 Geological domains

Based on analysis of bathymetric data from the 2012 and 2018 campaigns, together with box core data, eight geological domains which characterize nodule prospectivity were interpreted:

1) **Abyssal plains:** these constitute the majority of NORI Area D and are characterised by gentle slopes of 0˚ to 6˚, and nodules lying on soft sediment. Nodules were observed to be ubiquitous in this domain wherever it was surveyed and sampled. It is considered a highly- prospective domain for nodules.

   The abyssal plains can be further divided into three subdomains based on backscatter response and ground-truthing (box core samples and land-out video footage):

   - Areas considered indicative of Type 2 and 3 nodule facies, as determined from high amplitude backscatter response.
   - Areas considered indicative of Type 1 nodule facies, as determined from moderate amplitude backscatter response.
   - Sediment drift domains—characterised by a soft sediment ooze with low amplitude backscatter response, and extremely low to no nodule abundance (1% area coverage).

The remaining 4% of the abyssal plains are occupied by the volcanic cones (see below):

1) **Abyssal hills:** these are topographically higher features, oriented NNW-SSE, and are parallel to one another. Slopes of the hills are mostly gentle on the western side, while they are very steep at the eastern side, likely representing horsts (fault blocks) bounded by inward-dipping normal faults and outward-dipping volcanic growth faults respectively.

2) **Abyssal hills (hard)**: abyssal hills where the hill crests are associated with the occurrence of hardgrounds, caused by proximity of underlying (harder) Neogene-age footwall sediment succession at the seafloor, typically covered by a veneer of unconsolidated sediment.

3) **Slopes ³ 6°**: these are associated with the flanks of abyssal hills, where the slope is 6° or greater, and are likely associated with hardgrounds and/or volcanic debris and volcanic outcrop development typically associated with NNW trending faults. These steep slopes are considered to have low nodule prospectivity but have not been fully tested with sampling or photography.

4) **Slopes ³ 6° (hard)**: these are associated with the flanks of abyssal hills where the slope is 6˚ or greater, and are associated with hardground development, typified by outcropping (harder) Neogene-age sedimentary rocks. These steep slopes are considered to have low nodule prospectivity, based on limited box core sampling, AUV SBP data and photography.

5) **Volcanic outcrops:** these are associated with volcanic growth-faults along the abyssal hill flanks, which trend NNW-SSE, and are elongated, narrow bodies mapped through integration of AUV SBP and camera data with EM 122 MBES data backscatter data.

6) **Volcanic cones**: these are typically grouped in chains and follow the east-southeast "Hawaiian trend". These are isolated features and were not sampled during the 2018 or 2019 NORI campaigns. However, due to their volcanic origin, steep slopes (>6˚) and dominant high-intensity backscatter (typically associated with volcanic outcrop), they are also considered to have low nodule prospectivity.

7) **Volcanic high:** this is a macro-scale topographic feature situated in the SE corner of NORI Area D. It is interpreted as a relic volcanic intersection high, which also includes a relic transform parallel trough. Both are volcanic related features associated with the Clipperton transform zone, situated to the south of NORI Area D.

These domains are described further in Section 11.5.

6.5 Nodule morphology and formation

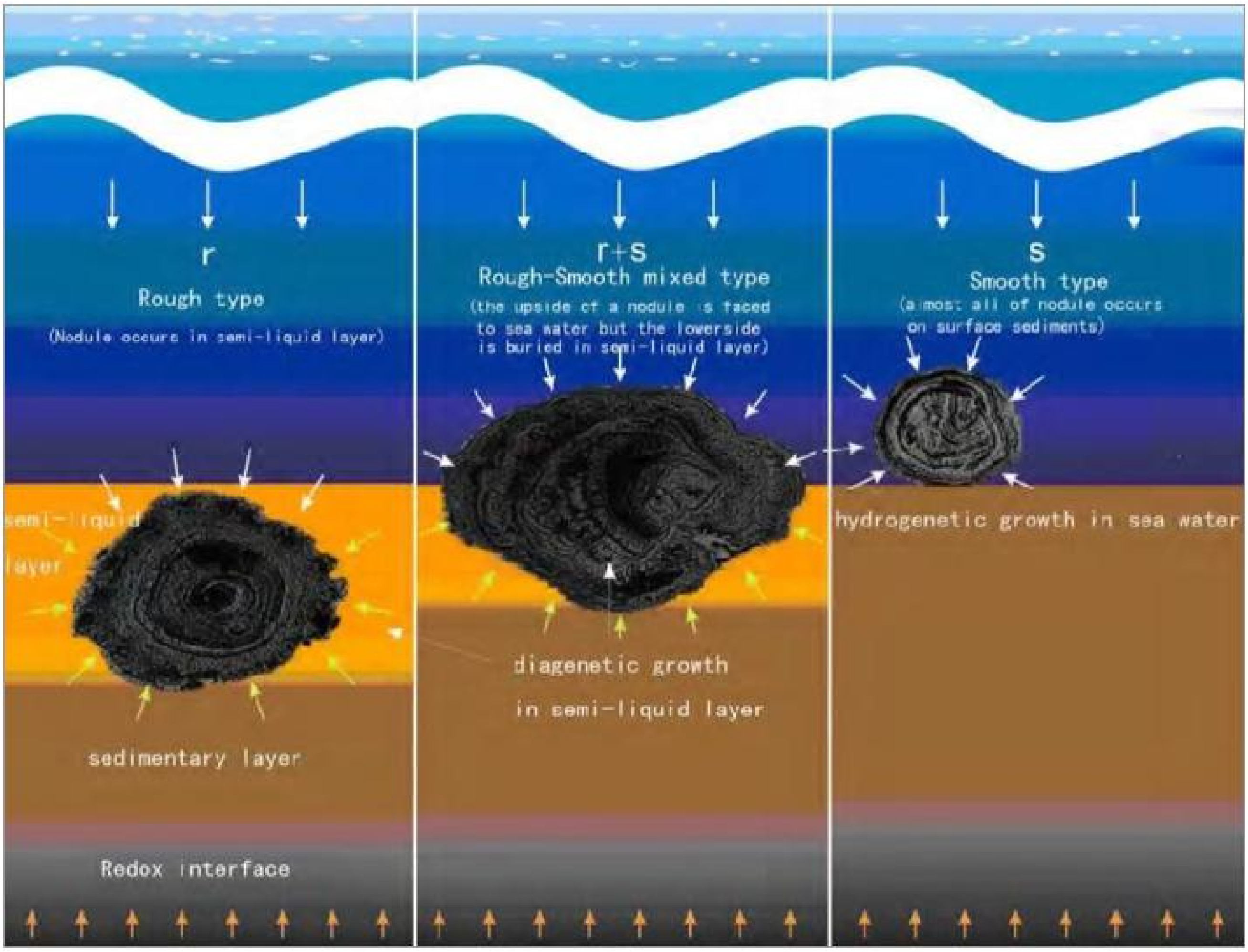
A variety of nodule classification systems were used in previous studies of the CCZ (for example, Haynes et al. 1985), but the three-class system promoted by the ISA (ISA 2010) prevails today (see Figure 6.10). Nodules are classified according to their morphology or texture, as:

- S-type (smooth type)
- R-type (rough type)
- S-R-type (smooth-rough mixed type)

It is postulated that the different textures are related to the position of the growing nodule, relative to the seafloor, as shown in Figure 6.10. The S-type nodules are interpreted to have grown by absorption of metals directly from seawater (hydrogenetic processes), the R-type are interpreted to have absorbed metals from the water within the seafloor sediment (diagenetic processes), and the S-R-type are interpreted to have grown as a result of both hydrogenetic and diagenetic processes. These formation mechanisms affect grade distribution and are considered in the development of estimation domains under S-K 1300.

There is a general association between this textural classification and the nodule facies observed in seafloor photographs and interpreted from backscatter response. Type 1 facies appears to be characterized by smaller S-type or S-R type nodules and Type 2 and 3 facies appear to be characterized by larger R-type or S-R -type nodules.

Figure 6.10 Nodule types



Source: ISA, 2010a

7 Exploration

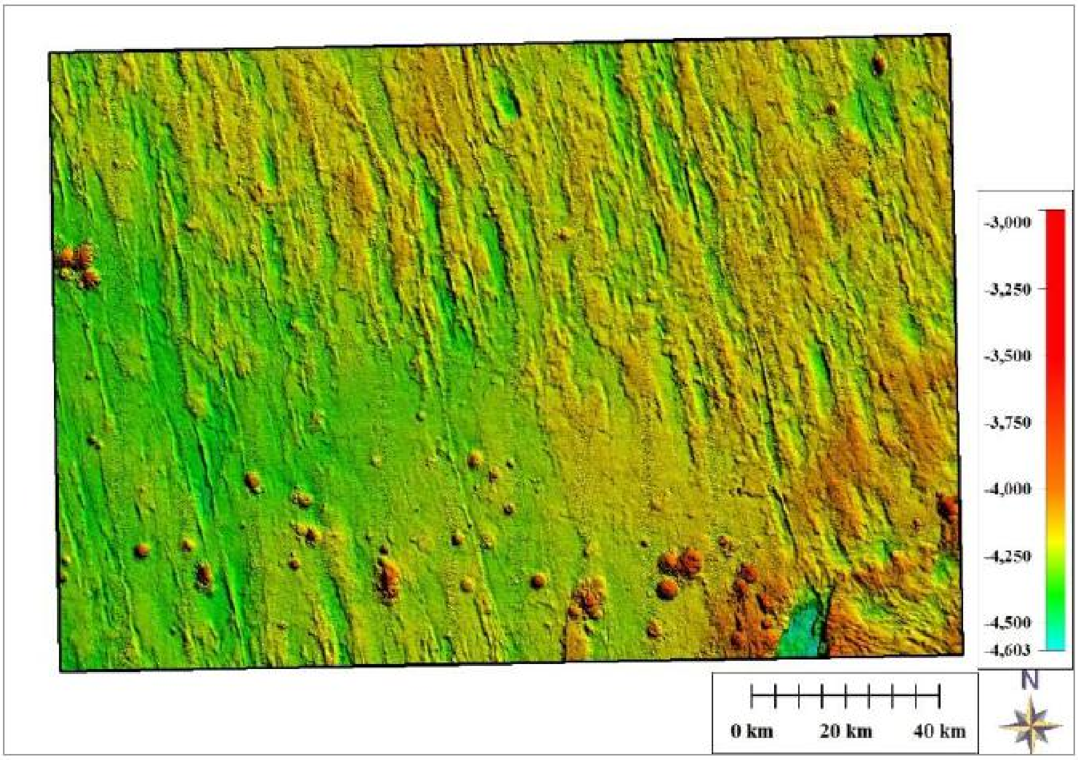
NORI completed offshore exploration campaigns in NORI Area D in 2012, 2018 and 2019. In addition, exploration data was gathered as part of test mining in 2022. Additional campaigns were completed in 2020 and 2021, but these were focussed on collecting environmental base-line data. A campaign was completed in late 2023 and early 2024 to examine recovery 12 months after completion of the collector test.

7.1 NORI 2012 campaign

The RV Mt. Mitchell, which sailed from the port of Seattle, was used for the NORI 2012 campaign. NORI conducted bathymetric mapping of the seafloor, using a hull-mounted Kongsberg Simrad EM120 12 kHz, full-ocean depth multibeam system, within NORI Area C and D, as well as bulk nodule sampling for metallurgical test work. Due to the nature of the bulk sampling, these samples are not suitable for use in Mineral Resource estimation and were therefore excluded from the data used in estimating the Mineral Resources disclosed herein.

The whole of NORI Area D (25,439 km^2) was surveyed. Due to swath width and vessel orientation relative to course-made-good, some data were recorded beyond the bounds of those areas. An image of the bathymetric data for NORI Area D, in plan view, is shown in Figure 7.1.

Figure 7.1 Map showing NORI Area D Bathymetry[6]



Note: the canted box is a result of projecting a large geographic area (bounds given in latitude / longitude format) into UTM 10 N, WGS 84. Colour scale units are metres below sea level.

6 Note: the canted box is a result of projecting a large geographic area (bounds given in latitude / longitude format) into UTM 10 N, WGS 84. Colour scale units are metres below sea level.

MBES data was processed during the 2012 NORI Campaign and used to locate areas of high nodule density for dredge sampling, based on the bathymetric surfaces and the backscatter intensities. Overall, the geophysical interpretation of the multibeam data was remarkably successful.

Bulk samples were collected by dredging from NORI Area D (28 dredge deployments). Approximately 4,500 kg of nodules were collected from NORI Area D. Video footage was also obtained during dredge deployments and, together with the samples recovered, provided verification of nodules within NORI Area D. Eighteen (18) nodule samples from NORI Area D were assayed. The samples grades were consistent with the mean grades derived from the historical grab samples in NORI Area D. A large suite of additional elements was also assayed. A drying test undertaken on a nodule sample collected during the NORI 2012 campaign indicated moisture loss of 24% at 120°C.

7.2 NORI 2018 campaign

7.2.1 Objectives and approach

Marine Geoscience Innovation (MARGIN) reprocessed the MBES backscatter data from the 2012 MV*Mt Mitchell* vessel-based MBES survey using the time-series data. This greatly improved the image quality (see Figure 7.2) compared to the original beam-averaged data and enabled geological interpretations of the data to be refined. These interpretations provided the foundation for selecting candidate test mining site targets for follow-up detailed AUV surveys. These targets were located within the central portion of NORI Area D and were designated the Detailed Survey Area Outline (DSAO) (Figure 7.2, red outline).

During April to June 2018, NORI conducted a successful survey and seafloor sampling program in NORI Area D using the OSV*Maersk Launcher* and mobilizing out of San Diego (Campaign 3). The work completed is summarized below. AMC 2019 provides additional information.

The key objectives of this program were to conduct detailed bathymetric and sonar imaging (MBES backscatter, side scan sonar (SSS), and photogrammetry surveys to help:

- Identify and select enough suitable ground for trials of a collector (the test mining).

- Provide sufficient geological and geotechnical detail to ensure that future sampling and test mining programs can be appropriately designed.
- Provide appropriate seafloor imagery to assist with selection of suitable environmental monitoring sites – particularly for physical oceanographic mooring studies.
- Identify smaller environmental baseline reference zones. An important consideration was that the habitats of these reference sites were similar in character to the site for the test mining.
- Demonstrate the methodology to upgrade resource confidence from Inferred to Indicated and Measured categories.

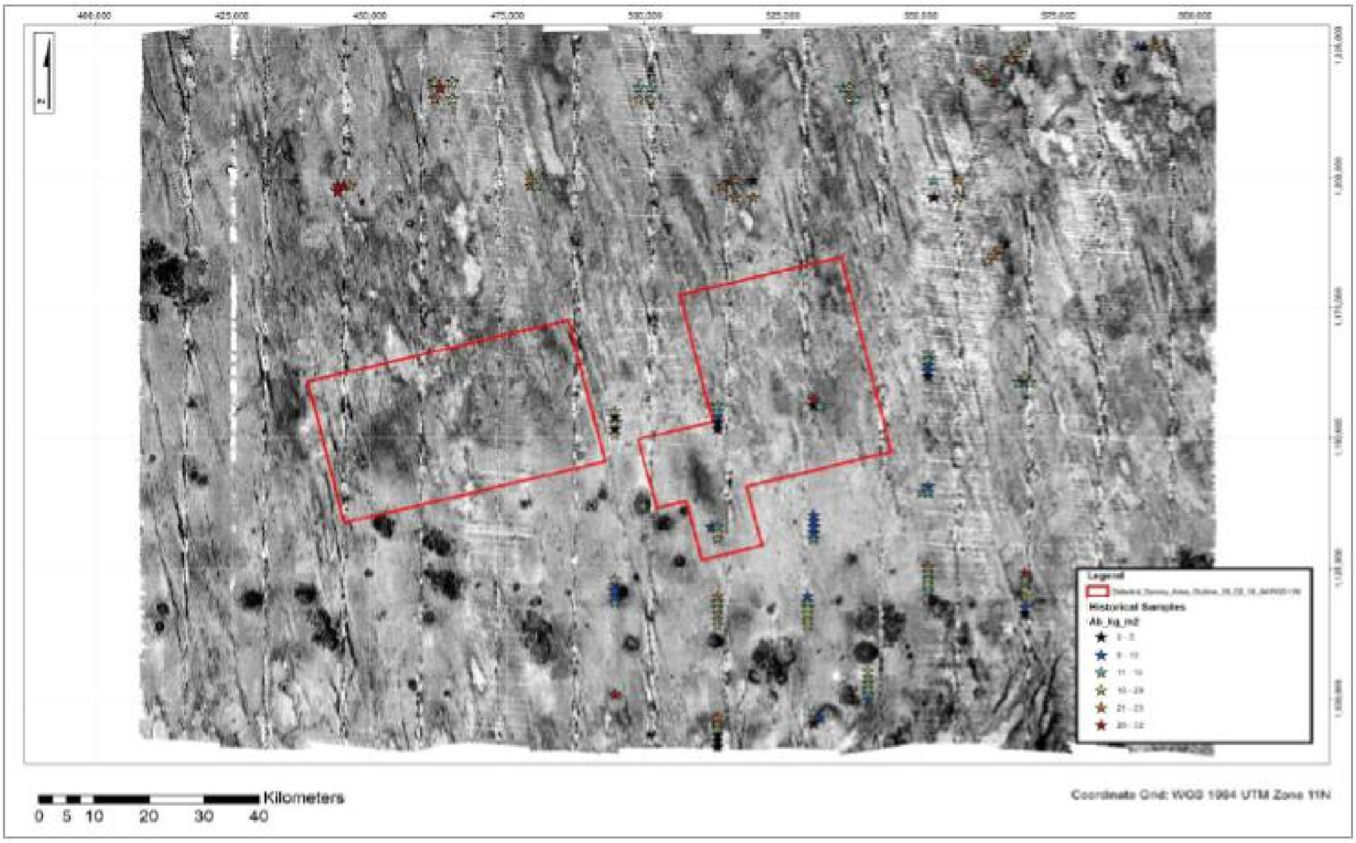
Fugro provided turnkey survey and seafloor sampling support for the campaign, including:

- AUV operational support.
- Hydrographic survey support.
- Data processing.
- Geoscience support for AUV survey (data compilation and preliminary data analysis).
- Geoscience support for box coring operations (core logging, nodule processing, geotechnical testing).

ERIAS Group environmental consultants provided biological sampling support. MARGIN conducted data QA/QC, survey design and data interpretation as a client representative on behalf of NORI.

The data acquired formed the primary basis for the Resource and Reserve estimates disclosed in this Report. All exploration results have been verified by the Qualified Person as required by Item 1302(b)(2)(ii).

Figure 7.2 Reprocessed EM120 Backscatter Data from NORI Area D 2012 Survey



Note: NB – areas designated for AUV detailed survey are shown outlined in red, constituting targets deemed to have high-nodule potential and characterised by dominantly flat-lying topography.

7.2.2 AUV survey

AUV survey methods were identified as the best technological fit for follow-up investigation at a site-survey scale. An AUV has the capability to provide co-registered multi-sensor datasets at the appropriate resolutions necessary to confidently select the most suitable site for test mining and provide a framework on which to build associated ongoing engineering and environmental studies.

Fugro's ESVII 4500 m-rated Kongsberg Hugin AUV was used to conduct the detailed survey work using an MBES, SSS, sub-bottom profiler (SBP), and camera payload (see Figure 7.3). The AUV typically navigates using a combination of Inertial Navigation System (INS) housed within the AUV and an acoustic navigation system (Kongsberg HiPAP 501 ultra-short baseline (USBL) system) communicating between the AUV and the support vessel. The USBL acoustically tethers the AUV to the support vessel, which follows the AUV during its survey and provides the AUV with navigation corrections to counteract drift in the INS system over time. This mode of operation was used for all reconnaissance mapping with the AUV. For survey of the test mining site, the AUV was positioned within an array of transponders positioned on the seafloor—termed an underwater transponder protocol (UTP) array. This enabled the AUV to operate autonomously to complete its survey, whilst the support vessel conducted other work in the exploration contract area.

There were four main AUV survey focus areas:

- Reconnaissance lines were collected at a 35 m AUV altitude in order to assess geological and near-surface conditions prior to acquiring low-altitude camera data. These data were also used to select the test mining site location and to assess possible areas for preservation reference zones (PRZ) in NORI Area D.
- Camera lines were run at a 6 m AUV altitude in order to map the distribution and abundance of the nodules. This data was also used to select the test mining site location.
- In the test mining site, data were collected at a 22 m altitude and were used to evaluate geologic and near-surface conditions for future test mining activities.
- Within the mooring sites, data were collected at a 90 m altitude and were used to evaluate geologic and near-surface conditions for future mooring locations.

Figure 7.3 Deployment ESVII Kongsberg Hugin AUV from the stern of the Maersk Launcher

Source: J. Croucher

Initial reconnaissance AUV survey traverses were conducted within the DSAO (see Figure 7.4) using MBES, SSS, and SBP payloads to provide confirmation of topographic and geological features observed in the 2012 vessel-based MBES dataset but at a higher level of detail and confidence. There was an excellent correlation between the AUV bathymetric data and that collected by hull-based multibeam methods in 2012, providing confidence in both sets of results. These traverses were then followed-up with low-altitude surveys using the AUV's camera payload (termed Camera High Priority survey (CHP)) to provide visual confirmation of nodule distribution.

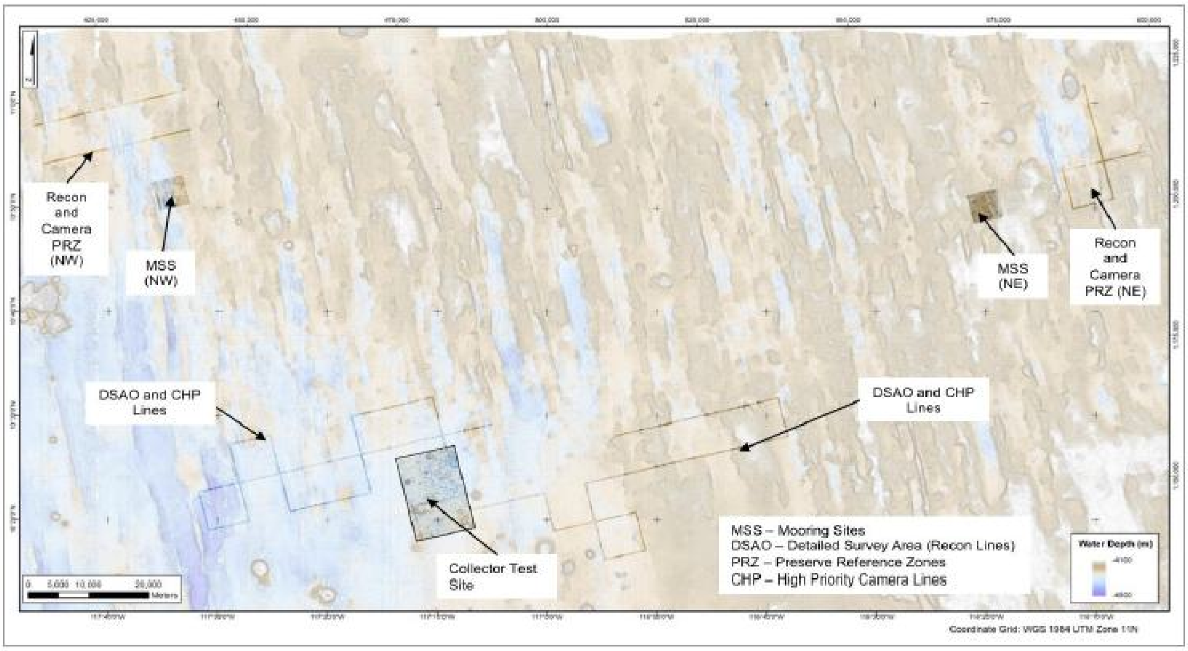
The reconnaissance traverses were also designed in such a manner as to provide information on nodule continuity (through acquisition of sonar and camera data) between proposed sampling sites on a 7 km rectilinear sampling grid. A key component of the success of the campaign was the ability to conduct simultaneous box coring operations along the DSAO survey traverses, whilst the AUV was engaged with unsupervised ultra-high resolution MBES survey within the selected test mining site, through use of the UTP seafloor acoustic positioning array.

A total of 2286 line km of data was acquired with the AUV, covering an area of approximately 375 km^2 of seafloor.

Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone
TMC the metals company Inc. 0225054

Table 7.1 summarizes data types and associated data resolutions collected by the AUV during the 2018 NORI campaign.

Figure 7.4 AUV Geosurvey Data Acquired during the 2018 NORI Campaign



Source: MARGIN

All data acquired by the AUV was processed on board the vessel to a level where preliminary interpretation could be made on the data by the Fugro geoscience team and NORI client representative on board. This was key in enabling on-site decision making for follow-up survey optimization, particularly with regards to selecting the most suitable test mining site.

Table 7.1 Summary of Data Types Collected by the AUV during the 2018 NORI Campaign

AUV altitude			Survey area							
			90 m		35 m			22 m	6 m	
Sensor	Data item	Details	MSS (NE)	MSS (NW)	DSAO	Recon PRZ (NE)	Recon PRZ (NW)	test mining area	CHP	Camera PRZ (NW)
MBES	Bathy	Bin size	3 m	3 m	1 m	50 cm	50 cm	27 cm	15 cm	15 cm
	Backscatter	Bin size	3 m	3 m	1 m	50 cm	50 cm	15 cm	15 cm	15 cm
Side scan sonar	SSL	Bin size	50 cm	50 cm	50 cm	25 cm	25 cm	27 cm	N/A	N/A
	SSH	Bin size	N/A	N/A	50 cm	25 cm	25 cm	15 cm	N/A	N/A
	SSX	Bin size	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	7 cm	7 cm
Camera	Orthos	Bin size	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	3 mm	3 mm
Sub bottom profiler	Sub bottom	Frequency	N/A	N/A	1-10 khz	1-10 khz	1-10 khz	1-10 khz	3.5-20.5 khz	3.5-20.5 khz

Note: MBES operated at 200 or 400 kHz, depending on survey resolution requirements. SSS was operated at 240 kHz, 540 kHz, or 1,600 kHz.Note: MBES operated at 200 or 400 kHz, depending on survey resolution requirements. SSS was operated at 240 kHz, 540 kHz, or 1,600 kHz.

7.2.3 Camera imagery

Camera imagery and data acquired by the Fugro ESVII AUV was logged to the AUV's internal payload processing data storage disk. This data is co-registered, and time-date stamped with the vehicle's other geophysical sensors (such as SSS) and navigation systems and resultant navigation data. The vehicle was positioned with a combination of INS and USBL navigation.

Once each dive was completed and the AUV returned to deck, the data was transferred across from the payload data disk bottle to the Fugro data processing server and backed-up.

Preliminary processing of the data was undertaken on board to aid follow-up survey site selection and optimization. Review of the data was undertaken by the Fugro geoscience team and NORI client representative on the vessel. The data was fully processed post campaign completion at Fugro's Layfette offices in Louisiana.

Additional image classification and nodule long-axes automated extraction was undertaken by the same Fugro 2018 NORI campaign Geoscience members at Fugro's offices in Houston, Texas.

7.2.4 Box coring

Box coring was undertaken using a 0.75 m^2 box corer built by KC Denmark A/S, deployed from a H-frame situated amid ships of the*Maersk Launcher* (see Figure 7.5). A total of 45 box cores were acquired during the campaign. All box cores were acquired in the detailed survey area on a 7 km square grid (see Figure 7.6). The sampling grid was designed prior to the mobilization of the 2018 NORI campaign; therefore, the samples were selected without reference to any of the detailed geophysical data to avoid any bias.

Each box core site was located by positioning the vessel over the proposed box core location and acoustically monitoring the box core's position during descent using the vessel's USBL system communicating with a USBL transponder attached to the box core frame. Once the box core was lowered to approximately 30 m above the seafloor, the surveyor monitored when it was within a 35 m target circle displayed over the proposed target location on the USBL navigation workstation monitor. Once this condition was met, the instruction was given to lower the box core to bottom. Once on bottom a series of position fixes were acquired to solve the on-bottom position. The mean distance between the proposed target location and actual box core position was 18.4 m ±7.9 m.

It is important to note that the hydrographic surveyors guiding the landing out of box cores were only supplied the expected seafloor datum at the proposed core site location. They did not have access to any geophysical data (backscatter, SSS, camera, etc.) during these operations. This ensured that the sampling was conducted without any bias.

Once the position fix was taken, the cutting shovel was released to seal and secure the sample and the box corer was winched up off the seafloor. Once the sample was secured on deck, the samples follow three processing paths - environmental, geotechnical, and mineralogy.

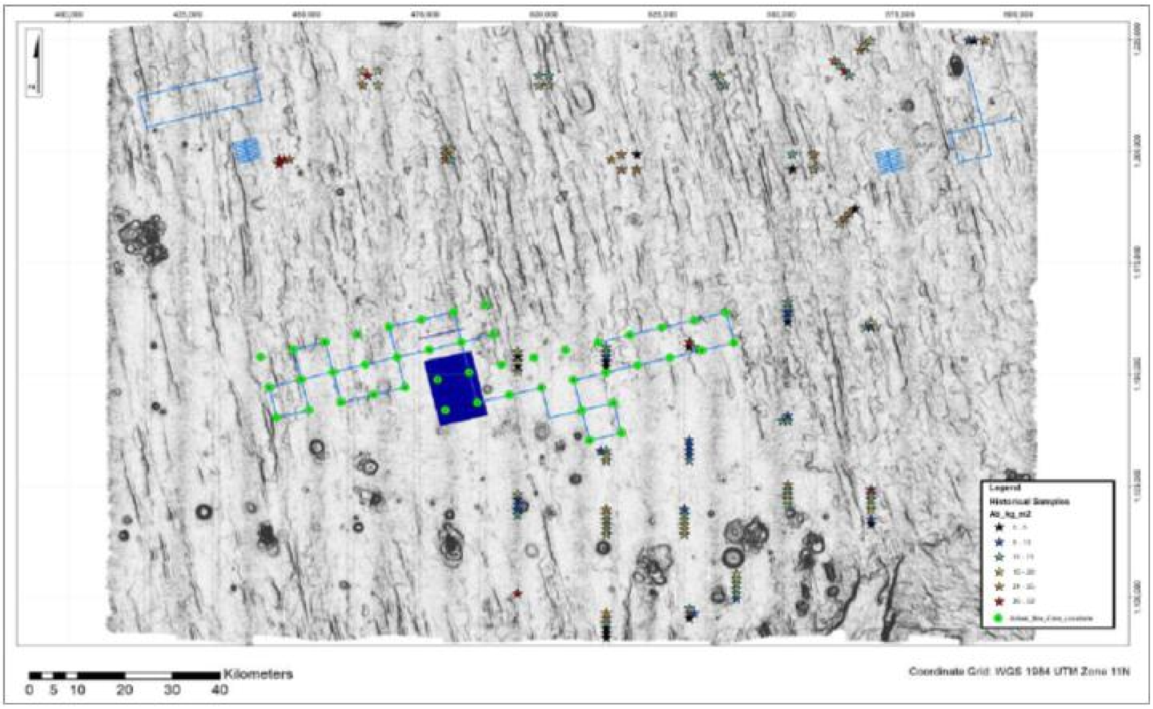
A standalone GoPro camera system in a pressure-rated underwater housing and LED lights were attached to the legs of the box corer. This enabled post-recovery analysis of land-outs to be made and comparison of actual box core nodule recovery and in-situ nodule distribution on seafloor.

Figure 7.7 shows a sequence of box core land-out footage from the GoPro camera. The top image shows the land out site visual as box core is deployed to seafloor. The middle image shows the box corer sitting on the seafloor, before sample is taken (shovel open). The bottom image shows the box corer retracting from seafloor following successful closure of shovel. Loss of the laser-scale early in the campaign meant that nodule dimensions could not be accurately measured from the GoPro images.

Figure 7.5 KC Denmark 0.75 m² box corer

Source:MARGIN

Figure 7.6 Box core locations for 2018 NORI Campaign 3



Source: MARGIN. Note: Historical sampling shown by stars. NORI 2018 campaign AUV geosurvey traverses shown in blue.

Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study of NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone
TMC the metals company Inc. 0225054

Figure 7.7 Sequence of Box Core Land-out Footage from GoPro Camera

Source: NORI

All samples were processed on board post-retrieval of a box core sample to deck (see Figure 7.8). The vessel was equipped with a biology cold laboratory and geoscience laboratory.

Once the box core was landed out on deck and safely secured, the box was separated from the box corer frame. Three processing protocols for environmental, geotechnical, and resource began immediately after collection of each box core. The processing flow on deck was undertaken in the following sequence:

- The top of the sample with the supernatant water still in place was photographed.
- The water was then carefully siphoned, bailed and / or suctioned off the sample and processed for biological analysis by the biological team on board.
- The undisturbed surface of the retrieved material (nodule surface) was photographed.
- A 50 × 50 cm area of the retrieved material was cordoned for biological study.

- Three subsamples were obtained from the undisturbed areas outside of the biology exclusion area for geotechnical purposes. All nodules except for possible buried nodules captured in the 2.638-inch push samples followed the Mineral Resource processing path.
- All surface nodules, when extracted from the box, proceeded to the biology wet laboratory where they were washed with cold seawater through a sieve.
- All buried nodules in the 50 × 50 cm area reserved for biologic sampling also proceeded to the biology wet laboratory. After washing, these nodules were returned to the geology wet laboratory.
- All buried nodules outside of the area of biologic investigation were washed of mud on deck and proceeded to the geology wet laboratory for description, measurement, photography, and sequestration in sample bags within gasket sealed pails.

Figure 7.8 On-deck sample processing

Source: NORI

7.2.5 Nodule sampling

Each box core was sampled by depth interval. Four intervals were used:

- 0–1 cm
- 1–5 cm
- 5–15 cm
- >15 cm

By weight, 91% of nodules occurred in the top layer and were exposed at the seafloor, and 99% occurred within the top 15 cm.

Nodules were processed through three stations (a weighing station, volume station and photography station) before being divided into samples and stored in labelled, gasket sealed 6-gallon pails. All data was collated in a series of Excel spreadsheets.

The geology team measured the density of samples of individual nodules or batches of nodules from each box core. Non-breakable beakers ranging from 200 ml to 2L were used to measure the volume displaced by the nodules. These measurements were used to calculate wet density values. The average of the results was 2.0 wmt/m^3.

Samples for distribution to assay laboratories were prepared at sea so that the samples could be sent to their destinations upon demobilization. The mass of nodules recovered in the box cores was generally much more than required for assaying, so it was necessary to divide the nodules in an unbiased manner, to produce samples for assay and for reference. This was done by the cone and quarter method (see Figure 7.9). The sampling protocol varied according to the weight of the nodules (see Table 7.2 for summary).

After samples were split, the samples were divided into series of subsamples for marketing, primary assay, reference, duplicate primary sample and secondary primary sample. These were placed in sealed bags. Each sample was given a unique numbered zip tie placed inside the bag. Bar codes were generated from these unique numbers and adhered to the side of the bag, plus written on the side of the bag in permanent marker pen. Bar codes were linked to the Excel sampling database.

Certified blank samples were purchased from ALS laboratories in Reno, Nevada and inserted into the primary and duplicate sequence at a rate of 1 for every 10. One blank from the primary sequence and one blank in the duplicate sequence was spiked with approximately 50 g of nodules sourced from a marketing split. Certified nodule reference materials were purchased from the United States Geological Survey (USGS) and inserted randomly into the sample stream at the assay laboratory.

All samples were placed in gasket-sealed 6-gallon pails and sealed with tamper-proof tape.

Table 7.2 Sampling protocol

Total nodule weight	Procedure	Primary assay sample	Reference sample (retained)	Duplicate (primary lab)	Duplicate (secondary lab)	Marketing sample
0–4 kg	Crush oversize, cone and quarter. Combine opposite quarters to make two samples.	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
4–8 kg	Crush oversize, cone and quarter. Bag separately.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

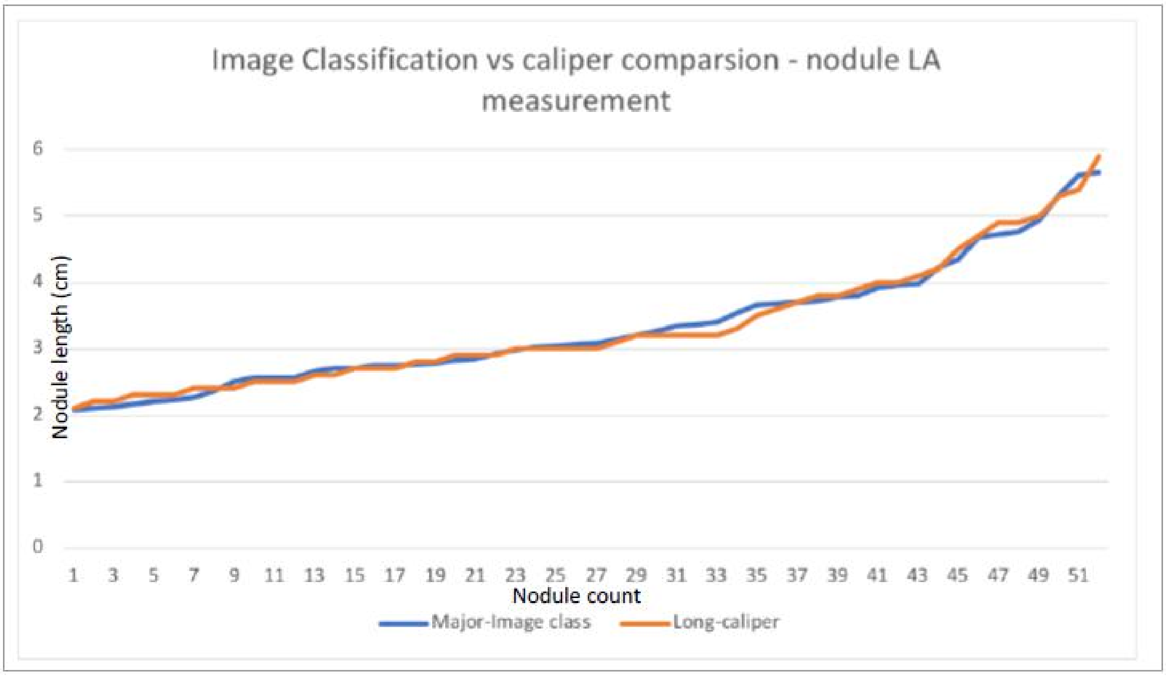
Figure 7.9 Coning and quartering process

Source: NORI

7.2.6 Image classification and size measurement

Image-classification software was used to provide an alternative automated approach to measuring nodule dimensions using photographs. The QP has reviewed the outputs of the image classification method and deemed them consistent with physical measurements, permitting their use in tonnage estimation. Figure 7.10 compares the automated image-processing method and hand-held calliper measurements and shows a very good correlation between the two datasets. The average (mean) lengths of the long axes of the nodules using the classification approach and the measured approach were both 3.31 cm. The mean for short axis estimation using the classification approach was 2.68 cm, whilst the mean for the measured approach was 2.72 cm. The test demonstrated that the image-classification method was a practical, accurate method for measuring two orthogonal axes of the nodules, and it was used from box core BC_006 onwards.

Figure 7.10 Comparison of Image Classifier Results vs. Caliper Measurements



Source: MARGIN

7.2.7 Biological sampling

The biological sampling was completed in 35 of the box cores and consisted of the following:

- 239 nodule biota specimens were sampled.
- 62 megafauna (>2 cm) specimens were sampled.

Samples were placed in cold storage for further analysis once ashore.

7.2.8 Geotechnical sampling

The geotechnical component of the NORI 2018 Campaign was designed to investigate the soil properties and develop an understanding of the soil geology and engineering parameters and thereby support the development of the ground model of NORI Area D.

Forty-three (43) box cores retrieved sufficient undisturbed soil for geotechnical testing. Figure 7.6 shows the box core locations. Three (3) soil subsamples for geotechnical study were obtained from the undisturbed areas outside of the biological sampling area of each box core. These consisted of one 54 mm (2.125 inch) inside diameter (ID) liner sample, and two 67 mm (2.638 inch) ID clear polycarbonate tubes pushed into the box core sample. The focus of the geotechnical sampling was the footwall sediment sequence: the nodules were removed prior to geotechnical sampling.

The liner sample was used to conduct basic offshore index and strength laboratory tests, comprised of soil descriptions, wet density measurements, and undrained shear strength index tests. Torvane tests and intact and residual laboratory vane tests were conducted.

The two (2) subsamples taken in polycarbonate tubes were retained for onshore laboratory testing. The following standard laboratory tests were performed onshore by the Fugro laboratory in Houston, Texas: water content, Atterberg limits, total wet (bulk) density, grainsize analyses (sieve and hydrometer), organic content, carbonate content, specific gravity; and undisturbed/intact and remoulded laboratory vane. Additional onshore testing was conducted to establish the presence of sulfate within samples due to abnormal results noted in water content, Atterberg limits and carbonate testing.

Results from the field tests revealed that the shallow soil stratigraphy consists of a veneer (about 15 cm thick) of surficial, dark brown, very soft clay of which the top 6 cm presented in a semi-liquid state. The semi-liquid state was later interpreted to be the result of degassing and disturbance during box core retrieval. At about 15 cm depth, typically, a color change from dark brown to light brown occurs. Evidence of bioturbation of the light brown layer is indicated by mottling with dark brown and brown clays. It was noted on the high-resolution geophysical survey data that a reflector at about 15 cm to 20 cm depth was consistently present across all the box core sites sampled. This depth corresponds with the top of the light brown clay. Qualitative carbonate content testing typically indicates no reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid (10% concentration).

Full details of the operations, testing and results are contained in the Fugro reports *No. 1803-1344, Volume I Geotech Field Report* and *No. 1803-1344_Volume II Geotechnical Data Report*. Fugro, 2019).

Further consolidated analysis of the geotechnical investigation data is contained in Section 7.14.

7.2.9 Exploration results

The exploration results discussed herein include all data relevant to the Mineral Resource estimate. Additional data was acquired throughout the campaign for the purposes of selecting and mapping a test mining site, environmental preservation reference zones and oceanographic mooring site. These results are not discussed in any detail in this report.

7.2.9.1 Box core abundance

Table 7.3 lists the box core locations and recorded abundances. Figure 7.11 shows the spatial distribution of nodule abundance. The box cores had an average nodule abundance of 17.8 wet kg/m^2, with the highest abundance reported at 30.9 wet kg/m^2 (BC_005). The two lowest recorded abundances are BC_019 (0.8 wet kg/m^2) and BC_031 (6.5 wet kg/m^2).

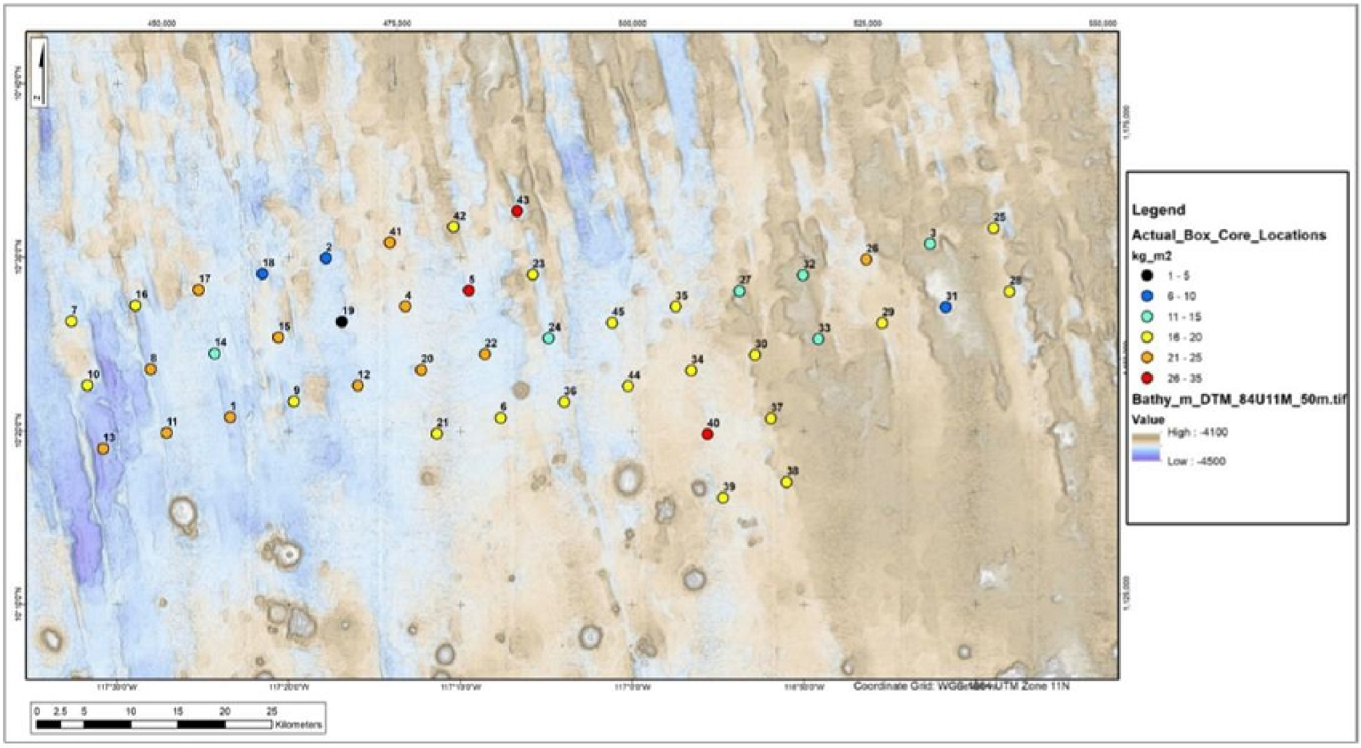
Table 7.3 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights- Campaign 3

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies (Type)
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Offshore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Offshore	Onshore	
BC_001	C3	457264.18	1143766.99	15.58	15.71	20.77	20.94	3
BC_002	C3	467489.80	1160647.52	6.28	6.31	8.37	8.41	2
BC_003	C3	531639.01	1162171.82	9.28	9.31	12.37	12.41	1
BC_004	C3	475895.81	1155523.38	17.55	17.47	23.40	23.30	1
BC_005	C3	482648.26	1157201.28	23.15	23.40	30.86	31.20	2
BC_006	C3	486026.80	1143693.04	13.81	13.56	18.41	18.08	1
BC_007	C3	440386.88	1153952.45	12.73	12.73	16.97	16.97	1
BC_008	C3	448824.28	1148843.81	15.75	15.47	21.00	20.63	1
BC_009	C3	464057.30	1145434.46	14.99	14.71	19.98	19.62	1
BC_010	C3	442086.43	1147143.64	12.76	12.68	17.01	16.90	1
BC_011	C3	450513.22	1142091.06	15.52	15.44	20.69	20.59	1
BC_012	C3	470813.45	1147104.99	15.86	15.78	21.14	21.04	1
BC_013	C3	443768.58	1140414.61	16.40	16.30	21.87	21.73	1
BC_014	C3	455617.96	1150528.98	8.28	8.20	11.04	10.93	3
BC_015	C3	462378.55	1152222.79	15.89	15.78	21.19	21.04	1
BC_016	C3	447191.82	1155620.92	13.25	13.18	17.67	17.58	1
BC_017	C3	453928.14	1157280.46	15.47	15.35	20.62	20.47	1
BC_018	C3	460688.57	1158972.55	5.69	5.67	7.59	7.55	3
BC_019	C3	469145.11	1153888.38	0.63	0.63	0.84	0.83	3
BC_020	C3	477585.44	1148784.89	16.16	16.02	21.54	21.35	1
BC_021	C3	479247.80	1142022.94	13.11	13.09	17.48	17.46	1
BC_022	C3	484339.47	1150470.78	18.12	17.84	24.16	23.79	1
BC_023	C3	489431.84	1158888.64	11.42	11.35	15.22	15.14	1
BC_024	C3	491116.75	1152147.24	10.52	10.57	14.03	14.09	1
BC_025	C3	538408.67	1163835.29	11.74	11.69	15.65	15.59	1
BC_026	C3	524878.08	1160503.75	16.22	16.07	21.62	21.43	1
BC_027	C3	511391.09	1157166.93	10.94	11.16	14.58	14.88	1

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies (Type)
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Offshore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Offshore	Onshore	
BC_028	C3	540079.38	1157106.54	14.39	14.25	19.18	19.00	1
BC_029	C3	526559.98	1153748.98	11.69	11.86	15.59	15.81	1
BC_030	C3	513057.43	1150386.46	11.39	11.60	15.19	15.46	1
BC_031	C3	533316.49	1155426.44	4.85	4.92	6.47	6.56	2
BC_032	C3	518134.54	1158832.84	10.23	10.11	13.64	13.48	1
BC_033	C3	519774.61	1152069.76	10.55	10.53	14.07	14.04	1
BC_034	C3	506284.21	1148723.41	13.55	13.71	18.06	18.28	2
BC_035	C3	504623.76	1155493.21	14.10	14.26	18.80	19.01	1
BC_036	C3	492779.55	1145366.06	14.40	14.50	19.20	19.33	1
BC_037	C3	514726.70	1143626.38	11.45	11.53	15.27	15.38	1
BC_038	C3	516391.93	1136877.00	12.98	13.02	17.30	17.36	1
BC_039	C3	509642.18	1135206.95	13.70	13.50	18.27	17.99	1
BC_040	C3	507980.37	1141953.14	22.44	22.16	29.92	29.55	1

BC_041	C3	474238.07	1162296.03	16.31	16.02	21.75	21.36	1
BC_042	C3	480998.40	1163967.76	11.61	11.52	15.48	15.35	1
BC_043	C3	487762.32	1165645.34	21.26	20.98	28.34	27.98	1
BC_044	C3	499538.57	1147044.90	14.72	14.90	19.62	19.86	1
BC_045	C3	497864.92	1153783.30	12.82	12.87	17.09	17.16	1

Figure 7.11 Plan of Box Core locations and Abundance (in wet kg/m²) Campaign 3



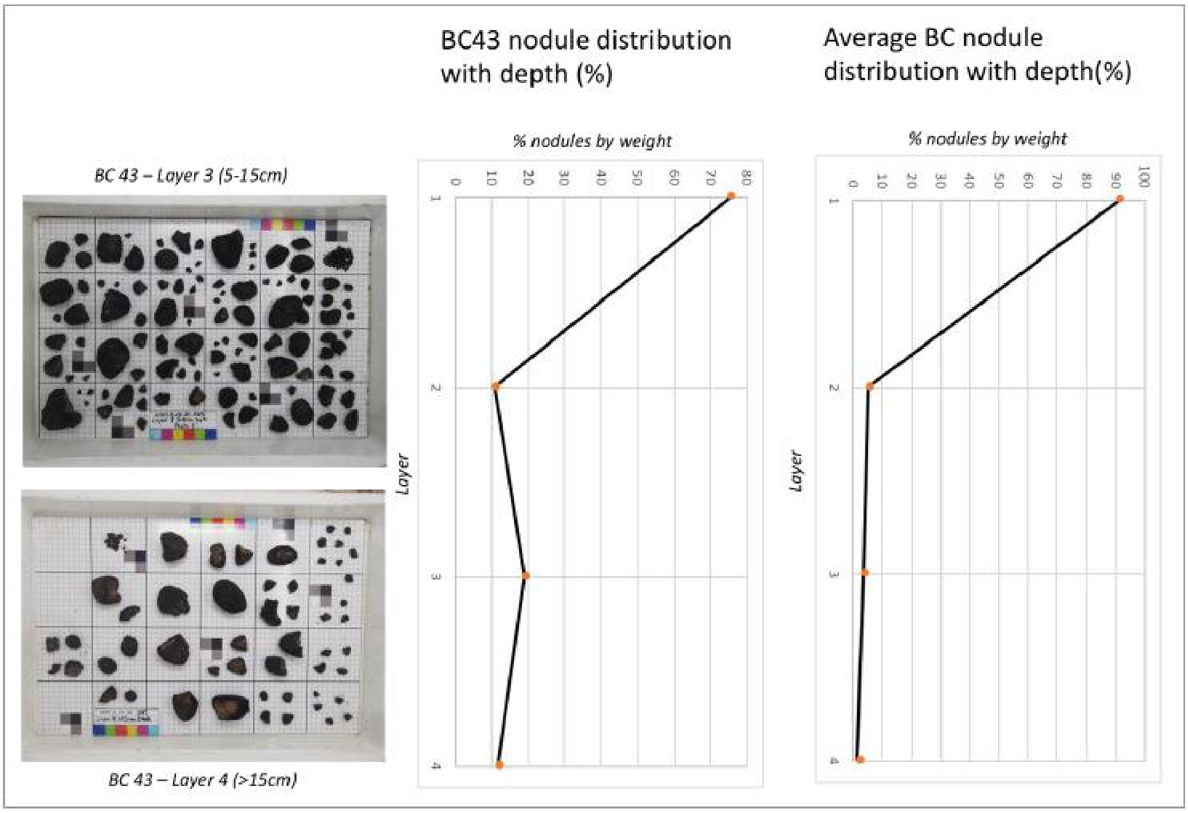
Source: MARGIN. Note: box cores labelled by box core number

7.2.9.2 Buried nodules

On average, 91% of nodules by weight were located at 0–1 cm (exposed at seafloor). This is an important consideration as it implies that a representative nodule abundance can be estimated using seafloor camera imagery to map and characterize nodule surficial distribution at seafloor.

A few nodules pushed down deeper from upper layers by the sides of the box core, typified by accumulation along the sidewalls of the box corer were observed below 5 cm depth. BC_043 was an exception and returned a significant weight of nodules that may have been *in situ*, at all levels (see Figure 7.12). The buried nodules were very friable.

Figure 7.12 Profile of Nodule Weight by Depth in BC_043



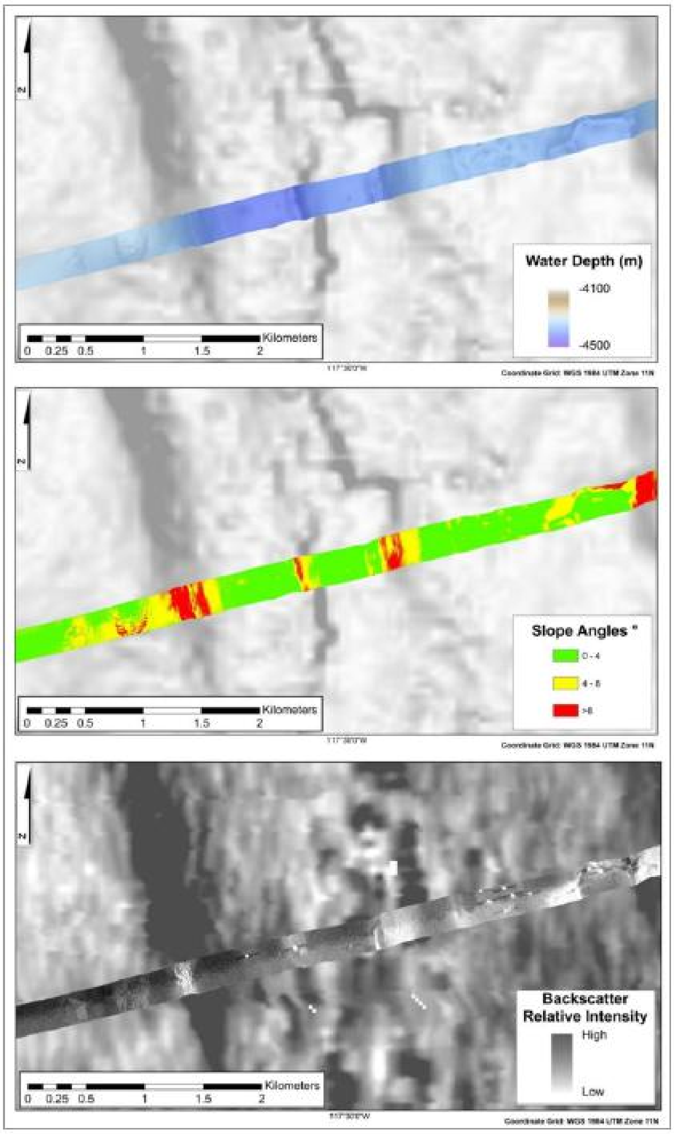
Source: MARGIN. Note: photo trays from layers 3 and 4 (left), nodule distribution with depth for BC43 (centre) compared to average nodule distribution with depth for all box cores (right).

7.2.9.3 AUV data

Reconnaissance AUV MBES traverses were conducted over the candidate test mining sites to provide confirmation of topographic and geological features observed in the 2012 vessel-based MBES dataset but at a higher level of detail and confidence. Traverses were followed up with low-altitude surveys using the AUV's camera payload to provide visual confirmation of nodule distribution. The reconnaissance lines also enabled calibration and refinement of the NORI Area D regional geological interpretation. Based on these revised interpretations a geomorphological domain interpretation was developed and preliminary relationships between backscatter and nodule distribution facies observed in camera data were established.

Figure 7.13 shows examples of AUV MBES data (colored ribbons) from reconnaissance traverses, overlain on EM120 vessel-based MBES data, shown as the grey-scale background image, shaded by slope intensity. The AUV data provides much finer-scale resolution (1 m) than vessel-based bathymetry (50 m) and shows good spatial correlation with macro-features. Further detail concerning slope-comparisons between the two datasets is provided in Section 7.13.2. The comparison of backscatter data (bottom image of Figure 7.13) shows AUV backscatter (1 m resolution), overlain on vessel-based backscatter data (30 m resolution). Differences in backscatter imagery between the two datasets shown are a result of differing seafloor responses due to the different frequencies used by the two systems. The AUV system acquired backscatter data at 400 kHz, and the vessel-based system at 12 kHz. Figure 7.14 illustrates the fine geological detail provided by the AUV MBES. This type of detailed data will be useful for designing the operating path of the nodule collectors.

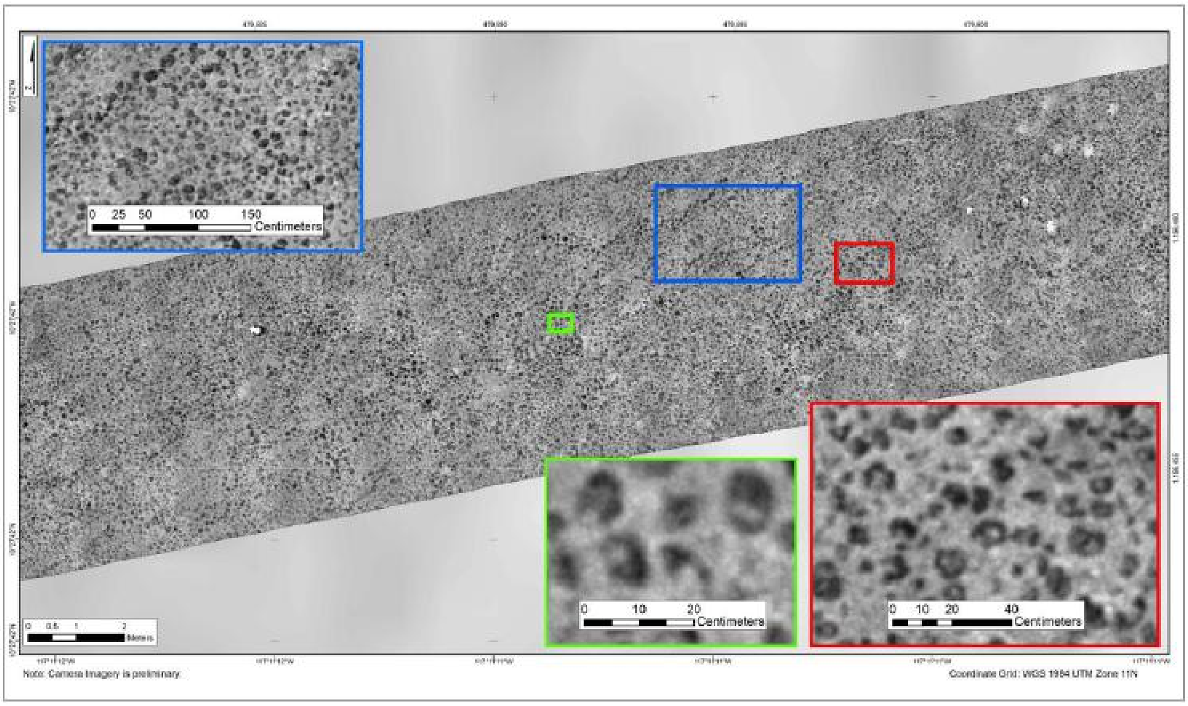
Figure 7.13 Comparison of AUV MBES Data (Ribbon) against EM120 Vessel-based MBES



Source: MARGIN. Note: bathymetry (top), bathymetric slope (middle: hot colours indicate steeper slopes), backscatter (bottom).

AUV camera data was acquired at 6 m altitude for 89% of the reconnaissance traverses, providing visual continuity of nodule distribution between the majority of the physical box core sample sites. In addition, a 3.5 × 3.5 km grid of camera data was acquired over the test mining site. Camera data is near-continuous over the reconnaissance traverses. Photomosaic coverage along the 3.5 × 3.5 km spaced camera traverses over the selected test mining site are continuous. Each camera frame is 6 m across-track and 4 m along-track. Figure 7.14 provides an example.

Figure 7.14 Example of AUV Camera Photo Mosaic and Insets, Showing Nodules



Source: MARGIN

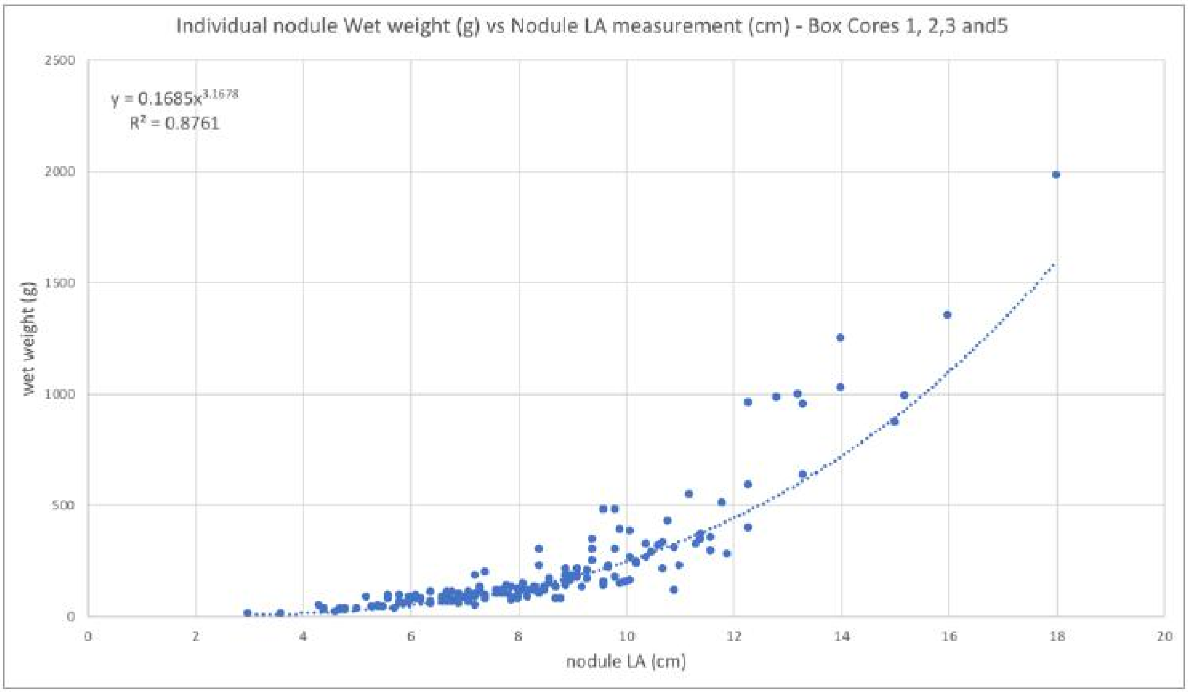
7.2.10 Nodule abundance estimation derived from AUV camera data

Although box coring is an effective method for measuring nodule abundance, it is slow and expensive. Therefore, it is advantageous if box core estimates can be supplemented by an alternative method.

There is a well-documented relationship between nodule length and wet weight (Felix 1980). NORI confirmed this relationship by taking measurements of individual nodule length, using digital callipers, and wet weight, for nodules from box core samples BC_001, BC_002, BC_003, and BC_005 (Figure 7.15).

In areas where nodules are not closely packed, image processing techniques can be used to identify each nodule unambiguously and measure its dimensions. In this case, it is possible to estimate nodule abundance from photographs. However, when the images were processed in 2018, the image processing techniques were unable to reliably discriminate each individual nodule, if nodules were closely packed and touching each other. An alternative methodology for estimating nodule abundance from AUV images was developed using a combination of long-axis measurement and percentage nodule coverage which was applied to the data.

Figure 7.15 Comparison of Nodule Long Axis Measurements, Taken Using Digital Callipers, and Individual Nodule Wet Weight for BC_001, BC_002, BC_003, and BC_005



A multiple linear regression relationship between percentage nodule coverage estimated from the photographs and mean nodule long-axis measurement from six box core samples in the test mining site was found to provide a good correlation with nodule abundance. The relationship is of the form:

$$Y = -15.20 + (0.24\ X_1) + (5.19\ X_2)$$

where Y is the estimated nodule abundance, X_1 is the percentage nodule cover, and X_2 is the mean Long Axis measurement.

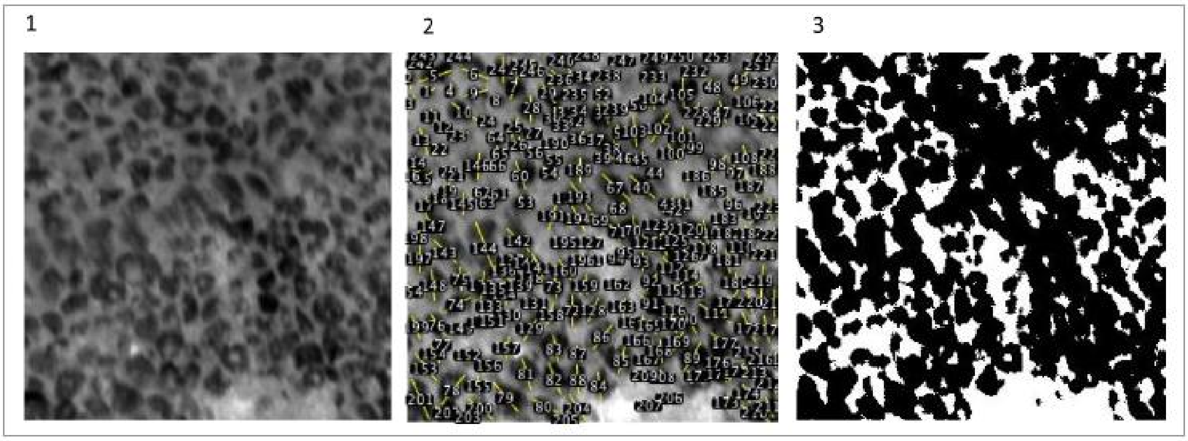
The percentage nodule coverage was determined by thresholding the image and calculating the percentage area covered by nodules in the image. Nodule long-axes were manually measured where possible, for each nodule in the image.

It was possible to obtain enough measurements to calculate representative mean long axis lengths which compared well with the mean long axis measurements from the actual box core samples (see Figure 7.17).

Because photographs were not taken at the exact box core sites (due to loss of the camera laser-calibration system mounted on the box corer), 1 × 1 m subsets of the closest calibrated AUV camera data were used for this analysis. The average offset between the camera data and the actual box core site locations was 26 m. The offsets will have introduced some imprecision to the analysis, and it is expected that, in future, collocated photographs and box core samples will produce a better correlation.

Figure 7.18 shows the estimated abundance vs. actual abundance for Felix method (top), and the multiple linear regression method (bottom) for six box cores in the test mining site. Although the correlation is high for the Felix method, the multiple linear regression method provided a better correlation and estimates that are closer to the actual nodule abundances. This is because the method is not dependent on measurement of each-and-every nodule in the image, which is not possible with some of the images typical of Type 1 nodule facies.

Figure 7.16 Detail of image processing



Note:

1. Camera image.
2. Manual measurement of nodule long axes on calibrated image.
3. Image thresholding to determine percentage nodule coverage.

Figure 7.17 Comparison of mean long axes lengths from AUV camera imagery and box cores

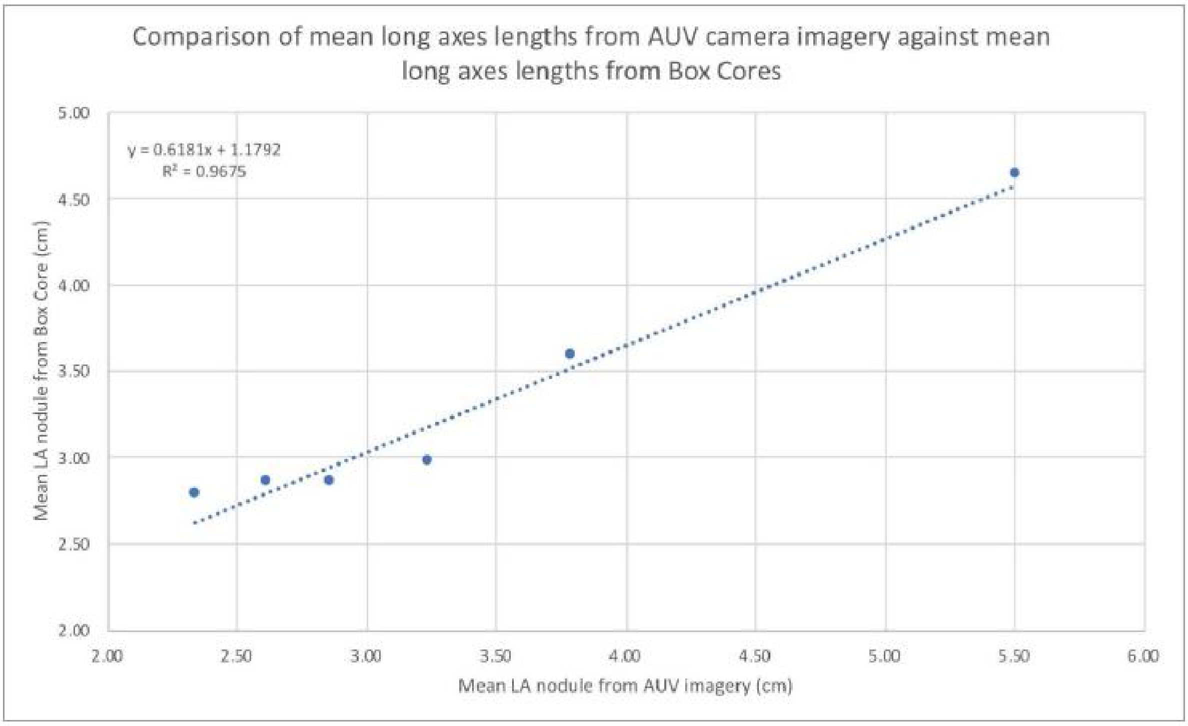
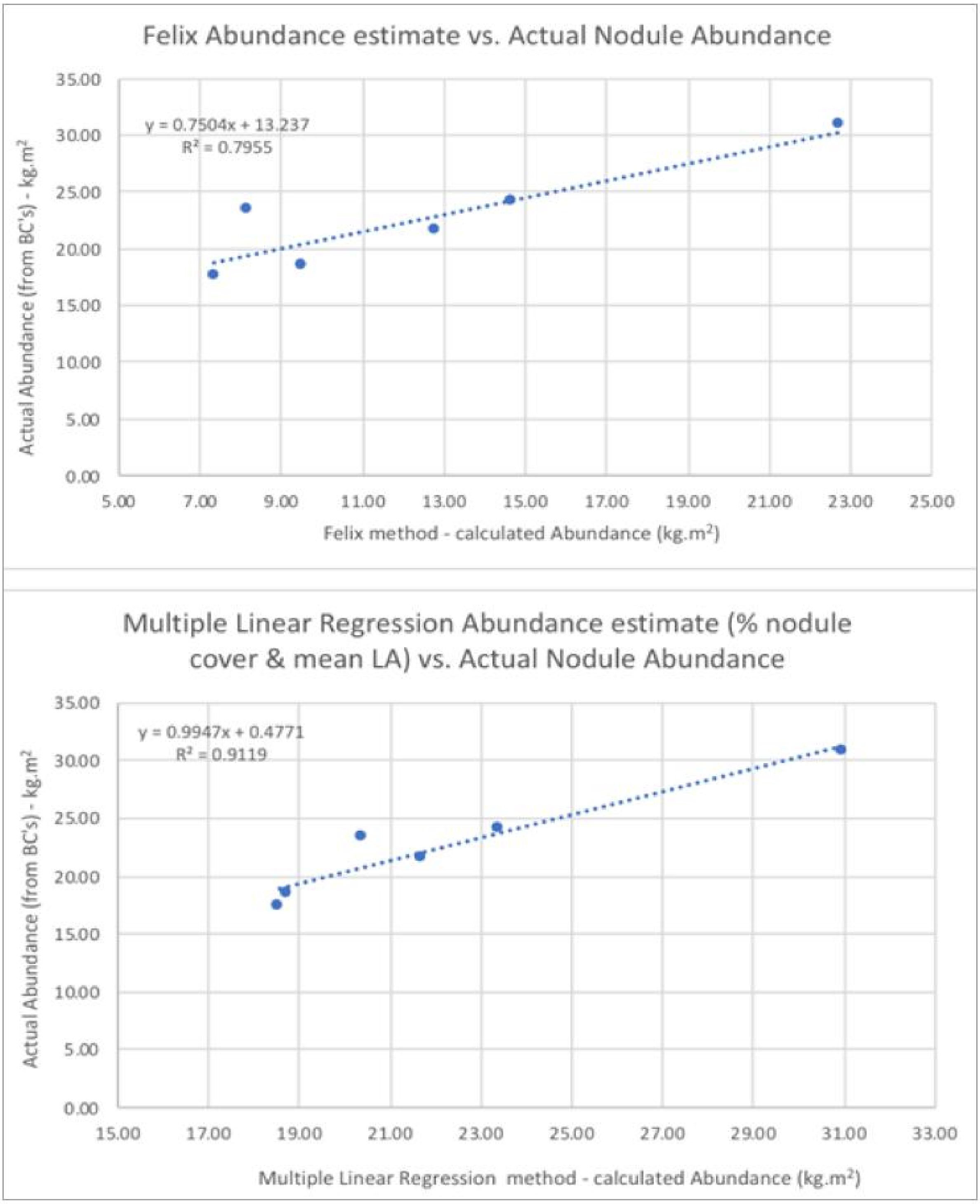
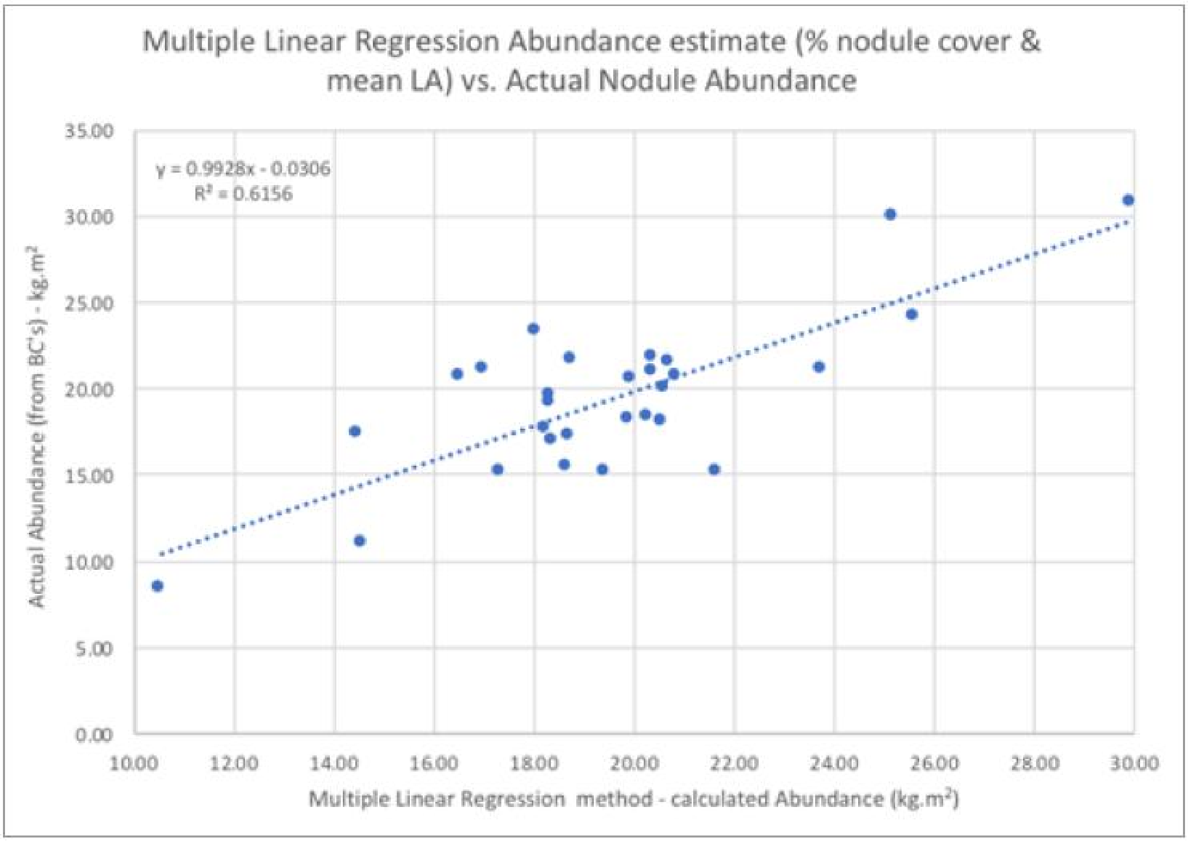


Figure 7.18 Comparison of Felix method and multiple linear regression method



The multiple linear regression method was subsequently applied to a set of 29 box cores with satisfactory AUV images to derive a more representative relationship. Image locations were within an average offset of 15 m from actual box core site locations. Figure 7.19 shows the results. An acceptable correlation (with an R^2 coefficient of 0.62) was obtained.

Figure 7.19 Multiple linear regression model for nodule abundance



AUV camera transects were acquired on a 3.5 × 3.5 km grid pattern over the test mining site. Subsets (1 × 1 m) of AUV camera data were extracted for each intersection point of the survey lines and the percentage nodule coverage was extracted as per the methods outlined above. Mean nodule long axis measurements were manually extracted from these images. This was necessary, as the majority of these extraction points are situated in Type 1 nodule facies, which were therefore not suited to the automated nodule detection method. Nodule abundance estimates were then derived for each of these intersection points, resulting in a 3.5 × 3.5 km grid of nodule estimation points over the test mining site (see Figure 7.20). These estimates were used to supplement the Mineral Resource estimate.

Figure 7.20 Plan of nodule abundance estimates in the test mining site

7.3 NORI 2019 campaign

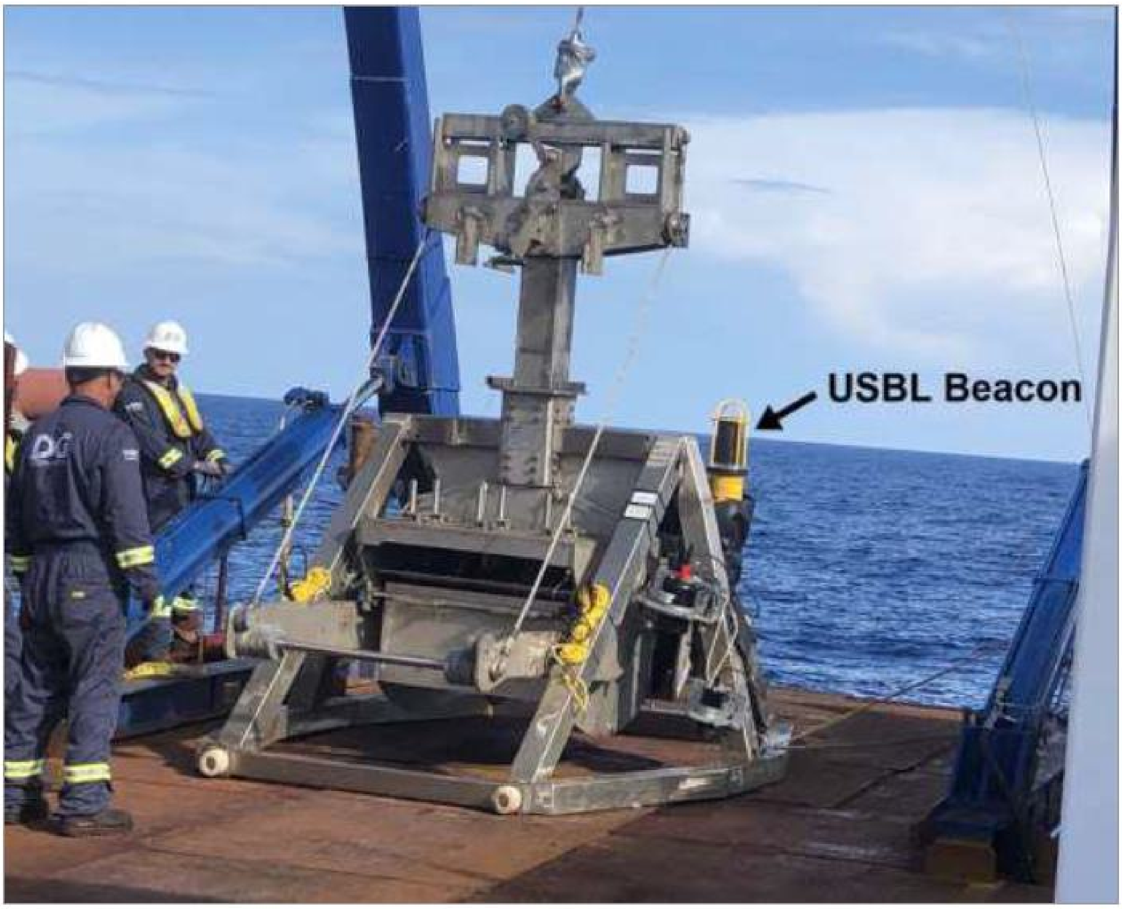
Exploration in 2019 was divided into two campaigns (6A and 6B) due to the maximum duration of 45 days that OSV*Maersk Launcher* could remain out at sea. Campaign 6A was undertaken from 19/08/2019 to 03/10/2019 and Campaign 6B was undertaken from 10/11/2019 to 21/12/2019. The vessel was mobilized out of San Diego, California, USA. Sampling, logging, and assay methods were consistent with prior campaigns and contributed materially to the Resource model.

Leap Energy was subcontracted to provide geological support for the box coring operations. Bluefield Geoservices was subcontracted to provide the geotechnical logging and testing component of the program, and ERIAS was subcontracted to undertake environmental biological of the box cores.

7.3.1 Box coring

An 86.6 cm x 86.6 cm x 50 cm stainless steel box corer built by KC Denmark, and a Kongsberg Maritime HiPAP 501 ultra-short baseline (USBL) system were used for survey location during the sampling campaigns. The box corer was operated by an MSS marine crew and was fitted with a large Kongsberg USBL beacon for positioning (see Figure 7.21) and a sound velocity profiler (SVP) to monitor sound velocity variations in the water column. The positioning was monitored by two certified surveyors from the Leap Energy team. Fixes were taken during each box core landing and all sample coordinates were recorded in WGS84 UTM 11N.

Figure 7.21 Box corer on deck showing the USBL beacon mounting position



The procedures for sampling the nodules in Campaigns 6A and 6B were essentially the same as in 2018, with only minor changes in workflow to improve the efficiency of the process. The main changes were that the sampling intervals were simplified to 0–1 cm, 1–15 cm, and greater than 15 cm, and the samples were not coned and quartered on board the vessel. In Campaign 6A, the geotechnical sample tubes were inserted by Bluefield after the geotechnical tests in the box core, whereas in Campaign 6B, the sample tubes were inserted before the geotechnical tests. A flow chart of the sampling procedure is provided in Figure 7.22. Note for Campaign 6A, the processing flow was similar, with the absence of biological push-cores.

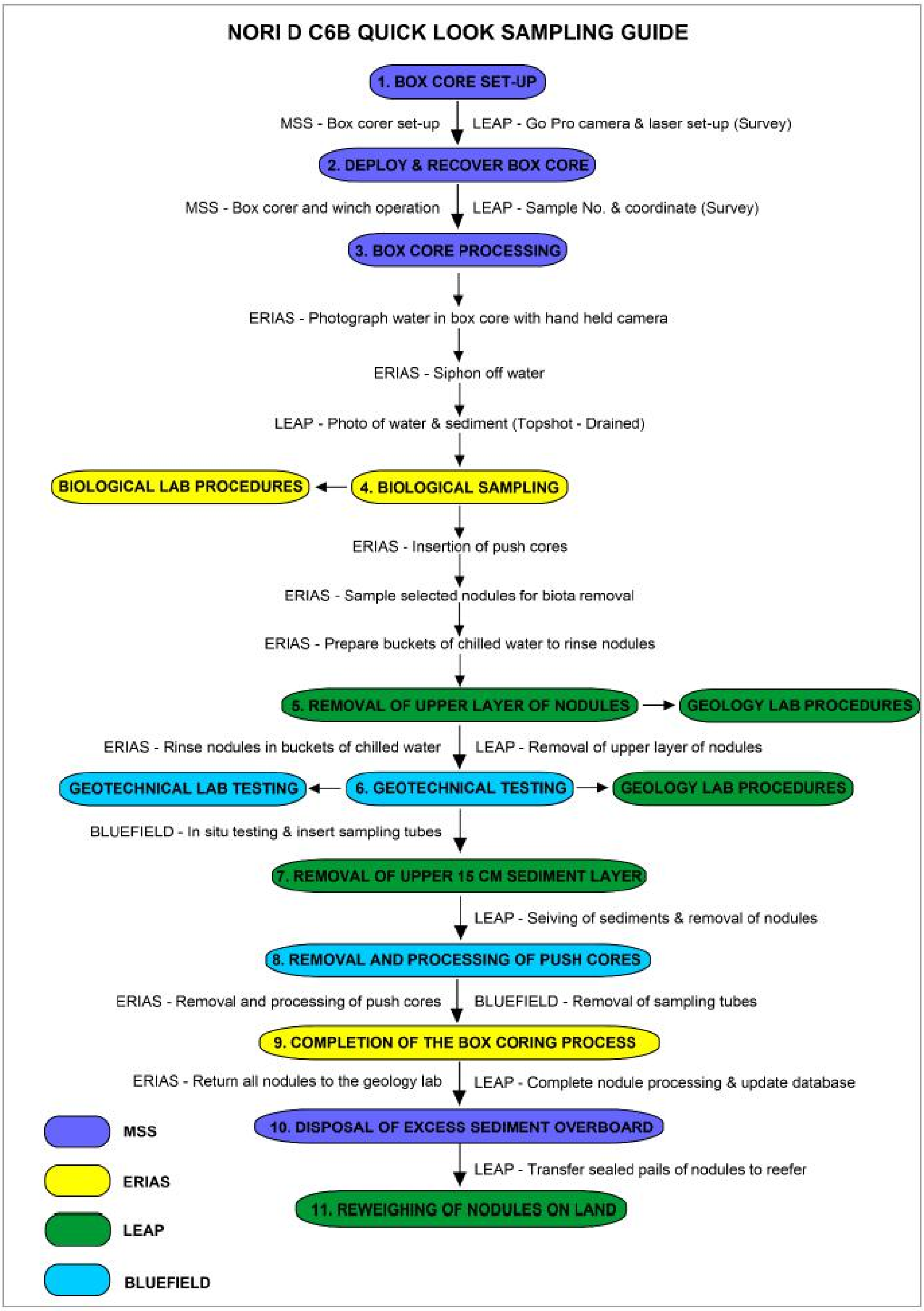
7.3.2 Nodule sampling

The dominant nodule shape, texture, degree of fragmentation, degree of botryoidal development together with the sample weight and nodule abundance were logged. The nodule facies classification system, description and measurement procedures developed during the 2018 campaign were used. For the clay footwall succession, the sediment lithology and color were recorded.

The dominant nodule facies in the NORI Area D contract area for the samples recovered during Campaigns 6A and B was Type 1 (82%).

Sample preparation procedures were the same as used in 2018, with the exception that they were coned and quartered at the on-shore laboratory, rather than on board the vessel.

Figure 7.22 Box core processing flow sheet for campaign 6B



7.3.3 Biological sampling

Biological sampling involved the collection of specimens of mega, macro, meio, and microfauna from the samples of nodules and underlying sediments collected in the box cores. Specimens of biota were collected from a number of horizons in the box core sample, including sieving of the water layer overlying the sediments to collect motile specimens; physical removal of specimens of megafauna from sediment and attached to nodules and preserving them for later analysis; washing nodules to dislodge macro fauna; and using cores pushed into the sediment to collect meio and macrofauna from different sediment horizons. Sediment samples were also retained and preserved for environmental DNA (eDNA) analysis.

Biological material was collected and preserved from 100 box cores during Campaign 6A adding to the samples collected from 45 box cores during Campaign 3. All the samples and specimens collected during the campaigns were appropriately preserved and are stored for identification and analysis at a later date.

Marine mammal observations were made from the bridge of the vessel and logged in a database.

7.3.4 Geotechnical sampling

The geotechnical component of the NORI 2019 campaign, Campaigns 6A and 6B, was designed to investigate the soil properties and develop a more detailed understanding of the soil geology and engineering parameters and thereby support the design and development of the systems and equipment for resource recovery. The geotechnical data is also a key input into the ground model of NORI Area D.

The geotechnical sampling was conducted alongside the geology and environmental sampling and was split into two phases: in phase one (C6A) 121 box cores were attempted with 106 successfully recovering a full soil sample; in phase two (C6B) 107 box cores were attempted with 105 successfully recovering a full soil sample. Figure 7.23 shows the box core locations. The discrepancy between geotechnical BC and nodule BC numbers in Section 7.3.5is due to some BCs being rejected for nodules but assessed as okay for geotechnical testing and vice versa.

All 211 successful box cores and five of the failed box cores were subsampled for geotechnical sampling and testing. Following the removal of the nodules by the geology team, a Cone Penetration Test (CPT) and optionally a laboratory vane profile or plate load test were conducted in the box core. During Campaign 6A the geotechnical and biological subsample tubes were inserted after the testing in the box core, during Campaign 6B the geotechnical and biological subsample tubes were inserted prior to the testing in the box core. Four soil subsamples for geotechnical study were obtained from the undisturbed areas outside of the biological sampling area of each box core. These consisted of one 100 mm inside diameter (ID) split sample, and three 76.2 mm ID clear PVC tubes pushed into the box core sample. The focus of the geotechnical sampling was the footwall sediment sequence. Figure 7.24 and Figure 7.25 respectively show the testing in the box core and the insertion of the sub sample tubes into the box core sample situated on deck. The testing in the box core was conducted using a custom developed rig (BOXcone) derived from the proven ROVcone ROV CPT system designed to fit over the box core box and provide a stable platform to deploy the CPT, intact and residual laboratory vane test, and Plate Load Test.

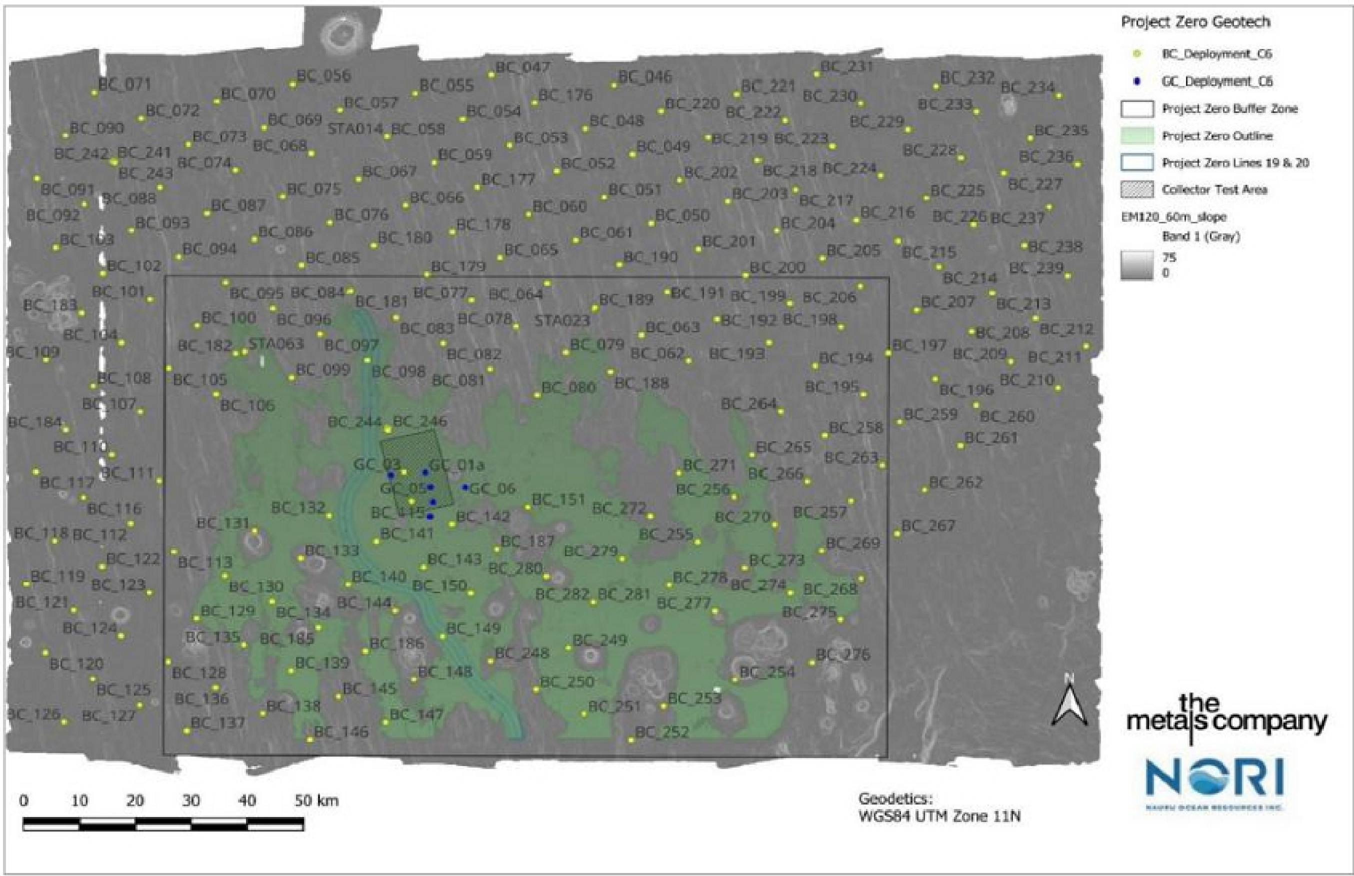
The box core split liner sample was used to conduct basic offshore index and strength laboratory tests, comprised of soil descriptions with core photography, wet and dry density measurements. Undrained shear strength index tests (Torvane tests) were conducted on the geotechnical subsamples obtained from the box cores. Intact and residual laboratory vane tests were conducted in the box core.

The three (3) box core subsamples taken in PVC tubes were capped and retained in temperature-controlled conditions, stored vertically for onshore laboratory testing. One set of the subsamples were transferred to Geolabs United Kingdom (UK) soils laboratory in Watford, UK. The following standard laboratory tests were performed onshore by Geolabs: water content, Atterberg limits, total wet (bulk) density, grainsize (sieve and hydrometer) analyses, organic content, carbonate content, specific gravity; and undisturbed/intact and remoulded laboratory vane. Additional onshore testing was conducted including: Oedometer Test (NGI, Oslo, Norway), Direct Simple Shear (NGI, Oslo, Norway), X-Ray Diffraction (Geolabs, UK) and Thixotropy Testing (Geolabs, UK).

Four (4) gravity cores were successfully recovered during campaign C6A and four gravity cores successfully recovered during campaign C6B. The sample recovery ranged from 1.45 m to 2.95 m below seafloor. These samples were logged for basic index testing and sample in liners retained for onshore storage.

A set of bulk sub samples were collected during campaign C6A. These consisted of 166 25 kg bulk bags taken from the residual box core sediment and were segregated into three zones (upper, middle and lower box core) within individual bags. These samples were stored and shipped ashore for further analysis by Allseas.

Figure 7.23 Plan of box core and gravity core locations, 2019 Campaign 6



Source: APYS Subsea Ltd.

Figure 7.24 Photographs of geotechnical vane and CPT (left) and plate load test (right)

Source: Bluefield Geoservices Ltd.

Figure 7.25 Photographs of biological and geotechnical tube sampling (C6A left, C6B right)

Notes: Sample tubes with green and purple inserts are designated for biologic assessment. Sample tubes with black caps are designated for geotechnical storage. Not shown is the split sample tube for onsite geotechnical assessment. Right hand photo shows a laboratory shear vane test in progress.

Source: Bluefield Geoservices Ltd.

Full details of the operations, testing and results are contained in the Bluefield Geosciences reports *MAE001-FAC-01, Geotechnical Factual Data Report NORI Area D Campaign 6A, Aug-Oct 2019* and *MAE001-FAC-02, Geotechnical Factual Data Report NORI Area D Campaign 6B, Nov-Dec 2019*. Additional field operation details are contained in the Bluefield Geosciences Field Reports.

Further consolidated analysis of the geotechnical investigation data is contained in Section 7.14.

7.3.5 Exploration results

A total of 106 box cores (BC_046 – BC_151) and four gravity cores were acquired in the NORI Area D contract area during Campaign 6A and 101 box cores (BC_176 – BC_280) and four gravity cores were acquired during Campaign 6B. Disturbed samples, considered to be unreliable, were omitted from the sample sequence. Table 7.4 lists box core sample coordinates and nodule weights and Figure 7.26 shows the abundance values in the box cores.

The majority of the nodules (92%) were found on the sediment surface (0 cm to 1 cm interval), with the remainder being predominantly encountered buried in the sediment at depths between 1 cm and 15 cm. Occasionally, nodules were found buried deeper in the box core (15 cm to 30 cm), but these were generally in advanced stages of breakdown and were very easily broken when any attempt was made to recover them. The nodules from the deeper sedimentary layers (15 cm to 30 cm) were noted but were not collected or processed along with the nodule samples destined for the assay laboratory.

The nodules collected during the sampling campaign ranged in size from 10 mm to 250 mm in diameter. The dominant nodule shape encountered was discoidal, whilst polynucleic shaped nodules were confined to the smaller Type 1 nodules.

The two sampling campaigns returned similar average nodule abundances, with Campaign 6A at 18.1 wet kg/m^2 and Campaign 6B at 17.0 wet kg/m^2. In general, nodule abundance is higher in the north and west of NORI Area D and diminishes towards the southeast.

Table 7.4 Box core sample coordinates and nodule weights – Campaign 6

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_046	6A	516607.65	1222981.94	16.02556	16.0642	21.37	21.42	1
BC_047	6A	494699.86	1224747.78	13.78932	13.891	18.39	18.52	1
BC_048	6A	511534.73	1214549.64	23.9472	24.0276	31.93	32.04	2
BC_049	6A	519947.78	1209474.13	16.62136	16.604	22.16	22.14	1
BC_050	6A	523284.31	1195972.15	11.88762	11.842	15.85	15.79	1
BC_051	6A	514872.31	1201070.85	17.10605	17.0536	22.81	22.74	2
BC_052	6A	506434.69	1206129.37	15.71338	15.6634	20.95	20.88	2
BC_053	6A	498012.48	1211234.86	12.26207	12.2216	16.35	16.30	1
BC_054	6A	489587.78	1216348.58	14.2689	14.2255	19.03	18.97	1
BC_055	6A	481141.59	1221418.01	22.27297	22.3188	29.70	29.76	3

BC_056	6A	459186.71	1223177.39	14.00777	13.945	18.68	18.59	1
BC_057	6A	467625.44	1218090.78	13.5955	13.5602	18.13	18.08	1
BC_058	6A	476068.70	1212995.08	11.80235	11.7452	15.74	15.66	1
BC_059	6A	484494.43	1207897.25	16.25776	16.2132	21.69	21.62	1
BC_060	6A	501354.11	1197701.54	14.59081	14.522	19.45	19.36	1

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_061	6A	509744.18	1192623.25	14.17769	13.7906	18.90	18.39	3
BC_062	6A	529959.77	1168937.39	11.92477	11.9114	15.90	15.88	1
BC_063	6A	521539.08	1174008.22	11.18427	11.1644	14.91	14.89	1
BC_064	6A	504687.57	1184187.24	11.99619	11.9978	15.99	16.00	2
BC_065	6A	496247.62	1189262.13	12.86045	12.8506	17.15	17.13	1
BC_066	6A	479387.41	1199464.57	16.49572	16.4812	22.00	21.97	1
BC_067	6A	470959.14	1204558.24	18.9512	18.947	25.27	25.26	2
BC_068	6A	462522.78	1209648.28	13.16105	13.1526	17.55	17.54	1
BC_069	6A	454099.31	1214738.71	17.5744	17.5698	23.43	23.43	2
BC_070	6A	445655.22	1219855.64	10.34846	10.3302	13.80	13.77	1
BC_071	6A	423700.42	1221601.55	11.30465	11.283	15.07	15.04	1
BC_072	6A	432117.69	1216503.17	13.69547	13.674	18.26	18.23	1
BC_073	6A	440560.65	1211410.19	12.90316	12.9	17.20	17.20	1
BC_074	6A	448984.92	1206313.30	17.04071	17.0428	22.72	22.72	1
BC_075	6A	457429.71	1201201.58	17.31903	17.3008	23.09	23.07	2
BC_076	6A	465872.41	1196137.90	10.49147	10.424	13.99	13.90	3
BC_077	6A	491182.38	1180846.76	14.74507	14.7456	19.66	19.65	1
BC_078	6A	499123.23	1175721.79	14.2055	14.1934	18.94	18.92	1
BC_079	6A	508024.00	1170680.10	10.85474	10.8406	14.47	14.45	1
BC_080	6A	502935.60	1162237.17	11.54862	11.6512	15.53	15.53	1
BC_081	6A	494488.51	1167334.36	14.57712	14.5718	19.44	19.43	1
BC_082	6A	486070.94	1172431.49	14.53504	14.5266	19.38	19.37	1
BC_083	6A	477643.41	1177492.78	11.09514	11.0816	14.79	14.78	1
BC_084	6A	469212.18	1182594.20	0.22081	0.2152	0.29	0.29	3
BC_085	6A	460772.24	1187696.49	12.0924	12.0718	16.12	16.10	1
BC_086	6A	452336.33	1192782.56	16.59518	16.5884	22.13	22.12	1
BC_087	6A	443900.13	1197890.45	16.30036	16.295	21.73	21.73	1
BC_088	6A	435462.90	1202979.23	14.60069	14.4481	19.47	19.26	2
BC_089	6A	427028.99	1208062.11	22.52526	22.3786	30.17	29.84	2
BC_090	6A	418571.39	1213165.55	16.29064	16.2818	21.72	21.71	1
BC_091	6A	413487.58	1204727.92	12.08875	12.0572	16.12	16.08	1
BC_092	6A	421917.19	1199644.93	11.26413	11.237	15.02	14.98	1
BC_093	6A	430365.98	1194549.71	22.07454	22.0586	29.43	29.41	2
BC_094	6A	438798.78	1189430.79	12.82568	12.7992	17.10	17.07	1
BC_095	6A	447230.62	1184361.20	13.48456	13.473	17.98	17.95	1
BC_096	6A	455676.00	1179261.70	14.37345	14.3573	19.16	19.14	1
BC_097	6A	464120.48	1174172.38	14.42651	14.4194	19.24	19.23	1
BC_098	6A	472559.36	1169073.14	21.51717	21.3622	28.69	28.48	3
BC_099	6A	459028.38	1165736.53	12.43137	12.3634	16.58	16.48	3
BC_100	6A	442142.17	1175923.18	16.18182	16.168	21.58	21.56	1
BC_101	6A	433707.25	1181010.15	12.45181	12.4348	16.60	16.58	1
BC_102	6A	425252.79	1186103.71	12.98788	12.9608	17.32	17.28	1
BC_103	6A	416833.40	1191215.07	11.2295	11.203	14.97	14.94	1

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_104	6A	428607.47	1172556.05	12.33715	12.3134	16.45	16.42	1
BC_105	6A	437046.52	1167487.01	14.53293	14.614	19.51	19.49	1
BC_105	6A	445500.53	1162398.24	8.57768	8.5522	11.44	11.40	1
BC_107	6A	431972.50	1159031.23	11.92445	11.9074	15.90	15.88	1
BC_108	6A	423515.81	1164114.75	12.42569	12.3972	16.57	16.53	1
BC_109	6A	415075.99	1169212.06	13.13595	13.1134	17.51	17.48	1
BC_110	6A	426873.12	1150607.91	12.73691	12.7186	16.98	16.95	1
BC_111	6A	435327.90	1145511.28	12.14001	12.1106	16.19	16.15	1
BC_112	6A	430226.54	1137045.40	12.63216	12.5962	16.84	16.79	1
BC_113	6A	437965.37	1131586.20	12.29276	12.2552	16.39	16.34	1
BC_114	6A	479116.50	1147163.22	15.95706	15.9884	21.28	21.32	1
BC_115	6A	480444.37	1141434.45	11.41333	11.4294	15.22	15.24	1
BC_116	6A	421777.08	1142152.38	12.06031	12.0862	16.08	16.11	1
BC_117	6A	413318.88	1147228.51	16.52079	16.5528	22.03	22.07	1
BC_118	6A	416702.07	1133703.33	13.72593	13.7608	18.30	18.35	1
BC_119	6A	411614.90	1125256.57	12.21826	12.222	16.29	16.30	1
BC_120	6A	414967.55	1111724.82	12.72899	12.7548	16.97	17.01	1
BC_121	6A	420050.48	1120169.32	15.10089	15.1248	20.13	20.17	1
BC_122	6A	425138.06	1128617.52	19.61851	19.6562	26.16	26.21	2
BC_123	6A	433585.66	1123545.46	13.17885	13.203	17.57	17.60	1
BC_124	6A	428507.42	1115095.64	11.919	11.9486	15.89	15.93	1
BC_125	6A	423436.54	1106629.06	13.3223	13.336	17.76	17.78	1
BC_126	6A	418331.13	1098177.44	13.47486	13.59	17.97	18.12	3
BC_127	6A	431877.82	1101547.08	15.19952	15.1348	20.27	20.18	3
BC_128	6A	436945.09	1109998.57	6.91858	6.91	9.22	9.21	3
BC_129	6A	442029.06	1118448.01	8.43266	8.445	11.24	11.26	1
BC_130	6A	447096.97	1126874.92	14.87212	14.8974	19.83	19.86	1
BC_131	6A	452375.98	1135655.66	10.19886	10.2194	13.60	13.63	1
BC_132	6A	465726.38	1138672.94	13.98023	14.0094	18.64	18.68	1
BC_133	6A	460643.69	1130253.24	12.70846	12.7284	16.94	16.97	1
BC_134	6A	455543.23	1121815.98	12.89784	12.9402	17.20	17.25	1
BC_135	6A	450465.49	1113352.74	14.05746	14.0842	18.74	18.78	2
BC_136	6A	445381.03	1104906.32	13.45611	13.4854	17.94	17.98	1
BC_137	6A	440298.77	1096461.35	14.18014	14.208	18.91	18.94	1
BC_138	6A	453831.90	1099841.45	10.87809	10.8968	14.50	14.53	1
BC_139	6A	458910.51	1108271.81	14.7575	14.7822	19.68	19.71	1
BC_140	6A	469079.49	1125145.80	9.44779	9.4656	12.60	12.62	1
BC_141	6A	474166.09	1133580.71	21.84486	21.8806	29.13	29.17	1
BC_142	6A	487678.37	1136931.37	14.11873	14.1478	18.83	18.86	1
BC_143	6A	482613.51	1128514.00	13.49911	13.5304	18.00	18.04	1
BC_144	6A	477520.76	1120066.87	9.59831	9.6198	12.80	12.83	1
BC_145	6A	467366.44	1103210.54	12.54903	12.585	16.73	16.78	1
BC_146	6A	462269.37	1094753.25	5.83656	5.8444	7.78	7.79	3

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_147	6A	475793.37	1098104.81	10.64722	10.6652	14.20	14.22	1
BC_148	6A	480870.43	1106563.83	9.56179	9.5776	12.75	12.77	1
BC_149	6A	485963.55	1114979.73	10.78484	10.8058	14.38	14.41	1
BC_150	6A	491042.63	1123414.84	13.29108	13.317	17.72	17.76	1
BC_151	6A	501214.83	1140282.91	10.38492	10.4166	13.85	13.89	1
BC_176	6B	502418.14	1219582.70	11.54004	13.72970	15.39	18.31	1
BC_177	6B	492165.51	1203027.33	14.60021	14.65020	19.47	19.53	1
BC_178	6B	487723.34	1194277.13	16.00780	16.15610	21.34	21.54	2

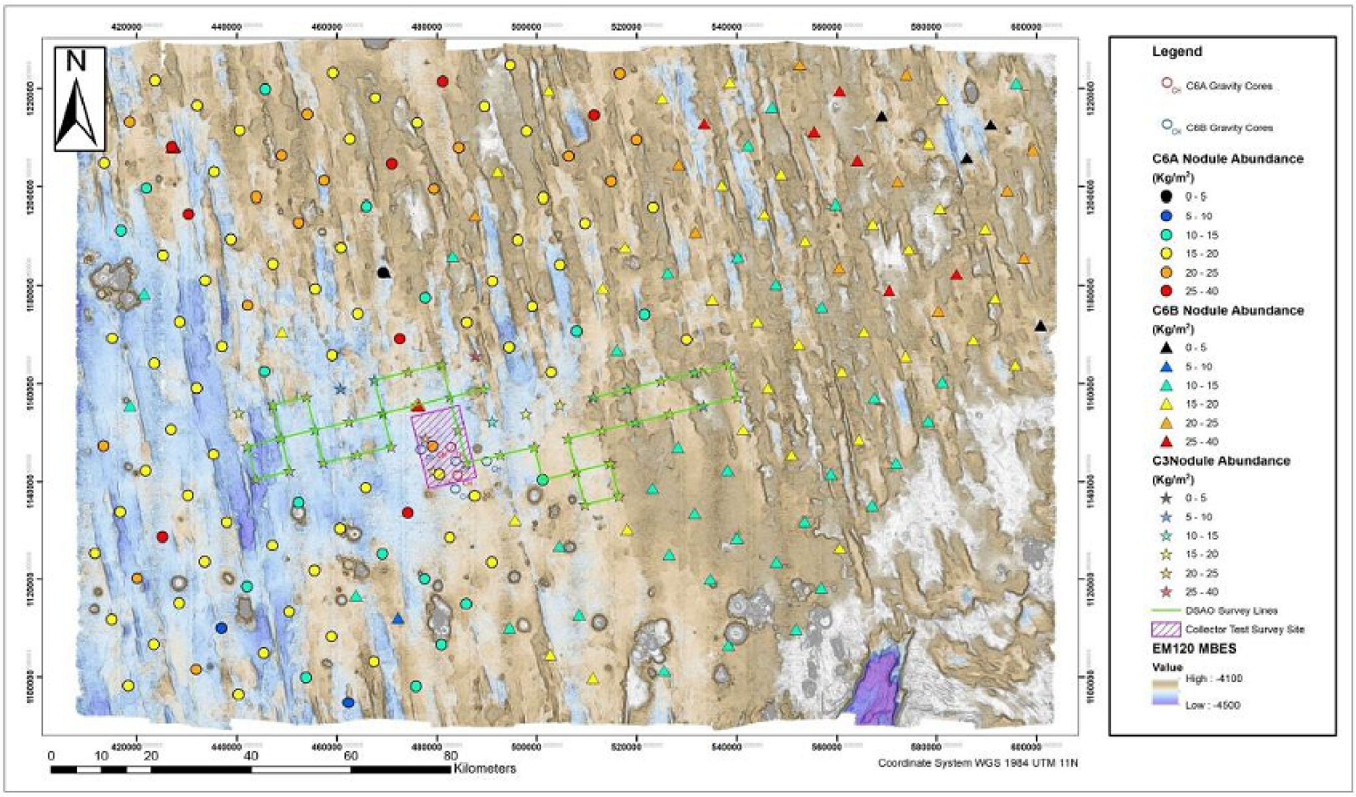
BC_179	6B	483224.08	1185931.07	11.14656	11.09160	14.86	14.79	1
BC_181	6B	469612.58	1182708.01	0.19222	0.19140	0.26	0.26	3
BC_182	6B	449011.77	1170456.99	13.27437	13.29930	17.70	17.73	1
BC_183	6B	421474.25	1178380.02	10.93965	11.01570	14.59	14.69	1
BC_184	6B	418645.62	1155452.39	8.82356	8.83100	11.76	11.77	1
BC_185	6B	463750.70	1116692.88	10.38200	10.39870	13.84	13.86	1
BC_186	6B	472185.88	1112042.30	6.83673	6.85280	9.12	9.14	1
BC_187	6B	495681.84	1132079.90	14.03420	13.99820	18.71	18.66	1
BC_188	6B	516031.76	1166786.72	9.80714	9.77200	13.08	13.03	1
BC_189	6B	513218.81	1179435.87	11.50072	11.49160	15.33	15.32	1
BC_190	6B	517597.21	1187822.19	12.37787	12.38550	16.50	16.51	1
BC_191	6B	526154.72	1182536.17	10.58192	10.57820	14.11	14.10	1
BC_192	6B	535083.05	1177206.95	14.50646	14.50970	19.34	19.35	1
BC_193	6B	544069.68	1172577.00	14.92652	14.95270	19.90	19.94	1
BC_194	6B	552336.85	1167991.04	13.35410	13.27920	17.81	17.71	1
BC_195	6B	560928.71	1162375.98	11.43600	11.45130	15.25	15.27	1
BC_196	6B	573820.21	1165454.13	11.99416	12.00280	15.99	16.00	1
BC_197	6B	565398.99	1170534.36	11.69162	11.69590	15.59	15.59	1
BC_198	6B	556962.56	1175622.59	9.29602	9.31230	12.39	12.42	1
BC_199	6B	547798.50	1180216.72	8.82048	8.74950	11.76	11.67	1
BC_200	6B	540137.69	1185771.66	9.65192	9.66100	12.87	12.88	1
BC_201	6B	531718.84	1190879.71	15.60665	15.62500	20.81	20.83	1
BC_202	6B	528382.18	1204379.93	17.56128	17.59670	23.42	23.46	1
BC_203	6B	536982.07	1200221.05	12.10241	12.08520	16.14	16.11	1
BC_204	6B	545479.10	1194520.87	14.06640	14.09410	18.76	18.79	1
BC_205	6B	553642.77	1189125.33	14.47215	14.48590	19.30	19.31	1
BC_206	6B	560423.45	1183620.69	15.88279	15.89460	21.18	21.19	1
BC_207	6B	570491.07	1178957.69	20.45660	20.46870	27.28	27.29	1
BC_208	6B	580315.46	1174714.26	15.68094	15.70670	20.91	20.94	1
BC_209	6B	587324.63	1168794.39	13.52294	13.55710	18.03	18.08	1
BC_210	6B	595751.30	1163719.65	11.41743	11.43540	15.22	15.25	1
BC_211	6B	600796.45	1171870.83	2.10299	2.10700	2.80	2.81	3
BC_212	6B	591732.46	1177389.59	12.94277	12.96020	17.26	17.28	1
BC_213	6B	583989.66	1182277.47	18.71487	18.93940	24.95	25.25	1
BC_214	6B	574436.49	1187355.09	12.59742	12.62280	16.80	16.83	1

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_215	6B	567154.67	1192456.64	12.88151	12.91070	17.18	17.21	1
BC_216	6B	559694.23	1196570.59	10.16900	10.18430	13.56	13.58	1
BC_217	6B	548810.93	1202550.23	13.27286	13.28510	17.70	17.71	1
BC_218	6B	542208.73	1208372.45	10.80441	10.81310	14.41	14.42	1
BC_219	6B	533463.71	1212793.71	19.10461	19.64000	25.47	26.19	1
BC_220	6B	525043.93	1217890.82	12.55892	12.56290	16.75	16.75	1
BC_221	6B	538555.15	1221240.58	13.65917	13.66380	18.21	18.22	1
BC_222	6B	546971.72	1216147.52	9.86255	9.85740	13.15	13.14	1
BC_223	6B	555398.86	1211052.66	20.69955	20.72350	27.60	27.63	2
BC_224	6B	564054.77	1205256.71	22.38086	22.34700	29.84	29.80	2
BC_225	6B	572221.70	1200875.38	17.19870	17.21670	22.93	22.96	1
BC_226	6B	580647.66	1195781.78	11.72413	11.73510	15.63	15.65	1
BC_227	6B	586058.88	1205747.69	2.33487	2.28760	3.11	3.05	3
BC_228	6B	578405.69	1208794.06	11.56571	11.57990	15.42	15.44	1
BC_229	6B	568914.77	1214387.60	0.06436	0.05870	0.09	0.08	3
BC_230	6B	560490.86	1219464.34	22.76269	22.83590	30.35	30.45	2
BC_231	6B	552569.22	1224867.76	15.83721	15.84900	21.12	21.13	1
BC_232	6B	573974.86	1222797.89	18.21135	18.25390	24.28	24.34	2
BC_233	6B	581162.85	1217819.97	15.54404	14.93740	20.73	19.92	1
BC_234	6B	595905.10	1221029.60	10.22326	10.22780	13.63	13.64	3

BC_235	6B	590812.89	1212611.81	0.07280	0.06800	0.10	0.09	3
BC_236	6B	599245.09	1207536.70	15.76633	15.77690	21.02	21.04	2
BC_237	6B	594141.85	1199119.57	15.14613	15.13090	20.19	20.17	1
BC_238	6B	589718.56	1191576.21	12.87776	12.88160	17.17	17.18	1
BC_239	6B	597473.20	1185632.05	16.33166	16.60740	21.78	22.14	1
BC_240	6B	427521.58	1208175.68	24.68888	24.74570	32.92	32.99	2
BC_241	6B	427181.38	1208336.73	23.96558	23.97810	31.95	31.97	2
BC_242	6B	427026.80	1208053.74	21.66339	21.68060	28.88	28.91	2
BC_243	6B	427372.60	1207869.27	19.79228	19.83340	26.39	26.44	2
BC_244	6B	475892.75	1155507.57	15.43054	15.45830	20.57	20.61	1
BC_245	6B	476075.26	1155822.88	14.91209	14.93730	19.88	19.92	1
BC_246	6B	476383.82	1155639.43	16.44459	16.47350	21.93	21.96	1
BC_247	6B	476221.61	1155336.85	20.57729	21.44420	27.44	28.59	1
BC_248	6B	494570.63	1110107.21	10.87185	10.80680	14.50	14.41	1
BC_249	6B	508506.11	1112715.00	10.74484	10.77530	14.33	14.37	1
BC_250	6B	502703.96	1104576.73	11.25303	11.27970	15.00	15.04	1
BC_251	6B	511267.52	1099766.40	12.49379	12.51860	16.66	16.69	1
BC_253	6B	525492.22	1101354.00	10.66706	10.67910	14.22	14.24	1
BC_254	6B	538281.77	1106479.92	9.11155	9.13100	12.15	12.17	1
BC_255	6B	531570.91	1133475.91	9.22072	9.24050	12.29	12.32	1
BC_256	6B	538131.10	1142242.69	9.58975	9.61210	12.79	12.82	1
BC_257	6B	558767.44	1141508.87	10.28829	10.33230	13.72	13.78	1
BC_259	6B	567441.46	1157040.38	9.30402	9.32910	12.41	12.44	1

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Off-shore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Off-shore	Onshore	
BC_260	6B	581121.73	1160276.52	11.07592	11.09250	14.77	14.79	1
BC_261	6B	578322.44	1152403.20	10.80130	10.82450	14.40	14.43	1
BC_262	6B	571914.91	1143656.28	11.13739	11.16800	14.85	14.89	1
BC_263	6B	564367.04	1148482.10	14.13325	14.10520	18.84	18.81	1
BC_264	6B	546195.42	1159070.82	11.85999	12.31040	15.81	16.41	1
BC_265	6B	541265.30	1150568.10	14.68998	14.71810	19.59	19.62	1
BC_266	6B	550937.75	1145366.82	14.23761	14.27500	18.98	19.03	1
BC_267	6B	567009.16	1135090.99	10.33807	10.36310	13.78	13.82	1
BC_268	6B	560576.99	1126326.33	12.70976	12.73120	16.95	16.97	1
BC_269	6B	553508.53	1131754.58	9.75852	9.84910	13.01	13.13	1
BC_271	6B	528228.26	1146990.38	10.17807	10.19650	13.57	13.60	1
BC_272	6B	523132.39	1138565.91	9.51211	9.75400	12.68	13.01	1
BC_273	6B	540012.64	1128404.50	9.36063	9.38670	12.48	12.52	1
BC_274	6B	547906.56	1123487.95	11.03703	11.07510	14.72	14.77	1
BC_275	6B	556862.35	1118254.55	9.40559	9.44960	12.54	12.60	1
BC_276	6B	551793.40	1109834.92	10.00252	10.03040	13.34	13.37	1
BC_277	6B	534693.27	1119985.85	10.01188	10.04040	13.35	13.39	1
BC_278	6B	526496.86	1125044.81	9.88382	9.90200	13.18	13.20	1
BC_279	6B	518071.02	1130133.75	12.37066	12.40100	16.49	16.53	1
BC_280	6B	504544.16	1126772.68	9.89743	9.91170	13.20	13.22	1

Figure 7.26 Plan of NORI Area D showing box core abundances and bathymetry



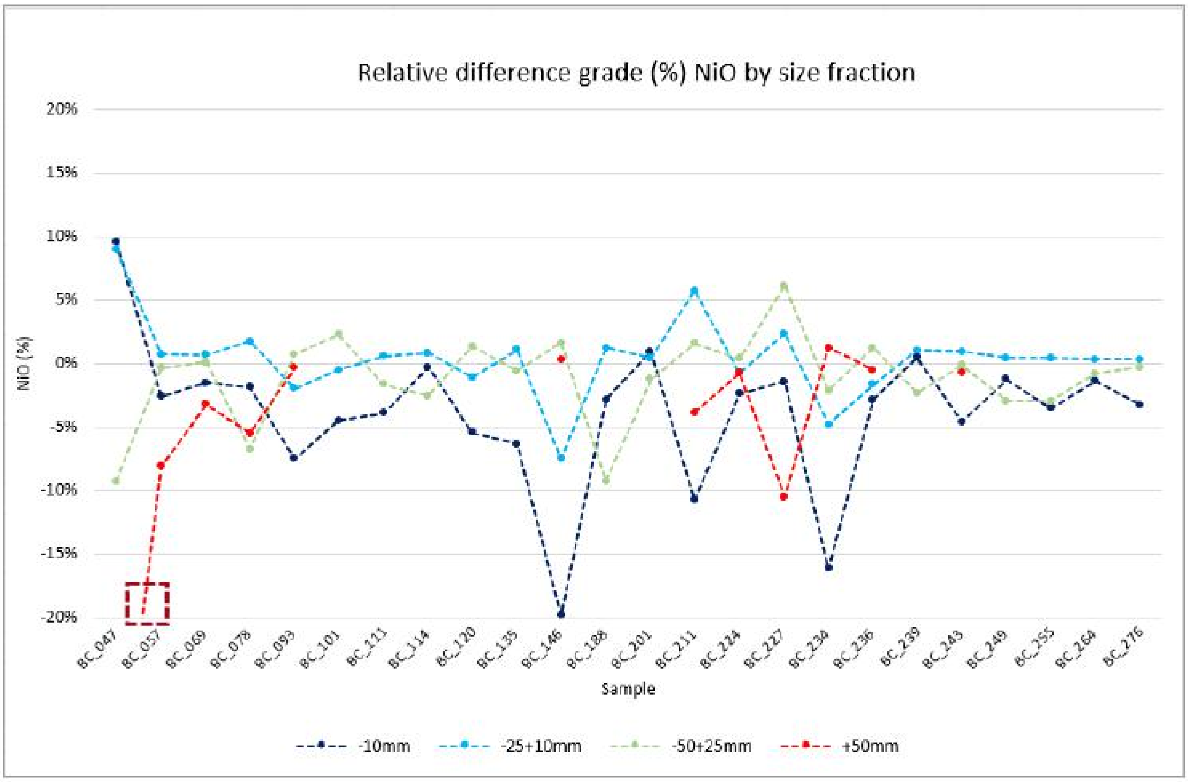
7.3.6 Analysis of grade distribution by size fraction

As part of the Campaign 6A and 6B box core sampling program, a preliminary examination of the relationship between nodule size and grade was carried out. Twenty-four (24) nodule box core samples were separated, at ALS Laboratory in Brisbane, into four size fractions
(+50 mm, –50 mm + 25 mm, –25 mm +10 mm, and –10 mm) using sieves.

Plots of the relative difference in grade between the assays for individual size fractions and the weight-averaged grade of the whole sample are shown in Figure 7.27 to Figure 7.30. The masses of the size fractions, in relative percentage, are shown in Figure 7.31. In general, the proportion of material less than 10 mm (the -10 mm fraction) is very small.

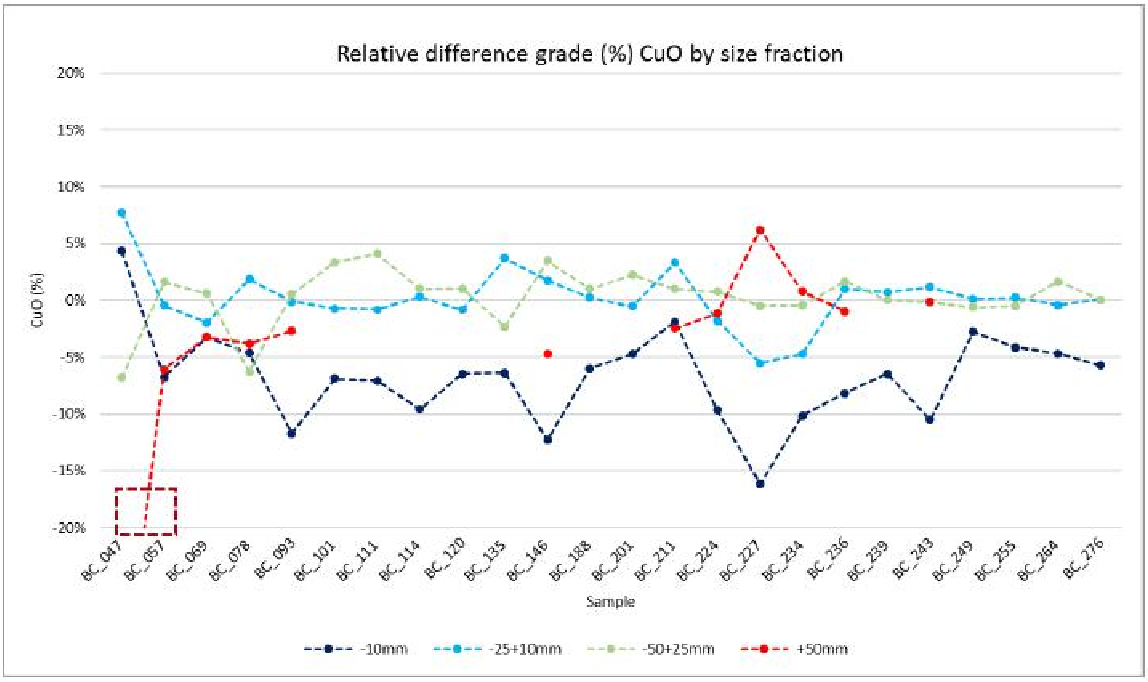
Twenty-four samples are too few to make firm statistical conclusions, but the data is sufficient to show that distribution of nickel, cobalt, copper and manganese is not uniform across particles of different sizes. The particles may be whole nodules or abraded pieces of larger nodules. The samples show that selection of the particle size range that will be recovered by the seafloor collection system, and loss of fines by abrasion in the ore handling systems, may have small impacts on the grade of the ore recovered to the production vessel.

Figure 7.27 Relative difference of grade by size fraction - NiO (%)



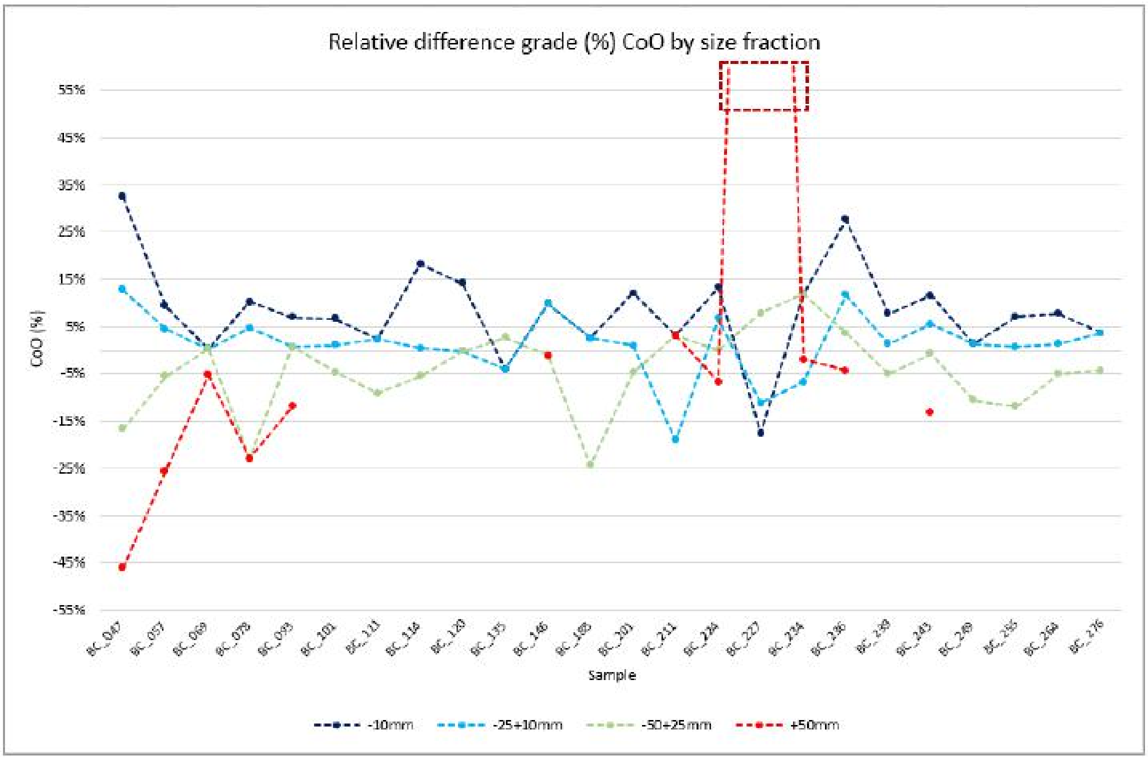
Note: Brown rectangle highlights anomalous grades in BC047

Figure 7.28 Relative difference of grade by size fraction - CuO (%)



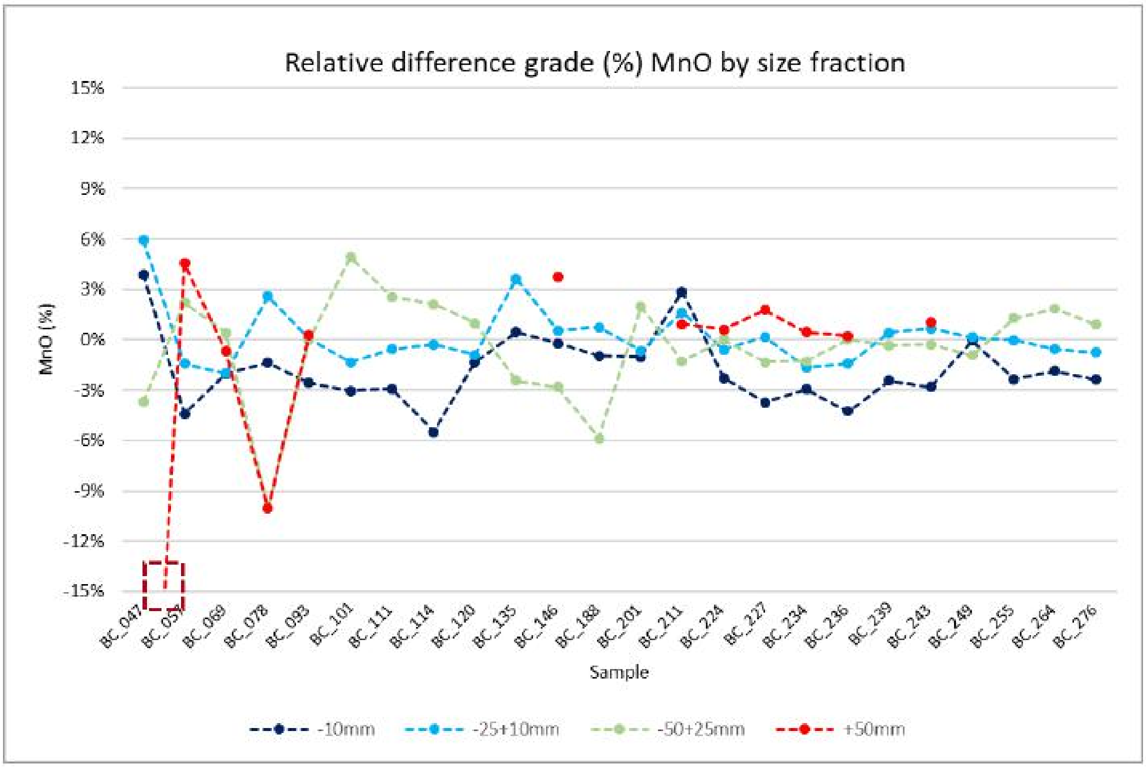
Note: Brown rectangle highlights anomalous grades in BC047

Figure 7.29 Relative difference of grade by size fraction - CoO (%)



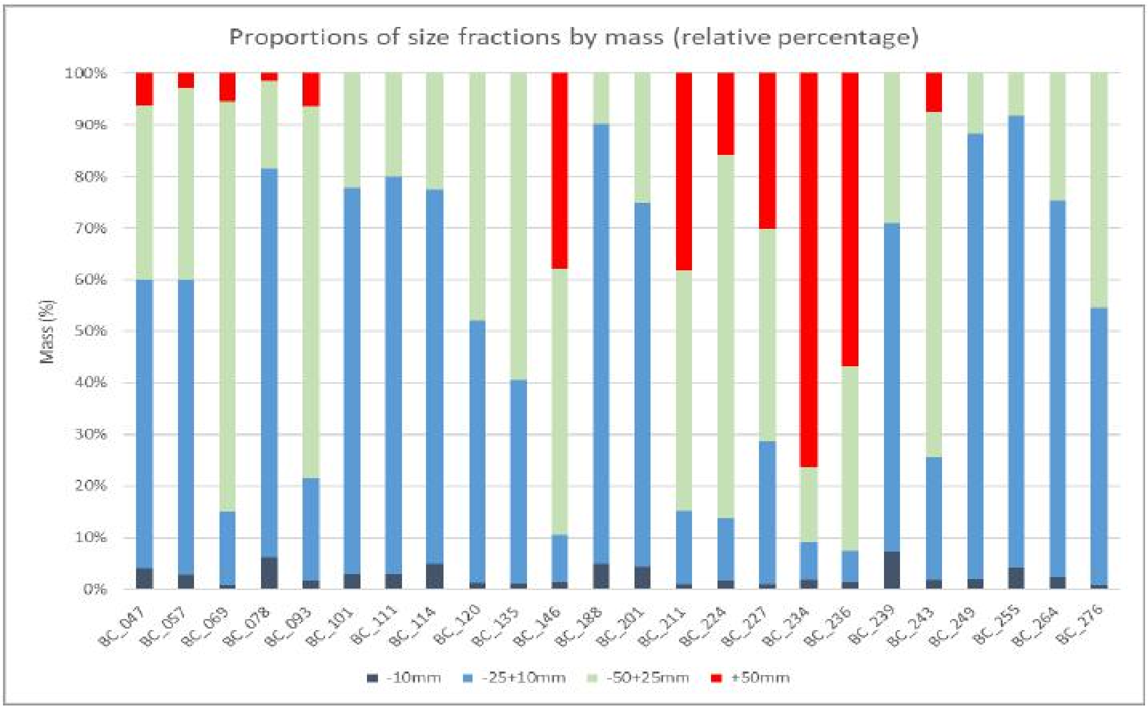
Note: Brown rectangle highlights anomalous grades in BC227

Figure 7.30 Relative difference of grade by size fraction - MnO (%)



Note: Brown rectangle highlights anomalous grades in BC047

Figure 7.31 Proportions of size fractions by mass (relative percentage)



7.4 The 2022 test mining campaign

TMC conducted an integrated test mining on the seafloor in October-November 2022 from the*Hidden Gem*. During the test, Allseas engineers drove the test collector across over 80 km of seafloor, collecting approximately 4,500 t of nodules and lifting over 3,000 t up a 4,300 m riser system to the surface production vessel, *Hidden Gem*. The Allseas-designed test nodule collection system achieved all test production milestones and reached a sustained production rate of 86.4 t per hour.

The Test Mining was conducted within a small test area in NORI Area D, selected after completion of detailed bathymetric and photographic surveys in 2018. The test area is very flat, abyssal plain, and is dominated by Type 1 nodules. Data from this campaign was critical to deriving the modifying factors used to support the classification of Mineral Reserves as Probable under S-K 1300 Item 1302(e).

7.5 NORI 2022 Campaign 7A and 7B

Prior to the test mining, off-shore Campaign 7A was conducted to collect data from the test area before disturbance by the test activities. In Campaign 7B, data was collected after the test mining had been completed. C7A was undertaken from 15/07/2022 to 23/09/2022 and C7B was undertaken from 09/11/2022 to 19/12/2022, from MV *Island Pride*, mobilised out of San Diego, California, USA.

In 2022 NORI completed an integrated collection system test, supported by the*Hidden Gem* collector vessel and observed by the survey vessel *Island Pride.* This work comprised five campaigns: 1) Campaign 7A1 and 7A2 (prior to the integrated collection system test), Campaign 7C (during the test), and Campaign 7B1 and 7B2 (after the test) using the *Island Pride* vessel that Ocean infinity supplied. NORI conducted these campaigns to:

- **Campaign 7A1/2**: collect bathymetric, geological, and environmental baseline data for the seafloor and water column.
- **Campaign 7B1/2**: largely repeat the surveys completed in Campaign 7A to assess what impact the test had on the bathymetric, geological, and environmental baseline for the seafloor and water column.
- **Campaign 7C**: monitor the test operations to obtain real-time data on the seafloor and midwater plumes that the integrated collection system generated and to monitor the noise that the system generated during operations.

Campaigns 7A and 7B were primarily concerned with collecting environmental data. Box cores were collected and environmental sampling and geotechnical testing were carried out. Geological logging and the nodule sampling were completed for the box cores obtained from the area traversed by the collector during the test mining. THRE360 Energy (previously Leap Energy) was subcontracted to provide geological support for the box coring operations. Bluefield Geoservices was subcontracted to provide the geotechnical logging and testing component of the program.

In addition, high resolution AUV MBES bathymetric, side scan and sub-bottom profiler surveying from within the test mining area was completed. ROV- and AUV-supported high-resolution camera imagery within the test mining area and over control sites was also completed.

7.5.1 Box coring

A 75 cm x 75 cm x 50 cm stainless steel box corer (model BX-750, area of 0.526 m^2) built by Ocean Innovations was used for box core sampling. The positioning of the final land-out coordinates of box cores deployments were carried out using a combination of USBL and LBL positioning solutions, whereby the initial deployment to the seabed was monitored by the Hi PAP USBL system and the LBL array was used for more precise positioning once the box core was within 50 m of the seafloor. The LBL array consisted of seven cNODE Maxi transponders deployed in a hexagonal configuration with one transponder located at the centre. The box corer was operated by an Ocean Infinity marine crew and was fitted with an LBL beacon for positioning and a sound velocity profiler (SVP) to monitor sound velocity variations in the water column. The positioning was monitored by two certified surveyors from Ocean Infinity. Fixes were taken during each box core landing and all sample coordinates were recorded in WGS84 UTM 11N.

In Campaign 7A, 22 box cores (BC_425 – BC_447) were successfully acquired for resource definition purposes. BC_432 failed to trigger and no sample was collected. In Campaign 7B, 14 box cores (BC_473 – BC_486) were successfully acquired for the purpose of measuring the nodules left behind by the collector.

7.5.2 Nodule sampling

The nodule description and measurement procedures were the same as those used in Campaigns 6A and 6B. The dominant nodule shape, texture, degree of fragmentation, degree of botryoidal development together with the sample weight and nodule abundance were logged. For the clay footwall succession, the sediment lithology and color were recorded. The nodule facies in the area sampled during Campaigns 7A and 7B was Type 1. Figure 7.32 shows the layout of the nodule processing side of the geology laboratory.

The procedures for sampling the nodules in Campaigns 7A and 7B were the same as in 2019, with the addition of temperature and humidity sensors in the offshore laboratory and the measuring of the four corner nodules from each batch / tray with digital calipers.

Figure 7.32 Layout of the nodule processing side of the geology laboratory

Source: TMC

7.5.3 Biological sampling

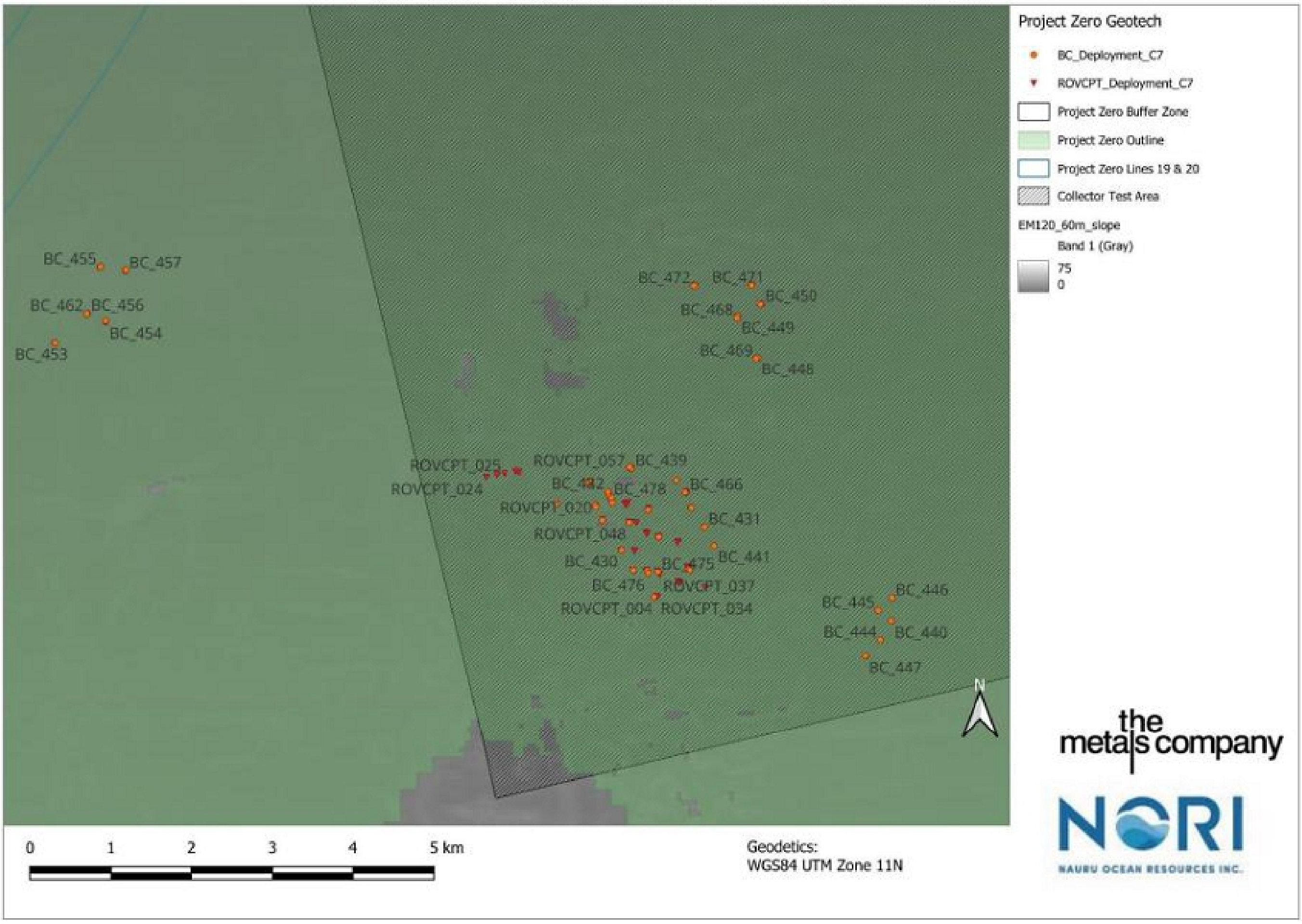
The primary purpose of Campaigns 7A and 7B was environmental sampling and monitoring. Biological sampling of the box cores was carried out. These activities are documented elsewhere.

7.5.4 Geotechnical sampling

The geotechnical component of the NORI 2022 campaign, Campaigns 7A and 7B, was intended to investigate the soil properties prior to the test mining and then to repeat the survey following the completion of the trial. The geotechnical results were intended to be used to inform the evaluation of the collector performance and to refine the ground model of the test mining area.

The geotechnical sampling was conducted alongside the geology and environmental sampling. During Campaign 7A, geotechnical studies were conducted on 21 box cores and 27 *in situ* seafloor CPTs were completed. During Campaign 7B, geotechnical studies were conducted on 26 box cores and 30*in situ* seafloor CPTs were completed at 15 locations. Figure 7.33 shows the plan of all sampling and testing.

Figure 7.33 Plan of location of CPT tests in box cores and in situ on the seafloor (ROV CPT), Campaign 7A



Source: APYS Subsea Ltd

All box cores were subsampled for geotechnical sampling and testing. The focus of the geotechnical sampling was the surface and footwall sediment sequence. A CPT test and optionally laboratory vane profile were conducted in the box core prior to insertion of the geotechnical or other subsample tubes. The nodules were not disturbed during the testing and tube sampling in the box cores. A single soil subsample for geotechnical study was obtained from the undisturbed areas outside of the biological sampling area of each box core. This box core split sample consisted of one 100 mm inside diameter (ID) x 3 mm wall thickness split aluminium tube.

The testing in the box core was conducted using a custom developed rig (BOXcone) derived from the ROVcone system designed to fit over the box core box and provide a stable platform to deploy the CPT and Laboratory Vane. The same ROVcone system was used for the *in situ* testing of the seafloor. Figure 7.34 Figure shows the testing system (BOXcone) and the box core on deck.

The box core split sample was used to conduct basic offshore index and strength laboratory tests, comprised of soil descriptions with core photography, wet and dry density measurements, and undrained shear strength index tests (Torvane tests). Intact and residual laboratory vane tests were conducted in the box core. Additionally, a repeat of the sulfate test was conducted to confirm the findings of the Fugro report from 2018.

Additional shear strength readings were taken in the horizontal plane within the box core to allow comparison with the perpendicular readings taken from the split core.

No box core subsamples were taken for storage or onshore testing.

Figure 7.34 Box core testing set-up with biological zone divider in place

Source: Bluefield Geoservices Ltd.

The focus of the geotechnical testing was the immediate seawater-seafloor interface and footwall sediment sequence underneath. During the first phase (Campaign 7A) the nodules and seafloor were undisturbed and the nodules recovered in the box cores were not removed before the geotechnical testing was carried out. This created a baseline for the later test minings. Data was obtained at 25 locations, with two locations tested twice. During the second phase the testing focused on the test mining area, with one test positioned between the track marks and one test positioned on a track mark at each location, providing data at 15 locations.

Figure 7.35 shows the *in situ* CPT testing system (ROVcone) mounted to the Schilling HD14 WROV onboard the MV Island Pride.

Figure 7.35 10 kN Seabed CPT system mounted to Schilling HD WROV

Source: Bluefield Geoservices Ltd.

Full details of the operations, testing and results are contained in the Bluefield Geosciences report OCI001-FAC-01, Geotechnical Factual Data Report (Field) NORI_D Campaign 7A, Jul-Sep 2022 & Nov-Dec 2022.

Further consolidated analysis of the geotechnical investigation data is contained in Section 7.14.

7.5.5 Exploration results

In Campaign 7A, 22 box cores were collected from 21 sites, prior to the test mining (see Figure 7.36). The abundances in the box cores provided measurements of the *in situ* abundance of nodules. The average nodule abundance was 17.4 wet kg/m^2. BC_425 (18.1 wet kg/m^2) and BC_427 (17.7 wet kg/m^2) were collected from the same nominal sample location. BC_432 failed to trigger and no sample was collected.

In Campaign 7B, 14 box cores were collected from 14 sites over which test minings had been conducted (see Figure 7.37).

Nodules were reweighed on-shore at the end of the campaigns. The differences between off-shore and on-shore weights were not significant and generally less than 1%.

7.5.5.1 Campaign 7A

The box core results for Campaign 7A are presented in Table 7.5. Nodule abundance ranged from 12.6 wet kg/m^2 to 27.9 wet kg/m^2 and an average abundance of 17.4 wet kg/m^2. Figure 7.36 shows the location of the C7A box cores and the nodule abundances and bathymetry derived from the AUV data.

Table 7.5 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights - Campaign 7A

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Offshore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Offshore	Onshore	
BC_425	7A	479476.170	1142206.14	10181.35	10177.18	18.10	18.09	1
BC_426	7A	479006.364	1142230.21	7994.14	7983.58	14.21	14.19	1
BC_427	7A	479488.283	1142184.90	9928.30	9905.92	17.65	17.61	1
BC_428	7A	479568.067	1142019.76	9101.90	9079.12	16.18	16.14	1
BC_429	7A	479668.085	1142305.07	9603.38	9637.01	17.07	17.13	1
BC_430	7A	479804.700	1141645.08	8530.79	8514.58	15.16	15.14	1
BC_431	7A	480838.491	1141937.99	15656.07	15672.52	27.83	27.86	1 & 2
BC_432	7A	Box core did not trigger – no sample						
BC_433	7A	480675.771	1142174.33	8828.40	8808.38	15.69	15.66	1
BC_434	7A	480489.665	1142513.83	10308.50	10303.92	18.32	18.32	1
BC_435	7A	480600.406	1142367.82	7741.50	7726.78	13.76	13.74	1
BC_436	7A	479951.432	1141394.36	10510.17	10499.32	18.68	18.67	1
BC_437	7A	480121.824	1141388.34	8479.88	8459.72	15.08	15.04	1
BC_438	7A	480152.033	1142155.70	7097.26	7070.12	12.62	12.57	1
BC_439	7A	479926.715	1142659.33	8085.28	8071.38	14.37	14.35	1
BC_440	7A	483147.461	1140769.56	8817.28	8823.98	15.68	15.69	1
BC_441	7A	480956.333	1141701.63	8606.56	8592.12	15.30	15.27	1
BC_442	7A	480267.249	1141814.42	12218.98	12197.00	21.72	21.68	1
BC_443	7A	480642.923	1141410.75	7962.92	7952.98	14.16	14.14	1
BC_444	7A	483012.096	1140534.43	10862.31	10840.12	19.31	19.27	1
BC_445	7A	482989.024	1140900.47	10490.74	10466.72	18.65	18.61	1
BC_446	7A	483158.143	1141053.27	11635.60	11629.72	20.69	20.68	1
BC_447	7A	482828.985	1140337.7	12412.49	12433.64	22.07	22.10	1 & 2

In Campaign 7A, the majority of the nodules (94%) were found on the sediment surface (0 cm to 1 cm interval), with most of the remainder buried in the sediment at depths between 1 cm and 15 cm.

The dominant nodule facies was Type 1. The nodules ranged in size from 8 mm to 193 mm in diameter, with an average major axis length of 2.9 mm. The nodules were mainly smooth (S type) on both the upper and lower surfaces. The dominant nodule shape encountered was discoidal. A few larger nodules with rough lower surfaces and poorly developed botryoidal texture were observed in two box cores (BC_431 and BC_447), where they were found sitting on the clay surface amongst the smaller smooth nodules, not in a semi-liquid clay as was noted on previous campaigns. The box cores with the mixed nodule assemblages returned the highest nodule abundances of all samples processed through the geology laboratory during this campaign.

The soils encountered in the box cores generally consisted of a homogenous, very soft dark brown upper clay layer of 100 mm to 150 mm in thickness and an underlying mottled soft clay layer with strong evidence of bioturbation.

7.5.5.2 Campaign 7B

In Campaign 7B, 14 box cores (BC_473 – BC_486) were successfully acquired for the purpose of measuring the nodules left behind by the collector. Nodule abundances before and after the Trial Mining Test have not yet been fully reconciled with the parameters under which the collector was operating (mode, speed, etc) to estimate nodule recovery factors. This was due to problems with the activity data recordings and a paucity of box core samples. TMC had intended to supplement box core samples with photograph-based nodule abundance assessment from the widespread high resolution photo data of the area. However, a reliable image recognition and nodule estimation methodology had not been identified at the time of this Technical Report, and as a consequence, the operating status of the collector cannot be accurately matched to its location on the seafloor.

The box core results for Campaign 7B are presented in Table 7.6. Nodule abundances ranged from 0.51 wet kg/m^2 to 15.66 wet kg/m^2. In most cases, the collector had been picking up nodules and therefore the nodules collected in the box cores were only those that the collector and riser and lift system did not recover. Figure 7.37 shows the location of the C7B box cores and the nodule abundances and bathymetry derived from the AUV data.

Table 7.6 Box Core Sample Coordinates and Nodule Weights - Campaign 7B

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Offshore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Offshore	Onshore	
BC_473	7B	480214.886	1141062.88	909.30	914.88	1.62	1.63	1
BC_474	7B	480654.723	1141395.17	8389.32	8420.98	14.91	14.97	1
BC_475	7B	480262.876	1141373.01	1842.05	1846.68	3.27	3.28	1
BC_476	7B	480135.360	1141355.88	763.27	767.68	1.36	1.36	1

BC_477	7B	480271.559	1141815.45	2353.44	2360.68	4.18	4.20	1
BC_478	7B	479663.974	1142304.58	1741.45	1742.68	3.10	3. 10	1
BC_479	7B	479689.994	1142237.93	1974.77	1978.08	3.51	3.52	1
BC_480	7B	479675.189	1142304.36	1695.88	1699.68	3.01	3.02	1
BC_481	7B	479643.178	1142344.95	8788.59	8811.04	15.62	15.66	1
BC_482	7B	479637.306	1142373.92	4529.66	4542.22	8.05	8.08	1
BC_483	7B	479898.954	1141990.15	1624.73	1636.88	2.89	2.91	1
BC_484	7B	480132.675	1142147.55	1532.92	1536.48	2.73	2.73	1
BC_485	7B	479903.330	1142679.75	283.66	288.48	0.50	0.51	1
BC_486	7B	479405.490	1142494.03	1731.74	1734.68	3.08	3.08	1

The nodules collected during Campaign 7B ranged in size from 5 mm to 70 mm in diameter. By mass, 81.8% of the nodules occurred on the surface of the box core and 18.2% of the nodules were recovered from depths between 1 and 15 cm. Nodules were typical Type 1 surface nodules, many displaying evidence of fresh fracturing, with the buried nodule population being more skewed towards angular nodule fragments.

The significant reduction in surface nodules and lesser reduction in buried nodules between the two campaigns is the result of pick-up of nodules by the collector during the test mining.

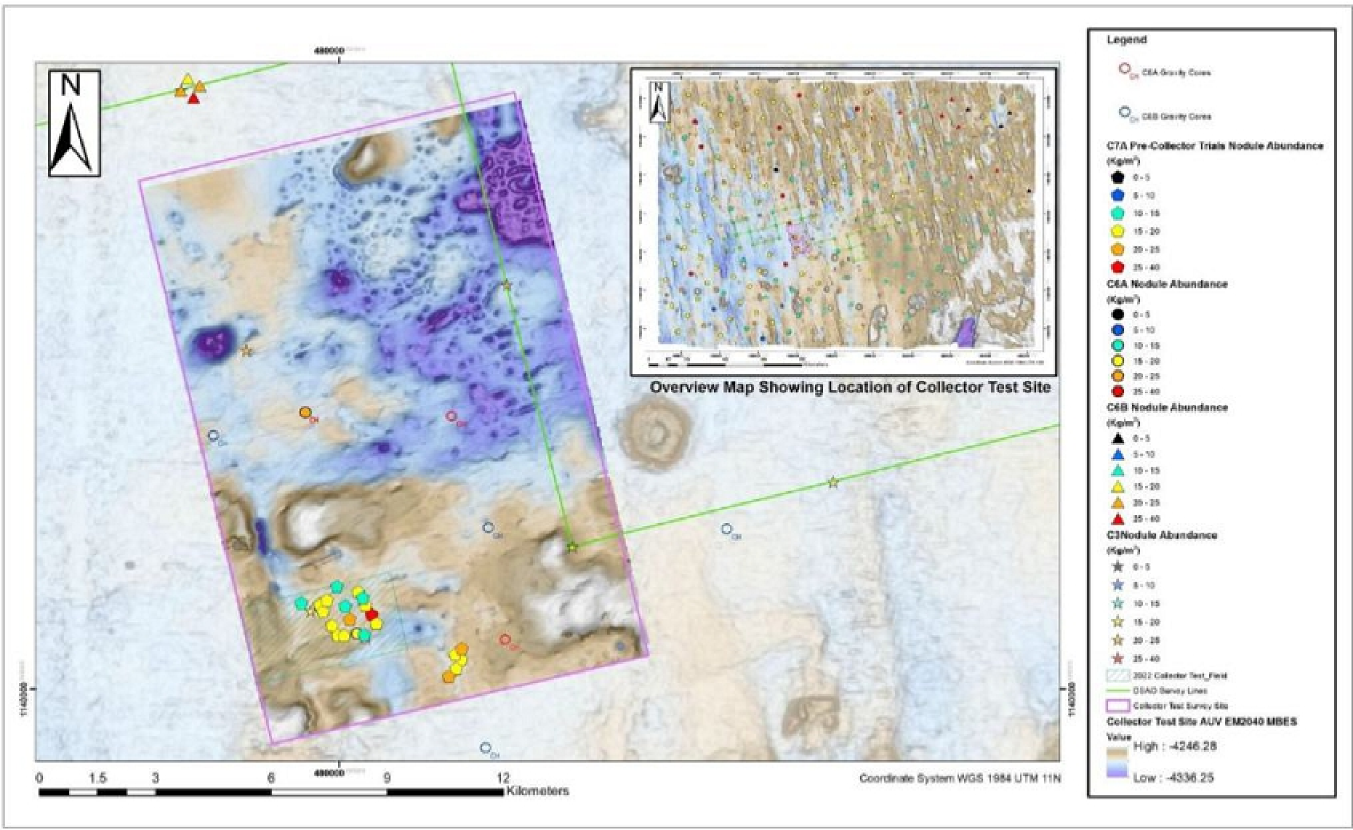
Six of the Campaign 7B box cores were located at sites within 80 m of Campaign 7A box cores, allowing comparison of nodule abundances before and after the test mining. The paired sampling sites and the abundances recorded in the box cores are listed in Table 7.7 and shown in Figure 7.36. The nodule abundances prior to collection (Campaign 7A) ranged from 12.57 kg/m^2 to 21.68 kg/m^2 with an average of 15.8 kg/m^2 at the paired sites. The nodule abundances for the same sites after collection (Campaign 7B) ranged from 0.51 kg/m^2 to 15.66 kg/m^2 with an average of 5.72 kg/m^2.

BC_481 and BC_474 are likely to have sampled seafloor not traversed by the collector or traversed while the collector was not in pick up mode. Excluding these two results, the average recovery of nodules was 80%.

Table 7.7 Summary of the nodule abundance for the paired sites before and after the test mining

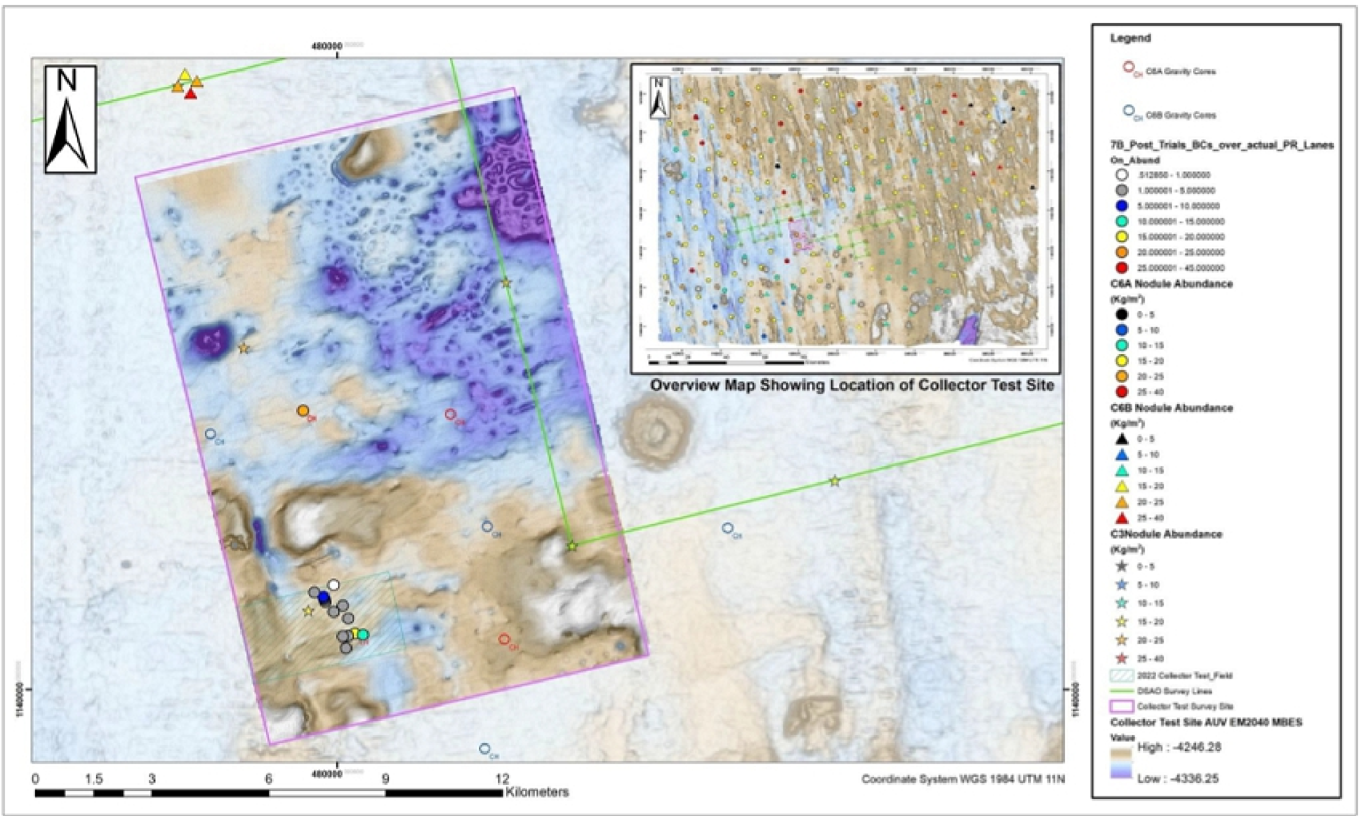
Sample LocatioN	Campaign 7A Box Core ID	Campaign 7B Box Core ID	Campaign 7A	Campaign 7B	Recovery (%)	Distance between pair (m)
			Nodule Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	**Nodule Abundance (wet kg/m^2)**		
TF_001	BC_438	BC_484	12.57	2.73	78	21.0
TF_003	BC_437	BC_476	15.04	1.36	91	35.2
TF_007	BC_429	BC_478	17.13	3.10	82	4.1
		BC_479		3.52	79	70.6
		BC_480		3.02	82	7.1
		BC_481		15.66	9	47.0
		BC_482		8.08	53	75.4
TF_009	BC_443	BC_474	14.14	14.97	-6	19.5
TF_015	BC_442	BC_477	21.68	4.20	81	4.4
TF_016	BC_439	BC_485	14.35	0.51	96	31.0
Averages			**15.82**	**5.72**	**64**	**31.6**

Figure 7.36 Plan of test mining site showing C7A box core locations, abundances and bathymetry



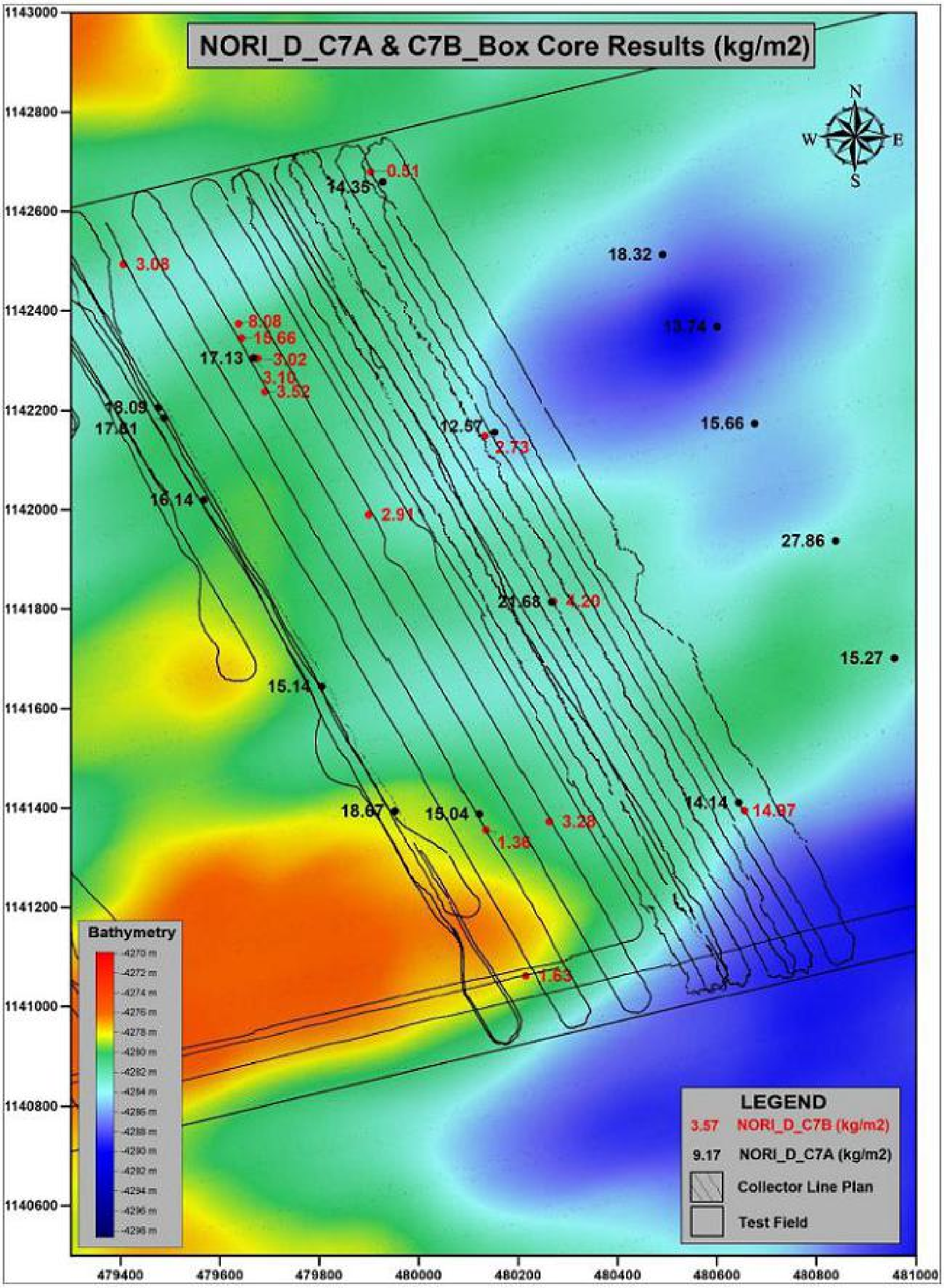
Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.37 Plan of test mining site showing C7B box core locations, abundances and bathymetry



Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.38 Plan of box core abundances for campaign 7A and 7B and test mining runs



Source: TMC

7.6 NORI 2023 Campaign 8a

Campaign 8a was focused on collecting benthic biological data 12 months after completion of the collector Test. During this campaign the opportunity was taken to collect six (6) box cores to provide additional resource information in areas which had not been directly impacted by collection.

Additionally, 196.4 line km of AUV deployed MBES, side scan sonar (SSS), sub-bottom profiler (SBP), and 245.5 line km of camera data were collected over an area of 245.7 km^2 in areas delineated as runs 19 and 20.

THRE360 Energy (previously Leap Energy) was subcontracted to provide geological support for the box coring operations. Bluefield Geoservices was subcontracted to provide the geotechnical logging and testing component of the program.

Box scores were only collected from two sites, namely a control site (zero impact from the 2022 test mining) and an area of thick re-sedimentation near collector tracks (Zone 1). Box cores from the control site (BC_492, BC_501 and BC_502) yielded nodule abundances ranging from 18.8 kg/m^2 to 21.6 kg/m^2 and averaged 20.2 kg/m^2. Box cores from Zone 1 (BC_488, BC_493, BC_500), yielded nodule abundances that ranged from 9.3 kg/m^2 to 17.0 kg/m^2 and averaged 14.4 kg/m^2.

7.6.1 Box coring

A 75 cm x 75 cm x 50 cm stainless steel box corer (area of 0.526 m^2) built by Ocean Instruments was used. The positioning of the final land-out coordinates of box cores deployments were carried out using USBL positioning equipment. The box corer was operated by Continental Shelf Associates (CSA) deck crew and was fitted with an USBL transponder for positioning. A sound velocity profiler (SVP) was used to monitor sound velocity variations in the water column. The positioning was monitored by two certified surveyors from Magellan. Fixes were taken during each box core landing and all sample coordinates were recorded in WGS84 UTM 11N.

7.6.2 Nodule sampling

Geological logging and nodule sampling were completed. The procedures for sampling the nodules were the same as used in Campaigns 6 and 7. Nodules are removed from the box core, geologically logged, photographed, weighed, sealed in plastic bags and packed into plastic buckets.

As a quality control measure, five out of the six box core samples were split into duplicates for assaying by selecting nodules randomly from the buckets. Random sampling was chosen as an alternative to coning and quartering as it was considered that this would reduce exposure of the samples to air and result in more accurate measurement of moisture content without introducing significant variability into the assays. The nodules were selected from the buckets containing the 0 – 1 cm layer, which on average was 96% of the total mass of nodules collected from the box core, and did not include nodules from the 1 – 15 cm layer. AMC considers that this is not a significant risk to the accuracy of the assays from the box cores.

The nodule facies of the samples recovered during Campaign 8A was Type 1.

7.6.3 Biological sampling

The primary purpose of Campaign 8A was environmental sampling and monitoring. Biological sampling of the box cores was carried out. These activities are documented elsewhere.

7.6.4 Exploration results

In Campaign 8A, 6 box cores (BC_488, BC_492, BC_493, BC_500, BC_501, BC_502) were successfully sampled for resource definition purposes. The abundances in the box cores provided measurements of the *in situ* abundance of nodules.

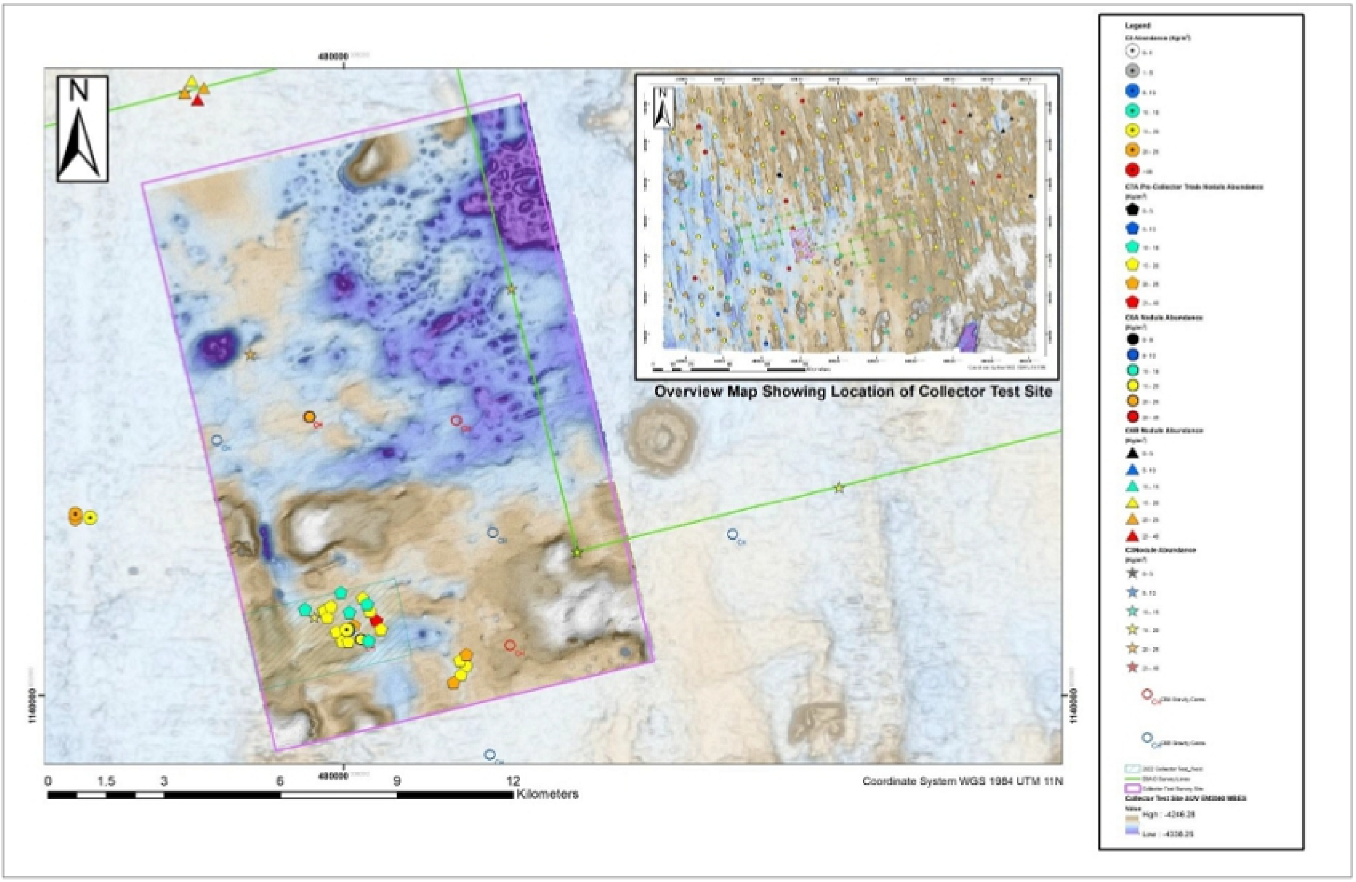
Nodules were reweighed on-shore at the end of the campaigns. The differences between off-shore and on-shore weights were not significant and generally less than 1%.

The box core results for Campaign 8A are presented in Table 7.8. Nodule abundance ranged from 9.2 wet kg/m^2 to 21.5 wet kg/m^2 and an average abundance of 17.2 wet kg/m^2. Figure 7.39 shows the location of the C8A box cores.

Table 7.8 Box core sample coordinates and nodule weights - Campaign 8A

Box core number	Campaign	Actual location		Weight (kg)		Abundance (wet kg/m^2)		Nodule facies
		Easting (E)	Northing (N)	Offshore (kg)	Onshore (kg)	Offshore	Onshore	
BC_488	8A	480,145.31	1,141,698.67	9.55	9.52	16.97	16.93	1
BC_492	8A	473,079.21	1,144,556.35	12.14	12.07	21.58	21.45	1 & 2
BC_493	8A	480,119.98	1,141,684.64	5.24	5.17	9.32	9.19	1
BC_500	8A	480,081.27	1,141,692.19	9.46	9.43	16.82	16.77	
BC_501	8A	473,463.88	1,144,574.42	10.60	10.64	18.85	18.92	1
BC_502	8A	473,079.78	1,144,667.59	11.27	11.30	20.03	20.09	1

Figure 7.39 Plan of C8a box core locations, abundances and bathymetry



Source: MARGIN

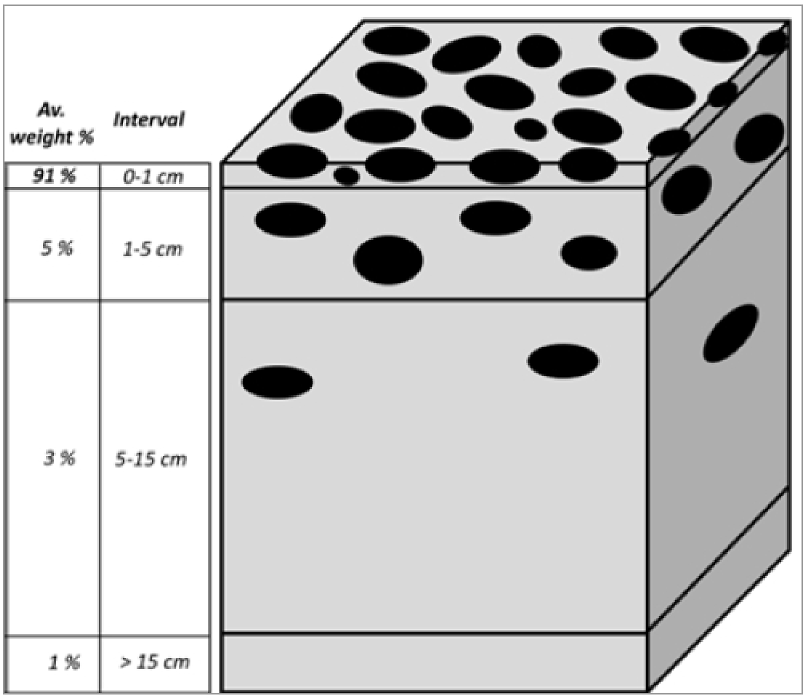
7.7 Analysis of abundance of nodules

The design of the seafloor collection systems and planning production must consider both the average nodule abundance and the variations in nodule abundance over short distances. In 2023, AMC and MARGIN Marine Geoscience completed several studies of nodule abundance.

The nodule abundance data collected in campaigns C3, C6A, C6B, and C7A was reviewed to check the integrity of the data stored in the new NORI project database. All recorded weights were confirmed to be internally consistent with the previously reported nodule abundances.

In campaign C3, nodules in the box cores were sampled by depth according to the intervals shown in Figure 7.40. On average, 96% of the nodules were recovered between the surface and a depth of 5 cm. The nodules recovered between 5 cm and 15 cm depth all horizons were interpreted to have been pushed into the soft clay by the box core frame. There were only two box cores where nodules deeper than 15 cm were confidently observed *in situ*, but these nodules were so friable that they crumbled when attempts were made to remove the surrounding clay and were not recoverable.

Figure 7.40 Schematic representation of average weight of nodules by depth in the box cores in campaign C3



Source: TMC

In Campaign 6 (6A plus 6B), the majority of the nodules (92%) were found on the sediment surface (0 cm to 1 cm interval), with the remainder being predominantly encountered buried in the sediment at depths between 1 cm and 15 cm. The 1 cm to 5 cm interval and 5 cm to 15 cm intervals were not sampled separately. Occasionally, nodules were found buried deeper in the box core (15 cm to 30 cm), but these were generally in advanced stages of breakdown and were very easily broken when any attempt was made to recover them. The nodules from deeper than 15 cm were not collected. Nodule sampling in campaign C7A and C7B, was carried out using the same practice as in Campaign 6.

The reported nodule abundance in box cores in all campaigns was calculated from the mass of all nodules recovered to a depth of 15 cm. The contribution of each layer to the total abundance is shown for each box core in Figure 7.41.

Figure 7.41 Scatter plots showing the contribution by layer to total nodule abundance in box cores

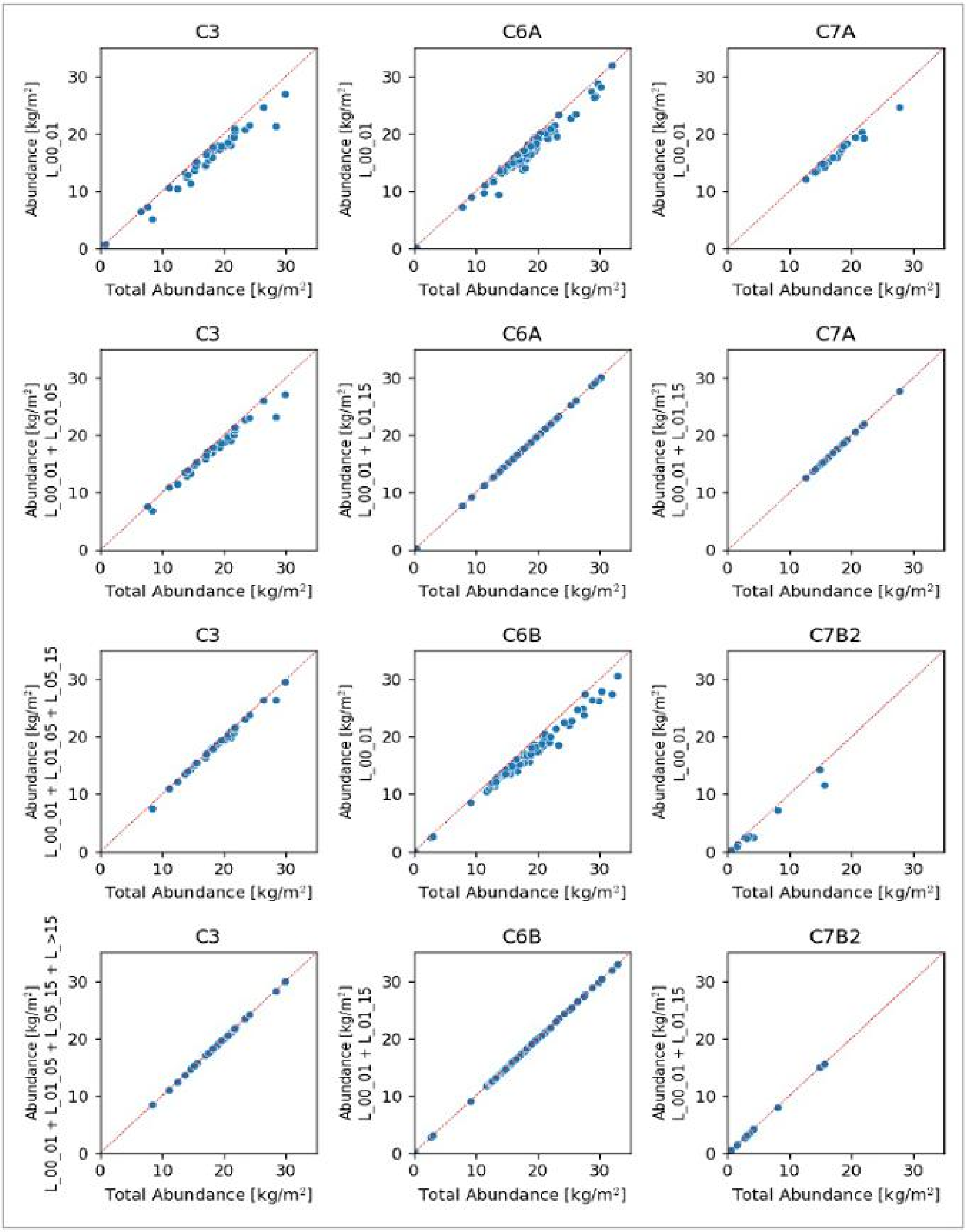


Table 7.9 summarizes the masses of nodules recovered by depth and campaign. The summary shows that there is consistency between the proportions of nodules by layer in each campaign of box core sampling of *in situ* nodules. There was an average of 92% in 0 – 1 cm layer, 7% in 1 – 15 cm layer, of which the measurements in campaign C3 indicate 4% – 5% was in the 1 – 5 cm layer. There is an insignificant proportion of nodules at greater than 15 cm depth.

The data indicates that, for a collector designed to cut the seafloor to a maximum depth of 5 cm, 96% of the measured box core nodule abundance is expected to be available for collection by the seafloor mining system.

Table 7.9 Masses of nodules recovered by depth and campaign

Campaign C3	**Number of box cores =**		**45**		
Depth (cm)	0 - 1	1 - 5	5 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	540	28	20	8	596
Mean percentage mass by layer	91%	5%	3%	1%	100
Campaign C6A	**Number of box cores =**		**106**		
Depth (cm)	0 - 1		1 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	1346		96	0	1441
Mean percentage mass by layer	93%		7%	0%	100
Campaign C6B	**Number of box cores =**		**101**		

Depth (cm)	0 - 1		1 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	1178		101		1279
Mean percentage mass by layer	92%		8%	0%	100
Campaign C7A	**Number of box cores =**		**22**		
Depth (cm)	0 - 1		1 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	201		14		215
Mean percentage mass by layer	94%		6%	0%	100
Campaigns 3, 6A, 6B, 7A	**Number of box cores =**		**274**		
Depth (cm)	0 - 1		1 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	3265		258	8	3532
Mean percentage mass by layer	92%		7%	0%	100%
Campaign C7B (post-mining)	**Number of box cores =**		**14**		
Depth (cm)	0 - 1		1 - 15	>15	Total
Total mass by layer (kg)	31		7		38
Mean percentage mass by layer	82%		18%	0%	100%

The nodules recorded in box cores of Campaign 7B were residual material not recovered by the collector during the test mining and are not included in Mineral Resource or Reserve estimates. Nodule abundances before and after the test mining have not been reconciled, and the data is not relied upon in the Mineral Reserve statement pursuant to Item 1302(b)(2)(ii).

7.8 Analysis of nodule size distribution

Understanding the particle size distributions (PSD) of the nodules is important for the engineering design of the collector and for estimating nodule recovery during mining operations. The collector will pick up nodules up to a certain maximum size and nodules greater than this size may be left on the seafloor. Therefore, measurements of nodule dimensions and understanding of how nodule dimensions vary across NORI Area D will help determine optimum collector design parameters and enhance the accuracy of mine plans and recovery predictions.

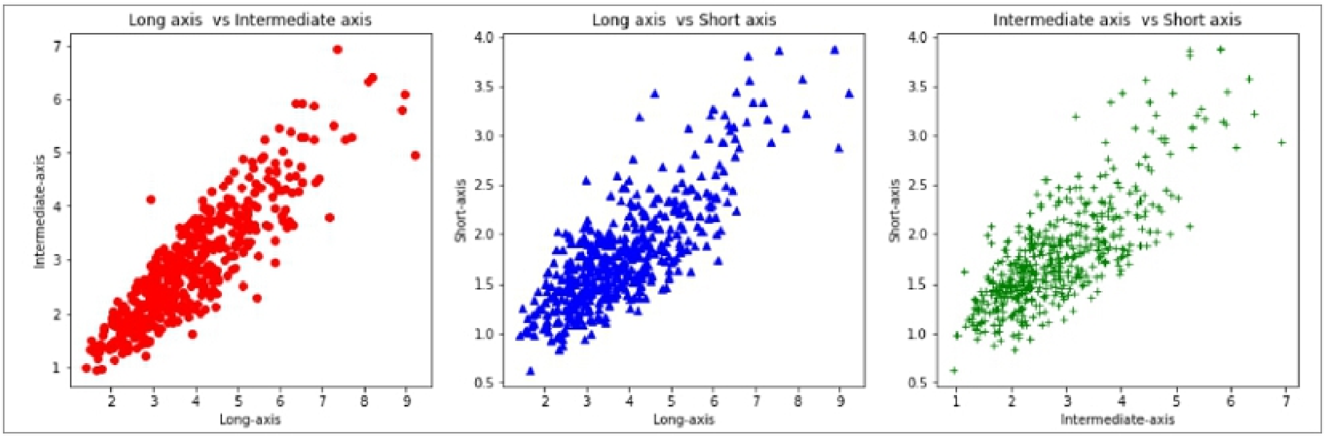
7.8.1 Physical measurement of size and estimation of abundance from nodule dimensions

Subsea imagery, box core top shots, and laboratory photographs of trays of nodules, only provide measurements of the major and intermediate axes of the nodules. During Campaign 7A the axial lengths of selected nodules were manually measured during off-shore nodule processing. The objective was to assess whether addition of the short (vertical) axis measurement can be used to significantly improve the estimation of nodule abundance from subsea imagery.

For each tray of nodules presented for photography in the off-shore laboratory, the major, intermediate, and minor axes of the four nodules in the corners of each tray were measured. This resulted in 500 individual measurements acquired over the campaign, from 22 box cores.

The first step in the analysis of the data was to assess whether there was a relationship between major (X), intermediate (Y) and short (Z) axes data. Figure 7.42 shows scatter plots comparing the axial lengths of the 500 nodules. It is clear that the axial lengths are positively, linearly correlated. Variability in these relationships increase as the size of the nodule increases (seen as a comet-tail distribution, widening with increase in axes length).

Figure 7.42 Scatter plot comparing axis lengths of 500 manually measured nodules



Source: MARGIN

7.8.2 Measurement of nodule dimensions using ImageJ software

During Campaign 3 an image classification approach was tested for measuring the long and intermediate axes of individual nodules taken from box core samples, using ImageJ software. This approach was driven by a need to find a more efficient method of performing nodule measurements over manual hand-held calliper measurements, as the majority of box cores recovered much higher nodule counts than were initially anticipated, resulting in an onboard processing backlog. The image classification method showed a very good correlation against hand-held calliper measurement (see Section 7.2.10).

This approach was subsequently adopted across campaigns 6A to 7B. Section 7.2.6 provides an overview of the image classification methodology. NORI collected nodule size measurements from the box core samples by photographing all the nodules nominally greater than 1 cm in length and then using image processing software (ImageJ) to automate the measurement of the orthogonal major and intermediate axes of the nodules. The minor axis of the nodules is the vertical axis of the nodules which cannot be seen in the photographs. Nodules < 1 cm diameter were bagged and sealed into small clear sample packets and included in the photographs but not measured by the image processing software. They were included in the weighing process and are included in the abundance measurements.

Box core locations were compiled from Fugro and Three60/LEAP reports. The locations were combined with the nodule weight and abundance data using the box core IDs, and all campaigns were compiled into a template suitable for archive purposes.

The ImageJ data went through an extensive QA/QC process. Possible low-quality data were identified on the following basis:

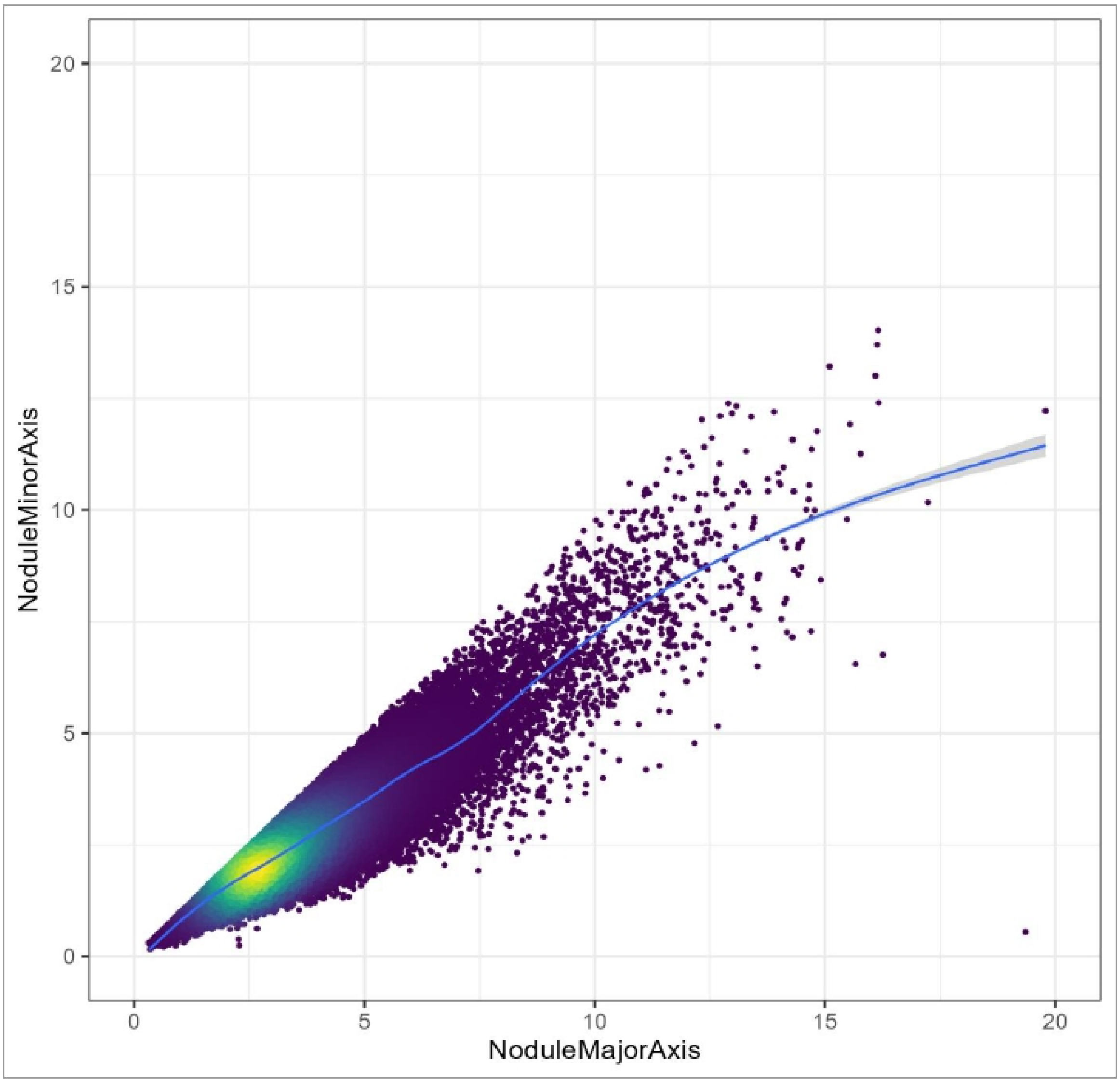
- Very small nodules – these were usually artifacts in the image that the software counted as nodules.
- Any nodules with a very large major: minor axis ratio – these were usually grid lines that had been counted as nodules.
- Nodules with a very large perimeter value – this was usually down to either poor thresholding or two nodules that had been counted as one.
- Very large values for nodules – the scale had not been set correctly in the ImageJ software.

Box core images with low-quality datasets were visually examined and then re-processed to a higher standard. Once all the individual datasets were clean and consistent, they were combined into a single dataset. The cleaned ImageJ data can be linked back to the box core locations and layer abundance data via the box core ID.

There are slight differences between the image data in Campaign 3 and campaigns 6 and 7. In Campaign 3, the graticules behind the nodules in the images were black and if the lighting was poor, parts of the thicker graticules were sometimes falsely detected as nodules. Reprocessing of the data in 2023 largely removed this problem but small anomalies in the proportion of nodules < 1 cm are still visible in the C3 data compared to the C6 data. From C6 onwards, the color of the graticules was changed to red so they could be masked out during object detection.

The data consists of 232,068 individual nodule measurements from 287 box cores. Figure 7.43 shows a scatter plot of the major axis length versus the intermediate axis length for all the nodules in this data set. The points are colored according to the local density of points, where the light green cloud highlights the region with the most points. A curve is fitted to the data using a non-linear smoothing algorithm. The plot demonstrates that most nodules manifest some ellipticity, confirmed by the cloud of points lying below the 1:1 line, along which any circular nodules would lie. The mean ratio nod_intermediate: nod_major is 0.75 and the ratio nod_intermediate: nod_minor is similar. Note that the data does not discriminate between whole nodules and broken fragments.

Figure 7.43 Scatter plot of nodule major axis dimension versus nodule intermediate axis dimension for all nodules



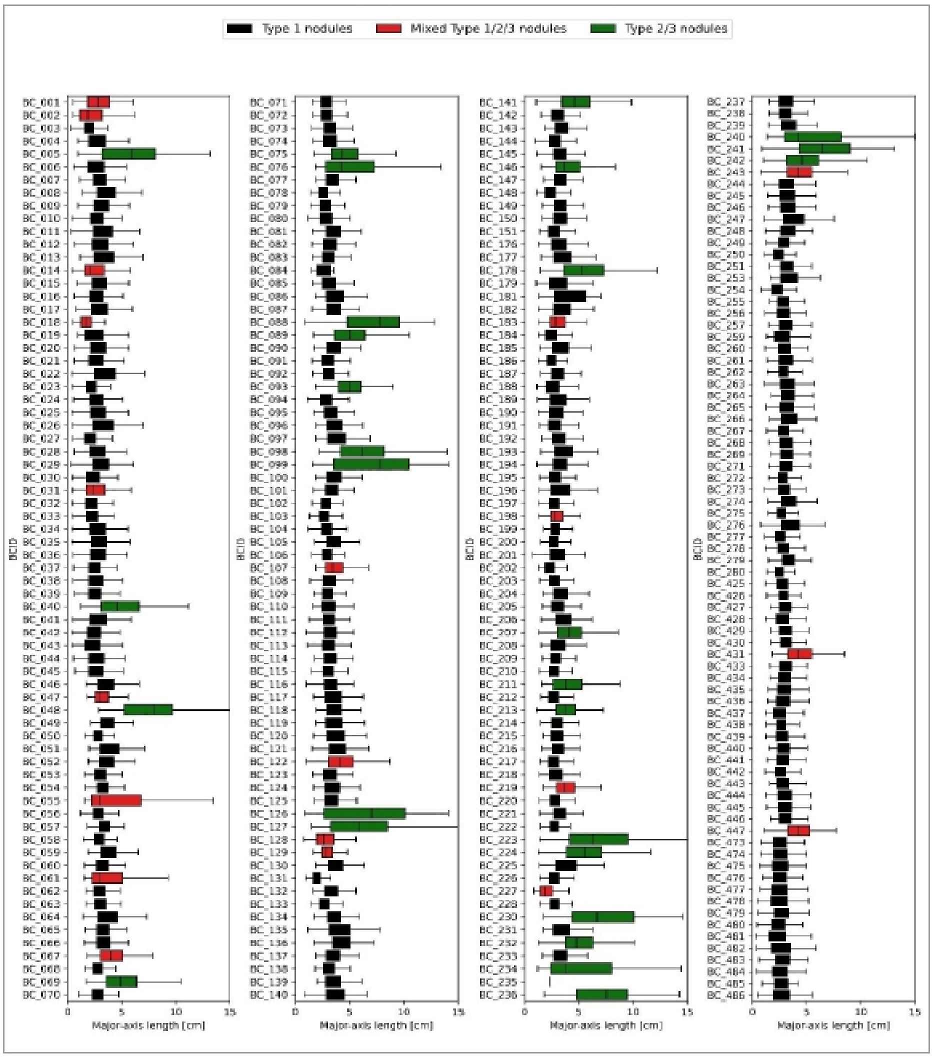
Source: AMC

Figure 7.44 shows boxplots of the major axis lengths of all 287 box cores. It shows that most of the box cores exhibit a median length in the range 2 - 3 cm, and in most cases at least 75% of the nodules (as indicated by the righthand limit of the boxes) are less than 5 cm. This is typical of Type 1 nodule facies (colored black in Figure 7.44). The nodule size distributions are in all cases positively skewed. That is, the distributions show a tail of longer nodule lengths extending to the right of the plots.

In most cases, the skewness is weak and the tail is short. However, the box plots and histograms show that 48 box cores are dominated by larger nodules or have more strongly skewed distributions or even bimodal distributions, with a large population of small values and a small population of higher values. These are:

- 28 box cores dominated by larger nodules (Type 2/3 nodule facies, colored green in Figure 7.44):
  - BC_005, BC_040, BC_048, BC_069, BC_075, BC_076, BC_088, BC_089, BC_093, BC_098, BC_099, BC_126, BC_127, BC_141, BC_146, BC_178, BC_207, BC_211, BC_213, BC_223, BC_224, BC_230, BC_232, BC_234, BC_236, BC_240, BC_241, BC_242.
- 20 box cores with more strongly skewed distributions and tails of larger nodules (mixed Type 1 and Type 2/3 nodule facies, coloured red in Figure 7.44):
  - BC_001, BC_002, BC_014, BC_018, BC_031, BC_047, BC_055, BC_061, BC_067, BC_107, BC_122, BC_128, BC_129, BC_183, BC_198, BC_219, BC_227, BC_243, BC_431, BC_447.

Figure 7.44 Box plots of nodule major axis dimension for all box cores

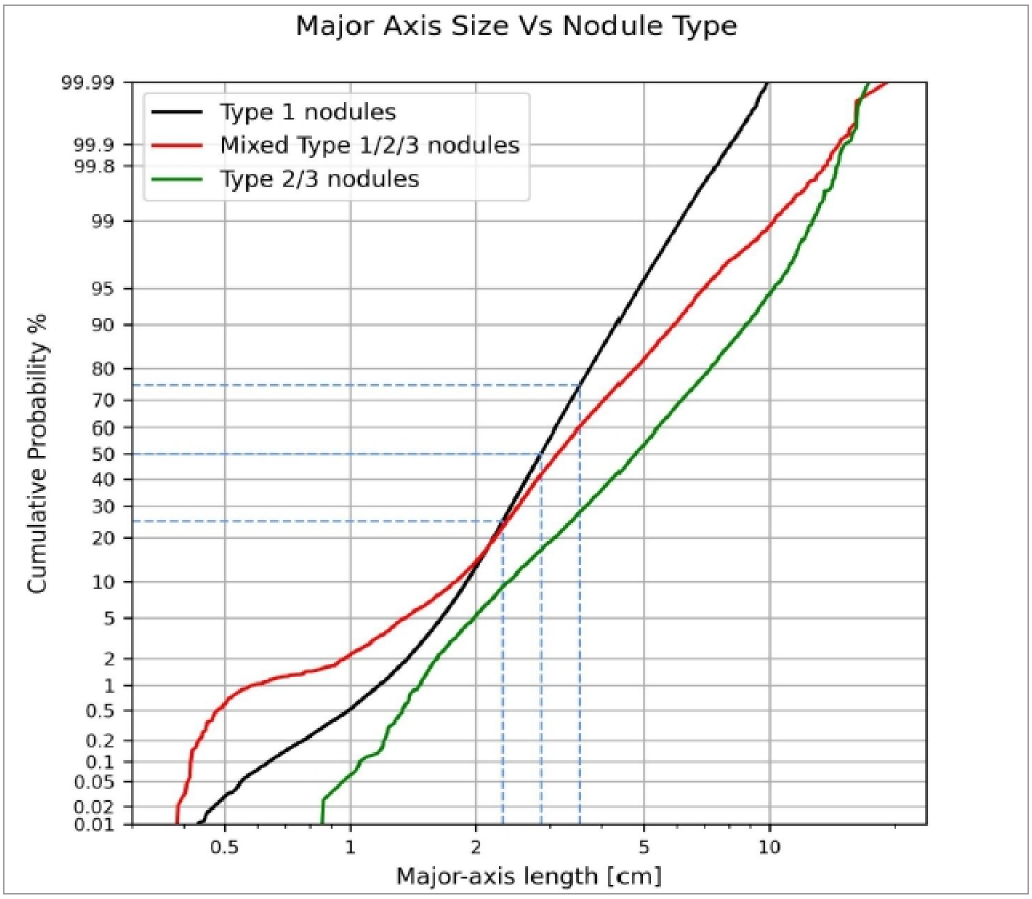


Source: AMC

AMC compared the location of these 48 box cores with larger nodules against the extent of Type 2/3 nodules interpreted from the EM120 backscatter data, noting that the interpretation is limited by the 60 m resolution of the backscatter data. Small nodules generally dominate in the centre of NORI Area D, in an ENE trending belt located mainly in the abyssal plain domain. The box cores with the largest mean nodule size generally occur in the north in, or near, areas interpreted to contain Type 2/3 nodules. Approximately 70% of box cores flagged as having a bimodal or skewed population occur in, or very close to, areas interpreted to contain Type 2/3 nodules. The remaining 30% of unusually skewed distributions occur in Type 1 nodule areas. Kuhn and Rühlemann (2021) made similar statistical observations in the BGR contract area, to the north of NORI Area D.

Figure 7.45 shows a plot of the cumulative distributions of nodule major axis lengths for all the 287 box cores for which the ImageJ major axis length data were available. The data was divided into Type 1, Type 2/3, and mixed Type 1 and Type 2/3 groups. The plot shows that there are significant differences between the statistical distributions of major axis length in the three nodule types. The Type 1 box cores have the smallest median major axis length. The Type 2/3 box cores have the largest median major axis length. The mixed facies box cores have an intermediate size distribution. These statistical features illustrate the complexity of nodule size distributions at the local scale and the need for further work to improve the spatial definition of Type 2/3 nodule facies.

Figure 7.45 Log probability plot of nodule major axis dimensions, subdivided by interpreted nodule type domain



Source: AMC

7.9 Analysis of nodule shape, texture and fragmentation

A classification system for nodules was developed by NORI prior to the NORI 2018 campaign (C3). This was largely based on classifications identified by the ISA (ISA, 2010b) and work presented by TOML in their NI 43-101 resource report (AMC 2016). In each off-shore campaign, descriptors of nodule form, such as shape, texture, and fragmentation were recorded as dominant types for each box core layer (Table 7.10). The logs were captured in a digital excel database on-board the vessel.

In Campaign C3, a first pass statistical analysis of the logging data was carried out. For the first six box cores (BC_001 – BC_006), each nodule was measured and described separately. This was feasible for larger Type 3 facies nodules, but it presented a significant processing bottleneck for the majority of subsequent box core samples, which were typified by smaller diameter Type 1 and Type 2 facies nodules. Over 49,000 nodules were collected in the 45 box cores in Campaign C3. Examples are shown in Figure 7.46

Table 7.10 Shape, texture and fragmentation descriptors

Shape	Texture	Fragmentation	Botryoidal (grape-like texture)
Discoidal Ellipsoidal, Spherical Tabular, Poly-nucleic, Irregular shaped, Fragment	Rough, smooth, rough + smooth	Rare, moderate, common	Well developed, poorly developed, absent

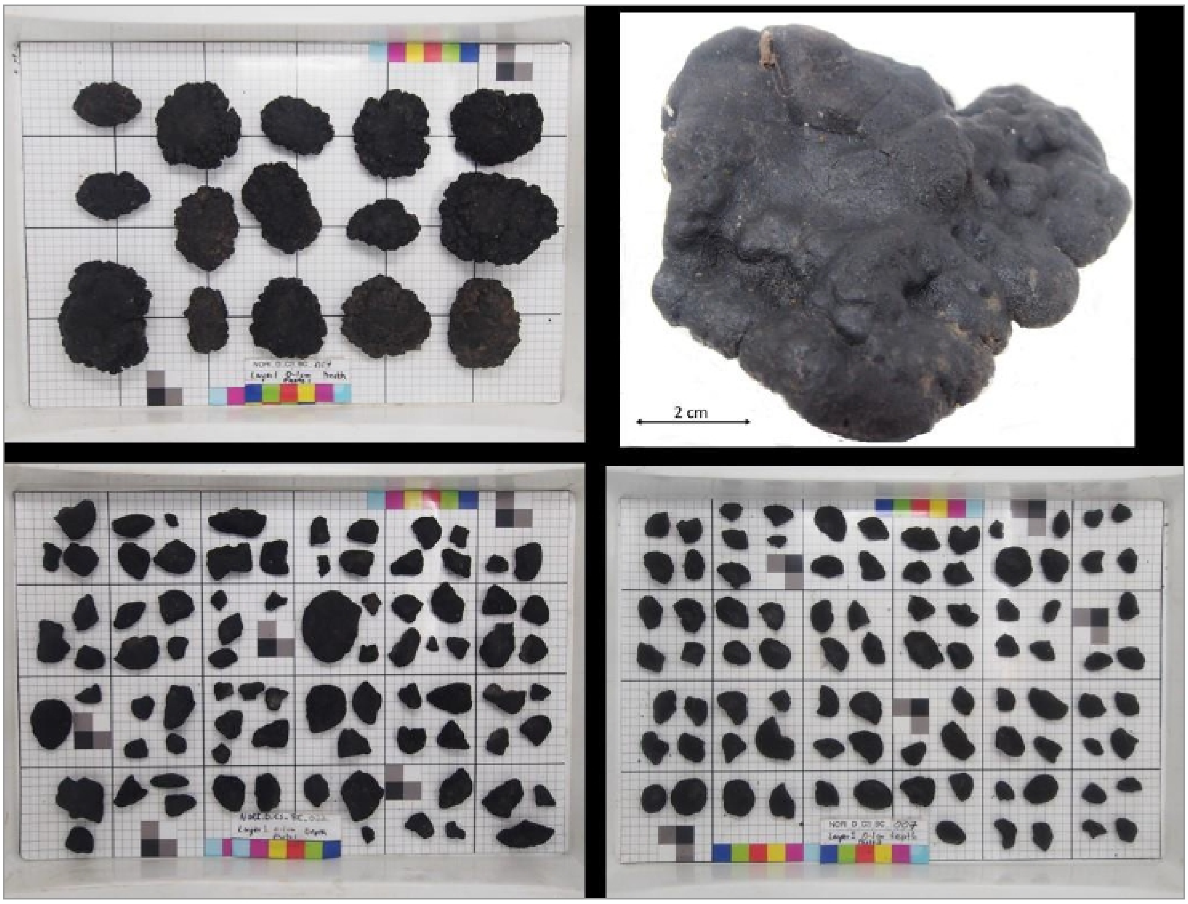
Pie graphs showing dominant shape, texture and fragmentation of the nodules collected during the NORI 2018 C3 campaign are shown in Figure 7.47. Fragmented nodules were the most common. The dominant texture was SR; smooth upper surface and rough lower surface. Well-developed botryoidal texture was relatively uncommon.

Of the 45 box cores, four (4) were Type 3 facies, three (3) were Type 2 facies, and 35 were Type 1 facies. It was noted that:

- Type 1: 13% of the nodule sub-samples were dominantly smooth (S) texture, 76% were dominantly smooth-rough (SR) texture and <1% were dominantly rough (R) texture.
- Type 2: All were dominantly SR texture.
- Type 3: 50% of the nodule sub-samples of the nodule sub-samples were dominantly R texture, 50% were dominantly SR texture.

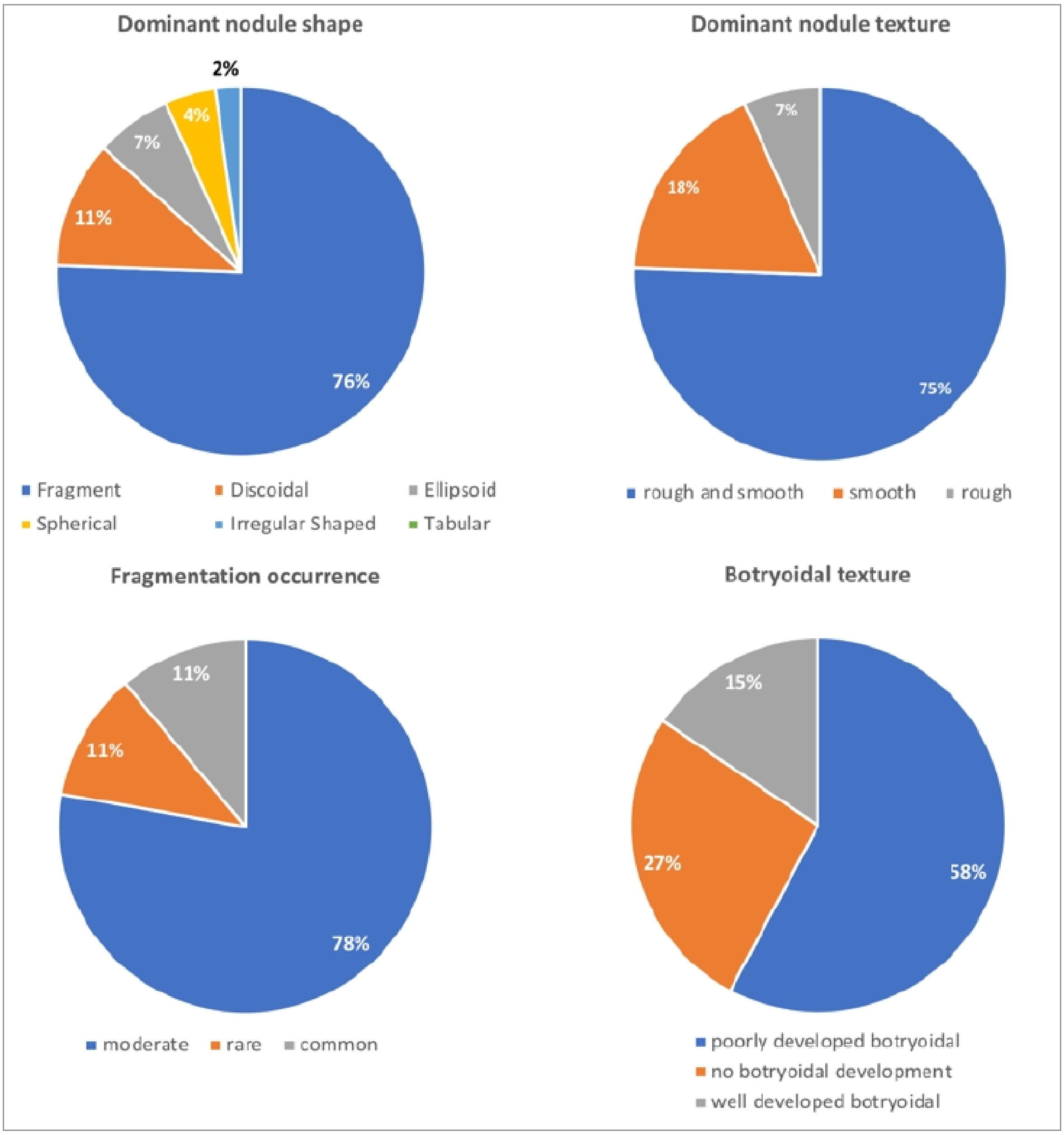
It would be possible to extend the analysis to all campaigns, as the logs were recorded for each nodule batch. However, logging of textural parameters was likely less accurate during Campaign 6A and 6B as there were less geologists per shift and the tempo of sample processing was significantly higher. Textural classification is made difficult by the high proportions of fragmented nodules and likely overprinting of textures during growth and disturbance of the nodules.

Figure 7.46 Examples of nodules recovered during the NORI 2018 campaign



Notes: Upper left – example of large nodules with rough texture. Top right – close-up of large nodule. These nodules were the least-dominant size class. More common were nodules in the 2-5 cm range, as shown by examples in lower left and right. Source: TMC

Figure 7.47 Pie graphs showing morphology of nodules collected during the 2018 campaign



Source: MARGIN

7.10 Analysis of moisture content of nodules

The moisture content of the nodules in NORI Area D has been measured at various times throughout the exploration and related scientific programs. The conditions under which the samples were dried and the results reported by different laboratories varied. AMC reviewed the moisture content data in order to reconcile inconsistencies and assess whether moisture content shows any relationship to nodule type, size or location. The aim of the review was to clarify which moisture content data should be used when converting wet abundance estimates to dry abundance estimates, and when estimating contained metal.

In addition to moisture content data from NORI Area D, relevant data from the Tonga Offshore Mining Limited (TOML), the Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources (BGR) contract areas, and Interoceanmetal Joint Organization (IOM) contract area were considered.

The moisture content of nodules determined by laboratory analysis is the free (chemically unbound) water occurring within the pore spaces of the individual nodules which is released by drying of the samples prior to chemical analysis. The drying temperature for this is typically 105°C.

The nodules also contain chemically-bound water and hydroxide ions, mainly within manganese and iron minerals. Manganese minerals with various types of crystalline lattice have different levels of thermal stability. Layered manganese minerals (buserite I, asbolane-buserite, and birnessite) are stable up to 120°C –150°C; asbolane up to 180°C, vernadite, up to ~500°C; todorokite up to 600°C, and pyrolusite up to 670°C (Novikov and Bogdanova 2007). The chemically-bound water and any other volatiles, such as carbon dioxide, are measured by measuring the loss of mass on ignition (LOI) that occurs when the samples are heated from 105°C to 1000°C.

The nodules collected from the seafloor by the seafloor mining system are expected to be delivered to the production vessel as a slurried, coarse aggregate. Any water in the slurry is expected to drain quickly from the stockpile. Sampling of the stockpiled nodules from the test mining indicates that almost all of the moisture within the stockpile occurs within the nodules themselves and not in the space between the nodules.

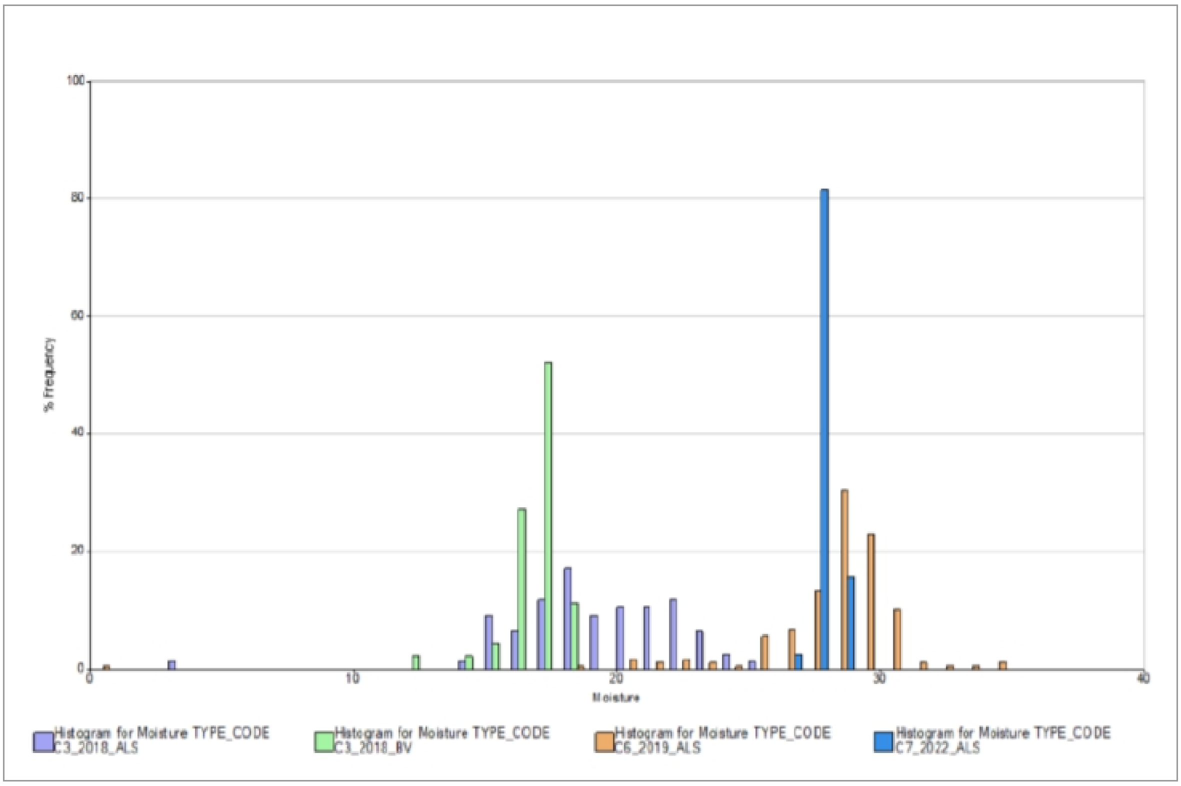
Moisture contents of the nodules in the NORI Area D database are reported on a wet basis (wet weight-dry weight) / wet weight. The following moisture content information was obtained from nodule samples collected in the NORI Areas:

- A drying test undertaken on a nodule sample collected during the NORI 2012 campaign indicated moisture loss of 24% at 120°C (Golder, 2015).
- Average moisture content of four Campaign 2 samples dried for 12 hours at 120°C was 28.7% (Golder, 2015).
- Average moisture content of the Campaign 3 (2018) box core samples dried for three days at 60°C (at ALS) was 19.6% (wet basis, using a divisor of mass of water + mass of solids) and LOI at 1,000°C was 16.8%.
- Average moisture content of the Campaign 3 (2018) box core samples dried at 105°C (at Bureau Veritas) was 16.9% (wet basis) and LOI at 1,000°C was 16.6%.
- Average moisture content of the Campaign 6A and 6B (2019) box core samples dried at 105°C (at ALS) was 28.1% (wet basis) and LOI at 1,000°C was 15.6%. The method stated for this analysis is OA-GRA05g. OA-GRA05g comprises weighing wet as received using method WEI-23g (reporting wet weight), then drying at 105°C, then weighed again using method WEI-22g (reporting dry weight).
- Average moisture content of the Campaign 7A and 7B (2022) box core samples dried at 105°C (at ALS) was 27.5% (wet basis) and LOI at 1,000°C was 17.1%. The method stated for this analysis is OA-GRA05g.

Figure 7.48 shows a histogram of the combined C3, C6, and C7 nodule moisture content data. The moisture contents show a multimodal distribution. The lowest modal peak at 17.5% is the Campaign 3 Bureau Veritas data and the second peak is the Campaign 3 ALS data. Significantly higher moisture contents were reported from the C6 and C7 box cores, with a modal peak at about 27 – 29%. There are a few anomalously high values in the C6 data and another low modal peak within the C6 data. The C7 data aligns with the C6 data.

Comparison of the paired moisture content data from C3 showed that it is likely that the drying time at BV was shorter than was necessary to drive off all the free water in the samples. Therefore, AMC considers the moisture content measurements of the C3 box core nodules by ALS to be more accurate than the measurements by BV, so the ALS data is recommended to be used for calculation of dry abundance.

Figure 7.48 Histograms of nodule moisture content, NORI Area D



Source: AMC

The differences in the measured nodule moisture contents between C3 and C6, C7 box cores probably relate to different levels of dryness when the nodules were received at the laboratories. The variations in as-received dryness are likely to be related to differences in the conditions in which the samples were handled (air temperature, humidity, wind speed, evaporation rate, and exposure time) before they were sealed in plastic sample bags. The nodules were exposed to air for longer in C3 than in C6 and C7 because counting of nodules was attempted and the samples were coned and quartered on the vessel to produce duplicate samples. The C6 moisture contents (average of 28.1%) are probably a better guide to the moisture content of the nodules that will be delivered by the seafloor mining system to the production vessel.

Water of crystallization is also present in the nodules. This forms part of the mineral structure of many of the iron and manganese minerals in the nodules and other loosely bound moisture held in meta-stable mineral phases. Manganese minerals with various types of crystalline lattice have different levels of thermal stability. Water of crystallization is generally not released by natural drying of the nodules at ambient temperatures. LOI between 105°C and 1000°C was measured in laboratory tests, using a small aliquot of the sample. There is a high level of consistency between the LOI results from the C3, C6, C7 and BGR data sets.

Studies of the impact of drying nodules for different lengths of time indicate that nodules should be dried for at least 24 hours. In the studies reviewed, moisture contents of about 28% were reported for the nodules dried at 105°C or 110°C for 24 hours and moisture contents of 32% were reported for those dried for 48 – 72 hours. This suggests gradual breakdown of very loosely-bound water of crystallization during extended drying periods.

Based on the AMC review, no correlations were identified between the moisture contents of the C6 nodules and assays, nor has AMC discerned any clear spatial correlations with nodule size fraction, nodule type, abundance, bathymetry, or geological domain.

So far as estimation of metal production units is concerned, the wet abundances must be converted to dry abundances at 105°C, the temperature at which the samples were dried prior to assaying. The analysis of the data by campaign shows that application of an average factor to convert wet abundance to dry abundance is not appropriate. The conversion should be done using the measured moisture contents, on a sample by sample basis. In this way the biases between C3 and C6 results will not compromise the estimation of dry abundance and metal content.

The conversion equation is:

*Dry abundance = Wet abundance * (1 - moisture content expressed on a wet basis)*

Dry abundances should be directly estimated in the resource block model. The dry abundance measurements for the box core samples provide a better datum for abundance because the errors and uncertainties in the moisture values have been removed, or at least reduced, by drying at 105°C.

The wet abundance and tonnage estimates in the resource block model should be calculated from the kriged dry abundances by adding 28% moisture (mass of water)/(mass of solids + water). Moisture content of 28% is the current best estimate, based on Campaign 6, 7, and 8 box cores and sampling of 3000 t of nodules recovered during the test mining in 2022.

7.11 Analysis of density of nodules

AMC identified relevant sources of data for the estimation of density of the nodules in NORI Area D. In 2018, during campaign C3, NORI measured the density of 45 samples of individual nodules or batches of nodules. Non-breakable beakers ranging from 200 ml to 2 L were used for taking nodule weights and for volume displacements. These measurements were used to calculate wet density values. The average of the results was 2.0 wmt/m^3.

TOML measured the density of 76 individual nodules or batches of nodules from TOML Area B, C, D, and F (AMC 2016). The batches of nodules included fragments and sand resulting from attrition during transport and handing. The mean density of 34 individual nodules was 1.95 wmt/m^3 and that of 27 batches of nodules was 2.0 wmt/m^3. TOML postulated that the difference might be due to air or water filled expansion cracks in the single nodules that were collected ~7 months before the density measurements were made. TOML preferred the batch nodule measurements over the single nodule measurements due to their larger sample size. The bulk nodule measurements also had a lower standard deviation than the individual nodule measurements.

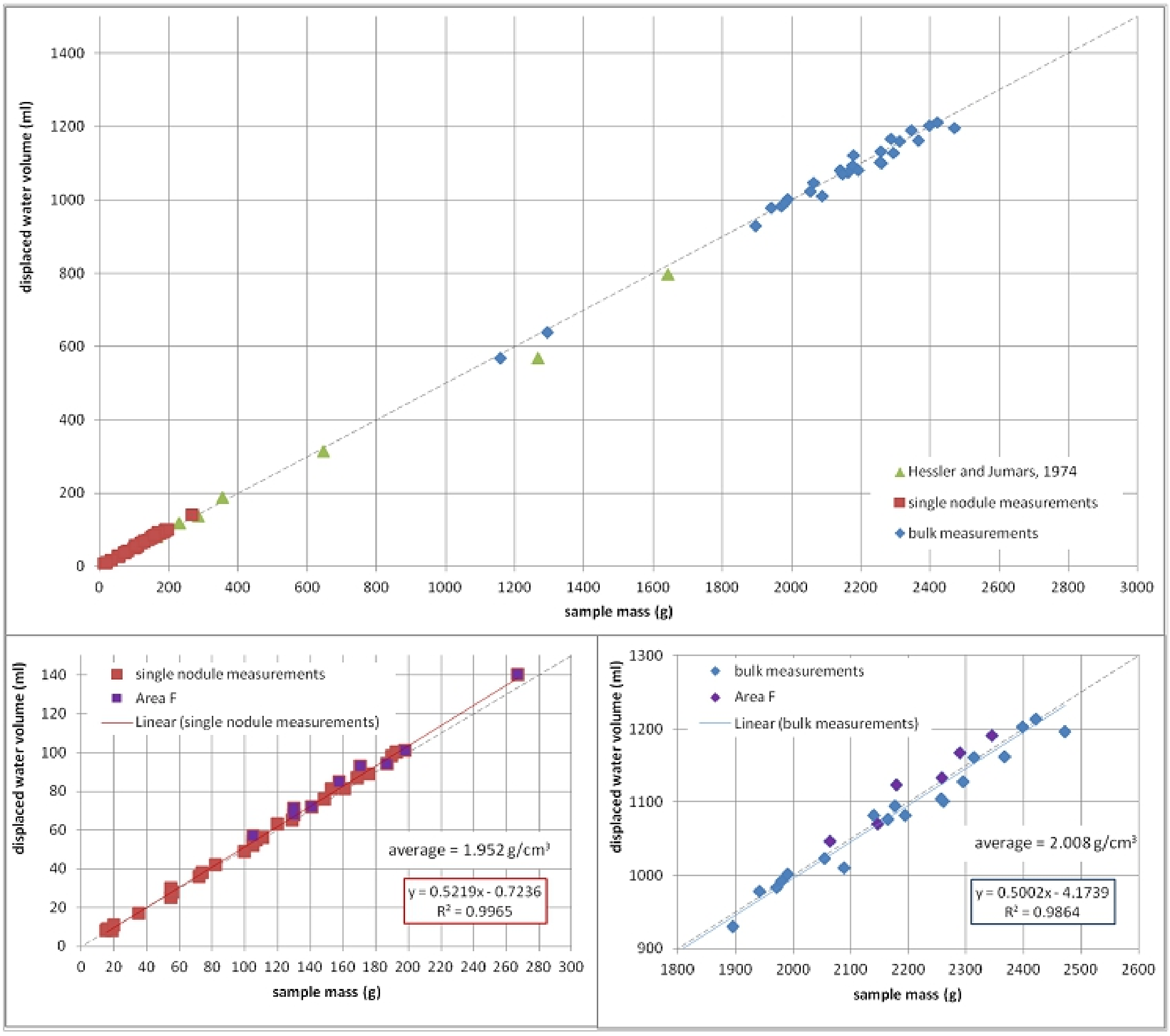
Only 15 measurements were made on samples (9 individual and 6 batches) from TOML Area F, the closest area to NORI Area D. The mean density values were 1.90 wmt/m^3 and 1.97 wmt/m^3, respectively. AMC considers that these results are not significantly different from the others in the TOML areas.

TOML confirmed historical results from the north Pacific by Hessler and Jumars (1974).
Figure 7.49 shows the data from TOML and Hessler and Jumars. The data points are consistent with a mean density of 2.0 wmt/m^3.

Baláž 2022 reported the results of investigation of nodules in the IOM contract area from 2016 to 2021. The IOM contract area is in the eastern part of the CCZ but not immediately adjacent to NORI Area D. A total of 1005 individual and batch sample measurements were reported, with a mean of 1.96 wmt/m^3.

The studies reviewed by AMC report very similar values. AMC considers that a wet density of 2.0 t/m^3 is supported by the data and is appropriate for use on the NORI Area D project.

Figure 7.49 Density data from TOML Areas B, C, D and F and data from Hessler and Jumars (1974)



Source: TOML

7.12 Multielement chemistry

7.12.1 Nodules

TMC analyzed nodule samples for up to 62 elements, using the methods described in Section 8.2. The minimum, average (mean), and maximum grades from 457 nodule samples taken from box cores from NORI Area D are shown in Table 7.11. The major and minor elements are expressed as oxides and the total of the oxides is very close to 100%. Trace elements are present in very low concentrations. The coefficient of variation (CoV) provides a statistical measure of the spread or variability of the data and shows that variability is very low.

Table 7.11 Summary statistics of multielement chemistry of nodule samples from box cores

	Count	Minimum	Mean	Maximum	CoV
Al_2O_3_%	457	3.17	4.02	8.82	0.128
BaO_%	457	0.25	0.44	1.24	0.330
CaO_%	457	1.52	2.46	5.89	0.124
CoO_%	457	0.09	0.18	0.58	0.243
CuO_%	457	0.75	1.45	1.90	0.086
Fe_2O_3_%	457	5.42	9.41	15.96	0.136
K_2O_%	457	0.92	1.08	1.97	0.103
MgO_%	457	2.59	3.17	3.81	0.042
MnO_%	457	22.4	40.0	44.5	0.056
Na_2O_%	457	2.23	2.87	4.50	0.072
NiO_%	457	0.97	1.73	1.90	0.069
P_2O_5_%	457	0.24	0.38	2.79	0.453
PbO_%	457	<0.01	0.03	0.07	0.437
SO_3_%	457	0.05	0.29	0.72	0.294

SiO_2_%	457	10.06	12.20	29.09	0.155
TiO_2_%	457	0.18	0.42	1.44	0.190
ZnO_%	457	0.11	0.21	0.33	0.112
Total_%	360	98.0	99.5	102.6	0.008
LOI_%	457	10.7	15.9	18.3	0.061
Ce_ppm	454	85.2	217	388	0.167
Cr_ppm	454	8	11	70	0.449
Cs_ppm	454	0.75	1.07	2.04	0.168
Dy_ppm	454	13.35	26.26	38.5	0.104
Er_ppm	454	6.98	13.55	19.9	0.105
Eu_ppm	454	3.59	7.47	10.9	0.115
Gd_ppm	454	15.85	30.15	44.6	0.107
Hf_ppm	454	1.8	4.77	8.2	0.173
Ho_ppm	454	2.55	4.91	7.25	0.106
La_ppm	454	59	109.12	171	0.130
Lu_ppm	454	0.96	1.94	2.67	0.103
Nb_ppm	454	7.5	18.76	35.6	0.173
Nd_ppm	454	70.8	128.62	190.5	0.116
Pr_ppm	454	16.2	30.31	47.1	0.119
Rb_ppm	454	13.8	17.97	31.4	0.143
Sc_ppm	38	9	9.82	11	0.073
Sm_ppm	454	16.5	30.62	42.8	0.106

	Count	Minimum	Mean	Maximum	CoV
Sn_ppm	454	1	1.52	5	0.440
Sr_ppm	454	519	704.45	882	0.064
Ta_ppm	454	0.1	0.29	1.7	0.382
Tb_ppm	454	2.41	4.60	6.73	0.106
Th_ppm	454	4.53	9.68	22.4	0.211
Tm_ppm	454	1.02	1.98	2.81	0.101
U_ppm	454	2.34	3.97	5.59	0.083
V_ppm	454	331	486.32	648	0.091
W_ppm	454	33	64.96	187	0.178
Y_ppm	454	50.9	85.79	156	0.104
Yb_ppm	454	6.41	12.78	17.25	0.104
Zr_ppm	454	146	321.01	555	0.155
Bi_ppm	411	0.85	3.18	5.76	0.200
Ge_ppm	411	0.26	0.48	0.76	0.257
Se_ppm	411	<0.01	0.73	5	1.791
Te_ppm	411	1.13	2.79	5.35	0.200
Tl_ppm	411	17.3	153.11	232	0.235
As_ppm	411	10	74.13	120	0.332
Cd_ppm	411	5.4	18.74	26.3	0.165
Mo_ppm	411	284	525.18	792	0.101
Sb_ppm	411	19	43.89	60	0.127
Li_ppm	411	60	147.37	340	0.199
Ga_ppm	416	25	36.89	46.1	0.082
Hg_ppm	51	0.034	0.05	0.103	0.238
B_ppm	51	80	106.47	130	0.088
F_ppm	11	230	299.09	420	0.209

7.12.2 Sediments

Samples of sediment from 230 box cores were collected for assaying during campaigns C3 and C6. The samples were assayed at either ALS Environmental (in Kelso, Washington, USA) or Western Environmental Testing Laboratory (WETLAB, in Nevada, USA). The results were provided to AMC in a file named "dgr_sediment_chem.xls". The sample types are described as REG, LAB_DUP_FIELD_DUP and SPIKE. No details of assay methods were provided.

AMC briefly examined the REG samples. There are between 1 and 246 assays, depending on the analyte. Many of the elements analyzed for the nodule samples were not analyzed for the sediment samples. There are also 267 moisture content measurements.

Table 7.12 presents the grades of the sediment samples and the ratio of the grades to the mean grade of the nodule samples, as listed in Table 7.11. The ratios are expressed as percentages. The sediments are enriched in Ba and Ca to approximately 2.5 times the grades in the nodules. Many elements are 10 to 50 times lower in the sediments than in the nodules.

The mean statistics also indicate enrichment in Se but this is due to a single value of 2410 ppm Se recorded in the sample from BC_199. This value is likely to be an analytical or recording error. There is also an extreme value of 70 ppm U from the BC_182 sample which also seems likely to be incorrect.

Table 7.12 Summary statistics of multielement chemistry of sediment samples from box cores

	Count	Minimum	Mean	Maximum	CoV	Ratio of sediment grade to mean nodule grade (%)
Al_ppm	210	15100	21574	29400	0.10	101
Ba_ppm	246	7480	9804	13000	0.08	247
Ca_ppm	244	5610	48348	120000	0.22	275
Co_ppm	246	44	68	283	0.10	5
Cr_ppm	246	15	22	30	0.10	52
Cu_ppm	246	284	469	1390	0.11	4
Fe_ppm	246	22500	30552	42800	0.08	46
Mn_ppm	246	3340	9561	34300	0.12	3
Ni_ppm	246	132	271	1450	0.13	2
P_ppm	246	674	1209	5350	0.10	73
Pb_ppm	246	15	23	61	0.08	9
Si_ppm	150	830	1800	4590	0.19	3
Zn_ppm	247	97	141	287	0.09	9
Sr_ppm	92	275	480	715	0.15	68
U_ppm	93	0.4	1.3	70.0	0.10	33
V_ppm	245	43.7	62.1	110.0	0.08	13
Bi_ppm	91	0.4	0.6	0.9	0.10	18
Se_ppm	92	0.3	26.7	2410	0.10	3650
Te_ppm	31	0.1	0.2	0.5	0.19	9
Tl_ppm	92	0.6	1.7	13.6	0.15	1
As_ppm	92	6.3	9.8	19.0	0.11	13
Cd_ppm	246	0.1	0.4	1.8	0.13	2
Mo_ppm	92	4.1	10.4	52.1	0.17	2
Sb_ppm	92	0.4	0.7	2.2	0.14	2
Hg_ppm	92	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.16	115

The average moisture content (mass of water/mass of solids+water) of the sediment samples is 76%, compared to 28% for the nodules.

7.13 Analysis of bathymetric data

Following the initial acquisition of vessel-based MBES data in 2012, the data was reprocessed and reinterpreted several times as new data became available. The new data included high resolution geosurvey acquisition (Campaign 3, 2018), and resource sampling (campaigns 3, 2018; campaigns 6A and 6B, 2019). In 2020, all of the available data was synthesized into a geological framework, from which the footwall and sediment domains which are used in the Mineral Resource estimation were interpreted. These domain interpretations form the foundation for the seafloor slope analysis and geo-obstacle analysis presented in Sections 7.14.2 and 7.14.3 respectively.

Table 7.13 provides a chronological summary of MBES acquisition, processing and analysis throughout the project pipeline to date, with reference to sections within this report where this data has been used or referenced.

Table 7.13 Chronological summary of MBES acquisition, processing and analysis for NORI Area D.

Year	MBES acquisition & processing	MBES Data Analysis	Section & Figure references
2012	RV *Mt. Mitchell* – EM120 hull-based MBES acquisition over NORI Area D. Bathymetric and backscatter (beam-averaged) data processed @ 50 m resolution X, Y.	-	Section 7.1. Figure 7.1
2017	Reprocessed EM120 Backscatter data as time-series data @ 30 m resolution X, Y.	Data reprocessed and used in target-selection and survey planning for Campaign 3 AUV survey.	Section 7.2.1 Figure 7.2
2018	Campaign 3 – AUV survey (combined Side Scan Sonar (SSS), Sub-Bottom Profiler (SBP), EM2040 MBES and camera payloads) and indicated-resource box coring program.	-	Section 7.2.2 Figure 7.4. Table 7.1

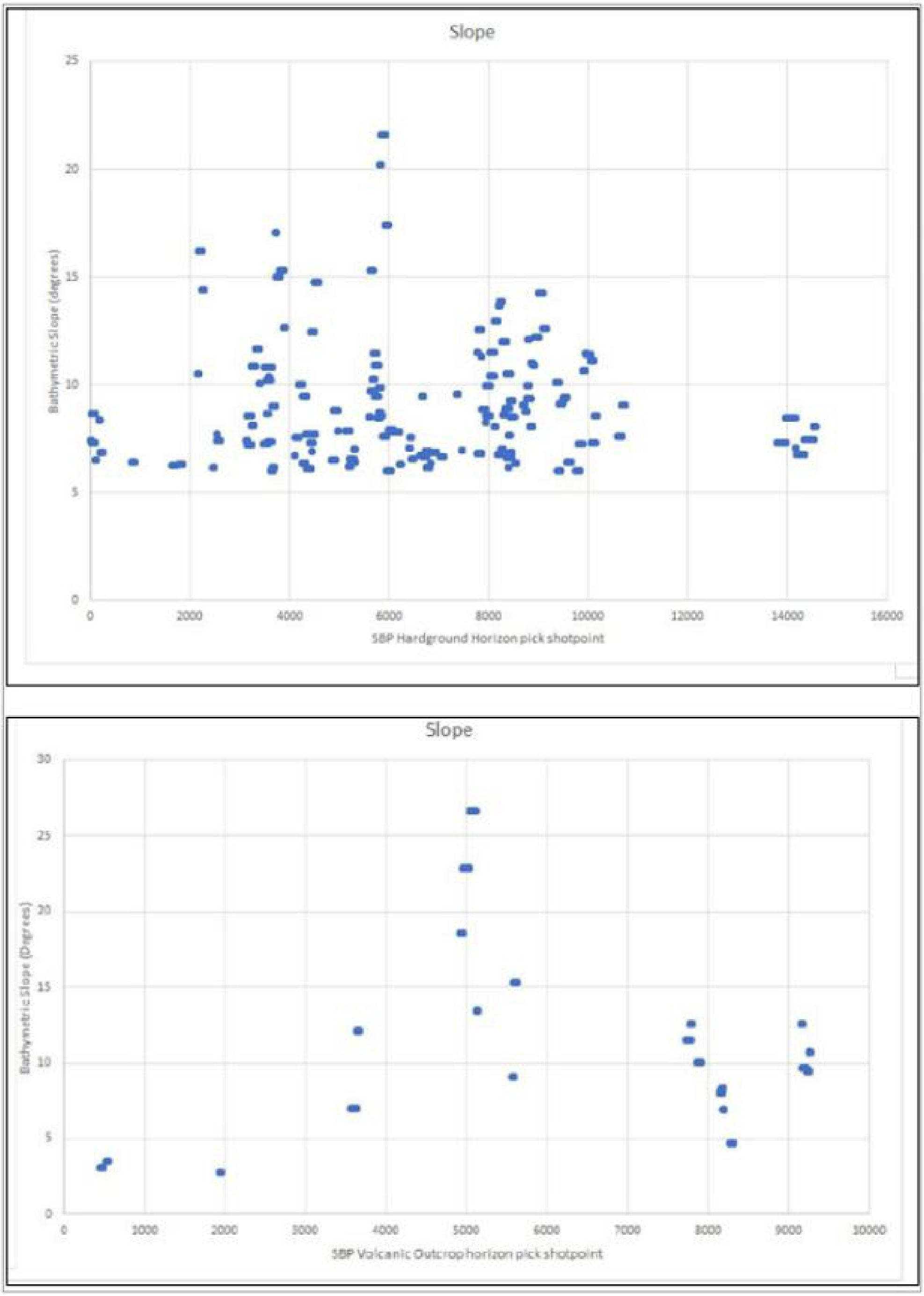
2019	DSAO survey - 299 line km, MBES @ approximately 285 m swathe, 1 m resolution X, Y.	AUV MBES and Backscatter data was used in conjunction with AUV camera and box core data to develop nodule classification for NORI Area D. Preliminary detailed-scale geomorphological observations, including hummocky terrain associated with Type 2 & 3 nodule facies.	Section 7.2.2 Figure 7.4 Section 7.13.2 Figure 7.13 Figure 7.14 Section 7.13.2 Section 7.13.3
2019	Collector test survey site – 150 km^2 @ 27 cm resolution X, Y, tiled-survey and composite mosaic binned @ 1 m resolution X, Y.	-	Section 7.13.3
2019	-	Preliminary analysis of EM120, EM2040 MBES, and AUV SBP and camera data undertaken between box coring campaigns C6A and C6B. This was used to provide tighter control on sample site location following 15 non-recoveries due to hardground substrate encountered during C6A, often associated with steeper terrain.	Section 7.13
2019	EM120 MBES data reprocessed to 60 m resolution X, Y.	EM120 bathymetry data reprocessed to provide a cleaner dataset for bathymetric derivatives (e.g. slope, aspect - which are more susceptible to noise artefacts) used in the development of footwall domains for the NORI Area D geological model, and Mineral Resource estimates.	Section 7.13
2020	-	NORI Area D geological model - Development of footwall and sediment domain maps.	Section 7.13.1
2022	-	Geo-obstacle analysis prior to the test mining, using AUV EM2040 MBES and SBP data	Section 7.13.3
2023	-	Seafloor slope analysis	Section 7.13.2
2023	-	Geo-obstacle analysis	Section 7.13.3

7.13.1 Geological domains

Following completion of Campaign 6A and 6B, a geological model was developed using the geophysical and sampling data:

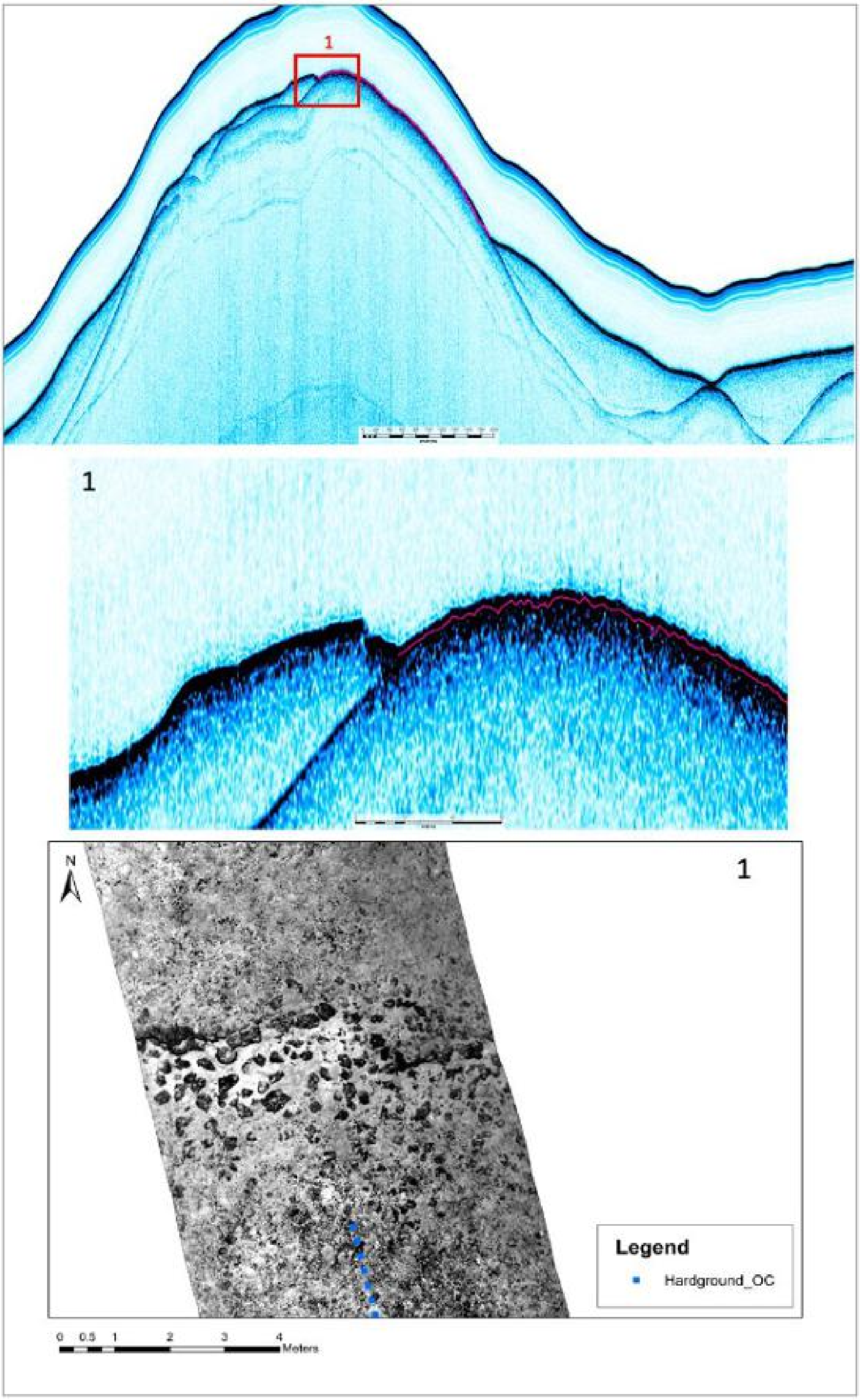
- Sampling data from Campaigns 3, 6A and 6B, including box core land-out GoPro footage.
- EM120 bathymetry and backscatter data.
- Bathymetry data was reprocessed as part of this model development to provide a cleaner dataset for bathymetric derivatives (e.g. slope, aspect - which are more susceptible to noise artefacts) used in the modelling and interpretation (see Figure 7.52).
- Preliminary interpretations of AUV SBP, MBES and camera data undertaken between the end of the Campaign 6A sampling program, and the start of the follow-up 6B sampling program. This was used to provide tighter control on sample site location.
- During Campaign 6A box coring operations, 15 box core land out sites were characterised by either no recovery by the box core, or very low nodule abundance. Further analysis of EM120 Backscatter, AUV SBP, MBES and camera data from Campaign 3 suggested these sites were characterised by hardgrounds, which appear to show good correlation with slopes of ³ 6° (Figure 7.50 and Figure 7.51). Volcanic outcrop is associated with a slightly boarder range of slope values, upwards of 3°. Figure 7.51 (top insert) shows a Chirp SBP profile located W-E (left to right) across an abyssal hill, with outcropping hardground, characterised by high-amplitude acoustic reflection (centre insert), and large, blocky outcrop material at seafloor (bottom insert). Based on these observations, box core sites for Campaign 6B were selected to avoid areas within 150 m of slopes ³ 6°. This resulted in the number of box core failures being reduced to 7 during C6B.
- This highlighted the resolution limitations of the EM120 MBES data. Subsequent data integration and analysis during development of the geological model, including box core GoPro land-out footage from campaigns 6A and 6B corroborated the evidence for hardgrounds and was used to develop the footwall domain map (see Figure 7.53). A more detailed description of these domains is provided in Sections 6.4 and 11.5
- Box core data from campaigns 6A and 6B was used to refine the nodule facies domain interpretations that were initially developed during Campaign 3. A nodule type domain map for the whole of NORI Area D was developed by integration with a K-means unsupervised classification of EM120 backscatter data (see Figure 7.54).
- The geological model and associated domain maps provided a framework for the current Mineral Resource estimate. The following two sections provide detail on further development of this model that was undertaken during 2023, with respect to seafloor slope analysis and geo-obstacle identification.

Figure 7.50 EM120 bathymetric slope plotted against occurrence of outcropping footwall (hardground), based on SBP, camera and backscatter interpretations (top), and volcanic outcrop occurrence (bottom)



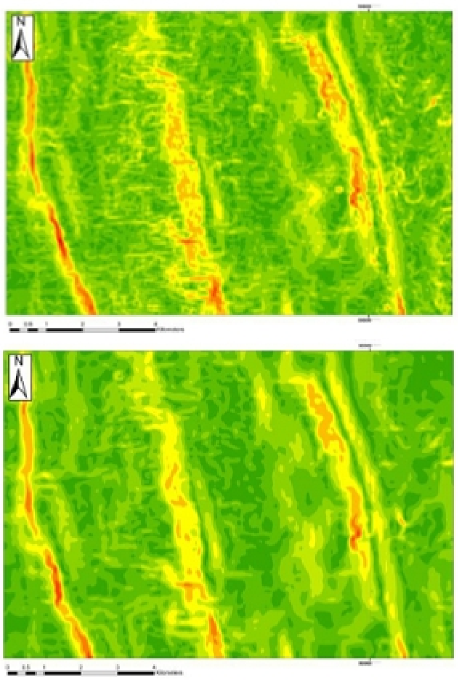
Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.51 SBP profile and AUV camera transect across outcropping hardground associated with an abyssal hill.

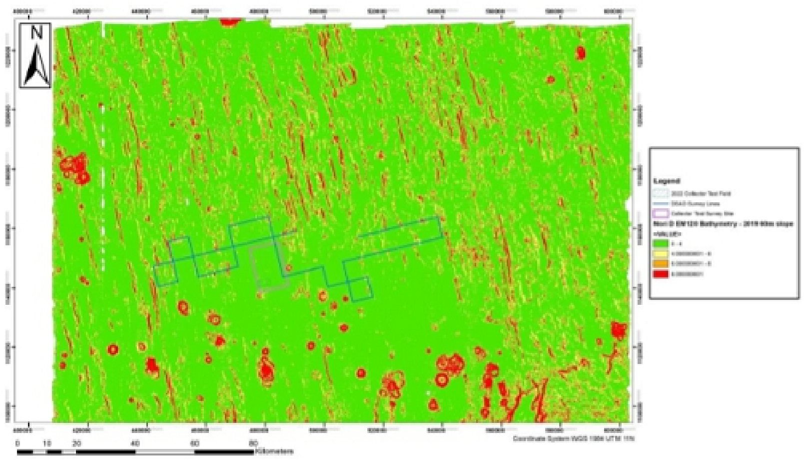


Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.52 Map of Reprocessed EM120 MBES Slope derivative data



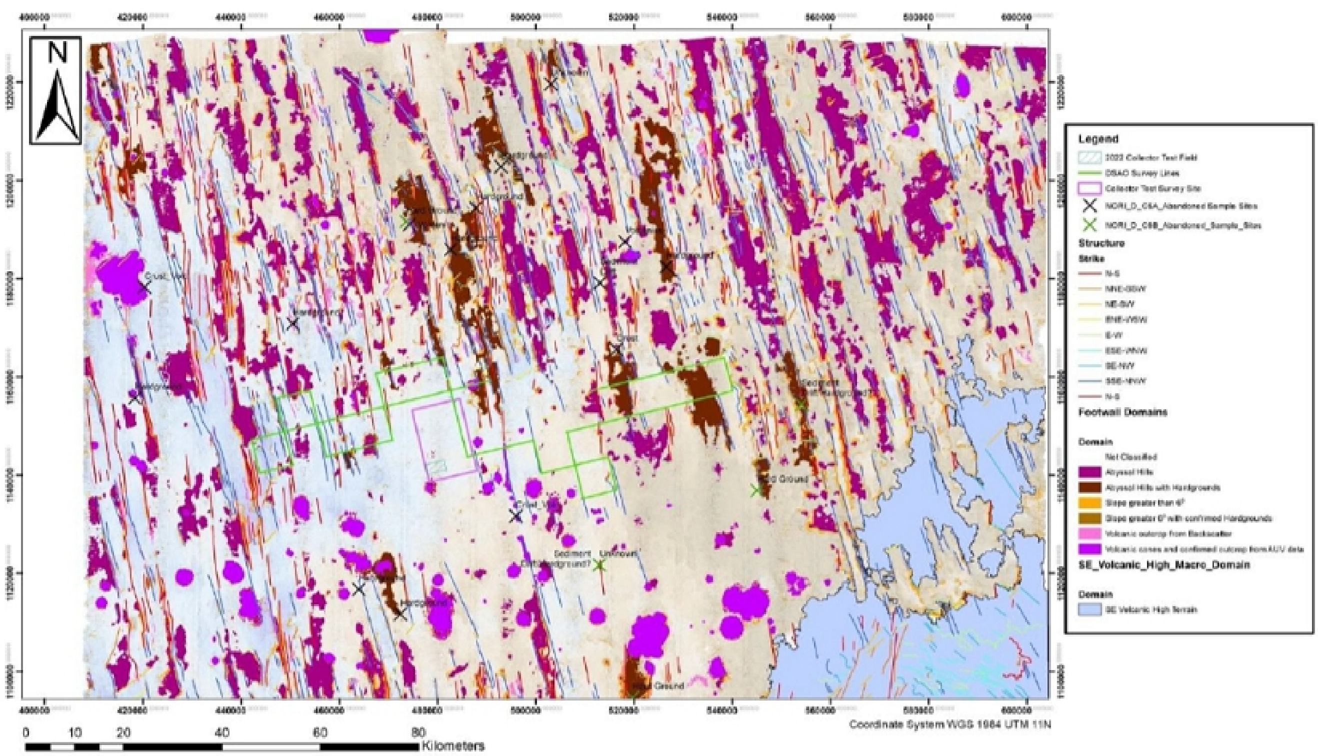
MBES reprocessing - Slope derivative. **Top** – original MBES data @ 50 m resolution X,Y. **Bottom** – data cleaned and re-gridded @ 60 m, showing cleaner image.



Overview: NORI Area D – Slope derivative 60 m resolution

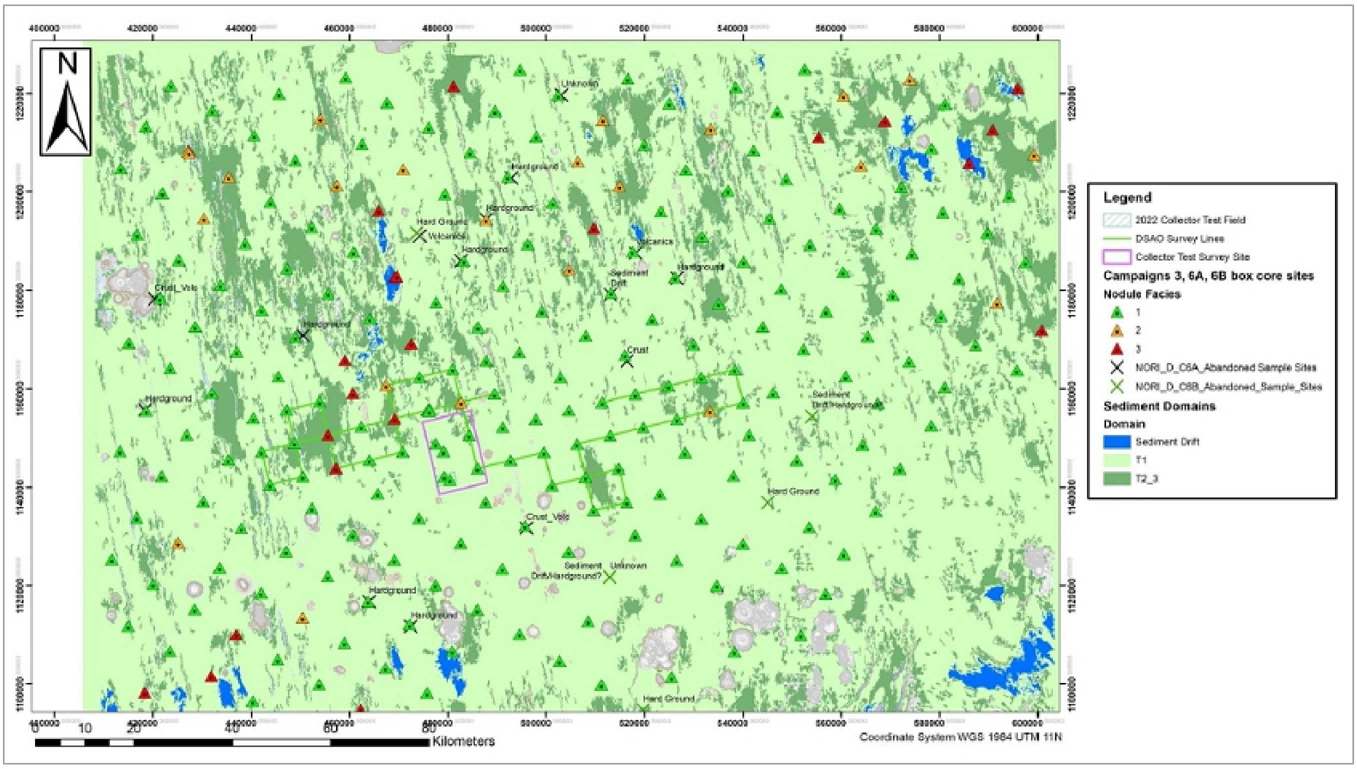
Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.53 Map of Footwall domains



Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.54 Map of Nodule facies domains produced from backscatter interpretations, plotted with nodule type from box core logging



Source: MARGIN

7.13.2 Seafloor slopes

7.13.2.1 Background

It is anticipated that the seafloor mining system will use collectors with track widths of up to 15 m. This is significantly less than the 60 m resolution (X,Y) of the bathymetric model and slope domain models provided by current EM120 data. Collection of nodules for the initial mining will be focused on a subset of the NORI Area D lease in the south west of the lease and referred to as Project Zero by TMC. Project Zero will focus on mining terrain with 0° to 4° slopes. To identify areas suitable for mining in Project Zero, better definition of areas with slopes > 4°is required.

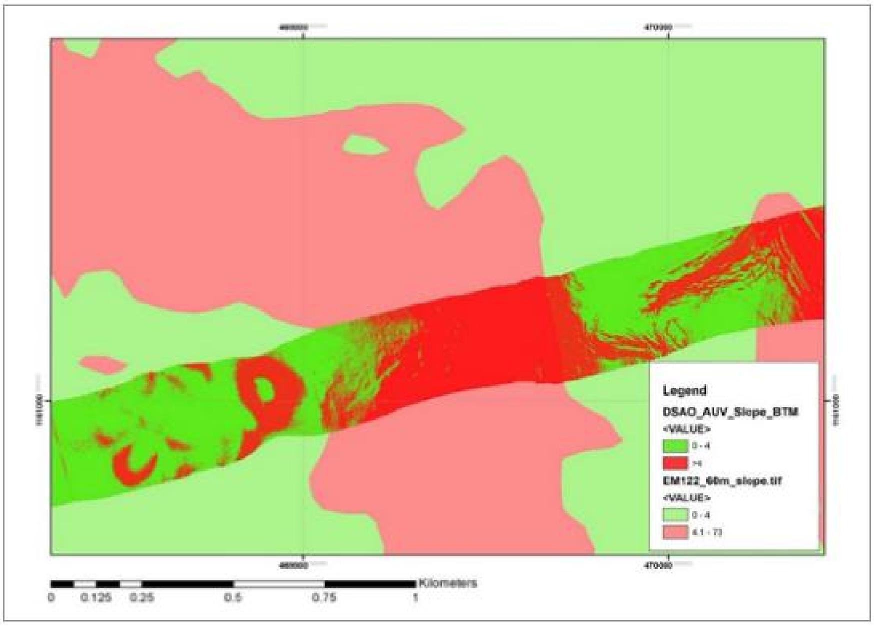
The existing, higher resolution, AUV MBES datasets do not cover enough of NORI Area D to satisfy all the requirements of planning for the initial mining area. Therefore, a comparison was undertaken between existing AUV EM2040 MBES data and EM120 data to determine whether any significant relationships could be derived so that existing EM120 MBES can be used to predict smaller-scale terrain variability.

A probability model, using a random forest classifier, and associated probability heat-map were developed to differentiate areas more likely to have slopes of 0 to 4° from areas more likely to have slopes > 4°.

7.13.2.2 Observations at different mapping scales (Data resolutions)

Visual comparison of AUV EM2040 MBES slope derivative data from the DSAO and PRZ survey datasets (1 m resolution in X, Y, and swath width of approximately 285 m versus corresponding EM120 slope derivative data (60 m resolution in X, Y) is illustrated for two common terrain domains encountered within NORI Area D in Figure 7.55 and Figure 7.56. In Figure 7.55, the 60 m resolution EM120 MBES Slope data forms the background of the image. The slope is classified into a 0 to 4° slope class in green and > 4° class in red, with slight transparency. This is overlain by corresponding AUV EM2040 data with 1 m resolution. This example is located over an abyssal hill, depicted by the steeper slopes shown in red. The higher resolution AUV data shows that steep slopes associated with the abyssal hill flanks at this location extend at least 100 m beyond the extent shown by the EM120 data.

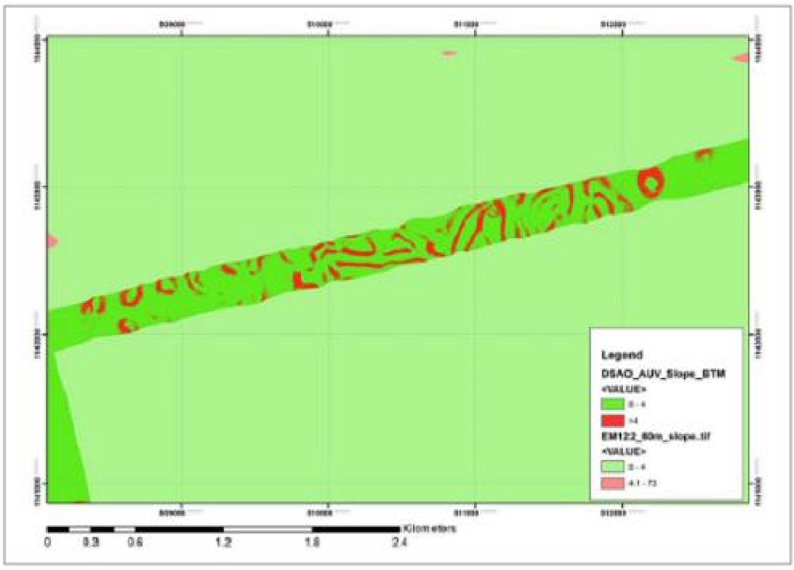
Figure 7.55 Comparison of EM120 vessel-based MBES and AUV EM2040 MBES over an abyssal hill



Source: MARGIN

In Figure 7.56 the vessel-based EM120 data shows an almost featureless seafloor topography, associated with an abyssal plain (a valley between two abyssal hills), with slopes of 0 to 4° (in green). However, the higher-resolution EM2040 MBES data shows well-developed hummocky terrain, with slopes locally > 4° (shown in red). This terrain appears to be typically associated with Type 2 and 3 nodule occurrence (see also Figure 7.52, and Figure 7.54).

Figure 7.56 Comparison of EM120 vessel-based MBES and AUV EM2040 MBES over hummocky terrain.

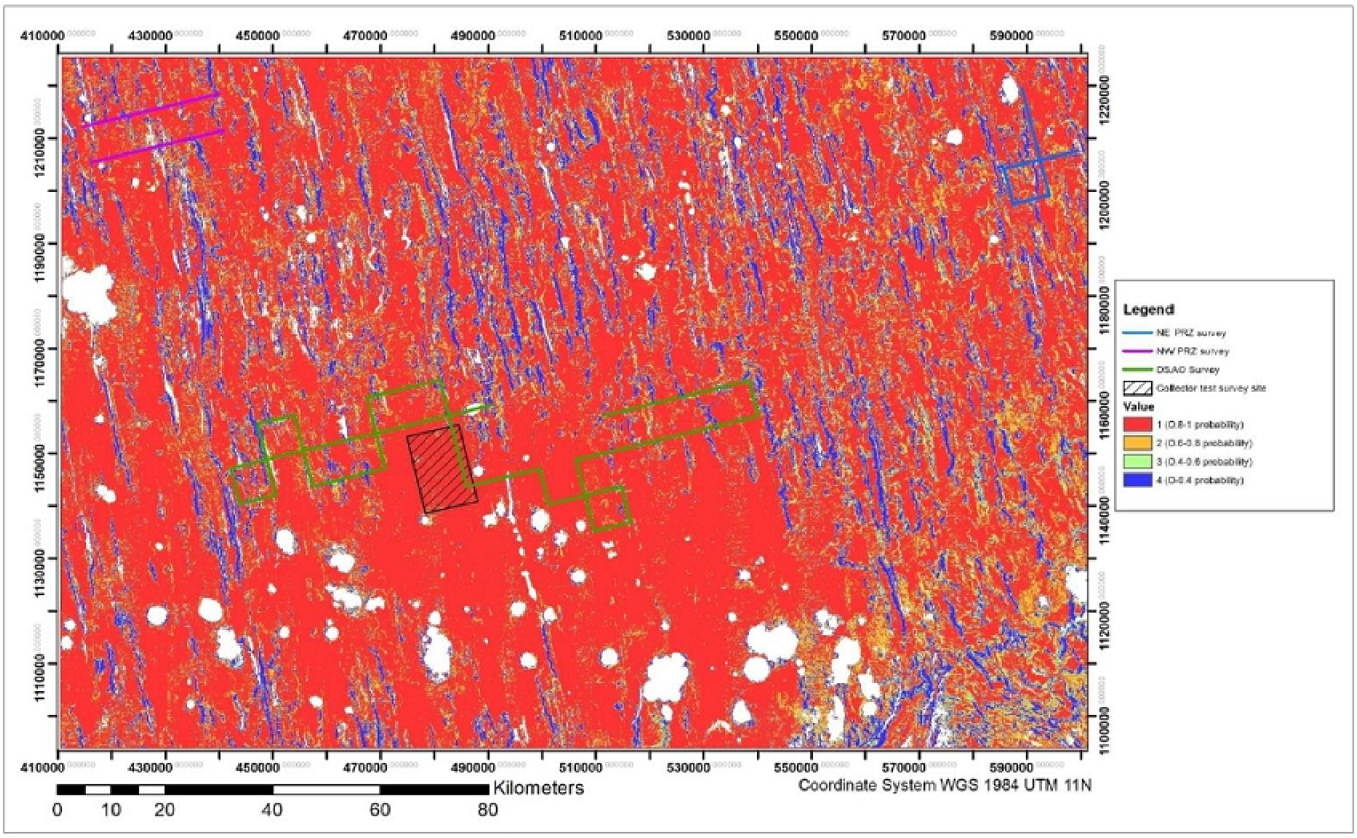


Source: MARGIN

7.13.2.3 Slope prediction using EM120 dataset

A 60 m-spaced grid point dataset (containing EM120 bathymetry, slope, aspect, low-pass filtered (smoothed) backscatter response, footwall and sediment domains) was extracted across the whole of NORI Area D. This resulted in a dataset of 6,681,090 datapoints. The Random Forest Classifier was applied to this dataset, classifying the datapoints into either 1 (= True - predicted 0 to 4° slope), or 0 (= False - predicted > 4° slope). The classified points were imported into ArcGiS. Figure 7.57 shows the slope probability heat-map. Areas in red denote a high probability (0.8 to 1) of encountering slopes of 0 to 4°. The lowest probability (blue) is over abyssal hills and slopes, which are expected to be associated with slopes much greater than 4°. Intermediate probability values (shown in orange and green) are observed between abyssal hills, along the abyssal plain valley floors.

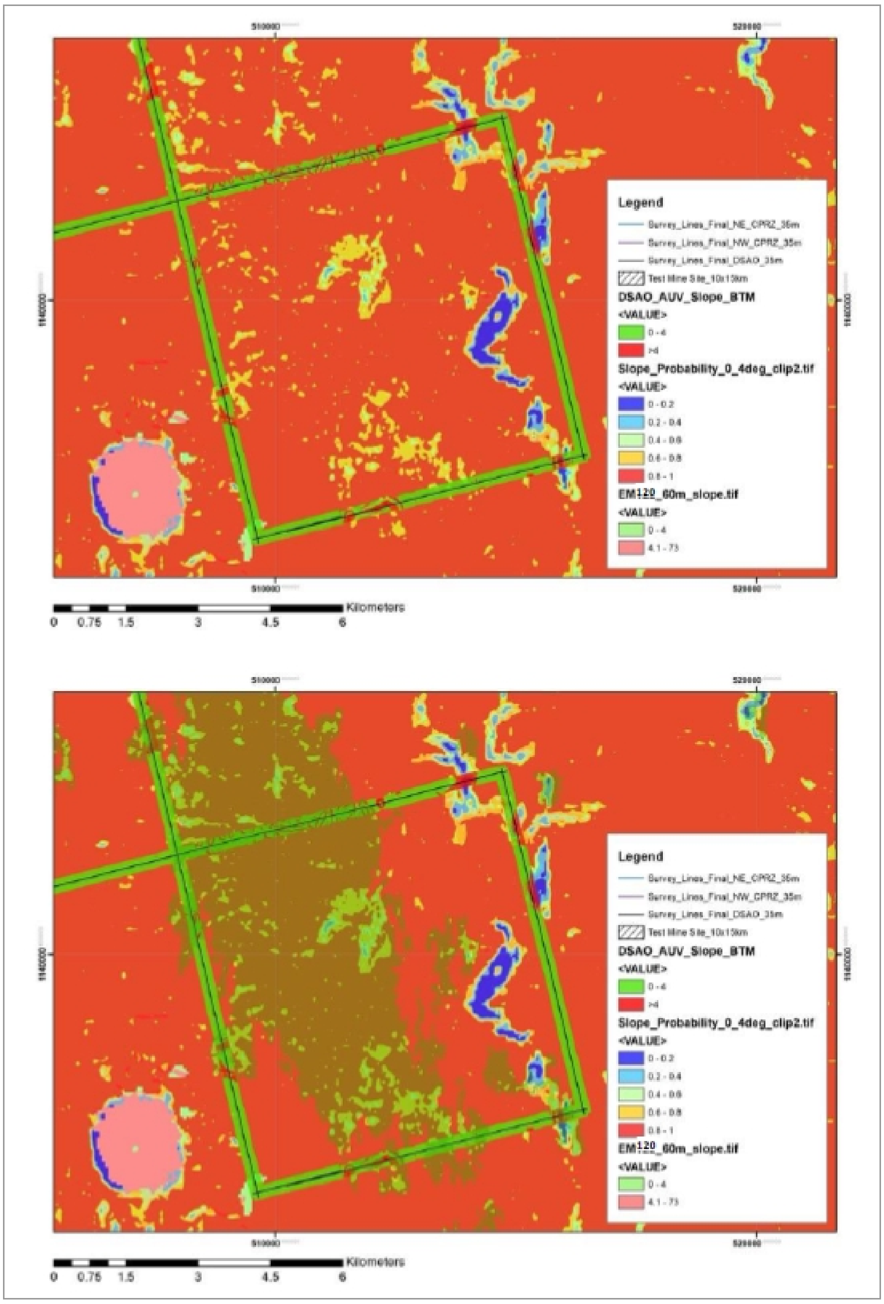
Figure 7.57 Map of Slope Probability for NORI Area D



Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.58 shows enlarged detail from within Figure 7.57. The upper image shows strong correlation between the slopes greater than 4 mapped by the EM2040, 1 m resolution, AUV data along the DSAO survey lines and the slope prediction probabilities of 0.4 to 0.8. Hummocky ground is observed along the northern DSAO survey line. The lower image shows the same data with the Type 2 and 3 nodule facies, interpreted from the EM120 backscatter data, overlain. A correlation between the hummocky ground and Type 2 and 3 nodule facies is observed.

Figure 7.58 Detail of probability map, showing relationship of intermediate slope probability values with Type 2 and 3 nodule distribution and associated hummocky terrain.



Source: MARGIN

7.13.2.4 Summary

A good regression-based model for predicting slope angle could not be developed with the available data, so a binary classification model was generated using a Random Forest binary classifier. The model was used to predict areas of 0 to 4° slope and >4° slope from EM120 MBES feature sets. The 0 to 4° cut-off and associated model shows that there is potentially a greater area that has > 4° slopes along the flanks of abyssal hills than can be mapped with EM120 alone. Also, within the abyssal plains, there is hummocky topography, which appears to be correlated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies. The hummocky topography is not readily observable in the EM120 slope data alone and is only seen clearly in the higher-resolution AUV data. The 0 to 4° slope classification clearly shows that in the closely-spaced abyssal hills and valleys in the northern half of NORI Area D, the areas of continuous mineable ground with the 0-4° slope range are likely to be much smaller than in the test mining area.

The distribution of probability values in the heat map (Figure 7.57) indicate that the model appears to perform better near more pronounced, continuous topographic features (e.g. abyssal hills). The model assigns lower probability to features that are less laterally continuous and smaller-scale (e.g. hummocky terrain). Comparison of class-distribution of AUV slope data with EM120 slope for the whole of NORI Area D, split into the same classes, shows that the AUV data appears to be representative of the slope distribution across the whole of NORI Area D. In addition, it is important to note that the model predicts slope, not geomorphic features that may be potential geo-obstacles. Geo-obstacle modelling is presented in the following section.

7.13.3 Geo-obstacles

7.13.3.1 Background

A preliminary integrated ground model for the collector test area, NORI Area D, was compiled in August 2022, ahead of the test mining, and was based on analysis of MBES, SBP, and camera data. The model showed seafloor features that could potentially be hazardous for the operation of the seafloor mining system. Five potential geo-obstacle classes were defined. These were all located outside the limits of the 2022 test mining. Most of these features are beyond the resolution-limits of the EM120 regional bathymetry data and are therefore only noticeable in the higher-resolution AUV MBES datasets. These include:

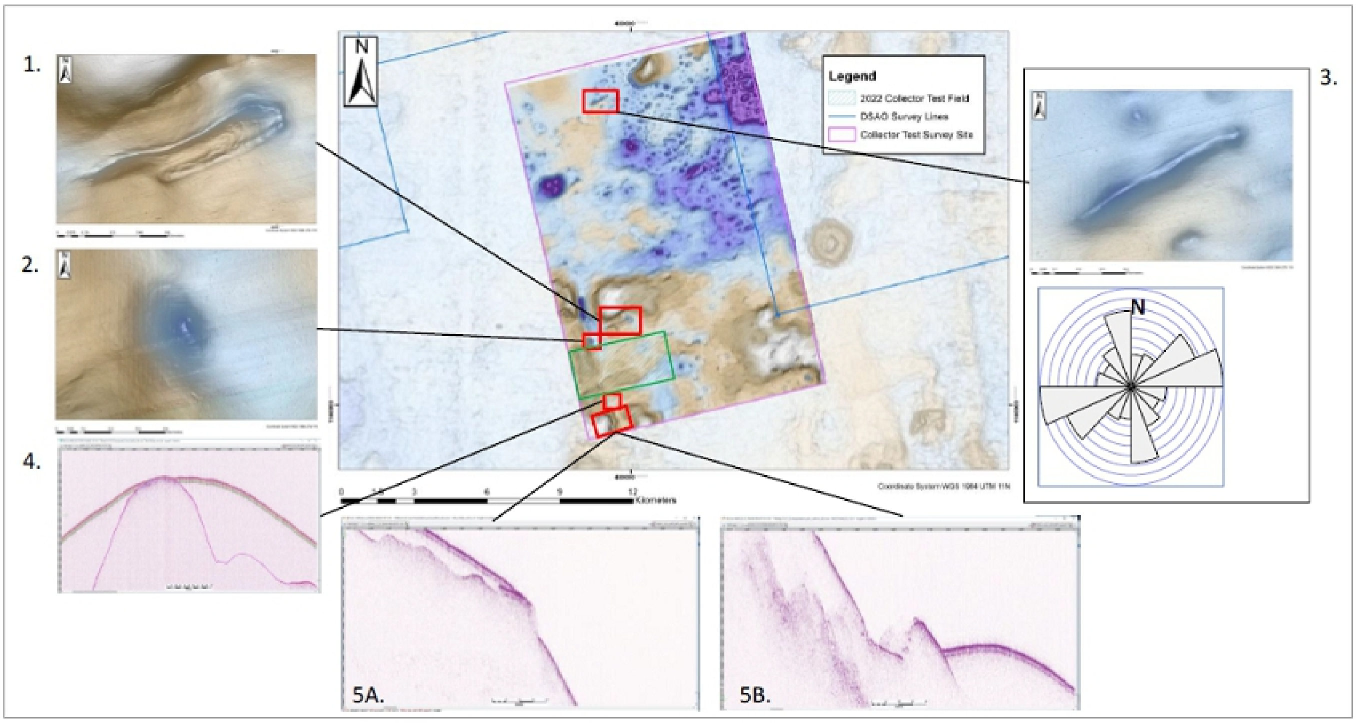
- Large-diameter circular depressions
- Moats
- Furrows
- Isolated outcrop
- Evidence of slope failure processes

Figure 7.59 shows a map of the test mining site, with the location of the example features (labelled from 1 to 5B) placed around the map. This shows:

- **Moats (1.)** – The example is situated NE of the test mining. These are elongated depressions, often curved or sinuous in nature, and often following the break-of-slope of a higher elevation geomorphic feature. This example is > 100 m in width, approximately 5 m in depth, with > 6° slope, and several km in length. An AUV camera transect over moat-feature shows Type 2 nodules accumulated in base of this feature.
- **Large-diameter circular depressions (2.)** - This example is up to 190 m wide, and up to 8 m depth, with > 6° slope. These are often found parallel to abyssal hill flanks, and strike NW-SE, forming the second dominant trend seen in the rose diagram.
- **Furrows (3.)** - Furrows are elongate depressions and the majority of those mapped appear to trend ENE-WSW (see associated rose diagram). This example is > 500 m in length, 240 m wide, 4 m deep with > 5° slope encountered along one side.

- **Isolated outcrop (4.)** – This example was mapped from SBP data in the SW corner of the test mining site. It is proximal to volcanic outcrop, and could represent either volcanic outcrop, or lithified sediments.
- **Evidence of slope failure processes (5A. and 5B.)** – this was observed in SBP data. Insert 5A in Figure 7.59 shows top break of slope along an abyssal hill with associated outcropping volcanics, showing absence of section near seafloor. Insert 5B shows possible sediment re-deposition at the base-of-slope, with associated out-of-plane reflectors, disruption of seafloor and chaotic internal reflection geometries.

Figure 7.59 Map of collector test survey site and test mining site, showing location of type-examples of geo-obstacles



7.13.3.2 Geo obstacle mapping

Of the five geo-obstacle classes identified during development of the preliminary integrated ground model, only three (large-diameter circular depressions, moats, and furrows) have significant occurrence within the 10 km x 15 km Test Mining site. The focus of the analysis presented in this section was to extend the mapping of these three geo-obstacle classes across the remainder of the initial mining area outside of the Test Mining site and classify morphology, and quantify their distribution and dimensions[7]. Most of these features are beyond the resolution-limits of the EM120 regional bathymetry data and are therefore only noticeable in the higher-resolution AUV MBES and backscatter datasets. A predictive model was therefore developed to map the probability of these features occurring. This was based on testing for spatial relationships with larger-scale geological features, which may potentially exhibit some control on the geo-obstacle formation and distribution. The model relies on EM120 MBES data derivatives and interpretations, as this is currently the only dataset with regional distribution across NORI Area D.

The method draws on previous studies conducted as part of the geological model development, including:

- Footwall domaining.
- Sediment (nodule type domaining).
- Structural mapping (based on EM120 MBES data).

The first step in the adopted methodology was to automatically detect the geo-obstacles in the AUV bathymetry data, rather than adopt the manual interpretation approach used for the preliminary integrated ground model mapping. A number of derivatives were produced from the 1 m-resolution EM2040 AUV data for the test mining survey area, to see which combinations best characterize all of the topographic depressions noted. These included:

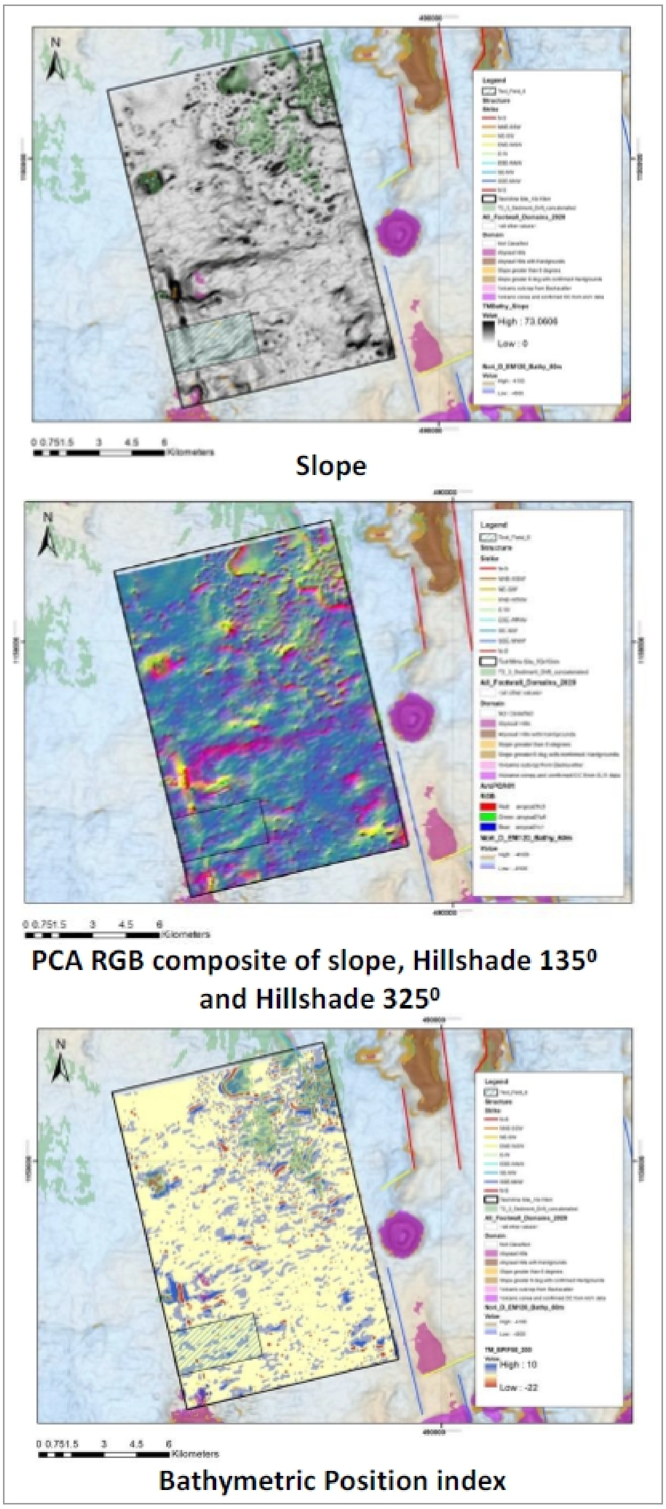
- Slope - is the angle of inclination to the horizontal.
- Aspect - is the compass direction that a slope faces. Pixels will have a value from 0 to 360° measured in degrees from north indicating the azimuth of the direction of maximum slope.
- Terrain Ruggedness Index - is defined as the mean difference between a central pixel and its surrounding cell.
- Curvature - expresses the amount by which the surface deviates from being a plane.
- Bi-directional hillshading – is where a lighting effect is added to a map based on elevation variations within the landscape and provides a clearer picture of topography by mimicking the sun's effects (illumination, shading and shadows) on topography. Bi-directional hillshading combines two illumination angles, the second from a perpendicular direction.
- Bathymetric Position Index (BPI) is a measure of where a referenced location is relative to the locations surrounding it. It is created through a neighborhood analysis function. Positive cell values within a BPI data set denote features and regions that are higher than the surrounding area and negative cell values within a BPI data set denote features and regions that are lower than the surrounding area.

Slope, bi-directional hillshading and BPI were found to be the most useful derivatives and were used further in the analysis (Figure 7.60).

Utilizing slope, BPI, and two bi-directional hillshade derivatives, two non-supervised, dimension-reduction, image processing methods were applied – K-Means and Principal Component Analysis (PCA). The K-means algorithm divides the observations into K groups by minimizing the variances between data points and the K group centroids. Data points with similar multivariate characteristics are labelled as a group. PCA takes a large data set with many variables and reduces it to a smaller set of new uncorrelated indices that retain most of the information from the original variables. These methods make it easier to visualize and analyze the data.

7 Isolated outcrops and slope failure processes are currently considered to be limited to the flanks of volcanic cones or abyssal hills, bothtypically with >6° slopes, and currently excluded as potential mineable ground.

Figure 7.60 Bathymetric derivatives



Source: MARGIN

The PCA produced the most useful imagery of the two methods. The center image in Figure 7.60 shows the PCA RGB false-color composite of Slope, Hillshade 135°, and Hillshade 325°. Topographic depressions are visually well-highlighted. In addition, three broader-scale topographic (structural) trends are shown, related to regional trends mapped in the 2020 NORI Area D geological model:

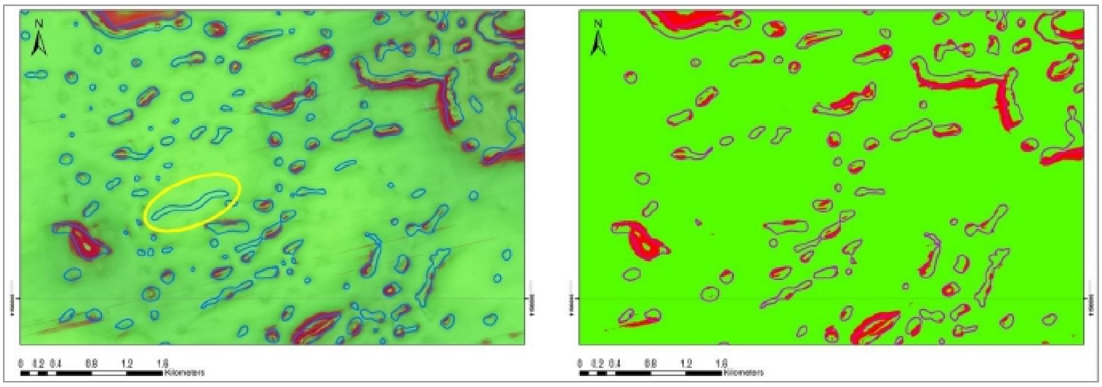
- Along the abyssal hill trend - NNW-SSE.
- Along an ENE-WSW trend.
- Along a trend which appears to be associated with the volcanic cone trend (NW-SE).

Visual comparison of all the attributes showed good agreement with topographic lows detected in the finest-scale BPI derivative, and so this was ultimately used to produce bounding-polygons for the depression features[8].

A total of 525 depression features were identified within the test mining survey area (Figure 7.62). Very small features were trimmed from the data set using an areal extent threshold of ≥ 14 m^2. Most of the features smaller than this can be considered as noise. The filtered dataset is considered likely to be more meaningful in the context of assessing mining-scale geo-obstacles and significantly reduced the visualization and computation time in the following analysis.

Area, depth, slope, aspect ratio, and trend (in cardinal degrees) were extracted for each depression feature. The slope-derivative filtering process can accentuate noise in the MBES data. This can lead to individual, or smaller clusters of high-slope pixel values being preserved within a detected depression-feature, which can lead to false-anomalies when selecting depression-features based on their slope values. The focal statistics method was used to overcome this issue. The mean slope value of a 15 x 15 m kernel was used to extract the associated mean-slope focal statistic, based on an 11 x 15 m vehicle footprint. This This significantly reduced the isolated > 4° pixels, and preserves areas of interconnected, more spatially continuous slopes of > 4°, shown in red (compare Figure 7.61 (left insert) which shows an example of a detected depression (circled in yellow) with no continuous high-slope values, and the focal statistics data (right insert).

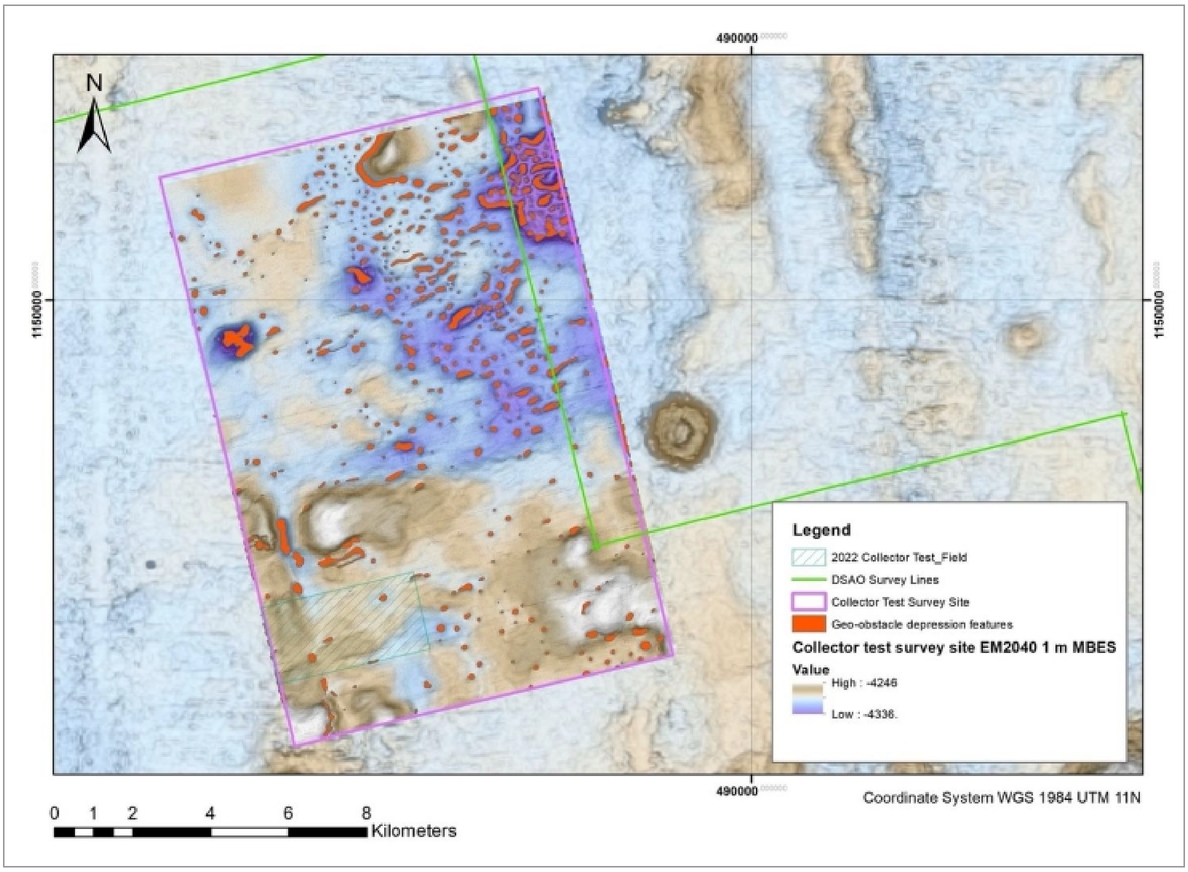
Figure 7.61 Comparison of 1 m resolution slope attribute (left) with focal statistic slope, based on a 15 x 15 m focal statistic kernel



Source: MARGIN

8 Although this approach was satisfactory for the small dataset used, future implementation with larger datasets will likely benefit from adoption of a deep learning (textural image texture segmentation) approach.

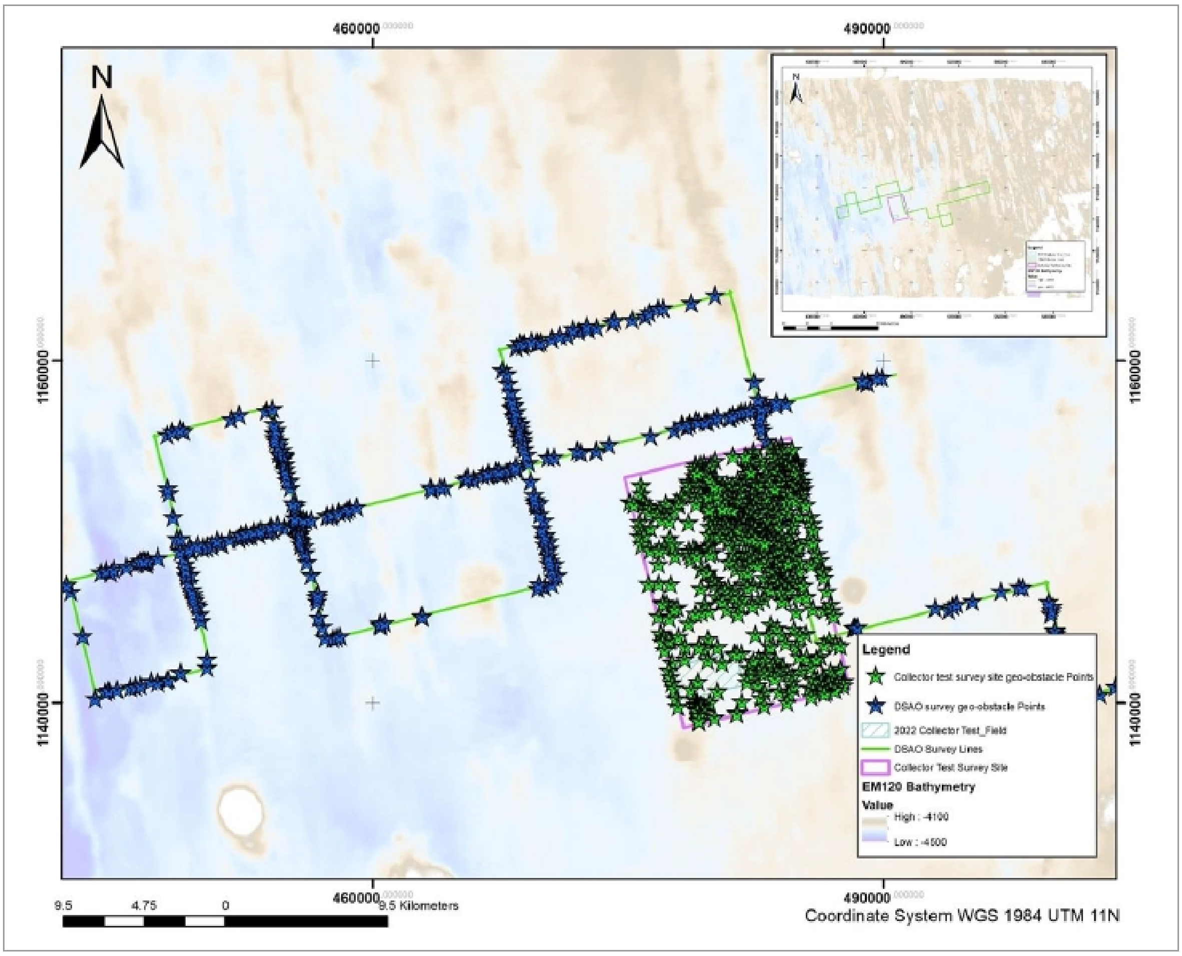
Figure 7.62 Geo-obstacle depression features detected within the collector test survey area



Source: MARGIN

In addition to the 525 geo-obstacle datapoints from the test mining survey area, an additional 503 geo-obstacle datapoints were added from the adjacent DSAO survey data (increasing the dataset to a total of 1,028) - see Figure 7.63.

Figure 7.63 Geo-obstacle data points – including data from collector test survey site and DSAO survey



7.13.3.3 Geo-obstacle probability model mapping

A predictive model was developed to examine possible spatial relationships between geo-obstacle occurrence and associated larger-scale geological features (potential controls on geo-obstacle occurrence). Only the geological domains which have been mapped to date, using the EM120, were used in this analysis. The approach does not enable identification of geological controls which have not been identified or mapped. The following geological domains were considered as the feature sets for this analysis:

- Abyssal Hills
- Abyssal Hill hardgrounds
- Volcanic cones
- Type 2 and 3 nodule facies
- Structural lineations (mapped from bathymetry)
- Slopes > 4˚

The influence of the feature sets were modelled through creation of proximity rasters for each geological domain, based on Euclidean distance[9].

It is postulated that geo-obstacles on the seafloor may have the potential to impact on collector performance and are therefore an important consideration when developing mine-planning models. The current collector operational constraints were used to set a geo-obstacle cut-off threshold of features > 2 m in diameter, with maximum slopes > 4°, and height range of > 0.3 m. An initial Random Forest binary classification model was developed in 2023, using the 1,028 geo-obstacle data points for the training, test and validation datasets, where Class 1 = geo-obstacles fitting the cut-off criteria (i.e. may have an impact on collector performance), and Class 0 = geo-obstacles smaller than cut-off criteria (i.e. unlikely to influence collector performance). The closer the proximity of a geo-obstacle datapoint to the domain, and whether it encodes the information needed to discriminate between Class 0 and Class 1 - the greater the influence of that feature set (domain).

7.13.3.4 Model calibration and improvement

During Campaign 8B, 2024, TMC undertook additional detailed-scale AUV mapping along two proposed production runs (runs 19 & 20) within the proposed Initial Mining Area. Geo-obstacle mapping from this dataset was used to evaluate the performance of the geo-obstacle probability model against new data. This showed there was overall good visual correlation between actual depressions mapped and the probability model. Further analysis of the data shows that the percentage distribution breakdown of mapped depressions is:

- Class 1 (red) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.75: 10%
- Class 2 (yellow) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.5 - ≤ 0.75: 64%
- Class 3 (turquoise) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.25 - ≤ 0.5: 24%

· Class 4 (purple) – Geo-obstacle probability ≤ 0.25: 2%

74% of depressions mapped with Allseas cut-off limits applied fall within > 0.5 probability range (above random probability).

Additionally, mapped slopes > 4° outside geo-obstacle depression features identified were then also compared to the geo-obstacle probability model. The percentage distribution breakdown of slopes > 4° vs. the geo-obstacle probability model is:

- Class 1 (red) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.75: 11%
- Class 2 (yellow) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.5 - ≤ 0.75: 64%
- Class 3 (turquoise) – Geo-obstacle probability > 0.25 - ≤ 0.5: 24%
- Class 4 (purple) – Geo-obstacle probability ≤ 0.25: 1%

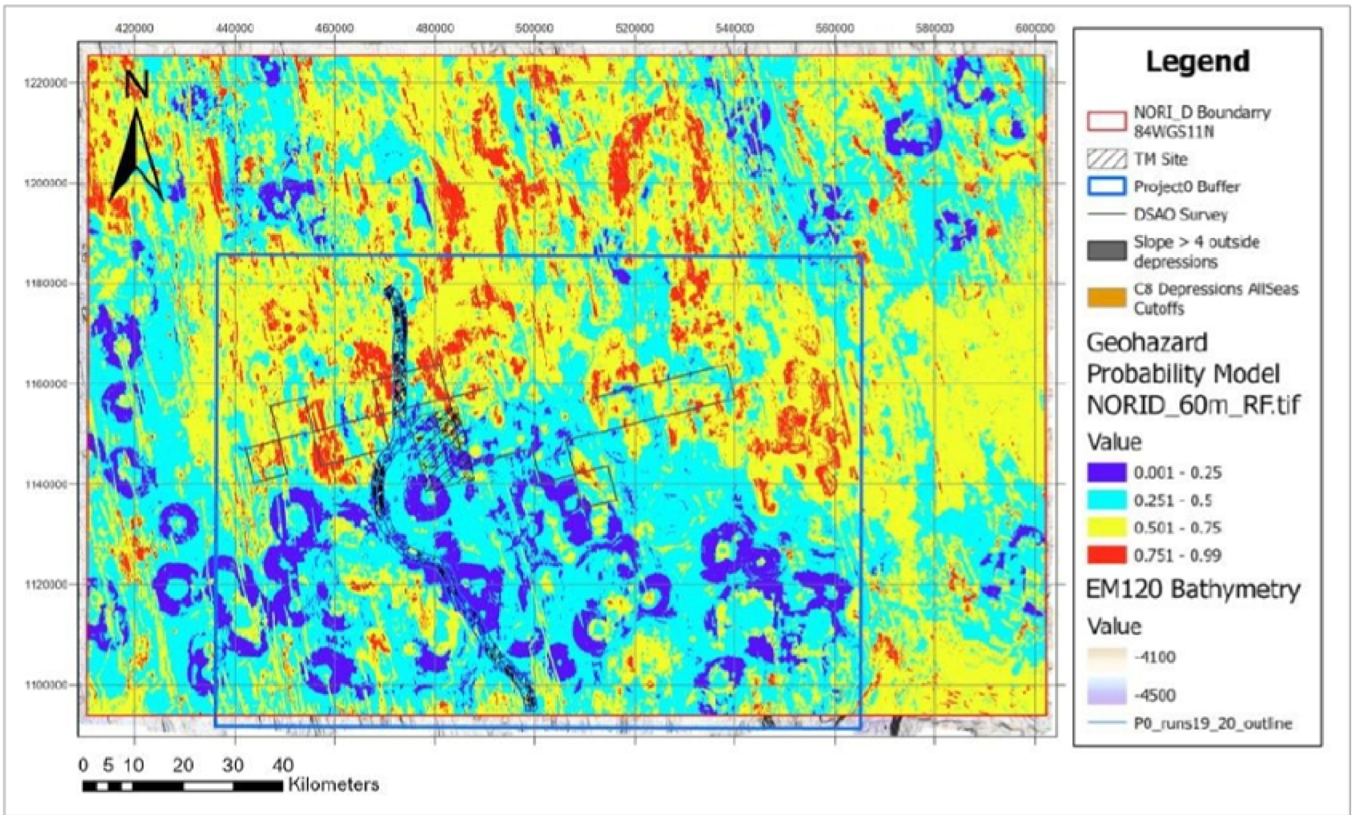
75% of slopes > 4° mapped fall within > 0.5 probability range (above random probability). The geo-obstacle probability model is therefore additionally able to predict the probability of slopes > 4° outside geo-obstacle depression features occurring (i.e. slopes associated with hummocky terrain in the abyssal valleys). Based on the outcomes of the probability model comparisons, the geo-obstacle probability model was adopted for predicting both geo-obstacles and slopes > 4°.

9 The proximity rasters were generated using the ArcGIS spatial analyst toolbox. The distance values of each to each domain was extracted for each geo-obstacle data point using the 'extract multi values to point' ArcGIS spatial analyst toolbox.

One of the aims of the Campaign 8B mapping study was to compare the mapping outcomes against the 2023 geo-obstacle and slope prediction models, in order to assess the performance of these predictions, and assess what confidence levels they can provide for future mine-planning scenarios and mine-scale geosurvey planning.

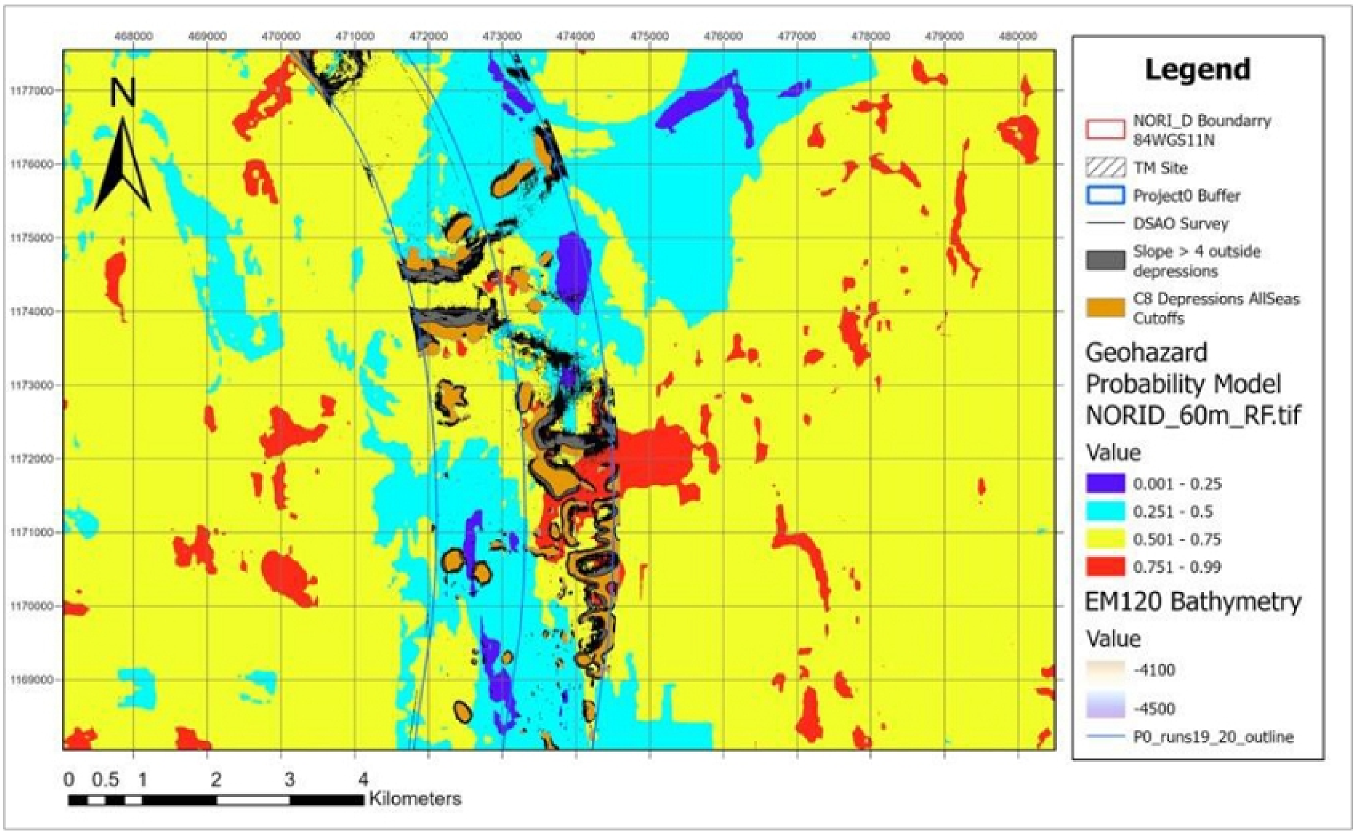
The northernmost extent of the Campaign 8B survey provides a detailed mine-scale window into the terrain expected within the well-developed ridge-and-valley topography formed by the abyssal hills and abyssal valleys that are more typical of the northern half of NORI Area D (Figure 7.57). Geological interpretation and geo-obstacle mapping of this dataset identified an additional 843 geo-obstacle data points. These were subsequently added to the initial 1,028 geo-obstacle data set, and the probability model was further refined. The resultant geo-obstacle probability heat map (see Figure 7.64 and Figure 7.65) and associated geospatial database were used as input to the Modifying Factors described in Section 12.2.4.

Figure 7.64 Geo-obstacle probability heat map



Source: MARGIN

Figure 7.65 Detail of the northern end of the Campaign 8B survey, showing geo-obstacle mapping



Source: MARGIN. Note: Map shows geo-obstacle mapping (slopes > 40 and geo-obstacle features > 2 m in diameter, with maximum slopes > 4°, and height range of > 0.3 m). This is overlain over the geo-obstacle probability heat map. Warm colours show where high-probability of geo-obstacles are predicted to occur, and cold colours show where low-probability of geo-obstacles are predicted to occur.

7.14 Analysis of geotechnical data

7.14.1 Data collection campaigns

Geotechnical soils data was systematically collected across the NORI Area D site during campaigns C3, C6 and C7. Geotechnical data was collected from box core tests and samples, and *in situ* testing. Details of the fieldwork are provided in preceding sections of this report.

The Campaign 3 (C3) data was collected by Fugro USA Marine Inc. (Fugro) onboard the vessel *AHT Maersk Launcher* between April and June 2018. In total 43 box cores were collected and geotechnically investigated using sub-sample cores taken from the box core seabed sample. The cores provided a cross section through the box core for offshore and onshore laboratory testing.

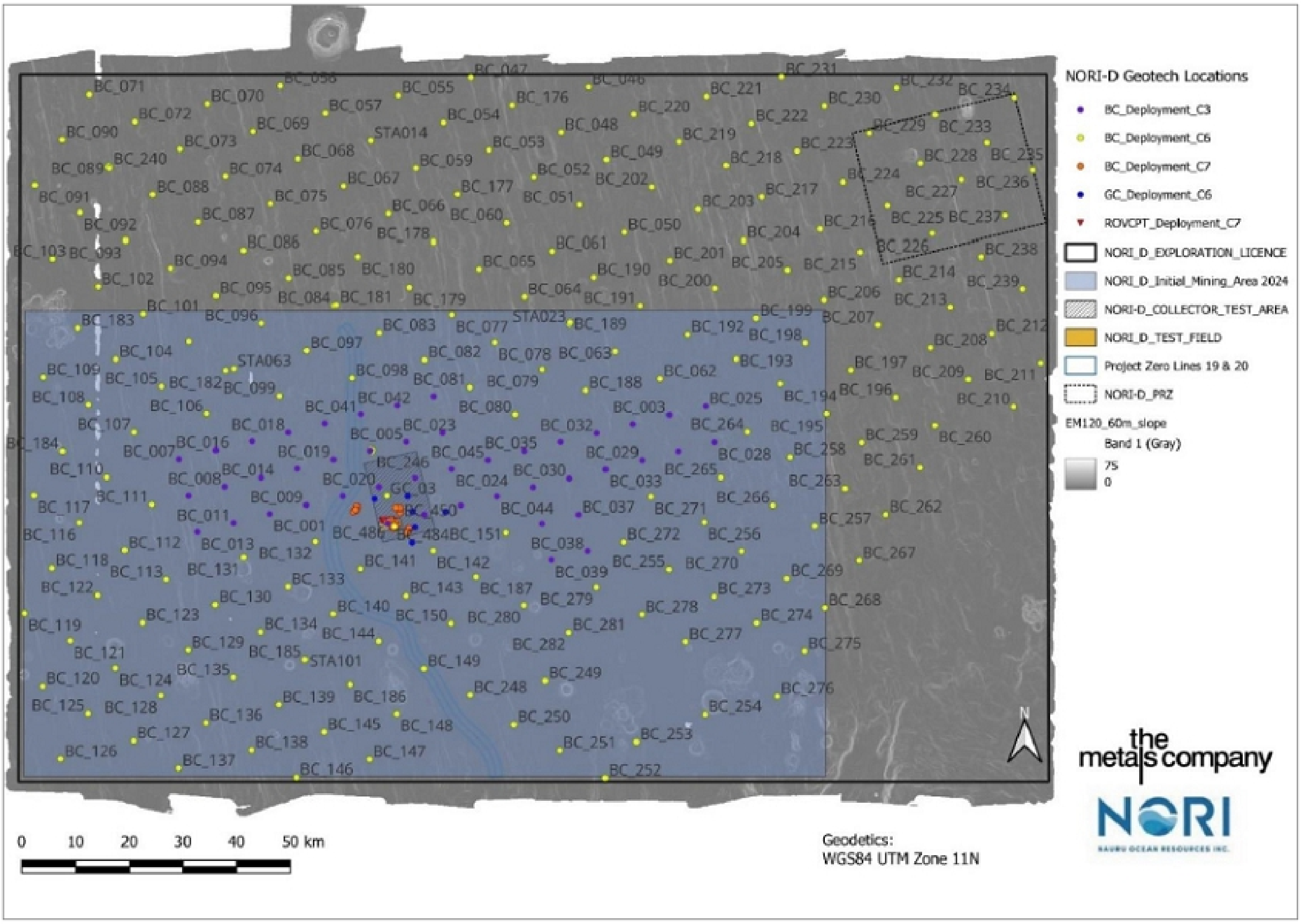
The Campaign 6 (C6) data was collected by Bluefield Geoservices Ltd (Bluefield) onboard the vessel *AHT Maersk Launcher* between August and October 2019 (C6A) and November and December 2019 (C6B). In total 211 box cores recovered samples and were geotechnically investigated using on deck *in situ* testing techniques directly into the box core sample, and three (3) sub-sample cores taken from each box core. One sub-sample was photographed, logged and tested offshore and two (2) sub-samples were retained for onshore laboratory testing and storage. The geotechnical testing and sub-sample coring were conducted after the removal of the nodules from the box core surface. Soil disturbance from the nodule removal is evident in the Campaign 6 data in the upper layer. Additionally, nine (9) gravity cores with successful recoveries between 1.00 m and 2.95 m were geotechnically logged and stored for onshore testing.

The Campaign 7 (C7) data was collected by Bluefield onboard the vessel *Island Pride* between July and September 2022 (C7A) and November to December 2022 (C7B). In total 47 box cores were collected with recoveries up to 0.52 m below seafloor. These samples were geotechnically investigated using testing techniques applied directly to the box core samples and sub-sample cores taken from the box core sample and tested offshore. These tests and sampling were conducted before the nodules were removed from the box cores. No samples were retained for onshore laboratory testing and storage. In conjunction with the box core samples, seabed *in situ* CPT testing was conducted using an ROV. A total of 57 *in situ* CPTs (27 C7A and 30 C7B) were completed to 2 m below seafloor. Samples and tests conducted during Campaign 7A were pre collector test, and during Campaign 7B post collector test.

All box core samples were recovered for multi-disciplinary work, including geological assessment of the nodule type and abundance, and environmental monitoring. In some cases, this had an impact on the geotechnical testing and has been noted where relevant.

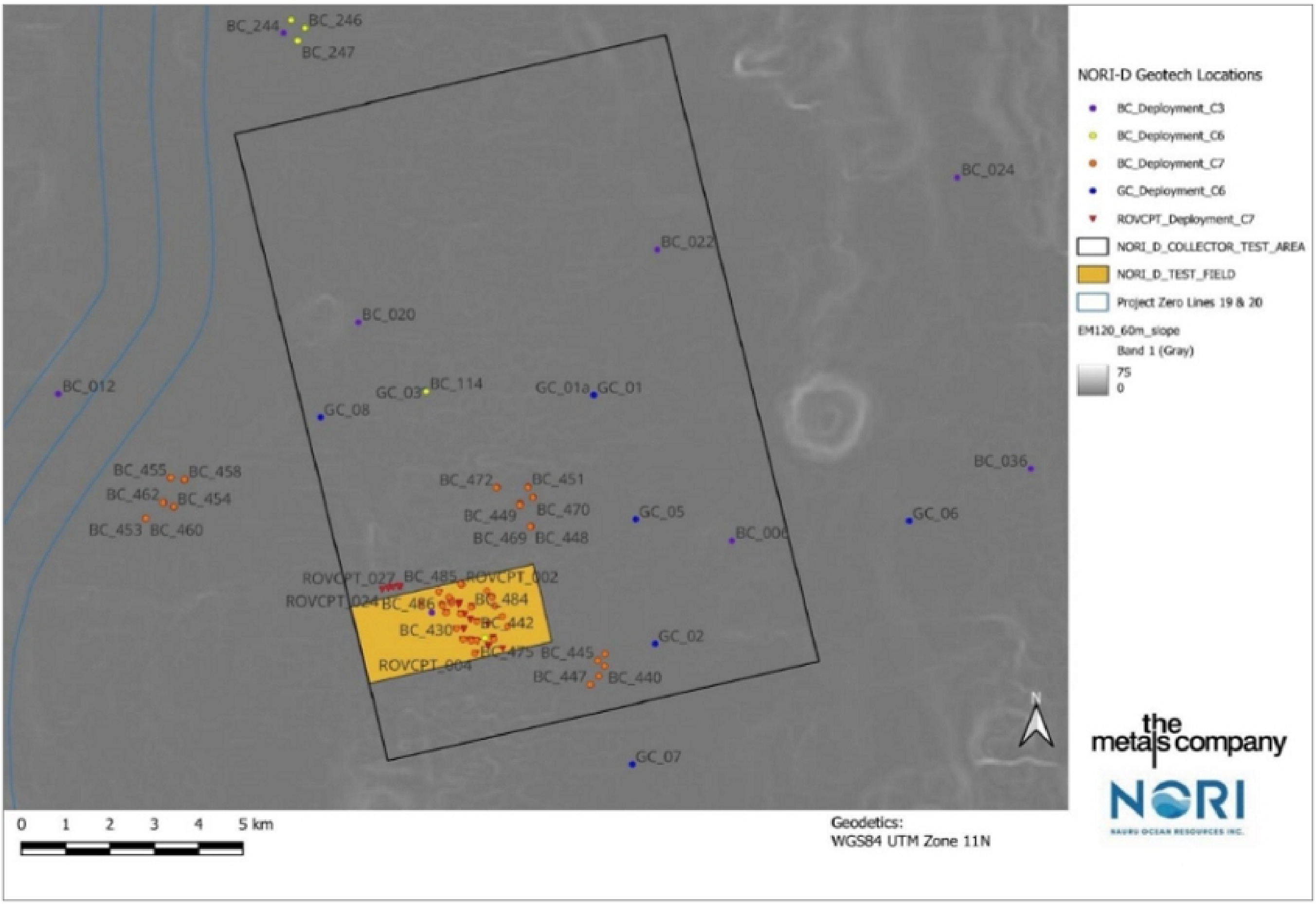
Figure 7.64 gives an overview of NORI Area D and the positions of geotechnical samples. Figure 7.65 shows the detail covering the collector Test Area. Further details of the sample and *in situ* test locations are provided in Sections 7.2.8, 7.3.4 and 7.5.4.

Figure 7.66 Overview of NORI Area D with geotechnical sample locations



Source: APYS

Figure 7.67 NORI Area D collector Test Area with geotechnical locations



Source: APYS

7.14.2 Geotechnical soils summary

An assessment of the soils across the NORI Area D area has been made based on observations from the fieldwork and onshore laboratory testing reports. All available seafloor data from Campaign 3, Campaign 6 and Campaign 7 were incorporated. A generalized geotechnical classification with summary strength ranges is provided in Table 7.14.

This is based on the site-wide box core and gravity core results from Campaign 6 and cross referenced to the results from Campaign 3 and Campaign 7.

The Campaign 3 and Campaign 6 geotechnical testing across the general site were conducted in box cores primarily allocated for nodule collection and environmental testing, no seabed feature was targeted and therefore the general soil conditions may have variations at features not yet investigated.

In general terms the seafloor across NORI Area D can be classified as a silty clay, that in parts is very silty and sometimes more like a silt. There are exceptions to this classification associated with depressions or high areas of seafloor such as ridge lines, abyssal hills and volcanic features.

Table 7.14 NORI Area D summary geotechnical soil classification

Unit	Soil Description	Top Depth (mbsf)	Thickness (m)	Typical Su (kPa)	Frequency	Comments
Unit 1	Very soft dark brown silty clay / clayey silt (Semi-liquid)	0.00	0.05 - 0.16	0.5 – 4.0	Across the site	C3 reports describe the immediate surface as ‘Semi-liquid’, whilst the C6A/B reports describe the same material as (Hemi)pelagic drape
Unit 2	Very soft yellowish brown silty clay, often mottled dark brown*	0.05 – 0.16	0.45 – 1.10+	3.0 – 10.0	Across most of the site	Mottling indicative of bioturbation and incorporation of Unit 1 material
Unit 2a	Very soft to soft brownish grey very silty clay	0.05 – 0.10	Undefined	4.0 – 14.0	Rare	Found in place of Unit 2. Generally associated with reduced BC recovery, ridges, and higher ground.
Unit 3	Very soft dark yellowish brown silty clay, mottled dark brown	0.60 – 1.20	>1.40 m	1.5 – 5.0	Recorded at all locations samples obtained at depth	Possibly trending towards normally consolidated based on the seabed CPT and gravity core results

* Variations recorded in the color descriptions which appear from the data to have no effect on the soil material properties.

Further seafloor investigation during Campaign 7 was conducted in the Test Mining area. This focused on high-definition characterization of the upper 0.50 m of the seafloor using box core data and deeper classification using seabed CPT investigation. The results did not contradict the previous site investigations. The Test Mining area is consistently similar in composition and less complex than the NORI Area D overall area, due to the smaller area and the dominance of the flat geoform domain.

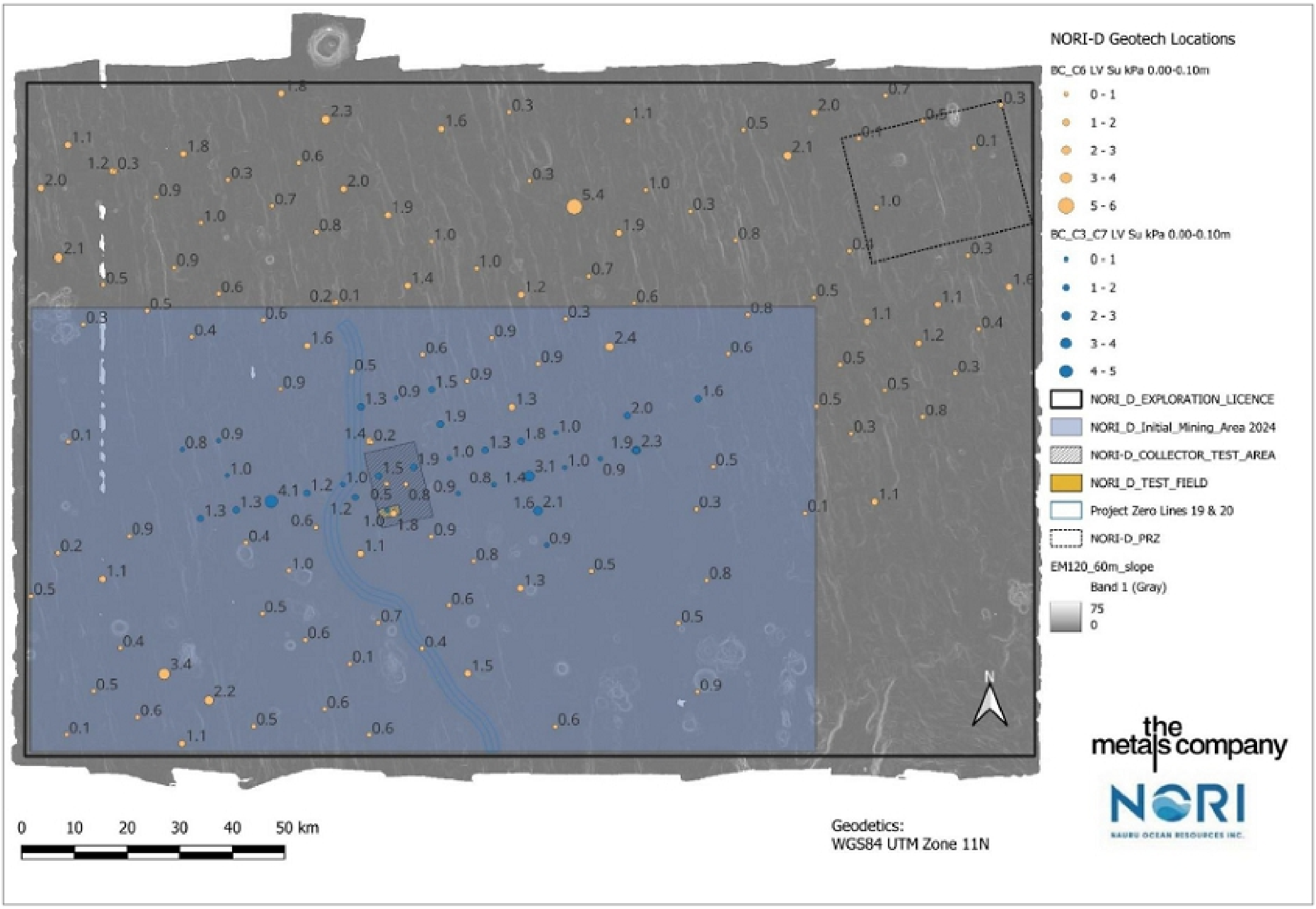
Seafloor CPT is a direct *in situ* test of the seabed soils and can be considered an undisturbed form of testing. An ROV-deployed CPT system (Bluefield ROVcone) equipped with a full-scale CPT cone was used to conduct the tests. The CPT system was used to characterize the seabed soils from seabed down to 2.00 m penetration depth. Tests were conducted prior to collector testing to provide a comparison with geotechnical data collected from the box core samples.

7.14.3 Shear strength

Shear strength measurements have been recorded directly from the box core samples recovered to deck during Campaign 3, Campaign 6 and Campaign 7. This testing recorded a range of seabed strength across the NORI Area D site. The method of shear strength measurement included Torvane in the split cores in the vertical plane, and Laboratory (mini) Vane directly into the box core in the horizontal plane. Figure 7.68 to Figure 7.70 illustrate the range of maximum shear strength measured by the laboratory vane test across the NORI Area D site, grouped by layer.

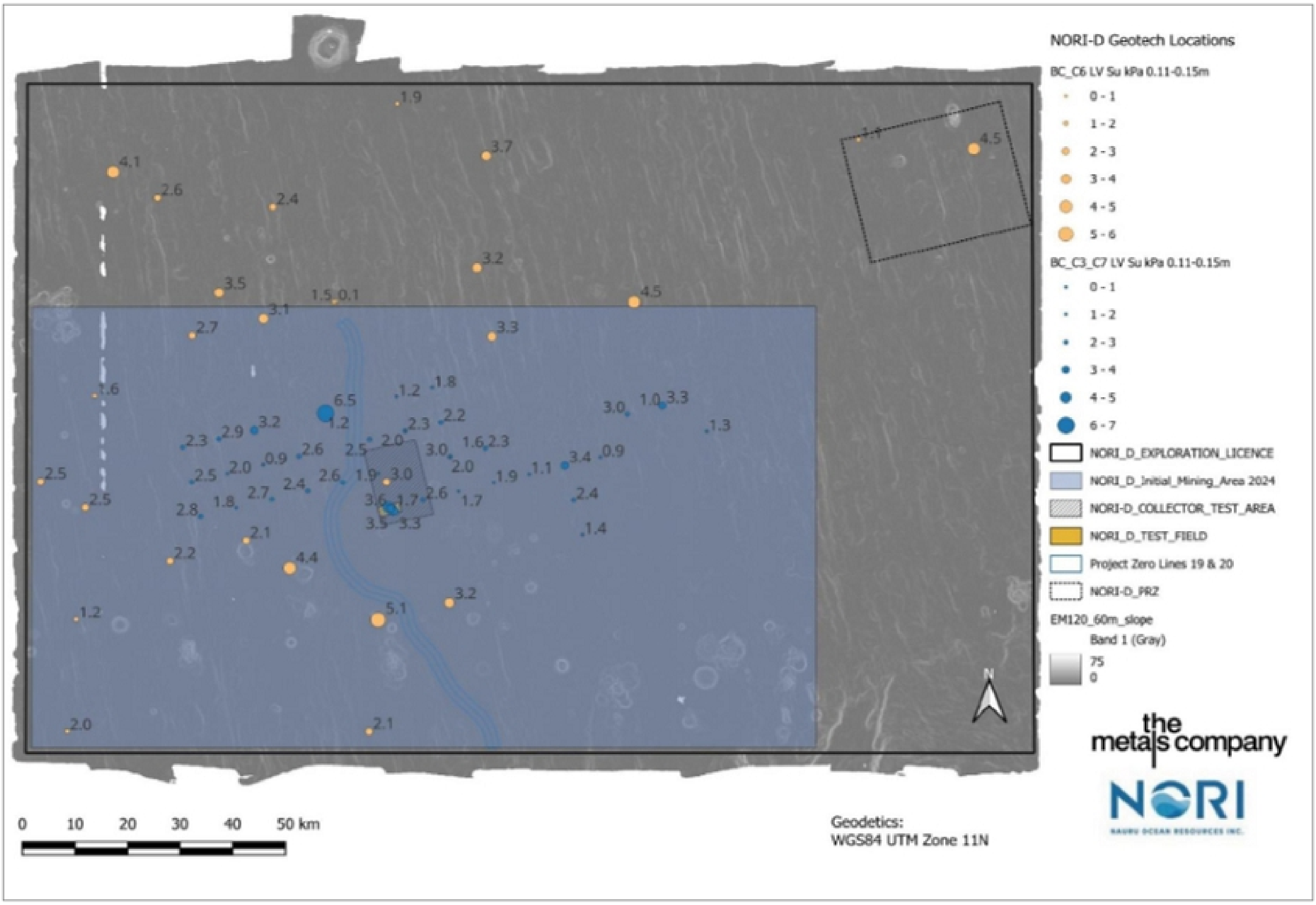
The data has been split with Campaign 3 and Campaign 7 grouped as data recorded with the nodules in place during testing and Campaign 6 shown separately as nodules removed prior to testing. The removal of the nodules prior to testing caused disturbance in the upper layer of the samples.

Figure 7.68 NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa by Laboratory Vane) 0.00 to 0.10 m depth



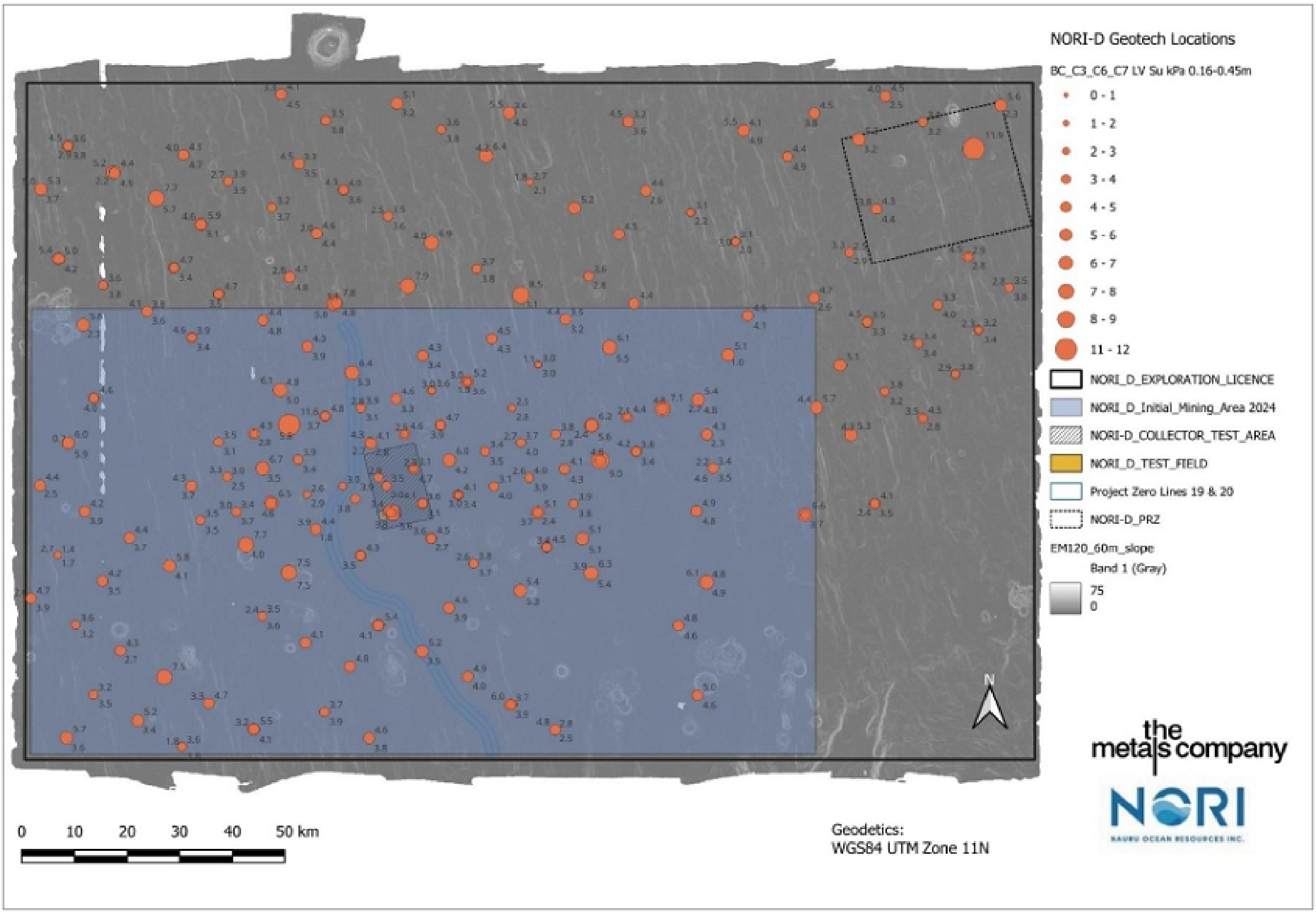
Source: APYS

Figure 7.69 NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa Laboratory Vane) 0.11 to 0.15 m depth



Source: APYS

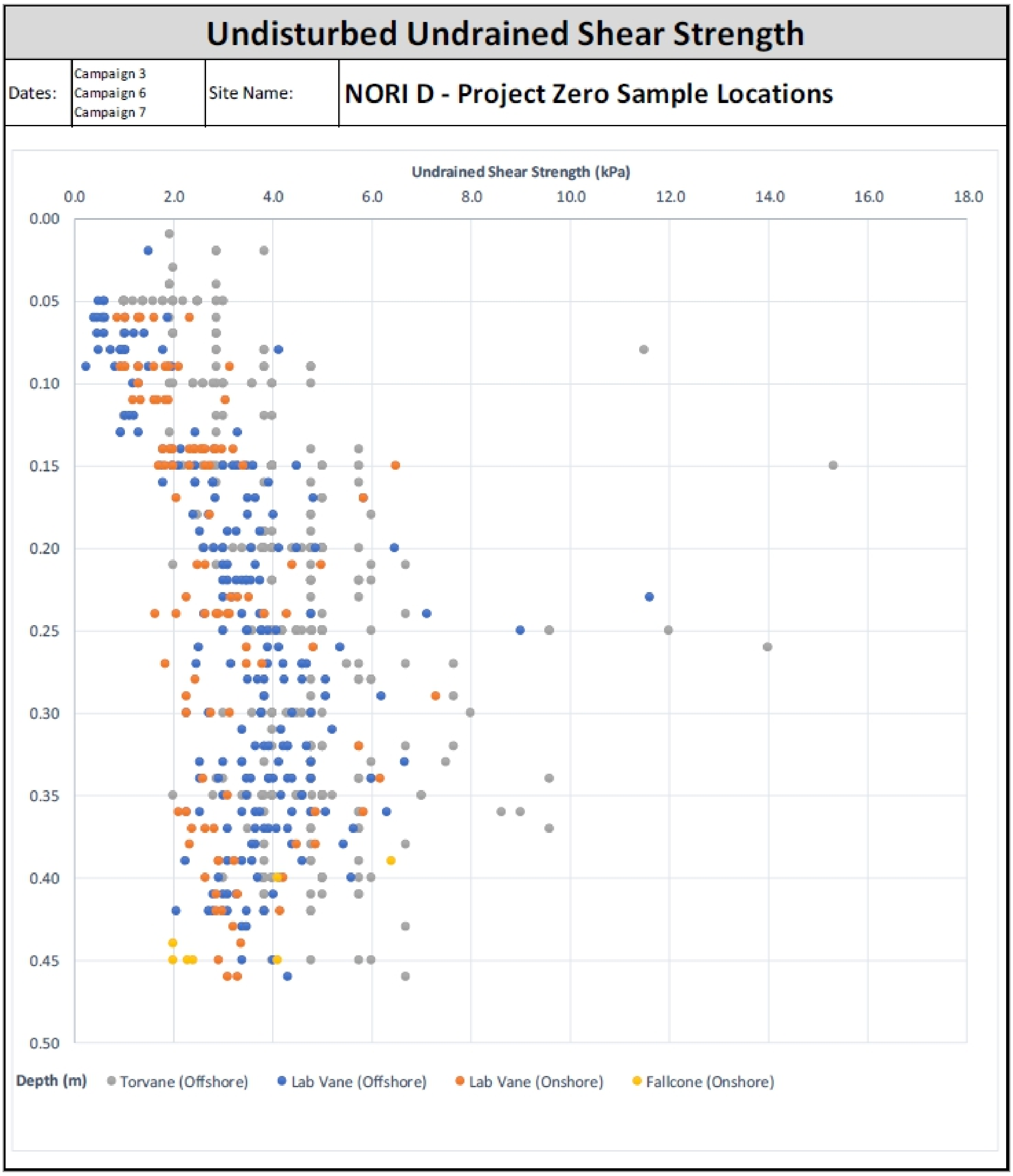
Figure 7.70 NORI Area D maximum measured shear strength (Su kPa Laboratory Vane) 0.15 to 0.45 m depth



Source: APYS

Figure 7.71 shows the variation by depth of the measured values undisturbed undrained shear strength from sediment samples taken within the proposed Initial Mining Area.

Figure 7.71 Initial Mining Area measured undrained shear strength by depth



Source: APYS P0 Geotech Report

7.14.4 Soil classification

Soil classification using particle size distribution data alone indicates the presence of greater than 20% clay sized minerals for all soil units, which would generally indicate that the primary soil type is classified as clay. The magnitude of the silt-sized fraction indicates a description ranging from silty to very silty clay.

However, using plasticity data from Campaign 3 and Campaign 6 the results indicate that the soil classifies as very high plasticity clay and silt respectively. The Campaign 3 investigation used the Casagrande method[10] for determining Plastic Limit, whereas for Campaign 6 the 4-point Fall Cone method[11] was used.

Results from a prior geotechnical investigation at the site (C3) classified the soils as primary soil type clay. Onshore lab testing for the C3 samples indicated Plastic Limit index results significantly higher than C6. Liquid Limit index was very similar for both campaigns.

To further investigate the matter, a limited set of X-ray diffraction testing was completed to determine the soil mineralogy. These results confirm the presence of around 20% clay mineral content, primarily illite, with some smectite and lesser quantity of kaolinite. In terms of classification this does not conclusively indicate whether the soils will behave as a clay or a silt.

7.14.5 Variation in seafloor soil measurements

The seafloor soils are extremely sensitive, any sampling process will have disturbed the soils to some extent. The box core is a shallow penetration seabed sampling system designed to recover a cube of relatively undisturbed seabed sediment in soft soil conditions[12], as found on the NORI Area D site.

A comparison between the shear strength profiles generated from the Campaign 6 box core CPT and the profiles generated from the Campaign 7 seafloor*in situ* CPT indicates a difference in the upper 0.20 m of data. The Campaign 6 box cores are between 0.5 and 2 kPa lower than the *in situ* CPT seafloor profiles. The box core CPT profiles collected during Campaign 7 do not show the same degree of strength reduction. During Campaign 6 geotechnical data was collected after nodule removal from the surface of the box core, whilst Campaign 7 geotechnical data was collected with the nodules in place. This difference suggests that the primary mechanism for the reduction in strength is the nodule removal process. The effect of the recovery of the sample through the water column to deck, and dissolved gas coming out of solution in the pore water with the change in hydrostatic pressure has also to be considered for box core samples from all campaigns.

Figure 7.72 presents an overlay of the C7 in situ seafloor CPT with the selected Campaign 6 and Campaign 7 box core CPT profiles within proximity and the same seafloor domain. This plot illustrates the apparent lower readings from the C6 box cores in the upper layer (unit 1).

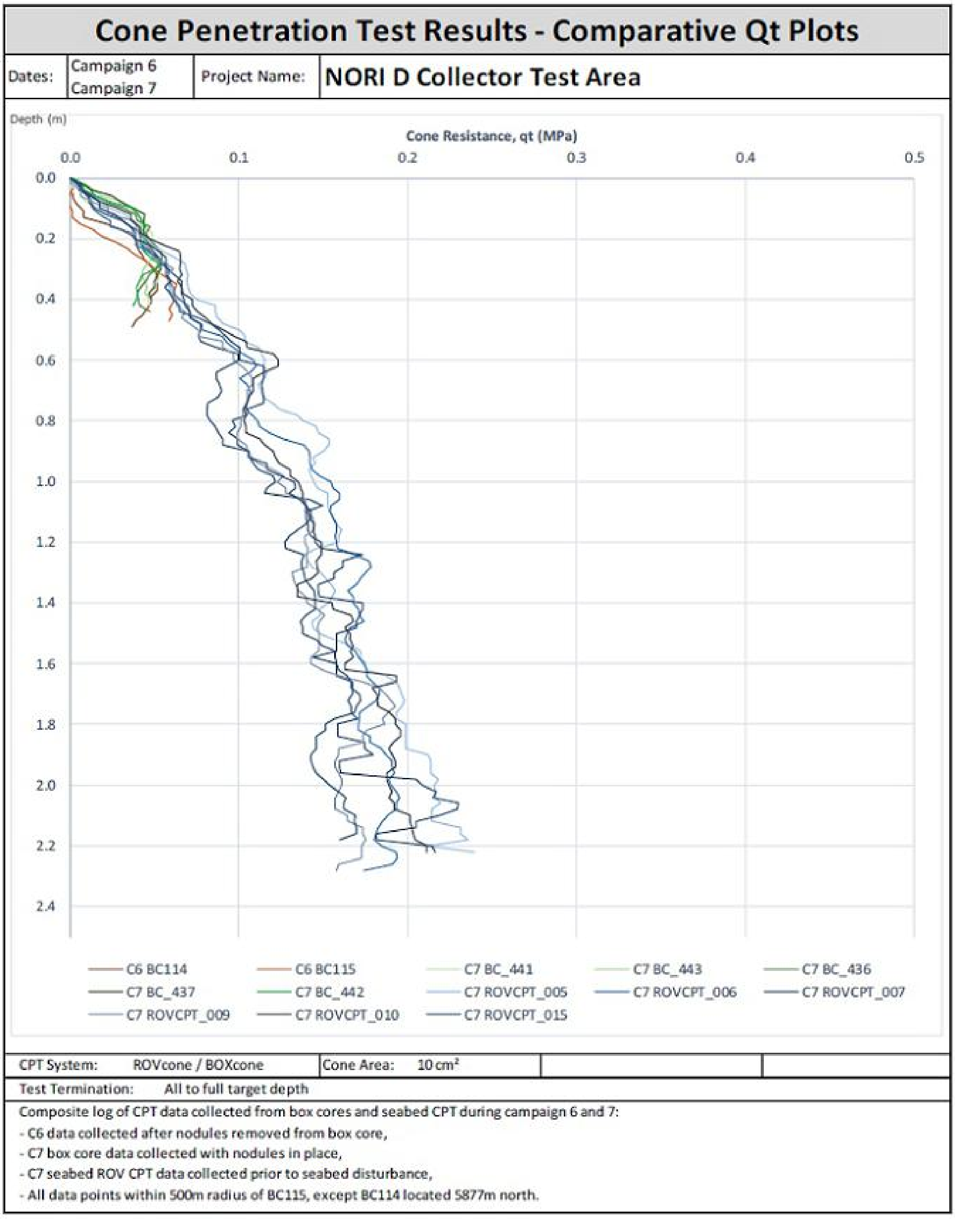
Seafloor conditions derived from seabed CPT readings indicate that the seafloor conditions are firmer than anticipated from the box core measurements obtained during Campaign 6. This was also observed in the behavior of the seafloor collector, which performed locomotive tasks at the top end of expectations.

10 ASTM D4318-17

11 BS EN ISO 17892-12:2018

12 ISO 19901-8:2015: Box core system recommended for very soft to soft clay

Figure 7.72 Overlay of in situ seafloor CPT and in Box Core CPT Profiles[13]



Source: APYS Nkt Evaluation

13 BC_114 and BC_115 are located within the collector Test Area. All locations (except BC_114) are within 500 m of BC_115.

8 Sample preparation, analyses, and security

This section describes the methods used for preparing and assaying the box core samples from the 2018, 2019, 2022 and 2023 exploration campaigns. The methods used in each campaign were not materially different. AMC considers that the sample preparation, security, and analytical procedures were adequate for estimating Mineral Resources.

8.1 Sample security

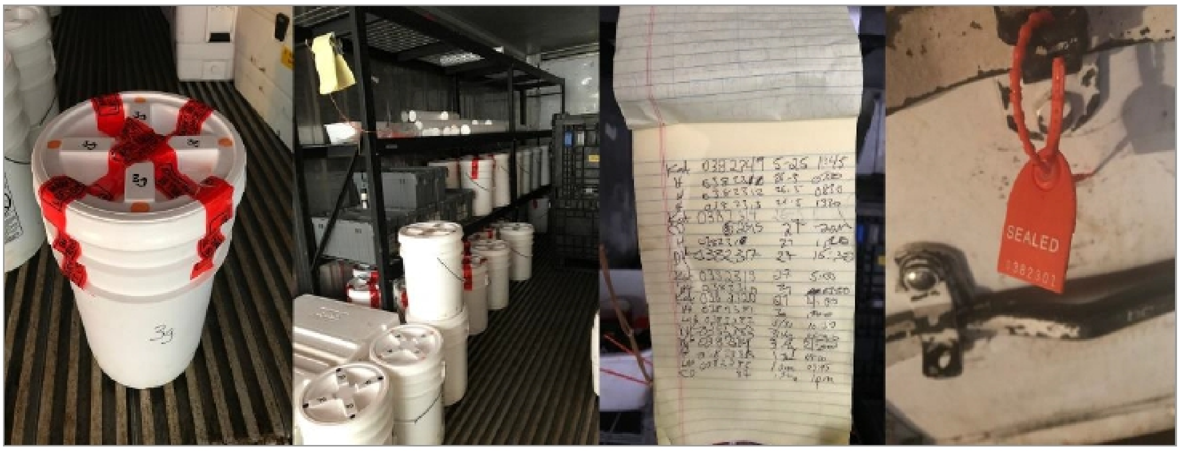
The geoscience laboratory was manned by a team of qualified geoscience staff rotating on 12-hour shifts during box coring operations. All samples were weighed at the weighing stations. Reference weights were used to periodically check the accuracy of the electronic scales. All weights and associated nodule descriptions were recorded in
logbooks (also digitally scanned) and captured in a digital (Excel) database. A digital photographic archive of all samples was also compiled. Data was stored on a computer and backups to external disks were regularly made.

On completion of processing, samples were stored in polythene bags placed in gasket-sealed plastic pails. All nodule pails were assembled in the geoscience laboratory and temporarily stored there until they were transported to a refrigerated container (reefer). The reefer was secured with a tag-in, tag-out system.

Sample bags were prepared with triple redundancy—numbered zip tie, printed bar code, and hand-written in permanent ink. Tracking of samples was maintained with a bar-code scanner and digital database.

Following checking of the nodule count in each box core against the photographic record and reweighing of the nodules, the samples from the depth layers were recombined. These samples were assembled into respective storage pails depending on sample type and destination. Each sample was scanned and recorded on the sample master spreadsheet, and sample pails sealed with tamper-proof tape, and carried to the secured storage reefer (see Figure 8.1).

Figure 8.1 Sample storage



All samples were taken out of the reefer and reweighed on land upon arrival in San Diego. The sealed pails were reopened by geoscientists, weighed, scanned, replaced in pails, sealed with tamper-proof tape and returned to the secured storage reefer. Regular email communications were conducted with the Qualified Person for the Mineral Resource estimate during the sample acquisition operations.

8.2 Sample preparation and assaying

All samples were freighted to ALS Laboratory Group (ALS) in Brisbane, Australia. ALS has a biosecurity quarantine facility approved by the Australian Quarantine and Inspection Service (AQIS). All samples were irradiated before clearing quarantine. The samples were not heat-treated as this would have resulted in breakdown of some of the hydroxide minerals.

For the 2018 and 2019 sampling campaigns the samples were inspected by AMC staff to confirm that there had been no tampering since dispatch from San Diego. The data from these campaigns provides a baseline against which any tampering with samples in future campaigns from NORI Area D would be easily recognized.

NORI obtained a certified reference material (CRM) called NOD-P-1, manufactured by the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), and stored in small glass vials. The material used in the preparation of the CRM was collected from the Pacific Ocean (14°50’ N, 124°28’ W) at a depth of 4,300 m.

ALS in Brisbane was selected as the primary laboratory as it has extensive experience in the analysis of high manganese samples and nodules. ALS operates quality systems based on international standards ISO/IEC17025:1999 "General requirements for competence of calibration and testing laboratories" and ISO9001:2000 "Quality Management Systems Requirements".

The sample preparation and assaying procedure at ALS was as follows:

· Samples were transferred to barcode-labelled aluminium trays and dried in an oven. For the 2018 campaign the samples were dried at 60°C for three (3) days. For the 2019 campaign the samples were dried at 105°C for three (3) days. There appears to be no significant differences between the assays as a consequence. Moisture loss was measured.

· After drying, samples were jaw crushed in a Jacques jaw crusher to reduce particle size to less than 10 mm.

· The crushed samples were then pulverized in an LM5 mill to a powder with typical particle size >85% passing 75 µm. Very small samples were pulverized in a smaller bowl using an LM2 mill. A sieve test was conducted for every 20th sample to check the particle sizes.

· Pulps were analyzed by a fusion/XRF method (ME-XRF26s) using a small aliquot (0.33 g) to avoid fusion problems. The following oxides were reported:

— LOI, Al_2O_3, BaO, CaO, Cr_2O_3, CoO, Fe_2O_3, K_2O, CuO, MgO, MnO, Na_2O, P_2O_5, SO_3, SiO_2, NiO, TiO_2, PbO, and ZnO.

· Pulps were fused with lithium borate to create a bead that was dissolved with acid and analyzed by inductively-coupled plasma emission mass spectroscopy (ICP-MS) (method ME-MS81) for:

— Ba, Ce, Cr, Cs, Dy, Er, Eu, Ga, Gd, Hf, Ho, La, Lu, Nb, Nd, Pr, Rb, Sm, Sn, Sr, Ta, Tb, Th, Tm, U, V, W, Y, Yb, and Zr.

· Pulps were analyzed for:

— As, Cd, Li, Mo, Sb by four acid ICP-AES method (ME-ICP61).

— Bi, Ge, Se, Te, Tl by four acid digest ICP-MS (method ME-MS62s).

— Hg by low temperature digestion in aqua regia and ICP-MS (method Hg-MS42).

— B by ICP-MS (method B-ICP69.

— F by KOH fusion and ion selective electrode (method F-ELE81a).

— Loss on ignition (LOI) at 1000°C.

ALS also reported a calculated total, being the sum of the reportable analytes plus LOI. Manganese was included in this calculation as Mn_3O_4 but was reported on the certificate of analysis as MnO. The ALS calculation using Mn_3O_4 is aimed at covering the middle ground of MnO and MnO_2 which are likely both present in the nodules. The assay totals reported by ALS were very close to 100%.

BV was used as a secondary laboratory in some campaigns, to provide an independent check on the accuracy of the sample preparation and assaying by ALS. BV operates quality systems based on international standards ISO/IEC17025:1999 and ISO9001:2000. Each sample batch included internal quality control samples (certified reference materials).

The sample preparation and assaying procedure at BV was as follows:

· Samples were dried in an oven at 105°C. Moisture loss was measured.

· Samples crushed and split, if required, then pulverized in a vibrating pulverizer.

· Pulps were cast using a 12:22 flux with added sodium nitrate to form a glass bead. The beads were analyzed by XRF for: TiO_2, Fe, Al_2O_3, SiO_2, Mn, CaO, MgO, S XRF, P XRF, BaO, and K_2O.

· Pulps were analyzed by Laser Ablation Inductively Coupled Plasma Mass Spectrometry for:

Ag, As, Ba, Be, Bi, Cd, Ce, Co, Cr, Cs, Cu, Dy, Er, Eu, Ga, Gd, Ge, Hf, Ho, In, La, Lu, Mn, Mo, Nb, Nd, Ni, Pb, Pr, Rb, Re, Sb, Sc, Se, Sm, Sn, Sr, Ta, Tb, Te, Th, Ti, Tl, Tm, U, V, W, Y, Yb, Zn, and Zr.

· Pulps were analyzed for LOI at 1000°C.

8.3 Quality Assurance and Quality Control procedures

Certified reference materials (CRMs), blank samples (crushed rock samples with very low manganese, nickel, cobalt, and copper) and duplicate samples were used for quality control and quality assurance during the 2018 - 2023 offshore campaigns (C3, C6, C7, C8).

8.3.1 Certified Reference Materials

The CRM called NOD-P-1, manufactured by the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), was used for the 2018 campaign. Material used in the preparation of the CRM was collected from the Pacific Ocean (14°50’ N, 124°28’ W) at a depth of 4,300 m. A total of 29 CRMs were inserted into sample submissions during box core sample assaying programs in 2018, 2019, and 2023. Table shows the assayed values for manganese, cobalt, nickel and copper and the certified values for NOD-1-P.

Three (3) of the samples were assayed at Bureau Veritas Minerals Pty Ltd (BV) in Adelaide, Australia. The remainder (26) were assayed at ALS Global (ALS) in Stafford, Australia. There was a slight positive bias in the BV assays relative to those from ALS. These differences are interpreted to be due to small calibration errors in the BV data.

The mean and standard deviation of the ALS assays are presented in Table 8.1. These provide a measure of the analytical error at ALS plus any errors related to inhomogeneity of sample NOD-P-1. The ALS assays are satisfactory.

Table 8.1 Assay results for NOD-P-1 from off-shore campaigns in 2018, 2019, and 2023

Sample	NiO (%)	CuO (%)	MnO (%)	CoO (%)	Laboratory
Certified value	1.71	1.44	37.6	0.28	USGS
Mean of all assays from ALS	1.72	1.43	37.70	0.28	ALS
Std Dev of all samples	0.03	0.02	0.45	0.01	ALS
0367075A	1.72	1.43	38.04	0.28	ALS
0367108A	1.73	1.45	38.24	0.28	ALS
0367175A	1.72	1.42	38	0.28	ALS
0367177A	1.72	1.41	37.92	0.28	ALS
STD11	1.73	1.43	37.86	0.28	ALS
STD12	1.72	1.43	37.79	0.28	ALS
STD1	1.73	1.45	37.3	0.29	ALS
STD2	1.72	1.42	37.29	0.28	ALS
STD3	1.71	1.42	37.14	0.28	ALS
STD4	1.71	1.41	37.13	0.28	ALS
STD5	1.72	1.44	37.43	0.28	ALS
STD6	1.73	1.44	37.54	0.28	ALS
STD7	1.73	1.47	37.73	0.29	ALS
STD8	1.71	1.44	37.39	0.28	ALS
STD9	1.72	1.45	37.59	0.28	ALS
STD10	1.71	1.42	37.7	0.28	ALS
STD13	1.73	1.43	38.07	0.29	ALS
STD14	1.73	1.43	37.94	0.29	ALS
STD15	1.73	1.44	37.93	0.29	ALS
STD16	1.71	1.42	37.49	0.28	ALS
STD17	1.72	1.43	37.74	0.28	ALS
STD18	1.72	1.42	37.67	0.28	ALS
STD19	1.72	1.43	37.85	0.28	ALS
STD20	1.72	1.43	37.82	0.29	ALS
STD21	1.71	1.43	37.72	0.28	ALS
XX55000	1.76	1.45	37.9	0.29	ALS
0367109A	1.781	1.44	38.865	0.294	BV
0367183A	1.794	1.452	38.865	0.296	BV
STD4	1.82	1.54	38.87	0.3	BV

8.3.2 Blanks

The blank samples were composed of dolomite, granite, recycled glass or quartz, which were expected to have very low content of manganese, cobalt, nickel and copper. The blank material was not assayed prior to insertion in the NORI sample batches. A total of 31 blank samples were inserted into the sample assay batches at a rate of approximately 1 in 8. Table 8.2 shows the assayed oxide values for the blanks.

The assays for the blank samples from campaign C3 indicate slightly elevated manganese (deliberate as some of the blanks had manganese mixed in with the blank) and negligible nickel, copper and cobalt.

The MnO assay in XX55001, from campaign C8, might be considered anomalous but the loss on ignition for this sample was only 0.03%. Given that the ratio of MnO:LOI in the nodules is approximately 2.5 and for the blank sample the ratio is 22, AMC concludes that the source of the manganese in the blank sample is not contamination from nodules but may be from the sample preparation equipment. The blank sample is much harder than the nodules and abrasion by the nodules is not expected to lead to contamination of nodule assays. These conclusions are supported by the CRM results which do not indicate contamination.

Table 8.2 Assay results for NOD-P-1 from off-shore campaigns in 2018, 2019, and 2023

Campaign	Sample	Material	NiO (%)	CuO (%)	MnO (%)	CoO (%)	Laboratory
C3	0367116A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.38	0.01	ALS
C3	0367089A	Dolomite or granite	0.03	0.03	0.63	0.01	ALS
C3	0367091A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.23	0.01	ALS
C3	0367118A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.38	0.01	ALS
C3	0367200A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.06	0.01	ALS
C3	0367202A	Dolomite or granite	0.02	0.01	0.42	0.01	ALS
C3	0367241A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.46	0.01	ALS
C3	0367052A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.00	0.18	0.00	BV
C3	0367088A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.23	0.00	BV
C3	0367149A	Dolomite or granite	0.01	0.01	0.28	0.00	BV
C3	0367239A	Dolomite or granite	0.00	0.00	0.14	0.00	BV
C6	Blank1	Recycled glass	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank2	Recycled glass	0.01	<0.01	0.13	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank3	Recycled glass	0.01	0.01	0.13	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank4	Recycled glass	0.01	0.01	0.12	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank5	Recycled glass	0.02	0.01	0.57	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank6	Recycled glass	<0.01	0.02	<0.01	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank7	Recycled glass	<0.01	0.03	<0.01	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank8	Recycled glass	0.02	0.02	0.20	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank9	Recycled glass	0.01	0.03	0.22	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank10	Recycled glass	0.01	0.02	0.16	<0.01	ALS
C6	Blank11	Recycled glass	0.02	0.04	0.42	<0.01	ALS

C7	Blank 1	Granite	0.02	<0.01	0.45	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 2	Granite	0.03	0.01	0.76	0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 3	Granite	<0.01	0.01	0.40	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 4	Granite	0.01	0.01	0.33	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 5	Granite	0.02	0.02	0.40	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 6	Granite	0.01	0.01	0.32	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 7	Granite	0.01	<0.01	0.36	<0.01	ALS
C7	Blank 8	Granite	0.01	<0.01	0.34	<0.01	ALS
C8	XX55001	Quartz	0.04	0.02	0.66	<0.01	ALS

8.3.3 Duplicates

8.3.3.1 Campaign 3, 2018

Duplicate samples were generated by cone and quartering the nodules (Section 7.2.5). A total of 44 samples were assayed at ALS paired with duplicate samples also assayed at ALS. Figure 8.2 presents the results. The precision of the results is very good and there is no evidence of significant biases or errors.

For the 2018 sampling campaign, the duplicates (secondary laboratory) were submitted to Bureau Veritas laboratory in Perth, Australia. A total of 43 samples were assayed at ALS paired with duplicate samples assayed at BV. Figure 8.3 presents the results. The precision of the results is good. There are very small high bias for nickel and manganese compared with the ALS assays (see Table 8.3) but this is not significant. These results are consistent with the observation for the assays of the NOD-P-1 standard.

The maximum half absolute relative difference for the ALS paired data is NiO = 1.95%, CuO = 4.76%, MnO = 1.99%, CoO = 4.35% and for the BV assays paired with the ALS primary samples is NiO = 3.22%, CuO = 2.49%, MnO = 2.31%, CoO = 6.35%. The precision in the nodule sample assays is acceptable.

Figure 8.2 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS

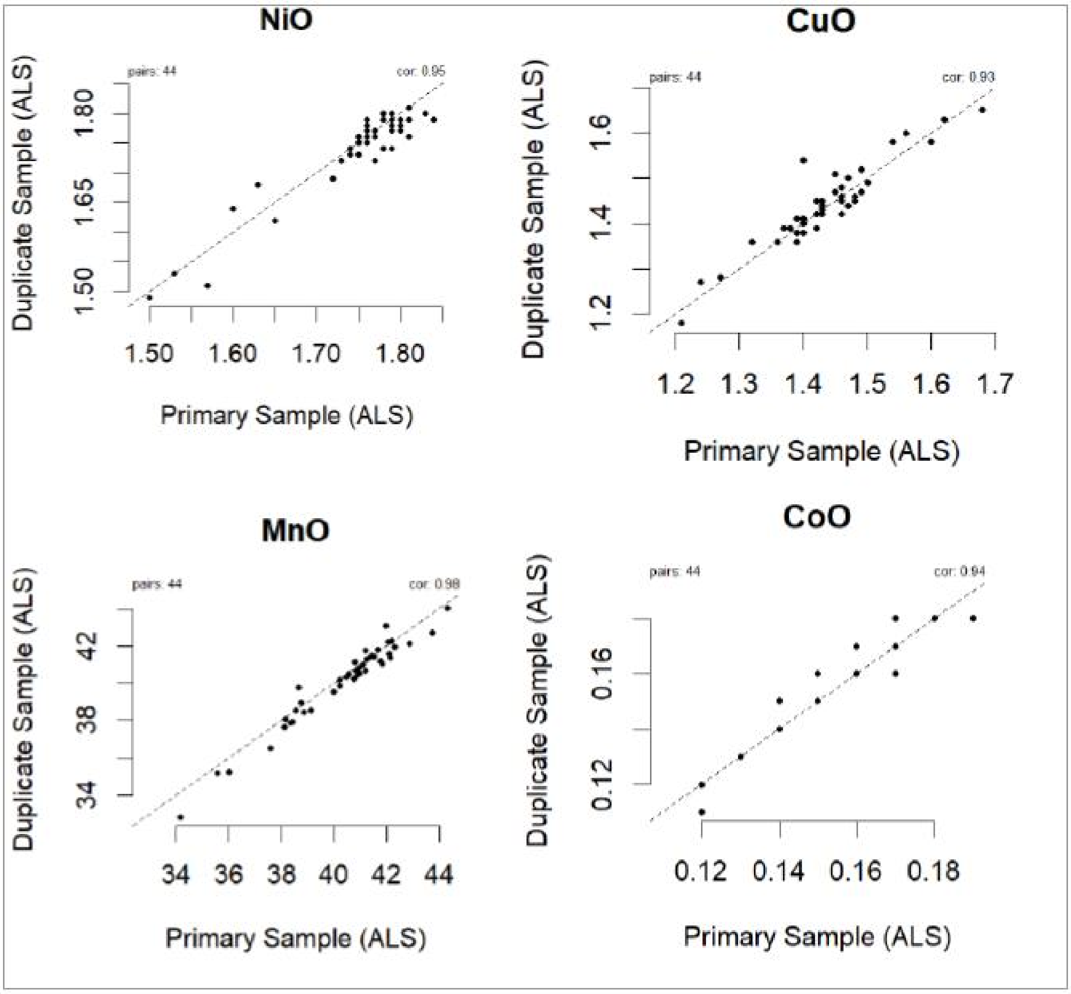


Figure 8.3 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at BV

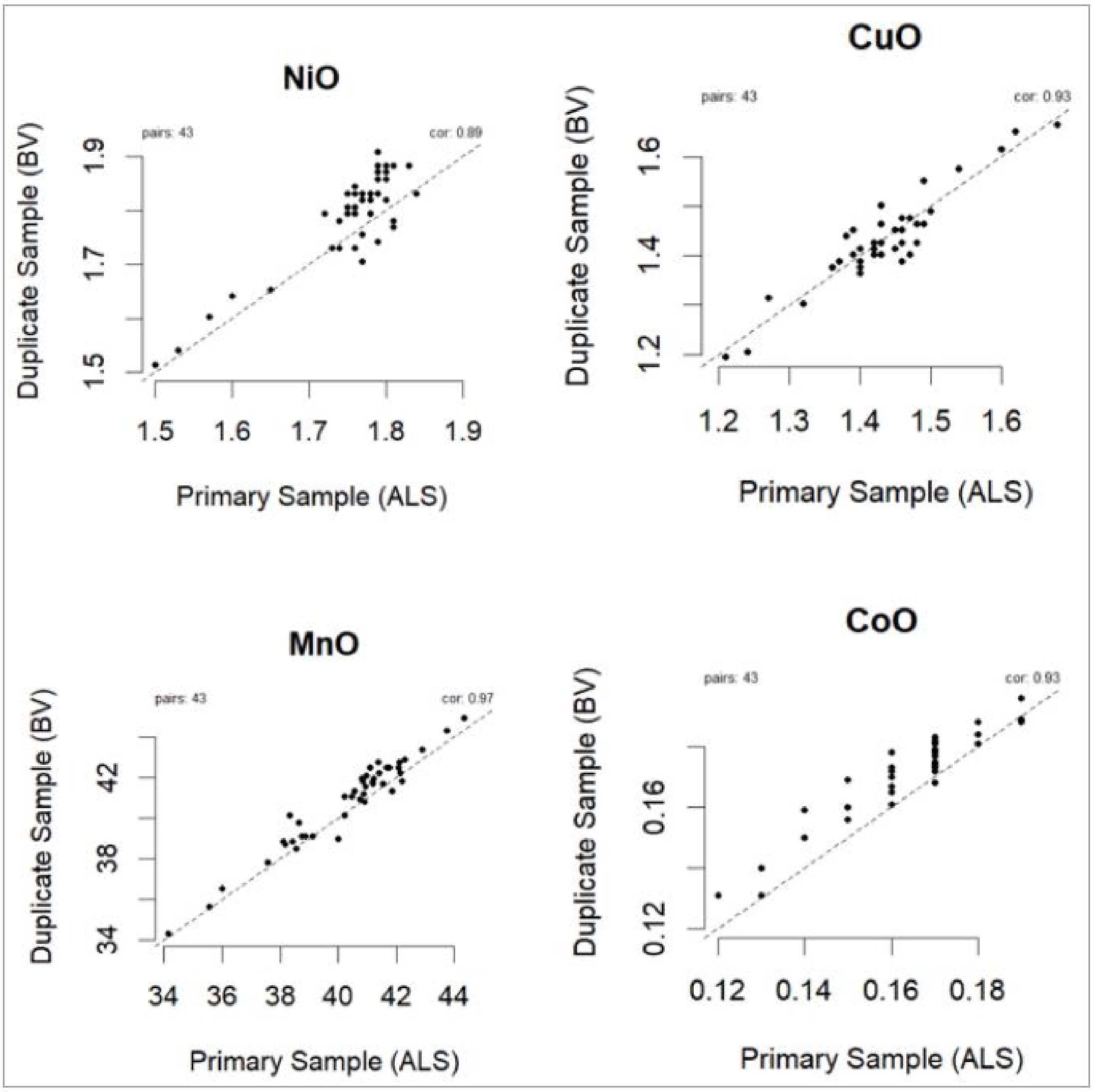


Table 8.3 Duplicate average sample grades by laboratory

Variable	ALS primary	ALS duplicate	BV duplicate
NiO (%)	1.75	1.74	1.79
CuO (%)	1.44	1.44	1.43
MnO (%)	40.39	40.11	40.82
CoO (%)	0.16	0.16	0.17

8.3.3.2 Campaign 6, 2018

ALS prepared field duplicate samples by cone and quartering the box core samples. A total of 19 samples were assayed at ALS paired with duplicate samples also assayed at ALS. Figure 8.4 and Table 8.4 present the results. The precision of the results is very good and there is no evidence of significant biases or errors.

Figure 8.4 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS14

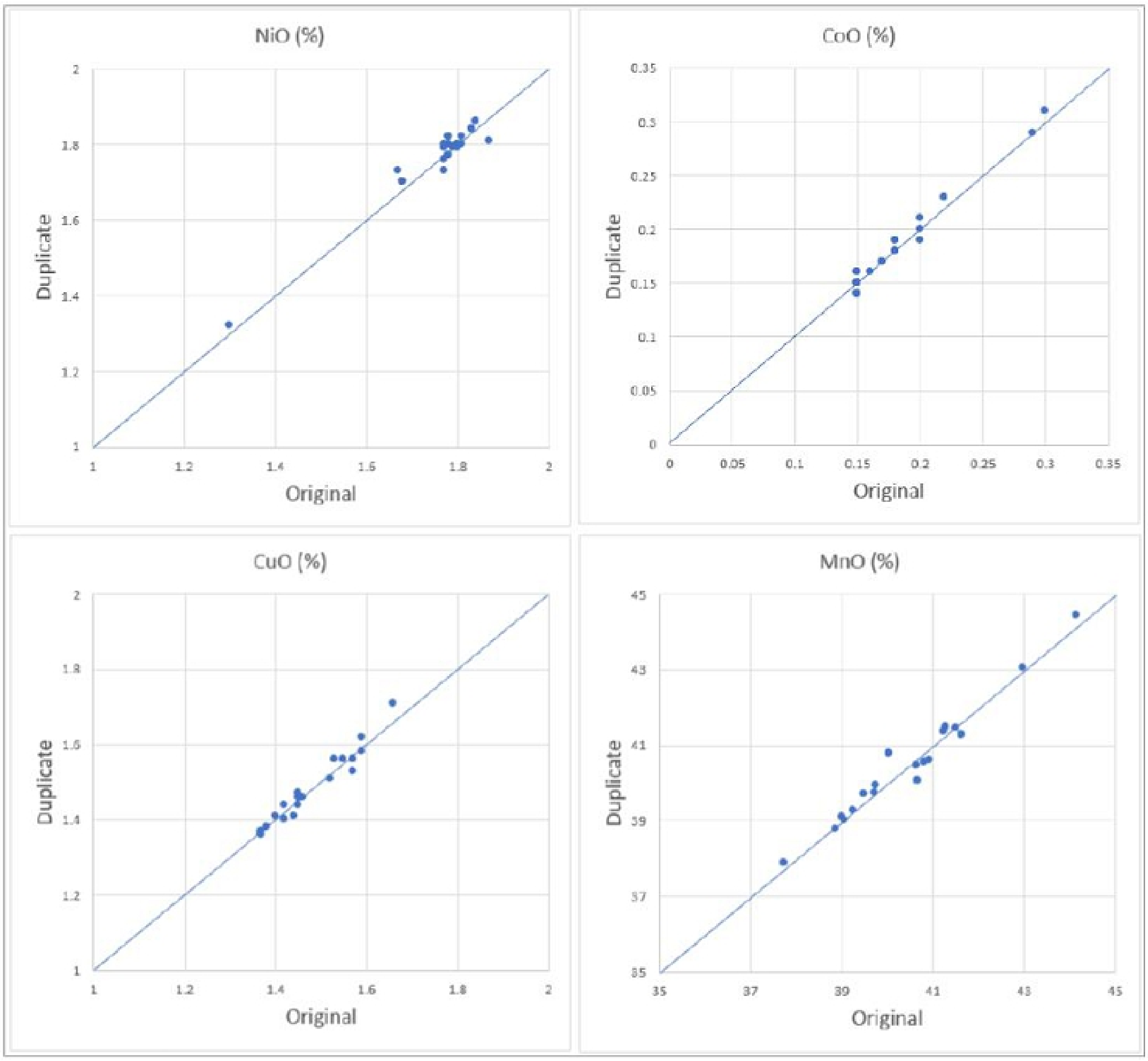


Table 8.4 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS

Variable	Number	ALS primary	ALS duplicate
NiO (%)	19	1.76	1.77
CuO (%)	19	1.48	1.49
MnO (%)	19	40.47	40.47
CoO (%)	19	0.19	0.19

The pulps of 27 pulp samples assayed at ALS were resubmitted for assay at BV. Figure 8.5 presents the results. The results for nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese are all biased high by approximately 3% to 5%, compared with the ALS assays (see Table 8.5).

[14] Diagonal blue line at 1:1 ratio

These results are consistent with the observation for the assays of the NOD-P-1 standard which indicated that the BV results were biased slightly high.

Figure 8.5 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at BV15

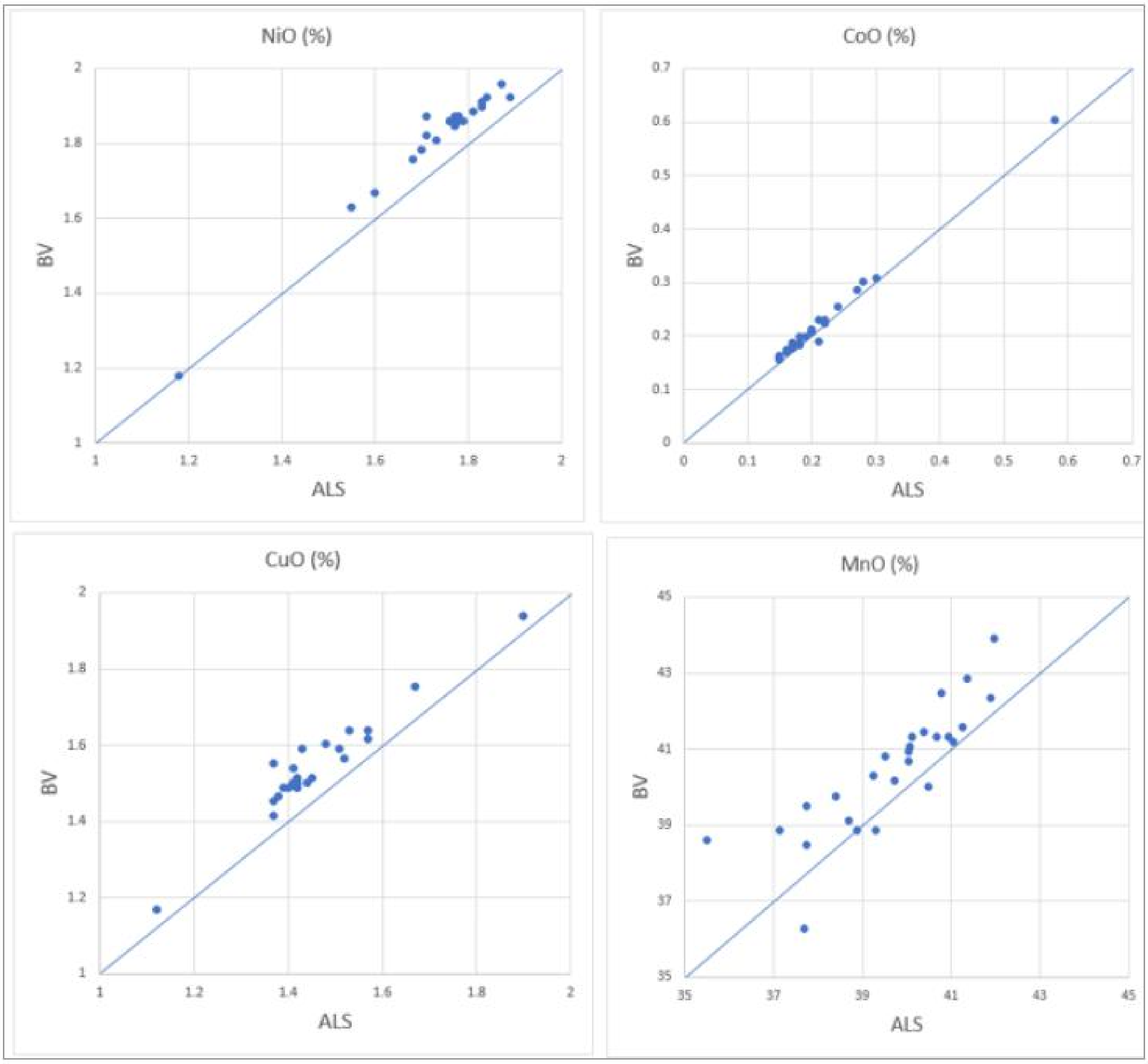


Table 8.5 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS and BV

Variable	Number	ALS Primary	BV pulp duplicate
NiO (%)	27	1.74	1.82
CuO (%)	27	1.47	1.56
MnO (%)	27	39.4	40.5
CoO (%)	27	0.21	0.22
SiO2 (%)	27	12.6	12.9

[15] Diagonal blue line at 1:1 ratio

8.3.3.3 Campaign 7A, 2022

The sample bags for each box core were not combined and resplit as they had been in earlier campaigns. A sealed bag of nodules was selected by NORI from the pails of sample bags for each box core as the primary sample for the box core. Additional sample bags were selected in the same random way from some of the box cores as field duplicates. NORI assumed, based on previous duplicate sampling, that the variance of grades within any box core is sufficiently low that statistical splitting of samples to create primary and duplicate samples is unnecessary.

A total of four primary and duplicate samples were assayed at ALS. Figure 8.6 and Table 8.6 present the results. The precision of the results is very good and there is no evidence of significant biases or errors. The results support the assumption that statistical splitting has no significant impact on sample variability.

Figure 8.6 Comparison of primary and duplicate samples assayed at ALS16

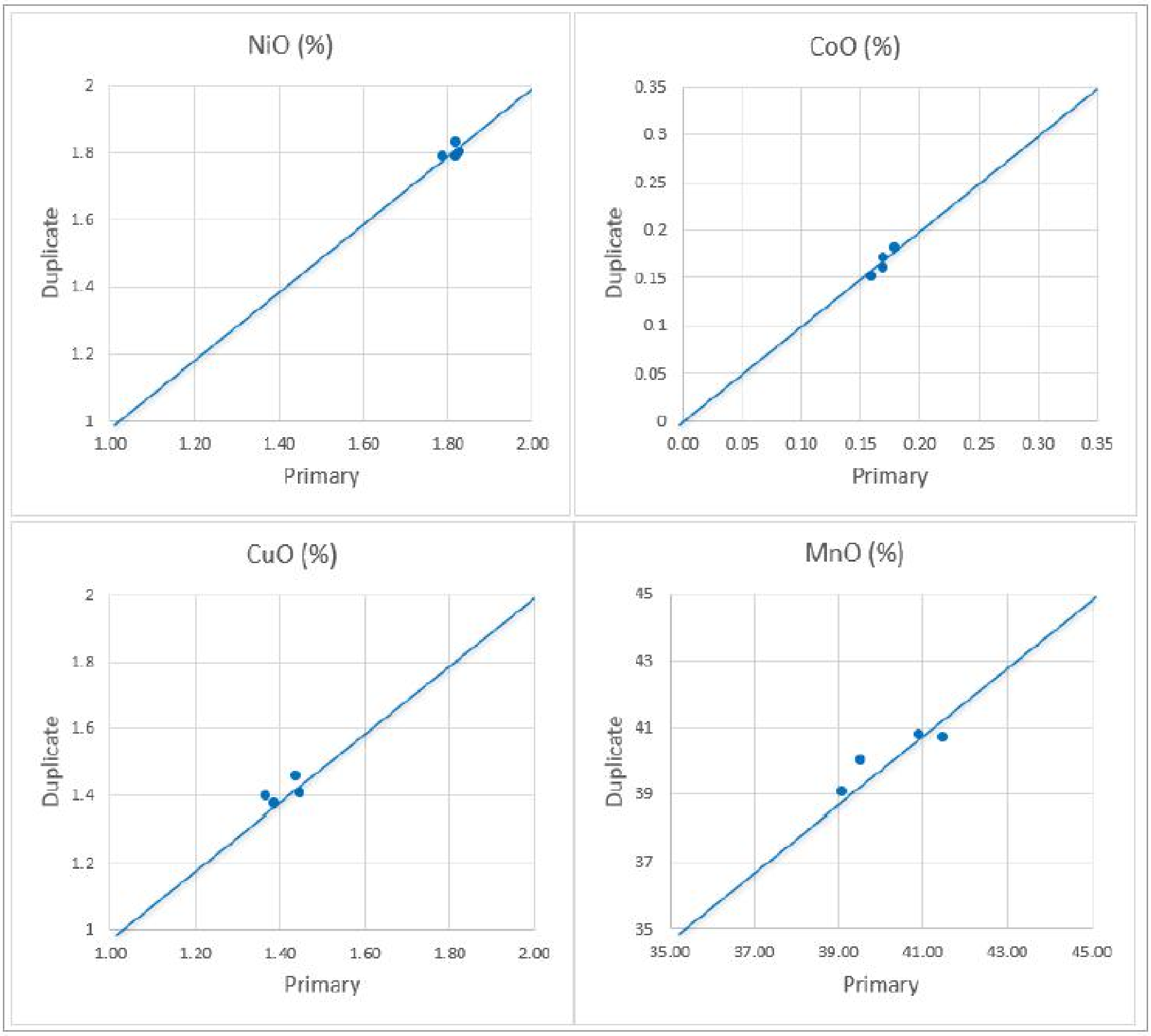


Table 8.6 Primary and duplicate average sample grades from ALS

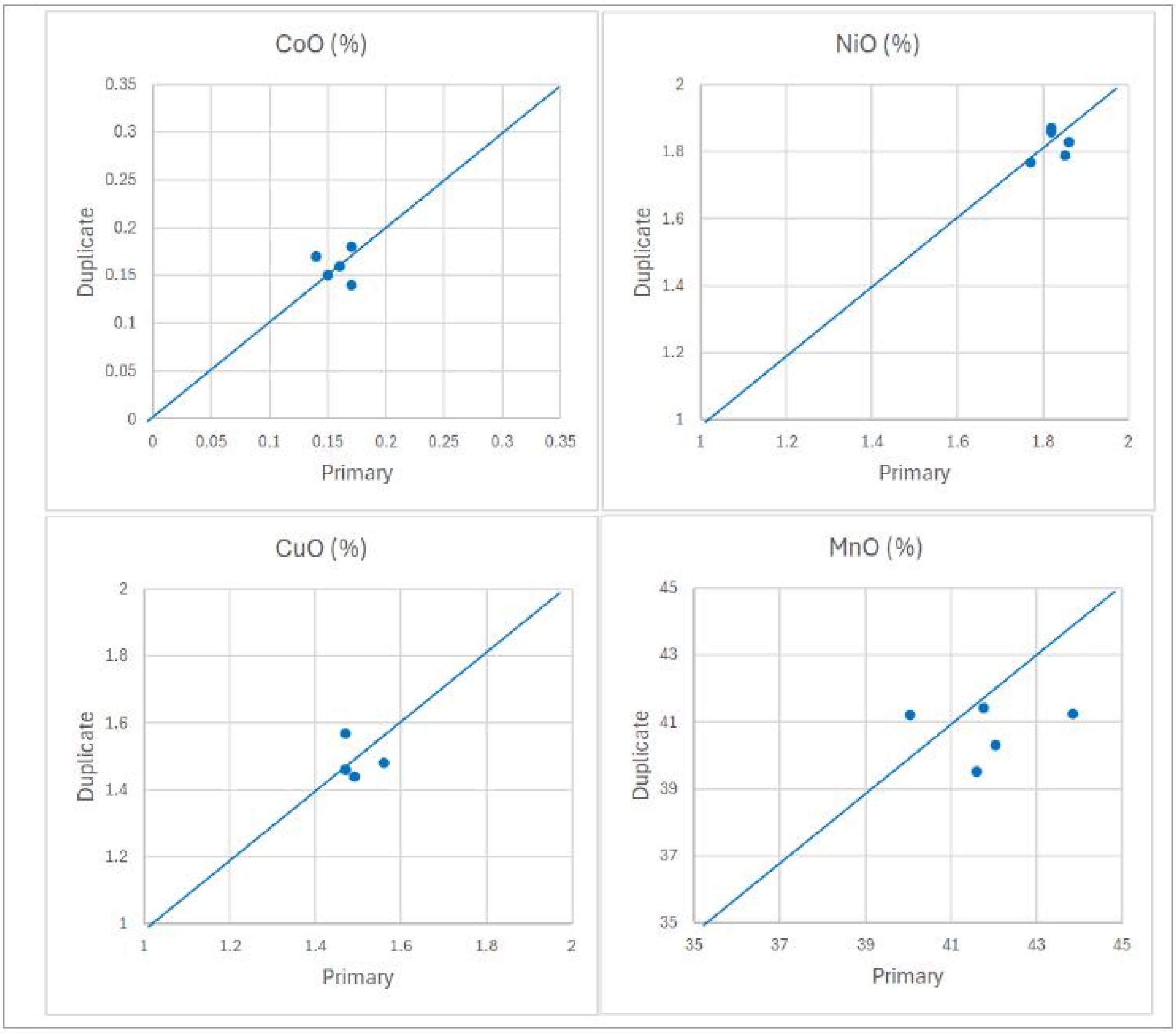
Variable	Number	ALS Primary	ALS Duplicate
NiO (%)	4	1.82	1.80
CuO (%)	4	1.41	1.41
MnO (%)	4	40.27	40.12
CoO (%)	4	0.17	0.17
SiO2 (%)	4	11.03	11.04

[16] Diagonal blue line at 1:1 ratio

8.3.3.4 Campaign 8A, 2023

A total of five (5) samples were assayed at ALS paired with duplicate samples (Section 7.6.2) also assayed at ALS. Figure 8.7 presents the results. Table 8.7 presents the average grades of the primary and duplicate samples. The primary sample from BC_501 returned an anomalously high manganese assay and an anomalously high assay total (101.9%). AMC recommends the duplicate sample assay results for BC_501 should be used in preference to this primary sample. The precision of the results is generally good and there is no evidence of other significant biases or errors.

Figure 8.7 Comparison of primary samples assayed at ALS and duplicate samples assayed at ALS17



---

[17] Diagonal blue line at 1:1 ratio

Table 8.7 Duplicate average sample grades from ALS

Variable	Number	ALS primary	ALS duplicate
NiO (%)	5	1.82	1.82
CuO (%)	5	1.50	1.47
MnO (%)	5	41.42	39.98
CoO (%)	5	0.16	0.16

9 Data verification

Data collected by NORI is well-documented and was subject to satisfactory QA/QC processes. Documentation verified by the Qualified Person includes photographs, daily exploration reports, digital logging sheets and original assay reports. In the opinion of the Qualified Person the NORI Area Data is of high quality and suitable for estimating Mineral Resources. The 2025 Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D, reported herein, was based on box core samples and other data collected by NORI and does not include any data collected by the early explorers (Pioneer Investors) described in Section 5.3 and 5.4.

The nodules are located in the north-east Pacific Ocean and lie at a depth of approximately 4,500 m below sea level. Nodules are only accessible to autonomous or remotely operated specialist underwater vehicles. Given the nature and location of the mineralization, no site visit has been conducted by the Qualified Person. However, the Qualified Person was involved in the development of sampling strategies and procedures and was in daily contact with the offshore sampling campaigns as they were implemented, providing input as required to ensure data quality and veracity.

10 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing

Work commenced with review of the extensive literature regarding nodule mineralogy and historical metallurgical processing outlining that:

- Nodules are fine-grained intergrowths of a complex suite of ferromanganese oxide and hydroxide minerals with nickel-copper-cobalt ingrained into the structure of the ferromanganese minerals.
- As a result, mineral dressing methods are not possible to upgrade to mineral concentrates, and flow sheet development focused on whole nodule treatment, initially by pyrometallurgical methods followed by hydrometallurgical refining.

TMC has completed an extensive metallurgical flowsheet selection, development and proof of concept program over the last fourteen years. The selected flowsheet involves a front-end pyrometallurgical process, where the nodules are first put through a rotary kiln and then further processed in an electric arc furnace. The furnace generates two materials – a manganese silicate slag representing TMC USA's final manganese product, and a nickel-copper-cobalt alloy that is rich in iron. The alloy is further processed pyrometallurgically in Peirce-Smith Converters, where sulfur is added and iron removed to generate a higher-valued matte product. The matte product can then be fed into a downstream hydrometallurgical refinery which separates the nickel, copper and cobalt into their individual components to generate final products.

Testwork has been conducted on the entire flowsheet to date, with larger-scale demonstrations completed for the rotary kiln and electric furnace aspects of the flowsheet, consistent with TMC's strategy to begin operations through using existing RKEF facilities. Product development testing has also been conducted along with the flowsheet development and testing program.

Preliminary bench-scale testing was completed by Kingston Process Metallurgy (KPM), a specialized research and development metallurgical facility based in Kingston, Ontario, Canada. TMC selected the FLSmidth Inc. (FLS) facility in Whitehall, Pennsylvania, USA for pilot-scale rotary kiln calcining trials. Prior to the trials, some bench scale testing was completed at FLS in parallel with KPM testwork. The rotary kiln calcining piloting was executed successfully in November of 2020, generating approximately 35 t of calcined material from 75 t of nodules collected from NORI Area D.

The electric furnace smelting, sulfidation and converting pilot scale trials were conducted by the XPS (A Glencore subsidiary) testing facility in Sudbury, Ontario, Canada. Bench-scale testing was conducted at XPS prior to the piloting on both synthetic and pilot generated materials. The smelting trials were also successful, generating approximately 1,700 kg of alloy and 25 t of manganese silicate. The furnace was then used for the sulfidation and converting piloting, as pilot-scale Peirce-Smith converters do not exist. Approximately 332 kg of final nickel-copper-cobalt matte was generated.

Two programs were conducted for product development. The first, a full bench-scale testing program which generated nickel and cobalt sulfates from the matte generated at XPS was commissioned at SGS Canada in Lakefield, Ontario using a combined atmospheric and pressure sulfuric acid leach flowsheet. The second program, on the manganese silicate product, was conducted at Norwegian laboratory SINTEF Industri, who specialize in the processing of manganese ores. The SINTEF program was also successful in generating silico-manganese alloy using TMC's manganese silicate as the sole manganese source, first at bench scale and later at the kilogram scale. Silico-manganese alloy is a key additive in steel manufacturing, and the success of this program represents the demonstrated value in use to potential customers in using silico-manganese alloy derived from TMC's manganese silicate product compared with their existing feedstocks. The success of this program also confirms that the company's near zero solid waste processing objective was met, as a usable material has been generated from a TMC final product.

10.1 Bulk sample collection testwork

Key findings of the exploration work documented in Section 7 of this report are that:

- The chemical composition and mineralogy of NORI Area D nodules is remarkably consistent.
- Nodules can be classified into three different categories (types 1 to 3), based primarily on size and morphology. The majority of the Mineral Resource is comprised of type 1 nodules.

Utilising this work, an area to the north and west of the identified Test Mining Trial area was selected to collect a nodule bulk sample to undertake metallurgical pilot testing. This bulk sample was collected from 6 separate areas using a bespoke designed 6 m wide ploughing system (Figure 10.1), which was deployed to the seafloor using the main anchor winches of the *MV Maersk Launcher*, an anchor handler tug supply vessel that was used to deploy the system.

The system was designed to recover nodules from the top 5 cm of the seafloor and reject the surface sediment through a metal mesh which retained the nodules. The system successfully collected 77.3 t of nodules from 62 runs covering an area of 48,157 m^2 along a total run length of 5.8 km. A scallop-dredge mesh was used with mesh size varied from 10 mm to 19 mm. The fines rejection was not fully successful, with the nodules needing to be washed ahead of being processed. This will not be an issue for the commercial-scale collection system as demonstrated by the mining test completed in 2022 outlined in Section 13, where little seafloor sediment was lifted to the surface.

A total of 62 samples were taken of the bulk sample and assayed to confirm sample grade and moisture. Grab samples were taken primarily of the middle (number 4 of 6) chain bags during unloading. Samples were shipped to ALS in Brisbane and analysed using the same analysis method for samples used for resource evaluation; moisture by OA-GRA05 and analysis by X-ray fluorescence using ALS code ME-XRF26s. Table 10.1 shows a comparison of the nodule analysis for the bulk sample compared to the measured resource for the test mining area. The nodule grades compare well with slightly elevated moisture for the bulk sample which can be attributed to high moisture in the entrained sediment.

Table 10.1 Comparison of bulk sample analyses with NORI Area D measured resource for the test mining area

Comparison of Bulk Sample Grade to NORI Area D Resource					
Category	**Moisture %**	**Ni %**	**Cu %**	**Co %**	**Mn %**
Bulk Sample					
Mean	29.7	1.40	1.18	0.12	32.9
Max	30.9	1.45	1.29	0.14	34.5
Min	28.2	1.35	1.12	0.09	31.4
Standard Deviation	0.60	0.0002	0.0005	0.0001	0.0053
Measured Resource (Test Mining Area)	28	1.41	1.15	0.13	31.9
Difference in mean	1.7	-0.01	0.03	-0.01	1.05

Source: TMC

Runs were planned to collect type 1, 2 and 3 nodules, nominally in the proportions of the NORI Area D Mineral Resource.

Samples were bagged into one tonne bulka bags and were brought by the*MV Maersk Launcher* to San Diego and then trucked directly to FLS's facility in Pennsylvania where calcining was undertaken.

A 5 t reference sample has been retained in storage in San Diego.

Figure 10.1 Bulk sampling dredge used to collect the bulk sample for metallurgical pilot tests

It is the QP's opinion that the bulk nodule sample collected for pilot testing is representative of the NORI Area D field, particularly for the Initial Mining Area from which some of the sample was extracted.

10.2 Bulk sampling testing laboratories

Feed samples, products and intermediate control samples were analysed by the various testing laboratories using the methods outlined in Table 10.2.

Table 10.2 Location and testing methods of laboratories used

Name	Location	Testing/Assaying Methods
Kingston Process Metallurgy	Kingston, Ontario, Canada	ICP-OES, ICP-MS, various microscopy methods
FL Smidth	Whitehall, PA, USA	XRF, XRD
eXpert Process Solutions (XPS)	Sudbury, Ontario, Canada	XRF, ICP-OES
SGS Canada Inc.	Lakefield, Ontario, Canada	ICP-OES, ICP-MS
SINTEF Industri	Trondheim, Norway	ICP

10.3 Summary of test work results

10.3.1 Round robin assaying program

As part of TMC's commercial partnership with PAMCO, NORI delivered 22 t of nodules collected during the Test Mining in Q4 of 2022. The nodule sample was delivered to PAMCO in March of 2023. PAMCO commissioned a Round Robin Assaying program – where 10 standard samples were created by PAMCO and sent for assay by several participating labs (including PAMCO internally).

The following procedure was undertaken at PAMCO to generate each of the 10 standard samples for assay:

1. Take 60 kg of nodules from flexible container bag.
2. Dry using a dryer at 105℃ until weight is constant. Dry weight of the nodules was 45 kg.
3. Pulverize the entire mass to -150 µm using a disc mill.
4. Divide the mass into 3 bags containing 15 kg per bag (Bags A, B and C).
5. Using a rifle divider, separate each of the 3 bags into 2 separate subsamples, each containing 7.5 kg (A1, A2, B1, B2, C1, C2).
6. Create 2 composites using one subsample from each bag (A1 + B1 + C1, A2 + B2 + C2).
7. Mix the new composites in a plastic bag.

8. Divide the composites into 2 samples (Composite 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b).
9. Mix to make 2 new composites (1a + 2a, 1b + 2b).
10. Repeat Steps 8 and 9 three times. This still results in 2 composites (X and Y).
11. Divide the 2 composites into 10 samples per composite (X1 - X10, Y1 - Y10).
12. Mix subsamples based on their corresponding numbers (X1 + Y1 = standard sample 1).
13. Place each of the samples into individual bottles.

The following laboratories were contracted to conduct analysis as part of this program:

- PAMCO, Hachinohe, Aomori, Japan.
- ALS, Brisbane, QLD, Australia.
- SGS Canada, Lakefield, ON, Canada.
- Kingston Process Metallurgy, Kingston, ON, Canada.

The program required each laboratory to conduct analysis on nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese only. Table 10.3 summarizes the analytical methods undertaken by each of the laboratories to complete this task:

Table 10.3 Analytical methods undertaken by each laboratory

Element	PAMCO Method	KPM Method	ALS Method	SGS Method
Nickel (Ni)	JIS M 8126: Dimethylglyoxime Precipitation Separation EDTA Titration Method	ICP-OES	XRF – Chromite / Manganese Ore – Disc / XRF	XRF
Copper (Cu)	JIS M 8242: Inductively Coupled Plasma Emission Spectrometry (ICP-OES)			
Cobalt (Co)	JIS M 8129: Inductively Coupled Plasma Emission Spectrometry (ICP-OES)			
Manganese (Mn)	JIS M 8232: Potassium Permanganate Titration			

Table 10.4 to Table 10.7 shows the outcomes from each of the laboratories for each of the elements specified. All values are in weight %. Average, standard deviation (SD) and coefficient of variation (CoV) are shown.

Table 10.4 Nickel laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	1.4317	1.460	1.410	1.390
2	1.4362	1.462	1.470	1.410
3	1.4381	1.438	1.370	1.390
4	1.4330	1.457	1.410	1.390
5	1.4334	1.445	1.460	1.400
6	1.4304	1.424	1.400	1.390
7	1.4351	1.456	1.440	1.390
8	1.4347	1.435	1.400	1.380
9	1.4343	1.427	1.350	1.380
10	1.4364	1.434	1.440	1.380
Average	1.4343	1.4438	1.4150	1.3900
SD	0.0023	0.0141	0.0381	0.0094
CoV(%)	0.16	0.98	2.69	0.68

Table 10.5 Copper laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	1.1382	1.162	1.170	1.130
2	1.1528	1.162	1.220	1.140
3	1.1462	1.157	1.150	1.150
4	1.1433	1.160	1.170	1.130
5	1.1334	1.132	1.190	1.150
6	1.1396	1.146	1.160	1.140
7	1.1272	1.150	1.160	1.130
8	1.1231	1.144	1.150	1.160
9	1.1342	1.146	1.130	1.160
10	1.1339	1.158	1.180	1.140
Average	1.1372	1.1517	1.1680	1.1430
SD	0.0088	0.0098	0.0249	0.0116
CoV(%)	0.78	0.85	2.13	1.01

Table 10.6 Cobalt laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	0.1430	0.1440	0.1400	0.1400
2	0.1462	0.1450	0.1400	0.1400
3	0.1436	0.1410	0.1400	0.1300
4	0.1438	0.1430	0.1400	0.1400

5	0.1415	0.1400	0.1400	0.1400
6	0.1414	0.1400	0.1300	0.1400
7	0.1431	0.1430	0.1400	0.1400
8	0.1444	0.1400	0.1400	0.1400
9	0.1445	0.1400	0.1300	0.1400
10	0.1423	0.1410	0.1400	0.1400
Average	0.1434	0.1417	0.1380	0.1390
SD	0.0015	0.0019	0.0042	0.0032
CoV(%)	1.02	1.33	3.06	2.28

Table 10.7 Manganese laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	31.600	32.063	31.5000	31.700
2	31.770	31.978	31.3000	31.800
3	31.620	31.823	32.6000	31.700
4	31.665	32.039	31.5000	31.700
5	31.680	31.714	31.5000	31.700
6	31.785	31.404	31.9000	31.600
7	31.745	31.962	32.6000	31.600
8	31.665	31.474	32.7000	31.700
9	31.815	31.428	32.0000	31.700
10	31.785	31.575	31.5000	31.600
Average	31.713	31.746	31.910	31.6800
SD	0.076	0.261	0.540	0.0632
CoV(%)	0.24	0.82	1.69	0.20

QA/QC was completed with a sample of CRM manufactured by the USGS, known as NOD-P-1, at all laboratories except for ALS, who used alternative CRMs. Previous analysis of the USGS-NOD-P-1 was completed at ALS for a separate analytical program, and these results are included in Table 10.8 showing CRM results for each of the laboratories. All values are in weight%.

Table 10.8 CRM results for each laboratory

Lab	Nickel (Ni)	Copper (Cu)	Cobalt (Co)	Manganese (Mn)
PAMCO	1.372	1.171	0.233	29.92
ALS	1.34	1.15	0.22	29.12
KPM	1.28	1.14	0.21	28.3
SGS	1.31	1.15	0.22	29.4

The results showed good alignment between the laboratories using varying analytical methodologies providing confidence in the results. It is the QP's opinion that analytical methods used for the metallurgical samples were suitable and provided reliable results.

10.3.2 Key findings of calcination at FLS

The nodules were successfully calcined by FLS in a 15 m long, 0.9 m diameter kiln under conditions consistent with the intended commercial operation. Table 10.9 summarizes the updates to the process design criteria arising from the calcining test work at FLS.

Table 10.9 Updates to process design criteria after pilot kiln test work

Parameter	Units	PEA Basis	FLS Pilot Kiln/Update	Comment
Nodule Angle of Repose	Deg.	N/A	42.5	Email from R. Penso, 24-Feb-21 10:24 AM
Degree of Nickel Reduction	%	20	20	FLS did not detect any Ni reduction, but given the degree of Fe reduction, it is expected. Therefore, keep PEA value
Degree of Cobalt Reduction	%	30	30	Not measured, keep PEA value
Degree of Copper Reduction	%	50	50	Not measured, leave at PEA value
Degree of Iron Reduction to Wüstite	%	85	100	None to metallic
Degree of Iron Reduction to Magnetite	%	15	N/A	
Degree of MnO_2 to MnO by Thermal Decomposition	%		80	Based on MnO_2 from 48.74% to avg 9.7% during oxidizing run
Degree of MnO_2 to MnO by Reduction	%		20	By difference. No detectable MnO_2 after reduction runs
LOI in Calcine	%	0.5	0.4	Average during oxidizing at 950°C
Dusting Rate of Nodules	%	5	5	Pilot was 2.1% dry basis, but this may be optimistic given the scale vs. commercial. FLS tumble test gave similar results to laterites, but fines screened out in both cases. FLS conclusion: "Given the lack of fines present in the nodule sample the overall dusting potential is lower than typical nickel laterite kiln operations". So, leave at 5%
Dust Nickel Enrichment Factor (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt	1.3x	1.0x	If anything, Ni in dust is depleted
Dust Iron Enrichment (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt	1.3x	1.0x	Fe in feed, sediment and baghouse dust all about the same. Also, Co, Cu about the same as in feed
Dust Potassium Enrichment (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt		5x	Na also said to be higher*
LOI in Dust	dry wt%	5	16	Same as feed**
Moisture in Dust	**wt%**	**5**	**3**	**2.91% measured**

Notes: *Na in feed = 1.77%, Na in dust = 2.6, i.e., possibly within assaying error.

**Unexpected since TGA tests show low temperature weight loss.

10.3.3 Piloting – Electric furnace smelting at XPS – Metallurgical summary

Table 10.10, Table 10.11, Table 10.12, and Table 10.13 compare the principal elements for the main stages of pyrometallurgical processing (calcination, smelting, sulfidation, and converting) between the piloting campaigns and the latest version of a process model developed for the project (PEA update, 2020). The process model was originally derived from a nickel laterite model, which was modified as understanding of the differences for the nodule system has developed over the course of the project. The results obtained in the piloting campaigns allowed for further refinement of process modelling for nodule processing.

Table 10.10 Pilot calcine blend assay vs. PEA update mass balance

Smelting	**% Ni**	**% Co**	**% Cu**	**% Mn**	**% Fe**	**% S**
Mass Balance Calcine	1.58	0.16	1.29	35.2	7.55	0.12
Pilot Calcine Blend	1.66	0.15	1.32	37.2	7.76	0.27

Table 10.11 compares smelting campaign metal tap major element assays to the values in the project process model. There is significant assay variation. On average, nickel and cobalt grades are high compared to the mass balance values—nickel, was high in calcine. Manganese was lower in the alloy than expected given the relatively high iron, which may provide some insight into the relationship between degree of reduction and the relative concentration of these elements reporting to the alloy. Sulfur is a deleterious element for ferronickel producers and has received considerable attention in process modelling. Clearly, the nodule process, with its different slag chemistry, does not appear to have this issue. By inspection of the %S columns in Table 10.11 and Table 10.12, it can be seen that sulfur deports much more to slag and much less to metal than is normally assumed for nickel laterite slags.

Table 10.11 Pilot metal assays vs. PEA update mass balance

Smelting	**% Ni**	**% Co**	**% Cu**	**% Mn**	**% Fe**	**% S**
Mass Balance Furnace Alloy	15.8	1.5	12.5	3.6	61.9	0.54
Pilot Average*	18.1	1.9	11.9	1.1	65.0	0.03
Campaign 1 (Tap 11)	15.6	1.5	10.3	1.4	67.5	0.03
Campaign 2 (Tap 8)	17.7	1.5	10.1	1.2	65.1	0.00
Campaign 2 (Tap 15)	18.6	2.4	12.3	0.8	63.3	0.05
Campaign 2 (left in furnace)	20.4	2.1	14.8	1.0	64.1	0.03

Note: *Simple average, not weighted

Table 10.12 compares the ranges for slag chemistry from the main slag taps for the two campaigns to the mass balance values. The mass balance values lie within the range achieved. Phosphorus can be controlled to the levels in the mass balance.

Table 10.12 Pilot smelting slag assays vs. PEA update mass balance

Smelting	**% Mn**	**% Fe**	**% Si**	**% P**	**% S**
Mass Balance Furnace Slag	40.7	1.8	10.9	0.06	0.05
Campaign 1	39.1 – 43.0	1.0 – 7.9	10.2 – 11.3	0.01 – 0.17	0.41 – 1.07
Campaign 2	40.1 – 44.1	0.8 – 4.8	9.9 – 11.2	0.02 – 0.23	0.34 – 0.49

In Table 10.13, the matte sample that was closest to the target intermediate matte (i.e. the nearly steady-state operating point of the sulfidation vessel in the commercial process) is compared to the mass balance composition. The target sulfidation operating point is 30% Fe and the closest sample to that was at 35.6% Fe. The table also compares the final matte obtained in the pilot campaign to the mass balance final matte. Pilot nickel levels seem significantly higher than projected whereas cobalt is lower. It should be borne in mind that the mass balance is based on the recycle of slag from the finishing vessel back to the sulfidation vessel to improve pay-metal recoveries, which was not possible for the pilot work. This explains the low value for cobalt, which has a much lower partition coefficient than nickel and copper at low levels of iron in matte. This highlights why it is important not to rely on the recoveries achieved in the once-thru test work, but instead to apply measured partition coefficients to the process model to estimate recoveries in the commercial plant. The recirculating loads will have little impact on these coefficients.

Table 10.13 Pilot matte assays vs. PEA update mass balance

Sulfidation, Converting	**% Ni**	**% Co**	**% Cu**	**% Mn**	**% Fe**	**% S**
Mass Balance Intermediate Matte	27.3	3.0	20.6	0.01	30.0	13.0
Pilot Closest (Matte 4)	28.5	2.4	18.4	0.04	35.6	13.6
Mass Balance Final Matte	40.9	3.4	30.5	0.01	5.0	20.0
Pilot Final Matte	45.8	2.8	30.5	0.00	9.9	16.4

Overall, it can be concluded that the pilot campaigns to process the calcine to matte for subsequent hydrometallurgical treatment largely achieved the expected metal and matte targets, albeit falling somewhat short on iron concentration target, while providing additional insights into the metallurgy of nodule processing.

10.3.4 Smelting: metallurgical results

Metallurgical control was generally good and covered a range of compositions and degrees of reduction. This is best illustrated by the amount of residual iron in slag, which ranged from just under 1% to nearly 5%, whereas the current mass balance for the project is targeted at 1.8% Fe. While the proposed operating point is within the band of the test work, the range experienced provides an opportunity to understand metallurgical trends as a function of iron grade in the slag.

10.3.4.1 Partition coefficients (PC) in smelting

Overall recoveries of elements to alloy as reported in the mass balances for the pilot work are not useful for predicting commercial recoveries due to:

- Poor accountability in some cases.
- As already noted, the pilot results encompass a range of conditions with respect to degree of reduction, and not just the target conditions for the commercial operation.
- The pilot trials did not include recycle streams which are used commercially to maximize pay metal recovery.

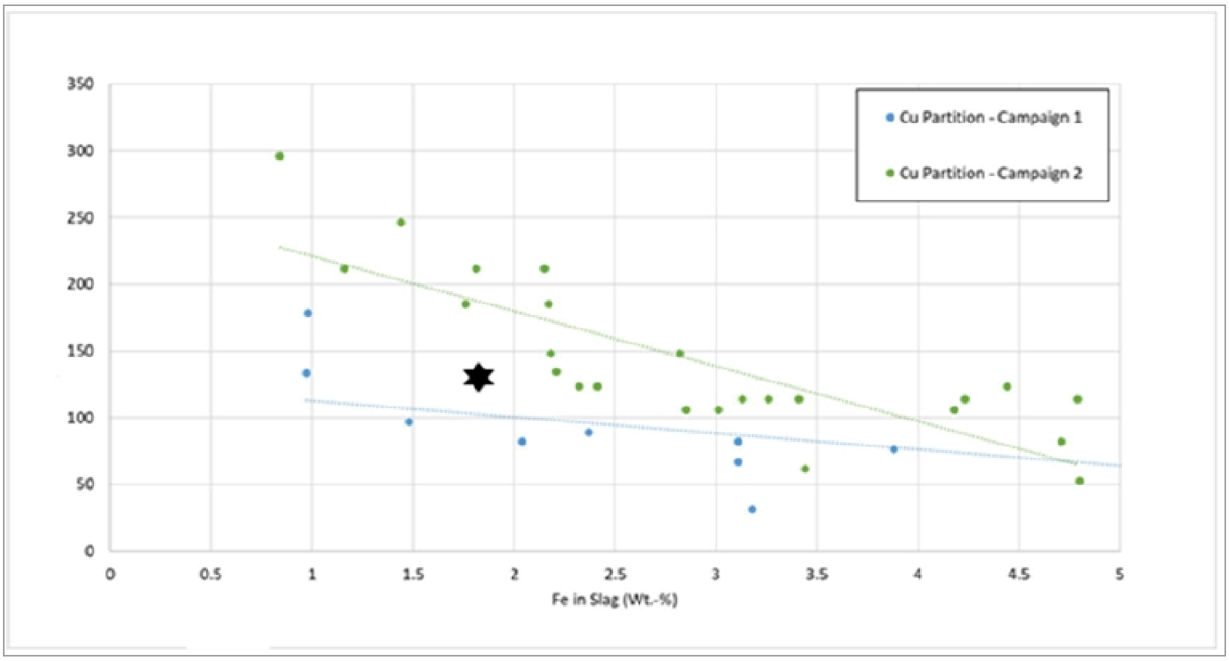
Instead, predictions of recovery can be made using partition coefficient information from the test work at the target degree of reduction. This is represented by the amount of iron reduced to the alloy or the iron content of the resultant slag, which is currently 1.8% Fe in the process model, but may be adjusted to 1.5% (see Section 10.3.4.2).

$$Partition\ Coefficient = \frac{wt\%\ X\ in\ Metal}{wt\%\ X\ in\ Slag}$$

Copper partition coefficients

Figure 10.2 shows the Cu partition coefficients (PCCu) reported for the two smelting campaigns as a function of iron grade in the slag. There are reasonably clear trends —particularly for Campaign 2— showing higher coefficients at lower iron, i.e., more reducing conditions. Also shown is the target point in the process model (PCCu = 130 at 1.8% Fe displayed as a ★). It lies near the middle of the pilot data at that given amount of iron in slag. There is a case to be made for the Campaign 2 data being better than for Campaign 1 due to better temperature control, which would yield PCCu = ~190 at 1.5% Fe, however it is recommended that it is left at the current more-conservative value.

Figure 10.2 Copper partition coefficients during smelting



Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients

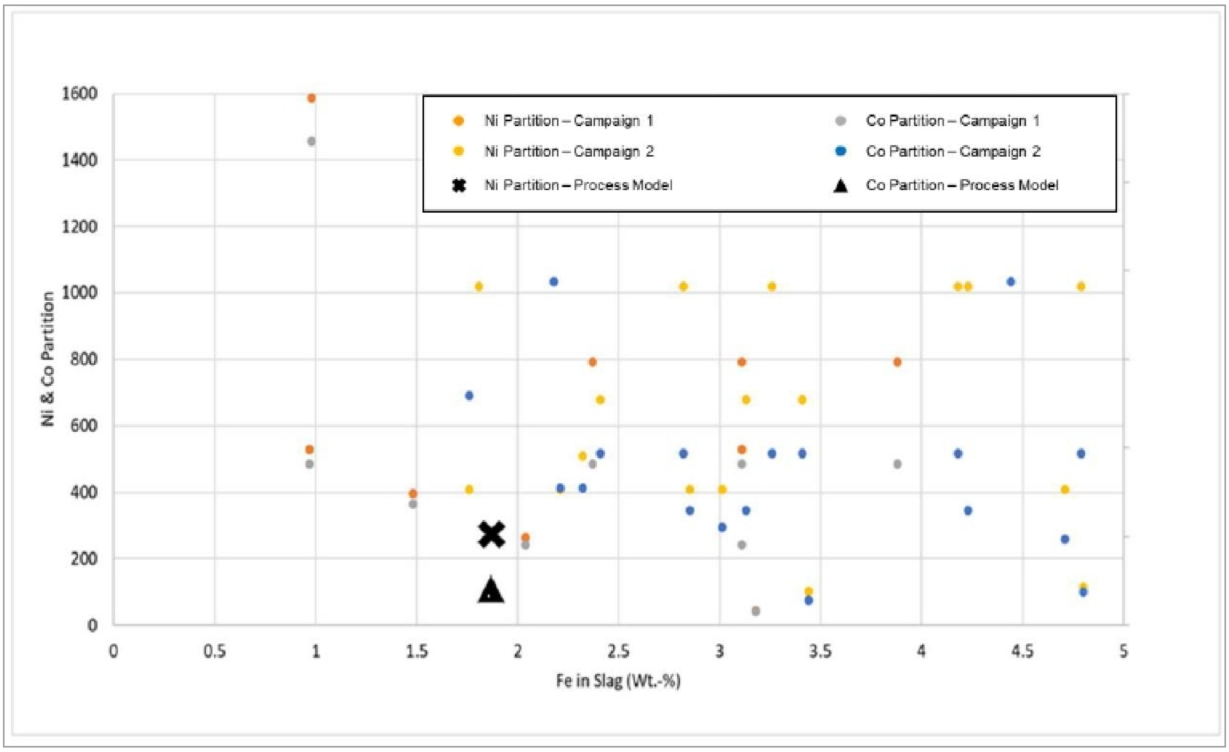
Figure 10.3 shows the partition coefficients for nickel and cobalt obtained during the smelting campaigns. There is a great deal of scatter and no clear trend with iron (degree of reduction). One major reason for the scatter is that the concentrations reported in slag are very low. As reported in the pilot mass balances (excluding outliers):

- Nickel ranges between 0.010 to 0.060.
- Cobalt between 0.001 to 0.007.

Thus, the partition coefficients are highly sensitive to slight variations due to assay uncertainties.

Current process model (1.8% Fe) values for nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting are 285 and 120 respectively and these are shown as X (nickel partition coefficient = 285) and Δ (cobalt partition coefficient = 120) in Figure 10.3. They are clearly at the lower end of the range calculated for the pilot plant operation. However, given the wide scatter and assay uncertainty of the pilot data, it is not proposed to change the process model values. It can be said, however, that the pilot values certainly don't indicate that the commercial values will be any lower than the current model values.

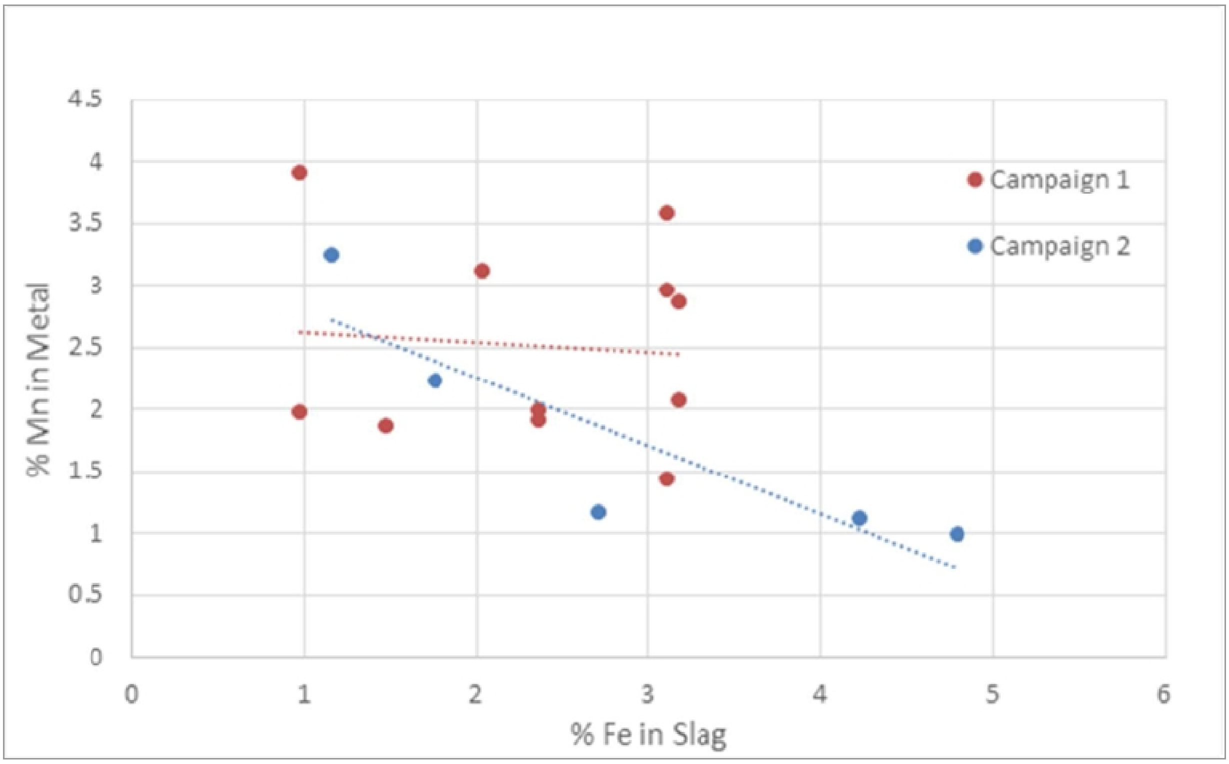
Figure 10.3 Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting



Manganese deportment

Figure 10.4 shows manganese in metal versus iron in slag. There is considerable scatter but there are no high levels of manganese in metal. The values are generally lower than what was achieved during Smelt Test 8 at KPM during the bench-scale testing (considered to be a benchmark), which is favourable considering any of the over-reduced smelt tests at KPM yielded manganese in metal levels of up to 50%. While Campaign 2 appears to show a trend to lower manganese at higher iron in slag, which would be expected, the same cannot be said of Campaign 1. The data support that, for an operating range of 1-2% Fe in slag, a value for manganese in metal of 2.5% manganese can be adopted in process modelling.

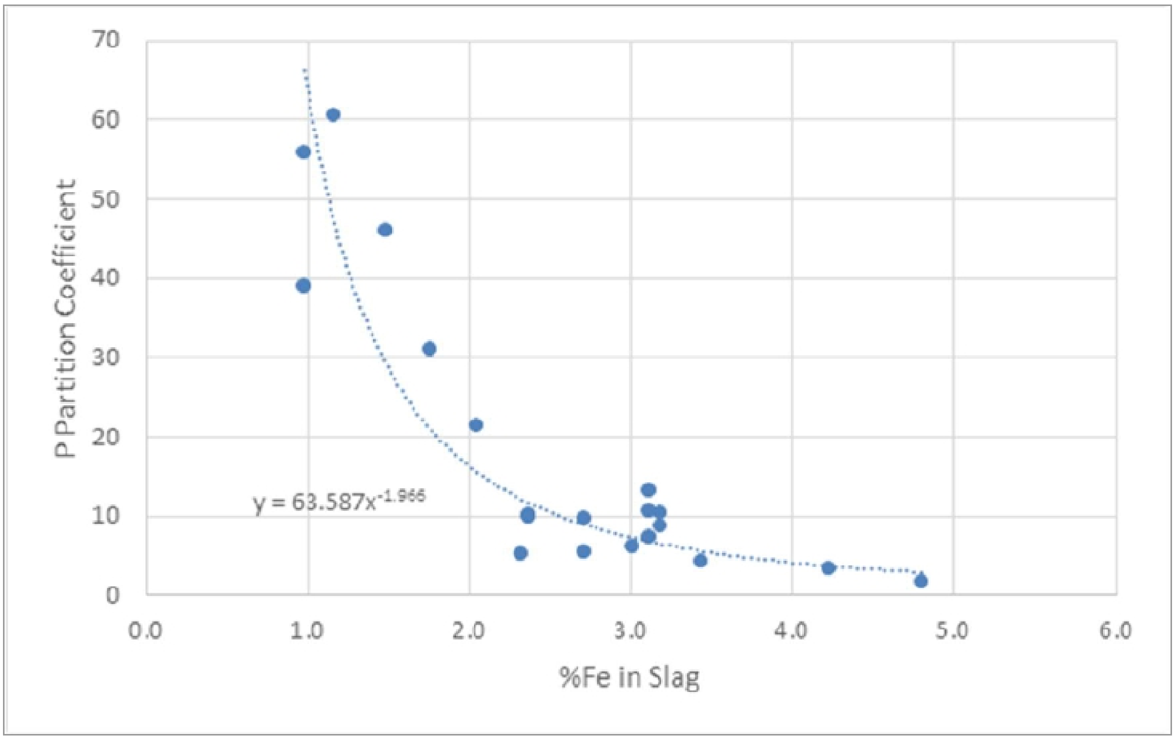
Figure 10.4 Manganese in metal vs. iron in slag



Phosphorus partition coefficient

Figure 10.5 shows phosphorus partition coefficients for both campaigns combined. The PEA model used a value of 25, with iron at 1.8%, which is broadly in keeping with the data from the pilot operation. Using the regression curve will give a phosphorus partition coefficient of approximately 30 at 1.5% Fe in slag.

Figure 10.5 Phosphorus partition coefficients



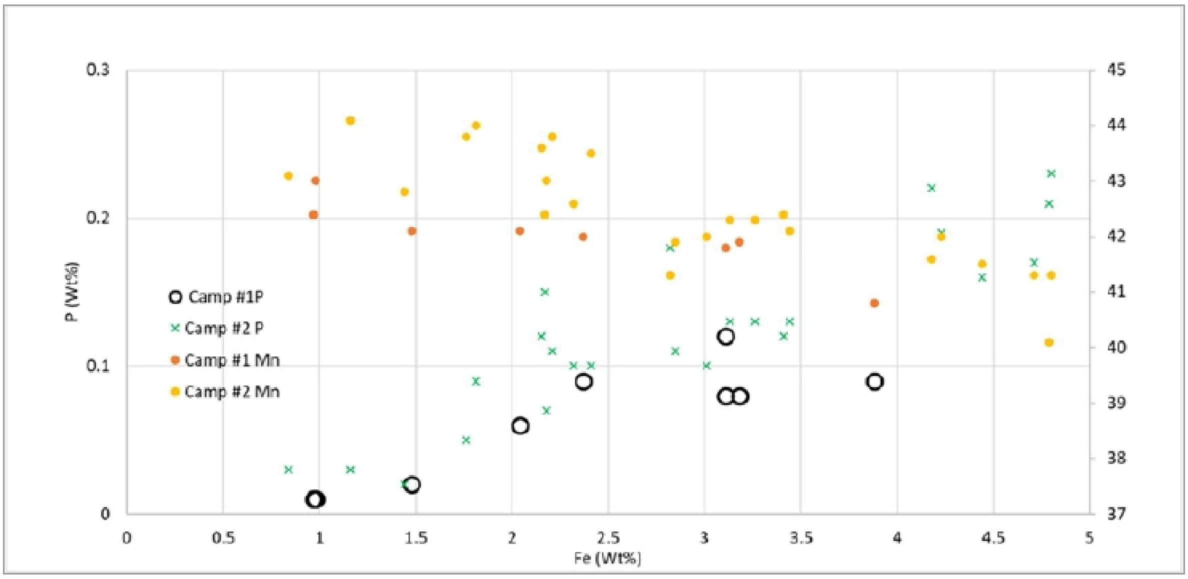
10.3.4.2 Slag chemistry

The slag produced during smelting is proposed to be sold as a feed to the silico-manganese industry. Desirable feeds are high in manganese and low in iron and phosphorus. A simplified guidance is:

- Mn >40% or MnO >50%,
- Mn/Fe ~25 or FeO ~2%,and
- Mn/P >670.

In Figure 10.6, it can be seen that for iron at or below 2% Fe, manganese in slag is about 43% Mn (59% MnO). At 1.5% Fe, both the Mn/Fe ratio and %FeO requirements are met. There is a clear trend for low phosphorus at low iron, and at 1.5% Fe, phosphorus in slag appears likely to be below 0.05% P, yielding Mn/P > 860. Iron at 1.5% Fe is quite close to the current process model value of 1.8% Fe, which was based on reducing 80% of the iron from the slag.

Figure 10.6 Manganese and phosphorus in slag versus iron in slag



10.3.4.3 Elemental distribution – partition coefficients in converting

In the commercial operation, the sulfidation vessel operates within a narrow range of chemistry near the target intermediate matte composition (currently 30% Fe). This matte composition is selected so as to produce a slag that has acceptable pay-metal losses and can be sold as aggregate or similar useful product. The matte is then taken to a finishing vessel where the iron is blown down to the target grade (currently 5% Fe). This produces a slag that has higher levels of pay-metals and needs to be recycled back to the sulfidation vessel to achieve acceptable overall recoveries. It was not possible to perform slag recycle in the piloting process and thus the overall recoveries achieved in pilot sulfidation and converting are not representative of the proposed commercial operation. Instead, the partition coefficients obtained during piloting can be considered for use in the process model—which does include slag recycle—to calculate commercial recoveries.

$$Partition\ Coefficient = \frac{wt\%\ X\ in\ Matte}{wt\%\ X\ in\ Converter\ Slag}$$

The following sub-sections show the partition coefficients reported for the pilot work together with small scale work performed with artificial mattes at XPS (XPS, 2020). Also shown, where available, are partition coefficients from two commercial smelters (Benchmark A and B) processing Ni-Cu-Co sulfide concentrates. (Benchmark A' information is the same operation as Benchmark A but is from a different source).

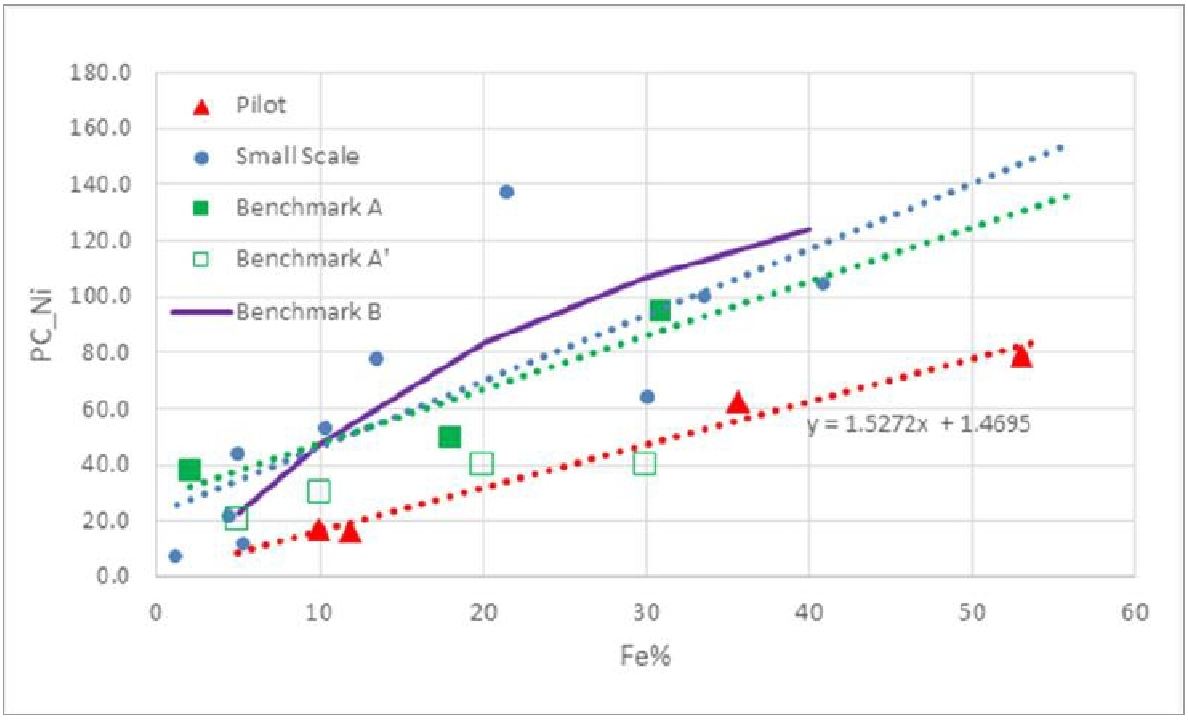
The availability of benchmark information for commercial converting operations means that there needs to be less reliance placed on the pilot results for nickel, copper and cobalt (unlike smelting, where there are no commercial benchmarks for this system). The pilot converting was perhaps the most challenging part of the piloting. Nevertheless, the partition coefficients obtained were reasonably in line with the benchmark values (perhaps to the low side). In general, it can be said that the proposed commercial converting operation should be able to obtain partition coefficients within the range of pilot, small-scale and benchmark values.

Given the importance of these coefficients to overall recoveries, the relevant samples were sent to another laboratory for re-assay. There were no significant differences.

Nickel partition coefficients

Figure 10.7 shows nickel partitions from test work and benchmark. The results from piloting are disappointingly low compared to the small-scale (artificial matte) results and two sets of benchmark numbers. They are, however, in agreement with the 'Benchmark A' information (no trendline was plotted for those data).

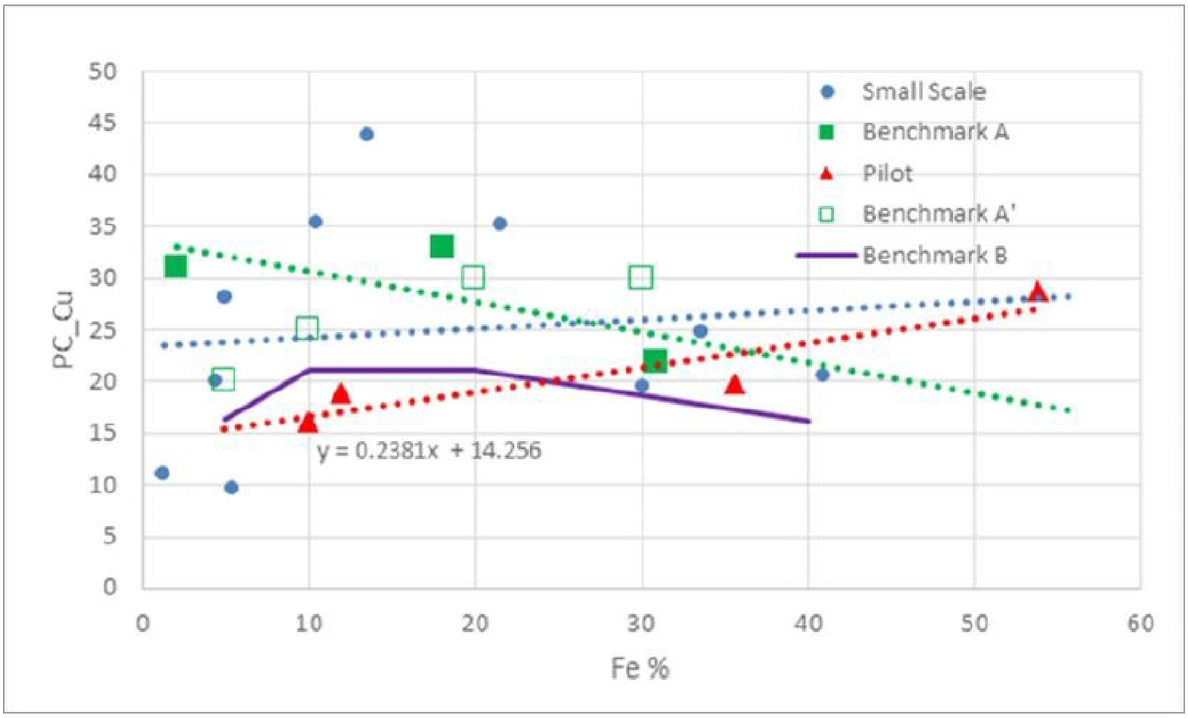
Figure 10.7 Nickel partition coefficients in converting



Copper partition coefficients

Results and benchmarks for copper are shown in Figure 10.8. In the range of interest, there are no obvious trends with %iron in matte. There is little to differentiate the different sets of data.

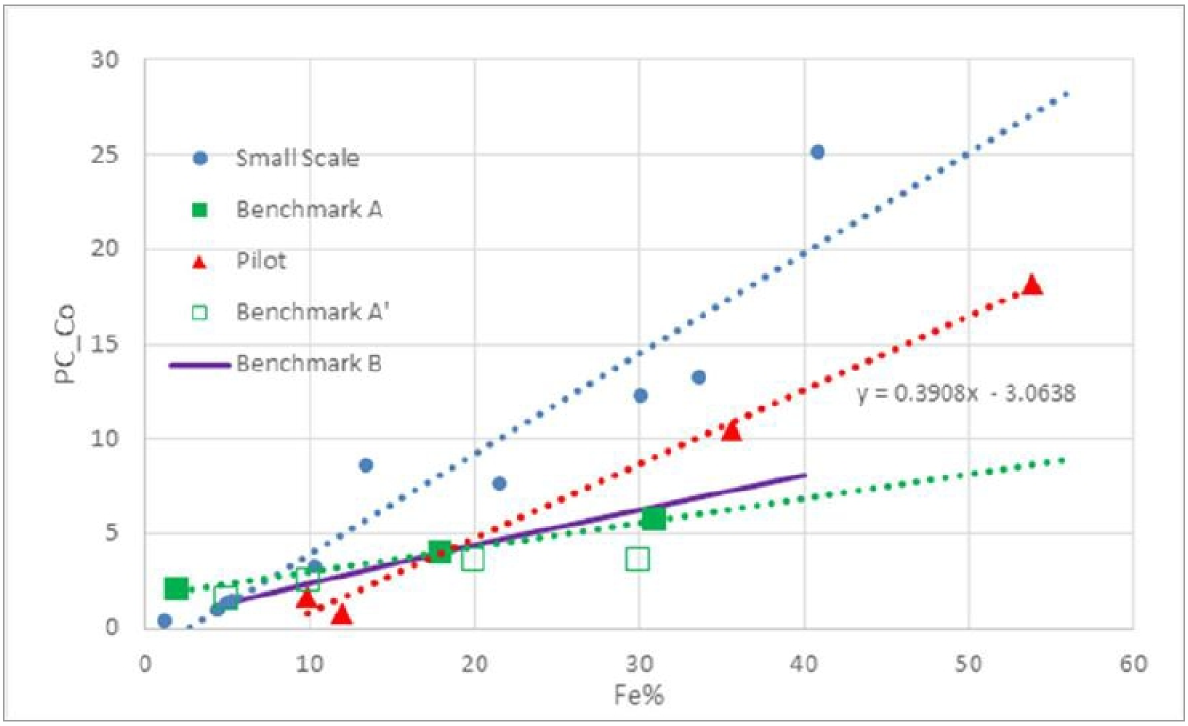
Figure 10.8 Copper partition coefficients in converting



Cobalt partition coefficients

Figure 10.9 shows partition information for cobalt. The pilot trend at the slag discard point (30% Fe) is within the range of benchmark and small-scale test work results.

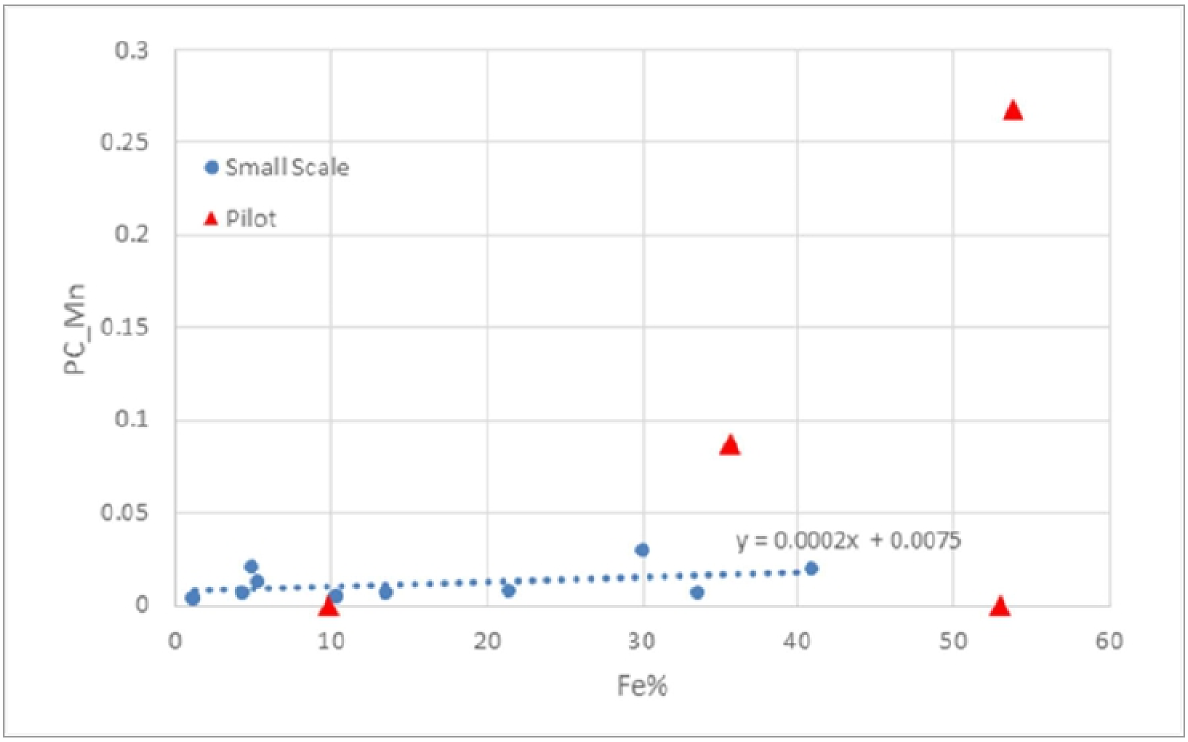
Figure 10.9 Cobalt partition coefficients in converting



Manganese partition coefficients

Manganese partition coefficients are shown in Figure 10.10. The pilot data are few and widely scattered. They do not provide any conclusive information. The current process model has simply adopted a fixed value for manganese in product matte, namely 0.01wt%. It is proposed that manganese deportment be changed to a partition coefficient basis using the small-scale correlation shown in Figure 10.10.

Figure 10.10 Manganese partition coefficients in converting



10.3.5 Demonstration scale trials at PAMCO

TMC and PAMCO recently completed a demonstration scale trial at PAMCO's existing RKEF facility in Hachinohe, Japan, using the 2000 t of nodules collected from NORI Area D. The nodules were calcined over six campaigns using Rotary Kiln #6, which has been designated by PAMCO for TMC use when commercial operations commence. The calcine was collected in storage bins and smelted over four campaigns in PAMCO's 4,000 kVA furnace. The furnace is located in PAMCO's recycling operation and has previously been used to process fly ash, though at the time of the trials it was not in operation.

Several calcining campaigns were required as the calcine had to be cooled prior to transfer to the smelting facility and the hot calcine storage capacity was limited. The time between campaigns was four to six weeks which allowed for the cooling and transfer of the calcine.

During the smelting campaigns, it was determined that better manganese silicate properties could be obtained by changing the iron in slag target down from 1.8 to 1.1. The reduction in iron drives the manganese to phosphorus ratio to be greater than 1000, which is very desirable for the market. The resultant manganese silicate that was produced under these conditions represents an even more attractive product composition relative to the original target. TMC and PAMCO are presently evaluating these results to finalize/revise the product specifications, with a goal of having a better manganese product available for sale when production begins. These results will inform the specification targets required to be met by PAMCO as outlined in the definitive agreement. The improvement to the target manganese silicate specification will also feed into a revision of TMC's marketing material and conversations with external parties around the sale of the product.

The smelting campaign also assessed refractory wear, and the results show that greater lining erosion was experienced in comparison to baseline laterite operations. Furnace upgrade modifications will be required for long term vessel integrity, workplace safety and equipment reliability. These furnace upgrades will represent the main capital scope required in the tolling arrangement within the definitive agreement, amongst other relatively minor modifications and associated capital that will be required.

The campaigns were able to produce demonstration quantities of on target alloy and manganese silicate. These materials are planned for use in potential downstream product development, as well as for product samples for marketing and demonstration purposes.

The campaigns also proved that the offgas cleaning equipment works for nodule feed as is, and all emissions were compliant with relevant regulations. Overall, it was demonstrated that all major process parameters were all in line with expectations, and the operator has confirmed that stable operations producing target products is achievable commercially.

10.3.6 Hydrometallurgical refinery bench scale testing

Following the generation of matte at XPS, a bench-scale hydrometallurgical refining program was conducted by TMC at the SGS Canada testing facility in Lakefield, Ontario. The program culminated in generation of nickel and cobalt sulfate crystals, which represent final products that TMC USA intends to produce out of the US-based refinery from Year 6 onward.

10.3.6.1 Two-stage leaching

Bench-scale leach tests demonstrated that high levels of nickel and cobalt leaching
(75% Ni, 63% Co) from the matte were possible in the atmospheric leach stage provided the matte was exposed to sufficient oxidizing conditions. While initial testing achieved desired nickel and cobalt performance, the resulting leach liquors contained excessively high amounts of copper for the two-stage leach approach. Through a process development program, various test parameters were evaluated to assess their impact on reducing copper levels in the leach liquors. Variations in oxidization time, overall reaction time, and acid addition were all considered, and it was determined that an atmospheric leach with an acid addition of 498 kg/t and 48-h overall retention time was able to achieve 75% nickel extraction while limiting copper levels in the PLS to just 0.6 g/L. The optimized atmospheric leach was operated under oxidizing conditions for the initial 6 h with the reactor operated under slight pressure to improve the oxygen contact time in the lab scale reactor and then without atmosphere control for the remainder of the test.

The second stage of leaching is a pressure oxidation (POX) performed on the Atmospheric Leach (AL) residue, and the results from this program indicated that at 180 °C and 600 kPa oxygen overpressure, 98% of the nickel was leached from the AL residue. This resulted in overall nickel leaching of 99.5% while also leaching 97% of the copper. Key parameters and results of the optimized AL and POX conditions are listed in Table 10.14. Assays of notable components for both liquors and residues from the atmospheric leach and POX are shown in Table 10.14.

Table 10.14 Optimum leach parameters and extractions

Leach	Temp (°C)	Time (hr)	Oxygen over-pressure (kPa)	Stage Extractions (%)			
				Ni	Cu	Co	Fe
AL	95	48	70	75	-15	56	-17
POX	180	2	600	98	97	98	-1

Table 10.15 Optimum leach assays

Leach	Liquor Assays (g/L)					Residue (%)			
	Ni	Cu	Co	Fe	H_2SO_4	Ni	Cu	Co	Fe
AL	84.1	0.59	4.72	0.003	0	15.5	52.7	1.64	3.60
POX	16.6	50.3	1.62	0.19	14	0.51	5.28	0.11	37.9

10.3.6.2 Cobalt refining

The first stage of the processing for the PLS was a pH adjustment stage, where the pH of the PLS was increased to 4.9 to remove additional copper and any trace iron remaining. Lab-scale cobalt solvent extraction (CoSX) testing was conducted using a solvent mixture of 10% Cyanex 272 in Exxsol D80 at an organic to aqueous phase ratio (O/A) of 1/1, a contact temperature of 40 °C, and an equilibrium contact pH of 5.0 via the addition of ammonium hydroxide solution. Process development resulted in selection of a 10 g/L cobalt as cobalt sulfate solution as the aqueous feed to the CoSX scrubbing tests in which magnesium and trace levels of co-loaded nickel were fully removed from the loaded organic phase. Sulfuric acid was used to strip the organic phase. Assays for the feed (pH adjusted AL PLS) and the resultant strip liquor are summarized in Table 10.16.

Table 10.16 Assays of input and output streams from the CoSX

Stream	Ni (g/L)	Cu (g/L)	Co (g/L)	Mn (g/L)	Mg (g/L)
CoSX Feed Liquor	84.3	0.55	5.10	0.10	0.605
CoSX Strip Liquor	< 0.1	4.80	79.4	2.00	0.044

Process development testing has demonstrated that copper ion exchange (CuIX) using Lewatit® MDS TP 208 is able to fully extract the copper from the CoSX strip liquor. Multiple resins were tested for the removal of manganese from the cobalt strip liquor without success, but oxidation of manganese from the soluble Mn^{2+} state to the nonsoluble Mn^{4+} has been demonstrated to be successful. In initial laboratory tests, this is achieved using Caro's acid (H_2SO_5, made by combing sulfuric acid and hydrogen peroxide). The cobalt refining work culminated in the generation of cobalt sulfate crystals. TMC sourced an external third-party specification for cobalt sulfate, and compared them with analysis of the lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals produced as SGS, presented in Table 10.17.

Table 10.17 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals with an external third-party specification

	TMC Result	Comparative Specification
Co (wt%)	22.1	> 20.5
Cu (ppm)	< 5	< 5
Ca (ppm)	< 100	< 50
Fe (ppm)	< 100	< 10
Mg (ppm)	82	< 100
Na (ppm)	< 100	< 300

10.3.6.3 Nickel refining

Nickel solvent extraction (NiSX) testing was conducted on samples of CoSX raffinate produced during CoSX testing, identifying 40% Versatic 10 in Exxsol D80 as the desired solvent mixture for the loading of nickel. Optimum contact pH was 6.35, and contact temperature was 50°C. Trace levels of cobalt, magnesium, and manganese were scrubbed using a 15 g/L nickel as nickel sulfate solution. The scrubbed organic was stripped with sulfuric acid to produce a strip liquor that assayed at 117 g/L nickel. The strip liquor was further concentrated via evaporation to directly produce nickel sulfate crystals with a calculated purity of 99.996% (total impurity content of 40 g/t). As with cobalt sulfate, TMC sourced some external third-party specifications and compared them with the analyses of the crystals generated at SGS, presented in Table 10.18.

Table 10.18 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated nickel sulfate crystals with two external third-party specifications

	TMC Result	Comparitive Specification 1	Comparative Specification 2
Ni (wt%)	>= 22.0	>= 22.0	>= 22.0
Cu (ppm)	< 1	<= 5	<= 5
Ca (ppm)	< 20	<= 20	<= 50
Fe (ppm)	< 5	<= 10	<= 10
Mg (ppm)	2.3	<= 20	<= 50
Na (ppm)	< 20	<= 500	<= 200

10.4 Processing factors or deleterious elements that may impact extraction

Iron in final matte

The current process model has a final matte iron composition of 5% iron. The target iron in matte is based on limiting the amount of iron going into the downstream hydrometallurgical refinery (the lower the iron the better) while maintaining reasonable recoveries of pay metals.

Potential economic exploitation of the matte could be affected if the iron content is too high. The eventual customer looking to further refine the matte into individual pay metals components will have issues processing with high iron contents.

Manganese silicate

The manganese silicate product is a key contributor to the overall economic case for the project. With nodules containing almost 30% manganese, the silicate will represent approximately 90% of the product generated from the flowsheet by volume. The intended market for the silicate is as a feed for silico-manganese production, which is a key additive in steel manufacturing. Market analyses have shown that key indicators for a high value product in this area are based on achieving the following targets for manganese silicate as identified in Table 10.19.

Table 10.19 Target specifications for manganese silicate

Component	Target Specification (wt%)
Mn	> 40
Fe	1 – 2
Mn / P	> 670

These targets are based on a combination of high grade of manganese relative to other sources, as well as limiting impurities like iron and phosphorus. During the piloting of TMC's flowsheet, 25 t of manganese silicate was generated, most of which met the target parameters. The material from the most representative tap (Campaign 2, Tap 4) was then used to perform silico-manganese generation testing at a laboratory in Trondheim, Norway. Results from this program identified at both lab and kilogram scale that silico-manganese can be generated using TMC's manganese silicate as the sole source of manganese. Producing manganese silicate that meets the targets as outlined in the table above and the success of the program in Norway provided confidence in TMC's strategy to sell the manganese silicate for use silico-manganese alloy production.

10.5 Summary and QP's opinion

TMC has undertaken a metallurgical development process that has included extensive review of relevant technical information in the literature, appropriately scoped and detailed bench-scale and pilot-scale testwork that demonstrated the fundamentals of the process and executed appropriate process engineering to support the project economic analysis. In addition, the scope of the project is to employ existing assets presently operated to produce ferronickel from nickel laterite ore. The nodule feed process is analogous to nickel laterite operations in terms of equipment, consumables, estimated flowrates, temperatures, and other conditions. The estimated data employed compare reasonably with commercial benchmarks.

It is the QP's opinion that the data are adequate to demonstrate that existing RKEF assets are suitable for smelting polymetallic nodules into saleable products with proven markets that meet potential customer quality requirements. The QP also endorses the fact that preliminary bench scale testing has shown that generation of final nickel and cobalt products suitable for use in battery applications is possible using intermediates derived exclusively from the pyrometallurgical processing of nodules.

11 Mineral Resource estimates for NORI Area D

The Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D was updated using sample data collected in 2022 and 2023.

11.1 Software

The R software for statistical computing (R Core Team 2018), R version 4.3.2 (2023-10-31) – "Eye Holes"), was used for preparing the sample data, statistical plots, generating the experimental variograms and performing spatial estimation.

11.2 Sample data

11.2.1 TOML sample data

TOML Area F is adjacent to the western border of NORI Area D. In 2020, NORI acquired the data from this area, including 26 nodule samples (1 historic sample and 25 samples collected by Nautilus Minerals Inc.). The TOML data includes measurements for abundance (wet kg/m^2) and assays for manganese (%), nickel (%), copper (%) and cobalt (%). All assays were converted from oxides to elemental values. The TOML data did not include moisture content, so AMC assumed an average moisture content of 26.63%, based on the average moisture content from the campaign C3 and campaign C6 box core samples. AMC included the TOML data for estimating the NORI Area D Mineral Resource because it provides more control of abundance and grade estimates along the western margin of NORI Area D. Summary statistics for the TOML Area F samples are presented in Table 11.1.

Table 11.1 Summary statistics of TOML Area F nodule assays

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min	Max	Range	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	26	0	1.19	29.13	27.94	17.97	18.07	45.36	0.38
Moisture (%)	0	0	26.63	26.63	0	26.63	26.63	0	0
Abundance (dry kg/m^2)	26	0	0.87	21.37	13.18	13.18	13.26	24.42	0.38
Nickel (%)	26	0	1.05	1.51	0.46	1.41	1.42	0.01	0.06
Copper (%)	26	0	1.10	1.35	0.25	1.24	1.23	0.01	0.06
Cobalt (%)	26	0	0.09	0.17	0.08	0.13	0.13	0.00	0.14
Manganese (%)	26	0	30.11	33.62	3.51	32.18	32.35	0.81	0.03
Silicon (%)	26	0	4.56	6.57	2.01	5.23	5.09	0.22	0.09
Iron (%)	26	0	4.11	7.27	3.16	6.12	6.10	0.37	0.10
Phosphorus (%)	26	0	0.12	0.17	0.05	0.05	0.15	0.00	0.07

11.2.1.1 NORI 2018 sample data

NORI campaign C3, in 2018, focused on collecting close spaced (7 km by 7 km spacing) box core samples supplemented by seafloor photography in an area selected for the Test Mining.

Forty-five sites were sampled with a box core. The assay data set includes 45 primary box core samples (see Table 11.2) and a further 87 duplicates, standards, blanks and other samples. The data includes a suite of assays which include manganese, copper, nickel, cobalt, silicon, iron and phosphorus. The primary sample assays were used for resource estimation. The duplicate sample data were included in the variography because they provide information about the nugget variance.

During the NORI 2018 campaign, seafloor photographs were captured along with the box core sampling. The photographs were used to estimate nodule abundance from the relationships between nodule long-axis length, the percentage of the photo covered by identified nodules, and nodule weight. Fourteen (14) seafloor photographs in the Measured Mineral Resource boundary were used to estimate nodule abundance.

Table 11.2 Summary statistics of the 2018 NORI Area D primary assay data

	Number	Missing	Min	Max	Range	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	45	1	6.50	29.90	23.40	18.00	18.10	23.694	0.27
Moisture (%)	45	0	14.71	26.63	11.92	20.94	19.90	15.229	0.19
Abundance (dry kg/m^2)	45	0	0.01	24.38	24.38	14.00	14.15	18.342	0.31
Nickel (%)	45	0	1.18	1.45	0.27	1.37	1.39	0.004	0.05
Copper (%)	45	0	0.97	1.34	0.38	1.15	1.14	0.005	0.06
Cobalt (%)	45	0	0.09	0.15	0.05	0.13	0.13	0.000	0.10
Manganese (%)	45	0	26.44	34.33	7.88	31.28	31.69	2.557	0.05
Silicon (%)	45	0	4.81	8.06	3.25	5.53	5.34	0.420	0.12
Iron (%)	45	0	4.27	8.21	3.94	6.66	6.86	0.696	0.13
Phosphorus (%)	45	0	0.12	0.25	0.13	0.16	0.15	0.001	0.15

11.2.1.2 NORI 2019 sample data

NORI Campaigns 6A and 6B, in 2019, focused on upgrading the NORI Area D Inferred Mineral Resource to Indicated Mineral Resource by collecting close spaced (10 km by 10 km spacing) box core samples.

Box core sampling was attempted at a total of 106 sites in the NORI Area D contract area during Campaign 6A and 101 sites during Campaign 6B. Disturbed samples, considered to be unreliable, were omitted from the sample sequence. Summary statistics for the remaining 207 primary box core samples are presented in Table 11.3.

The data includes a suite of assays which include manganese, copper, nickel, cobalt, silicon, iron, and phosphorus.

Table 11.3 Summary statistics of the 2019 NORI Area D primary assay data

	Number	Missing	Min	Max	Range	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	207	0	0.08	32.99	32.92	17.55	17.13	28.98	0.31
Moisture (%)	207	0	18.40	34.50	16.10	28.10	28.50	5.445	0.08
Abundance (dry kg/m^2)	207	4	2.00	23.13	21.13	12.88	12.39	12.621	0.28
Nickel (%)	207	4	0.91	1.49	0.57	1.38	1.40	0.006	0.06
Copper (%)	207	4	0.77	1.41	0.65	1.15	1.14	0.007	0.07
Cobalt (%)	207	4	0.09	0.45	0.36	0.14	0.13	0.001	0.21
Manganese (%)	207	4	24.23	34.46	10.24	30.95	31.19	2.543	0.05
Silicon (%)	207	4	4.74	8.97	4.23	5.61	5.39	0.472	0.12
Iron (%)	207	4	3.81	11.16	7.35	6.73	6.81	0.704	0.13
Phosphorus (%)	207	4	0.11	0.51	0.40	0.16	0.15	0.002	0.26

11.2.1.3 NORI 2022 sample data

NORI Campaign 7A, in 2022, was designed to investigate the test mining area before disturbance by the test activities. The box cores were not sited on a regular grid.

Table 11.4 Summary statistics of the 2022 NORI Area D primary assay data

	Number	Missing	Min	Max	Range	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	20	0	12.57	27.86	15.29	17.60	17.37	12.92	0.20
Moisture (%)	20	0	27.00	28.80	1.80	27.70	27.70	0.21	0.02
Abundance (dry kg/m^2)	20	0	9.14	19.84	10.70	12.72	12.58	6.48	0.20
Nickel (%)	20	0	1.26	1.46	0.20	1.42	1.43	0.00	0.03
Copper (%)	20	0	1.09	1.17	0.09	1.13	1.13	0.00	0.02
Cobalt (%)	20	0	0.11	0.15	0.04	0.14	0.13	0.00	0.07
Manganese (%)	20	0	29.65	32.34	2.70	30.60	30.60	0.33	0.02
Silicon (%)	20	0	4.99	5.46	0.47	5.21	5.19	0.02	0.03
Iron (%)	20	0	5.69	7.39	1.70	6.92	7.08	0.22	0.07
Phosphorus (%)	20	0	0.11	0.16	0.04	0.15	0.15	0.00	0.07

11.2.1.4 NORI 2023 sample data

NORI Campaign 8a was focused on collecting benthic biological data. During this campaign the opportunity was taken to collect box cores to provide additional resource information in areas which had not been directly impacted by the collector test. The box cores were not sited on a regular grid.

Table 11.5 Summary statistics of the 2023 NORI Area D primary assay data

	Number	Missing	Min	Max	Range	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	6	0	9.19	21.45	12.26	17.23	17.93	18.75	0.25
Moisture (%)	6	0	27.80	28.70	0.90	28.30	28.20	0.11	0.01
Abundance (dry kg/m^2)	6	0	6.64	15.38	8.75	12.35	12.85	9.58	0.25
Nickel (%)	6	0	1.39	1.47	0.08	1.44	1.45	0.00	0.02
Copper (%)	6	0	1.13	1.25	0.12	1.18	1.17	0.00	0.04

Cobalt (%)	6	0	0.11	0.14	0.03	0.13	0.13	0.00	0.10
Manganese (%)	6	0	30.1	32.09	1.98	31.31	31.57	0.67	0.03
Silicon (%)	6	0	4.83	5.29	0.46	5.13	5.19	0.03	0.03
Iron (%)	6	0	5.75	7.19	1.44	6.53	6.51	0.36	0.09
Phosphorus (%)	6	0	0.14	0.31	0.17	0.21	0.18	0.01	0.35

11.2.1.5 Representativeness of sampling

Comparison of the seafloor photographs at the box core sites and the observed distribution of nodules in the box cores indicated that the box core samples were largely undisturbed and representative of the sampled locations.

Continuity of grades and abundance between sample points can be reasonably assumed for the following reasons:

- Each sampling campaign has confirmed the preceding assessments of continuity of grade and nodule abundance.
- Statistics of the nodule samples within the blocks of the CCZ show a very low coefficient of variation, which indicates a low risk in estimating and interpolating grades.
- Variography of the samples within the NORI Area D shows reasonable spatial continuity (Section 11.7.6), with ranges greater than the average sample spacing. Abundance has a more erratic variogram with shorter ranges.
- The continental scale of the deposit and mode of formation leads to the expectation of low variability.

The sample density and spacing within the NORI Area D are sufficient to demonstrate continuity of nickel, copper, cobalt, and manganese grades. The reprocessed backscatter data and the low-level seafloor photography from the 2018 campaign indicate strong continuity of nodule abundance across NORI Area D.

11.3 Backscatter

Backscatter data was collected during 2012 and reprocessed in 2017. The data was reprocessed at a 30 m by 30 m resolution.

11.4 Bathymetry

Bathymetry data was collected during 2012 and reprocessed in 2020. The data was reprocessed at a 60 m by 60 m resolution. Additional layers representing slope angle and aspect, in degrees, were calculated from the bathymetry.

11.5 Geological domains

Geological interpretation and definition of geological and geomorphological domains were completed using the bathymetry and backscatter data sets. Figure 11.1 shows the location of the interpreted domains. Figure 11.2 graphically shows the proportions of the various domains.

NORI Area D is dominated by the abyssal plains domain which covers 68.6% of the area. The remainder of the area is generally elevated relative to the plains and is subdivided into seven domains, based on slope angle, and the nature of the seafloor, indicated by analysis of box core land-out images, AUV camera data and AUV sub-bottom profiler.

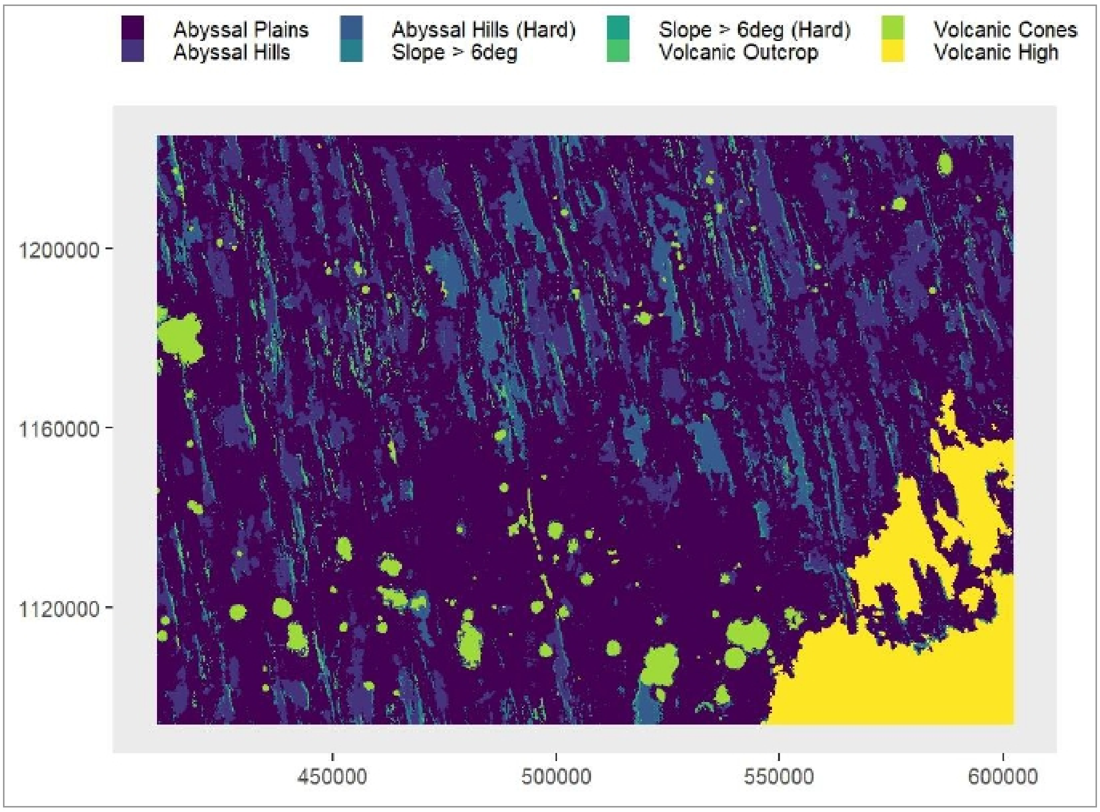
Analysis showed a good correlation between slopes >6° and the presence of hardground where there were failed box core recoveries (21 sites). Areas with slopes >6°, which cover 6% of NORI Area D, were assumed to be too steep for nodule collection and were excluded from the Mineral Resource estimate.

Volcanic outcrop occurs commonly along and parallel to the abyssal hills, and along the margins between the abyssal hill and abyssal plain domains.

There is also a large area of interpreted volcanic rocks in the southeast part of NORI Area D which is interpreted as a relic volcanic intersection high, which also includes a relic transform parallel trough. Both are volcanic related features related to the Clipperton transform zone. The volcanic high is interpreted to have formed when the Clipperton transform fault was active, at a time when the seafloor was situated at the East Pacific Rise mid-ocean ridge. This is supported by comparison of backscatter texture, outcropping structural fabric within this domain and the associated bathymetric geomorphology.

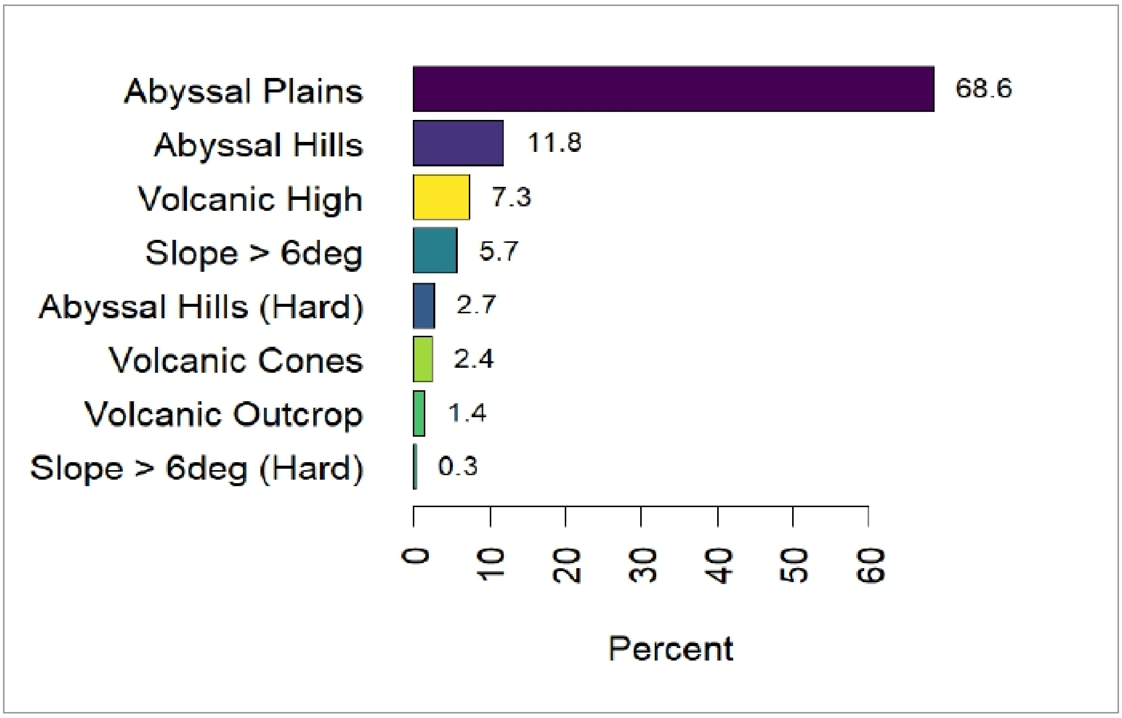
Volcanic cones are found mostly along the southern margin of NORI Area D, in a line running roughly east-west. The volcanic domains are interpreted to be rugged and to carry few nodules. They were excluded from the Mineral Resource estimate.

Figure 11.1 Map of geological domains in NORI Area D



Source: AMC

Figure 11.2 Proportions of geological domains in NORI Area D

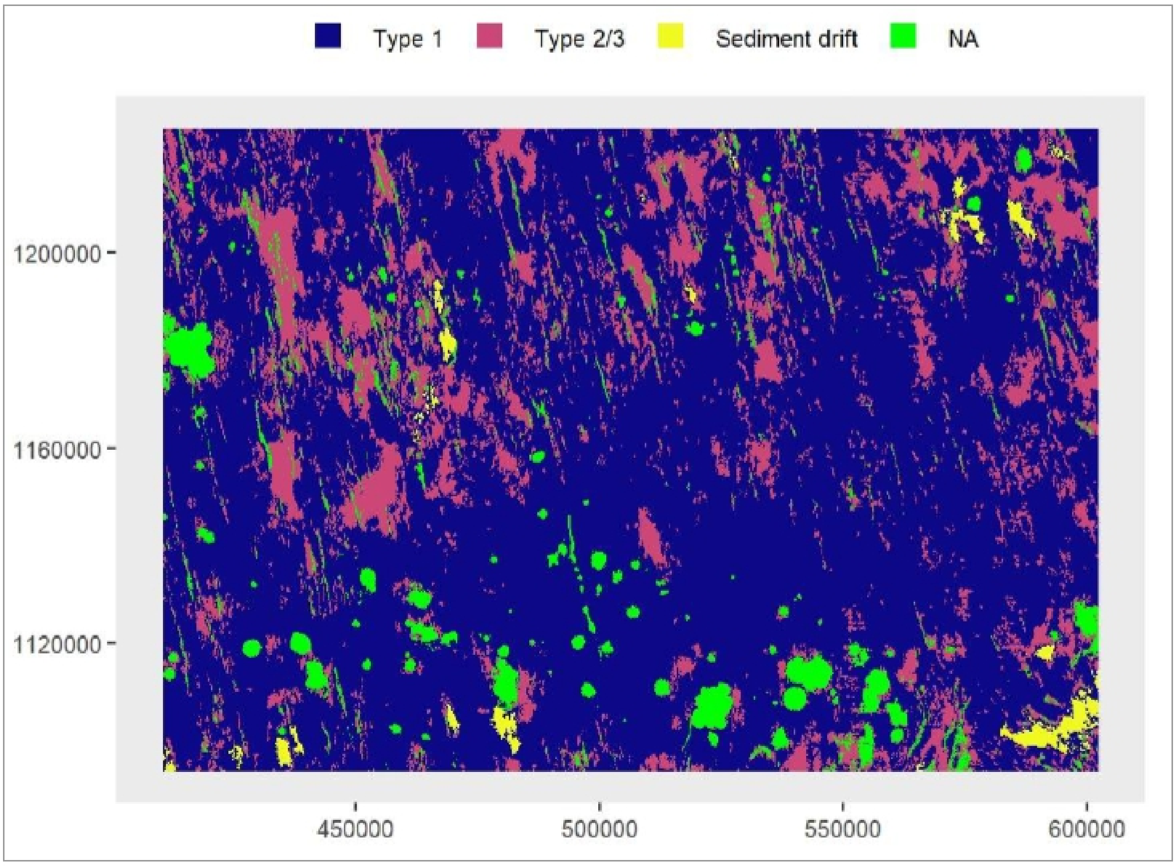


Source: AMC

11.6 Nodule type and sediment drift

Nodule type (Type 1 and Type 2/3) areas and areas covered by sediment drift were interpreted from the backscatter data and the box core land out videos and box core logging. The distribution of nodule types is shown in Figure 11.3. The areas marked as "NA" are volcanic areas where the presence of nodules is not confirmed.

Figure 11.3 Map of nodule type domains in NORI Area D



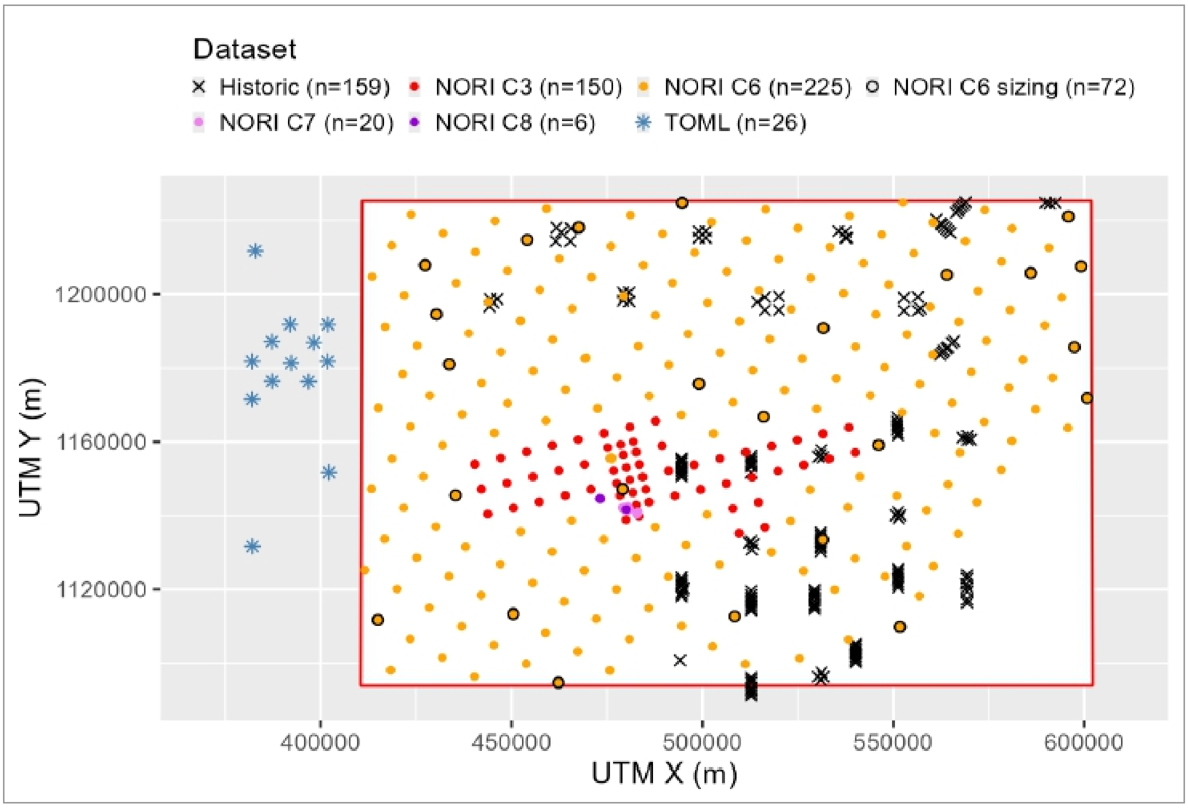
Source: AMC

The larger Type 2 and 3 nodules cover approximately 18% of NORI Area D. The smaller Type 1 nodules are the most common nodule type, covering approximately 81% of the NORI Area D Mineral Resource. The sediment drift domain, a soft sediment ooze with low backscatter, is rare within NORI Area D (1% coverage). A large proportion of the sediment drift occurs in the volcanic high domain and therefore the impact of the sediment drift domain on the Mineral Resource estimate is considered to be negligible. The areas marked as “NA” in Figure 11.3 are volcanic areas (mainly volcanic cones) where the presence of nodules is not confirmed.

11.7 Data processing

For estimation of Mineral Resources in the NORI Area D, the integrated NORI Area Data was filtered to only include NORI Area D and TOML Area F samples (see Figure 11.4).

Figure 11.4 Map of Location of Data Points and the NORI Area D Boundary



Source: AMC

Further data preparation of the nodule sample data included:

- Exclusion of historic data lacking information about moisture content.
- Calculation of average values for duplicate pairs of box core samples.
- Imputation any missing values for silicon, iron and phosphorus using standard linear regression calculated using the remaining non-missing variables.
- Assignation of geological and nodule type domains.
- Application of projection pursuit multivariate transform to the assays of manganese, copper, nickel, cobalt, silicon, iron and phosphorus.
- Application of normal scores transform to abundance and moisture.

These preparation steps are discussed below. The backscatter, slope angle, slope aspect (slope dip direction), and geological domain features were extracted from the GIS grid data at the nodule sample locations. This data was combined with the nodule sample data for analysis.

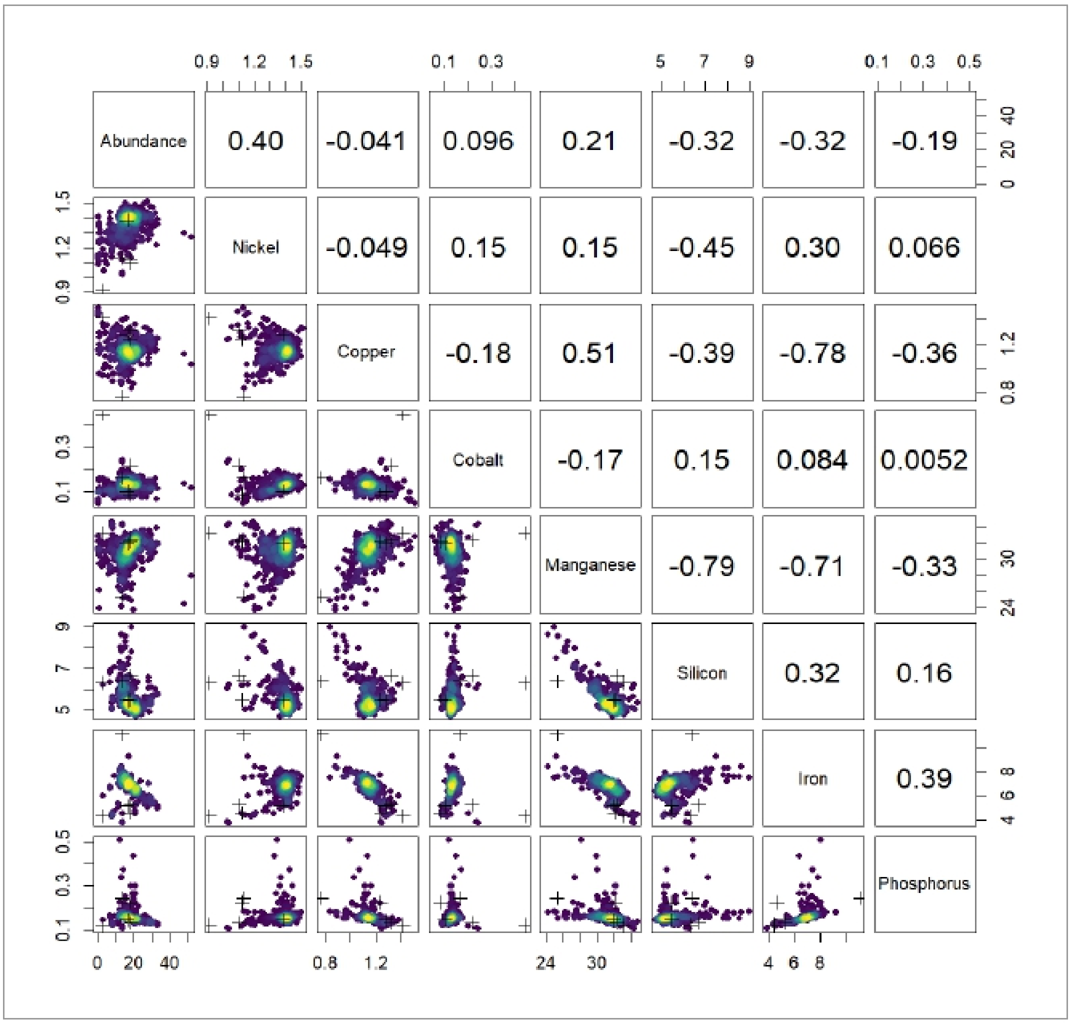
11.7.1 Exploratory data analysis

Figure 11.5 presents a matrix of scatter plots of combinations of elements. Outliers (extreme values) detected using the Local Outlier Factor algorithm are highlighted (black crosses). All identified outliers are historic nodule samples and were not used in the 2025 estimate.

Figure 11.5 also reveals that nickel is moderately positively correlated with abundance and cobalt, while manganese is moderately positively correlated with copper and moderately negatively correlated with cobalt. Abundance also shows a weak correlation with copper and cobalt. Copper shows a weak correlation with nickel. Silicon shows a strong negative correlation with manganese.

The sample with an anomalously high assay of 0.58% Co is the +50 mm fraction of NORI box core BC_227. The assay was confirmed by reanalysis of the sample pulp. The mass weighted cobalt assay for sample BC 227 is 0.29%.

Figure 11.5 Pairs plot showing correlations between NORI Area D sample values[18]



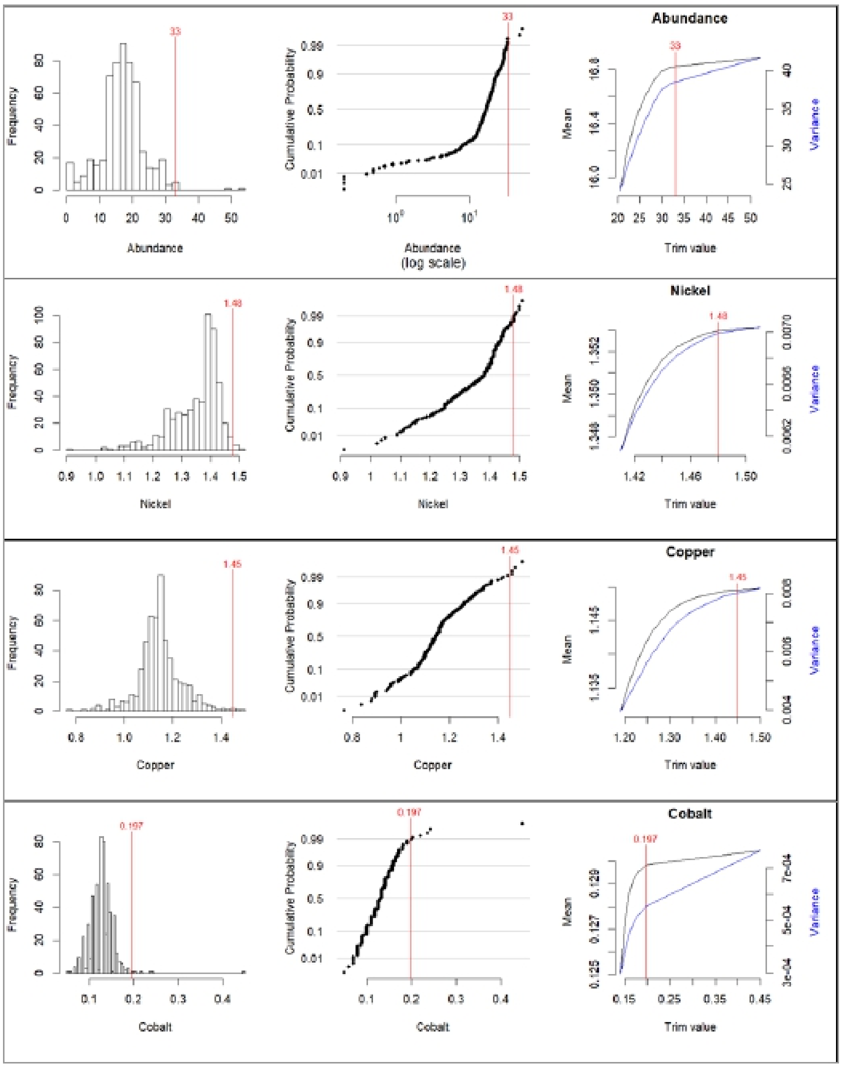
Source: AMC

[18] Axes labelled in percentage. Potential outliers (all are historic samples) are shown as crosses. The upper panels show the Pearson correlation coefficient. Averaged co-located data point values.

11.7.2 Top-cuts

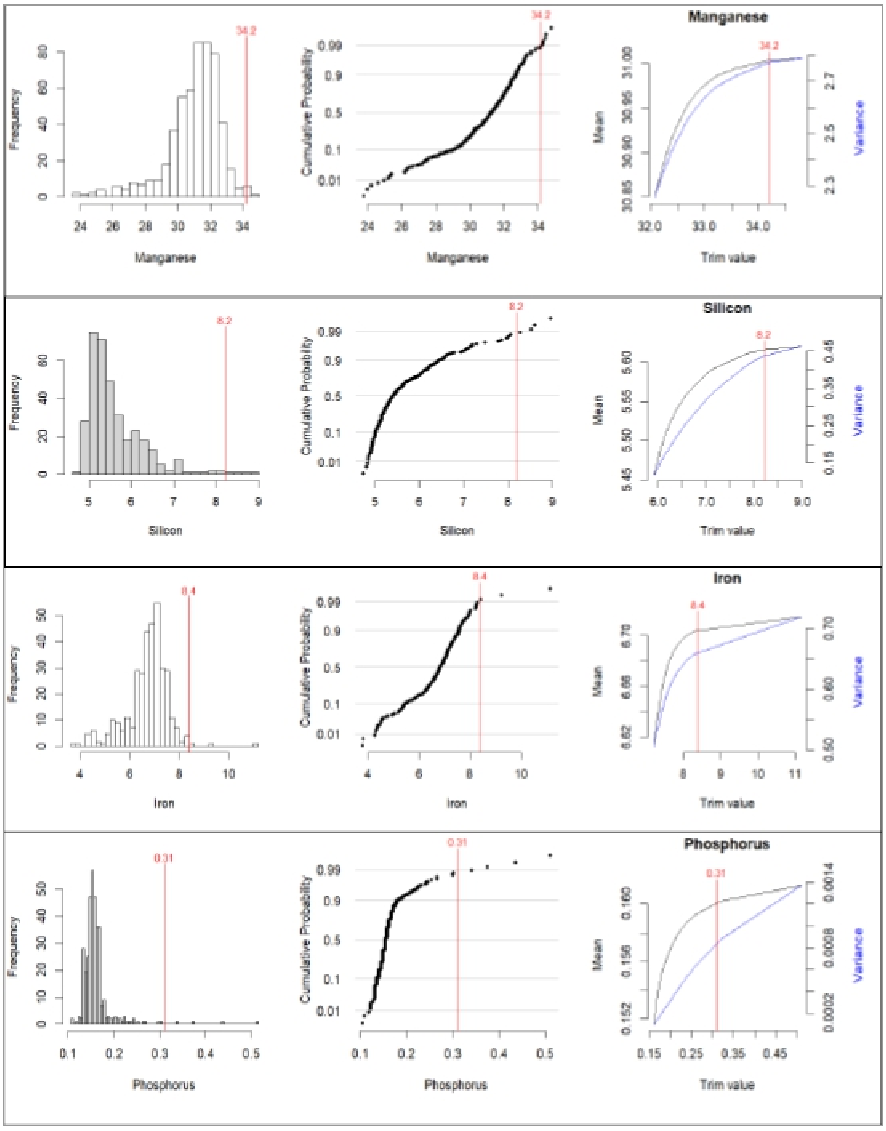
Histograms and cumulative frequency plots shown in Figure 11.6 and Figure 11.7 show that the element distributions are generally not strongly-skewed. The exceptions are silica, which has a tail of high values that are associated with ridges, and phosphorus, which has a tail of high values that are probably due to the presence of sharks' teeth. The red lines in Figure 11.6 and Figure 11.7 represent top-cuts that were used in the 2020 Mineral Resource estimate to limit the influence of outliers. The use of top-cuts made no significant difference to the estimated grades and was discontinued in the 2025 Mineral Resource estimate.

Figure 11.6 Histogram, cumulative probability and mean-variance plots of abundance and grades for NORI Area D nodule samples



Source: AMC

Figure 11.7 Histogram, cumulative probability and mean-variance plots of abundance and grades for NORI Area D nodule samples

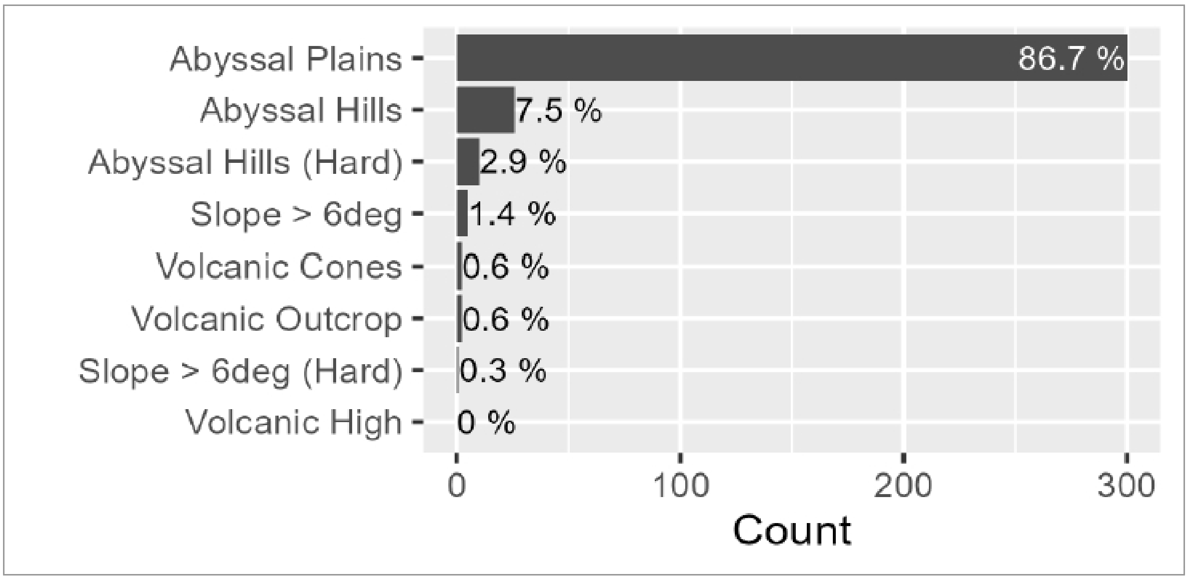


Source: AMC

11.7.3 Relationships between nodules and domains

Geological domains were assigned to the NORI Area D samples by extracting the values based on the sample UTM locations and the geological domain map (gridded image). The TOML Area F samples were all assigned to the abyssal plains domain. The majority of the samples (86.7%) fall within the abyssal hills and abyssal plains domains. The proportions of nodule samples by geological domain are shown graphically in Figure 11.8.

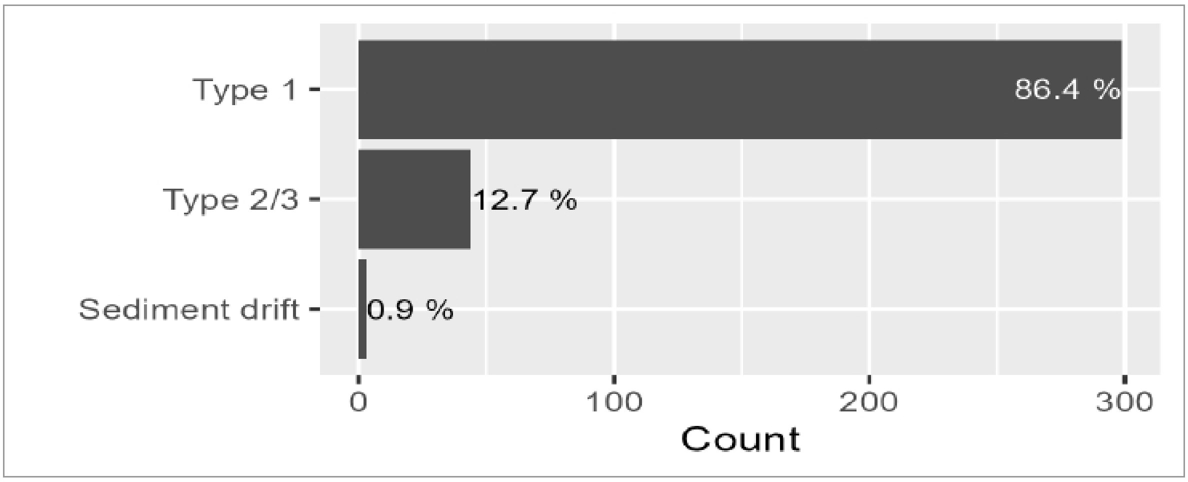
Figure 11.8 Frequency of NORI Area D nodule samples by geological domains



Source: AMC

Nodule facies domains were assigned to the NORI Area D samples based on the sample UTM locations and the nodule type domain map. The TOML Area F samples were all assigned to Type 1 domain. The majority of the samples (86.4%) fall within the Type 1 nodule facies domain. The proportions of nodule samples by nodule domain are shown graphically in Figure 11.9.

Figure 11.9 Frequency of NORI Area D nodule samples by nodule type domains

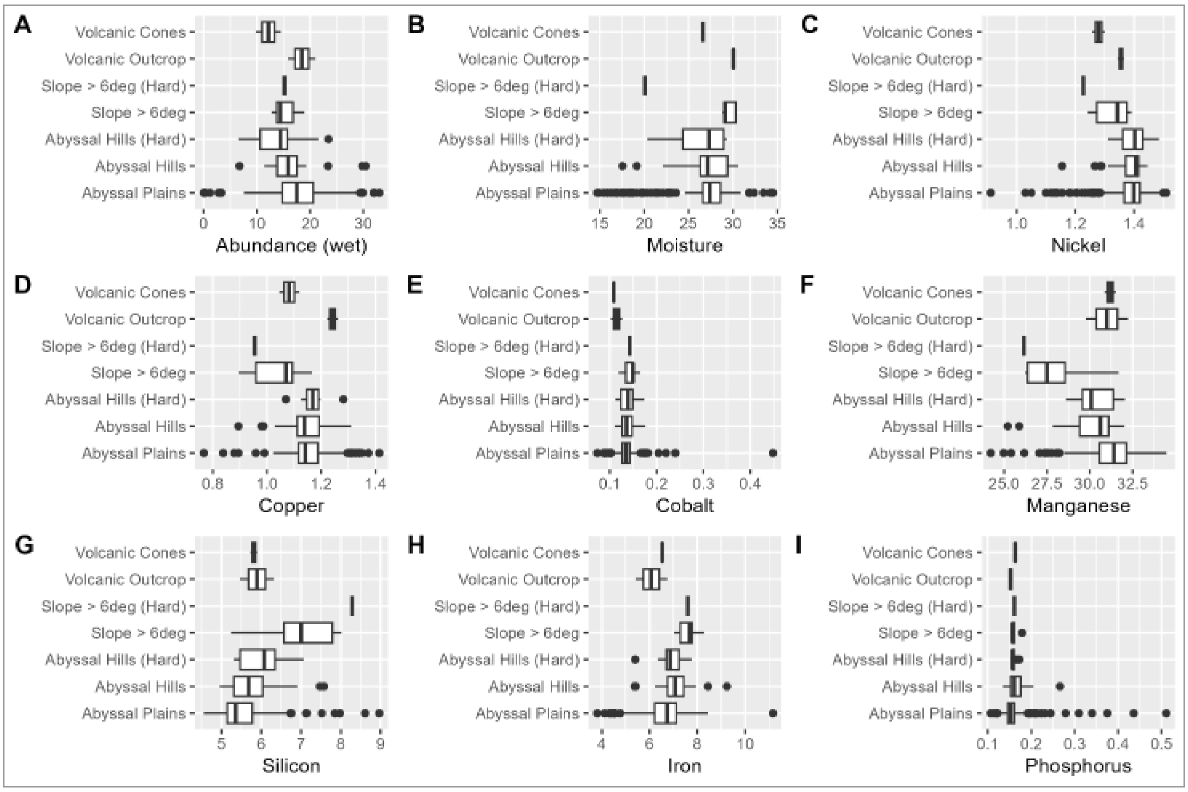


Source: AMC

Boxplots of abundance and grades by domain are presented in Figure 11.10. The plots suggest that abundance tends to be higher in the abyssal plains than in the abyssal hills and steeper areas. Also, as the slope increases the silicon content in the nodules increases, iron slightly increases and the manganese decreases. Nickel and copper grades appear to decrease with increasing slope. These trends are confirmed in Figure 11.11 which shows box plots of assay grades subdivided by slope angle. The trends suggest that the nodules forming on the hills may be influenced by hydrothermal fluids from fissures/fractures associated with the hills or by the chemistry or diagenetic influence of the footwall rocks and sediment.

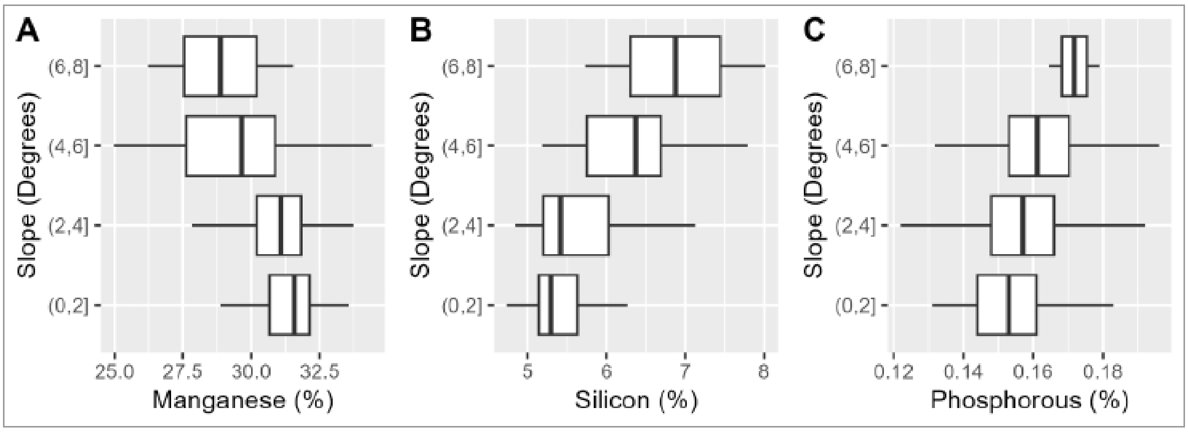
The >6° slope domains have very different distributions for all assays compared with the abyssal hills and abyssal plains domains which comprise the bulk of the NORI Area D area. Because of this difference it is necessary to exclude the samples from the >6° slope domains when estimating grades for the abyssal hills and abyssal plains domains. Because of the low number of samples in the >6° slope domains and the volcanic domains it is necessary to assign average grades to the resource model for these domains.

Figure 11.10 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule abundance and assays by geological domain



Source: AMC

Figure 11.11 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule grades by slope angle

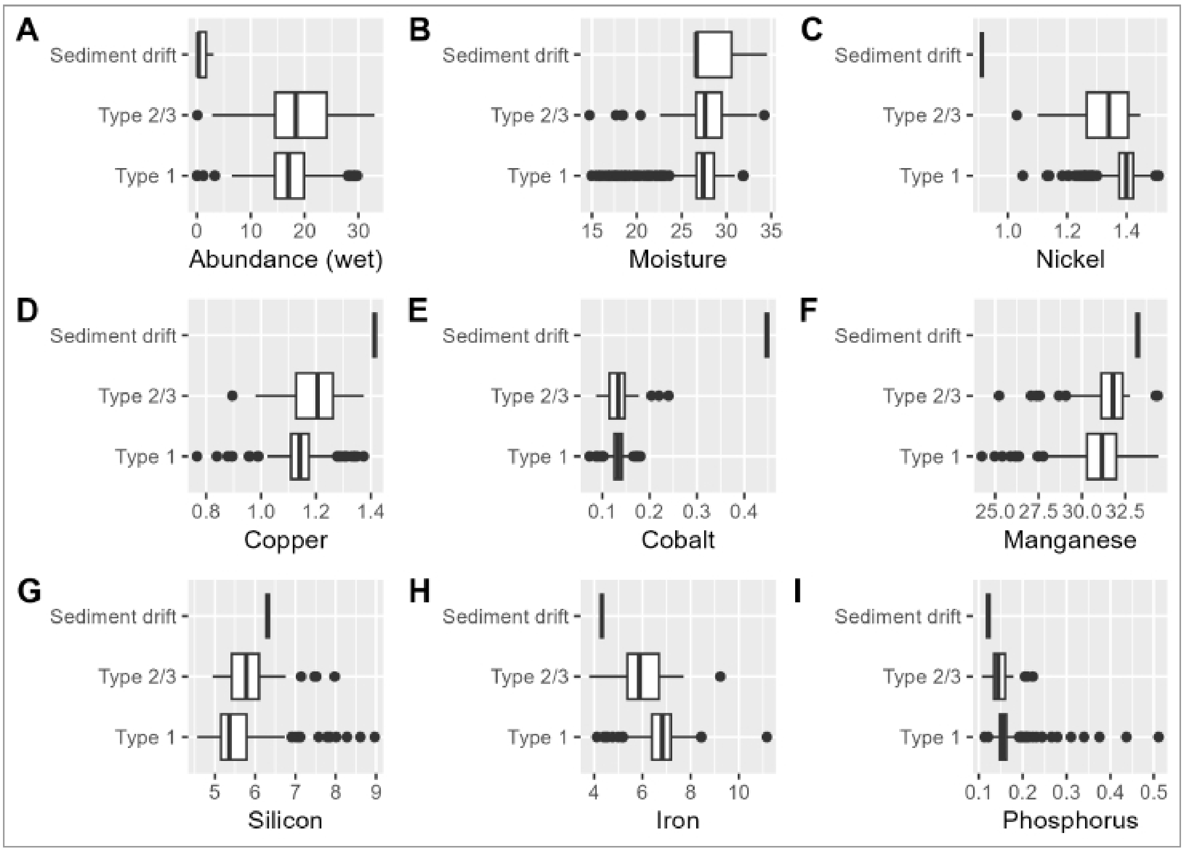


Source: AMC

Boxplots of abundance and grades by nodule type (see Figure 11.12) suggest that the sediment drift domain is significantly different from the Type 1 and Type 2/3 nodules. This domain contains an outlier cobalt value. Nodules within the sediment drift domain are low in nickel, high in copper, high in manganese and silicon and low in iron and phosphorus, compared with the other nodule domains. Comparison of Type 1 and Type 2/3 nodule grades indicates small differences. Type 1 nodules show higher nickel, iron, phosphorus and lower copper and silicon than the
Type 2/3 nodules.

Due to the anomalous grade and abundance values for the sediment drift domain, this domain was excluded from the Mineral Resource estimate. The box core samples within the abyssal hills and abyssal plains domains which have low nodule abundance and are classified as either Type 1 or Type 2/3 nodules, might actually be occurring within unidentified sediment drift areas or on volcanic outcrops.

Figure 11.12 Boxplots of NORI Area D nodule abundance and assays by nodule facies domain



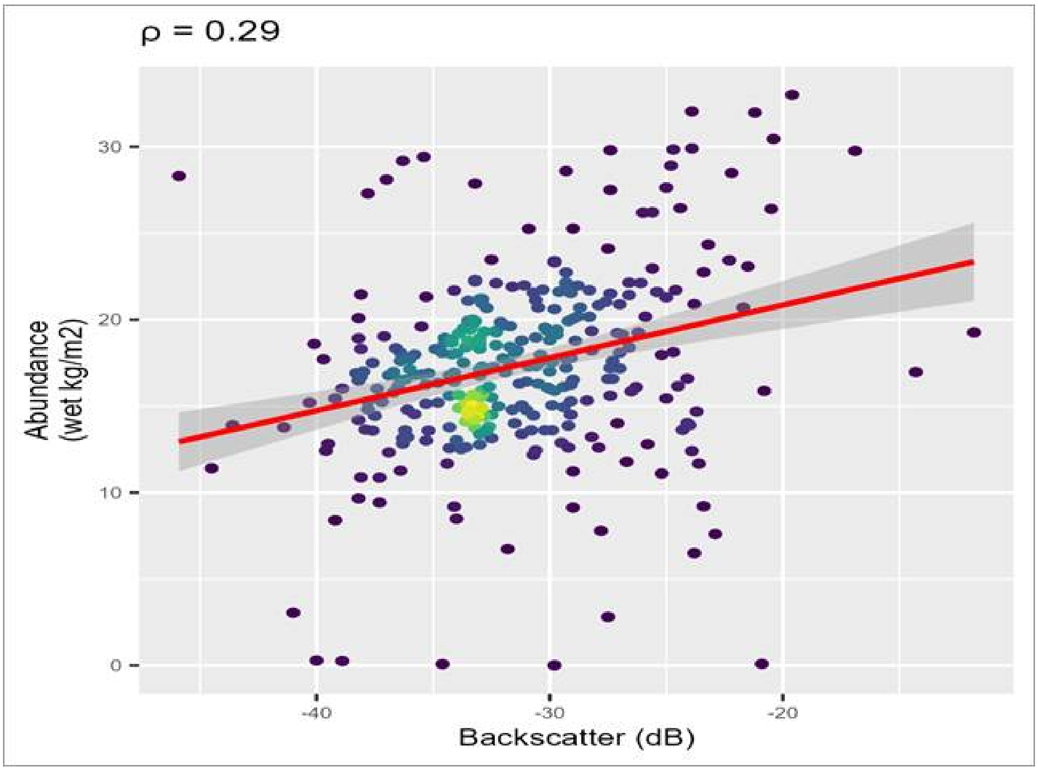
Source: AMC

11.7.4 Relationships between nodule abundance and backscatter

Acoustic backscatter is influenced by the hardness of the seafloor. Adsorption of the acoustic signal is expected to be strongest in areas covered by soft sediment and lowest in areas of hard outcropping volcanics. The abundance of nodules on the seafloor and their coverage or packing density are also expected to influence local absorption. A scatter plot of nodule abundance versus backscatter is shown in Figure 11.13. There is a weak positive linear correlation, with a Pearson correlation coefficient of 0.29.

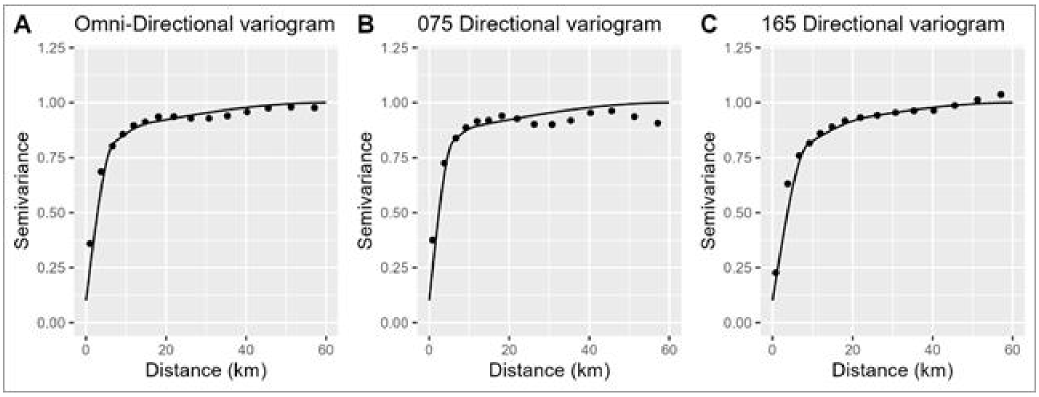
It might also be expected that continuity of abundance and nodule coverage on the seafloor will be reflected by continuity in the backscatter data. Spatial continuity can be measured and modelled using variograms (see Section 11.7.6). A variogram is a graphical representation of the variance between pairs of points at different separation distances. Omni-directional and directional variograms (065° and 155°) were calculated from the backscatter data and fitted with spherical variogram models (Figure 11.14). The variograms of backscatter show strong continuity over greater than 10 km, which supports the interpretation of continuity of the nodules. Variograms of nodule abundance, calculated from the box core data, are presented in Section 11.7.6.

Figure 11.13 Scatter plot of NORI Area D nodule abundance versus backscatter



Source: AMC

Figure 11.14 Omni-directional, 065° and 155° directional variograms of acoustic backscatter



Source: AMC

11.7.5 Data transformations

The elemental grades that comprise the nodules have a unit sum constraint. That is, the sum of the elements (including oxygen and hydrogen) is 100%. Consequently, the elements of interest in the Mineral Resource are not independent. Conventional estimation methods are based on the assumption of independence. For the 2020 Mineral Resources estimate, AMC used a mathematical transformation to generate a set of independent variables that could be estimated into a block model and then back-transformed to the final grade estimates.

A Projection Pursuit Multivariate Transformation (PPMT) was performed on the data. PPMT is a method to transform multivariate numeric data into multivariate Gaussian data. The transform aims to remove all bivariate correlations between the variables making them independent and to transform each variable to a normal distribution. The transform allows for independent estimation or simulation of Gaussian variables using simple kriging. The kriged estimates are then back-transformed into the original multivariate space, where all bivariate correlations and trends are restored. The transform is useful for simple kriging and sequential Gaussian conditional simulations, where the variables are required to be independent and Gaussian. The transform ensures that, even when using different variograms for each transformed variable, the bivariate relationships are maintained. To prepare the data it was necessary to:

- Impute (replace) missing values for silicon, iron, and phosphorus.
- Apply projection pursuit multivariate transform (PPMT) to manganese, copper, nickel, cobalt, silicon, iron, and phosphorus values.
- Apply normal scores transform to abundance values.

11.7.6 Spatial continuity

Modelling of spatial continuity and estimation of nodule Mineral Resources is essentially a two-dimensional process. Vertical distribution of nodules was not modelled. Spatial continuity of abundance and the grades of manganese, nickel, copper, cobalt, silicon, iron, and phosphorus were assessed using semi-variograms. For convenience, semi-variogram is abbreviated to variogram in the following discussion.

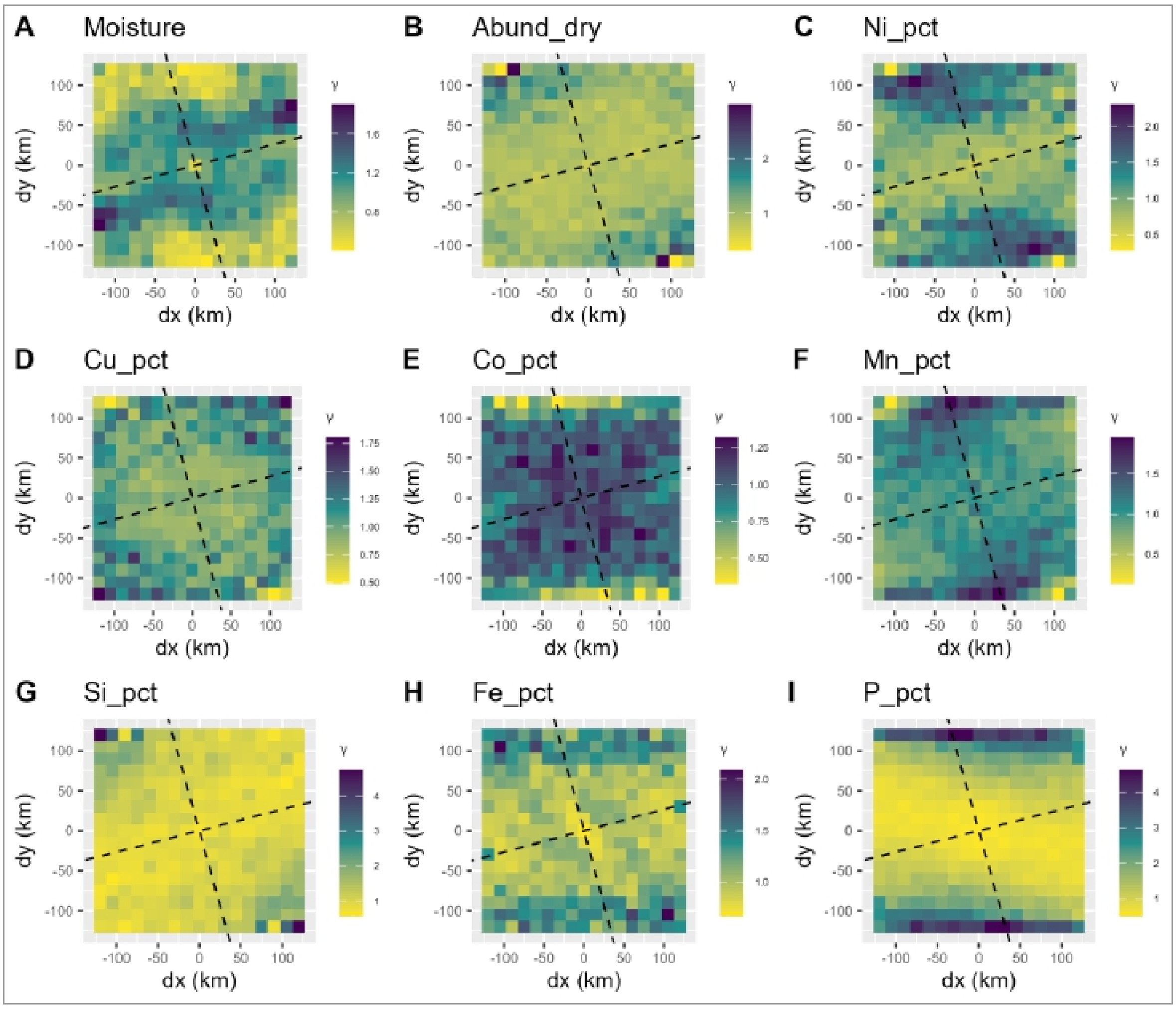
A variogram is a graphical representation of the variance between pairs of points at different separation distances. For data that is spatially correlated, it is expected that the variance between closely-spaced pairs of data will be lower than the variance between widely-spaced pairs. At a particular distance, known as the range, the pairs become uncorrelated and the variance no longer increases. Experimental variograms are generated from the data in different orientations to see if there is greater continuity in a particular direction (anisotropy). If there is no strong evidence of anisotropy, the directional variograms can be combined into an omnidirectional variogram for ease of interpretation. The experimental variogram can be fitted with a mathematical model (the variogram model) from which spatial weights can be determined during the kriging estimation process. AMC used variograms to assess the spatial continuity of nodule abundance, nodule grades, and also the acoustic back scatter.

11.7.6.1 Nodule abundance and nodule grades

All NORI box core samples and nodule abundances derived from photos within NORI Area D were used for analysis of spatial continuity. The PPMT transformed data was used for calculating the experimental variograms.

The direction of greatest continuity suggested by the variogram maps over very long ranges is approximately 075° or 165° (see Figure 11.15). This direction might be, at least in part, an artefact of the sparseness of the sampling and the orientation of the sampling grid which is oriented 075°, roughly parallel to the broad regional trend of the CCZ. At shorter ranges, the experimental variograms are not strongly anisotropic.

Figure 11.15 Variogram maps of NORI Area D nodule sample assays



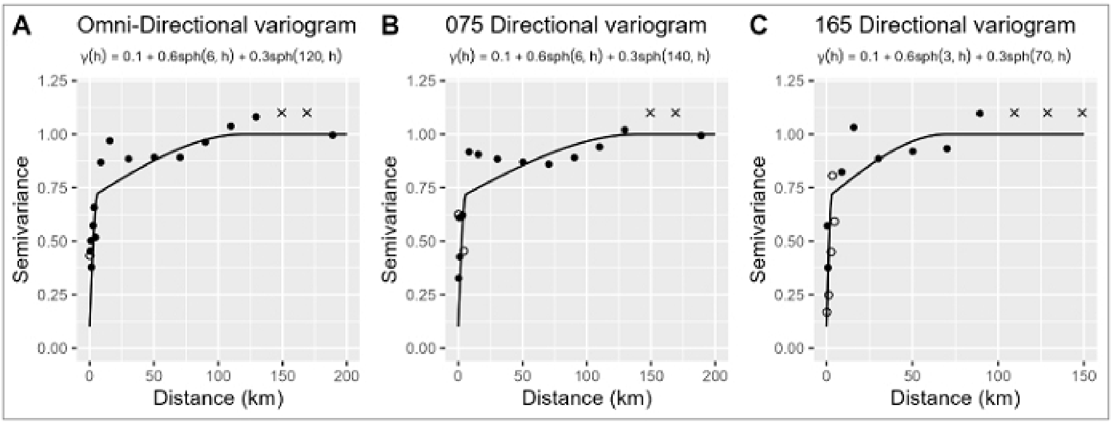
Source: AMC

Two-structure, spherical models were fitted to the experimental variograms of abundance and grades. The variogram models used for estimating block nodule abundance and grades are listed in Table 11.6 and illustrated in Figure 11.16 to Figure 11.23. In these figures the open circles represent semivariance estimates that were informed with less than 20 points, and the crosses represent semivariance values that exceed 1.1 but have been clipped to 1.1 for visualization purposes.

Table 11.6 Variogram models

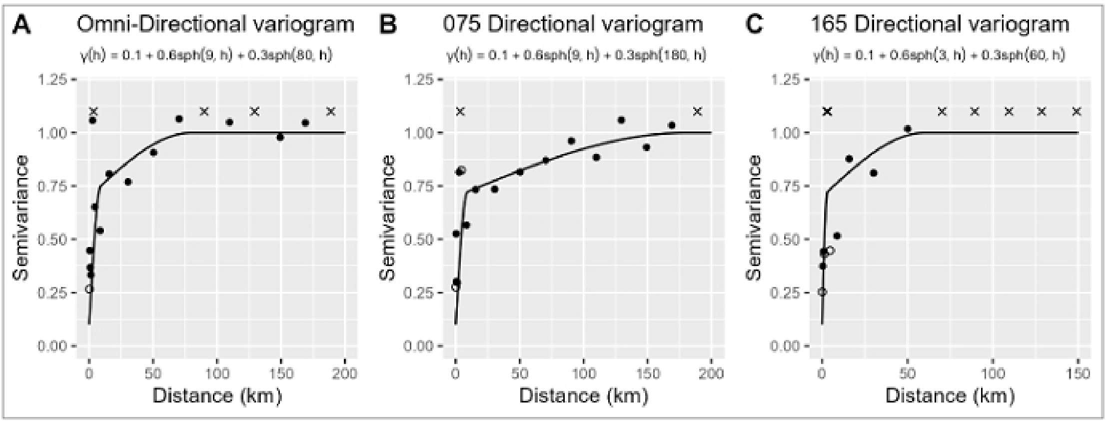
	Abundance (dry)	Moisture	Ni	Cu	Co	Mn	Si	Fe	P
Nugget	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
Sill 1	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.4
Range 1 Omni (km)	6	6	9	3	3	3	6	6	6
Range 1 Major (km)	6	6	9	3	3	3	6	6	6
Range 1 Minor (km)	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Sill 2	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.5
Range 2 Omni (km)	120	120	80	60	20	20	80	40	80
Range 2 Major (km)	140	30	180	60	20	20	100	60	120
Range 2 Minor (km)	70	30	60	60	20	20	50	30	80
Major Direction (°)	75	75	75	75	345	165	165	165	165
Anisotropy	0.5	0.5	0.33	1	1	1	0.38	0.67	0.71

Figure 11.16 Abundance omni-directional, 075° and 165° directional variograms



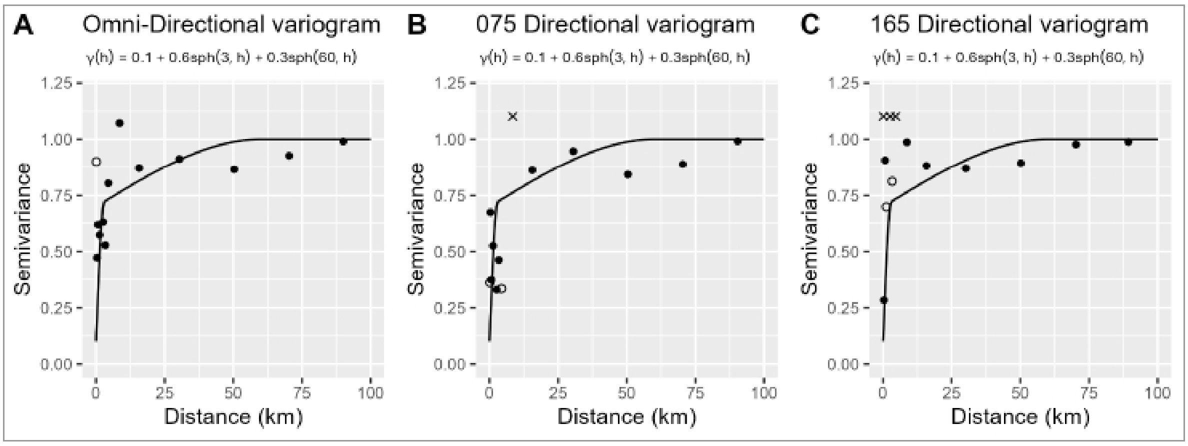
Source: AMC

Figure 11.17 Nickel omni-directional, 075° and 165° directional variograms



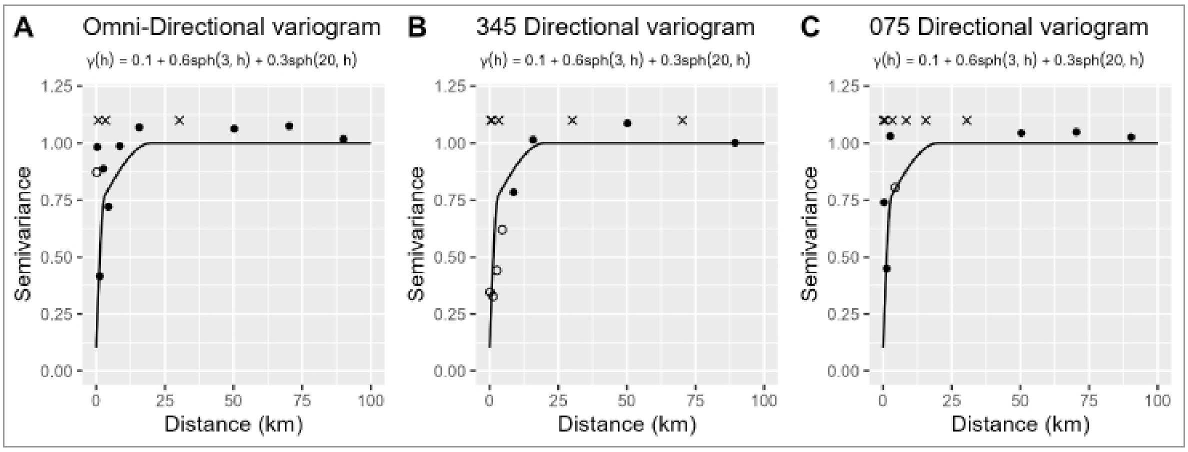
Source: AMC

Figure 11.18 Copper omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



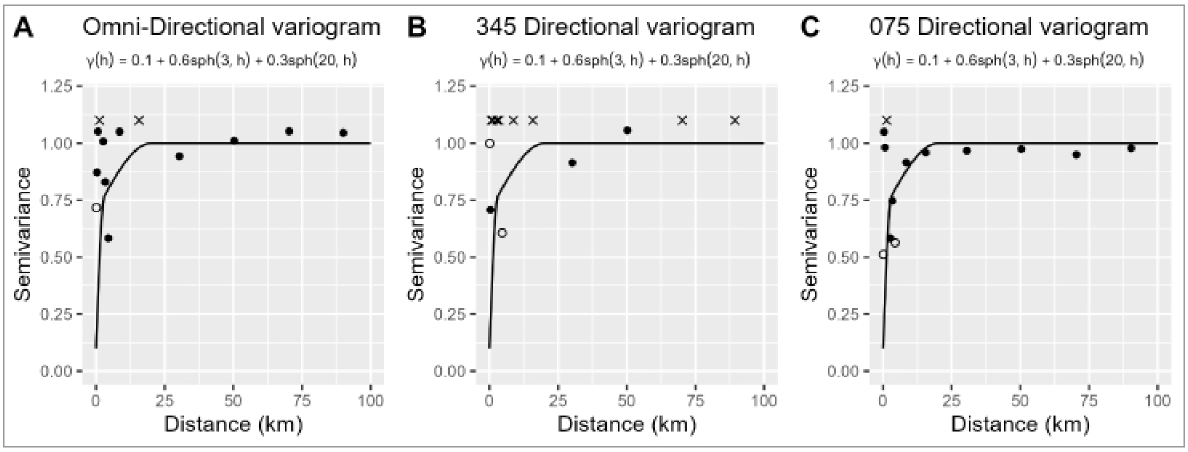
Source: AMC

Figure 11.19 Cobalt omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



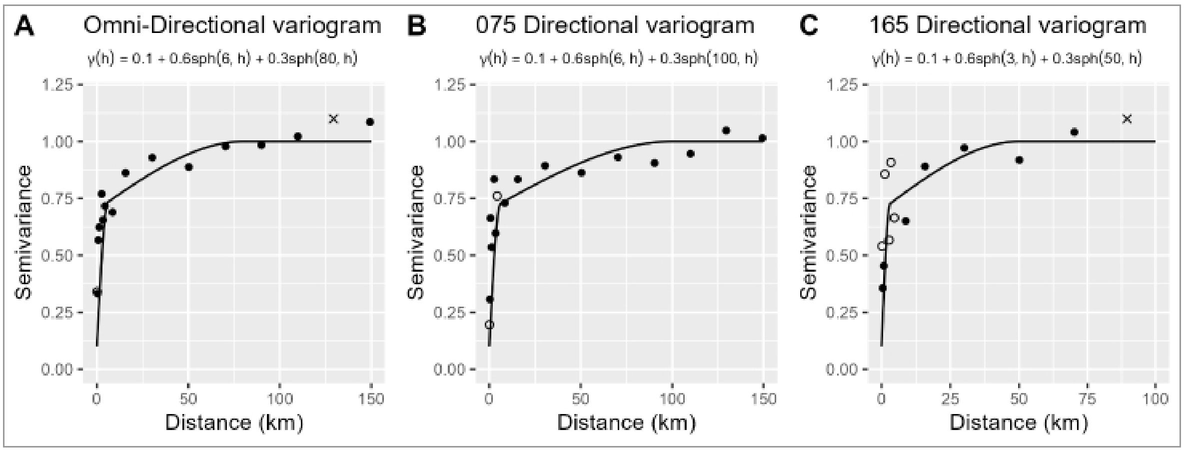
Source: AMC

Figure 11.20 Manganese omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



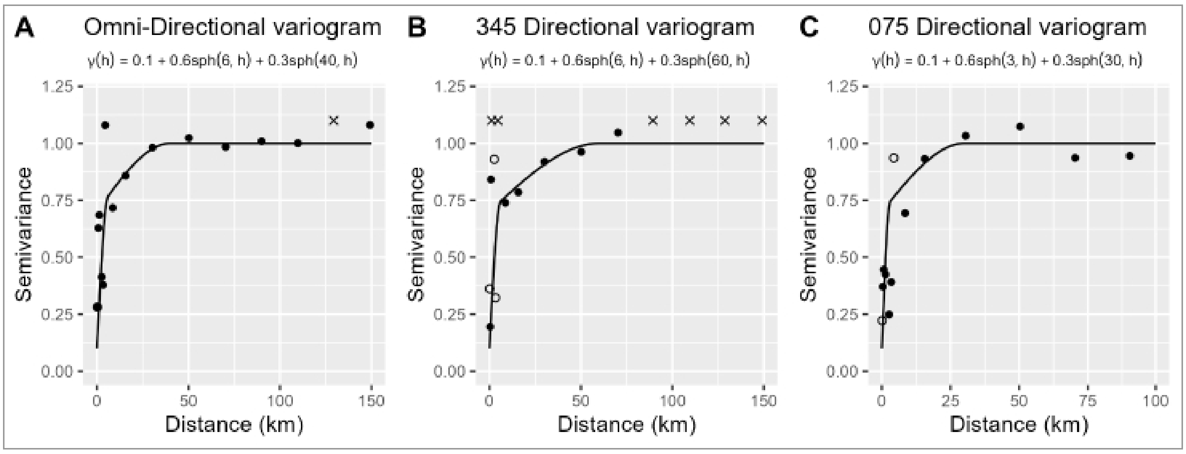
Source: AMC

Figure 11.21. Silicon omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



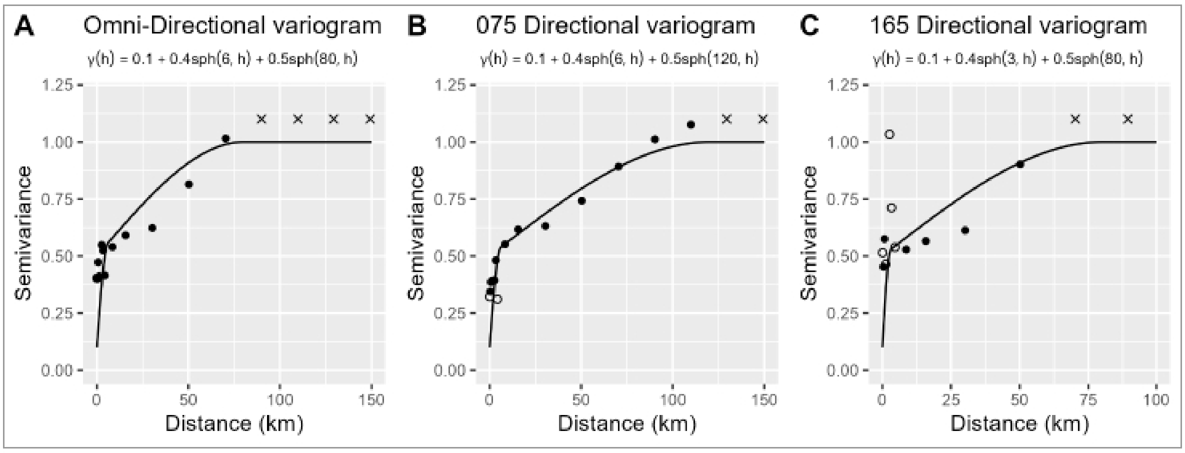
Source: AMC

Figure 11.22 Iron omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



Source: AMC

Figure 11.23 Phosphorus omni-directional, 075°, and 165° directional variograms



Source: AMC

11.7.7 Estimation of nodule abundance and grades

A geological grid model of NORI Area D was constructed from the geological domain gridded map by aggregating the grid by a factor of 10. This expanded the grid cell size from 50 m to 500 m. The origin, extent and grid cell size are outlined in Table 11.7. The origin was chosen to match the bathymetry and backscatter raster models to ensure consistency between data sets.

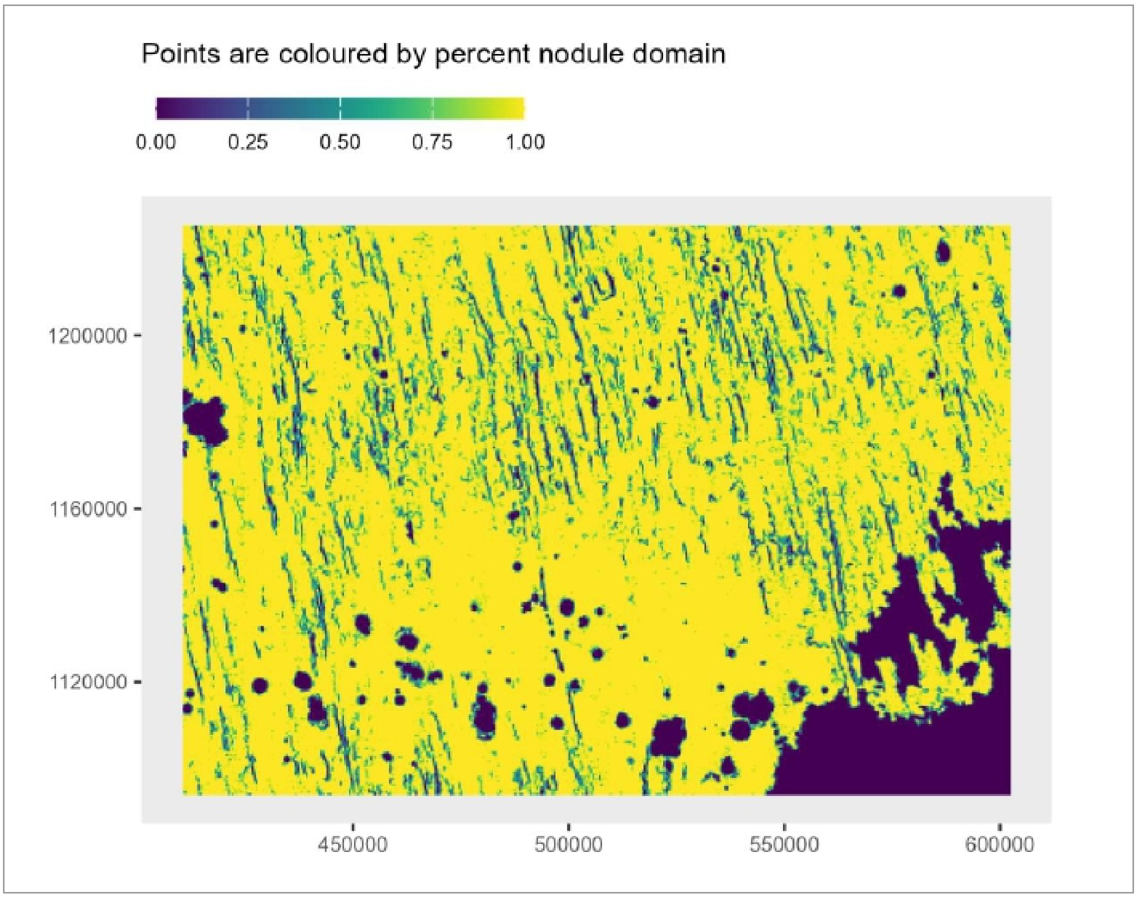
Table 11.7 NORI Area D Grid Model Extents

	Easting	Northing

Model origin	410444.2	1093899.2
Model limit	602444.2	1225399.2
Cell size	500	500
Number of cells	263	263

The geological grid model contains a layer (NOD) that identifies the percentage coverage of nodules within the 500 m by 500 m panel. This layer was constructed by aggregating the 50 m by 50 m reclassified geological domain gridded data. The geological domain grid model was reclassified by assigning a value of 1 for the abyssal plains, abyssal hills and abyssal hills (hard) domains. All other domains were assigned a value of 0. Figure 11.24 shows the 500 m by 500 m geological grid model.

Figure 11.24. NORI Area D 500 m by 500 m grid model showing percentage coverage of nodules



Source: AMC

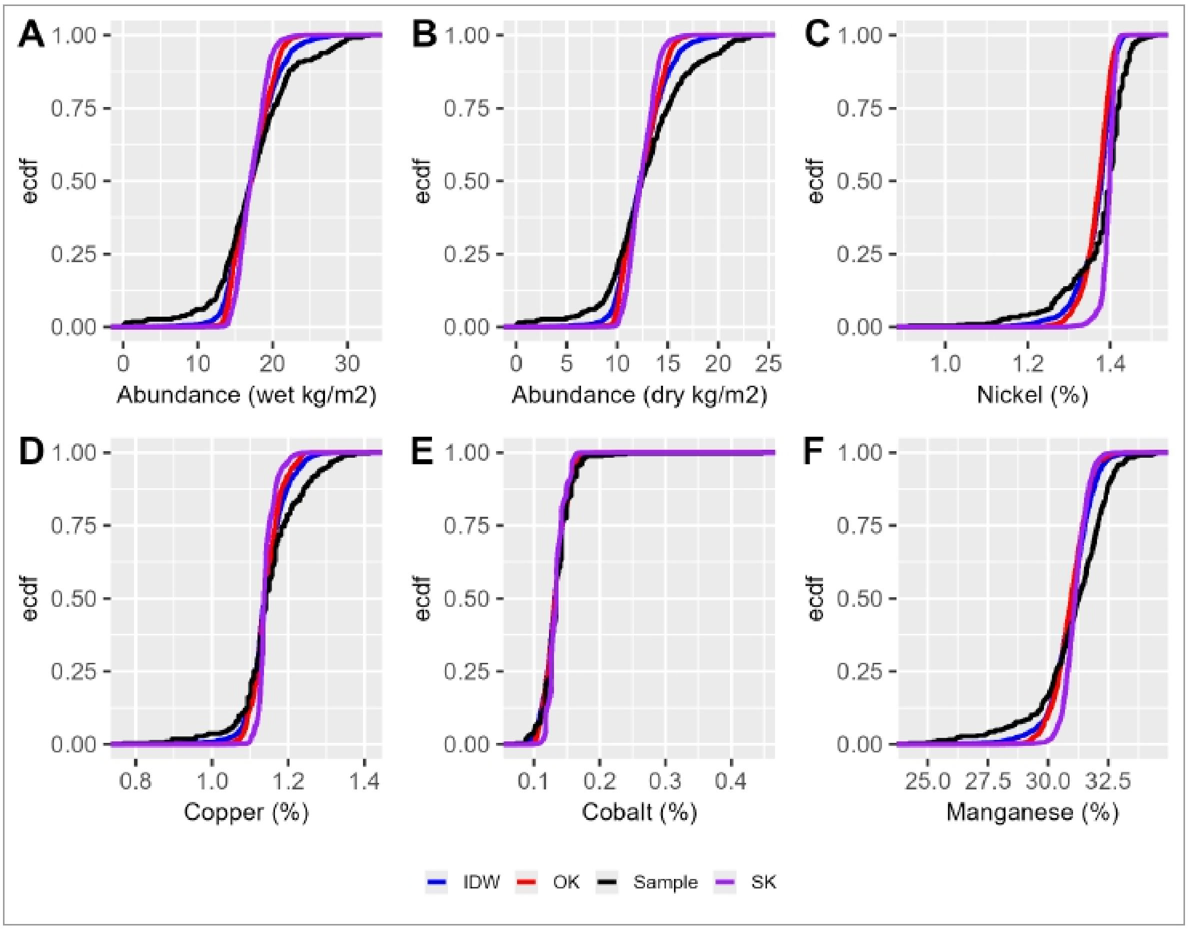
The Mineral Resource was estimated in 3.5 km by 3.5 km sized panels or blocks. The geological grid model (500 m by 500 m grid spacing) was used as the discretization points for the 3.5 km by 3.5 km sized panels. That is, the values at the points on the 500 m by 500 m grid were estimated and then the point estimates were aggregated to panels or blocks with dimensions of 3.5 km by 3.5 km. The panel size is appropriate for the average sample spacing.

The prepared and transformed data was used for estimating nodule abundance (dry) and nodule grades. Samples falling within the slope > 6° domains were excluded from the estimation. A minimum of 1 and a maximum of 10 samples were used to inform the estimates at each point.

Simple kriging was used to estimate nodule abundance (dry) and nodule grades into the geological grid model using the PPMT-transformed variables. After kriging, the PPMT-variable estimates were back-transformed to the elemental grades. Two other methods, ordinary kriging (OK), and inverse distance weighting to the power of two (IDW), were used to validate the outcomes from the simple kriging. The dry abundance estimates were converted to wet abundance by the addition of 28% moisture.

Comparisons of the simple kriging, OK and IDW estimates with nodule sample data are illustrated in Figure 11.25. The cumulative probability plots show, as expected, that the simple kriging panel estimates are smoother (lower variance) than IDW panel estimates which are smoother than the distribution of the samples. The smoothing (spatial averaging) is expected because 70% of the total variance in the nodule abundances (the sill in the spatial variogram) occurs within 3 km. Smoothing is mathematically necessary to ensure that estimates of the Mineral Resources are unbiased. As expected, the medians (50^{th} percentiles) produced by the three estimation methods are very similar for nodule abundance and nodule grades. Simple kriging was selected as the preferred method because it is better suited to the transformed grade variables than OK or IDW.

Figure 11.25 Cumulative probability plots comparing nodule samples with IDW and SK estimates



Source: AMC

11.8 Cut-off grade

Mining operations typically use an economic value to differentiate between material that is mined to generate revenue (ore) and material that is either left behind or considered as waste. The cut-off value is derived from an economic assessment to determine the minimum grade of material that generates an acceptable profit or the minimum grade of material that allows a marketable product to be produced.

Nodules are remarkably consistent in grade and the characteristic that will contribute most to determine profitability is abundance, which is more variable. Furthermore, assessment by Allseas identified that a minimum abundance value is required to achieve the production rate required to meet annual production targets for a given collector speed. Therefore, the variable chosen to define the cut-off for definition of Mineral Resources was abundance.

The method of calculation of the cut-off determines the minimum average nodule abundance needed during steady state operations such that the revenue minus costs (excluding capital) is greater than zero. Revenue includes metal pricing and metallurgical processing recoveries, and the costs include the collection, transport, processing, corporate costs, and royalties.

The price estimates were long term (2034 – 2046) forecasts provided in a report by CRU International Limited (CRU, 2025). The QP considers that this timeframe is reasonable, in view of the likely time required to bring the majority of the NORI and TOML Mineral Resources into production.

Operating costs and production estimates for the calculation of an abundance cut-off were based on estimates developed for the second generation of collection systems described and assessed in the Initial Assessment of NORI and TOML areas (AMC, 2025) rather than the collection system evaluated for the Mineral Reserves in the PFS for NORI Area D. This approach was chosen because the development scenario assessed in the Initial Assessment is a more likely timeframe in which the majority of the Mineral Resource in NORI Area D, not already converted to Mineral Reserve, would be developed. The QP considers that the abundance cut-off calculated this way for the Mineral Resources is consistent with reasonable prospects of economic extraction.

An assessment of the abundance cut-off is shown in Table 11.8.

Table 11.8 NORI-TOML breakeven cut-off abundance estimate

	Variable Opex (\$/wmt)	Production (m^2/hr)	Nodule Revenue (\$/wmt)	Opex per hour (\$/hr)	Breakeven Abundance (kg/m^2)	Revenue per hour (\$/hr)
Alloy	188	33,660	421	50,584	3.6	50,584
Matte	188	33,660	479	50,584	3.1	50,584
Sulphate	188	33,660	612	50,584	2.5	50,584

The calculations indicate that a cut-off of 4 kg/m^2 abundance, as has previously been used for Mineral Resource estimates in NORI Area D, remains appropriate for definition of the Mineral Resources in NORI Area D.

11.9 Mineral Resource classification

The limiting factor for Mineral Resource classification for NORI Area D is confidence in the estimates for abundance. Confidence in the resource estimate was assessed using the probability of abundance being greater than ±15% of mean abundance over a nominal one quarter of production (for Measured classification) and a nominal one year's production (for Indicated classification) at 90% confidence. The nominal production rate is a parameter chosen to classify the uncertainty of the Mineral Resource estimates at an expected order of magnitude of production rather than for an economic assessment of a specific production scenario.

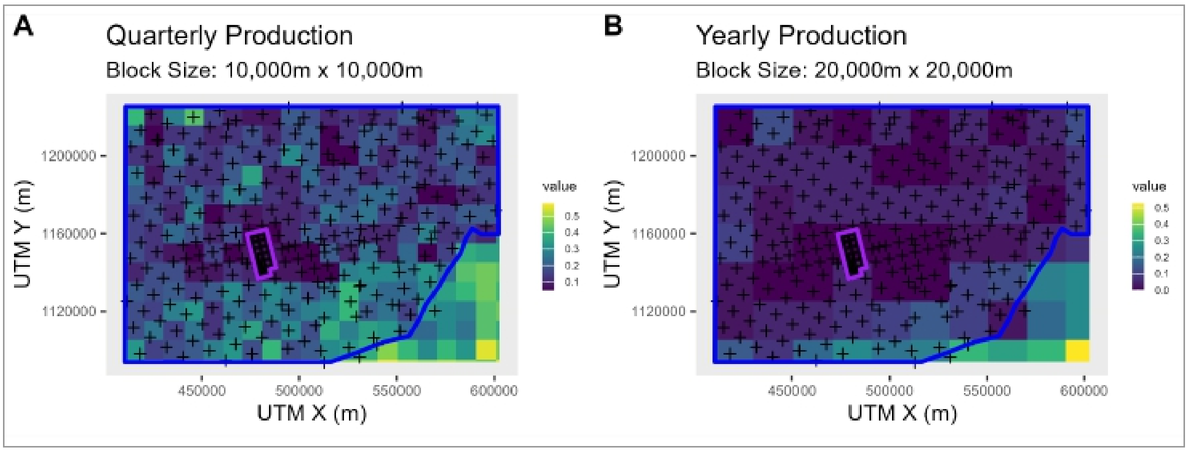
The uncertainty in quarterly production estimates was assessed by simulating abundance using conditional sequential Gaussian simulation. Each simulation is a unique, equiprobable representation of the abundance on the seafloor, modelled from the sample data, on a finer grid than the Mineral Resource block model. The simulations lack the high degree of smoothing (spatial averaging) used to estimate the Mineral Resource. One hundred (100) simulations were generated using the same data, estimation parameters, and variogram model as were used for the simple kriging of the Mineral Resource block model. The probability of exceeding a given value at any point on the simulated grid model can then be calculated by considering the outcomes of all 100 simulations at that point.

Assuming a nominal annual production rate of 8 Mwmt of nodules per year, the panel size for a quarter of a year's production is 10,846 m by 10,846 m assuming an average abundance of 17 wet kg/m^2. To simplify the simulation, the area covered by a quarter of a year's production was set at 10 km by 10 km while one year's production was set at 20 km by 20 km. This equates to a yearly production rate of 6.4 Mwmt and one quarter of a year's production of 1.6 Mwmt with an average abundance of 16 wet kg/m^2.

The conditional simulations of 500 m by 500 m panels were aggregated up to 10 km by 10 km and 20 km by 20 km panels. The probability of abundance being greater than +/-15% of mean abundance over one quarter of production (Measured) and one year's production (Indicated) is shown in Figure 11.26.

The conditional simulation of abundance suggests that in the small area near the center of NORI Area D where sample spacing is 3.5 km by 3.5 km the estimates are of high confidence and could be classified as a Measured Mineral Resource. In the rest of NORI Area D, where there are samples at a spacing of 7 km by 7 km and 10 km by 10 km, the estimates are of sufficient confidence to be classified as Indicated Mineral Resources. The south-east corner of NORI Area D where there are generally no samples, and which is mostly covered by the volcanic high domain is considered to be estimated with low confidence. Note that there are some areas covered by 10 km by 10 km spacing that have high confidence.

Figure 11.26 Abundance: probability of exceeding 15% of mean at 90% confidence for quarterly and yearly production[19]



Source: AMC

The Mineral Resource was classified on the basis of the quality and uncertainty of the sample data and sample spacing, in accordance with S-K 1300.

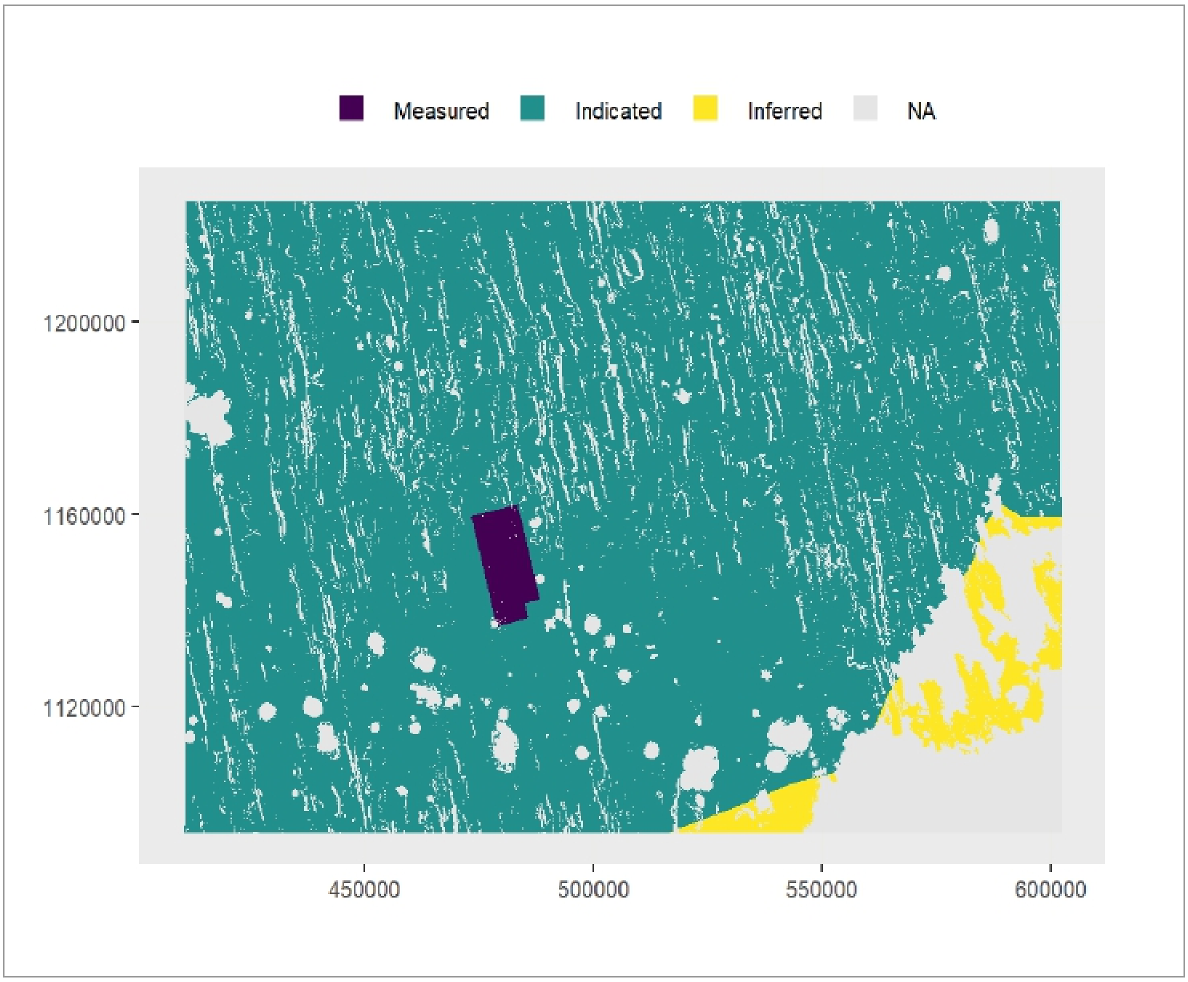
The Measured Mineral Resource was assigned to the area within NORI Area D where box core sampling was conducted on a nominal 7 km by 7 km spacing and infilled with estimates of nodule abundance from seafloor photography to a spacing of 3.5 km by 3.5 km.

The Indicated Mineral Resource was assigned to the area within NORI Area D where box core sampling was conducted on a nominal spacing of 7 km by 7 km but without additional photo-estimates of nodule abundance, or 10 km by 10 km.

The Inferred Mineral Resource was assigned to the abyssal plain areas in the southeast corner of NORI Area D that are largely unsampled. Figure 11.27 shows Mineral Resource classification boundaries.

[19] Perimeters: area of high confidence = Measured Mineral Resource (purple); area of moderate confidence = Indicated Mineral Resource (blue)

Figure 11.27 Mineral Resource classification boundaries



Source: AMC

The volcanic high domain in the southeast corner of NORI Area D was excluded from the Mineral Resource estimate for the following reasons:

- Uncertainty in distinguishing between volcanic outcrop and high abundance nodules using the backscatter data.
- No nodule samples have yet been collected within the volcanic high domain and therefore it is unknown whether there are any nodules occurring within the domain.
- The terrain across the volcanic high is extremely rugged and is at a much shallower depth than the rest of NORI Area D. The volcanic high is less than 50 km from a significant calcium carbonate anomaly seen in the compilation of basin-scale surficial sediment lithology data. This strongly suggests that the volcanic high sits above the carbonate compensation depth and is therefore not favorable for nodule formation.
- The evidence that nodule chemistry is affected by substrate means that it is not reasonable to infer the grades of nodules that might occur in the volcanic high domain from grades of nodules in other domains.

In the Qualified Person's opinion, the Mineral Resources have reasonable prospects for economic extraction. No fatal flaws have been identified. It is reasonable to expect that, with further engineering design and test work, the technical and economic factors relevant to the collection of nodules and the extraction of nickel, cobalt, copper, and manganese products from the nodules can be resolved.

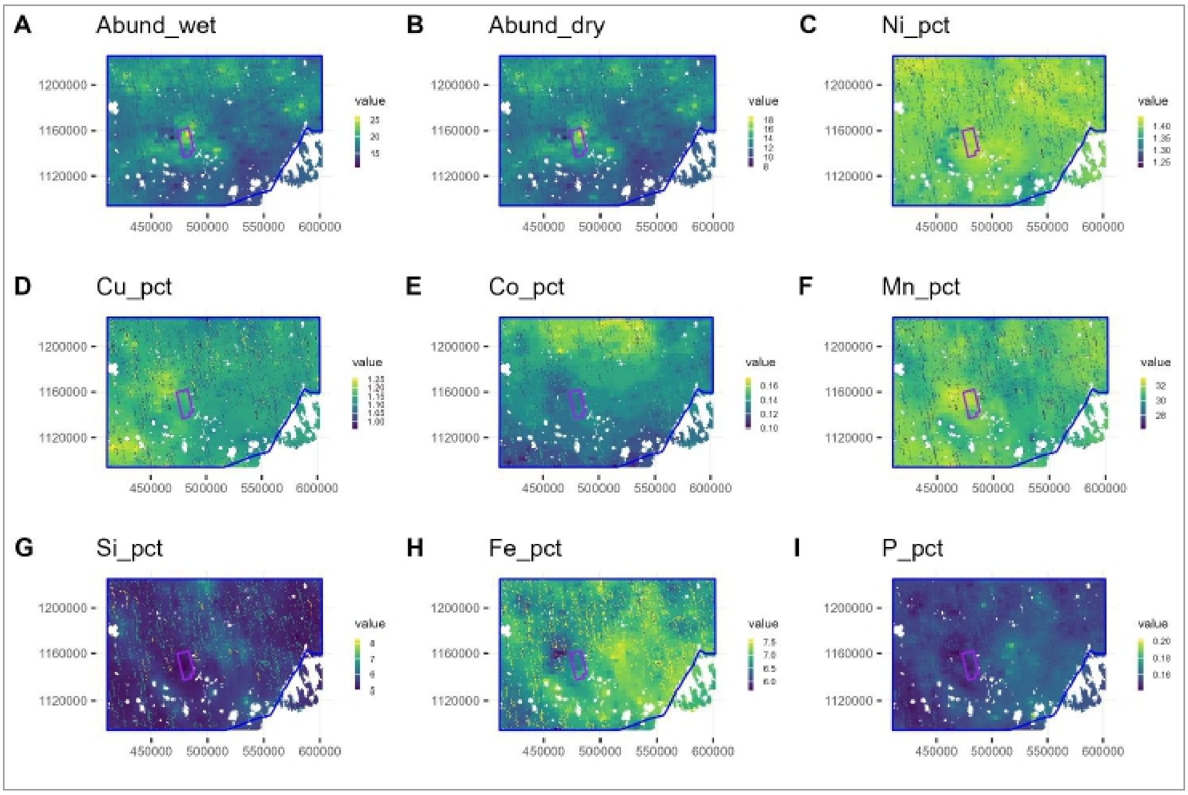
11.10 Estimation results

The 3.5 km by 3.5 km panel estimates were added back onto the 50 m by 50 m geological domain grid model. Nodule abundance and nodule grades for cells identified as either > 6° slope or volcanic outcrop domains were set to the
mean values from the nodule samples. Cells identified as volcanic cone or volcanic high or sediment drift were set to null.

Resource categories were added to the 50 m by 50 m raster grid model using the perimeters defined by conditional simulation.

Results of the simple kriging estimates are shown in plan view in Figure 11.28. Cobalt is relatively high in the north of NORI Area D and relatively low in the south while manganese, nickel, copper and iron are relatively uniformly distributed across NORI Area D. Abundance and cobalt grade appears to be higher in the north. Note the two very small spots of high silicon estimated in the abyssal domains. These two spots are interpreted to be the result of mislabeling of high slope domains that have high silicon. Also note the high phosphorus in the south-east near the volcanic high domain.

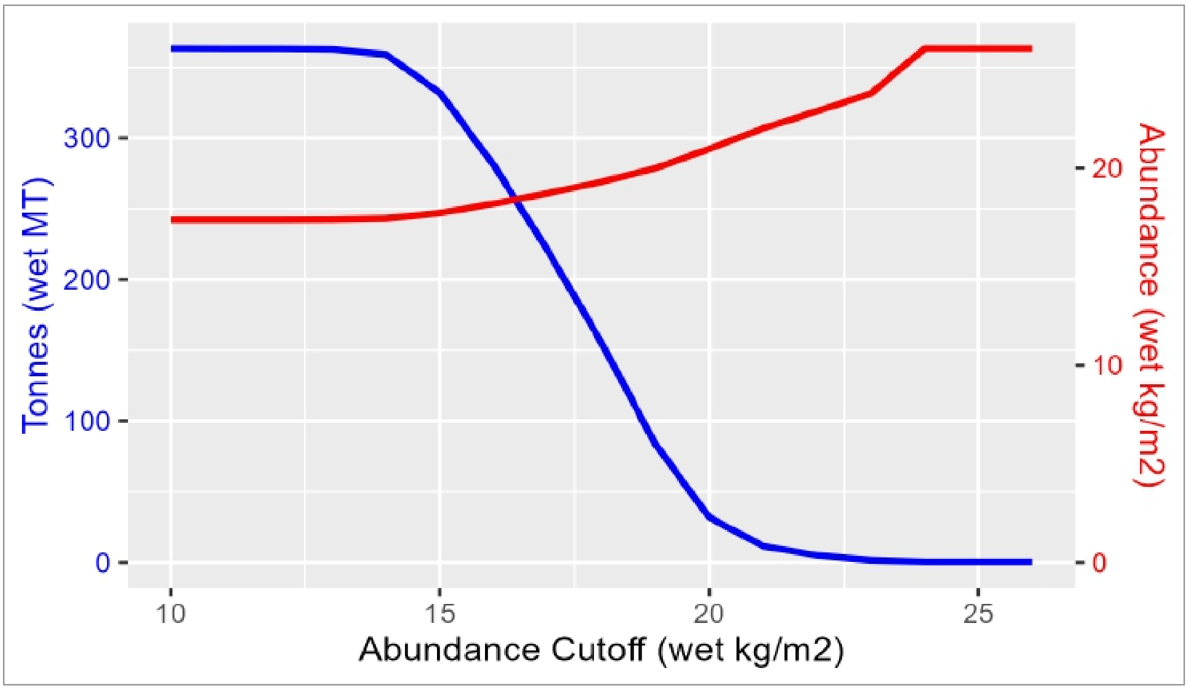
Figure 11.28 Nodule abundance and nodule grades 3.5 km by 3.5 km SK panel estimates for NORI Area D



Source: AMC

The nodule abundance and tonnage curves for NORI Area D at various nodule abundance cut-offs are shown in Figure 11.29. The curves indicate that there are no 3.5 km by 3.5 km panels with abundance of less than 12 wet kg/m². The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.

Figure 11.29 NORI Area D abundance-tonnage curve



Source: AMC

The Mineral Resource at 30 June 2025, at an abundance cut-off of 4 wet kg/m², and in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300) (S-K 1300) is stated inclusive of those Mineral Resources converted to Mineral Reserves in Table 11.9. Estimates are reported on a wet nodule abundance basis, assuming 28% moisture content (mass of water)/(mass of solids + water).

Table 11.9 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m² abundance cut-off inclusive of Mineral Reserve

Category	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)	MnO: SiO_2
Inferred	11	15.4	1.38	1.14	0.12	30.96	5.46	6.92	0.16	3.42
Indicated	347	17.4	1.40	1.14	0.14	31.15	5.45	6.84	0.16	3.46
Measured	5	20.6	1.41	1.15	0.13	31.91	5.16	6.59	0.15	3.73
All	363	17.4	1.40	1.14	0.14	31.15	5.44	6.83	0.16	3.46

Notes:

- Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 30 June 2025.
- Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
- The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.
- Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
- Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
- Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Mineral Resource at 30 June 2025, at an abundance cut-off of 4 wet kg/m^2, and in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300) (S-K 1300) exclusive of those Mineral Resources converted to Mineral Reserves is stated in Table 11.10.Table 11.10. Estimates are reported on a wet nodule abundance basis, assuming 28% moisture content (mass of water)/(mass of solids + water).

Table 11.10 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m^2 abundance cut-off exclusive of Mineral Reserve

Category	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)	MnO: SiO_2
Inferred	10	15.4	1.4	1.1	0.12	31	5.46	6.92	0.16	3.42
Indicated	261	17.4	1.4	1.1	0.14	31	5.45	6.84	0.16	3.46
Measured	4	20.6	1.4	1.2	0.13	32	5.16	6.59	0.15	3.73
All	274	17.4	1.4	1.1	0.14	31	5.44	6.83	0.16	3.46

Notes: 1. Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 30 June 2025.
2. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
3. The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.
4. Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
5. Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
6. Si, Fe, P, and MnO:SiO_2 are not tracked in Mineral Reserve estimation and Mineral Resource averages are used.
7. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

QPs for the Mineral Resource and their specific areas of responsibility are shown in Table 2.1.

11.11 Comparison with previous resource estimates

The first resource estimate for NORI Area D, completed in 2012, was 399 Mwmt of nodules and was based solely on historic samples.

In 2018 NORI completed a box core sampling campaign that focused on a small area near the centre of NORI Area D which was selected as a potential site for the Test Mining. Where box core sampling was conducted on a nominal 7 km by 7 km spacing and infilled with estimates of nodule abundance from seafloor photography on a 3.5 km by 3.5 km grid the Mineral Resource was classified as Measured. Where sampling was at a nominal spacing of 7 km by 7 km but did not have any additional photo-estimates of nodule abundance, the Mineral Resource was classified as Indicated. The additional samples resulted in an updated estimate of 383 Mwmt, consisting of 4 Mwmt Measured, 34 Mwmt Indicated and 345 Mwmt Inferred Mineral Resources.

The 2019 exploration campaigns added box core sampling at a spacing of 10 km by 10 km across most of the remainder of NORI Area D. The 2020 Mineral Resource estimate (AMC, 2021) was 356 Mwmt, consisting of 4 Mwmt Measured, 341 Mwmt Indicated and 11 Mwmt Inferred Mineral Resources. Taking into account the conversion of the majority of Inferred to Indicated Mineral Resources, the remaining Inferred Mineral Resource decreased by 26 Mt as a result of excluding the volcanic high domain in the south-eastern corner of NORI Area D, due to uncertainty about the occurrence of nodules in this area. The 2020 resource estimate was also slightly higher in abundance (5.4% higher), and nickel (6.1% higher), cobalt (5.4% higher) and manganese (2.2% higher) grades than the 2018 estimate.

The differences in how the 2025 Mineral Resource was estimated, compared with the previous (2020) Mineral Resource estimate are:

- Addition of Campaign 7A and Campaign 8 nodule sampling.
- Exclusion of historic nodule samples.
- No top-cuts applied to nodule abundance or nodule grades.
- Modified experimental spatial variograms.
- Estimation of dry nodule abundance.
- Reporting of wet tonnage using dry nodule abundance and assuming average moisture content of 28%.

The 2020 Mineral Resource was estimated from wet nodule abundance, as measured in the box core samples. It was assumed that the moisture content was 24%. On a wet basis, the 2024 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate is 2% higher than the 2020 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate. On a dry basis, the 2025 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate is 3% lower than the 2020 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate.

12 Mineral Reserve estimates

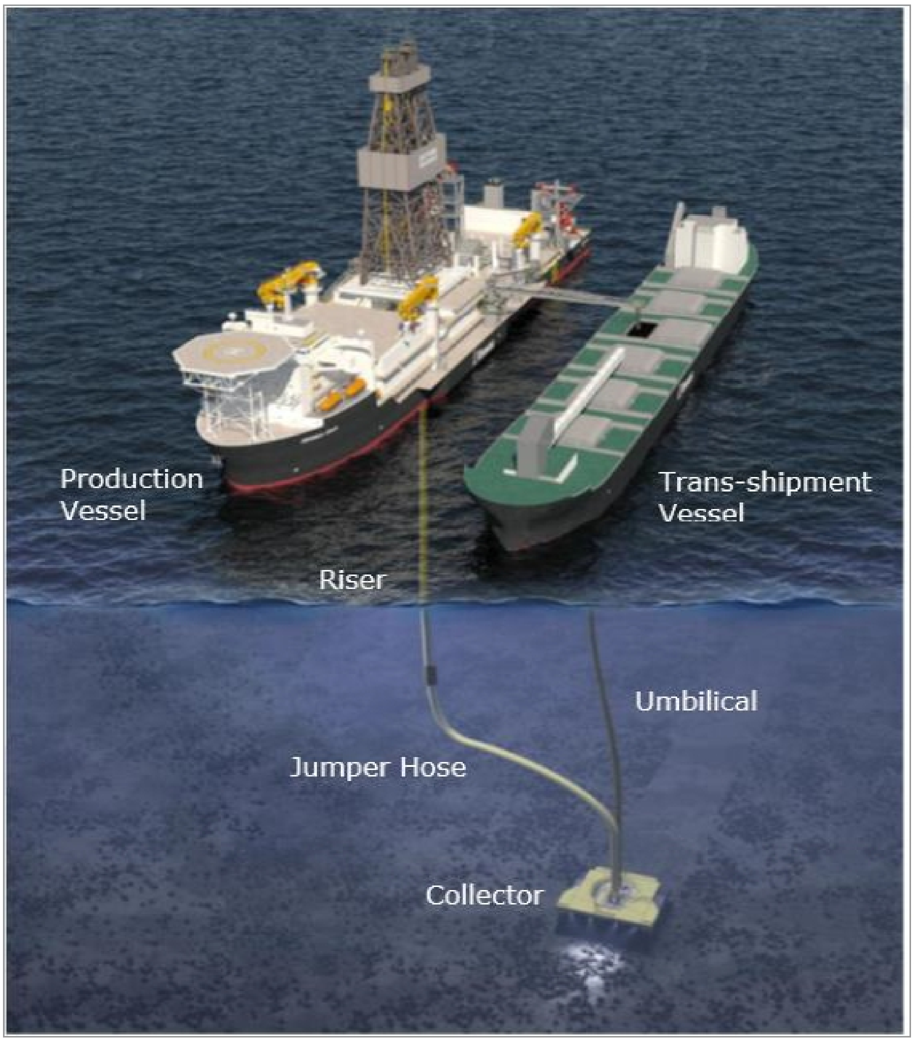
12.1 Introduction

12.1.1 Basis of the mine plan

Allseas, an experienced marine contractor, is collaborating with TMC to develop and operate a nodule collection system at NORI Area D, which is currently in the design phase. The proposed methodology for this system is novel. While a full-scale operating model has not yet been built, a 40% scale prototype designed for production of up to 420 ktpa has been successfully field-tested. The mine plan for the NORI Area D Mineral Reserve is based on the projected capabilities and characteristics of this nodule collection system.

A graphic depicting the main components of the nodule collection system (not to scale) proposed for NORI Area D is shown in Figure 12.1. The main system components are summarized below at a high level and described in more detail in Section 13.

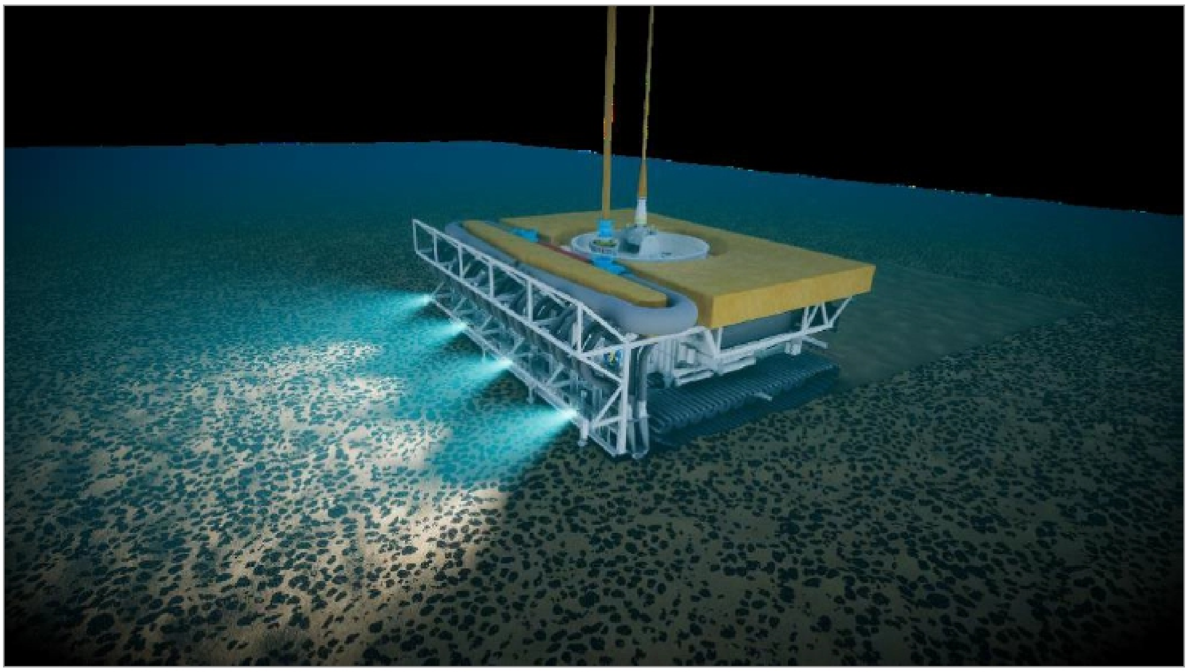
Figure 12.1 Graphic depicting nodule collection system



Source: Allseas 2024.Note in this illustration the vessel referred to as the 'Trans-shipment vessel' is to be considered the same as the Transfer Vessel (TV) as described in section 13.2.8.

The design of the nodule collection system involves the use of a remotely operated, 15 m wide, self-propelled, tracked collector (collector, see Figure 12.2) tethered to a production vessel (PV) by a flexible jumper hose, riser-and-air-lift vertical transport system (VTS) and communication and power cables (umbilical). The collector will track preferentially across the seafloor in a north-northwest (NNW) to south-southeast (SSE) direction (and SSE to NNW) to align with the seafloor geological strike and the direction of seafloor ridges.

Figure 12.2 Graphic depicting the collector



Source: Allseas 2024

The collector will use specially designed coandă nozzles at the front of the collector that uses water flow to create a low pressure zone to mobilize and collect nodules that are in the top 3-5 cm of the seafloor. Nodules will be drawn into the collector and pass through a counter-current decantation separator (hopper) to separate the lighter fractions for return to the seafloor. The remaining material is then pumped via the flexible jumper hose and the riser to the PV, where dewatering and final separation occurs by screening and hydrocyclones. Screened and dewatered nodules are transferred via conveyor to storage holds within the PV. collector speed will be varied according to nodule abundance to maintain steady state nodule production.

When the holds of the PV are full, a trans-shipment vessel will pull alongside, an off-loading conveyor deployed, and nodules transferred via conveyor to the hold of the trans-shipment vessel for later transfer to a bulk carrier for transport to a processing facility. Dynamic position on the PV and trans-shipment vessel will be used to maintain relative positioning for the two vessels to facilitate nodule transfer. Nodule collection activities will continue during nodule offload to the trans-shipment vessel.

TMC and Allseas have undertaken a proof-of-concept Test Mining in the proposed NORI Area D Exploitation Contract Area using a 6 m wide pilot collector (Test Mining), 40% of the width of the proposed 15 m production-scale collector. Details of the proposed collection and support equipment and collection method are discussed in Section 13.

Launch and recovery of the seafloor collector and VTS will be managed by a launch and recovery system (LARS) that includes umbilical management, derrick, riser hang-off, and riser line management and storage system aboard the PV. This will allow for maintenance and repair or relocation activities, which have been factored into operating hour calculations for mine planning.

Mine planning was undertaken using the geological model prepared by MARGIN and AMC and discussed in Section 11, seafloor geotechnical assessment undertaken by Allseas from information provided by APYS (see section 7.14), and seafloor topographical constraints and analysis provided by MARGIN (see section 7.13). Updated mine planning parameters and assumptions were developed to reflect the requirements of the nodule collection system in agreement with TMC and Allseas.

The mine plan underlying the Mineral Reserve (Mine Plan) was developed using standard terrestrial mining industry resource planning software, Datamine, Deswik, and Minemax. However, a standard terrestrial industry approach to mine planning is not appropriate due to the two-dimensional distribution of nodules on the seafloor and equidimensional geometry of a typical mining block not being suitable for the requirements of the nodule collection system proposed, which is better represented by a long thin block. A mine planning approach of using very long thin collection blocks was adopted to better reflect the mining strategy of the nodule collection system proposed by Allseas and TMC was adopted.

AMC developed the previous conceptual mine plan for exploiting NORI Area D in 2021 for the Initial Assessment (AMC, 2021). The Mine Plan in this technical report has built off the Initial Assessment mine plan and has refined the collection strategy to focus initial collection activities on the Initial Mining Area.

12.1.2 Qualified Person responsibility

Because of the unique nature of nodules and lack of operating examples of a nodule collection, transport and processing operation, multiple QPs are required to provide expertise for various specialized aspects of the Modifying Factors used to convert a Mineral Resource to a Mineral Reserve to meet the S-K 1300 definition for a Qualified Person to have at least five years of experience in the activity being undertaken to estimate Mineral Reserves.

In preparing inputs to the Mine Plan and in estimating the Mineral Reserve, QPs have relied on information provided by the registrant, TMC, which is discussed in Section 25.

The following appropriately qualified and experienced QPs have signed off on the Modifying Factors for the following areas:

- Mine planning and the Mineral Reserve estimation process (AMC)
- Design and operation of the collector, VTS, PV, surface support vessels, and impact of the geotechnical analysis on collector design (TMC)
- Seafloor geotechnical analysis (APYS)
- Seafloor slope and short-scale geological feature modelling (MARGIN)
- Nodule processing (Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd)

- Nodule marketing, environmental and social assessment, operating expenditure (OPEX) and capital expenditure (CAPEX) estimation (TMC), and
- Economic Analysis (Lanasera)

12.2 Key assumptions and methods used

12.2.1 Environmental Modifying Factors

Nodules will only be collected from areas that are approved after environmental assessment. Restricted environmental areas, including sensitive environmental habitat areas and buffers surrounding them, such as seamounts, the area of the Test Mining, and a Preservation Reference Zone are not considered for nodule collection.

Environmental Modifying Factors were provided by the registrant, derived from the following sources:

- Assessment by TMC of sedimentation modelling results (see section 17.3) and observed instances of mobilized seafloor sediment on sloped seafloor was undertaken to determine the stand-off distance required to protect restricted environmental areas, and the proposed NORI Area D Commercial Recovery Permit Area boundary from encroachment by sediment generated by collection operations. A 1,000 m exclusion zone was applied to sensitive environmental zones and the boundary of the proposed NORI Area D Commercial Recovery Permit Area
(see Section 17).

- Seafloor current assessment undertaken by DHI (see Section 17) and TMC determined that seafloor currents were highly variable but there was no overall trend in direction, so that seasonal changes in seafloor currents are not expected to materially impact sedimentation patterns, and therefore no account of seasonality was required for collector path selection.

Material Modifying Factors resulting from environmental restrictions to identify the areas available for collection are discussed in detail in Section 17 and shown in Table 12.1. Once collection operations commence, operations experience will be used to review, and where necessary, revise buffer zone distances.

Table 12.1 Environmental Modifying Factors

Parameter	Unit	Value	Source
Buffer zone – lease boundary	m	1,000	Section 17
Buffer zone – Test Mining area	m	1,000	
Buffer zone – Preservation reference zone	m	1,000	
Buffer zone – environmental zones	m	1,000	

12.2.2 Geotechnical analysis Modifying Factors

Geotechnical analysis was undertaken by APYS on the seafloor geotechnical data collected during the box-core sample collection and test work program to determine the geotechnical character of the seafloor (see Section 7.14) to enable Allseas to determine, amongst other things, the ability of the seafloor in NORI Area D to support the production-scale collector during traversing slopes of up to 4°, turning, and traversing over ground on which it has already travelled.

Geotechnical Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- Geotechnical soils data was systematically collected across the NORI Area D site from box core tests and samples, and in situ testing.

- An assessment of the soils across NORI Area D, including the Project Zero area, was made based on observations from the fieldwork and onshore laboratory testing reports and a generalized geotechnical classification from which summary strength ranges were determined. In general terms, the seafloor across NORI Area D can be classified as a silty clay, that in parts is very silty and sometimes more like a silt. There are exceptions to this classification associated with depressions or high areas of seafloor such as ridge lines, abyssal hills and volcanic features.

- Further seafloor investigation was conducted in the Test Mining Area, which focused on high-definition characterization of the upper 0.50 m of the seafloor using box core data and deeper classification using seabed CPT investigation. The results confirmed the results from the wider NORI Area D, although they were more consistent and less complex than the Project Zero Area and NORI Area D overall, due to the smaller area and the dominance of the flat geoform domain.

12.2.3 Geotechnical design Modifying Factors

APYS provided seafloor geotechnical analysis to TMC and Allseas for use in collector design.

Geotechnical design Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- APYS's geotechnical analysis was used by Allseas, which, along with feedback from the Pilot Test Mining (which identified no trafficability issues for the Pilot collector), was used as a basis to estimate the bearing pressures for the design of the collector tracks that will be supported by the seafloor. The analysis by Allseas demonstrated that the shear strength of the seafloor will be sufficient, with the bearing pressures used for collector track design, to support the collector weight across the initial area planned for mining (Initial Mining Area) (Allseas, 2024a).

- Assessment by Allseas on the impact of seafloor substrate strength, collector speed, height of the Coandă nozzles and pressure of water through the Coandă nozzles on the depth of the collection layer and nodule recovery, and how it varies by seafloor domain, slope and collector speed. Visual control of the depth of collection is unlikely due to redeposition of sediments from previously mined collection paths and therefore collection depth and recovery may be variable. As nodule distribution analysis determined that 96% of nodules are in the top 5 cm, the depth of collection layer is designed to be 3 cm - 5 cm (Allseas, 2024b).

Geotechnical analysis for collector design

The design specifications provided by TMC for the maximum seafloor slope on which the collector can safely traverse and collect nodules is 4°. The collector's ability to operate on 4° slopes is supported by geotechnical analysis. There were no slopes encountered in the Test Mining above this angle, although once nodule collection commences, operating experience may show that this slope can be increased.

Collector bearing capacity, sinkage, stability analyses for various load cases, seabed release forces, track slip and traction analysis were assessed by Allseas (Allseas, 2024a) to determine slope limitations and to assess turning capabilities. No restrictions, other than the maximum 4° slope limit, were identified in this analysis to limit collector trafficability in NORI Area D, based on the geotechnical parameters provided to Allseas by APYS.

The design of the collector tracks is based on nodule production up to a speed of 0.5 m/s at slopes of up to 4°. The collector can drive at slopes from 4° - 10°, at a linearly reduced speed down to 0.2 m/s (10° slope), which is for driving only, not nodule collection.

Assessment of collection depth

The design objective for the collector height adjustment system to control nodule pickup efficiency is to be able to control nozzle height to within 20 mm of the required level, with a target bandwidth of 40 mm from the nodule reference level. Evaluation of the Test Mining height adjustment system performance confirmed the 20 mm accuracy bandwidth.

Trials at Deltares also confirmed an erosion depth consistent with design objectives. No additional allowance was made for nodule loss from not achieving the design collection depth.

Geotechnical Modifying Factors are shown in Table 12.2.

Table 12.2 Geotechnical Modifying Factors

Parameter	Units	Value	Source
Maximum slope for nodule collection	Degrees	4	Allseas 2024a and Allseas 2024b
Percent of area lost to trafficability	%	0	Allseas 2024b
Percent of area where nodule collection depth fails to reach 3-5 cm collection layer	%	0	Assumption

12.2.4 Seafloor topography model Modifying Factors

Analysis of the seafloor topography data from AUV and vessel-based multi-beam data was undertaken by MARGIN to characterise the NORI Area D seafloor according to seafloor slope and the presence of geological features (see Section 7.14) that will be large enough or deep enough to disrupt Collector operations (geo-obstacles). Short-scale geological features were characterised by Allseas depending on the production impact to the Collector (loss of nodules by having to avoid geo-obstacles and productive time lost). The physical dimensions of what constitutes a geo-obstacle will be refined with increased definition of the Collector design specifications.

Seafloor topography Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

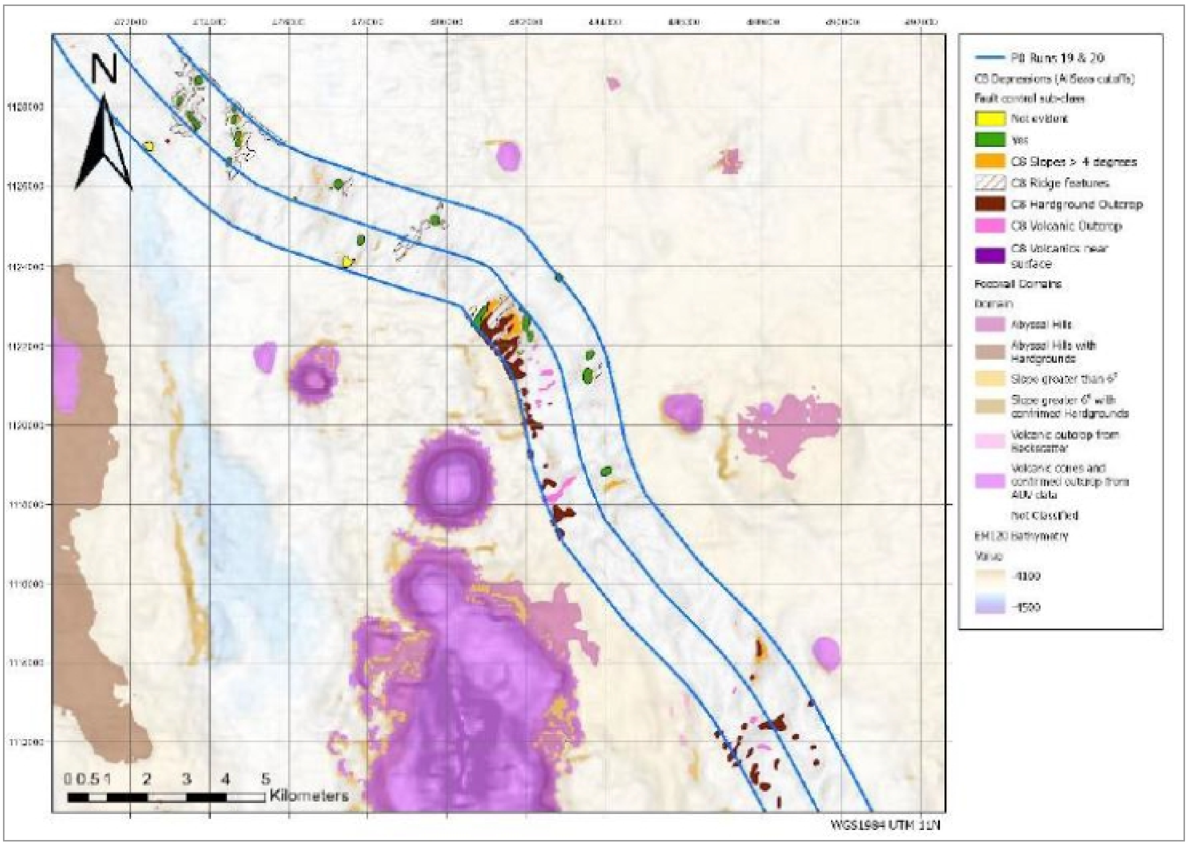
- A geo-obstacle probability model was developed for the NORI D lease. This was based on modelling the proximity of geo-obstacle features mapped from (limited) high-resolution AUV geosurvey data to larger-scale geological domains mapped primarily from vessel-based bathymetry data. The model predicts the probability of depression-features above 0.3 m depth, 2 m diameter and > 4° slope angle cut-off criteria. The model was used to derive a probability heat-map of depression-feature occurrence in areas without detailed AUV geosurvey data. In addition, this model predicts the probability of slopes > 4° that are associated with broader-scale seafloor geomorphology (abyssal hill slopes and hummocky terrain within the abyssal valleys). The model was subsequently calibrated with detailed AUV geosurvey data acquired in the Initial Mining Area. The probability model was used to assess nodule losses, excising areas with slopes greater than 4° and with geological features that will disrupt collection activities, such as depressions, hardground or volcanic outcrop areas.

- Analysis of the distribution of nodule type with seafloor topography data was undertaken by MARGIN to confirm that there was an association between nodule type and seafloor domain (see Section 11). Type 1 nodules can be associated with both flat terrain and hummocky terrain. Type 2 and 3 nodules can be located within individual geo-obstacle depression features, and also within well-developed hummocky terrain. Type 2 and 3 nodules have not been observed to date in flat, smooth terrain. This analysis identified that separate allowances do not need to be made by nodule type, as the different nodule types generally occur in distinct areas.

Expected nodule losses are different for Type 1 nodules and Type 2/Type 3 nodules. Type 1 nodules typically occur in seafloor with a higher probability of slope <4° and low nodule loss resulting from geo-obstacles. Type 2/Type 3 nodule distribution is more typically in seafloor with a lower probability of slope up to 4° and higher nodule loss from geo-obstacles.

Detailed mapping results of the area proposed for the initial Collector runs (Runs 19 and 20) were used by MARGIN to derive probabilistic estimates of the area affected by short-scale geological features. Estimates were divided into four probability classes (see MARGIN 2024 and MARGIN 2025). Figure 12.3 shows a plan of the different types of geo-obstacles identified by detailed AUV mapping of the seafloor in the central area of Runs 19 and 20.

Figure 12.3 Graphic depicting seafloor Geo-obstacles in the central section of Runs 19 and 20



Source: MARGIN

This assessment identified that of the 235 km^2 mapped, approximately 24 km^2 (10.4%) consisted of areas that will be inaccessible to the Collector, such as depressions, slope areas above 4° or hardground or volcanic outcrop areas (collectively, Geo-obstacles) from which nodules could not be collected).

Geo-obstacles covered 3.8% of the area modelled as Class 4 (low probability), 7.5% of Class 3 (low-moderate probability), 19% of Class 2 (moderate-high probability), and 37% of Class 1 (high probability). Type 1 nodules were typically found in Class 3 and 4 areas and Type 2 and Type 3 nodules in Class 1 and 2 areas.

12.2.5 Nodule loss from Geo-obstacle Modifying Factors

Analysis of the MARGIN short-scale geological features probability models was used by AMC as the relevant QP to estimate nodule losses during collection. Visual assessment of these areas showed that, in addition to the area covered by the Geo-obstacles themselves, the Collector may not be able to access the areas between adjacent Geo-obstacles, isolating the nodules in these areas from collection. As a result, an allowance for additional nodule loss was included by AMC to account for the areas that will be sterilized for nodule collection in and around geo-obstacles.

Table 12.3 shows the area covered by Geo-obstacles by probability class in Run 19 identified by MARGIN (column A). AMC assumed the loss of nodule tonnage will be approximated by loss of area available for collection. AMC also assumed that nodules loss due to inaccessibility will be the same for all types of nodules as the nodule loss will be a combination of the nodules lost from the area covered by the Geo-obstacles and additional nodule loss from areas between geo-obstacles. The more frequent the Geo-obstacles, the higher the losses between Geo-obstacles will be, so that an additional 100% nodule loss was assumed for Class 1 areas, 50% for Class 2, 25% for Class 3 and no additional loss for Class 4 (column B). For example, in probability Class 2, 17.2% of the area is estimated to be Geo-obstacles and the allowance for adjacent area losses is estimated as 8.6% (17.2 x 50%). The combined nodule loss from Geo-obstacles by probability class is shown in column C.

Table 12.3 Geo-obstacle probability in Run 19 by probability class

Probability Class	(A) Geo-obstacle (% of Area)	(B) Allowance for adjacent Area Loss	(C) Type 1/2/3 Nodule Loss (% t)
1 (>75% Geo-obstacle)	35.3	100%	71
2 (50-75% Geo-obstacle)	17.2	50%	26
3 (25-50% Geo-obstacle)	7.0	25%	8.7
4 (<25% Geo-obstacle)	5.5	0%	5.5
Average across Run 19	10.4	-	

Note: Adapted from MARGIN 2025

12.2.6 Resource model Modifying Factors

The resource model nodule contains grades for each of the metals of interest (manganese, nickel, cobalt and copper), nodule abundance (kg/m^2), nodule type, nodule density, nodule moisture, and nodule size distribution (see Section 11). This model was the basis on which production and revenue estimates were developed.

Resource model Modifying Factors were derived by from the following sources:

- Assessment of the distribution of nodules within the box-cores to determine the proportion of nodules in the near-seafloor collection layer (5 cm) and how this varies by geological domain, nodule type, and seafloor slope. Analysis identified that 96% of nodules are in the 5 cm layer immediately below the seafloor (see Section 11).

- Assessment of the distribution of nodules by size within the box-cores to determine the proportion of Type 1, Type 2, and Type 3 nodules (characterised by size) in each box core to determine the distribution of nodules by Type across the resource model.

Modifying Factors affecting the resource model are shown in Table 12.4.

Table 12.4 Resource model Modifying Factors

Parameter	Units	Type 1 Nodule Area	Type 2/3 Nodule Area	Source
Nodules in collection layer (top 5 cm)	%	96	96	From AMC box core analysis (Section 11)

12.2.7 Nodule collection Modifying Factors

Nodules will be collected from the seafloor by a remotely operated Collector, with sediment removed by the Collector hopper (counter current flow decantation), and then pumped to the VTS and onto the PV, where nodules fines are separated during dewatering (screens and hydro cyclones) before nodules are stored in the hold.

Nodule collection Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- Collector engineering and design specifications were used by Allseas to confirm the physical dimensions and capabilities of the Collector (Allseas, 2024), including Collector width, weight, length, turning circle, maximum speed on different seafloor slopes, and availability.

- Sedimentation analysis from Collector and VTS operations was undertaken by DHI for the Test Mining and the proposed operation (see Section 17). Analysis undertaken by DHI identified that sediment from previous collection paths will form an unconsolidated suspended layer above the seafloor that will obscure nodules and previous Collector paths but will not necessarily impact nodule recovery on adjacent collection paths. No adjustment to collection efficiency factors was applied. During the Test Mining, sedimentation of 2-5 cm was observed with no impact on recovery efficiency.

- Collector control analysis was undertaken by Allseas to determine the offset distance between Collector paths that will allow the Collector to maximize production by avoiding tracking over already mined seafloor, despite optical visibility being obscured by sedimentation from previous Collector paths. Forward looking sonar imaged the previoustrack edge very well during the Test Mining and other technologies, including radar and Lidar are being tested to determine their applicability. An offset distance of 1.0 m was recommended by Allseas (Allseas, 2024).

- A field efficiency factor was used by Allseas to recognize lost production from turning the Collector around at the end of a collection path, operating in and around Geo-obstacles. Allseas estimated a field efficiency of 85% when the Mine Plan included long (+80 km) collection paths, potentially decreasing with the adoption of shorter collection paths where Collector turning activities are occurring more frequently.

- Umbilical and VTS movement simulation modelling and PV capabilities were used by Allseas to evaluate single Collector operations. Two Collectors tethered to a PV increases operational complexity, and more detailed analysis is ongoing to assess how two Collectors can be safely and effectively connected to the appropriately sized VTS without the VTS limiting production or Collector umbilical entanglement impacting production. For the mine plan and Mineral Reserve, it has been assumed that two Collectors can be safely and productively tethered to a PV. Additional tethered Collectors were not considered viable for the PV *Hidden Gem* and this assumption has been applied conservatively to the additional vessels in the NORI Area D mine plan.

- Operating experience in the Test Mining, experience in marine operations, and simulation modelling of umbilical and VTS movements were used by Allseas to estimate the impacts of turning the Collector, including a 180° turn to retrace its movements along a parallel trace to the previous collection path.

- Similarly, operating experience in the Test Mining, experience in marine operations, and simulation modelling of umbilical and VTS movements were used by Allseas to estimate the impacts of having to relocate the nodule collection system (Collector and VTS) to the next mining location . The method of relocation will depend on the distance of relocation and seafloor conditions.

- VTS test work and Test Mining experience were used by Allseas to confirm the range of physical capabilities of the VTS in transporting nodules to the PV. Prototype validation tests are ongoing as part of the commercial scale equipment development. For example, airlift prototype noduleslip velocity tests are ongoing and jumper wear/abrasion, corrosion riser coating wear and resistance tests are planned, with results to inform the engineering and design specifications for the various VTS components (Allseas, 2024).

- Requirements for the physical and mechanical capabilities of the Collector, VTS, and PV were derived from a weather downtime analysis and the preliminary operating and maintenance model (Allseas, 2024).

Collector width

A 15 m wide collector was selected by Allseas based on back-calculating production requirements of 1.5 Mwmtpa of nodules per collector using an average nodule abundance of 17 kg/m^2 with a nominal collector speed of 0.4 m/s operating for 75% of annual hours at a field efficiency of 85% and Nodule Recovery of 77% with a buffer of 5%.

Time spent in lower abundance areas will impact overall production if it can’t be compensated elsewhere in the Mine Plan with either higher speeds, operating hours, field efficiency or nodule recovery. For example, collection speed can be increased up to 0.5 m/s to compensate for lower abundances. In practice this means an abundance of 0.4/0.5 x 17 = 13.6 kg/m^2 is the minimum average abundance on which production targets can be maintained. A component of the path simulator tool and Monte Carlo tool development will be to confirm that production from lower abundance areas does not impact achievement of yearly production targets.

Collector speed

The design of the collector is based around a nominal speed when collecting nodules of 0.4 m/s, based on experience with the Test Mining, although variable speeds are contemplated for functions ranging from 0.35 m/s in high nodule abundance areas to 0.75 m/s when nodule production is not occurring.

The impact of hummocky (including rounded mounds) grounds on collector speed was also assessed. These areas are associated with the occurrence of Type 2 and Type 3 nodules. However, looking at the processed detailed bathymetry data and the collector propulsion and maneuverability analysis, the QP considers that a reduced collector speed in these areas is not necessary. The collector should be able operate in these areas at the same speed as the abyssal plain as the wavelength of the hummocks at 100 m – 200 m is significantly longer than the vehicle and thus unlikely to impact it. However, there may be a reduced field efficiency due to the more complex collection path and inefficiencies required to avoid the relatively higher number of Geo-obstacles.

Allseas is developing a collection path simulation tool that uses artificial intelligence techniques to optimize production operations by mapping the most efficient collection paths to take in avoiding Geo-obstacles (see Section 13). Field efficiency will be further refined with the collection path simulation tool results.

Impact of sedimentation

No assessment has been undertaken on the impact of sedimentation on collector speed or recovery. During the Test Mining, sedimentation of 2-5 cm was observed and no impact on recovery efficiency was observed.

Gap between collector runs

To maximize production by minimizing the time that the collector runs over ground from which nodules have already been collected, Allseas plan to leave a 1.0 m gap between collector runs. Once collection commences, the previous collector path is expected to be obscured by deposited sediment, and collector positioning technology (forward-looking sonar) and operational experience in being able to closely control the collector path alongside the previous path will be used to review and revise this gap distance.

The position reference system for the collector consists of a vessel-mounted ultra-short baseline acoustic positioning system (Kongsberg HiPAP 602 which is an industry standard) providing an absolute reference with an accuracy at 4,500 m depth of 2 m - 5 m, combined with a relative reference system consisting of a collector-mounted sonar scanning the seafloor to identify the previous track.

The ability of sonar to detect the previous track was tested during the Test Mining. Further improvements are expected in the collector position control to +/- 0.5 m with reference to the previous track. The track detection algorithm is under development and further prototype testing is planned by Allseas. Based on the 0.5 m accuracy, a 1.0 m buffer was selected to avoid the risk of overlapping runs that reduce the effective width of nodule collection.

Field efficiency

Field efficiency is a factor included in production estimation to account for sub-optimal seafloor routing due to turns, Geo-obstacles, and miscellaneous operational inefficiencies that the collector will face. This will result in a loss of efficiency and production time from performing turns at the end of each collection path at lower than nominal speed and traverses over previously mined areas, either due to turning or avoiding Geo-obstacles.

Allseas assume an average field efficiency of 85%, comprising the following production losses:

- Losses due to the collector and PV needing to P-turn at the end of each run.
- Losses due to navigating slopes, Geo-obstacles or unexpected ground conditions.
- Losses for other unexpected events.

Use of the collection path simulator tool and detailed seafloor mapping prior to deploying the collector to an area will assist in identifying an appropriate field efficiency factor to use for each area. If field efficiency falls too low due to increases in the seafloor complexity that the collector needs to navigate, production will be impacted or the area may be excised from the mine plan.

Number of tethered collectors per PV

The commercial scale Collector will be designed to achieve 1.5 Mwmtpa. To increase production above this level and maximize the productivity of each production vessel, multiple Collectors will be required. The work undertaken to date by Allseas in developing the equipment, infrastructure and procedures to successfully operate multiple Collectors in the field is limited to operation of two Collectors in parallel from the PV *Hidden Gem*.

As a result, the Mine Plan is based on a second collector operating in parallel with the first collector tethered to the same PV to achieve 3.0 Mwmtpa of nodule production (see section 12.2.3 for timing). Increases in production beyond that level requires the introduction of additional PVs, which will incorporate design improvements based on operating experience with the initial PV (see section 12.2.3 for timing).

The NORI Area D Mine Plan assumes that no more than two collectors can be tethered to each PV, regardless of the design improvements implemented. This assumption will be reviewed with increased operating experience in nodule collection.

Collector relocation time

If the Collector needs to be relocated to a new mining run, relocation can be achieved by three methods – driving, lifting and sailing, or recovery and redeployment.

For relatively short to moderate distances, relocation will be by driving the Collector. A maximum speed during production operations is 0.5 m/s and the maximum speed without production is 0.75 m/s (at 0° slope), so a trade-off calculation will be used in decision making.

To access areas for which access is obstructed by Geo-obstacles, such as steep cliffs or ridges, relocation will be by lifting the Collector from seafloor and sailing the PV at a slow speed of 0.15 m/s with the riser and Collector free-hanging beneath the PV. An allowance of 4 hours shutdown and 6 hours for restart will be required. This will be limited to areas with less than 50 m variation in seafloor height to avoid the risk of dragging the jumper over the seafloor causing damage.

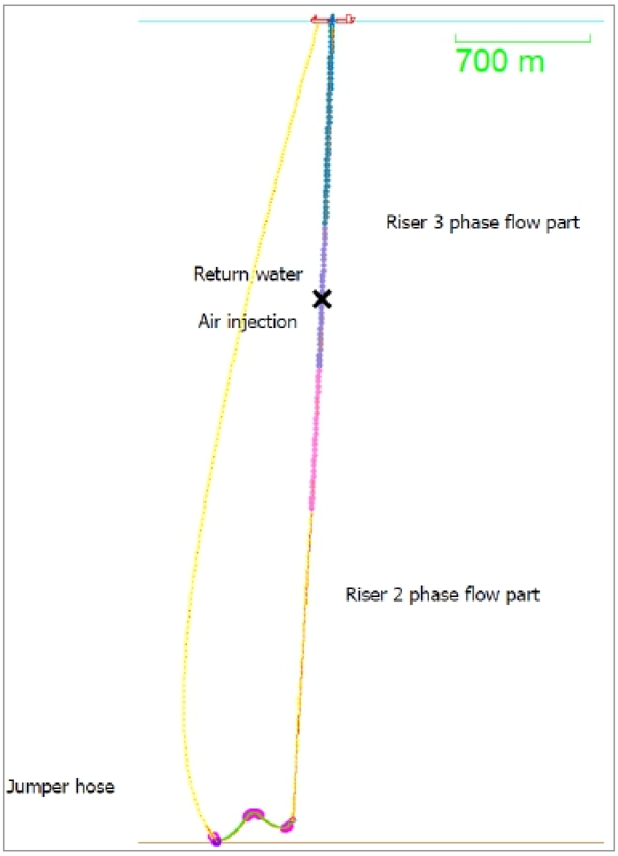
For longer distances, relocation by recovery of the Collector and riser and redeploying them in a suitable location. This will require 10 days to recover and redeploy along with time to transit the PV at a speed of 8 knots.

VTS and umbilical design

Design of the VTS, comprising the jumper hose, air riser, return water line and air injection point was developed by Allseas from experience with the Test Mining, testwork, and simulation modelling. Design specifications were developed for the diameter, depth ranges and construction materials for the various VTS sections (jumper hose, two-phase flow and three-phase flow sections), the depth and pressure of air injection, and the speed of nodules through the VTS.

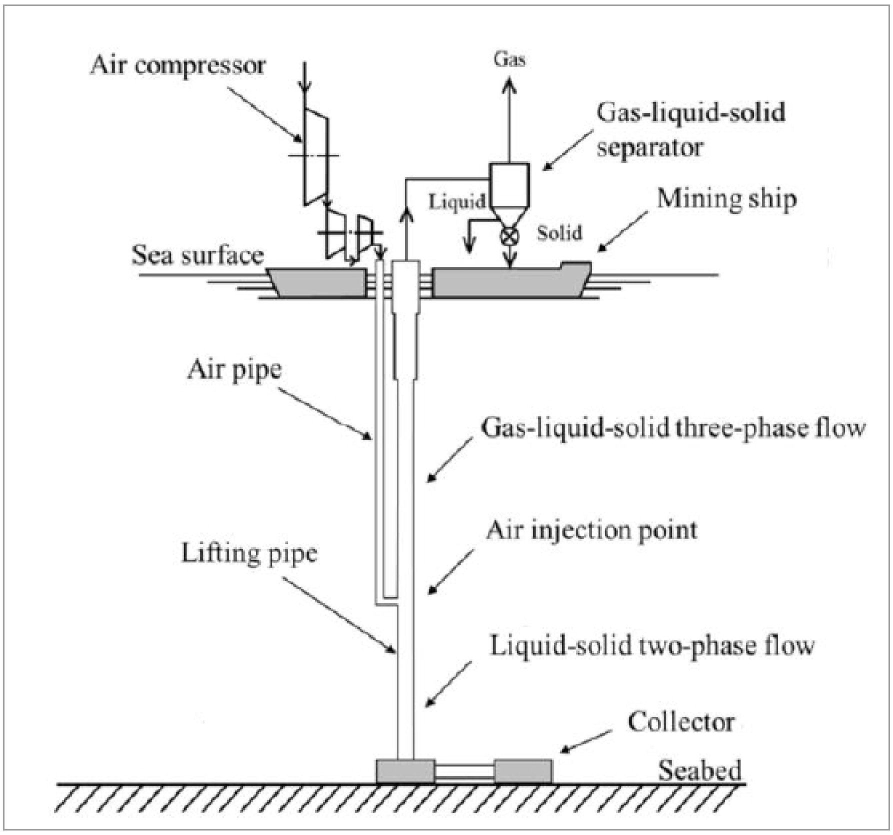
Figure 12.4 shows the basic working principle of the airlift and Figure 12.5 main VTS components when deployed.

Figure 12.4 Basic working principle of airlift



Source: Allseas

Figure 12.5 Main components of the VTS



Source: Allseas

Collector turnaround time

The collector turning radius in the Test Mining was designed for 30 m, with the minimum turning radius achieved of 17 m. Current engineering for the collector shows a 12 m turning radius can be achieved.

If a turn of 180° is required at the end of a collection path, both the collector and the PV make a “P-turn” together to manage the umbilical tension, turn the collector 180°, revolve the PV around the collector, reconfigure umbilical tension, and commence the new collection path. There is a risk that umbilical and riser entanglement will occur during this process and a controlled turning pattern is required. During the Test Mining, P-turns took 1.5-2.0 hours, however, simulation using multibody dynamic time domain simulations to optimize the turning procedure in Orcaflex software is able to reduce this to 1.0 -1.5 hours.

System operating hours

Availability of system components were individually estimated by Allseas based on experience with marine operations (see Allseas 2024b), the Test Mining, allowances for weather conditions in the relevant area of the CCZ, and the maintenance program for the components of the collections system, including dry-docking requirements for vessels. Every five years during the vessel class survey, a more extensive maintenance program will be executed. These factors were used to determine collection operating hours per year.

Nodule collection

Nodule collection Modifying Factors are shown in Table 12.5.

Table 12.5 Collector system Modifying Factors

Parameter	Units	Value	Source
Collector collection width	m	15	Allseas 2024b
Collector speed - nominal operating	m/s	0.4	Allseas 2024b
Collector speed - nominal driving	m/s	0.75	Allseas 2024b
Losses due to re-sedimentation	%	0	Assumption
Gap between collection paths	m	1.0	Allseas 2024b
Field efficiency	%	85	Allseas 2024b
Maximum collectors per PV	no.	2	Analysis
Collector/PV turnaround time (P-turn)	hours	1.5	Test Mining Report
Collector relocation time - driving	hours	formula	Drive at 0.75 m/s
Collector relocation time -free-hang	hours	formula	10 hours + 0.15 m/s
Collector relocation time - recover/redeploy	days	10	Test Mining Report

12.2.8 Nodule recovery Modifying Factors

The collector will not be able to collect all of the nodules from the part of the seafloor that it traverses. The percentage of nodule tonnes that are transported to the storage hold of the PV as a proportion of the tonnes of nodules on the seafloor is called the Recovery. A proportion of nodules are picked up, with sediment, from the seafloor and enter the collector hopper, which separates the majority of sediment by counter current flow decantation, with sediment exiting the collector via the diffuser at the back of the collector. Nodules are then pumped to the VTS and onto the PV, where fine nodule and lighter materials are removed in the dewatering system (screens and hydrocyclones) before nodules are stored in the hold.

Recovery is a function of losses from all collection system components, including losses from:

- Nodules that are not in the top 3 cm to 5 cm of the seafloor.
- Nodules not entrained by the Coandă nozzles to enter the collector.
- Losses in the collector hopper during sediment removal.
- Losses in the VTS through breakdown of nodules colliding with other nodules and the VTS walls, resulting in fine particles that will be separated during dewatering.
- Losses in the dewatering system on the PV.

Nodule collection Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- Analysis by AMC that found 96% of the nodules were within the collection layer of the top 3 cm – 5 cm of the seafloor (see Section 11).
- Average Type 1 Nodule Recovery design specification for the collector to achieve during operations. Tests at the Deltares facility showed the design specification was reasonable.
- Analysis by Allseas of losses by system components using simulation models, trials, and the results of the Test Mining.
- The Test Mining area had flat, smooth seafloor and predominantly Type 1 nodules. Additional simulated nodule recovery tests were undertaken at Deltares with simulated seafloor and nodules. Analysis of the results of Deltares seafloor model simulation trials in tanks (see Allseas Hydraulic nozzle - test results Deltares 4, collector oversize and undersize analysis was undertaken by Allseas to estimate Type 1 nodule recovery.
- Recovery of Type 2/3 nodules was tested at Deltares and data was analyzed by Allseas. Based on their particle size distribution (see Figure 7.45) compared with the grizzly bar spacing at the inlet on the collector, a reduction of 20% (relative) was assumed. This is considered to be conservative by the QP.

Table 12.6 shows the Nodule Recovery by collection system component (Allseas 2025c) for Type 1 nodules.

Table 12.6 Nodule Recovery by collection system component (Type 1 nodules)

Source of loss	Units	Type 1
Nodules in the collection layer	%	96.0
Collector nodule recovery efficiency	%	84.3
Collector hopper loss	%	0.5
Hopper jets loss	%	1.5
Dewatering loss	%	2.0
Offshore transfer, transport and offloading	%	1.0
Nodule Recovery	%	77.0

Nodule Recovery was a key design input to the collector design for both the Test Mining and for the commercial scale collector. Estimates were derived for Type 1 nodules in flat ground from the Test Mining Report. Test Mining results (Table 12.7) show that five boxcore locations have both pre-collection and post-collection results. Based on an average of 16.8 kg/m^2 pre-collection abundance values, all residual post-collection abundance values are below 3.6 kg/m^2, indicating recoveries of >80%. Based on these results, the design Nodule Recovery was reasonable.

Table 12.7 Estimated Nodule Recovery by boxcore location (Type 1 nodules)

BOXCORE ID	SAMPLE LOCATION	POST - ABUNDANCE (Campaign 7B) [kg/m^2]	PRE - ABUNDANCE (Campaign 7A) [kg/m^2]	RECOVERY [%]
BC_473	TF_012	1.63	-	-
BC_474	TF_009	14.97	-	-
BC_475	TF_017	3.28	-	-
BC_476	TF_003	1.36	15.08	91%
BC_477	TF_015	4.20	21.72	81%
BC_478	TF_007_BCR1	3.10	17.07	82%
BC_479	TF_007_BCR2	3.52	17.07	79%
BC_480	TF_007_BCR3	3.02	17.07	82%
BC_481	TF_007_BCR4	15.66	17.07	8%
BC_482	TF_007_BCR5	8.08	17.07	53%
BC_483	TF_010	2.91	-	-
BC_484	TF_001	2.73	18.65	85%
BC_485	TF_016	0.51	14.37	96%
BC_486	TF_018	3.08	-	-

Nodule recovery is expected to vary as a function of nodule size. No allowance has been made to vary recovery with collector speed. While increased collector speed in the Pilot collector Test resulted in reduced nodule recovery, Allseas identified that the recovery impact was from the Pilot collector control issues in the trial caused by uncontrolled umbilical loads that will be rectified in the final design of the collector and umbilical. Allseas determined from Deltares trials that collector speed had minimal impact on recovery.

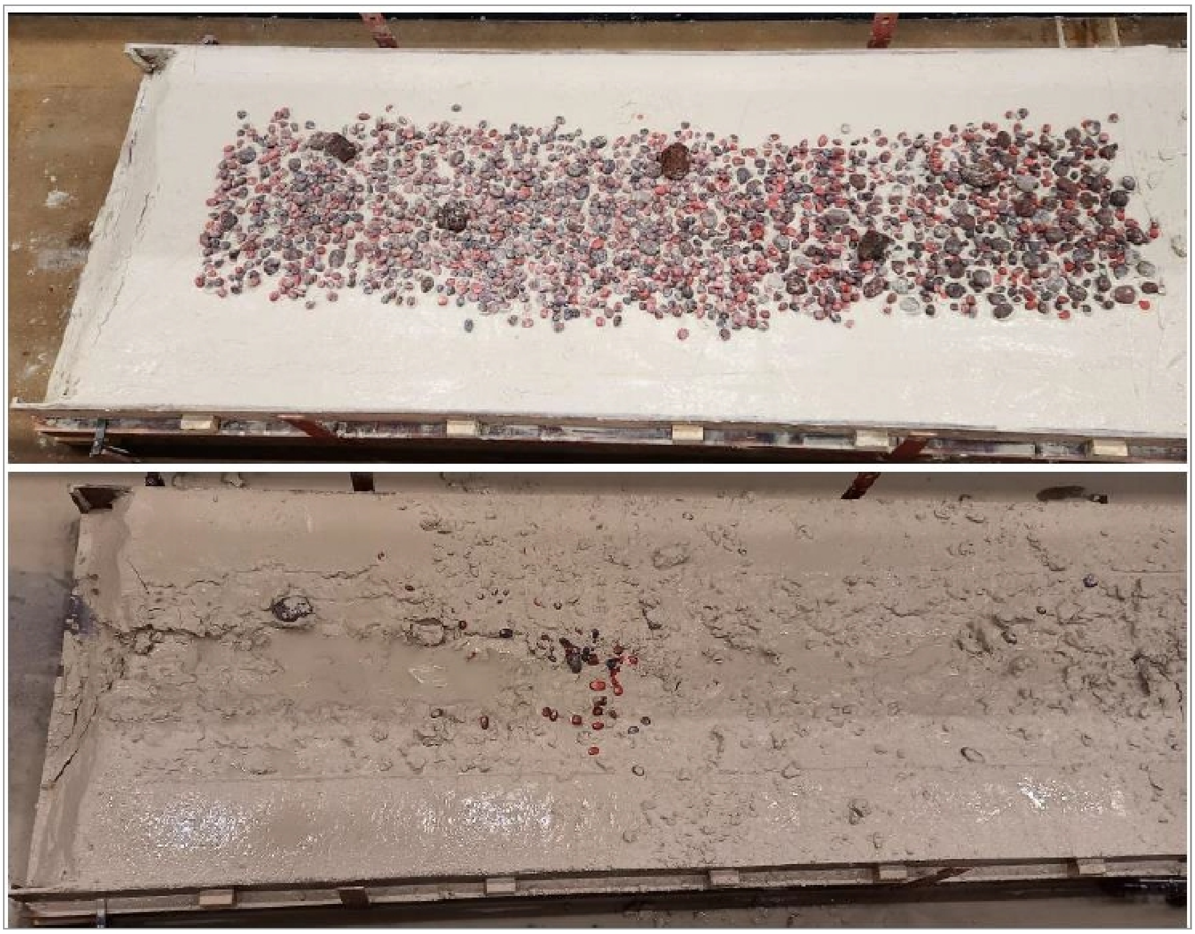
Deltares test results (Allseas, 2025c) showed that with the intended combination of Coandă nozzle parameters for jet thickness and flow velocity, the design Nodule Recovery could be achieved. Table 12.8 shows the results of test run 6, which formed the base case for subsequent test runs.

Figure 12.6 shows photographs of the Deltares test bed before and after Test run 6, showing that the majority of the simulated nodules lying on the test bed in the top part of the photo had been picked up by the simulated collector and are no longer on the test bed in the bottom part of the photo. This shows a high pick-up efficiency using the Test 6 combination of parameters for the simulated collector, even for the larger simulated nodules shown in the top of the photo.

Table 12.8 Deltares test run 6 base case Type 1 Nodule Recovery results

Test run 6					
Tray	Nodule abundance [kg/m^2]	Pre run [kg]	Post run [kg]	Pick-up efficiency [%]	Inside gitterbox [kg]
1	15	39.4	0.35	99%	-
2	20	52.5	4.6	91%	-
3	30	78.75	10.85	86%	-
Total		170.65	15.8	-	156.4

Figure 12.6 Deltares base case Type 1 Nodule Recovery photos



The collector's Coandă nozzle pick up performance is primarily impacted by the stand-off distance and the rejection of oversize nodules by the grizzly-bars mounted in front of the nozzles to protect the system against clogging. The grizzly-bar spacing is set to 75 mm and screening is expected along the width dimension (intermediate axis).

The main differences between Type 1 and Type 2/3 nodules (other than the terrain they are associated with) are the size, shape and their distribution on/embedding in the seafloor (see Section 11). Analysis on the available size distribution of Type 1, Type 2 and Type 3 nodules show that screening at 75 mm on the secondary axis provides a rejection of oversize of 0.7 -1.9% (Type 1), 16 - 30% (Type 2/3). This is based on similar length, width and height ratios of Type 2/3 and Type 1 nodules.

Prototype testing at Deltares and computational fluid dynamics analysis confirm there is no impact on pick up efficiency for nodules up to 120 mm in length. The reported higher embedment of Type 2/3 nodules will not affect recovery, as the Coandă nozzles will erode the top 3 cm of the seafloor and release those nodules.

However, results from Deltares test run 10 on Type 2/3 nodules (see Table 12.9), showed a reduced pickup efficiency in line with the size distribution analysis above, so a 20% relative reduction in Nodule Recovery was assumed for Type 2/3 nodules.

Table 12.9 Deltares test run 10 Type 2/3 Nodule Recovery results

Test run 10						
Tray	Nodule types	Installed	Pre run	Post run	Pick-up efficiency	Inside gitterbox
	[-]	[-]	[kg]	[kg]	[%]	[kg]
1	2/3	Normal	44.6	13.0	71%	-
2	1/2/3	Normal	44.6	10.35	77%	-
3	2/3	Pushed in	44.6	24.9	44%	-
	Under nozzle			2.85		
Total			133.8	51.1	-	86.2

Nodule Recovery Modifying Factors by Geo-obstacle probability class are shown in Table 12.10.

Table 12.10 Collection recovery by type and probability class Modifying Factors

Geo-obstacle Probability Class	Units	Type 1	Type 2/3
1 (>75% Geo-obstacle)	%	77	62
2 (50-75% Geo-obstacle)	%	77	62
3 (25-50% Geo-obstacle)	%	77	62
4 (<25% Geo-obstacle)	%	77	62

12.2.9 Marine operations Modifying Factors

Nodule collection operations will be controlled from the operating room on board the PV. Control operations will be supported by Allseas using its marine operating experience in personnel rostering/transfer and logistics. Once the storage hold of the PV is full, nodules will be transferred from the storage hold to the hold of a 50,000 t transfer vessel via a high-speed (2,500 t per hour) ship-to-ship conveyor mounted on a luffing and slewing boom. Collector operations are expected to continue during transfer operations to minimize loading impact on production.

Marine operations Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- Marine operations experience, prevailing weather conditions and the system operating model were used by Allseas to develop an operating hours model to determine, in conjunction with collector production rates, forecast ship-loading times for use in OPEX estimates and to ensure that ship-loading was not being undertaken during collector turning operations at the end of a collection path.

- Collector and PV interaction simulations were used by Allseas to model movements to determine effective maneuvering patterns to prevent entanglement of the umbilical causing damage or impacting production.

- Marine operations experience, prevailing weather conditions and the potential operating hours discussed above were used by Allseas to develop an operating hours model to determine, in conjunction with collector production rates, annual production forecasts (Allseas, 2024b).

12.2.10 Mine planning Modifying Factors

Mine planning was undertaken by AMC, using experience from layered bulk commodity and base metal terrestrial mining operations. Mine planning has evolved over the course of developing the Mine Plan, from the use of regularly shaped mining blocks and a conventional schedule optimization approach used in the Initial Assessment, to the elongated collector path blocks oriented in a NNE-SSW direction in alignment with surface weather conditions and seafloor geology and ridge directions.

Mine planning Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

- The mine plan is designed to minimize traversing over already mined seafloor, and where this occurs during operations, some proportion of the remnant nodules may be collected. However, the mine plan assumes no further recovery of nodules in these areas.

- Assessment of the resource model, the proposed collection method and the proposed collection equipment (the collector and VTS) was undertaken to assess an appropriate allowance for losses that may occur during the nodule collection process. In addition to environmental buffer zone losses discussed above, losses impacting nodule recovery are expected to result from gaps between collection paths, areas sterilized by Geo-obstacles, areas sterilized around restricted environmental zones, and collection, subsea separation and screening losses.

The estimation of the Mineral Reserve is derived from the following process:

- Mineral Resource estimation of nodules by nodule type and classification in the proposed NORI Area D Commercial Recovery area.

- Exclude the nodules within the NORI Area D Mine Plan Area that are in environmental, seamount, or lease buffers.

- Develop NNW-SSE trending mining blocks across NORI Area D. The Initial Mining Area was subdivided by 1,200 m wide blocks to provide better definition in the early years of the schedule and the remaining area outside the Initial Mining Area by wider 4,800 m blocks.

- Small areas below the 4 kg/m^2 minimum abundance cut-off used to define Mineral Resources and Inferred Mineral Resources are included in mining blocks to create viable mining blocks and are considered as the equivalent of dilution by the QP. Approximately 3% of Mineral Resources within NORI Area D are classified as Inferred.

- Exclude the nodules within the NORI Area D Mine Plan Area that can't be included in mining blocks in the Mine Plan because of short collector paths caused by unfavourable geometry due to isolation of areas between seamounts, environmental areas and the lease boundary.

- Exclude the nodules within the mining blocks that can't be picked up by the Collector (slopes >4°, gaps between collection paths, areas sterilized by Geo-obstacles, areas sterilized around restricted environmental zones, and collection, subsea separation and screening losses).

- Schedule nodule production by mining block within the Initial Mining Area followed by the remainder of NORI Area D.

- Confirm economics of nodule extraction via a financial model using mining blocks derived from Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources. For NORI Area D, all mining blocks are derived from Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources but may contain non-material amounts of Inferred Mineral Resource and unclassified material below the 4 kg/m^2 abundance cut-off included as dilution.

- On confirmation of positive economics, define the Mineral Reserve as those mining blocks derived from Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources for which the modifying factors are underpinned by a PFS level of assessment. For NORI Area D, only mining blocks within the Initial Mining Area are converted to Mineral Reserve.

Collector path length

The preferred strategy for collector path length is to maximize the collector path length to maximize efficiency by minimizing production losses from turning the collector around at the end of the path and to facilitate trans-shipment activities, with an initial target of 80 km. In developing the Mine Plan, it was realized that this was unsustainable due to the need for the collector path to constantly change from the preferred NNE-SSW direction to avoid the large number of seamounts (plus buffer zones) and Geo-obstacles within the Initial Mining Area. Allseas recognized the need at this point for a collector path simulation tool using artificial intelligence to help select the most efficient collector paths for a given area. This collector path simulation tool is still in development.

This strategy was used to inform the Initial Mining Area, with the initial collector paths, dubbed Runs 19 and 20, approximately 98 km long and 2 km wide, which will be sufficient for the first 2 years of production. The Mine Plan will be updated once operations commence, and operational experience will be used to update collection practices and preferred collector path lengths and orientations.

Mine planning beyond Runs 19 and 20 used a more systematic approach to assign areas to be mined to a series of mining blocks oriented in a NNW-SSE direction (mining blocks) to increase the utilization of the Mineral Resource. The intent in operation is still to maximize collector path length, and it will be the role of short-term mine planning to develop coherent collector paths by amalgamating the systematically developed mining blocks into the long collector paths required to maximize collection efficiency.

In defining the Mineral Reserve, mining blocks less than 10 km were omitted from the Mine Plan. It is not intended that collection paths of 10 km will be used in operation, with the shorter mining blocks to be appended to adjacent mining blocks to form reasonable collection paths. The QP expects that there will be few collection paths at an effective path length less than 20 - 25 km.

Production will initially be focused on the longest collection paths, with shorter paths left until later in the Mine Plan when nodule collection learnings have been used to develop and embed more efficient collection procedures and systems.

12.2.11 Nodule processing Modifying Factors

Nodules will be processed to generate manganese silicate and nickel/cobalt/copper alloy initially, followed by nickel/cobalt/copper matte from Year 3. Nodules are proposed to be toll-treated initially in a modified rotary kiln electric furnace plant. Commercial scale trials processing 2000t of nodules have been completed at the modified 1.3 Mwmtpa PAMCO Hachinohe smelting facility located in northern Japan. Once nodule production increases above 1.3 Mwmtpa, the additional nodules could be processed using the same processing flowsheet through processing facilities, anticipated to be located in Indonesia, to produce the same products at the same product qualities.

The study identified that a 6.4 million wet tonnes per annum (nodule equivalent) refinery could be operational within 5 to 6 years in support of TMC's timing requirements. In Year 6, this volume of matte generated in Indonesia will be sent to the new refinery while the remainder is sold to the market. By Year 10, 100% of generated matte will be processed in the United States. Products would include, nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate, copper cathode and ammonium sulfate.

Nodule processing Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

· Metallurgical analysis of nodules was used to determine the appropriate metallurgical flowsheet for processing the nodules and identify appropriate toll-treatment facilities that could be converted to the required metallurgical flowsheet.

· TMC undertook pilot testing at 70 t scale to demonstrate operating conditions and confirm metallurgical conditions and recoveries.

· The metallurgical flowsheet and the results of the metallurgical pilot test work was used by TMC, PAMCO and others to determine, for each toll-treatment facility, the processing throughput rate, products recovered, product quality, and metallurgical recovery to be delivered from that processing flowsheet.

· Overall product recoveries were used by TMC to determine overall processing plant OPEX.

Processing Modifying Factors developed by TMC and reviewed by CEA a as QP during the PAMCO pre-feasibility study[20] are shown in in Table 12.11.

Table 12.11 Nodule processing Modifying Factors

Process Step	Manganese Recovery (%)	Nickel Recovery (%)	Cobalt Recovery (%)	Copper Recovery (%)
Metal recovery to alloy	-	96.9	93.1	93.6
Metal recovery to matte	-	94.8	77.5	86.4
Metal recovery to sulfate	-	94.6	77.2	86.2
Manganese recovery as manganese silicate	98.9	-	-	-

12.2.12 Nodule marketing Modifying Factors

Nodules collected from NORI Area D will be marketed by TMC, who have undertaken analysis of a detailed assessment by base metals marketing specialists, Benchmark Mineral Intelligence (BMI) and CRU International Limited (CRU), of the product quality specifications required to market the proposed products, the price that could be achieved from the product and the realization costs for marketing the products.

Mineral Reserve Modifying Factors were derived from the following sources:

· Market assessments were undertaken by BMI and CRU to identify, in conjunction with metallurgical analysis, appropriate products to produce from nodules (see Section 16).

· Product assessments were undertaken by CRU to identify product qualities, and product prices, payabilities, and selling costs appropriate for those product qualities (see Section 16).

· Assessments were undertaken by TMC of government and third-party requirements to identify other costs associated with producing nodules and selling nodule products in the jurisdictions in which they are operating (see Section 16).

Forecast commodity price and marketing Modifying Factors were provided by TMC as QP and are summarized in Table 12.12.

[20] TMC 2024, Processing deep sea polymetallic nodules at PAMCO processing facility, June 2024

Table 12.12 Commodity price Modifying Factors

Parameter	Unit	Price	Payability – Alloy (%)	Payability – Matte (%)
Nickel metal	US$/t	$20,295	65%	80%
Nickel sulfate	US$/t	$21,633	-	-
Copper metal	US$/t	$11,440	60%	70%
Cobalt metal	US$/t	$56,117	44%	60%
Cobalt sulfate	US$/t	$55,198	-	-
Manganese contained in manganese silcate product	US$/dmtu	$5.46	-	-

12.2.13 Production target Modifying Factors summary

The NORI Area D project development strategy and forecast production ramp-up for the
Mineral Reserve was provided by TMC and reflects the following production timeline and production strategy:

· Year 0 – initial deployment, commissioning and ramp-up of a single collector and PV (Hidden Gem).

· Year 1 – operation of a single collector and confirmation of single collector operating parameters and procedures.

· Year 2 – upgrading of the riser and additional compressor spread to allow a second collector operating in parallel with the initial collector and tethered to the same PV.

· Year 3 – full production from two Collectors operating in parallel and the addition of PV2.

· Year 4 – full production from two collectors operating in parallel for Hidden Gem and PV2 and the addition of PV3 and PV4.

· Years 5-8 - half year production because of drydocking the PVs for the 5-yearly vessel class survey and sustaining capital works.

· Years 9 – full production from two Collectors operating in parallel on four PVs

· Years 10 - 13 – same activities as Year 5-8.

· Year 14 – same activities as year 9.

· Year 15 - 16 – same activities as years 10-13

· Year 17 – Demobilize PV3 and full production from two collectors operating in parallel on HG, PV2 and PV4.

· Year 18 – Demobilization of HG full production from two collectors operating in parallel on PV2 and PV4.

· Year 19 – demobilization of PV2 and PV4.

The production ramp-up Modifying Factors provided by TMC are shown in Table 12.13.

Table 12.13 Production targets

Parameter	Units	Value
Production – Year 0	Mwt	0.2
Production – Year 1	Mwt	1.0
Production – Year 2	Mwt	2.0
Production – Year 3	Mwt	5.0
Production – Year 4	Mwt	11.0
Production – Year 5-8	Mwt	10.5
Production – Year 9	Mwt	12.0
Production – Year 10-13	Mwt	10.5
Production – Year 14	Mwt	12.0
Production – Year 15-17	Mwt	10.5
Production – Years 18	Mwt	5.4
Production – Year 19	Mwt	0.0
Total production	**Mwt**	**164.1**

12.2.14 Economic Modifying Factors

OPEX and CAPEX were developed by TMC from a number of sources and are detailed in Section 18. Costs were used in a financial model with revenue forecasts developed by TMC from the Marketing Modifying Factors in an economic evaluation detailed in Section 19, to determine that extraction of the Mineral Reserve can be justified using reasonable financial assumptions.

Economic Modifying Factors were derived by TMC from the following sources:

· OPEX for the collector, VTS, and PV were derived by Allseas using its marine experience, experience during the Test Mining, and engineering first principles (see Section 18).

· CAPEX for the collector, VTS, and PV were derived by Allseas using its marine experience, Test Mining results, engineering first principles and vendor quotes (see Section 18).

· OPEX for the processing plant were derived by TMC using the toll-treatment agreement, experience of the processing plant operator (PAMCO in the first instance) engineering first principles and the results of processing test work which in the case of PAMCO involved two programs treating 22 t and 2,000 t respectively (see Section 18).

· CAPEX for the processing plant (capital recovery costs) is included in the tolling fee under the toll-treatment agreement between PAMCO and TMC. A similar arrangement will be arranged by TMC for processing additional nodules through other processing facilities (see Section 18).

· The location of the nodule processing plant, the transport vessel loading time and demurrage cost, and the processing plant off-loading facilities were used by TMC to estimate nodule transport costs (see Section 18).

· Corporate overheads associated with operating a nodule collection program in the CCZ were estimated by TMC from its experience with exploring in NORI Area D (see Section 18).

· General and administration (G&A) OPEX associated with operating a nodule collection program in the CCZ, including personnel and logistics costs to support an operation in the CCZ, were estimated by TMC from its experience with exploring in NORI area D, the Test Mining, and first principles (see Section 18).

· Environmental monitoring OPEX associated with operating a nodule collection program in the CCZ were estimated by TMC from its experience with exploring in NORI Area D, the Test Mining, commitments made in the Test Mining EIS and EMMP, regulatory requirements, and first principles (see Section 17).

· CAPEX for G&A, environmental monitoring, social impact programs and miscellaneous items, including the exploration, sampling, testwork and analysis, and studies programs associated with setting up and operating a nodule collection program in the CCZ, were estimated by TMC from its experience with exploring in NORI Area D and first principles (see Section 17).

OPEX was developed by TMC from a variety of sources, in conjunction with Allseas (off-shore) and PAMCO (nodule processing). OPEX unit costs are forecast to decline due to the economies of scale of that increased nodule production. The forecast annual OPEX to initiate production at NORI Area D with one collector (1.5 Mwmtpa capacity) and to expand production to two collectors and four production vessel to achieve 12 Mwmtpa are summarized at a high level in Section 18.6.

CAPEX was developed by TMC, in conjunction with Allseas (offshore). CAPEX estimates are based on the following requirements to reach 3.0 Mwmtpa to extract the Mineral Reserve:

· Offshore CAPEX:
  — 1 x PV and VTS
  — 2 x collectors
  — 1 x TV
  — Bulk carriers not included as a capital recovery charge will be included in contracts
  — 3 x support vessels
· Onshore CAPEX:
  — 2 x 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent US Refining Facility
· Onshore CAPEX:
  — Processing not included as a capital recovery charge will be included in contracts
  — Operations support facilities in Brisbane (Australia) and Delft (Netherlands)
  — Professional services
· Contingency

Initial CAPEX estimates provided by TMC to initiate production at NORI Area D and sustaining CAPEX are summarized in Section 18.5.

12.3 Mine planning method

The specific point of reference selected by the QP for the Mineral Reserve estimation process for stating Mineral Reserves is as delivered (wet) to the onshore processing plant, considered equivalent by the QP to a run-of-mine ore pad in front of the primary crusher for a typical terrestrial mine.

12.3.1 Resource model used for conversion to Mineral Reserves

The resource model described in Section 11 was used as the basis for converting the Mineral Resource to a Mineral Reserve. Mineral Resources are reported inclusive of Mineral Reserves.

Excised from the Mineral Resource for the Mine Plan were approximately 37 Mwmt (10%) from the following areas considered at this stage of the project to be environmentally sensitive:

· A preservation reference zone of 20 km x 20 km (plus 1,000 m buffer zones) in the north-east of the NORI Area D licence area.
· The Test Mining area (plus 1,000 m buffer zones) in the central west of NORI Area D.
· A buffer zone around the proposed NORI Area D Exploitation Contract Area boundary of 1,000 m, equating to approximately 758 km^2.
· Seafloor moorings without additional buffers.
· Volcanic seamounts plus 1,000 m buffer zones.

In addition, approximately 34 Mwmt (9%) of areas with seafloor slopes between 4° and 6° are not being considered for the Mine Plan and Mineral Reserve and were excised. The Mineral Resource already excluded areas of slope >6°.

12.3.2 Consideration of losses during mining

There are small areas within NORI Area D that are below the 4 kg/m^2 nodule minimum abundance cut-off used to define Mineral Resources. In addition, there are minor areas of Inferred Mineral Resources (approximately 3% of Mineral Resources). Both these areas were included in mining blocks to create viable mining blocks and are considered as the equivalent of dilution by the QP.

The consideration of losses that may occur when the material is mined (equivalent to ore loss and waste dilution for a typical terrestrial mine) was limited to assessment of the nodules that will not be able to be collected from the seafloor as described under Modifying Factors.

Anticipated material losses are outlined below:

- Nodules within the Initial Mining Area contained in seamounts and environmental zones and their buffers, and the buffer around the mining lease.
- Nodules on slopes above 4°.
- Nodules in the gaps between collection paths.
- Nodules lost in and around Geo-obstacles.
- Nodules not picked up by the Coandă nozzles of the Collector.
- Nodule losses within the Collector, VTS, dewatering system, and offshore transfer, transport and offloading.

12.3.3 Defining economic limits of extraction

The two-dimensional nature of nodule distribution without any requirement to move waste material and the consistency of grades across the deposit means that all areas of nodule abundance above 4 wet kg/m^2 were considered to be within the economic limits of extraction.

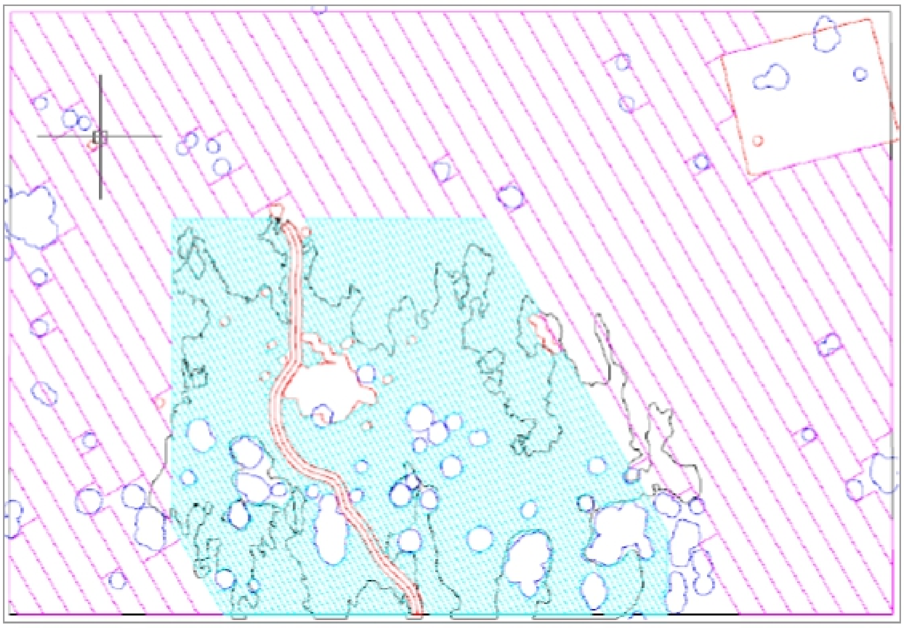
Three areas within the NORI Area D were considered within which to estimate Mineral Reserves:

- The full area of NORI Area D, for which TMC proposes to apply for a Commercial Recovery Permit or Exploitation Contract.
- A subset of the proposed NORI Area D defined as the Initial Mining Area (Project Zero), in which operations over the initial years will be conducted. The Project Zero Mining Area is shown in Figure 12.7
- A subset of the Project Zero Mining Area defined as the runs 19 and 20 in which detailed bathymetry surveys and monitoring have been undertaken and where collection activities will commence and be conducted over the first 18 months.

The starting area of runs 19 and 20 within the Initial Mining Area are shown in Figure 12.7 as a red outline stretching from north to south across the Initial Mining Area. This is the area with the most detailed bathymetric data and detailed assessments, and upon which the Modifying Factors were developed.

The QP for the Mineral Reserve estimation process considers that there are reasonable grounds to extend the Modifying Factors informed from run 19 to the full extent of the Initial Mining Area due to the commonality of geoforms and geo-habitats.

Figure 12.7 Initial Mining Area within the proposed NORI Area D



Source: AMC.

Notes: Cyan = mining runs in Initial Mining Area; black = primary characterized geohabitat; red = runs 19 and 20; magenta = mining runs in remainder of NORI Area D; red rectangle in northeast corner = preservation reference zone; blue = volcanic cones.

12.3.4 Initial Mining Area (Project Zero) development strategy

The Initial Mining Area for the initial years of collection operations, shown in Figure 12.7, was selected by TMC because it is:

· Representative of the primary geoform and habitat types studied during the environmental baseline and Test Mining offshore campaigns.

· In reasonable proximity to the Test Mining area so that the learnings in environmental monitoring and assessment from the Test Mining were transferrable directly to the first area to be mined.

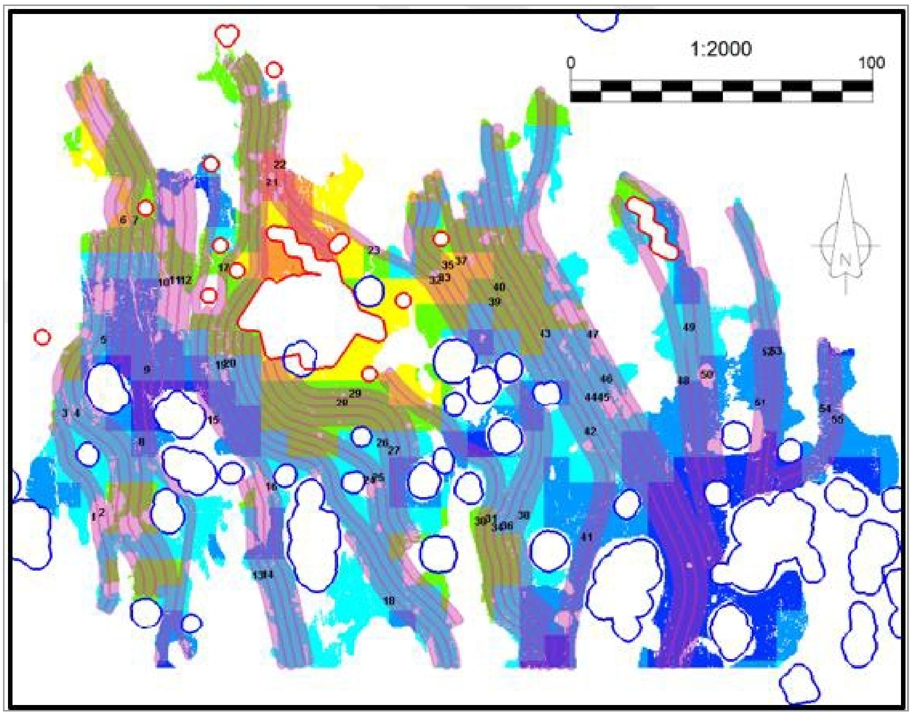
· In an area with consistent nodule abundance and lower probability of Geo-obstacles.

· In an area with high probability that seafloor slopes are generally less than 4°.

TMC expects that continued collection of environmental data in areas adjacent to the Initial Mining Area operations, and environmental monitoring experience in the first 18 months of operation will demonstrate that operations can extend outside the primary geoform and habitat types on which the selection of the Initial Mining Area was based. This will allow more efficient operations by including other geoform and habitat types to be included in mine plans in future years.

The requirement for practical collection operations to have as long a collector path as possible for the Initial Mining Area meant that collector paths extended a significant way across the Initial Mining Area and resulted in collector paths of varying lengths being developed. AMC developed a series of long collector paths across the Initial Mining Area, as shown in Figure 12.8, to show that long collection paths could be developed throughout the Initial Mining area.

Figure 12.8 Proposed Initial Mining area long collector paths



Source: AMC

The long Collector paths resulted in significant areas of the Initial Mining Area not being covered by Collector paths, reducing the proportion of nodules in the area that could be recovered by collection. TMC and Allseas reviewed the Collector paths shown above for length, direction and seafloor conditions and selected the approximately 85 km long Collector paths numbered 19 and 20 as the Initial Mine runs (shown in Figure 12.8), representing approximately 18 months of production for initial operations. Detailed bathymetric surveys were then run over this area to provide the detailed information required for production planning. This survey resulted in identification of additional Geo-obstacles that were not detected in the initial broad scale bathymetric surveys and helped to inform Modifying Factors related to Geo-obstacles.

An assessment of numerous development sequences showed that the long length of paths resulted in an averaging effect on grades and abundance, so that no material economic advantage was gained from attempting to bring higher abundance or higher-grade areas forward. The mine development strategy was, therefore, based on the most practical and lowest cost mining sequence.

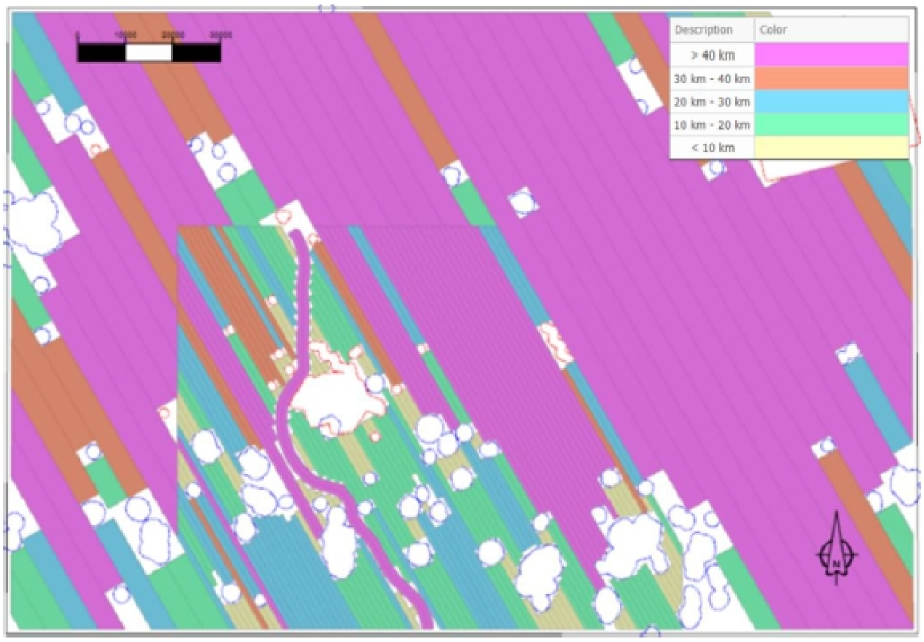
TMC expects that operations experience from the longer Collector paths such as Runs 19 and 20 will demonstrate that shorter Collector paths are possible and allow a more systematic collection approach over the Initial Mining Area to optimize nodule recovery. Following completion of Collector paths 19 and 20, collection operations are scheduled to follow a more systematic development.
A systematic approach of defining mining blocks along a 330° orientation to maximize resource utilization was adopted, with the paths shown in Figure 12.9 demonstrating that long collection paths are possible.

The full set of mining blocks selected for the mine plan for the Initial Mining Area is shown in Figure 12.9, colour coded by length. It is anticipated that some mining blocks will be amalgamated with adjacent blocks during short term planning to maintain the Collector field efficiency and enable production targets to be achieved.

The full NORI Area D annual production schedule is shown in Table 12.14 and graphed in Figure 12.10. Nodule grades are graphed in Figure 12.11.

The first seven years of the schedule reflect operations within the Initial Mining Area and hence the Mineral Reserve, although 1.2 Mt of the 10.5 Mt in Year 8 is also mined from the Initial Mining Area and was converted to Mineral Reserve.

Figure 12.9 Proposed Initial Mining Area systematic collector paths



Source: AMC

Table 12.14 NORI Area D production schedule

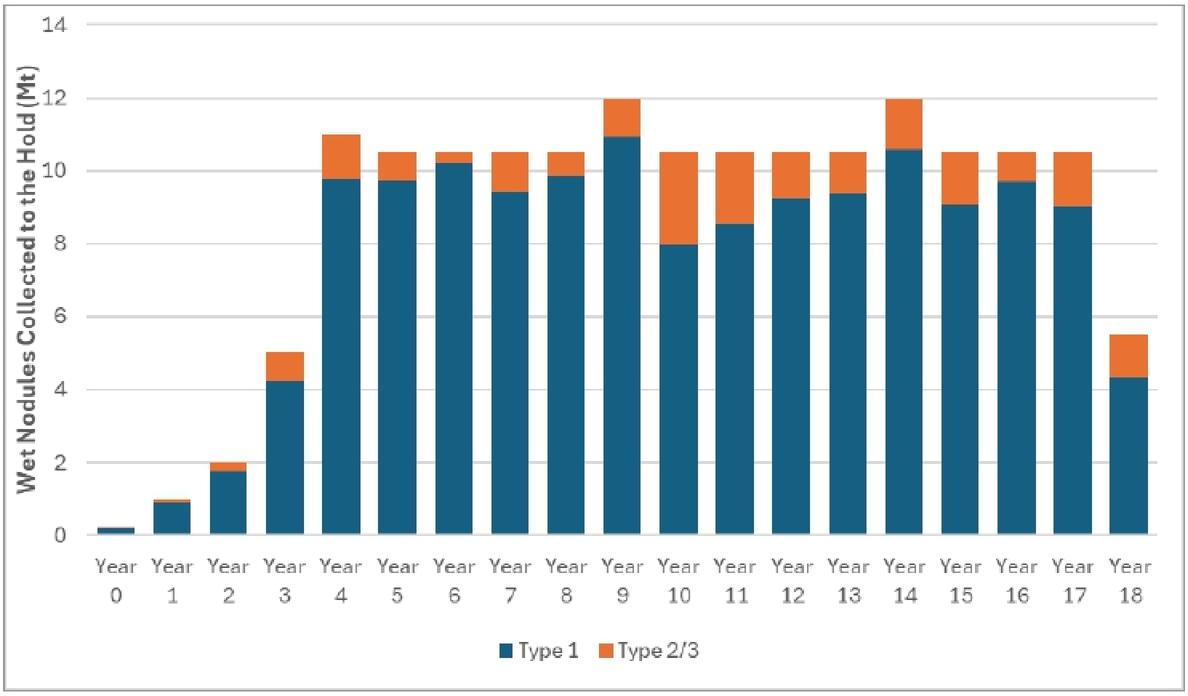
Nodule Type	Description	Unit	Total	Year 0	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10	Year 11	Year 12	Year 13	Year 14	Year 15	Year 16	Year 17	Year 18
Type 1	Tonnes	Mwt	144.8	0.18	0.89	1.75	4.25	9.77	9.74	10.18	9.42	9.86	10.92	7.95	8.55	9.26	9.38	10.60	9.08	9.71	8.99	4.31
	Ni	%	1.4	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.39	1.39	1.38	1.39	1.39	1.40	1.41	1.40	1.39	1.40	1.40	1.41	1.41	1.40
	Cu	%	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1
	Co	%	0.14	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.12	0.13	0.14	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.13
	Mn	%	31.1	32	32	32	32	31	31	30	31	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31
	Si	%	5.5	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.4	5.5	5.8	5.5	5.2	5.4	5.5	5.3	5.6	5.8	5.6	5.4	5.4	5.3	5.2
Type 2/3	Tonnes	Mwt	19.4	0.02	0.11	0.25	0.75	1.23	0.76	0.32	1.08	0.64	1.08	2.55	1.95	1.24	1.12	1.40	1.42	0.79	1.51	1.19
	Ni	%	1.4	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.39	1.40	1.40	1.39	1.38	1.38	1.39	1.41	1.41	1.40	1.39	1.40	1.41	1.40	1.40	1.40
	Cu	%	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1
	Co	%	0.14	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.12	0.13	0.14	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.14	0.13	0.13
	Mn	%	31.2	32	32	32	32	32	31	31	32	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31
	Si	%	5.4	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.5	5.8	5.5	5.2	5.5	5.4	5.3	5.6	5.8	5.5	5.4	5.4	5.3	5.2
Total	Tonnes	Mwt	164.2	0.20	1.00	2.00	5.00	11.00	10.50	10.50	10.50	10.50	12.00	10.50	10.50	10.50	10.50	12.00	10.50	10.50	10.50	5.50
	Ni	%	1.4	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.39	1.39	1.38	1.39	1.39	1.40	1.41	1.40	1.39	1.40	1.41	1.41	1.41	1.40
	Cu	%	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1
	Co	%	0.14	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.13	0.12	0.13	0.14	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.13
	Mn	%	31.1	32	32	32	32	31	31	30	31	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	31
	Si	%	5.5	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.4	5.5	5.8	5.5	5.2	5.4	5.5	5.3	5.6	5.8	5.6	5.4	5.4	5.3	5.2

The initial collection paths are quite long and the production plan allows ramp up in the initial years to develop operational efficiencies and familiarization compared to the nominal production capacities, so the result is that the
initial two years of production show only one to two collection paths used to achieve production levels. This will allow time for operational procedures and strategies to be refined by operations experience.

As the production level ramps up and collection paths become smaller, the number of collection paths required to achieve annual production targets increases significantly. With two collectors running from Year 3 onwards, this is considered manageable, although detailed short-term planning will need to be undertaken to ensure congestion and umbilical management does not become an issue.

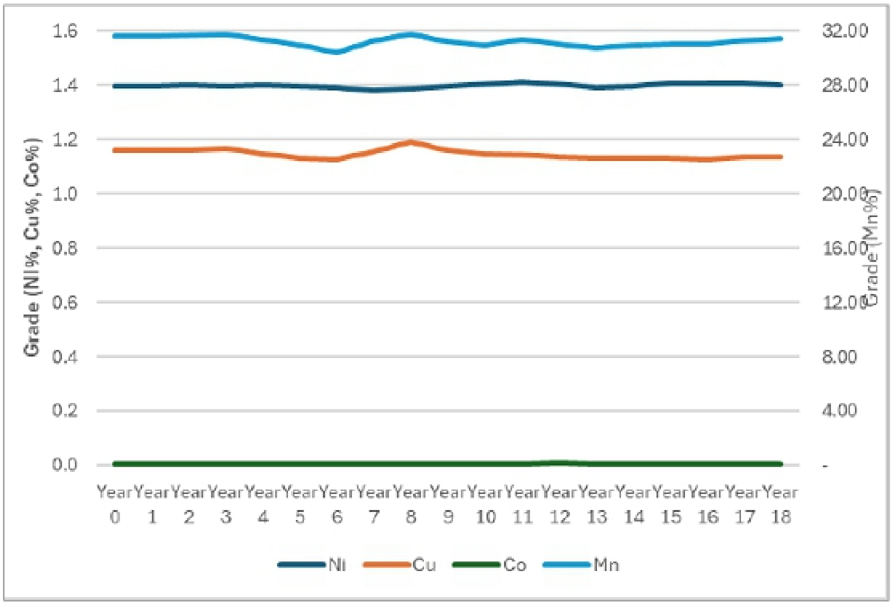
Collector paths mined by year are shown in Figure 12.12.

Figure 12.10 NORI Area D nodule tonnage (wet) production graph



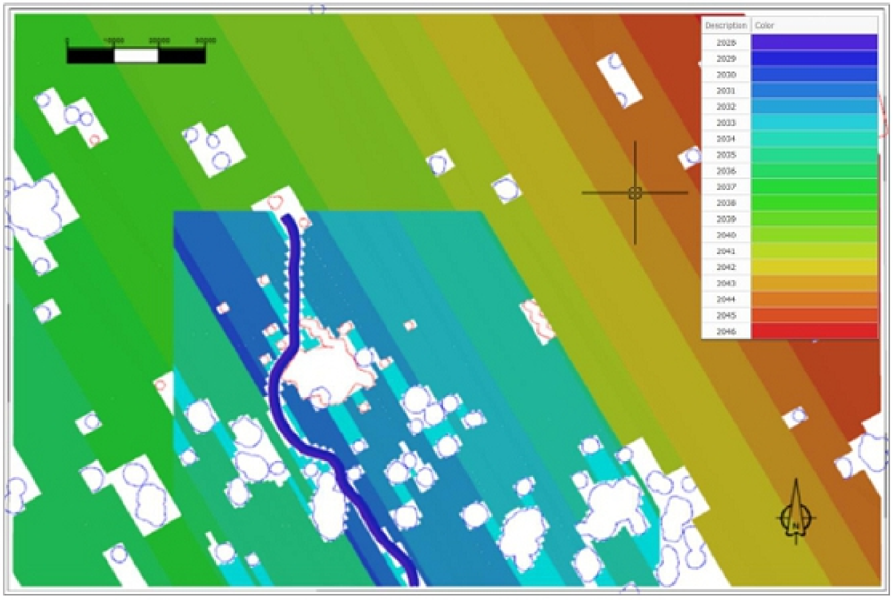
Source: AMC

Figure 12.11 NORI Area D nodule grade



Source: AMC

Figure 12.12 Collector paths mined by year



Source: AMC

12.4 Mineral Reserve estimate

The NORI Area D Mineral Reserve is defined in the selected Initial Mining Area (Project Zero), which has similar geo-forms as that encountered in Test Mining. Unmined buffers of 1,000 m were left around the lease boundary and environmentally sensitive zones. The underlying Mine Plan was developed in conjunction with an experienced marine contractor, Allseas, and TMC to reflect the characteristics of the proposed nodule collection system.

The NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025, under the guidelines of SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300) (S-K 1300), is stated in Table 12.15.

Table 12.15 NORI Area D Mineral Reserve at 30 June 2025

Classification	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Co (%)	Cu (%)	Mn (%)	Ni (%)
Proven	-	-	-	-	-
Probable	51	0.13	1.1	31	1.4
Total	51	0.13	1.1	31	1.4

Notes:

- Mineral Reserve estimated in Initial Mining Area only with 1,000 m buffers for the lease and seamounts.
- Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources are converted to probable Mineral Reserves.
- Grades are quoted on a dry basis.
- Zero abundance cut-off used, with nodules <4 kg/m^2 used to define the Mineral Resource included as dilution to generate viable mining blocks.
- Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
- Metal prices US$20,295/t Ni, US$21,633/t Ni sulfate, US$11,440/t Cu, US$56,117/t Co, US$55,198/t Co sulfate, US$5.46/dmtu Mn in manganese-silicate.
- Nodule recovery by the Collector is estimated as 77% for Type 1 and 62% for Type 2 and 3 nodules.
- Metallurgical recovery to sulfate is estimated as 94.6% Ni, 77.2% Co and 86.2% Cu, and to matte is 94.8% Ni, 77.5% Co, 86.4% Cu and for 98.9% for Mn.
- Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Initial Mining Area contains approximately 25% of the NORI Area D Mineral Resource and conversion of Mineral Resources to Mineral Reserves is approximately 57%.

The QPs responsible for the Mineral Reserve are set out in Table 2.1. The Mineral Reserves are classified by the QPs as Probable Mineral Reserve, due to:

- There is a lack of operating experience with the nodule collection system proposed for NORI Area D to confirm production rates, nodule recovery assumptions, field efficiencies, and operating and capital cost parameters to support Proved Mineral Reserves.

- There is a lack of other commercial nodule operations to confirm the reasonableness of mine planning parameters, Modifying Factors and Mine Plan outcomes to support Proved Mineral Reserves.

- Commercial recovery permit terms and conditions have not been issued by NOAA on how management of nodule collection operations will be regulated and with which the Mine Plan needs to comply to support Proved Mineral Reserves.

12.4.1 Mineral Reserve classification

The QP for the Mineral Reserve estimation process does not consider that the material Modifying Factors are known to the same level of certainty as the underlying Mineral Resource. Therefore, all Measured Mineral Resources in the Initial Mining Area were converted to Probable Mineral Reserves (approximately 0.8 Mwmt). No Proven Mineral Reserves are reported for NORI Area D.

12.5 Cut-off values to define ore

Calculations to determine the minimum grade of material that generates an acceptable profit for NORI Area D indicate that a cut-off of 4 kg/m^2 abundance is appropriate for definition of the Mineral Resources (Section 11.8).

In determining the cut-off grade for mining and Mineral Reserves, AMC also considered the practical operation of the collector system. AMC considers it likely that the quickest (and lowest cost) way of moving between areas of higher abundance is to traverse lower abundance areas with the collector, rather than withdrawing the Collector from the seafloor and travelling to a higher abundance area. AMC considers that it will be more profitable to continue collecting nodules during the traverse of the low abundance area. Therefore, AMC used a zero cut-off (0 kg/m^2 abundance) in the mine plan, so that all nodules classified as Measured or Indicated Mineral Resource are considered for the potential to contribute to the Mine Plan and Mineral Reserve.

12.6 Economic assessment

TMC has undertaken economic evaluation of the Mineral Reserve, detailed in Section 19, to demonstrate that extraction of the Mineral Reserve using reasonable financial parameters is economic (payback within seven years and Mineral Reserve life of just over seven years).

TMC proposes to mine nodules from the whole of NORI Area D and economic assessment of the mine plan shows that extraction of the nodules in the mine plan is economic.

12.7 Qualified Persons conclusion on risk factors

The QP for Mineral Reserves considers that the material risks to the Mineral Reserve arise from the following key risk factors.

There are no deep-sea nodule mining and processing projects currently approved for Commercial Recovery, so that the requirements for regulatory approval are uncertain and approval conditions under which operations may proceed are unknown.

As there are no deep-sea nodule mining and processing projects currently in operation, the technology required for nodule collection is still in development and the design of the collector proposed for NORI Area D has not been finalized. As a result, the production-scale collector proposed for NORI Area D has not been subjected to actual operating conditions in a production environment. Therefore, its effectiveness, robustness, and reliability in operating in the range of seafloor domains (which vary in substrate conditions and seafloor slope) that are expected in NORI Area D has not been determined and physical records for productivity, nodule recovery, collector speed, and availability are not available. However, the system has been field tested using a 40% width (6 m) prototype.

There are no deep-sea nodule mining and processing projects currently in operation from which mine planning and operating assumptions can be drawn or comparisons made to validate key assumptions on production rates, collector productivity, nodule modifying factors, nodule recovery, off-shore CAPEX to set up the operation, or off-shore OPEX to mine and to support the operation.

There is little to no publicly available information on other deep sea nodule mining and processing projects currently in evaluation to compare key assumptions on production rates, collector productivity, nodule modifying factors, nodule recovery, off-shore CAPEX to set up the operation, or off-shore OPEX to mine and to support the operation.

The mine plan is based on the interpretation of seafloor topography and domains predominantly identified from widely spaced readings from hull-based multibeam surveys. These surveys are of insufficient resolution to accurately identify all of the seafloor domains and fine-scale Geo-obstacles in an area. More closely spaced seafloor topography data will be required before detailed planning for collector operations can commence outside the Initial Mining Area. More detailed seafloor data is likely to refine the identification of areas of higher slope and Geo-obstacles, resulting in changes to the Mine Plan and Mineral Reserve.

As there are no deep sea nodule mining and processing projects currently in operation, the ability of QP's to meet the requirements of a QP, as defined in Regulation S-K 1300, of "A mineral industry professional with at least five years of relevant experience in the type of mineralization and type of deposit under consideration and in the specific type of activity that person is undertaking on behalf of the registrant" is limited. Whilst this sector is in its infancy and therefore 5 years of experience of deep-sea nodule mining is not possible, the QP for the Mineral Reserve estimation process has extensive expertise in terrestrial mine planning which supports the QPs ability to undertake this work.

The price of the products proposed from processing NORI Area D nodules has varied significantly over the last five years, and there is significant uncertainty with respect to forecast metal supply and demand forecasts and therefore associated product prices, which has the potential to significantly affect project economics.

The proportion of nodules within the Mineral Resource that are picked up by the collector (such as from nodule recovery, Geo-obstacle loss, gap between collector runs, and seafloor slope domains) may be different from what has been assumed (see Modifying Factors), resulting in a direct change in Mineral Reserve tonnage and life of the project. For example, the collector may be able to operate on steeper slopes (up to 6°) and increase the area that it can operate in and therefore nodules it can collect.

Sedimentation and seafloor current characteristics may result in a change in buffer zones around the mining area, seamounts, and sensitive environmental zones, resulting in a change in Mineral Reserve tonnage and life of the project.

Production from the operation may be different to what has been assumed, resulting in a change in nodules available for processing (affecting revenue) and OPEX (due to the large proportion of fixed costs) and may result in changing project economics, because:

- Collector may be more or less productive than assumed. Lower nodule production may result in reduced revenue and uneconomic operations. Higher production may not be transported through the VTS and PV collection systems.
- Production through the VTS, nodule separator on the PV or in transferring nodules to the TV may not keep up with the collector.
- Operating hours may be more or less than assumed because of diverse reasons, such as weather or sea conditions, protest actions, mechanical availability, or lease conditions.
- OPEX may be different to what has been assumed. Higher OPEX may result in higher breakeven cut-off abundance or uneconomic operations. Lower OPEX will not increase the Mineral Reserve but will increase operating margin.
- CAPEX or sustaining CAPEX may be different to what has been assumed and may result in the project being uneconomic if higher and increased margins if lower.
- A furnace rebuild is required ahead of commencement of production at PAMCO. Current schedule for completion of the this rebuild is for Q3 2028. PAMCO are currently evaluating opportunities to accelerate the completion of this rebuild which involves the installation of copper coolers into the furnac e.

The key opportunities to be able to increase the Mineral Reserve identified by the QP for the Mineral Reserve estimation process are:

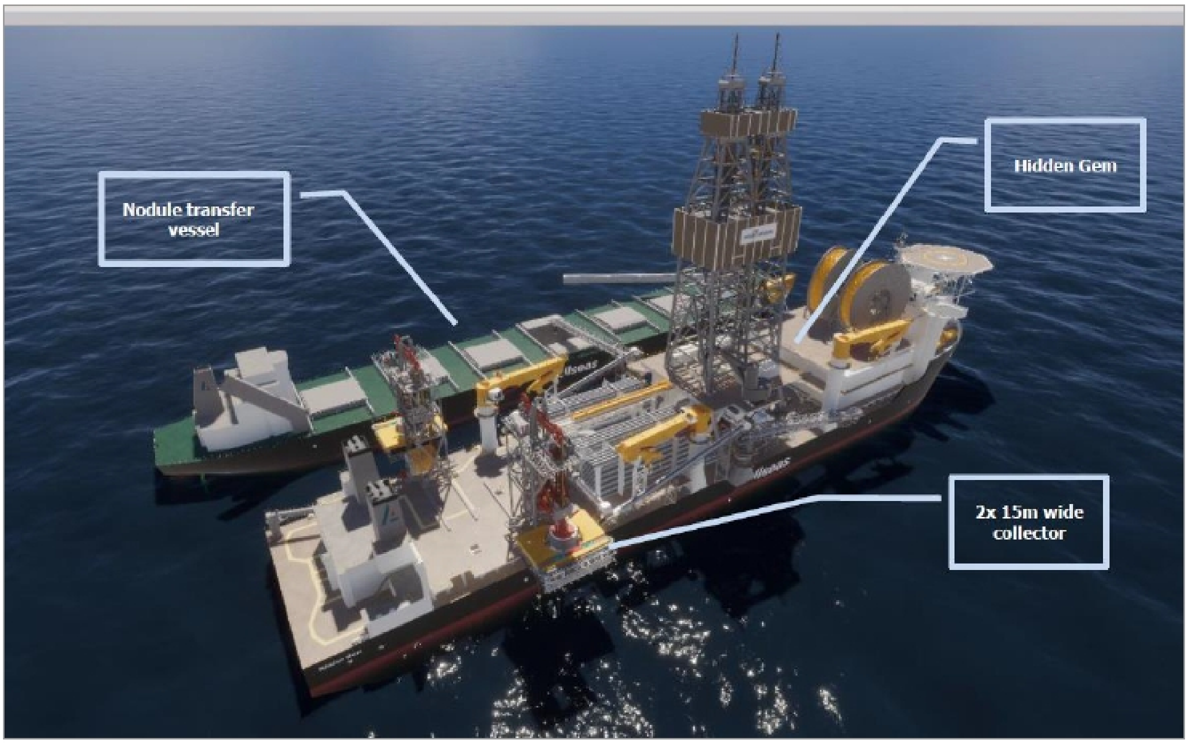
- Nodule recovery from collector recovery, geo-obstacle loss, gap between collector runs, and seafloor slope domains may be lower than estimated resulting in more nodules being collected from the same area.
- Successful operations and further assessment of the seafloor outside the Initial Mining Area may confirm that modifying factors can be extended outside the Initial Mining Area to the remainder of the NORI Area D lease, leading to a significant increase in Mineral Reserves.
- Development of the adjoining lease (TOML-F) may open up additional area for nodule collection within the 1,000 m lease buffer.

13 Mining methods

13.1 Overview

The mining method proposed for NORI Area D is to use a remotely controlled collector on the seabed to collect nodules, which are then transported to the surface using the Vertical transport system (VTS) and stored in the hold of the Production Vessel (PV) before offloading to a Transfer vessel (TV)
(Figure 13.1).

Figure 13.1 Illustration of proposed PV (Hidden Gem) with a collector and TV alongside



Source: Allseas

13.2 Production Vessel (PV)

The vessel Hidden Gem (Figure 13.2) will serve as the operational base for the deployment, recovery and operations of the collector(s) and nodule collection by means of:

- LARS, (detailed description available in section 13.2.2).
- VTS (detailed description available in section 13.2.4).
- Dewatering plant to separate the nodules from seawater.
- Temporary storage and offloading of the collected nodules to a nodule transfer vessel (detailed description available in section 13.2.7).

Equipped with dynamic positioning (DP-3), the Hidden Gem will be able to hold position and follow the collector(s) as it moves along the seabed.

Figure 13.2 Drone picture of Hidden Gem, September 2022

Source: Allseas

The Hidden Gem will be capable of supporting deep sea nodule collection activities including launch and recovery of all subsea production equipment (i.e., the collectors, riser system, ROVs) in wave heights up to 3.5 m Hs (significant wave height).

Vessel specifications:

- Ship Identification Number: IMO 9445150[21]
- Length = 228 m
- Beam = 42 m
- Moonpool dimensions = 25 m x 12 m
- Operating draft = 12 m
- Transit draft = 8.5 m
- Gross tonnage = 60.331 t
- Max personnel on board = 140
- Installed electric power = 42,000 kW
- Power distribution = 11 kV / 440 V
- Propulsion (diesel electric) = 6x Azimuth thruster 4500 kW
- DP system = DP-3
- Maximum speed = 12.3 knots.
- Cranes = 4x 85 t Knuckle boom

[21] The unique seven-digit vessel number, preceded by the letters IMO (International Maritime Organization) stays with the vessel until it is scrapped. The number never changes, regardless of the ship's owner, country of registration or name.

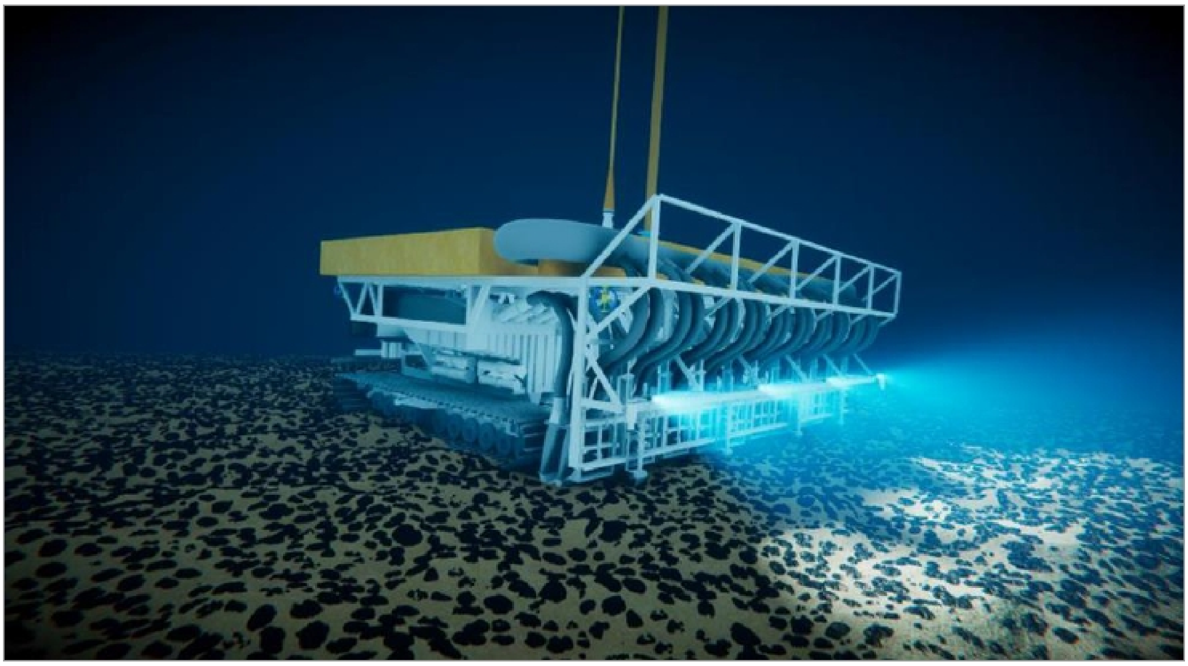
13.2.1 Collector System

The collector (Figure 13.3) will be designed to collect nodules from the seafloor, separate the nodules from seabed sediment and transfer a water / nodule slurry mixture to the VTS.

The collector has six core functions:

- Nodule pick-up.
- Nodule-seabed sediment separation (separation of nodules from sediment at seafloor).
- Nodule transfer to VTS.
- Propulsion and navigation of vehicle along the seabed.
- Heading and position control of vehicle during descent/ascent through the water column.
- Environmental monitoring.

Figure 13.3 Illustration of the proposed 15 m wide collector on seabed



Source: Allseas

The collector system will have the following approximate dimensions and weight:

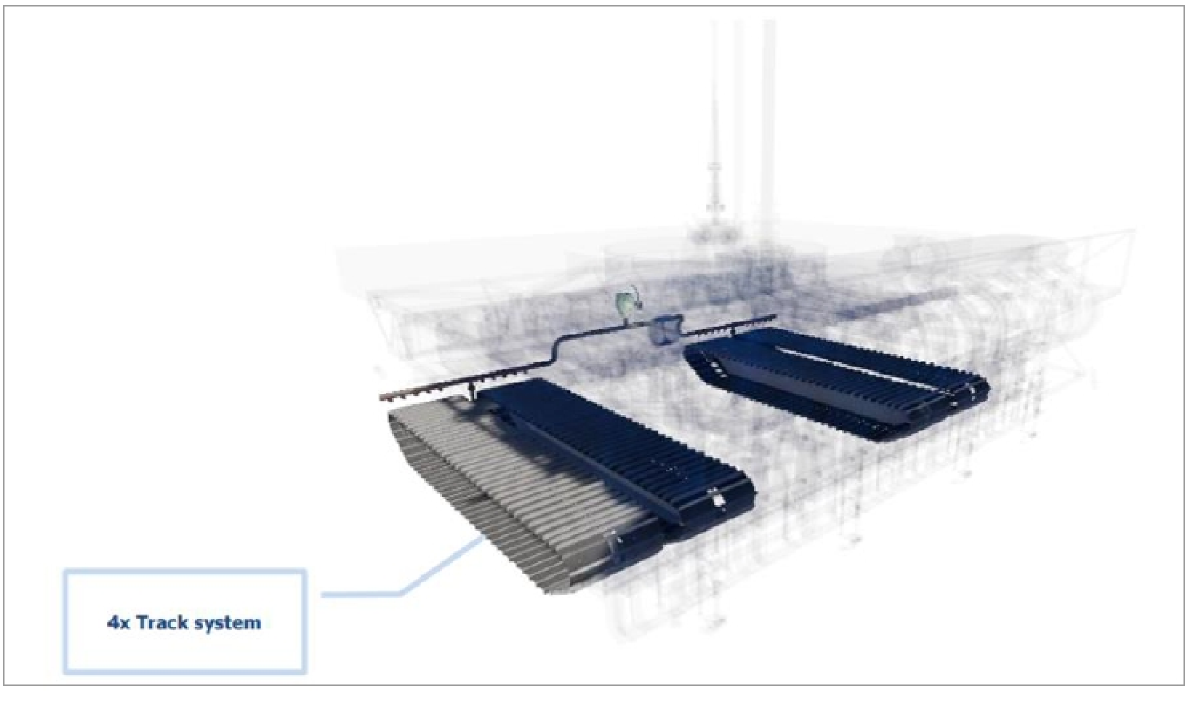
- 15.5 m overall width (15.0 m collection width)
- 13.5 m length
- 6 m height
- 200 – 240 mt (in air)
- 36-46 mt (submerged)

It will be outfitted with systems for propulsion, nodule pickup, nodule-water-sediment separation, and sensor/sonar technologies to monitor system performance, telemetry, positioning, and environmental impact. These components are described in the sections below. The collector system is launched from the PV via a dedicated LARS. This part of the system is described in 13.2.2.

13.2.1.1 Collector propulsion system

The collector will be equipped with two propulsion systems: a track drive system (Figure 13.4) for movement across the seabed and a thruster system for positioning and heading control during descent/ascent through the water column.

Figure 13.4 Illustration of collector track system

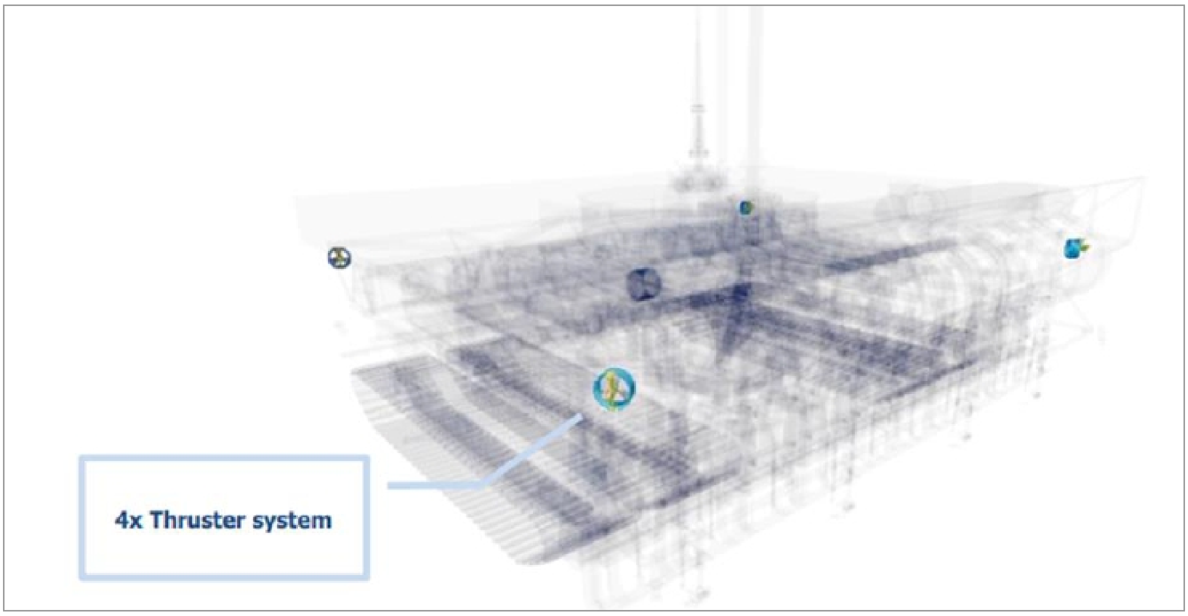


Source: Allseas

The track drive system will consist of two double-tracked assemblies, each with a total track width of approximately 4.5 meters and a length of around 11 meters. The tracks will be made of rubber bands, fitted with metal grousers that penetrate roughly 10 centimeters into the seabed surface to provide traction. Each track assembly will be mounted to the collector frame by a hinged support mechanism, allowing it to articulate and conform to variations in seabed topography. Steering will be controlled by adjusting the relative speed setpoints of the individual track units. The track drive will be propelled via an electromotor that will be powered via the umbilical. Additionally, a track cleaning system will be implemented to prevent clogging of the grousers.

To facilitate positioning and heading control during deployment and recovery, four thrusters will be installed on the collector (Figure 13.5).

Figure 13.5 Illustration of collector thrust system



Source: Allseas

These thrusters will be strategically mounted to enable both rotational and linear movements of the collector. Additionally, when the collector is driving over the seabed, the thrusters can assist the track system by providing vector thrust. The thrusters are the same make/size as used on the collector used during the Test Mining.

13.2.1.2 Nodule pick-up and internal separation system

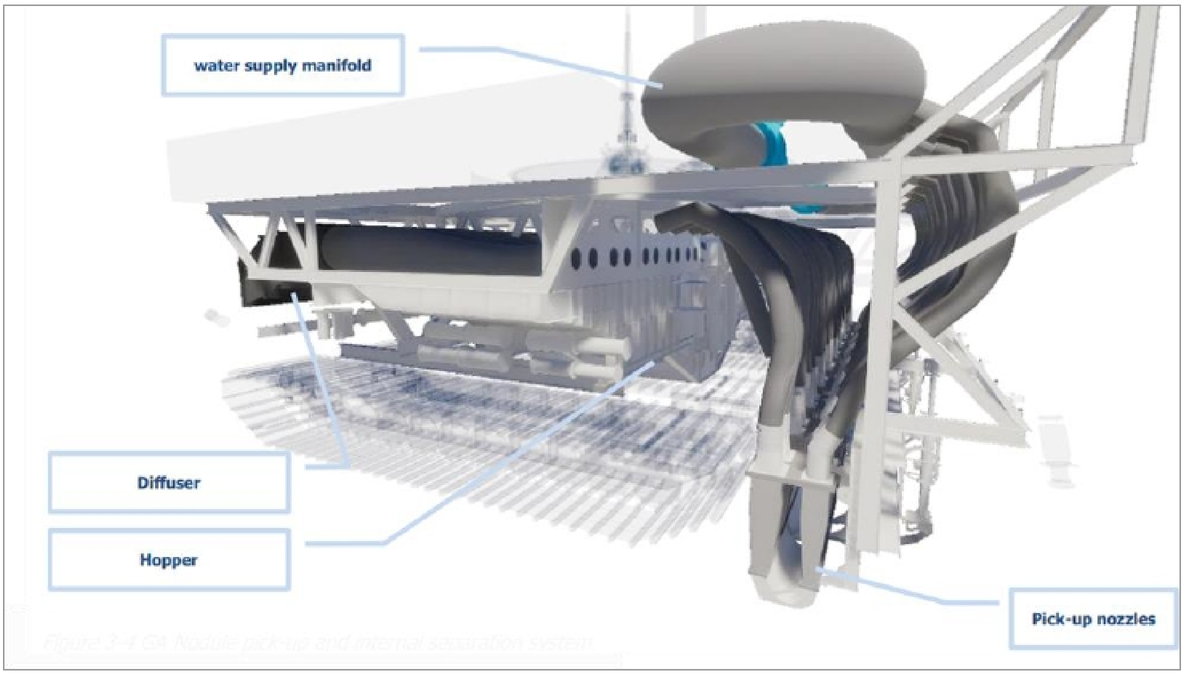
The nodule pick-up system (Figure 13.6) uses water jets to collect nodules from the seabed. These jets flow over a curved plate, creating a low-pressure zone beneath the nozzles—an effect known as the Coandă principle. This mechanism enables the gentle lifting of nodules with minimal erosion and limited disturbance to the surrounding seabed sediment. As such minimizing the intake of sediment.

The resulting nodule-laden slurry is drawn upward through a duct into a hopper, where the flow velocity decreases due to a sudden expansion in cross-sectional area. As the flow slows, the heavier particles (nodules) settle at the bottom of the hopper, while lighter particles (sediment) remain suspended and follow the main flow path toward the diffuser. Washing off the sediment during decanting is further enhanced by introducing clean water from the bottom of the hopper acting as a counter current.

In the diffuser, the slurry flow velocity is further reduced by expanding the flow area. The diffuser is specifically shaped to minimize turbulence and prevent flow separation from the walls during expansion. The objective is to discharge a laminar, density-driven flow that settles gently onto the seabed under the influence of gravity, immediately downstream of the diffuser. These diffuser design principles are consistent with those implemented and validated during the Test Mining.

Nodules that settle at the bottom of the hopper are remobilized through fluidization, using a vortex system located at the inlet of the pipe leading to the jumper hose, which forms part of the VTS. This vortex fluidizer and buffer, with a capacity of approximately 15 m^3, serves to maintain a steady and consistent supply of nodules at a controlled slurry density to the VTS. It compensates for fluctuations in nodule pickup caused by local variations in nodule abundance on the seabed.

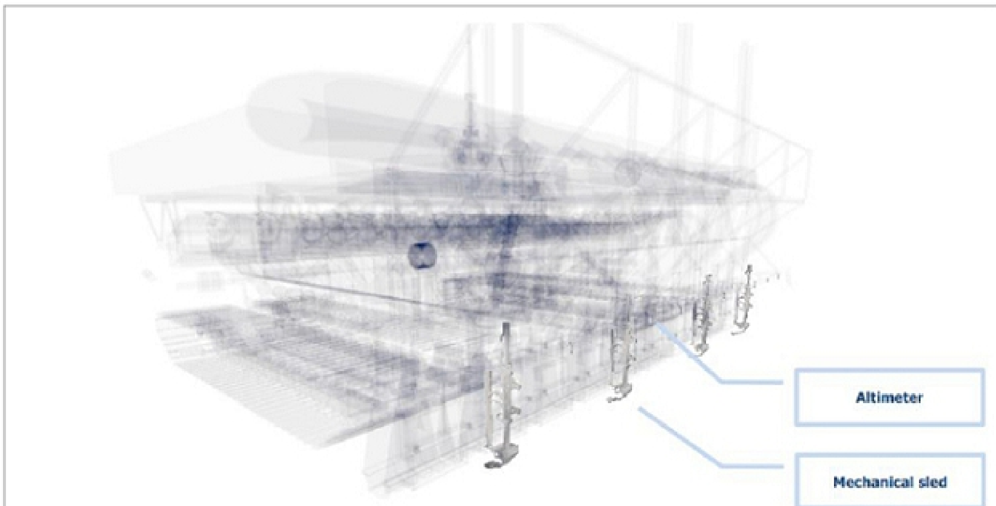
Figure 13.6 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule pick-up and internal separation system



Source: Allseas

The Coandă nozzle standoff distance and flow velocities can be adjusted to optimize the nodule pickup and minimize the sediment collection/transportation to the PV. Altimeters and mechanical sleds will be used as inputs for the height adjustment system of the nozzles. These sensors will assess the seabed profile in front of the collector and the control system of the collector will process this data and reposition the individual nozzles as such that the nominal stand-of distance is reached. The nominal stand of distance is determined by analysis of the Test Mining results and multiple experimental tests carried out in a laboratory. The nozzle height adjustment sensor lay out is shown in Figure 13.7.

Figure 13.7 Illustration of General Arrangement – nozzle height adjustment sensor layout

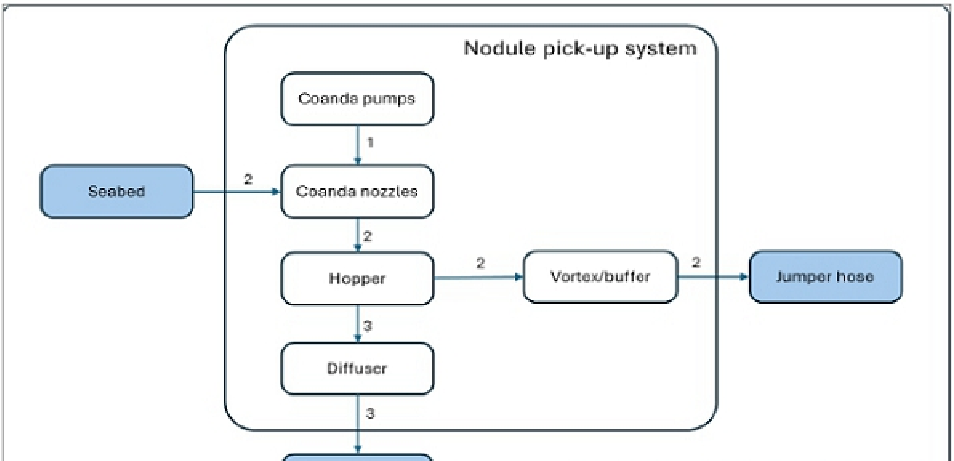


Source: Allseas

It is expected that when operating the pick-up nozzle at the nominal stand-off distance, an average of 3 cm seabed erosion will occur. This is a similar result as encountered during Test Mining.

A schematic overview of this system is provided in Figure 13.8.

Figure 13.8 Flow mixture overview – nodule pick-up system



ID	Seawater	Nodules	Sediment
1	x		
2	x	x	x
3	x		x

Source: Allseas

13.2.1.3 Power, control and monitoring system

Power and communication interface between the collector and PV is provided via an umbilical cable. This umbilical contains high voltage conductors to provide power to electromotors of the tracks, Hydraulic Power Unit (HPU) and coandă water pumps motor. Additionally, low voltage power is available for the control system, sonars and secondary power consumers. Multiple fiber optic strings are included to enable a redundant communication string between the PV and the collector.

The collector will be remotely operated from the operations room of the PV. The heading, speed and pick-up system settings can be controlled manually or via an overall control system.

This overall control system (as a minimum) will be able to:

- Enable the collector system(s) to follow a predetermined path.
- Enable the collector system(s) to follow previous track lines at 1.0 m (+/- 0.5 m).
- Detect obstacles in the path of the collector(s).
- Monitor the production of the collector(s).

The collector will be equipped with sensors to monitor:

- Telemetry.
- Water pressure.
- Internal water volume flow.
- Internal nodule concentration.
- External turbidity of the seawater.
- Buffer filling levels.
- Pump output and performance.
- Track and thruster speed.
- Linear actuation positioning.
- HPU performance.
- Coandă nozzle standoff distance.

Additionally, an acoustic positioning system will be used to determine the relative position between the PV and the collector. Furthermore, optical aids (cameras) will be installed.

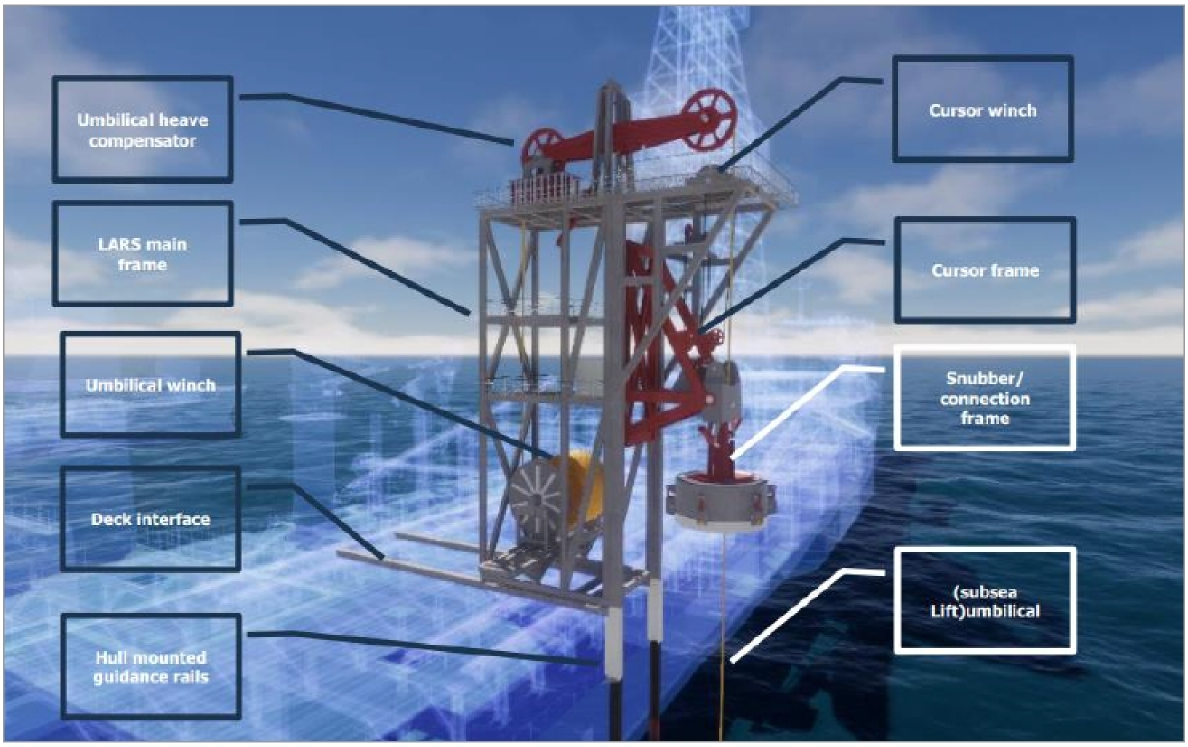
13.2.2 Launch and Recovery System

Deployment of the collector will be carried out via a dedicated LARS (Figure 13.9) installed on the aft deck of the PV. This system will be capable to deploy and recover the collector in wave heights up to 3.5 m.

The LARS system has four main functions:

- Deployment/recovery of the collector trough splash zone & towards seabed.
- Controlled landing/lift to/from seabed.
- Housing and management of the (lift)umbilical.
- Decoupling PV motions from the collector during lifting and lowering.

Figure 13.9 Illustration of General Arrangement – LARS



Source: Allseas

The LARS includes a tower structure that houses several key components: a snubber and cursor frame, an umbilical heave compensation system, a tower skidding mechanism, and both the umbilical and cursor winches.

The umbilical is designed to support only the submerged weight of the collector. To lift the collector above the water surface, the cursor winch system is used. The entire tower can be skidded between inboard and outboard positions.

When positioned outboard—aligned with the hull-mounted guidance rails—the cursor frame can be lowered along the side of the PV. This enables the collector to be safely deployed through the splash zone, minimizing dynamic loads during launch and recovery. The collector can be (dis)connected from/to the snubber when the cursor frame is at the level of the keel of the PV. When positioned at the inboard position the collector can be lowered onto a dedicated support frame onboard the PV.

13.2.3 Vertical Transport System (VTS) – Overview

The VTS will have the function of transporting a nodule/water slurry mixture from the collector on the seabed, to the PV. The riser consists of four major parts:

- The jumper hose, a flexible hose that is connected to the collector.
- The riser base, a structural unit that connects the jumper hose to the riser bundle.
- The riser bundle consisting of 2/3 lines (depending on position of riser section).
- The riser head, the interface between the riser and the dewatering system onboard the PV.

The main propulsion system of the Vertical Transport System (VTS) is based on the airlift principle. In this method, compressed air is injected into the main riser pipe. This reduces the density of the slurry within the pipe by introducing air bubbles, creating a pressure differential between the ambient hydrostatic pressure of the surrounding seawater and the internal pressure of the slurry-air mixture.

As a result, the lighter, aerated slurry experiences buoyant lift, causing it to move upward through the riser. This passive lifting mechanism is well-suited for transporting nodules from deep-sea environments to the surface.

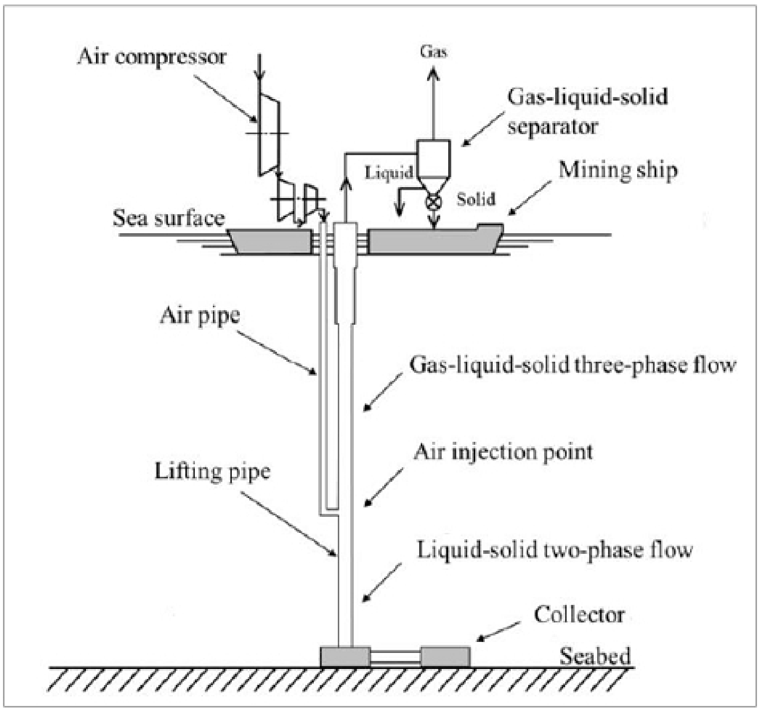
The compressed air is injected into the main flowline at +/- 1,500 m water depth, therefore the content of the slurry that is flowing through the riser can be divided into two different mixtures:

- 2-phase mixture – containing nodules/seabed sediment and seawater.
- 3-phase mixture – containing nodules/seabed sediment, seawater and (compressed) air above the air injection point.

The density of the 2-phase mixture is mainly determined by the nodule pick-up rate of the collector and the volume flow in the riser. The density of the 3-phase mixture is also impacted by the volume of injected air.

As the hydrostatic pressure decreases when the slurry mixture is being lifted, air inside the mixture will expand and therefore reduce the density of the slurry. This will result in an increased volume flow. To maintain a manageable flow velocity, the main flowline of the riser will increase in diameter from the air injection point at 1,500 m towards the surface. Figure 13.10 provides a schematic overview of the main components included in the airlift configuration.

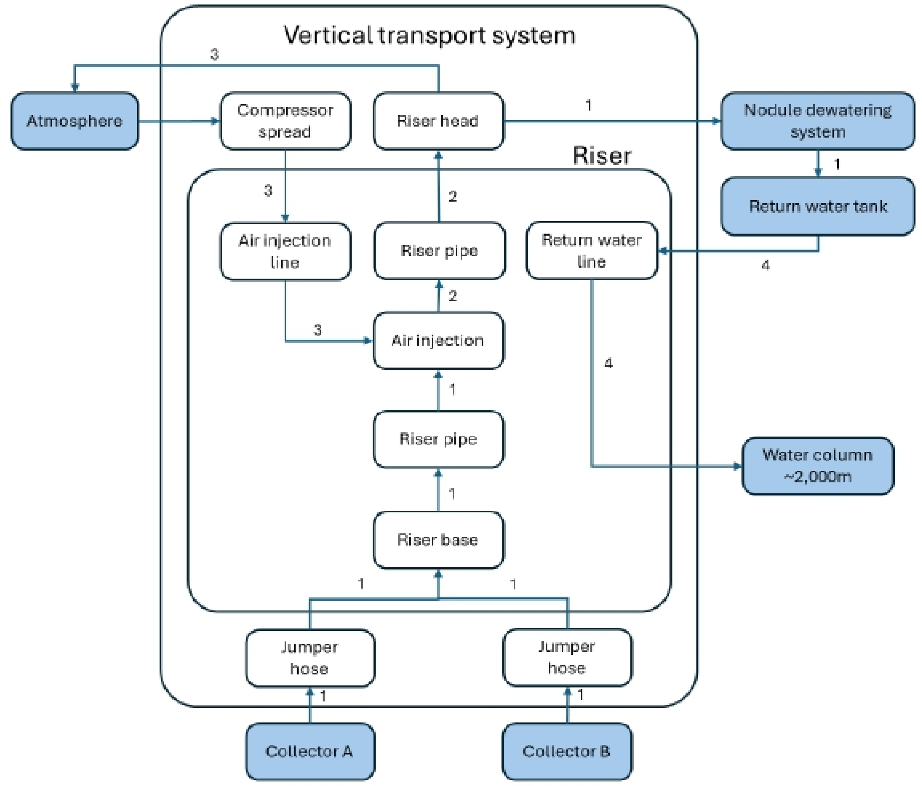
Figure 13.10 Basic airlift configuration



Source: (Shimizu Y, 2024)

The VTS does not only contain the components required for airlift, but also components to create a slurry flow interface between the collector(s) and the PV. A return waterline is included. Figure 13.11 provides a basic flow diagram of an airlift system. Arrows between components are marked with numbers. These numbers correspondent with different flow mixtures.

Figure 13.11 Block diagram – VTS



ID	(Compressed) Air	Seawater	Nodules	Sediment
1		x	x	x
2	x	x	x	x
3	x			
4		x		x

Source: Allseas

13.2.4 Vertical transport system – functional description

13.2.4.1 Riser

The riser is defined as the connection between the PV and the collector. This interface includes a transport line for nodules and seawater from the seabed to the PV, a transport line for compressed air to generate flow in the main line and a return water line.

Main riser pipe: The main riser pipe is the flowline that transports the slurry from the riser base to the riser head. The flow velocity is created by airlift. This riser will be designed for a maximum efficiency at a nodule flow of 100 kg/s and can be used for a production rate in a range of approximately 0 to 147 kg/s of wet nodules. The 2-phase section of the riser will consist of a 18” pipeline, the 3-phase section will be configured using multiple diameters between 18” and 32”, the configuration will be dependent on the required volume flow of the mixture.

Air injection point: The air injection point will inject compressed air into the main riser pipe. This injection point will be located at 1,500 m water depth.

Air injection line: Compressed air will be transported from the compressor spread to the air injection point in the main flowline of the riser. The diameter of this airline is determined based on a wet nodule production of approximately 100 kg/s. An air injection diameter of 4” has been selected as the inner diameter of the air injection line.

Return water line: Return water will be returned at a water depth of approximately 2,000 m.

Riser base: The riser base is the interface between the riser pipe sections and the jumper hose(s). In later phases of the project, multiple collectors will be operating simultaneously. Therefore, the riser base shall be capable of connecting 2 jumper hoses. The riser base will also be equipped with a dump valve to ensure that a stop of volume flow in the riser will not create a clog in the riser/jumper hose.

Jumper hose(s): Both jumper hoses will have an inner diameter of approximately 280 mm and a length of approximately 700 m. The jumper hoses will be connected/disconnected to the riser base during deployment / recovery of the riser system. The other end of the jumper hose will have a subsea connection interface that will make it possible to connect/disconnect the collector(s) from the jumper hose without the need for recovery of the entire riser system.

The jumper hose(s) will be deployed with buoyancy/weight modules to accommodate a lazy S-shape when connected to the vehicle(s) which disconnects PV/riser base movements from the collector, reducing the reaction forces of the jumper hose on the collector(s).

13.2.4.2 Riser head

The riser head is the interface between the riser system and the PV for the nodule/water/air mixture. In the riser head air is separated from the slurry flow. The air is returned to the atmosphere, and the nodule/water mixture is transported to the nodule dewatering system. During start-up of the riser, a large volume of water is being lifted. This start-up water flow is directed towards the return water system. A by-pass to the contingency overflow tank is in place to divert nodule/water/sediment in case the capacity of the main processing system is exceeded to prevent spills.

13.2.4.3 Contingency overflow tank

The contingency overflow tank is designed to receive potential overflow of nodules, sediment, and water from the riser head the dewatering system becomes temporarily unable to accept feed. Once normal operation resumes, the collected slurry is introduced to the dewatering system inlet for routine separation. Sediment-laden return water is routed to the designated return water tank, while nodules are conveyed to the dedicated storage holds The contingency overflow tank will have a capacity of approximately 2,500 m^3.

13.2.4.4 Compressor spread

The compressed air supply for the vertical transport system will be generated using a dedicated compressor spread onboard the PV. This spread will consist of multi-stage compressors with a maximum capacity of approximately 9.5 kg /s of air with a maximum working pressure in excess of 100 bar (at surface).

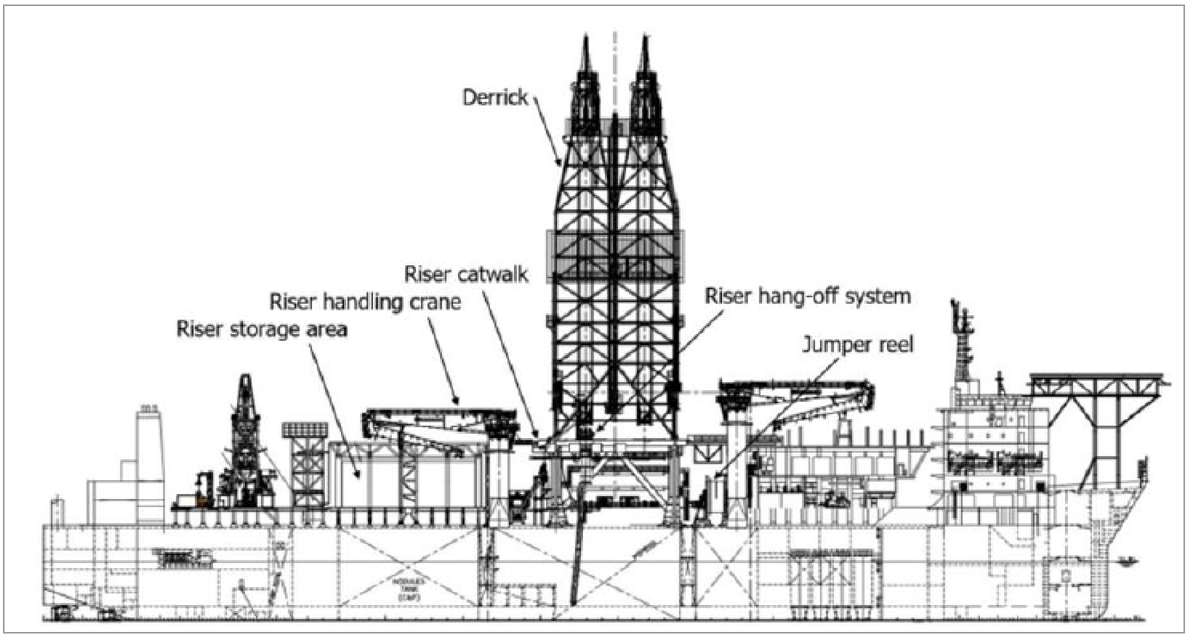
13.2.5 Riser/jumper handling equipment

The riser system and jumper hose will be stored onboard and deployed/recovered from the PV. To facilitate these operations, a typical riser handling system similar to offshore drilling shall be in place. The riser is constructed from 90 ft (27.4 m) sections that are stored horizontally on the aft deck when not in use. In the field the sections are rotated vertically, connected to the riser string and subsequently lowered to the operational depth.

The riser handling system (Figure 13.12) can be divided in the following sub-systems:

- Riser storage area
- Riser handling cranes
- Riser catwalk
- Derrick
- Riser hang-off system
- Jumper reel

Figure 13.12 General Arrangement – riser handling equipment



Source: Allseas

The riser handing system will be able to deploy and recover the riser/jumper hose system with a maximum significant wave height of approximately 3.5 meters.

13.2.6 Nodule dewatering and storage system

The PV will be equipped with a nodule dewatering system. This system will be able to separate the nodules from the seawater and direct the nodules to dedicated storage holds inside the hull of the PV. Water will be stored inside a buffer tank and returned to the water column via the VTS. The system will be capable of unloading the storage holds and transfer the nodules to a TV via conveyor on an unloading boom.

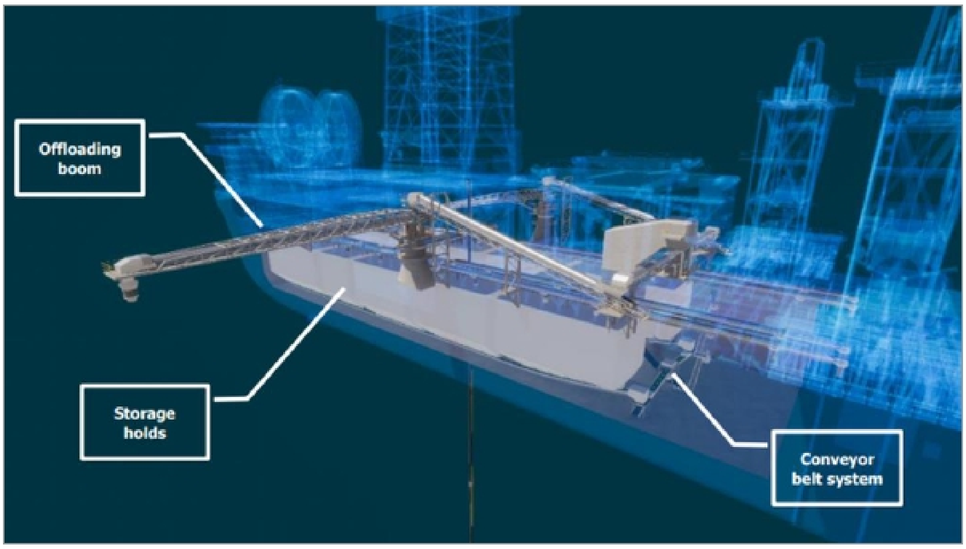
This system is designed for:

- Nodule loading capacity of approximately 650 t per hour (peak loading capacity).
- Nodule unloading capacity of approximately 2,500 t per hour.
- Nodule storage capacity of approximately 25,000 t.

Expected unloading duration of a fully loaded PV is approximately 10 to 12 hours.

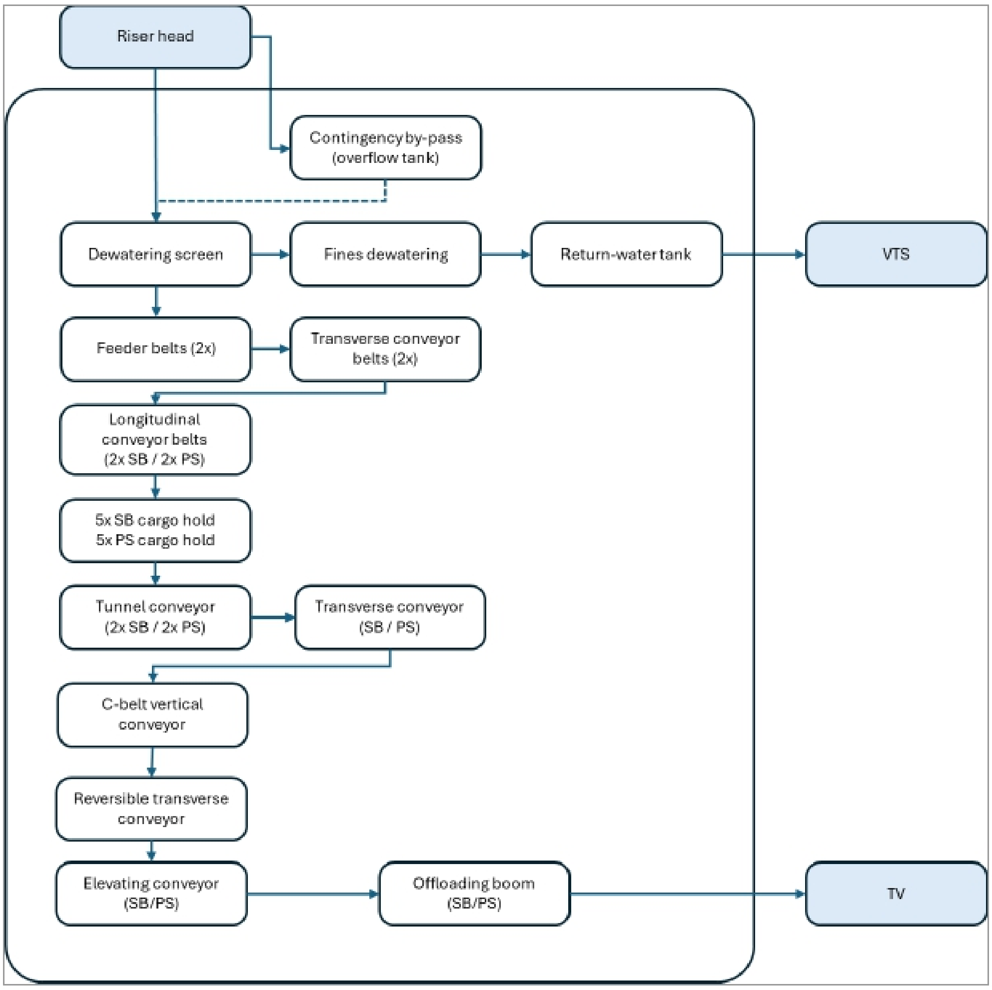
Figure 13.13 provides a general arrangement of the conceptual layout onboard the PV and Figure 13.14 provides a high-level overview of this system. It should be noted that, for clarity, not all systems are identified in Figure 13.13. Section 13.2.7 provides detailed descriptions of the components including illustrations.

Figure 13.13 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule handling and storage system



Source: Allseas

Figure 13.14 Block diagram – nodule dewatering, handling and storage system



Source: TMC

13.2.7 Nodule handling system – functional description

13.2.7.1 Nodule dewatering system

Upon arrival of the de-aerated slurry from the riser head, a multistage process is conducted to separate the nodules from the seawater and sediment. A general arrangement is shown in Figure 13.15 and an overview of these steps is provided below.

Dewatering screen: The first stage is dewatering the nodules on screens, at this point the nodule particles larger than 1 mm are separated from the nodule fines/seawater/sediment. After the dewatering screens the nodules (overflow) are diverted to the conveying system, detailed description provided in 13.2.7.4. The underflow is delivered to a second step.

Fines dewatering: The smaller nodule particles are separated from the seawater and sediment at cut point 150 micron. This is carried out by a system of booster pumps, hydro cyclones and secondary dewatering screens. The nodule particles are delivered to the feeder belt and the residual seawater and seabed sediment will be transported to the return water buffer as described in section 13.2.7.3.

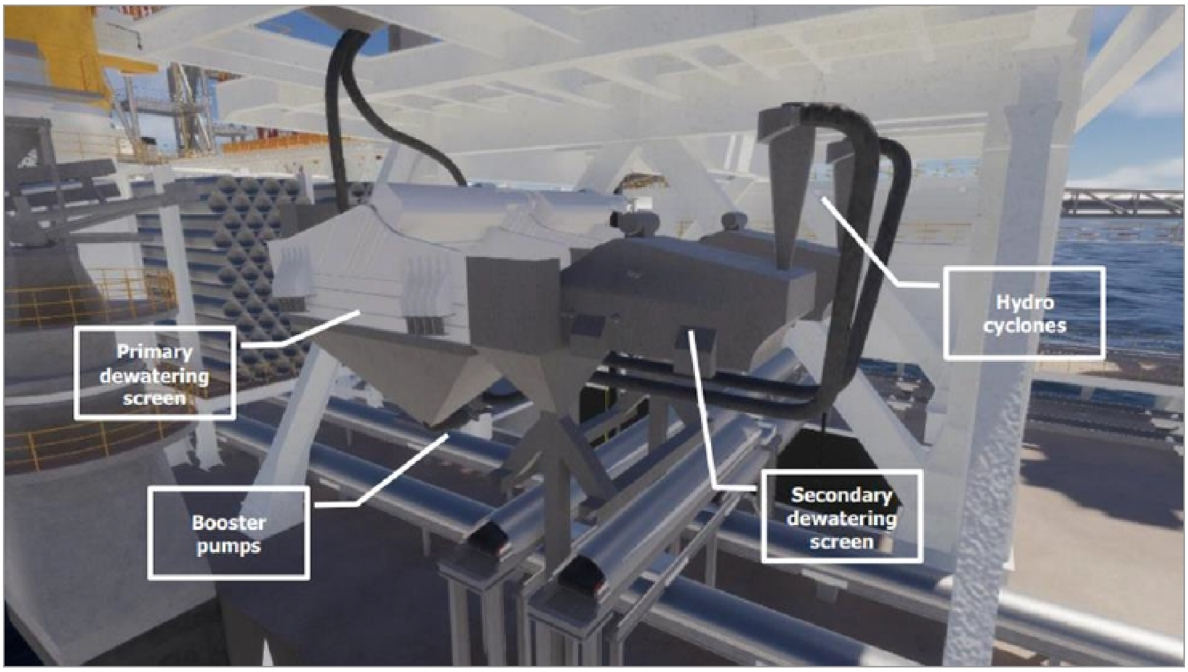
13.2.7.2 Bulk cargo classification

Test Mining offered valuable insights into the particle size distribution (PSD) and other physical properties of nodules following collection from the seabed, vertical transport, and dewatering. The nodule product from these trials underwent thorough physical property testing and cargo classification evaluations to assess potential risks related to vessel stability and other hazards during bulk handling and transport.

Cyclic triaxial testing confirmed that the nodule cargo expected in operations maintains stability even under worst-case vessel motion scenarios, and when under saturated conditions. Because of this, the determination of moisture of the cargo and comparison to a transport moisture limit prior to transport in bulk is not envisioned to be a requirement. Comprehensive physical property analyses including IMO specified testing such as materials only hazardous in bulk (MHB) and hazard classification under IMDG—indicated that the dewatered nodules would qualify for IMSBC Group C classification. Furthermore, the properties of the nodule ore fall within the Group C thresholds established for existing cargos on the IMSBC schedule, such as manganese ore and iron ore. The preparation of an application to the IMO for the addition of polymetallic nodule ore to the IMSBC schedule is being compiled.

During operations, the dewatered nodule cargo will be sampled and PSD analyzed, in addition to any other necessary physical property testing, prior to loading to a transport vessel to ensure the cargo remains within PSD tolerances and complies with cargo classification requirements.

Figure 13.15 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule dewatering



Source: Allseas

13.2.7.3 Return water system

The return water system handles the seawater from:

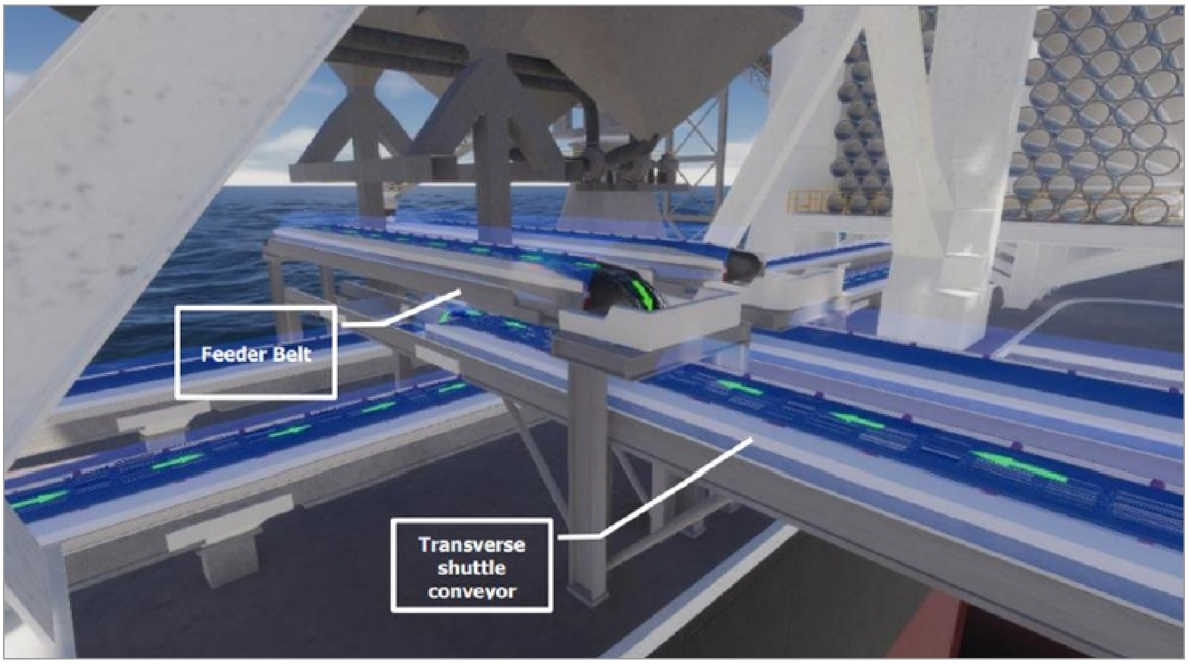
- Nodule dewatering system.
- Riser head start-up bypass.

This return water tank has a capacity of approximately 1,000 m^3 and is used for a steady return water supply to the riser system.

13.2.7.4 Nodule storage system

A series of (shuttle) conveyor belts conveyor belts are in place to divert the nodules to the dedicated storage holds. In the following images, the green arrows indicate the movement direction of the nodule flow, the beige arrows indicate the movement direction of shuttle conveyor belts. The first conveyor belts that make the nodule loading system are the feeder belts (Figure 13.16). There will be two conveyor belts that transport the nodules from the dewatering system to the transverse shuttle conveyor belts.

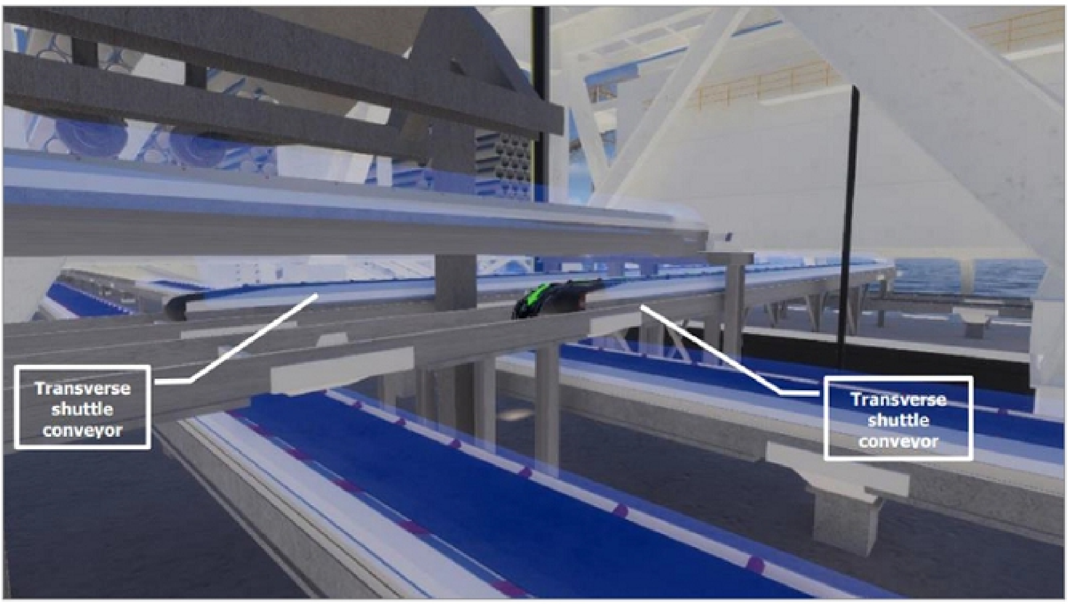
Figure 13.16 Illustration of feeder belt and transverse shuttle conveyor belt, conveyor cover is transparent blue



Source: Allseas

The transverse shuttle conveyor belts (Figure 13.17) comprise two conveyor belts capable to distribute the nodules to portside and starboard longitudinal shuttle conveyor belts.

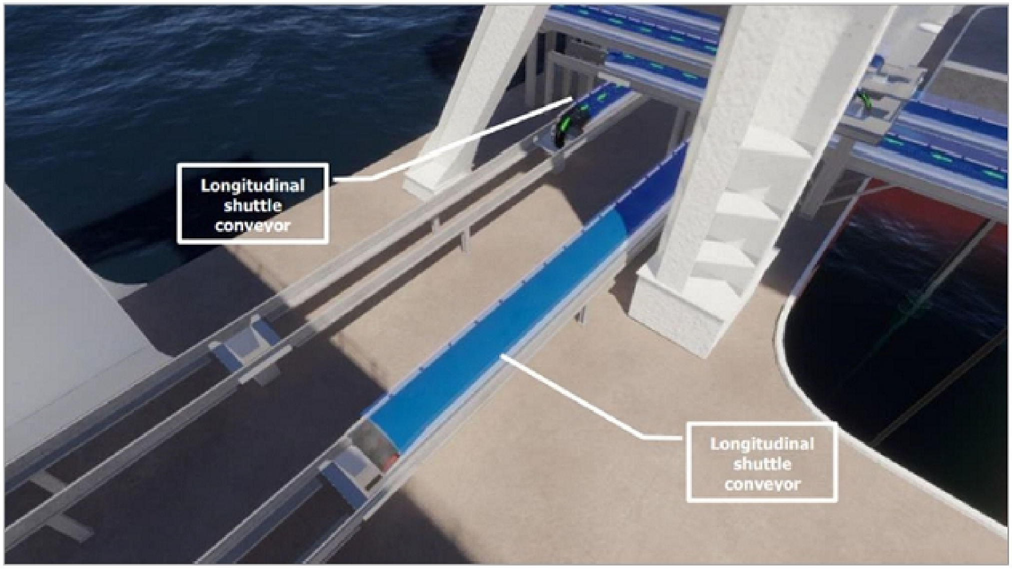
Figure 13.17 Illustration of Transverse shuttle conveyor belts, conveyor cover is transparent blue



Source: Allseas

The four longitudinal shuttle conveyor belts (Figure 13.18) are reversible and have multiple outlet locations servicing the multiple nodule storage holds. Multiple inlets per storage hold are required to maximize the stacking efficiency inside each storage hold.

Figure 13.18 Illustration of Longitudinal shuttle conveyor belt, conveyor cover in blue



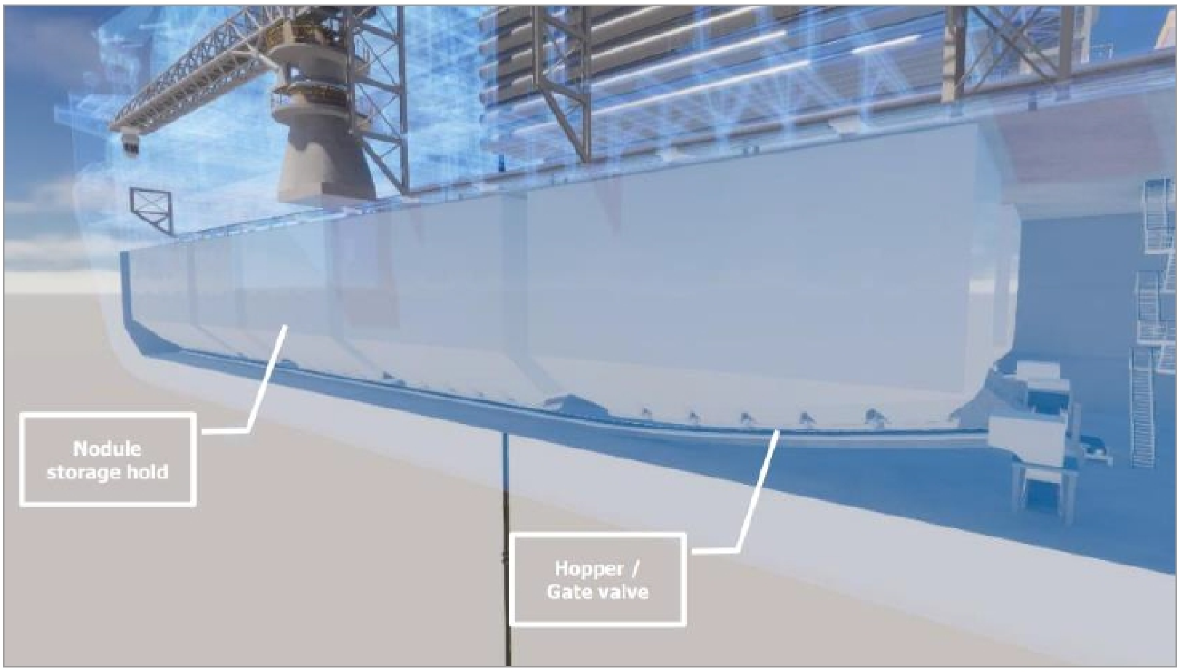
Source: Allseas

The design objectives for the conveyors and storage handling focus on minimizing material loss and environmental impact through an optimized conveyor layout to reduce spillage, maximizing belt fill to prevent breakage and dust generation, and using chutes and skirtboards to guide material flow. Enclosed conveyors and effective belt cleaners minimize windage and carry-back, while spill troughs aid in cleanup. Additional features include misalignment switches for tracking, a superchute loading spout to shield free-falling material from wind, and a freshwater spray system to reduce dust emissions.

13.2.7.5 Nodule storage holds

The nodule storage holds (Figure 13.19) are the main buffer for the nodule production. There will be a total of ten storage holds evenly distributed over portside and starboard and will have a total storage capacity of approximately 25,000 t of nodules. The storage holds are filled using the nodule loading system. For unloading, the conveyors of the nodule unloading system are used. Each storage hold will be hopper shaped equipped with several gate valves at the base of the hold, which when opened will evenly deliver nodules to the tunnel conveyors of the nodule offloading system.

Figure 13.19 Illustration of General Arrangement – storage holds

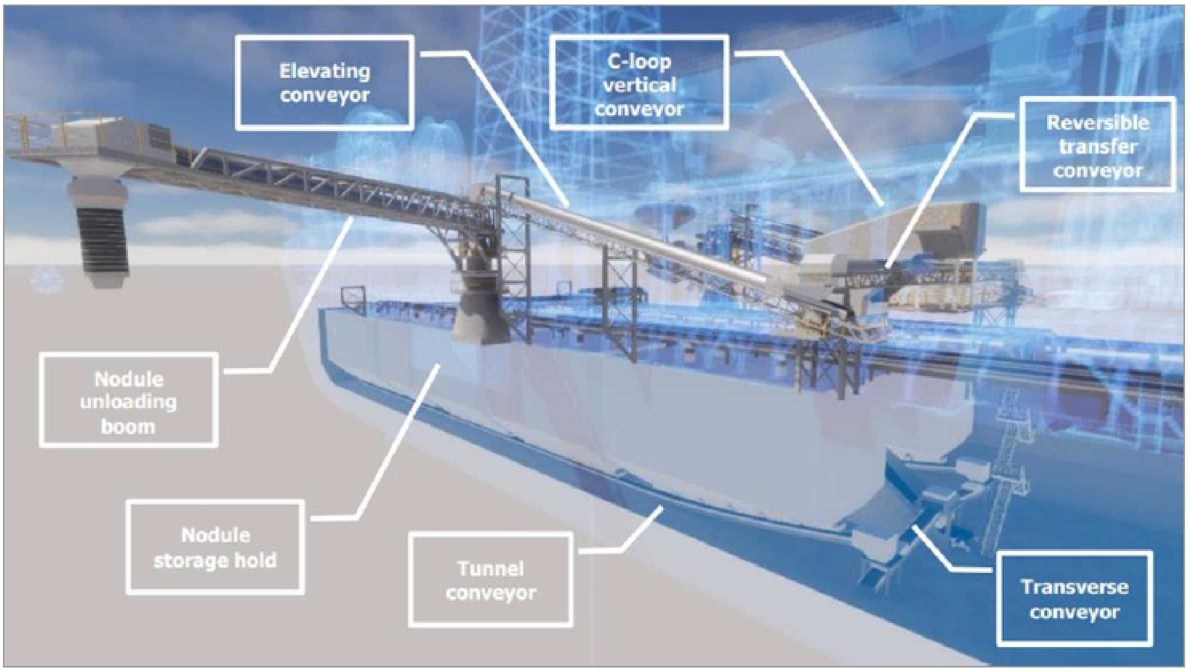


Source: Allseas

13.2.7.6 Nodule offloading system

The nodule offloading system (Figure 13.20) is designed to transport nodules from the storage holds to the main deck and subsequently onto the transfer vessel. The following sections provide a detailed description of each subsystem involved.

Figure 13.20 Illustration of General Arrangement – nodule offloading system



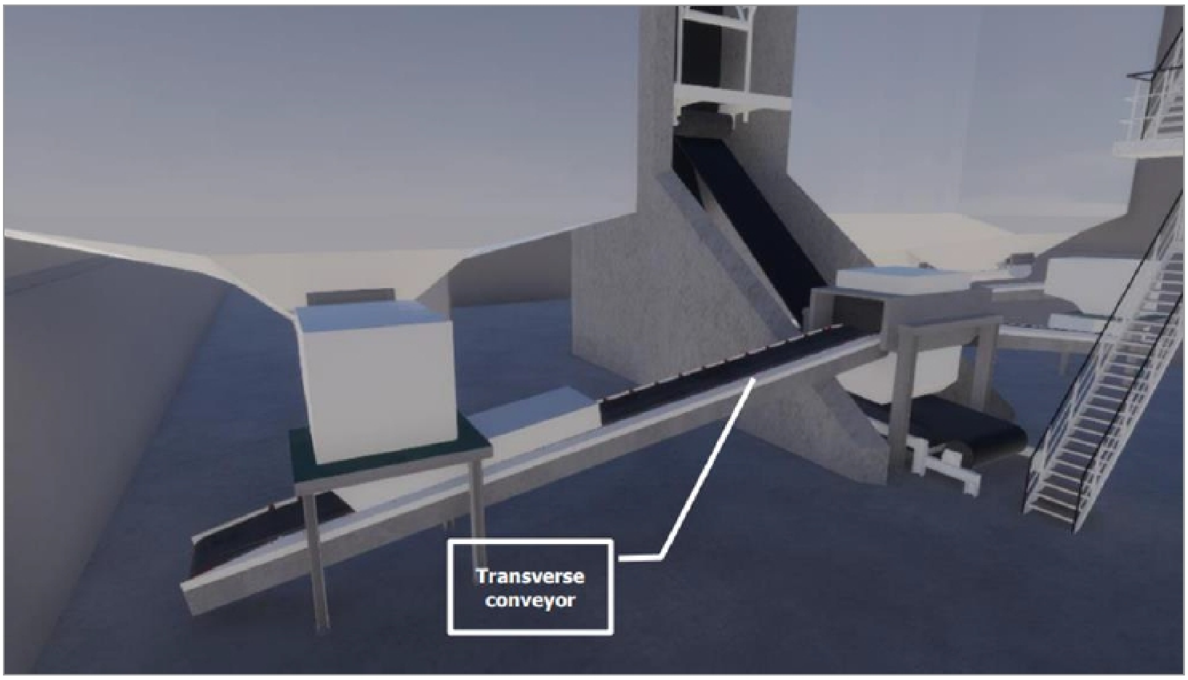
Source: Allseas

Tunnel and transverse conveyors

Conveyors located in tunnels beneath the hopper gates of the storage holds, transport the nodules aft to a set of transverse conveyors. These transverse conveyors (Figure 13.21) then move the nodules to the vessel's centerline, where they are transferred to the C-loop vertical transport conveyor.

Patented watertight bulkhead door assemblies integrated into the tunnel conveyors provide flood protection in emergency situations.

Figure 13.21 Illustration of transverse conveyor



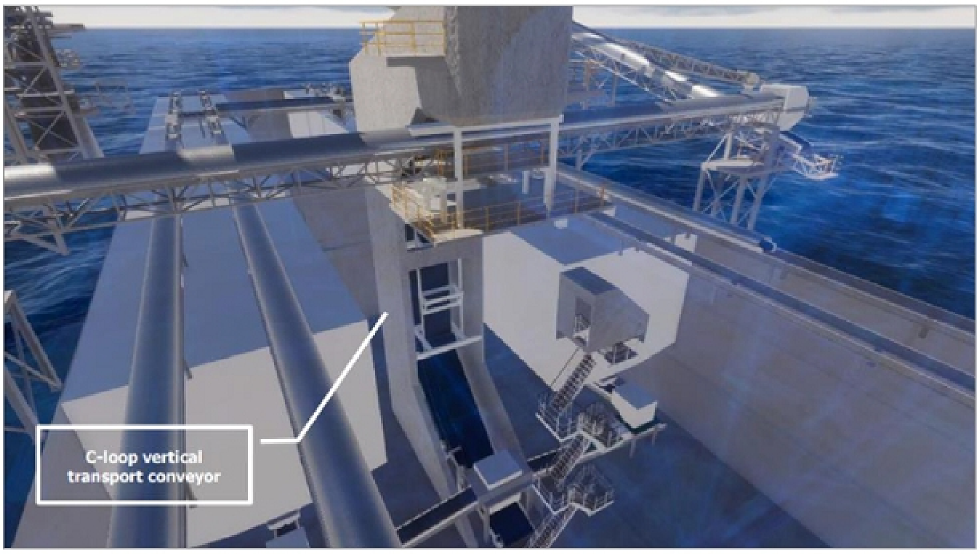
Source: Allseas

C-Loop vertical transport conveyor

The C-loop conveyors transport nodules from below deck up to the main deck level, where they are transferred to conveyor belts that feed the offloading booms. Commonly used in transshipment operations, C-loop conveyors are designed to efficiently elevate and transfer bulk materials between different levels on a vessel.

The system consists of two parallel, C-shaped belts that sandwich the nodules, providing the necessary grip and force to transport them vertically to the main deck (Figure 13.22).

Figure 13.22 Illustration of C-Loop vertical transport conveyor

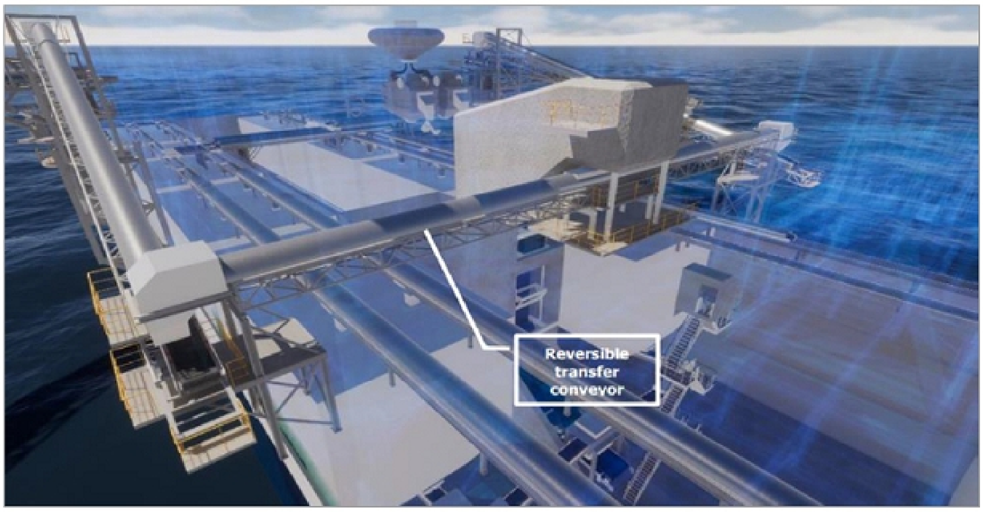


Source: Allseas

Reversible transfer conveyor

Once the nodules have been transported above the main deck, they are directed to either the portside or starboard unloading boom via a reversible transfer conveyor Figure 13.23). This conveyor allows flexible routing of the product depending on operational needs. A sampling point is integrated into the system to assess product quality and verify compliance with transportable moisture limits (TML).

Figure 13.23 Illustration of reversible transfer conveyor

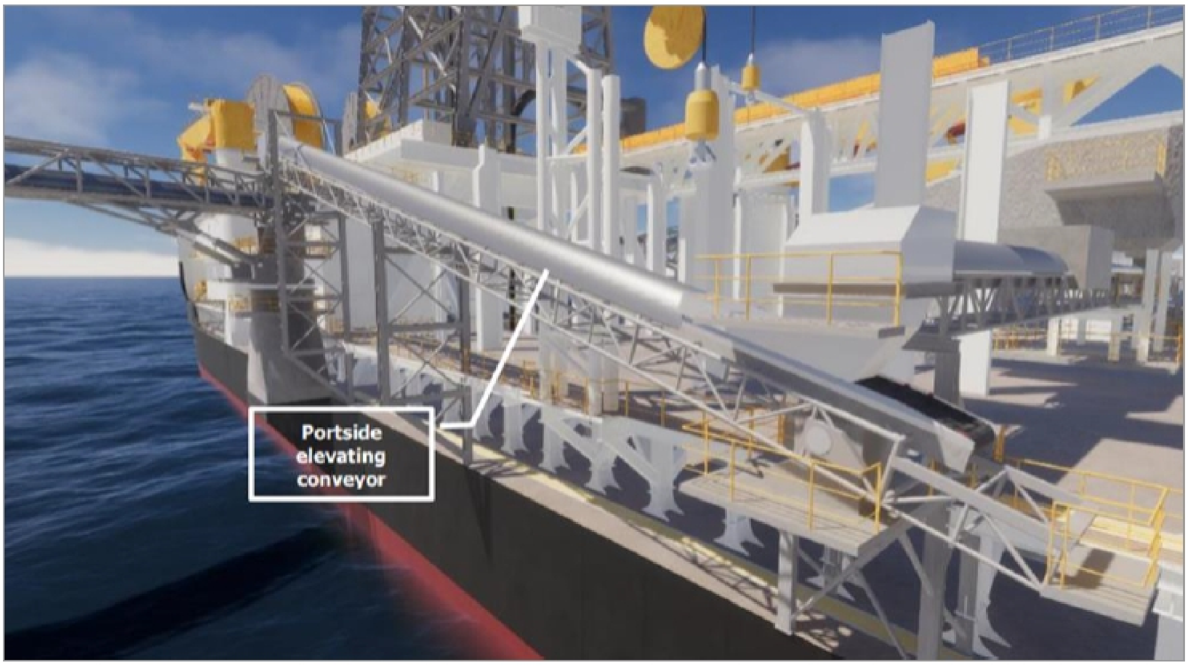


Source: Allseas

Elevating conveyors

After the nodules are transported to the port or starboard side, they are raised to the inlet of the unloading boom using an inclined conveyor belt (Figure 13.24).

Figure 13.24 Illustration of portside elevating conveyor

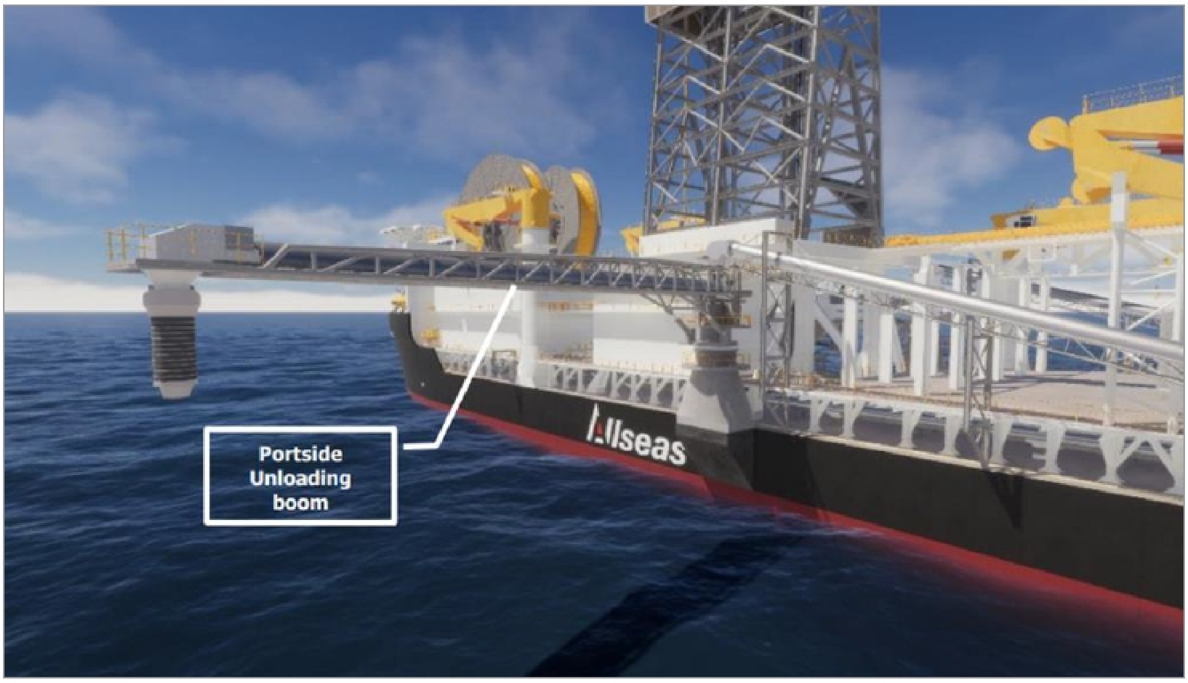


Source: Allseas

Unloading boom conveyors

Offloading of nodules to the transfer vessel is performed via unloading boom conveyors. To ensure high system availability and operational flexibility, one boom is installed on both the port and starboard sides of the Production Vessel. Each conveyor boom has a reach of approximately 45 meters. For safety reasons, offloading is primarily conducted on the leeward side of the vessel.

Figure 13.25 Illustration of portside unloading conveyor boom



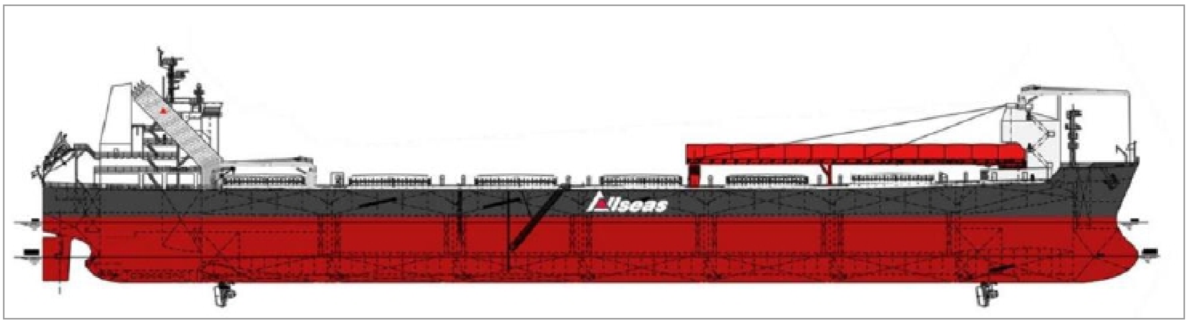
Source: Allseas

13.2.8 Nodule Transfer Vessel (TV)

Nodules recovered by the PV are transferred from onboard buffers to a TV (Figure 13.26). This setup allows collection operations to continue uninterrupted during the transfer, minimizing downtime.

The TV is a retrofitted Panamax-size bulk carrier, equipped with a self-unloading system similar to that installed on the PV. It is capable of offloading nodules either to a quayside facility or directly to a bulk carrier in the field for long-distance transport to shore. In field offloading is performed while the TV and the receiving bulk carrier are slow steaming side-by-side at approximately 5 knots.

Figure 13.26 Illustration of typical Allseas designed nodule transfer vessel



Source: Allseas

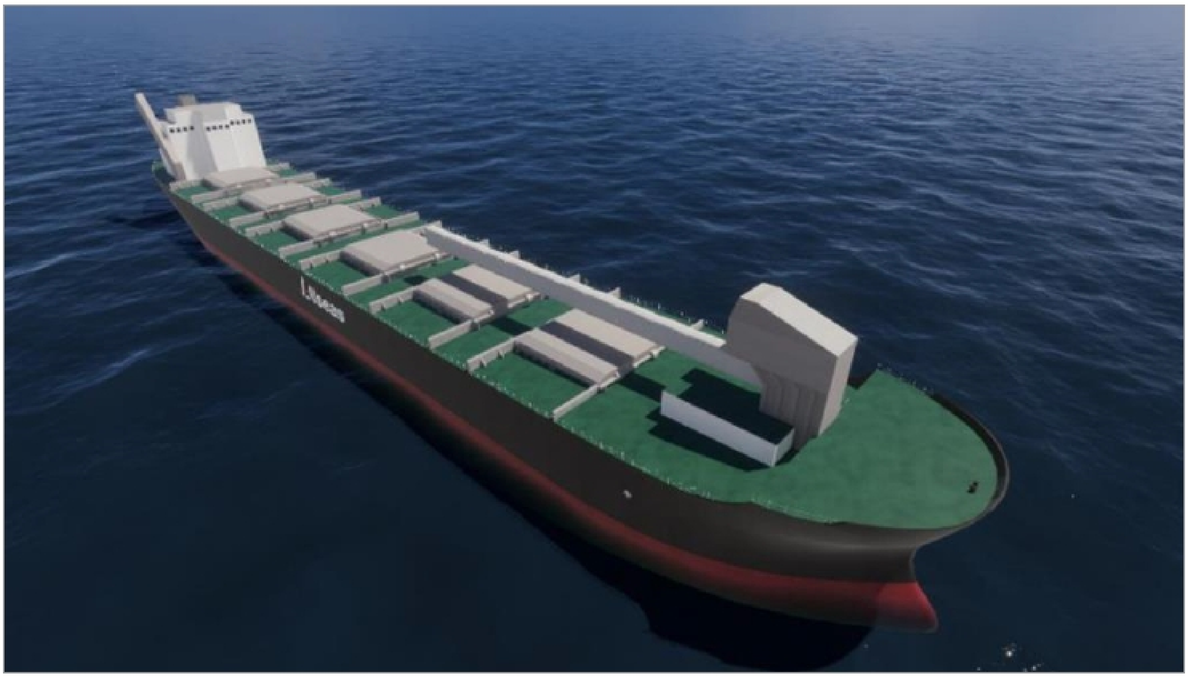
Expected transfer vessel specifications:

- Length = 225 m
- Beam = 32 m
- Loaded draft = 17.6 m
- DP system = DP-2
- Maximum speed = 12 kts.
- Propulsion (diesel electric) = 4x azimuth thruster 5000 kW

The TV will be outfitted with approximately five cargo holds for receiving nodule ore from the Hidden Gem. These holds are covered with hatches and fitted with bottom gate valves. A materials handling system, similar to that of the PV, will be installed. Conveyors positioned beneath the holds will transfer nodules to a C-loop conveyor, which elevates the material to an unloading boom for discharge.

The vessel will have a payload capacity of 50,000 wmt and an offloading rate of up to 2,500 wmt per hour. A DP-2 system ensures accurate positioning during transfer operations, with the design accommodating offloading in sea states up to 3.5 m significant wave height (Figure 13.27).

Figure 13.27 Illustration of TV



Source: Allseas

14 Processing and recovery methods

14.1 Overview

Processing of nodules collected from NORI Area D is required to recover the metals contained and realize the economic viability of the project. This section outlines the flowsheet selection process that was undertaken and will explain in detail how the selected process works to recover these metals for sale. The flowsheet development process for the selected flowsheet will also be discussed, though some specific outcomes and learnings from test work can be found in Section 10.

The flowsheet selection process involved ideation of plausible flowsheet configurations and creation of a shortlist. The shortlist of flowsheet options then underwent a screening process, where each was assessed against a range of criteria and objectives as developed by TMC. Eventually, the flowsheet selected for further development was RKEF/Refining, which combines pyrometallurgical unit operations on the front end and hydrometallurgical refining to generate final products. The pyrometallurgical section of the flowsheet combines three existing processes: Rotary Kiln/Electric Furnace (RKEF) technology, sulfidation and converting to generate a matte material. The matte is then fed downstream into conventional hydrometallurgical refinery unit operations to generate final products.

TMC USA's development scenario involves processing the nodules initially through an existing RKEF facility in Japan, with DGE having signed a binding memorandum of understanding (MOU) with the Pacific Metals Company of Hachinohe, Japan (PAMCO). The intended commercial agreement is to process the nodules through a tolling arrangement, where TMC USA retains ownership of the nodules, any intermediates and final products from the process. Since the arrangement involves only the use of existing major equipment at PAMCO, the products from this process at first production will be a manganese silicate and an iron-nickel-copper-cobalt alloy. Sulfidation and converting unit operations to further refine the alloy are planned for installation after initial operations commence, with a view to produce a nickel-copper-cobalt matte product about 18-24 months into commercial operations. The matte is a marketable product at these volumes and thus, the preliminary phases of operation do not involve hydrometallurgical processing.

From Year 6 onward, TMC USA intends to bring the matte to a newly built, US-based refinery to create nickel and cobalt sulfate products, as well as copper cathode. In Years 6-10, approximately half of the matte will be brought to this facility, with the other half being sold as a product as planned for the earlier years of operation. From Year 10 onward, 100% of matte generated will be brought to the United States for refining, and TMC will become a full-time producer of nickel and cobalt sulfates and copper cathode. This section provides an overview of flowsheet development to date, with particular focus on the front-end pyrometallurgical process based on this section of the flowsheet being employed immediately upon commencement of commercial operations. Progress completed to date on downstream refinery testing is also included. Specific outcomes and learnings from all test work can be found in Section 10.

The front-end of this process involves first drying, dehydrating, initiating the reduction and pre-heating the nodules through a rotary kiln, with the resulting calcine discharged at high temperature. The resultant calcined nodules are then transferred from the kiln to feed bins above an electric smelting furnace, where electric power is employed to smelt the material into two immiscible (distinct) layers that are removed from the furnace through tapping at separate height levels. The nickel, copper and cobalt deport to the higher density, and thus bottom alloy phase, while the manganese deports to the lower density, top layer oxide phase, called manganese silicate. The manganese silicate represents a final product from this process and is crushed, screened and sold as feedstock for production of manganese alloys for use in steel production.

The alloy phase is transferred into a two-step process employing Peirce-Smith converters. In this configuration, sulfur, silica flux and air/oxygen as a carrier gas are added in the first (sulfidation) vessel to "convert" the metal to a sulfide phase called "matte" while simultaneously deporting some of the iron to an oxide "slag" phase that floats on the surface of the matte. In the second (finishing) vessel, more air/oxygen and silica flux are added to deport even more iron to the slag phase, which is recycled back into the sulfidation vessel to maximize metal recovery. The matte from the second vessel, containing 5% iron, represents the final product from the RKEF flowsheet, intended first for sale into existing nickel and copper refinery operations and in the future will be further refined by TMC USA in dedicated facilities.

14.2 Flowsheet options screening and selection

The foundational objective of the flowsheet development was to create a configuration that will maximize recoveries of battery grade metals and steel-making feedstocks while minimizing solid waste. To achieve the near zero solid waste objective, every product or major resultant stream from the eventual process will need to be a useful material with an identifiable, existing market or an identified destination to recycle the stream.

Project objectives were developed for the screening of the plausible flowsheet options. Multiple process types and flowsheet configurations were identified and assessed against these objectives. Technical, financial market, and strategic considerations were all assessed as part of the screening process. Table 14.1 below, shows a simplified description of the screening of the different process options that were assessed, and the project objectives against which they were judged. A green cell indicates that the flowsheet meets requirements for that objective. Orange means the flowsheet partially meets objectives or there is significant uncertainty, while red means the flowsheet does not or is unlikely to meet the objective.

Table 14.1 Simple screening process for various nodule processing flowsheet options

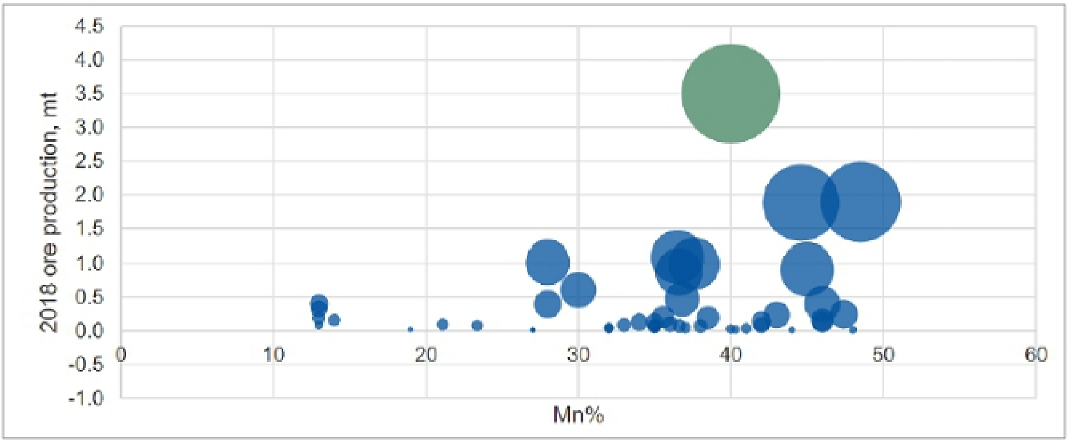
Flowsheet Option	Recoveries	Battery Grade Products	Mn Product Fits Existing Markets	Zero Solid Waste	Q1 Cash Costs	Cost/Time for Development	Risk/Reward
RKEF/Refining	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Thermal Upgrading	Orange	Red	Red	Red	Green	Orange	Orange
Nitric Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Red	Red
Cuprion Process	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Orange	Red
Sulfuric Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Green	Red	Orange
Chloride Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Red	Red

The primary differentiating factors for selecting the flowsheet were generation of a manganese product that fits within an existing market and a flowsheet that yields near zero solid waste. It is also extremely similar to existing operations extensively used across the global, thus minimizing technical risk.

14.2.1 Manganese product and associated market

The development of nodule projects will have a significant impact on the global manganese markets. Figure 14.1 presents the world's existing manganese mines, with the manganese production 60,000 ktpa nickel equivalent nodule project overlaid in green. This operation will represent a 6% increase in the current supply of manganese on a 2023 basis (CRU 2024)

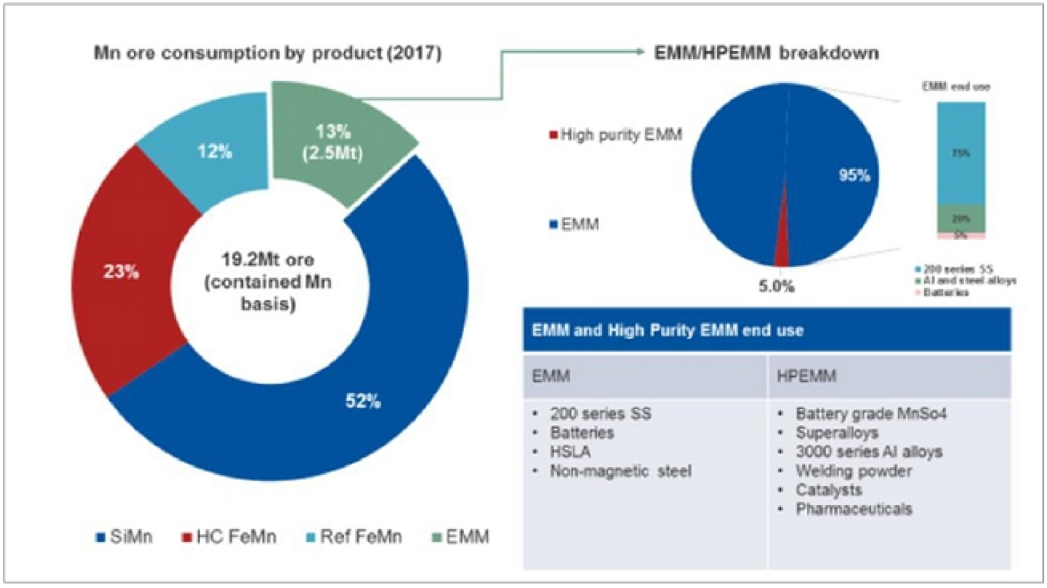
Figure 14.1 2018 production of manganese ore (blue) compared to TMC's equivalent project (green)



Source: CRU 2019. The bubble size indicates the total contained manganese in ore production

The primary uses of manganese are in the steel industry, which consumes upwards of 90% of all production. The manganese reacts with dissolved oxygen in the liquid steel melt and creates an oxide layer that can be removed. Dissolved oxygen in the steel melt creates a porous structure when the melt eventually solidifies. The removal of this dissolved oxygen with manganese creates a stronger and more durable final solid steel product (Kim 2018). Portable batteries and aluminum beverage cans are primary non-steel uses. In each case, manganese plays a vital role in improving the properties of the alloys and compounds. The chart in Figure 14.2 shows an estimate of how much manganese is consumed in each of its end-use applications.

Figure 14.2 2017 Manganese ore consumption by end-use project



Source: CRU 2019

Although there is significant growth in manganese sulfate for battery uses and a sizeable market for Electrolytic Manganese Metal (EMM) and other specialized manganese products, the production volumes from nodules would overwhelm the manganese demand in these markets. On the other hand, processing of the nodules by pyrometallurgy (RKEF) produces a manganese silicate product that can be further processed to manganese alloys (Kim 2018, Sridhar et al 1976, Sridhar et al 1975). The high grade of manganese in this product rivals conventional high-grade manganese ores. Additionally, the product has a dry, pre-reduced nature, a favorable impurity profile, and the physical attributes of a slag material (strong, dense). The manganese silicate also contains the stable oxides from the nodules, notably silica and a portion of the iron, that are required in the downstream manganese alloying process. All of these characteristics make this a potentially disruptive product in the production of manganese alloys, as it conceptually compares favorably in relation to both manganese ore and manganese-rich slags as feed in the production of silico-manganese. Hence, the RKEF flowsheet was the only one from Table 14.1 that was able to fulfill TMC USA's near zero solid waste objective.

14.2.2 Near zero solid waste generation

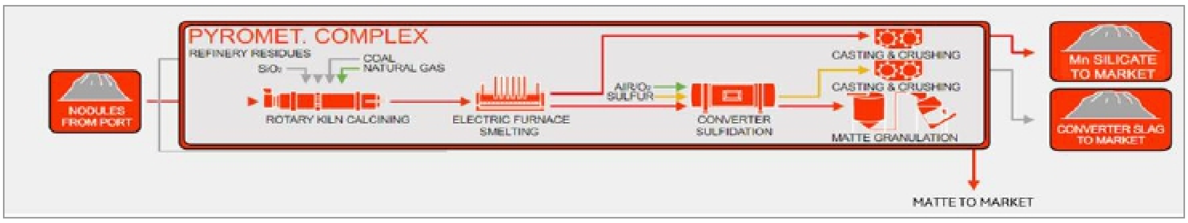
The RKEF and refining flowsheet also produces a converter (iron silicate) slag that is a saleable product, instead of residues that will require disposal to residue storage facilities. Slags are commonly employed as construction aggregate, rail ballast, and in sand blasting. In contrast, there is very little commercial precedence for large scale uses of residues produced in other hydrometallurgical processes used to generate alternative products, such as EMM and manganese sulfate.

Combined with good performance across other selection criteria and a comparatively straight-forward development pathway, given RKEF's extensive global operating experience, this flowsheet was selected for further development.

14.3 Process description

The selected processing route for the nodules originally envisaged a greenfield plant comprising both pyrometallurgical and hydrometallurgical plants, producing nickel and cobalt sulfates (battery grade) as well as copper cathode and a manganese silicate slag product. The first phases of commercial operations do not include the hydrometallurgical plant, as the project is based on tolling through existing RKEF plants. The first facility planned for tolling is the Pacific Metals Company (PAMCO) of Hachinohe, Japan. PAMCO does not presently have alloy to matte facilities installed, so initially only existing major equipment will be used, and the process will terminate with the production and sale of an iron-nickel-copper-cobalt alloy plus the manganese silicate slag. Subsequently, a Peirce-Smith converter operation will be added to the PAMCO plant to process the alloy to a higher value matte product. The converting process also produces a slag by-product, which is intended for sale as a construction aggregate, and therefore should not require disposal as waste. Figure 14.3 shows a schematic diagram of the major equipment and associated streams from the pyrometallurgical complex.

Figure 14.3 Major equipment and associated stream from the pyrometallurgical complex



Source: Hatch

14.3.1 Alloy production

Nodules are reclaimed from stockpiles and fed directly to rotary calcining kilns, together with coal to act as a reductant and silica flux to regulate slag chemistry. In the rotary kilns, the nodules are heated to high temperatures. Free moisture in the nodules is removed, as is the crystalline moisture (de-hydrated). Higher oxides of manganese first decompose thermally and then are further partially reduced carbothermically together with selected other oxides.

The calcined nodules are transferred hot in refractory-lined containers to the electric furnaces. Here, residual carbon left after calcining completes the desired degree of reduction. It is important to control reduction such that most of the manganese remains in the slag phase, while ensuring nickel, copper and cobalt reports to alloy.

The alloy and manganese silicate are tapped periodically and separately through tapholes located at different elevations on the furnace. The alloy is transferred to the sulfidation and converting steps (matte production) by ladle and overhead cranes, while the manganese silicate is cast into a pit, allowed to freeze, and then recovered and crushed to a suitable size distribution (based on customer requirements) for sale to the silico-manganese alloy industry.

The alloy and manganese silicate are tapped periodically at different heights from the furnace. The alloy is transferred to the sulfidation and converting steps (matte production), while the manganese silicate is cast into a pit, allowed to freeze, and then recovered and crushed to a suitable size distribution (based on customer requirements) for sale to the silico-manganese alloy industry.

14.3.2 Matte production

Most ferronickel RKEF plants, including PAMCO, have refined ferronickel as their final product. Two plants (Société le Niquel (SLN)'s Doniambo smelter in New Caledonia and PT Vale Indonesia) have produced or currently produce matte by adding sulfur to the process. The Doniambo process is far more efficient in terms of sulfur utilization and has lower SO_2 emissions to the environment, so has been chosen for the matte process.

The production of matte is achieved using a two-step process in a Peirce-Smith converter aisle. The first step is in dedicated sulfidation vessels (SV). Alloy is added to the partially filled vessel and air is blown through most of the vessel tuyères to partially and selectively oxidize some of the iron which deports to slag and combines with silica flux to achieve a manageable fluidity. At the same time, liquid sulfur at 140°C (maintained by steam heated lines) is pumped intermittently through a limited number of dedicated tuyères to transform the alloy to matte. When sulfur is not being injected, steam is used to keep the tuyères open. The SV operates with a large matte heel in a semi-continuous mode (i.e., relatively small amounts of product matte are removed at a time). Slag from the SVs represents the converter slag and is sold.

The intermediate matte from the SV is taken to a finishing vessel (FV), where blowing commences and more silica flux is added to form slag with the iron that is being oxidized. Blowing continues until the iron in the matte decreases to 5%. The 5% iron matte will first be sold but in later years of operation will be sent to a TMC-operated dedicated facility in the United States for refining into final products. Slag from the FV is rich in pay-metals so it is therefore recycled back to the SVs to improve recovery.

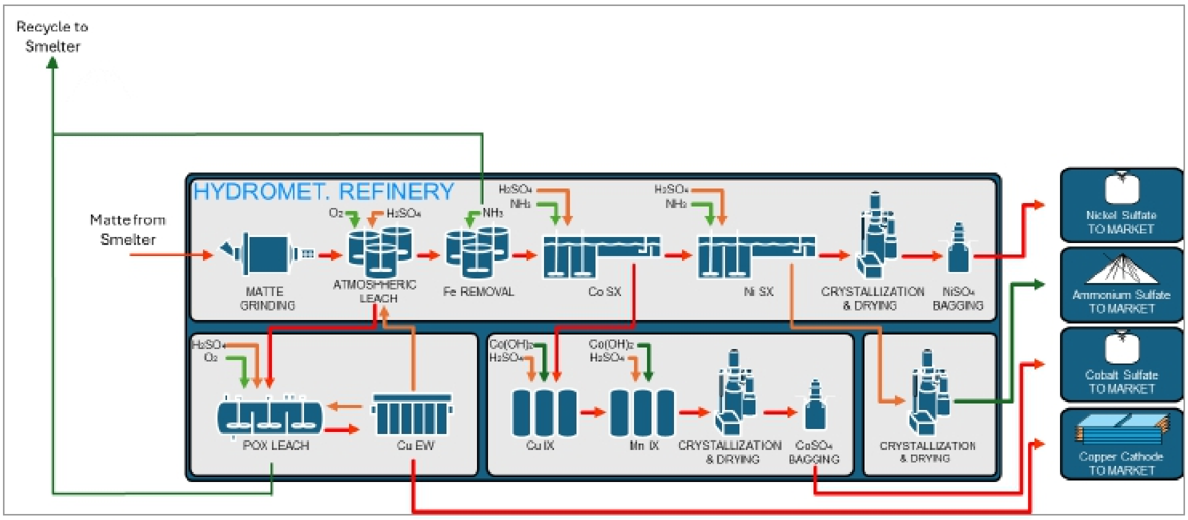
14.3.3 Matte refining

Beginning in Year 6, matte produced at PAMCO and other RKEF plants will be shipped to a dedicated hydrometallurgical refinery in the USA to generate refined products. As with the pyrometallurgical section of the flowsheet, the matte refining process uses existing technologies that are already in use commercially.

The downstream refining program begins by putting the granulated matte through a mill before subjecting it to a two-stage leach process – an initial agitated atmospheric leach (AL) and subsequent pressure oxidation (POX) leach. The leaching process is designed to separate the copper from the nickel and cobalt. Small amounts of nickel and cobalt that remain in the AL residue are removed during the POX and recycled back to the smelter to maximize recoveries. The copper stream from the POX undergoes electrowinning, resulting in copper cathode which represents a final product from the process.

The nickel and cobalt that is separated during the leaching process is then fed into a cobalt solvent extraction, which separates the nickel and cobalt into their individual components. Copper that was not removed during the leaching phase is extracted after the cobalt solvent extraction and recycled to the POX. The cobalt phase also undergoes a manganese removal step, with the residual manganese recycled back into the smelter to maximize its recovery to the manganese silicate. The nickel phase resulting from the cobalt solvent extraction then proceeds to a nickel solvent extraction where it is separated from the ammonium that has been added throughout the process. All three phases – cobalt, nickel and ammonium – proceed to individual crystallization processes to create sulfates, all of which represent final productions from the refinery. Nickel and cobalt sulfate can be sold as feedstocks for battery production and energy storage, while the ammonium sulfate is sold for use as a fertilizer. The process to generate final products from the matte is depicted below in Figure 14.4.

Figure 14.4 Major equipment and associated stream from the hydrometallurgical refinery



Source: Hatch

14.4 Flowsheet development

14.4.1 Literature review

Pyrometallurgical processing of nodules has been extensively studied from the early 1970s until the present day and appears to be the preferred process for most of the other currently active nodule processing research groups. Many groups including Kennecott Utah Copper LLC[22] (KUC); Inco Limited[23]; Cuban / Bulgarian; German; Indian; Japanese; and Korean entities have studied pyrometallurgical processing of nodules at a laboratory scale. The nodule samples for these tests were collected from their respective license areas in the CCZ.

22 Kennecott Utah Copper LLC (KUC) is a division of Rio Tinto Group. It is a mining, smelting and refining company. KUC has its corporate headquarters in South Jordan Utah.

23 Inco Limited (Inco) was a Canadian mining company and the world's leading producer of nickel for much of the 20th century. In October 2006, Inco was purchased by the Brazilian mining company Vale.

A detailed review of specific process, modelling and available bench-scale testing data from the following parties was reviewed to inform the design process for TMC's preliminary flowsheet:

- Inco (Canada).
- Sumitomo (Japan).
- German Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources (Germany).
- United States Bureau of Mines (USA).
- Indian National Metallurgical Laboratory (India).

The literature review focused on specific content provided by each of the above groups. Testwork at both bench and pilot scale (if available) involving calcining, smelting and matte production were all assessed. Key results that were analyzed included composition of intermediate materials (calcine, alloy, manganese silicate and matte) as well as energy usage, consumables used and quantity requirements, and operating conditions that were tested by each of the groups. References from the literature review are provided at the end of the chapter. Based on review of the data, it was concluded that the best data for designing a preliminary pyrometallurgical flowsheet for treating nodules was provided by Inco, Japanese and German references.

14.4.2 Bench-scale test work

NORI has commissioned numerous small-scale investigations in support of the project, prior to, during and after the larger scale pilot work described in Section 10.3.

The work was carried out at:

- Kingston Process Metallurgy, Ontario (KPM).
- FLS, Pennsylvania.
- Expert Process Solutions (Glencore), Ontario (XPS).
- SINTEF, Norway.
- SGS Lakefield, Ontario (SGS).

The test work is summarized in Table 14.2.

Table 14.2 Summary of bench-scale test work

Final Report Date	Facility	Description	Reason
29-May-2019	KPM	Evaluation of alternate manganese products	Exploring potential opportunities for added value for project
19-Nov-2019	FLS	Calcination and carbothermic reduction of nodules in a lab tube furnace and direct-fired batch kiln	Investigation of reduction process prior to pilot-scale work. Preliminary assessment of sintering and dusting behavior.
22-Apr-2020	XPS	Oxidation of artificial matte to final product matte	Investigation of converting prior to pilot-scale work. Measuring elemental partition coefficients as a function of %Fe in matte.
28-Aug-2020	XPS	Chemical analyses of calcine, slag and metal samples as part of a 'Round Robin' campaign	To help establish reliable assaying methods
9-Oct-2020	XPS	Oxidation of Mn in alloy and sulfidation using pyrite and pyrrhotite	Investigation of pre-converting steps ahead of pilot-scale work
11-Dec-2020	KPM	Smelting of calcine produced at FLS part way through piloting	To resolve issues with determining correct reductant coal addition at FLS

Final Report Date	Facility	Description	Reason
7-May-2021	KPM	Small scale calcination of nodules in batch rotary-kilns followed by induction furnace smelting	Inputs to process modelling and for planning pilot-scale work
14-Sep-2021	KPM	Determination of residual moisture in nodules after draining excess water	Provide basis for moisture content of nodules entering process plant

24-Jan-2022	SINTEF	Production of silico-manganese alloy from smelting slag samples	Preliminary investigation of suitability of smelting slag product as feed to silico-manganese industry
16-Mar-2022	KPM	Quantitative SEM investigation of slag samples from smelting and converting tests	Determination of elemental distribution amongst different phases
23-Jun-2022	KPM	Assaying material from FLS and XPS pilot campaigns	Assay cross-checks
10-Oct-2024	SGS	Refining of TMC's pilot matte into nickel and cobalt sulfates	Proof of concept and preliminary data collection for the hydrometallurgical refinery aspect of the flowsheet

14.4.3 Concept engineering

A PEA for the overall project was undertaken in 2019 and updated in an Initial Assessment for NORI Area D in 2021 (AMC, 2021). The study assessed the entire flowsheet as it was then envisaged, with large scale processing of nodules from recovery from the seafloor through pyrometallurgical and hydrometallurgical processing plants to final products. The outcome of the PEA was a favorable net present value for the project.

14.4.4 Piloting

14.4.4.1 Piloting overview

A set of pilot-scale pyrometallurgical processing campaigns using a large sample (75 t) of nodules harvested from NORI Area D of the CCZ. The work comprised calcining, smelting, sulfidation and converting steps in accordance with the chosen process for the project.

The main objectives of the pilot scale work were to:

- Demonstrate the chosen pyrometallurgical process.
- Produce on-spec matte for subsequent hydrometallurgical test work and on-spec manganese silicate slag for product development activities.
- Update process design criteria in support of project development and engineering design. The work was carried out in two separate locations:
  - FLSmidth's testing facility in Bethlehem, Pennsylvania calcined the nodules, and
  - The XPS (Expert Process Solutions, a Glencore company) technology centre in Falconbridge, Ontario smelted the calcine from FLS, sulfidized the resultant alloy, which was then converted to product matte.

The nodules were calcined at the FLS pilot kiln facility in Pennsylvania and the calcine was shipped to Falconbridge, Ontario, where the remainder of the pyrometallurgical work was performed in the XPS pilot-scale DC arc furnace. The pilot-scale testwork conducted is summarized in Table 14.3. Select results from the piloting is available in Section 10.3.

Table 14.3 Summary of pilot scale test work

Final Report Date	Facility	Description
December 2020	FLS	Polymetallic nodule calcining using a pilot rotary kiln system
10-Feb-2022	XPS	Pilot smelting of calcined sea nodules
23-Dec-2021	XPS	Sulfidation and converting of alloy

The pyrometallurgical pilot phase of work is considered complete and was able to demonstrate that:

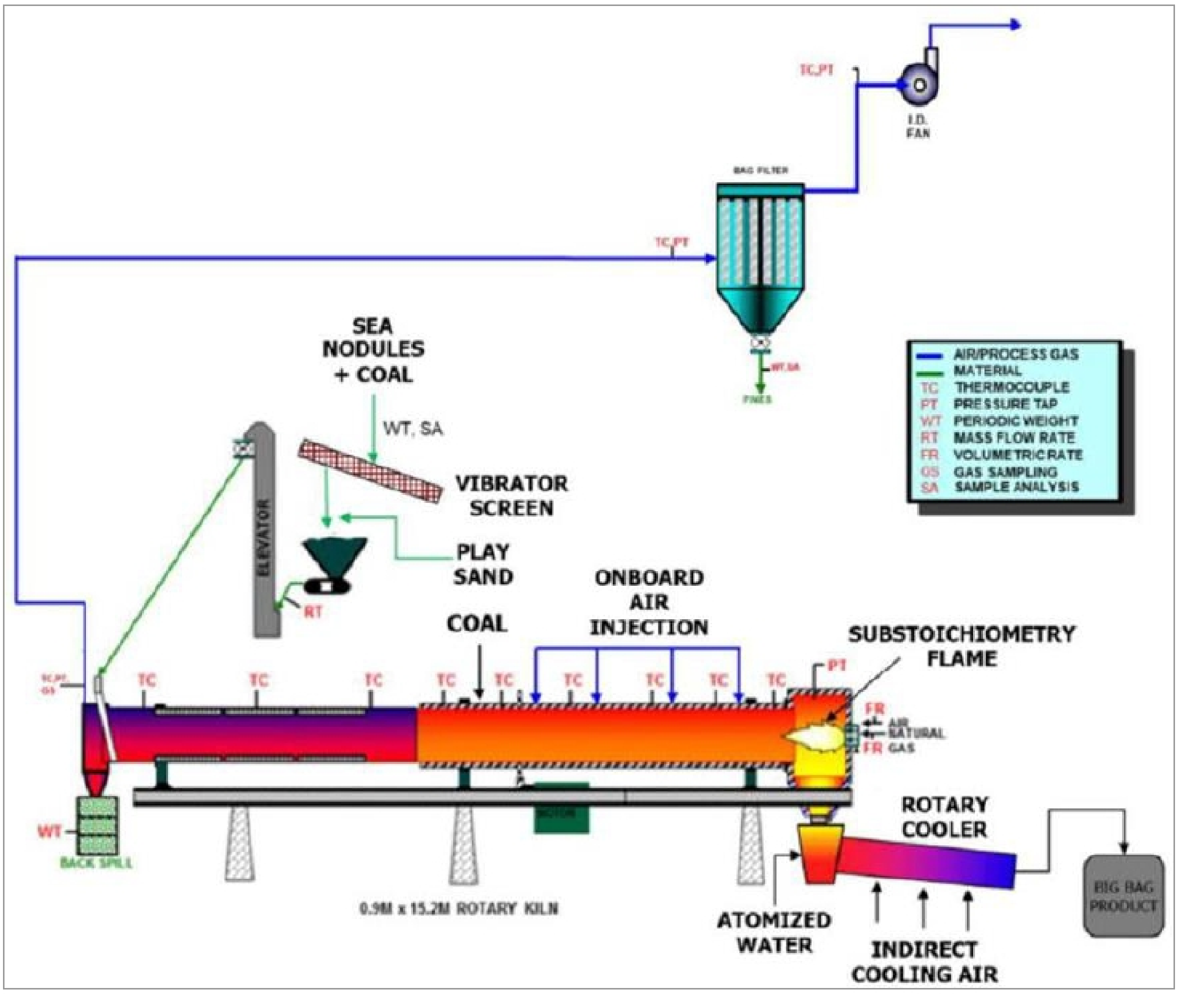
- The nodules can be smelted to an alloy with excellent recoveries of nickel, copper and cobalt.
- A manganese silicate slag product can be made that conforms to TMC's preliminary specification under suitably reducing conditions consistent with the current plan for the process.
- A final matte can be made that is suitable for hydrometallurgical processing (albeit with an iron level that is a little higher than planned for the project).

14.4.4.2 Calcining at FLSmidth

Nodules retrieved during the 2020 campaign were shipped to FLSmidth for calcining, which took place between 12 October and 14 November 2020.

Calcining was performed in the facility's large pilot kiln, which is 15 m long and 0.9 m in diameter. This kiln has been in use for several years, including for test work with which TMC's technical consultant had been involved in and has witnessed in the past. The equipment is depicted in Figure 14.5 and Figure 14.6. Note that feeding and cooling underwent some changes during the work (FLSmidth, 2020). No pre-processing had been planned since the currently proposed commercial plant will feed as-received nodules directly to the kilns.

Figure 14.5 Schematic of kiln and ancillary equipment as originally configured



Source: FLSmidth

Figure 14.6 Pilot plant rotary kiln, feed-end to right.

Source: Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd.

14.4.4.3 Smelting, sulfidizing and converting at XPS

Pilot operations vs commercial

The proposed commercial operation for the project closely follows matte production as practiced by SLN at their Doniambo nickel laterite processing facility in New Caledonia until 2016, where calcine is smelted conventionally in an alternating current (AC) furnace to produce a ferronickel alloy, similar to many plants worldwide. Uniquely at SLN, some of this ferronickel was taken to a Peirce-Smith converter aisle where liquid sulfur was added through one of the tuyères, while air was used simultaneously in the other tuyères to oxidize out some of the iron. This first vessel operated under more or less steady chemistry conditions (at the point of an intermediate matte containing around 30% iron). Once the vessel was full of matte, roughly half of the matte was then transferred to a second converter to remove most of the remaining iron to produce a Bessemer matte for downstream hydrometallurgical refining.

There are only a limited number of facilities worldwide that offer pilot-scale electric furnace smelting facilities at a scale suitable for the project needs. Pilot-scale Peirce-Smith converters are not available, and liquid sulfur injection that is representative of industrial operation would be challenging in other pilot equipment (or even a pilot scale PS Converter in fact, due to the specific gas/fluid dynamics present in the full scale). Under these circumstances, it is not possible to closely replicate the proposed commercial operation. Some degree of compromise is necessary to devise test work that adequately reproduces the key process steps from a metallurgical perspective. Thus, it was decided to proceed with both the smelting and sulfidation/converting work using the same furnace, namely the direct current (DC) furnace at Glencore's XPS facility in Falconbridge, Ontario, as it is at least partially analogous of the anticipated industrial process.

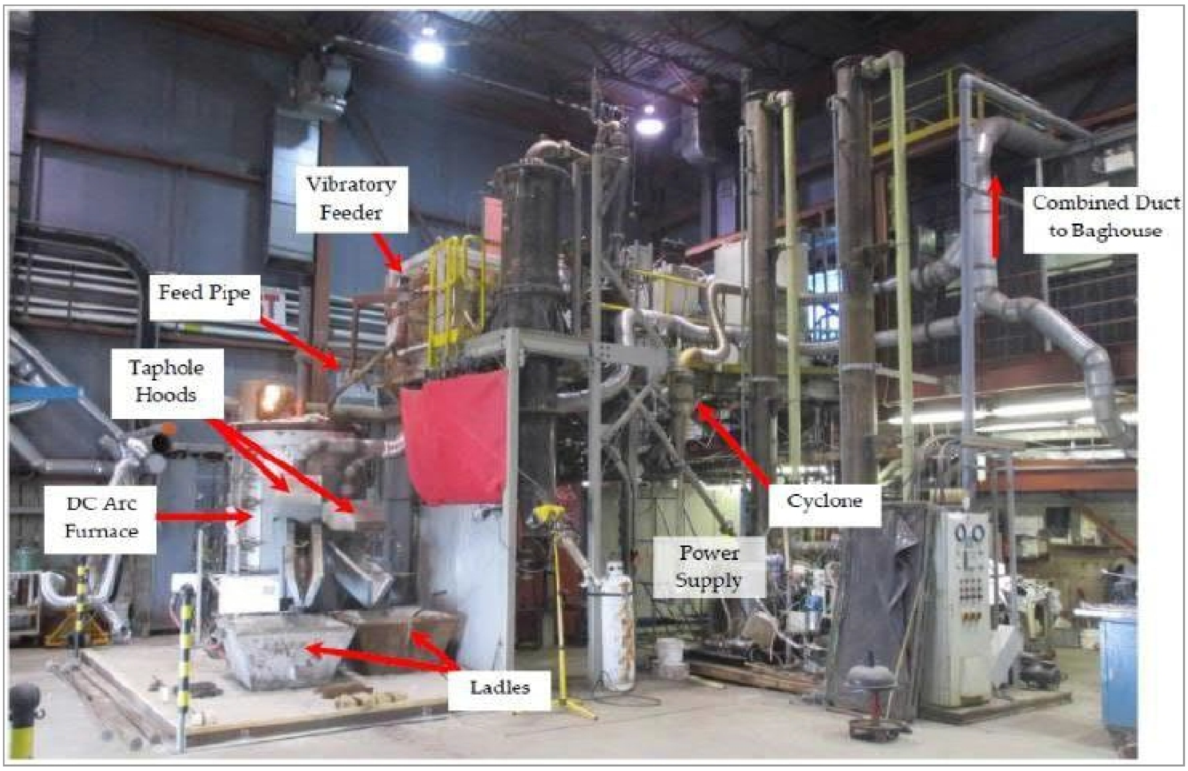
Equipment description

The XPS DC furnace is a 250-kW cylindrical furnace with a diameter inside the refractory lining of 762 mm and a total height of nearly 3 m above the floor. It is equipped with metal and slag tapholes for intermittent removal of molten material. It has an off-gas system for particulate capture. See Figure 14.7 and Figure 14.8 for layout and for dimensions.

A heel of material is needed upon which to strike an arc for the furnace to power up. Feed can then be added semi-continuously through a vibratory feed system connected to a feed pipe through the furnace roof, or to a pneumatic conveying system and injection lances. Lumps can also be added by hand through the roof port. A viewing port can be used to measure melt temperature via optical pyrometer, although that is dependent on not having any solids/partially melted material on top of the slag layer.

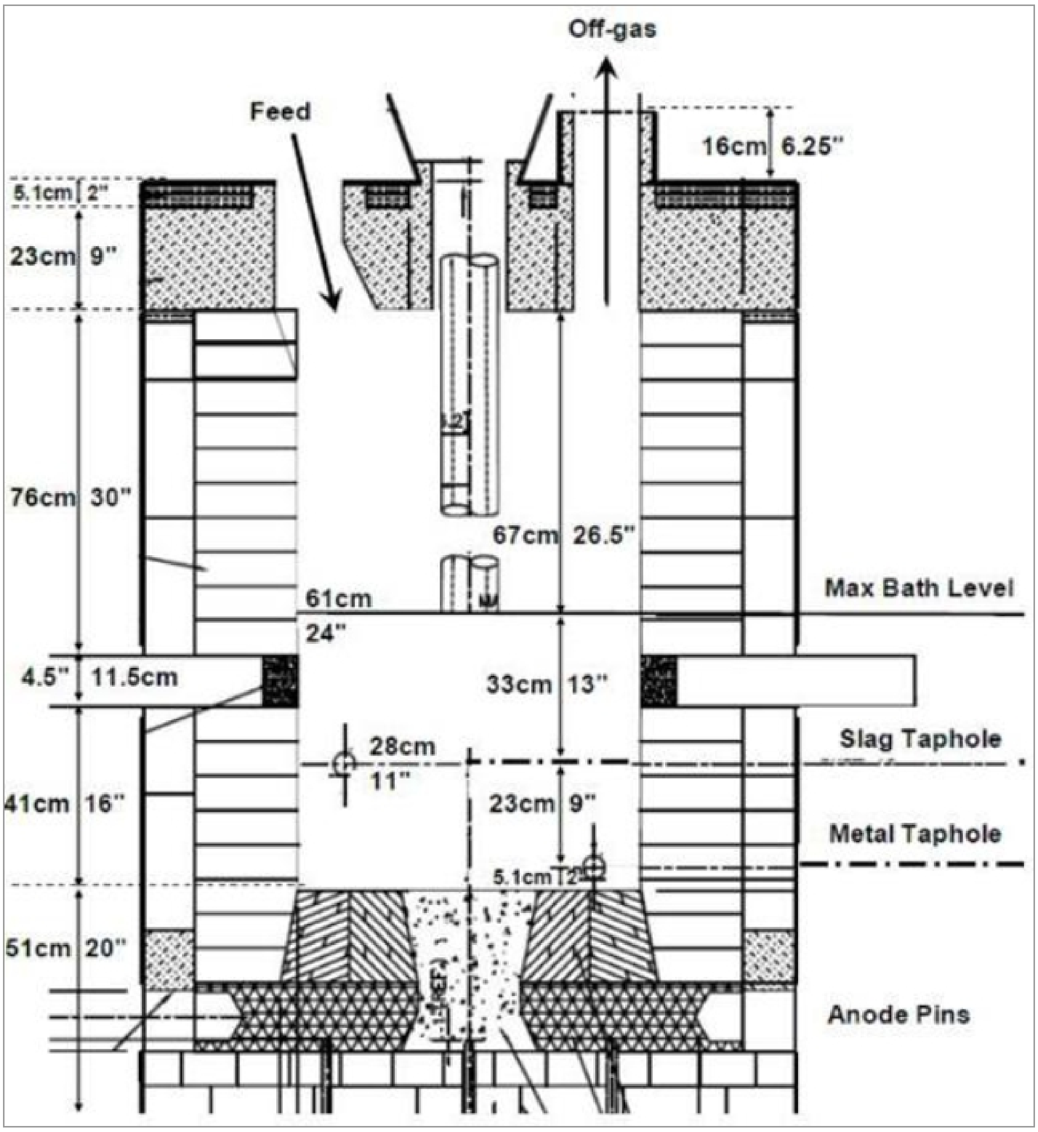
An operator control station has a computer and screen interface that can totalize power input and calculate bath temperature from known heat losses and smelting energy requirements. This is cross-checked against temperatures taken from molten streams when the furnace is tapped for slag and matte.

Figure 14.7 Pilot plant dc furnace and ancillary equipment



Source: XPS

Figure 14.8 DC Furnace Dimensions



Source: XPS

14.4.5 Demonstration scale calcining and smelting trial

Following the successful pilot mining trial completed in Q4 of 2022, TMC and PAMCO identified an opportunity to use 2,000 tonnes of collected nodules for demonstration-scale metallurgical testing at their existing RKEF facility in Hachinohe, Japan. The nodules were delivered to PAMCO in April of 2024, and testing was completed in April of 2025.

The trial involved first processing the nodules in one of PAMCO's commercial kilns over six campaigns. Multiple campaigns were required as the nodules could not be calcined all at once due to limited hot calcine storage, and the calcine had to be cooled prior to transfer to the smelting facility. The calcine generated was stored and cooled over several weeks before transfer to an adjacent smelting facility containing a 4,000 kVA furnace that was used for smelting. The smelting took place over four campaigns.

The overall goals of the trial were to confirm the metallurgy (confirm operating parameters, process control approaches and gather data), gain operator experience with nodules and their derived intermediates, generate samples for product marketing and downstream metallurgical testing and to assess the slag behavior during smelting and associated refractory wear.

The tests were able to achieve all objectives and confirm that stable operations can be achieved at commercial scale. Commentary on technical outcomes from the trials can be found in Section 10.3.

14.4.6 Manganese silicate slag quality

The slag from the electric furnace smelting process is intended to be sold as a feed to the silico-manganese industry and constitutes a significant portion of the project's revenue stream. The potential customers have certain parameters in mind that may make the slag more or less desirable. This imposes some additional constraints on running the smelting operation for optimal products.

A slag high in manganese and low in phosphorus is desirable. Low phosphorus is achieved by using high degrees of reduction to bring the phosphorus into the alloy. On the other hand, this also tends to bring more manganese into the alloy, depleting the slag to some extent. The mass ratio of slag to metal is quite high however, which helps to mitigate this. High degrees of reduction are, of course, beneficial to pay-metal recovery, but they also lead to more blowing requirements to remove iron, manganese, silicon, carbon, and phosphorus in the downstream converting/sulfidation process.

The XPS pilot campaigns indicate that a preliminary specification for slag can be met by reducing to the point where iron in slag is below 2% without raising manganese in alloy to high levels or significantly depleting manganese in slag.

15 Metallurgical plant (onshore)

TMC intends to begin operations onshore by using existing facilities that are already operating RKEF equipment, presently processing nickel laterite ores. The Indonesian ore export ban of 2014 left several operations (primarily in Asia but there is some availability elsewhere) without reliable feed for their process plants, and as such, these facilities have been operating under their available capacity. This predicament for existing facilities provided a unique opportunity for TMC to process nodules through these plants, eliminating almost all of the onshore capital expenditure and aligning the timelines of the offshore and onshore teams by having a commissioned plant ready to accept nodules on commencement of commercial-scale offshore nodule collection.

In November of 2022, DGE signed a non-binding MOU with PAMCO to process the first 1.3 Mwmt of nodules through their existing operation located in Hachinohe, Japan. The PAMCO site contains three complete RKEF ferronickel lines, though the facility is operating at a very low production capacity factor. The existing feed into their ferronickel operation is laterite ore sourced from New Caledonia and the Philippines. A commercial partnership advanced in November 2023 through the signing of a binding MOU between the two parties. The nodules will be processed under a tolling arrangement, under which TMC retains sole ownership of the nodules and any intermediate or final products from the process. PAMCO is responsible for any capital scope that is required to prepare their facility to accept the nodules.

The PAMCO site sits adjacent to a port, allowing for easy delivery of nodules from the collection site. The port is equipped with material handling capabilities that will allow for a seamless offload. The port also contains conveyors that can transfer the material directly into the plant, maximizing efficiency. Once conveyed into the plant, the nodules will be directly fed to PAMCO’s Rotary Kiln #6. The kiln is designed to remove moisture, de-hydrate and to begin the reduction process, using coal as a reductant and silica is added to control the slag chemistries downstream. From the kiln, the hot calcined material is transferred via the calcine transfer system to bins above the furnace where the material is discharged in a controlled manner into the smelting electric furnace. The manganese-oxide rich slag is separated from the iron, nickel, copper and cobalt metallics, thus producing two products: an iron-rich Ni-Cu-Co alloy and manganese silicate. These represent the final saleable products from the PAMCO process when commercial operations begin.

TMC and PAMCO together conducted the first commercial scale calcining operations on nodules. NORI supplied 2,000 wmt of nodules from their Test Mining, with roughly 500 t of calcined material generated. A subsequent commercial scale smelting operation using PAMCO’s 4,000 kVA furnace, previously used for fly ash processing, was conducted in H1 2025, with associated quantities of manganese silicate and alloy produced. TMC intends to use the products generated from this commercial scale trial for marketing and further metallurgical testing purposes.

NORI Area D allows for ramp up to 12 Mtpa in terms of offshore capability, and therefore additional processing opportunities are required to process this amount when the offshore production increases. While TMC USA is actively pursuing the strategy of reshoring nodule processing and refining to the United States, it should be noted that additional opportunities for further processing capacity exist mainly in Indonesia due to the sheer volume of acceptable facilities and their ability to build plants and install equipment in quick timeframes. TMC therefore intends to conduct additional tolling in Indonesia.

The present equipment at PAMCO does not include a converter aisle, which will process the alloy into a higher value matte product. A capital project exists at PAMCO to install this equipment, and the tolling arrangement between DGE and PAMCO will be renegotiated at that time. Market insights denote that the matte holds significantly more value in terms of price and optionality for customer placement compared to the alloy. The present assumption is that any Indonesian site used for additional processing as described above would include converting technology, and therefore matte will be immediately produced as the Ni-Cu-Co product at these sites.

TMC will also produce a manganese silicate product at PAMCO and Indonesia, which will be sold to silico-manganese producers supplying the steel industry with this important consumable. The close proximity of Japan and Indonesia to the Asian target market countries for manganese silicate, considering this product is 90% of NORI Area D production by volume, is yet another advantage to processing the nodules through these locations.

15.1 Strategy of employing existing assets

15.1.1 Overview and context

The front-end pyrometallurgical section of the selected flowsheet uses conventional RKEF technology that is employed in many existing processing facilities worldwide.

TMC’s present strategy is to employ, the use of existing RKEF processing facilities in Japan and Indonesia to align the onshore and offshore schedules. This strategy allows TMC to retain sole ownership of the nodules, and all intermediate and final products generated at all stages of the processing operations. The operator of the existing plant will be responsible for any capital modifications to prepare the plant to operate and will be compensated under an appropriate commercial arrangement.

Several factors contributed to the pursuit of this strategy for onshore operations, of which two are highlighted below:

- The cost of a new processing plant is extremely capital intensive.
- Site selection and permitting for a new plant is very time consuming and does not align with commercial recovery permitting and feasible start of offshore production

This strategy is low risk, eliminates almost all capital expenses required to get into operation, and allows for the onshore timeline to align with anticipated commercial recovery permitting and offshore commercial recovery capabilities.

15.1.2 Ramp up of commercial operations

The onshore processing capabilities must align with offshore production when commercial operations commence. Initial offshore production for NORI Area D is 1.3 Mwmt, which is destined for tolling in Japan (see Section 15.2). Works are in progress, if operations are satisfactory and further approvals are gained, to line up additional existing operations that will allow for processing of up to 12 million tonnes per annum – first being processed outside the United States with a view to sequentially reshore the downstream processing (see Section15.3).

NORI has completed substantial metallurgical testing over the past five years to prove that the flowsheet is fit for purpose and is scalable. Pilot-scale trials were successful in producing calcine, later smelted into alloy and manganese silicate, and also produced some matte, used as a feed for bench-scale hydrometallurgical refining tests. DGE and PAMCO have also completed a commercial scale trial, where 2,000 t of nodules collected from NORI Area D were processed through the RKEF line at PAMCO that TMC proposes to use. PAMCO's currently unused capacity, as described further in Section 15.2, provided the opportunity for the parties to run plant-scale tests to collect critical data and to understand and address any operational issues ahead of full-scale production. The employment of existing assets is also an inherent benefit when it comes to ramping up to commercial operations. When compared to a new project, the following points describe clear advantages that would enable TMC USA to get into production and begin selling products as soon as possible:

- Permitting of a new plant site is unnecessary, thus accelerates timelines to plant readiness.
- No construction or long lead item procurement issues arise.
- There is no requirement to hire and train operators or plant staff as experienced personal are already on-site.
- Recently and/or currently operating equipment does not require (re)commissioning.

Overall, TMC USA's strategy to utilize existing facilities:

- Heavily de-risks the onshore portion of the project.
- Will allow for the onshore capacity ramp-up to precede and/or match the offshore capabilities to deliver a higher volume of nodules.
- Will ensure that when the offshore capacity increases, there is a permitted, commissioned site available with experienced staff to process the nodules.

15.2 PAMCO

15.2.1 Overview and context

PAMCO has been operating an RKEF plant at Hachinohe since the 1950s. As with other operations outside Indonesia, PAMCO was heavily affected by the ore export ban of 2014 and has sourced the majority of their ore from New Caledonia and Philippines. The company expressed interest in processing nodules through the signing of a non-binding MOU with DGE in Q1 2023. By Q4 2023, a binding MOU was signed with PAMCO allocating one full RKEF line for TMC's exclusive use under a tolling arrangement to process 1.3 Mwmt of nodules.

15.2.2 Plant

The PAMCO site adjacent to a port where the nodules can be offloaded and then transported by conveyor belt directly into the processing facility. The maximum size of vessel that can access this port is Handymax (approximately 50,000 t deadweight). Figure 15.1 shows the overhead view of the proximity between the port and plant.

Figure 15.1 Google satellite view of the PAMCO facility and adjacent port and stockyard

The nodules will first be offloaded from the bulk carrier and stockpiled on the port. Front-end loaders will be used to transport the nodules from the stockpile in the port to the conveying system. Figure 15.2 shows a close-up overhead view of the port and location of the conveying system. Scale and direction are as per the above figure.

Figure 15.2 Google satellite view of the port unloading area and identification of conveying system used to transport nodules into process plant

Once conveyed into the plant, the nodules will be stockpiled in a designated storage area before being conveyed into PAMCO's Rotary Kiln #6.

15.2.2.1 PAMCO RKEF Plant

PAMCO's primary facility in Hachinohe is a ferronickel processing operation that employs three rotary kilns and three electric furnaces. Table 15.1 below summarizes key data for each unit operation.

Table 15.1 Key Data for PAMCO's core unit operations at the hachinohe site

PAMCO Nomenclature	Key Sizing Data	Notes
No. 2 Rotary Kiln	Diameter – 5.25 m Length – 110 m	
No. 3 Rotary Kiln	Diameter – 5.5 m Length – 118 m	
No. 6 Rotary Kiln	Diameter – 5.5 m Length – 131 m	Designated for TMC use
No. 6 Smelting Furnace	60,000 kVA	
No. 7 Smelting Furnace	70,000 kVA	
No. 8 Smelting Furnace	80,000 kVA	Designated for TMC use

PAMCO plans to treat TMC's nodules as follows. Once conveyed into the plant, the nodules will be stockpiled in a closed storage facility. The nodules will be conveyed into PAMCO's Rotary Kiln #6. Figure 15.3 below shows nodules being conveyed into the kiln during TMC's commercial scale testing of the process in 2024.

Figure 15.3 Nodules are fed into the PAMCO kiln through a conveying system

Source: NORI

The purpose of the kiln in this process is primarily to remove any inherent free moisture and eliminate the loss-on-ignition (LOI) component in the nodules by decomposing hydroxide minerals. Some degree of reduction also occurs. The nodules discharge at high temperature, transferring the latent heat to the furnace for energy efficiency. Coal is used as a heat source for the kiln and silica is also added as a means to control the slag chemistry later in the process. The kiln operates under counter-current flow, meaning the nodules move in the opposite direction to the gas emanating from the heat source, thereby slowly increasing the temperature of the nodules while lowering the temperature of the gases as they move through the unit in an energy efficient manner. Figure 15.4 shows PAMCO's #6 rotary kiln that will be used in TMC's preliminary commercial operations.

Figure 15.4 PAMCO's #6 kiln

Source: TMC, flow of nodules is left to right in the image

At the kiln exit, the now partially reduced (calcined) nodules are transferred into refractory lined calcine transfer bins as a means of transport into the electric furnace while retaining heat and avoiding oxidation. Calcine is fed into the furnace including the residual carbon in the calcine coming from the kiln, present to complete the reduction process.

The process inside the furnace creates two distinct layers. The bottom, more-dense phase is a metallic alloy containing the nickel, copper, cobalt and iron. The top manganese silicate phase is intended to be sold to silico-manganese producers for use in steel production. Coke and flux are added in the furnace to control the deportment of these minerals to their respective phases, maximizing recoveries.

The furnace is tapped through separate tapholes at different elevations to remove the two layers. The manganese silicate layer is tapped frequently as it represents about 90% of the volume being produced from the process. It is tapped into pits for solidification and cooling, reclaimed, then is crushed and screened to the desired customer size before being sold. Figure 15.5 shows the slag casting area at PAMCO, where it is placed after tapping to cool and solidify before sizing, packaging and shipment to the customer.

Figure 15.5 PAMCO’s slag storage area: slag is left to cool and organized before shipment

Source: NORI.

The alloy phase is tapped periodically into moulds. Preparation of alloy for sale is dependent on the customer, but preliminary discussions include shotting or creating ingots before distribution. Figure 15.6 shows tapped alloy during the commissioning smelting trial in January 2024.

Figure 15.6 Molten alloy tapped into moulds at PAMCO

Source: NORI

15.2.3 PAMCO MOU

DGE and PAMCO signed a binding MOU in November 2023. The agreement requires PAMCO, with the assistance and cooperation of TMC, to complete a Definitive Study to understand modifications required to their Hachinohe plant to process TMC's nodules. This binding MOU explicitly states that while the contained clauses are legally binding, there is no legal requirement by the parties to execute a Definitive Tolling Agreement.

The study required by PAMCO under this agreement pertains mainly to the alloy production option. The scope of work to be completed as part of this agreement is as follows:

- Tests and studies: Includes further testing on areas of particular interest as identified in the non-binding MOU, such as refractory wear.
- Consideration of equipment additions and modifications.
- Design of facilities to be added or modified.
- Cooperation with and approval from Japanese government to pursue additions and modifications.
- Feasibility study to process 1.3 Mwmtpa of nodules through the facility.
- PAMCO decision on whether to enter into negotiations on a Definitive Agreement.
- If the investment is endorsed, subsequent construction, ramp-up and stable operations.

The schedule also accounts for a pre-feasibility study around the matte generation option, involving the installation of a converter aisle and subsequent new tolling arrangement negotiations.

15.2.4 Basis for tolling fee

The tolling fee encompasses several components that consider all costs that apply in processing of a raw material. Some examples of these costs include consumables, labour, capital costs (plant modification costs), depreciation of plant assets and equipment, and product
market fluctuations.

The Binding MOU between DGE and PAMCO has a base equation that is used to define the tolling charge, as outlined in the below equation:

$$Tolling\ Fee = [A\ \pm B] + C + D$$

Where:

- A is the Standard Absolute Value.
- B is the Tolling Fee Modification Factor.
- C is the Fixed Capital Plant Fee.
- D is the agreed PAMCO Profit Margin.

The Standard Absolute Value considers different costs to the Tolling Fee Modification Factor. Per the MOU, the Standard Absolute Value has the following cost variables as inputs:

- Unloading of raw materials.
- Water usage in dechlorination (before the nodules are fed into the RKEF).
- Secondary raw materials that may be added during processing at any stage.
- Liquid natural gas required for calcining.
- Consumables for smelting.
- Contractors.
- Fixed equipment costs.

The Tolling Fee Modification Factor considers fuel (specifically fuel oil, coal, kerosene) and electricity usage throughout processing.

While the capital expenditure required for PAMCO to incur before operations begin is still under development, a rough estimate was used for the MOU. The calculation involves a 5-year depreciation period. The fee is calculated simply as:

$$Fixed\ Plant\ Capital\ Fee = \frac{Capital\ Cost\ (USD)}{Depreciation\ (years)} \div Annual\ Tonnage = USD\ per\ wet\ tonne$$

The first year of operation (and therefore payments by TMC to PAMCO) will use an agreed upon annual tonnage for this calculation. The Fixed Plant Capital Fee will be reviewed on an annual basis to reconcile on any under or over payment based on actual nodule volume processed against that which is due against the 5-year amortization schedule.

The profit margin for PAMCO has not been agreed upon between TMC and PAMCO. For the purposes of the MOU, the 15% of the sum of the costs in the above prior sections was used. This margin is not legally binding and was simply used as a factor for tolling fee estimates as outlined in the Binding MOU.

A payment program has been put in place between the two parties to ensure that product volumes and quality specifications are being met. In TMC's financial modelling, estimates of product generated per annum and product quality (to feed into sale price of the products) are key inputs in realizing the economic value of the project. It is important that PAMCO is producing at a rate and quality that meets TMC's standards. Thus, a bonus incentive can be provided should expectations be exceeded, and a malus payment (for delivery below expectations) made by PAMCO to TMC.

The factors that influence this program and feed into calculations to determine whether targets are being exceeded or met are:

- The receiving grade of nodules (sampled at an agreed upon frequency).
- Nodule quantity before smelting.
- Moisture content of material before smelting.
- Alloy production volumes.
- Grade of nickel, copper and cobalt within the alloy.

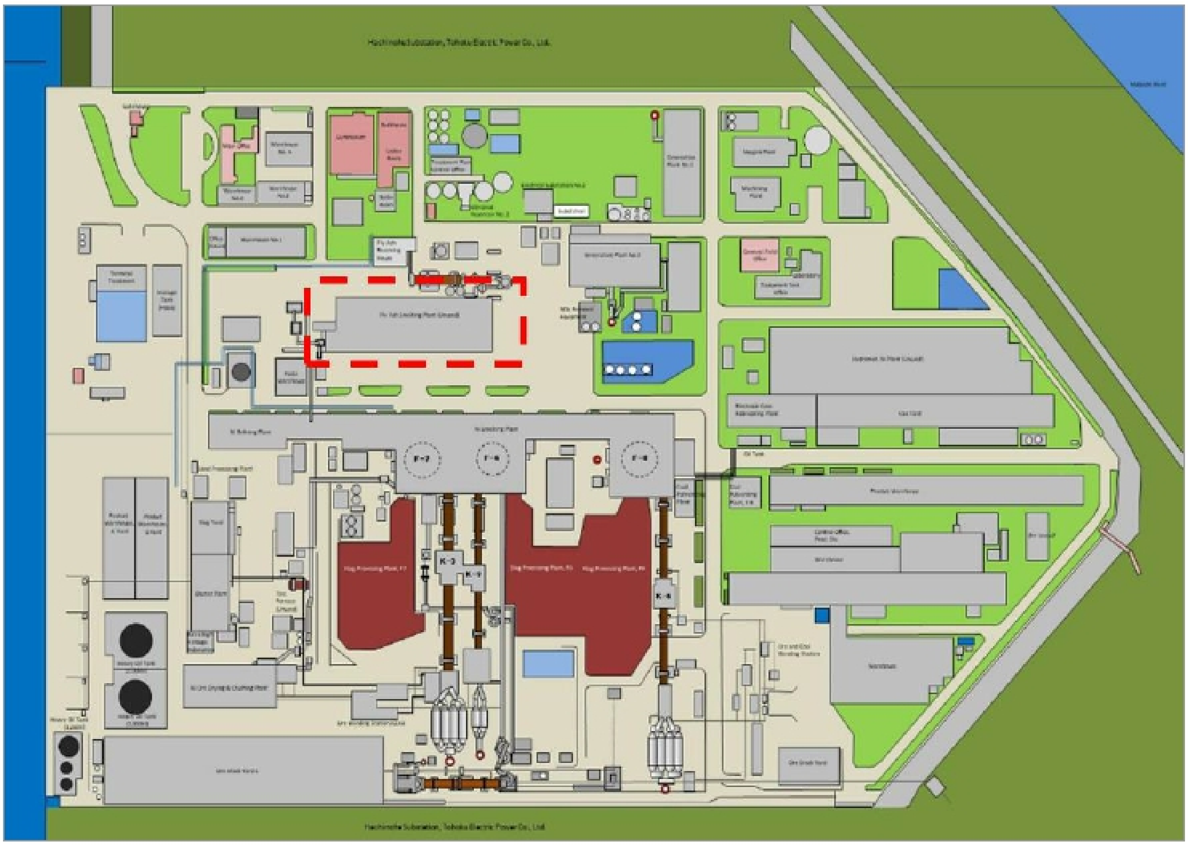
The addition of this factor into financial considerations between the parties is important as it allows for PAMCO to share additional profits should expectations be exceeded, but it also mitigates some risk and protects TMC should adequate quality feed be provided but product volume and quantity be insufficient relative to previously agreed upon targets.

15.2.5 Alloy to matte

PAMCO's existing operation in Hachinohe presently does not include any converting equipment or associated systems. Therefore, the initial nickel containing product being generated at PAMCO will be an iron-rich nickel-copper-cobalt alloy. The converting equipment will conceptually remove the iron through oxygen addition while also adding sulfur, creating a nickel-copper-cobalt matte containing about 5% iron.

A market study commissioned by NORI performed by CRU Consulting identified that the alloy is a less attractive product than the matte. Therefore, PAMCO has agreed to execute a study into the design and installation of a converter aisle containing multiple Peirce-Smith converters. Figure 15.7 shows a schematic layout of PAMCO's facility and equipment and denotes the proposed location of the converter aisle within the facility.

Figure 15.7 PAMCO facility layout with potential location of converter aisle



Source: NORI, not to scale. Note: red box shows potential location of converter aisle

Per the binding MOU between DGE and PAMCO, there will be two different tolling agreements that will be negotiated between the DGE and PAMCO at different stages of operations. An initial tolling arrangement for alloy generation will be in place until PAMCO makes an investment decision on installing a converter aisle at their facility (expected to be within 18 months of first alloy production). Should they decide to proceed, a second tolling arrangement (assumed to be structurally the same as the agreement for alloy production) will be negotiated that will have the capital scope execution by PAMCO as a consideration for a newly agreed-upon arrangement. The higher value of product being generated will also contribute to the new tolling arrangement.

15.2.6 Product quality specifications

DGE and PAMCO have agreed within the Binding MOU for specific pay metal targets for alloy to be met to achieve product quality specifications. Table 15.2 below shows these grades.

Table 15.2 Agreed upon grades of key pay metals for the alloy as set in the Binding MOU between TMC and PAMCO.

Component	Grade (wt %)
Nickel (Ni)	15 to 16
Copper (Cu)	12.5
Cobalt (Co)	1.50
Iron (Fe)	60 to 65

Manganese (Mn)	2 to 4
Zinc (Zn)	0.2
Molybdenum (Mo)	0.8

DGE and PAMCO have also agreed on target parameters for the manganese silicate product in the Binding MOU, which are shown below in Table 15.3.

Table 15.3 Specification for the manganese silicate product generated at PAMCO per the Binding MOU between TMC and PAMCO

Parameter	Units	Specification
Mn Composition	wt %	> 40
Fe Composition	wt %	1 to 2
Cr Composition	wt %	< 0.1
S Composition	wt %	< 0.3
$MnO:SiO_2$ Ratio	–	2.25 to 2.6
Mn:P Ratio	–	> 670

The Definitive Tolling Agreement is anticipated to include a more extensive product quality specification for both the intermediate alloy and the manganese silicate. In addition to pay metal grades, the Definitive Agreement will reference other elements that will be of material interest by TMC's potential customers.

There is a target of 5% iron in the final matte. This value was determined as it allowed for manageable levels of iron being introduced into the refinery while not sacrificing recoveries of key pay metals. The iron in matte is subject to change dependent on customer negotiations.

The process to determine product quality as defined in the MOU is as follows:

- Definitive sampling will be supervised by a third party and samples are to be delivered to both parties.
- Subject to finalization of agreed upon sampling protocol, final weights, moisture determination and assays will be completed at PAMCO location.
- Both parties will develop an effective metallurgical accounting sampling protocol for each monthly throughput for the final determination of nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese recoveries to determine the Recovery Incentive Bonus Payment and Recovery Non-Performance Penalty Payment.
- Multiple assays of a single sample will be conducted by both PAMCO and TMC, with the mean of the respective assays being used to govern activities.
- The difference between the TMC and PAMCO assays (mean assays per above) cannot exceed:
  - ± 0.05% for Ni
  - ± 0.05% for Cu
  - ± 0.01% for Co
  - TBD for Mn

- Should the difference be outside of these splitting limits, a third party that is mutually agreed upon by the parties will perform umpire analysis using a sample taken by PAMCO.
- If the analysis done by the umpire is between the results of the TMC and PAMCO analyses, or is consistent with the result of either party, that result shall be the conclusive result.
- If the umpire's analysis is not between the results of the TMC and PAMCO analyses, or is not consistent with either, then the exact mean of the umpire result and the nearest assay result that is conducted by either TMC or PAMCO will be deemed to be the conclusive result.

15.2.7 PAMCO Sustainability

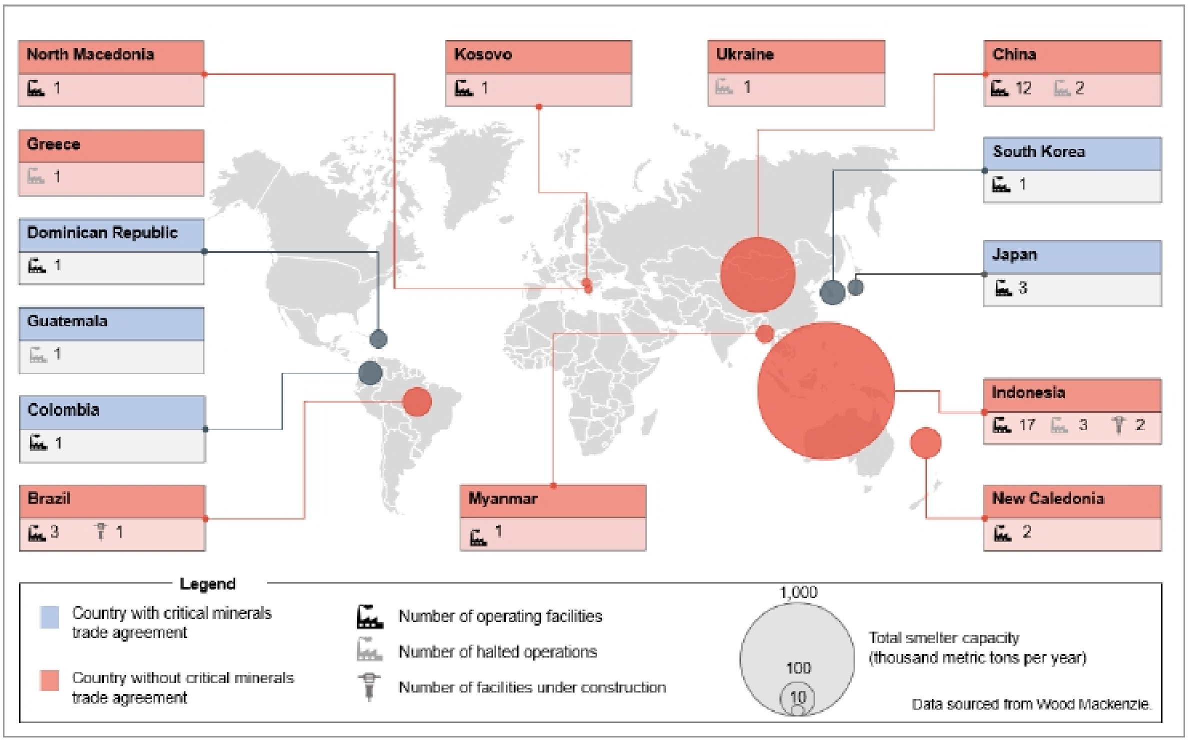
PAMCO emphasizes sustainability through its Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) initiatives, aiming to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by 46% by 2030 and achieve carbon neutrality by 2050, in alignment with the UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). The company actively recycles waste from its operations, promotes health and safety among employees in accordance with ISO 45001 standards, and engages in community programming, reflecting a commitment to social responsibility and environmental stewardship.

15.3 Long-Term Processing Strategy

15.3.1 Nodule Processing Beyond 1.3 Mwmtpa

The capacity at PAMCO will not be sufficient to toll the 12 million tonne per annum full scale collection capacity. TMC actively investigated options for processing of nodules beyond the initial 1.3 Mwmtpa. Primary processing infrastructure (RKEF facilities) exists globally. Figure 15.8 shows a map of RKEF facility distribution worldwide, compiled by Hatch with data supplied by Wood Mackenzie.

Figure 15.8 Total 2023 production capacity for ferronickel and nickel pig iron smelting, and number of existing smelting facilities by country

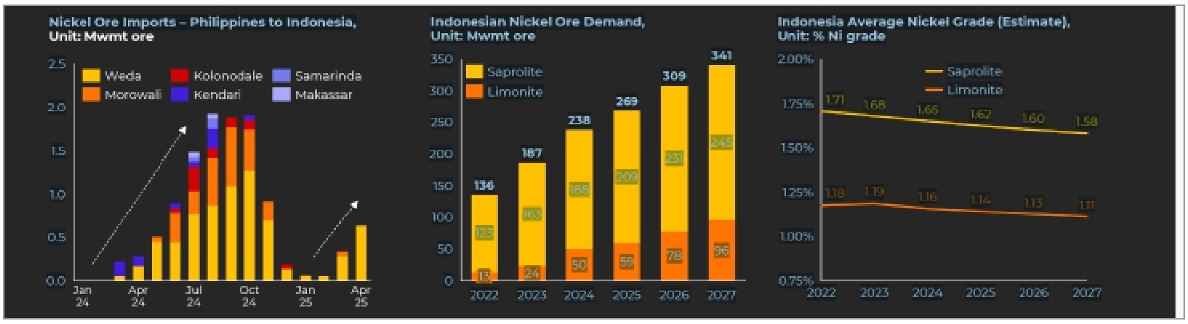


As shown in Figure 15.8, the biggest opportunity for expansion of onshore capacity beyond PAMCO is in Indonesia.

In the past seven years, Indonesia has experienced a dramatic expansion in rotary kiln-electric furnace (RKEF) processing capacity, emerging as the world's leading nickel producer and processor. Following the 2014 ban on raw ore exports which was finalised in 2020, the nation initiated an aggressive downstream policy, prompting a surge in investments—primarily from Chinese firms—in onshore smelters and associated infrastructure. The number of operational nickel smelters rose from 13 in 2019 to over 100 lines by 2025, with total installed RKEF capacity exceeding 260 million tonnes of wet ore per annum with additional projects under construction (Figure 15..9). This rapid growth has made Indonesia responsible for over 60% of global nickel production, solidifying its strategic importance within the steel, electric vehicle battery, and stainless steel industries.

The proliferation of RKEF smelters has considerably increased demand for high-grade saprolite ore (typically >1.5% Ni). However, ore supply growth has not matched the pace of smelter build-out. High rainfall—particularly on Sulawesi and Halmahera—has hampered mine operations, and new Indonesian Government RKAB regulatory quota requirements have further constrained availability, encouraging increasing ore imports from the Philippines (Figure 15..9). Premiums for high-grade saprolite have persisted amid supply tightness, with market participants reporting record tender prices for 1.6% Ni ore in 2025 (SMM Weekly Review of Nickel Ore Market June 06, 2025).

Figure 15..9 Rapid increase in Indonesian laterite ore demand, decreasing saprolite ore grades and increased ore imports from the Philippines.



Source: Benchmark Minerals Intelligence.

The push to maximize throughput has led to declining average nickel grades in the ore feed for many RKEF facilities (). Ore blending and longer haulages from more remote or lower-quality deposits are increasingly necessary to maintain plant utilization, further deteriorating grade profiles. These lower grades directly impact smelter economics via increased energy consumption and reduced nickel output per tonne processed, exacerbating operational cost pressures. The Indonesian Mining Ministry estimates that laterite reserves total around 5.3 billion tonnes and the Indonesia Nickel Miners Association projected that the country's high-grade ore reserves may be depleted in the next six years (Reuters, 2024) (Subarna, 2024).

The supply-demand imbalance, combined with global oversupply and weak stainless steel and EV demand, has resulted in a sustained decline in nickel prices since 2023 (see section 16.3.1.4). As prices have approached multi-year lows, a significant portion of Indonesia's RKEF operations—especially those with outdated technology or high reliance on market-bought high-grade saprolite—have become loss-making (The Star, 2025). Industry insiders report delayed payments to suppliers and plant curtailments, with risks of further closures unless prices or input costs recover. The margin squeeze is compounded by persistent operational challenges, such as rising fuel costs and environmental compliance expenses.

Looking ahead, Indonesia's established RKEF infrastructure is well-suited for adapting to alternative feedstocks, notably polymetallic nodules from deep-sea sources. Recent developments, such as the TMC-PAMCO arrangement in Japan, have demonstrated the technical viability of processing nodules containing nickel, copper, cobalt, and manganese in RKEF lines with minimal plant modifications. The partnership's success in pilot and feasibility phases—producing battery-grade nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and manganese silicate—offers a model Indonesia could readily emulate, leveraging its processing capacity to diversify beyond terrestrial ores and access new revenue streams from the growing battery metals market.

TMC has engaged in discussions with key Indonesian processing counter-parties and entered into a non-binding MOU with a major processor who has indicated the potential to process in excess of the capacity considered in this pre-feasibility study.

PT Gunbuster Nickel Industries provides an example of potential assets that could become available for toll treatment. The plant was established in 2021, with a nameplate capacity of 1.8 million tons of NPI per year with the capacity to process 21 Mwmtpa of laterite ore and representing about 9% of Indonesian refined nickel capacity. The facility owner Jiangsu Delong Nickel Industry has entered bankruptcy, caused by weak nickel prices and ore supply constraints and is currently only operating at 30% of capacity (Bloomberg News, 2025). Experts suggest that a government-backed or national consortium acquisition could ensure operational continuity, advance environmental and labor standards, and further Indonesia's ambitions in nickel value addition and battery manufacturing, especially if aligned with domestic partners such as MIND ID or Indonesia Battery Corporation (Celios, 2025).

15.3.2 Indonesian processing cost benchmarking

To establish a cost basis for the future cost of processing through existing capacity in Indonesia, TMC USA engaged Shanghai Metal Markets (SMM) to benchmark costs of these operations and opine on tolling rates required to
incentivize nodules processing on this basis. The benchmarking exercise was done on a laterite ore basis with the inherent assumption that the processing costs of nodules are the same on a dry basis (nodules have lower water content). PAMCO work to date has concluded that nodule processing consumes less power than laterite ores and has similar or potentially less cost in comparison to laterite ore processing.

Shanghai Metals Market (SMM) is a credible and well-established source for benchmarking RKEF processing costs in Indonesia. They provide detailed cost analysis comparing Indonesian and Chinese RKEF operations, publish an Indonesia NPI FOB price index, and offer real-time tracking of nickel ore quotas (RKAB) that affect feedstock availability and smelter economics. SMM also delivers in-depth consulting and strategic procurement reports, backed by direct project-level intelligence and extensive market data, making them a reliable authority on cost structures and operational dynamics in the Indonesian nickel smelting sector. SMM teams are based in Indonesia and frequently visit the relevant operations.

The benchmarking of the NPI processing costs was conducted through direct interviews, data and information processing, analysis as well as employing information already in SMM's extensive in-house database.

A summary of the benchmarked costs derived from SMM source data is included in Table 15.4.

Table 15.4 Total Indonesian processing cost

	Large RKEF 1	**Large RKEF 2**	**Large RKEF 3**	**Average**	**Ore Equivalent**
	$/t Ni	**$/t Ni**	**$/t Ni**	**$/t Ni**	**$/wt ore**
Power	1,700	1,722	1,946	1,789	16.85
Coke	689	668	1,021	793	7.47
Coal	931	917	1,135	995	9.37
Other Materials	372	367	443	394	3.71
Labor & Management	1,203	1,203	1,253	1,220	11.49
Environmental	100	119	104	108	1.01
Depreciation	671	602	817	697	6.56
Others	300	269	323	297	2.80
Alloy to Matte				685	6.45
Capital Modification Recovery					3.85
Toll Profit (10%)					6.57
Contingency (5%)					3.81
Total	**5,966**	**5,866**	**7,043**	**6,977**	**79.95**

The key cost components are the cost of power at $0.06 per kWh and coal at $176 per tonne. The capital modification recovery cost assumed $50 M, depreciated over 10 years at a production rate of 1.3 Mtpa.

On this basis, a tolling rate of $80/wet tonne has been used as a cost basis for nodule processing in Indonesia.

15.3.3 Further processing of nodules in the United States

Existing capacity to process and refine nodules does not currently exist in the United States, and this has informed TMC's strategy to use PAMCO and Indonesia to generate matte. In early years of operation, the matte will be sold to customers who will then process in their existing refineries. Beginning in Year 6 of operations, TMC USA intends to begin processing matte at a newly built US-based refinery. The refining facility will produce nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate, copper cathode, and ammonium sulfate.

TMC recently completed a study evaluating possible refinery site locations in the U.S. The study also included a preliminary refinery design, plant layout, permitting and construction execution schedule schedules and 2025 basis capital and operating costs. The site options focussed on the Gulf region with a final recommendation for locations in Texas near existing ports.

The study identified that a refinery to process the matte from 6.4 Mwmtpa of nodules could be operational within 5 to 6 years in support of TMC's timing requirements. In Year 6, this volume of matte generated in Indonesia will be sent to the new refinery while the remainder is sold to the market. By Year 10, 100% of generated matte will be processed in the United States.

15.4 Production Plan

Disclaimer: References to metallurgical processing in Japan, the United States or elsewhere are forward-looking in nature. No final processing agreement has been executed, and no permits have been obtained in any jurisdiction. Processing plans are contingent on future commercial arrangements and regulatory approvals, including any permit under the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), which has not been issued.

The production plan is structured to align and balance the offshore collection capabilities, the installation of converting equipment at PAMCO, expansion into Indonesia and the eventual construction of the refinery in the United States. There will be an overlap period of approximately one year where both alloy and matte are being generated at PAMCO. At this time, PAMCO will already have stable alloy production while commissioning of the newly installed converter aisle takes place. The intention of TMC USA is to cease alloy production when stable matte production is achieved. Table 15.5 below shows the updated production plan through 2049, and this also serves as a basis for the Marketing and Economics sections of this PFS.

Table 15.5 TMC USA PFS production plan, updated July 2025

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total	2027	2028	2029	2030	2031	2032	2033	2034	2035	2036	2037	2038	2039	2040	2041	2042	2043	2044	2045	2046	2047	2048	2049
			T0	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	T8	T9	T10	T11	T12	T13	T14	T15	T16	T17	T18	T19	T20	T21	T22
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa (wet)	164.1	0.2	1.0	2.0	5.0	11.0	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	12.0	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	12.0	10.5	10.5	10.5	5.4	-	-	-	-
Total Dry Ore Collected	Mtpa (dry)	118.2	0.1	0.7	1.4	3.6	7.9	7.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	8.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	8.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	3.9	-	-	-	-
Alloy	ktpa	1.3	0.1	0.7	0.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	18.1	2.0	9.8	6.3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	1.7	0.2	0.9	0.6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	14.2	1.5	7.7	5.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Matte	ktpa	116.8	-	-	1.0	3.6	7.9	7.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	8.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	8.6	7.6	7.6	7.6	3.9	-	-	-	-
Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	1,549.9	-	-	12.9	47.8	105.1	100.3	100.3	100.3	100.3	114.6	100.3	100.3	100.3	100.3	114.6	100.3	100.3	100.3	51.7	-	-	-	-
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	126.8	-	-	1.1	3.9	8.6	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.4	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.4	8.2	8.2	8.2	4.2	-	-	-	-
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	1,151.1	-	-	9.6	36.5	78.0	74.5	74.5	74.5	74.5	85.1	74.5	74.5	74.5	74.5	85.1	74.5	74.5	74.5	38.4	-	-	-	-
Manganese Silicate	ktpa																								
Manganese (Mn) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	36401.7	44.4	221.8	443.6	1109.1	2439.9	2329.0	2329.0	2329.0	2329.0	2661.8	2329.0	2329.0	2329.0	2329.0	2661.8	2329.0	2329.0	2329.0	1200.0	-	-	-	-
Refined	ktpa																								
Nickel Sulfate (NiSO4) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	1086.7	-	-	-	-	-	-	57.2	57.2	57.2	57.2	100.1	100.1	100.1	100.1	114.4	100.1	100.1	100.1	51.6	-	-	-	-
Cobalt Sulfate (CoSO4) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	89.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.3	8.2	8.2	8.2	4.2	-	-	-	-
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	ktpa	813.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	42.5	42.5	42.5	42.5	74.3	74.3	74.3	74.3	84.9	74.3	74.3	74.3	38.3	-	-	-	-

As explained in Section 15.3, not all of this production will happen at PAMCO as additional tolling opportunities are actively being explored by TMC USA in Indonesia. These future tolling scenarios involve prospective plants that have converting technology, and therefore would begin producing matte immediately upon receipt of nodules and commencement of the tolling arrangement between TMC USA and the party. Thus, the production plan considers 100% matte production following the converter aisle installation at PAMCO. Scheduled maintenance and shutdowns of both offshore technology and onshore facilities are considered in the production plan, as nodule delivery volumes will be affected by these periods.

16 Market studies

16.1 TMC offtake agreement

On 25 May 2012, DeepGreen Engineering Pte. Ltd. (DGE) (a wholly owned subsidiary of TMC) and Glencore International AG (Glencore) entered into a copper off-take agreement and a nickel off-take agreement whereby DGE agreed to deliver to Glencore 50% of the annual quantity of copper material and 50% of the annual quantity of nickel material produced by DGE owned and operated facilities fed by ore from the NORI project area.

The pricing mechanism was agreed as follows:

- For London Metals Exchange (LME) Registered Grade "A" Copper Cathodes, the delivered price is the official LME Copper Grade "A" Cash Settlement quotation as published in the Metal Bulletin averaged over the month of shipping for the following month at Glencore's choice, plus the official long-term contract premium as announced annually by Codelco, basis cost, insurance and freight (CIF) Main European Ports.

- For LME Registered Primary Nickel, the delivered price is the official LME Primary Nickel Cash Settlement averaged over the month of shipping or the following month at Glencore's choice. For other copper-bearing material and other nickel-bearing material, the parties shall agree a price annually for the forthcoming calendar year on the basis of prevailing market prices for such copper products and such nickel products.

Both the nickel and copper off-take agreements are for the life of the NORI Area, and either party may terminate the agreement upon a material breach or insolvency of the other party. Glencore may also terminate the agreement by giving 12 months' notice.

16.2 Marketing analysis

Benchmark Mineral Intelligence (BMI) was contracted by TMC to provide market overviews for three commodities from NORI and TOML areas: nickel, cobalt, and copper (BMI, 2025) and to provide forecasts for the premia/discounts that nickel and cobalt sulfate over nickel metal price forecasts (BMI, 2025).

CRU International Limited (CRU) was commissioned by NORI to examine the marketability and pricing for the three intermediate products that will be produced by TMC USA for the NORI and TOML areas (CRU, 2024):

- Nickel-cobalt-copper alloy.
- Nickel-cobalt-copper matte.
- Manganese silicate.

Additionally, CRU was retained to provide manganese ore market forecasts.

Over a five-year horizon, BMI and CRU's price forecasts are based primarily on supply and demand fundamentals. These are established from detailed bottom-up analysis of supply by individual mine and intermediate product or refined metal producer, and in-depth analysis of demand from individual applications. Both BMI and CRU also consider operating costs and inventories in its forecasts, as well as various other factors where relevant.

For the forecast beyond a five-year horizon, cyclical supply-demand balances become hard to predict. Therefore, the longer term price forecasts are based on the Long Run Marginal Cost (LRMC) concept. That is, that prices in the long term will trend towards, and fluctuate around, the full economic costs (i.e., operating costs including an allowance for a return on capital) of the marginal tonne required to meet long term demand. For example, when prices are above the LRMC, it would be assumed that supply will be added, and prices will subside. Assets selected for the LRMC analysis are a representative sample that are likely to be in production to satisfy future demand. They use the Project Gateway classification system to select projects. It is important to consider where these new assets will be located, how large they will be and what processing technology they will adapt. The composition of future capacity and accompanying demand levels will have a significant impact not just on the LRMC assessment, but also the upside and downside risk associated with that assessment.

Two exception to this long-term price forecasting methodology are the cobalt market and copper forecast. Since the majority of cobalt is produced as a by-product of copper or nickel mining, supply is inelastic to the cobalt price, with supply decisions instead more likely to be driven by the market environment for the operations' main copper or nickel product. This means that the Long Run Marginal Cost concept cannot readily be applied. Instead, estimates refers to historic pricing trends to establish a long-term equilibrium price, taking into account longer term factors, such as the increasing importance of batteries as a cobalt end use, that might result in cobalt prices and product premia differing with historical trends. BMI have completed price forecast out to 2030 based on fundamental supply demand balance. The 2030 price has been projected forward long-term. Copper represents about 17% of total revenue.

16.3 Market outlook

16.3.1 Nickel

Nickel is a high-melting-point, silvery-white metal valued for its hardness and resistance to oxidation. Traditionally found with copper, iron, and cobalt, nickel is extracted from two main ore types: sulphide and laterite. Historically, sulphide ores dominated production, but laterite ores, particularly saprolite and limonite types, now predominate due to scarce new sulphide deposits. Laterite ores are commonly processed via rotary kiln electric arc furnaces (RKEF) to produce ferronickel or nickel pig iron (NPI) or high-pressure acid leaching (HPAL) to produce intermediates like mixed hydroxide precipitate (MHP) and mixed sulfide precipitate (MSP). Nickel products are typically classified as Class 1 (high-purity, such as nickel sulfate) and Class 2 (nickel alloy products, such as ferronickel). Nickel is primarily used in stainless steel (65% market share) and increasingly in batteries for electric vehicles (EVs). BMI predict total nickel market demand CAGR of 5.4% and 11.3% growth in nickel demand in lithium ion batteries to 2040.

Global refined nickel production is forecast to grow from 3.6 Mt nickel in 2025 to 4.9 Mt by 2035 (CAGR of 2.95%). Indonesia is projected to drive this growth, increasing from 2.3 Mt nickel in 2025 to 3.3 Mt nickel by 2035 representing about 70% of global production. However, production in other parts of Asia, such as the Philippines, is expected to decline as reserves dwindle. The majority of Indonesian refined nickel output is expected to be in NPI, while China is adding capacity for nickel sulfate production, led by major companies like Huayou Cobalt and CNGR. Indonesian MHP production is expected to more than double from 493 Kt in 2025 to 989 Kt 2029 in with the rapid construction HPAL plants largely by Chinese interests.

Global nickel consumption is projected to grow significantly at a CAGR of 5.4% from 2025-2035, largely due to rising demand for 300-series stainless steel and high-nickel NMC (nickel-manganese-cobalt) cathodes in lithium-ion batteries (LIBs) for the EV sector. Currently, stainless steel represents 65% of total nickel demand, while batteries are expected to constitute 28% of demand by 2035, driven by a 2.4 Mt nickel increase. China, already accounting for over half of global nickel consumption, is anticipated to remain the primary demand driver with a forecasted CAGR of 5.5% from 2022-2035. Indonesia is also emerging as a major consumer, developing domestic industries due to its export ban on laterite ore, leading to significant growth in NPI and stainless-steel production.

Nickel supply is expected to slightly exceed demand until 2030, after which production must increase by 0.8 Mt to meet projected 2035 demand. Tight supply pushed prices up in 2020-2022, with the Russia-Ukraine conflict further spiking prices to $100,000/t, prompting market intervention. Rapid expansion of nickel supply from Indonesia has depressed prices to around the current value of $US15,000-15,500 tonne. BMI estimates that 20% of the nickel industry is currently loss making including non-integrated Indonesian and Chinese NPI and FeNi producers. Increasingly challenged access to, lower quality of and increased price of Indonesian laterite ores are expected to apply increased cost pressure on Indonesian RK-EF operations and provide upward nickel price pressure. BMI predict that long-term demand will likely drive prices above $21,000 (2025 US$) by 2032 to provide the inducement price to bring on required additional production to expected supply shortfall at this time.

16.3.2 Cobalt

Global cobalt reserves, currently at 7.65 Mt, are concentrated in the African copper belt, particularly in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), which provides cobalt as a by-product of copper-cobalt mining. Secondary reserves are found in nickel laterites in countries like Australia, Indonesia, Cuba, and the Philippines, as well as in nickel sulphide deposits in Canada, Russia, and Western Australia. The cobalt value chain involves diverse ore types, processing methods, intermediates, and final products, mainly split between hydrometallurgical and pyrometallurgical routes, ultimately yielding cobalt in forms like metal, chemicals, and other compounds.

The DRC dominates global cobalt production, supplying nearly 75% of mined cobalt, of which 50% is processed in China. Chinese ownership of DRC mines and significant imports make China the main producer of refined cobalt, accounting for 80% of total supply and nearly 90% in cobalt chemicals. Indonesia is an emerging supplier, producing cobalt as a by-product from its growing laterite ore mining sector. By 2030, Indonesia's share of global cobalt supply is projected to reach 24%. However, the DRC and Indonesia alone are expected to drive 93% of supply growth from 2025 to 2030. BMI forecast that primary cobalt supply will reach 324 kt in 2030, up by 32% compared with projected 2025 levels of 245 kt. But as mines begin to run through reserves and the visibility for new assets into the 2030s is limited, BMI expectation for mine supply is a slight decline into the 2030s, although secondary supply will continue to increase: by 2040, recycled material will account for 36% of total supply, up from 8% in 2024.

Battery production has become the primary end use of cobalt, driven by the rapid expansion of the electric vehicle (EV) market. In 2035, battery demand is expected to account for 84% of overall cobalt demand, up from less than half in 2017. Cobalt demand from the battery sector is anticipated to grow more than 100% between 2024 to 2034, despite decreasing cobalt intensities in batteries. China and Europe currently lead demand growth due to transportation electrification, but North America's demand is expected to increase substantially, from 17 kt in 2020 to 50 kt in 2035.

BMI expects the cobalt market to remain oversupplied throughout the 2020s, with the market rebalancing in 2032 and shifting to deficit from 2033 onwards. Refined cobalt supply will see strong growth in the short term, driven largely by output from China. However, by 2033, supply is forecast to struggle to keep pace with demand, leading to a projected 46 kt supply gap by 2035. Additional production beyond current forecasts will be required to meet future demand.

Cobalt prices are historically volatile, given that much of the production is a by-product of copper and nickel mining, making supply less responsive to demand. Long-term price estimates from BMI suggest that European cobalt prices will average around $62,500/tonne in $2025 real terms. Cobalt's price inelasticity is due to its low proportion of costs in most applications, where alternatives are limited or costs are passed downstream (such as batteries and pharmaceuticals).

16.3.3 Manganese

Manganese is a critical metal with high chemical reactivity and melting point, essential in steelmaking for its deoxidizing and alloying properties. About 85-90% of current manganese demand is for steel production, including in high-strength low alloy, stainless, and engineered steels. Additionally, manganese is used in aluminium alloys and in chemicals, particularly manganese sulfate for agriculture and battery applications.

Manganese ore production is concentrated in Africa, especially South Africa, Gabon, and Ghana, along with Australia, representing over 75% of global supply. Africa's production is forecast to grow by 722 kt of contained manganese from 2023 to 2028, with significant expansions in Gabon and Ghana. In contrast, China's production is declining at a 1.7% CAGR due to high costs and declining ore quality. While China leads in global manganese ferroalloy production, declining domestic steel demand is expected to reduce production by 3% CAGR from 2024 to 2028. Other regions, including Asia, CIS, and Europe, will compensate partially, keeping global ferroalloy supply stable.

China, consuming 60% of global manganese ore, is set to reduce its demand by 600 kt through 2028, driven by lower ferroalloy demand. However, demand from other regions is expected to offset this, with a global increase of over 4 Mt of contained Mn forecast by CRU by 2035. Silicomanganese will maintain the largest share of demand (52%), but growth will be highest for Electrolytic Manganese Metal[24] (EMM) and battery applications, with projected CAGRs of 10% and 22%, respectively. These segments will constitute 21% of demand by 2035, up from 9% today.

A supply deficit of 3.3 Mt over and above existing mines and committed projects is anticipated by 2035 due to rising demand, particularly for EMM and battery uses. Prices are expected to grow in real terms by 2035, with 44% Mn lump prices reaching $5.50/dmtu[25] and 36-39% Mn lump at $4.90/dmtu (both real 2025 US$).

16.3.3.1 EMM and $MnSO_4$

While it is expected that most of the Mn silicate product will be sold as feedstock for SiMn alloy production, it is also suitable as a feedstock for EMM and MnSO4 production. Approximately 10% of manganese is processed into Electrolytic Manganese Metal (EMM) and manganese sulfate ($MnSO_4$), the latter being vital for fertilizers and lithium-ion battery production. Demand for high-purity $MnSO_4$ monohydrate (HPMSM) is surging due to EV demand, with prices expected to grow alongside EMM costs. By 2035, EMM prices are forecast at $2,110/t and HPMSM at over $2,200/t (both real 2023 US$).

16.3.4 Copper

Copper is primarily mined as sulfide or oxide ore, with sulfide ores containing 0.3-1.5% copper and oxide ores reaching 4% or higher. Around 80% of copper mining is done via open-pit operations. Oxide ores are processed through solvent extraction-electrowinning (SXEW) to produce high-purity copper cathodes. Sulfide ores undergo flotation, yielding copper concentrate (20-40% copper) for smelting and refining.

---

[24] Electrolytic Manganese Metal (EMM) is a significant alloy component in the production of stainless steel, high-strength low-alloy steel, aluminium-manganese alloy, and copper-manganese alloy. It is also used as a primary ingredient for producing Manganese tetraoxide (Mn3O4) and sulfate (MnSO4).

[25] dtmu means dry metric tonne unit. A 'unit' is 10 kg, or 1 tonne divided into 100 units. For example, $8/dmtu is equal to $800/tonne of pure manganese metal. This pricing structure is commonly used for manganese ore sales (as opposed to pure manganese metal). A typical manganese ore will grade 45% Manganese so a price per tonne of this 'impure' ore will be 45% of $800/tonne = $360/tonne.

BMI forecast global copper mine production is forecast to grow from 22.9 Mt in 2025 to 25.6 Mt by 2028, driven by African output, particularly in the DRC (+436 kt) and Zambia (+306 kt). Chile is expected to remain the largest producer with modest 0.4% CAGR from 2025 to 2030 producing around 5.8 Mt in 2030. The DRC, world second largest producer is expected to increase 436 kt to 3.5 Mt, with Peru third increasing 330 kt at a CAGR of 2.4% to 2.9 Mt over the same period. US domestic policy favouring reshoring of industrial production is expected to drive copper production growth by a CAGR of 4.4% to 1.4 Mt for an increase of 275 kt from 2025 to 2030.

Copper demand is projected to rise from 34 Mt in 2025 to 42 Mt by 2035, driven by the transportation, electrical infrastructure and consumer goods sectors. By 2035, green-energy applications like electric vehicles, renewable energy, and storage will account for ~20% of copper demand, up from 4% in 2020. Significant consumption growth is expected in North America, Europe, India, and Southeast Asia, with each region adding 1.1-1.7 Mt of demand.

A 7.9 Mt supply gap is anticipated by 2035, as demand for primary copper surpasses production from current and committed projects. To bridge this gap, the industry will need to advance a significant portion of "Probable" and "Possible" projects over the next decade.

The copper price averaged $9,147/t in 2024 and is currently above $9,800/t this year. With the expected supply gap widening towards the late 2020s, prices are expected to reach $11,126/t by 2029. The long-term price is estimated at $11,456/t (real 2025 US$)

16.4 TMC manganese silicate

The manganese silicate sourced from NORI Area D presents a unique profile as a feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production, offering high manganese content (42-43%), comparable to high-grade manganese ore or slag, with controlled SiO_2, Al_2O_3, CaO, and MgO levels and Mn in a reduced 2+ valence state. This offers value in use advantages to customers using the Mn silicate product to produce Si-Mn alloy – the largest sector of the Mn market. These attributes position TMC silicate as a competitive material against traditional high-grade slags and ores. However, phosphorus levels from pilot testwork showed variability which is likely to be well controlled in the industrial process at PAMCO. The optimized Mn/Fe ratio of 22:1 and Mn/P ratio above 500:1 are positive market indicators. Additional testing just completed by PAMCO demonstrated the ability to produce Mn silicate with Mn/P ratio greater than 1,000:1 confirming, effective phosphorus control which is critical for broader market acceptance.

Nodule-sourced Mn silicate could also serve as feedstock for EMM, Electrolytic Manganese Dioxide (EMD)[26], and HPMSM production due to its MnO form, which simplifies acid solubility without needing roasting. Although current consumption of manganese ore in these chemical sectors is lower than silico-manganese alloy, forecasts suggest growth from 2 Mt in 2023 to 4.8 Mt by 2035, potentially increasing demand for nodule-sourced Mn silicate over time. TMC currently has test work ongoing with Kingston Process Metallurgy in Canada to demonstrate production of battery grade HPMSM from the Mn silicate.

From a value perspective, nodule-sourced Mn silicate is expected to be competitive, aligning closely with the 44% Mn ore benchmark price, provided it is integrated into optimized ore blends. Depending on blend composition, its implied value ranges from $5.18 to $5.406 per dmtu (2023 basis). Key blends with high grade South African ore (Wessels ore) and iron ore are expected to perform comparably to the benchmark, although the value could vary depending on market conditions and processing costs for other feedstocks.

The marketing strategy for nodule-sourced Mn silicate must carefully manage blending practices to ensure its characteristics maximize value. In silico-manganese production, the large volume TMC aims to produce (2.8 Mt Mn content at peak in 2036) could be challenging to place without impacting pricing, especially in a well-supplied manganese market with limited forecasted growth in silico-manganese imports between 2026-2030 with 1.2 Mt of Mn in silicate expected to be produced in 2030.

[26] Electrolytic Manganese Dioxide (EMD) is a critical component of the cathode material in modern alkaline, lithium and sodium batteries.

16.5 TMC matte

TMC matte, with composition and characteristics resembling Anglo Converter Matte and Jinchuan Converter Matte, is projected to have high compatibility in refining processes. Key refineries, including Vale Canada, Glencore Nikkelverk, and Jinchuan, collectively account for approximately 85% of spare global refining capacity and are primary candidates for TMC matte processing. CRU expects TMC matte's net value to reach 75% of its gross metal value, contingent on forming long-term partnerships with these facilities.

However, the matte market could become buyer-dominant with growing feedstock supply, possibly pushing payables down to 80% for nickel, 70% for copper, and 60% for cobalt. Establishing stable refinery relationships will enhance payables over time, securing a consistent outlet for NORI matte’s substantial volumes.

CRU estimates a total available refining capacity for TMC matte of about 200 Kt contained Ni per annum. Commencement of TMC Ni refining in the US in 2033 mitigates the risk of increasing matte production exceeding the global matte refining capability.

16.6 TMC alloy

The TMC alloy, containing nickel, copper, and cobalt, has limited immediate demand in existing supply chains. It may require discounts to establish a market presence, especially in the early years of operation. Potential markets include polymetallic smelter-refinery complexes, laterite converters, and battery recyclers, though each presents logistical and operational challenges. CRU's assessment suggests that small volumes of TMC alloy could be blended with existing feedstocks to mitigate its complex composition, but a delay in PAMCO converter installation would necessitate alternative, large-scale partnerships.

The alloy’s LOM estimated payables are at 65% for nickel, 60% for copper, and 45% for cobalt, which may improve as the market adjusts. However, alloy processing limitations could reduce copper payables if laterite converters lacking copper recovery facilities become primary buyers. Over the forecast period, CRU anticipates TMC alloy’s net value could reach 61% of its gross metal content value as processing familiarity improves.

16.7 Refinery Products

It is intended TMC US subsidiary TMC USA will construct refining facilities in Texas to produce battery-grade Ni and Co sulfate crystal, copper cathode and fertilizer grade ammonium sulfate. Forecasts for cathode and sulfate prices are included in Table 6.1 based on the forecasts from BMI.

16.8 Revenue forecasts

Revenue assumptions are outlined in this section using the forecast data provided by
CRU and BMI.

Table 16.1 outlines the metal price forecast for 2026 onward in 2025 real $US dollars based on the CRU and BMI forecasts outlined above.

Table 16.1 Metal and metal sulfate price forecasts 2026 onwards (real US$ 2025)

Commodity Pricing – Real	LOM Average	2028-2032	2033-2037	2038-2043+
Price - Nickel Class 1 LME (US$/t)	20,295	18,833	20,706	20,360
Price - Cobalt LME (US$/t)	56,117	34,172	53,124	62,530
Price - Copper Class 1 LME(US$/t)	11,440	11,317	11,456	11,456
Price - Manganese (US$/DMTU)	5.45	5.29	5.44	5.50
Price – Ni Sulphate (Contained Ni basis)	21,633	19,623	22,007	21,835
Price – Co Sulphate (Contained Co basis)	55,198	31,347	51,336	62,530

Source: CRU,BMI

Table 16.2 shows the metallurgical recoveries used in the revenue estimate as outlined in Section 14.4.3. Table 16.3 outlines the payable factors provided by CRU and outlined above for nickel-copper-cobalt matte and alloy. Table 16.4 to Table 16.7 provide a forecast of payable metal production in alloy, matte, sulfates and cathode and Mn silicate respectively, and
Table 16.8 provides the revenue forecast by metal.

Table 16.2 Metallurgical recoveries

Product	Recovery (%)
Alloy – nickel recovery – nodule to alloy	96.91
Alloy – cobalt recovery – nodule to alloy	93.06
Alloy – copper recovery – nodule to alloy	93.55
Matte – nickel recovery – nodule to matte	94.76
Matte – cobalt recovery – nodule to matte	77.54

Matte – copper recovery – nodule to matte	86.43
Sulphate – nickel recovery – nodule to sulfate	94.60
Sulphate – cobalt recovery – nodule to sulfate	77.20
Cathode – copper recovery – nodule to cathode	86.20
Manganese recovery – nodule to Mn Silicate	98.9

Source: TMC, CEA

Table 16.3 NiCoCu Alloy/Matte Payable terms percentage of LME benchmark prices

Payable Terms	LOM Average	2027-2031	2032-2036	2037-2045
Alloy - Payable Terms – Ni	65%	65%	65%	65%
Alloy - Payable Terms – Co	44%	42%	43%	45%
Alloy - Payable Terms – Cu	60%	60%	60%	60%
Matte - Payable Terms – Ni	80%	80%	80%	80%
Matte - Payable Terms – Co	60%	60%	60%	60%
Matte - Payable Terms – Cu	70%	70%	70%	70%

Source: CRU

Table 16.4 Forecast payable metal production - metal in alloy

Metal	LOM Total Kt	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029	Year 3 2030	Year 4 2031
Payable Nickel	11.7	1.2	6.3	4.1	0	0
Payable Cobalt	0.8	0.1	0.4	0.3	0	0
Payable Copper	8.3	0.8	4.5	3.0	0	0

Source: TMC

Table 16.5 Forecast payable metal production - metal in matte

Metal	LOM Total Kt	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029	Year 3 2030	Year 4 2031
Payable Nickel	361.8	--	--	10.3	38.2	84.1
Payable Cobalt	22.2	--	--	0.6	2.3	5.2
Payable Copper	235.1	--	--	6.7	24.8	54.6
Metal	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10+ 2037+**
Payable Nickel	80.2	34.4	34.4	34.4	45.8	--
Payable Cobalt	4.9	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.8	--
Payable Copper	52.1	22.3	22.3	22.3	29.8	--

Source: TMC

Table 16.6 Forecast payable refined metal production - metal in sulfate and cathode

Metal	LOM Total Kt	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029	Year 3 2030	Year 4 2031
Payable Nickel in Sulphate	1,095.7	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Cobalt in Sulphate	89.4	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Copper in Cathode	813.0	--	--	--	--	--
Metal	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10+ 2037+**
Payable Nickel in Sulphate	--	57.2	57.2	57.2	57.2	866.9
Payable Cobalt in Sulphate	--	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	70.7
Payable Copper in Cathode	--	42.5	42.5	42.5	42.5	643.2

Source: TMC

Table 16.7 Forecast production – Mn in Mn silicate

Product	LOM Total Kt	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029	Year 3 2030	Year 4 2031
Mn in Mn Silicate	36,401.7	44.4	221.8	443.6	1,109.1	2,439.9
Product	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10+ 2037+**
Mn in Mn Silicate	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,661.8	20,165.0

Source: TMC

Table 16.8 Revenue Forecast US$ 2025 Real

Metal	LOM Total	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029	Year 3 2030	Year 4 2031
Nickel Revenue	31,449.5	19.4	102.2	247.0	706.8	1,647.5
Cobalt Revenue	6,465.7	3.1	15.3	30.9	78.3	176.7

Copper Revenue	12,090.9	7.9	43.7	107.9	284.5	625.8
Manganese Revenue	19,856.1	23.0	115.0	231.9	584.7	1,297.3
Metal	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10+ 2037+**
Nickel Revenue	1,684.9	2,031.8	1,949.4	1,949.4	2,182.7	18,928.5
Cobalt Revenue	186.3	282.8	376.9	423.9	467.9	4,423.6
Copper Revenue	597.4	742.4	742.4	742.4	827.7	7,368.9
Manganese Revenue	1,248.8	1,259.2	1,269.7	1,280.1	1,463.0	11,083.4

Source: TMC

17 Environmental studies, permitting, and plans, negotiations, or agreements with local individuals or groups

This chapter describes the framework for environmental and social approvals for the Project, including current status and forward work plan.

17.1 Permitting process

17.1.1 Overview of Environmental Regulatory Frameworks under international law and the law of the United States of America

Exploration and commercial recovery of polymetallic nodules from the seafloor in international waters is administered by the following governing bodies:

- International Seabed Authority (ISA) mandated under the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS); and
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) mandated under the laws of the United States of America (U.S.), namely, the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA).

Disclaimer: As of the effective date of this Report, neither the ISA nor the U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) has granted any final approval or exploitation permit for the NORI Area D project. The environmental and permitting pathways described herein remain subject to material uncertainty, and no assurance can be given that required approvals will be obtained on acceptable terms or at all.

17.1.1.1 International Seabed Authority (ISA)

The ISA is mandated under UNCLOS to organize, regulate, and control all seabed mineral-related activities in areas beyond national jurisdiction (ABNJ) whilst preserving and protecting the marine environment. The area the subject of Nauru Ocean Resources Inc.'s (NORI) exploration contract with the ISA (NORI Contract Area) is located in the ABNJ. Therefore, the ISA is responsible for assessing any Environmental and Social Impact Statements prepared by NORI and for granting the relevant permits in the NORI Contract Area. TMC, through NORI, is currently one of 16 contractors with a license to explore for polymetallic nodules in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone (CCZ) (ref: ISBA/23/C/7, 5 June 2017).

Between 1998 and 2014, the ISA conducted workshops to inform the development of documents to guide contractors on responsible environmental management during the exploration and exploitation phases of mineral development. The ISA held a workshop "Towards an ISA environmental management strategy for the Area" on 20-24 March 2017 in Berlin Germany. The results of the workshop were published as ISA Technical Study 17 (ISA 2017).

The ISA has issued Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules (adopted on 13 July 2000, updated on 25 July 2013). The regulations were complemented by the Legal and Technical Commission (LTC) recommendations for the guidance of contractors on assessing the environmental impacts of exploration on marine minerals in the Area (ISBA/25/LTC/6/Rev.1) which were updated on 30 March 2020. The draft exploitation regulations on deep-seabed mining were discussed at the 25th Session of the ISA on 25 February to 1 March 2019 in Kingston, Jamaica. The ISA had declared a target date of 2020 to complete and adopt the exploitation regulations. The ISA missed this target date and was then required to complete and adopt the exploitation regulations by 2023. The ISA again missed this deadline and has set a new target date of 2025 to adopt the exploitation regulations.

Although the environmental impact review process has not yet been finalized, the draft exploitation regulations outline the application process and requirements that contractors would need to implement during exploitation activities. All contractors have been made aware that the ISA requires the completion of the Environmental and Social Impact Assessment (ESIA) studies, culminating in an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS), in support of their applications for an exploitation license. Guidance for contractors in terms of what is expected in the EIS has been provided in ISA Technical Study No. 10 (ISA 2012). Further guidance is expected to be provided upon the completion of the draft Standards and Guidelines for exploitation activities. The EIS, along with an Environmental Management System with subordinate Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans (EMMP), are required as part of the application for an exploitation license.

The environmental permitting process has been developed through a consultation program initiated by the ISA in 2013 and includes feedback obtained from multiple stakeholder groups. It includes a series of checks and balances, with reviews being conducted by the LTC and input from independent experts, as required. The recommendations of the LTC will then go before the ISA Council, which will review the information provided and decide whether to approve the license application and, if so, what conditions will be applied.

NORI conducted ESIA studies in accordance with the draft document "*International Seabed Authority. (2013). Recommendations for the Guidance of Contractors for the Assessment of the Possible Environmental Impacts Arising from Exploration for Marine Minerals in the Area*."

17.1.1.2 Role of Sponsoring States

As a sponsoring state, the Republic of Nauru (Nauru) has a responsibility to ensure that NORI's activities in the Area conform with Part XI of UNCLOS. NORI is regulated by the *Nauru Seabed Minerals Authority Act 2024* (Nauru Act), which requires NORI to, amongst other things, *"apply the precautionary approach, and employ best environmental practices and best available techniques in accordance with the relevant Rules of the ISA to avoid, mitigate or remedy harmful effects of the Seabed Mineral Activities on the Marine Environment and prevent, reduce and control pollution and other hazards".*

The Nauru Seabed Minerals Authority, established under the Nauru Act, has a number of functions including to, *inter alia*:

- Develop policies and institutional arrangements for the purpose of regulating and monitoring the development of seabed minerals in the NORI Contract Area.
- Develop standards and guidelines for seabed mineral extraction related activities.
- Conduct due diligence enquiries into sponsorship applicants or sponsored parties.
- Assist the ISA in its work to establish, monitor, implement and secure compliance with the rules of the ISA.
- Undertake any advisory, supervisory or enforcement activities in relation to seabed mineral activities or the protection of the marine environment, insofar as this is required in addition to the ISA's work in order for Nauru to meet its obligations under the UNCLOS as a Sponsoring State.

17.1.1.3 ISA Regulatory Framework

The environmental regulatory framework under the ISA primarily comprises relevant provisions of the following documents:

- UNCLOS.
- The ISA Exploration Regulations.
- The Draft ISA Exploitation Regulations.
- The Draft ISA Standards and Guidelines.

- The Draft ISA EMMP Guidelines.
- The Draft ISA EIS Guideline.

17.1.1.4 ISA Exploration Regulations

The ISA has three sets of resource-specific exploration regulations in place, covering the prospecting and exploration for Mineral Resources in the Area:

- Polymetallic nodules (ISBA/19/C/17).
- Polymetallic sulphides (ISBA/16/A/12/Rev.1).
- Cobalt-rich ferromanganese crusts (ISBA/18/A/11).

These regulations are supplemented by a series of recommendations to guide contractors and sponsoring states. The recommendations are issued by the LTC and are periodically updated.

17.1.1.5 Draft ISA Exploitation Regulations

The ISA has developed draft Exploitation Regulations (ISBA/30/C/CRP.1) which remain under negotiation among ISA Council members.

The purpose, objectives, and requirements of the ISA's rules, regulations and procedures, including the Exploration Regulations and the draft Exploitation Regulations, outline what NORI is required to submit to the ISA, including on environmental aspects, to obtain approval for the Project.

The primary document that must be prepared and submitted to obtain approval is a Plan of Work. The form of applications and information to accompany a Plan of Work is outlined in Regulation 7 and Annex I of ISBA/30/C/CRP.1.

The Plan of Work components include:

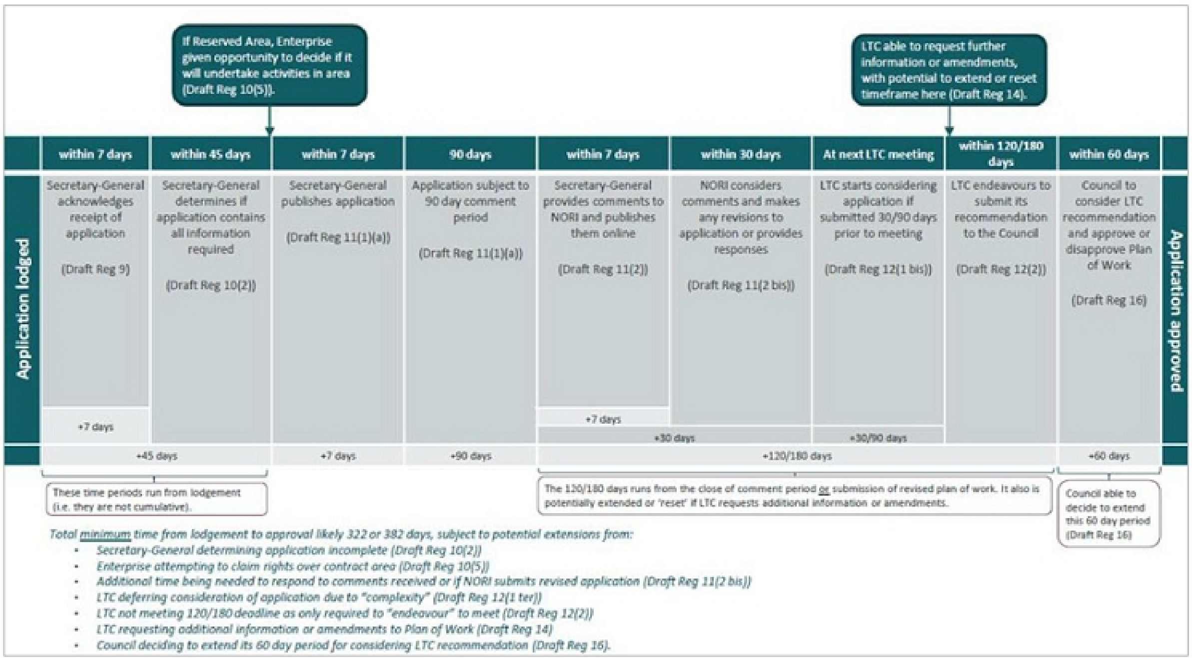
- Annex I:
  - Section I – Information concerning the applicant.
  - Section II – Information relating to the area under application.
  - Section III – Technical information.
  - Section IV – Financial information.
  - Section IV – Undertakings.
  - Section VI – Previous contracts with the Authority.
  - Section VII – Attachments.

- Annex II – Mining Workplan.
- Annex III – Financing Plan.
- Annex III bis – Scoping Report.
- Annex IV – Environmental Impact Statement.
- Annex V – Emergency Response and Contingency Plan.
- Annex VI – Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan.
- Annex VII – Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.
- Annex VIII – Closure Plan.

As the ISA is still formulating standards and guidelines, there is no visibility on any potential secondary or tertiary approvals.

If the LTC recommends approval, the Council must approve the proposed application for a Plan of Work unless two-thirds of Council members present and voting, and a majority of the members present and voting in each of the Council's five chambers, vote to disapprove. Further, if the Council fails to make a decision within 60 days, the Plan of Work is deemed to be approved, unless the Council decides to extend this time period. Figure 17.1 illustrates the approval process commencing with a Plan of Work application.

Figure 17.1 Plan of Work approval process



Source: NORI

17.1.1.6 Relevance to the Project

NORI is a company incorporated in and sponsored by Nauru, which is a signatory to UNCLOS. Consequently, the Project falls within the jurisdiction of the ISA, UNCLOS, and the 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of UNCLOS (1994 Agreement).

Article 153 of UNCLOS stipulates that a potential contractor seeking to extract minerals from the Area under the ISA regulatory framework may only do so once a Plan of Work is approved and a contract based upon that Plan of Work is signed between the ISA and the applicant. Activities in the Area must then be carried out in accordance with the Plan of Work.

The ISA granted NORI an Exploration Contract for an area of 74,830 km^2 in the CCZ on 22 July 2011. The Exploration Contract grants NORI exclusive rights to explore for nodules in NORI Area D (NORI Area D) for an initial term of 15 years (renewable for successive five-year periods), subject to complying with the Exploration Contract terms. This Contract provides NORI with a priority right to apply for an exploitation contract to collect nodules in the same area.

17.1.1.7 ISA Compliance Status

NORI has fulfilled all contractual obligations to date with respect to the Exploration Contract, with zero non-conformances issued by the ISA. Under this contract, NORI is required to submit 5-year work plans which it reports on annually to the ISA through the submission of an annual report. Every 5 years, the ISA reviews the work completed in the past 5 years and then NORI develops and submits a new 5-year work plan. The current work plan is valid until July 2026.

17.1.2National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)

The U.S. is not a State party to UNCLOS and therefore does not accept the ISA's competence over the Area. The U.S. through its own laws facilitates the issuance of exploration licences and commercial recovery permits for seabed mining activities in ABNJ.

NOAA is the U.S. federal agency responsible for administering DSHMRA, which establishes a U.S. regulatory regime for the exploration and commercial recovery of hard Mineral Resources from the deep seabed in ABNJ. All rules, regulations, and procedures issued by NOAA to regulate the prospecting, exploration, and recovery of seabed minerals under DSHMRA are issued within the legal framework established by the Act and its implementing regulations.

NOAA is currently responsible for reviewing and processing applications for both exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits submitted by U.S. entities. In April 2025, the U.S. President signed an Executive Order establishing a national policy to advance U.S. leadership in seabed mineral exploration and responsible commercial recovery, emphasizing environmental stewardship, supply chain resilience, and interagency coordination. NOAA has issued regulations and guidance under the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and other relevant laws to ensure that environmental impacts are thoroughly assessed prior to the commencement of any marine mineral exploration or extraction activities. These include the NOAA NEPA Procedures Manual (updated in 2020) and the Ocean Exploration Advisory Working Group recommendations, which provide detailed expectations for environmental review and public engagement. Draft regulations concerning deep-sea mining activities within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) have been discussed in interagency forums and public consultations, with NOAA emphasizing the need for precautionary approaches and robust scientific data to inform decision-making.

In May 2025, NOAA published draft updates to the provisions of DSHMRA, including proposed revisions to streamline the application process for commercial recovery permits and enhance environmental safeguards. The draft incorporated feedback from interagency consultations, industry stakeholders, and environmental groups, and was published for public comment in the Federal Register. NOAA has indicated its intent to finalize the proposed revisions to DSHMRA by early 2026, in alignment with the Executive Order's directive to modernize the permitting process and ensure timely access to critical minerals.

Pursuant to DSHMRA and 15 CFR §§971.102 and 971.103, a licensee who submits a timely and complete application for a commercial recovery permit for the same area covered by their exploration license is granted a priority of right over other applicants, provided regulatory requirements are met.

17.1.2.1 NOAA Regulatory Framework

The environmental regulatory framework and guidance documentation under the U.S. regulatory framework primarily comprises relevant provisions from the following documents:

- DSHMRA
- NEPA
- United States Clean Water Act (CWA)
- United States Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA)
- Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (MMPA)
- Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act (FWCA)
- Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976 (MSA) (also referred to as Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976)
- Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972

- Regulation 15 CFR Part 970: Deep Seabed Mining Regulations for Exploration Licenses
- Regulation 15 CFR Part 971: Deep Seabed Mining Regulations for Commercial Recovery Permits
- Deep Seabed Mining Final Technical Guidance Document
- Deep Seabed Mining Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement Volume I (PEIS)

17.1.2.1.1. DSHMRA Regulations for Exploration Licenses

Regulation 15 CFR Part 970 establishes the requirements for exploration licenses for deep-seabed hard minerals. It is supported by technical guidance documents:

- Deep Seabed Mining Final Technical Guidance Document.
- Deep Seabed Mining Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement Volume I (PEIS).

Pursuant to the Regulations, once an application for an exploration license is filed with NOAA, NOAA must first assess whether the application is in full or substantial compliance. NOAA will then undertake consultations with various Federal agencies and publish the application together with a draft EIS (prepared by NOAA) in the Federal Register for public comment.

Once the application is certified by NOAA, NOAA will consider and propose terms, conditions and any necessary restrictions for the exploration license. The proposed terms, conditions and restrictions are notified to the applicant and also published in the Federal Register, together with the draft EIS, for public comment. NOAA will continue consultations with Federal agencies prior to making a final determination on the issuance of an exploration license.

If NOAA decides to grant the exploration license, notice of the issuance of the license will be given to the applicant, together with applicable terms, conditions and any necessary restrictions (including environmental compliance and reporting requirements). NOAA will also publish the issuance of the license, together with the final EIS, in the Federal Register.

17.1.2.1.2. DSHMRA Regulations for Commercial Recovery Permit

Regulation 15 CFR Part 971 establishes the regulatory requirements for Commercial Recovery Permits.

An Exploration License approval must precede the approval of a Commercial Recovery Permit. When the Commercial Recovery application is considered complete by NOAA, NOAA will undertake consultations with other Federal agencies with statutory responsibilities for activities proposed under the application (e.g., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). NOAA will also publish the application together with a draft EIS (prepared by NOAA) in the Federal Register for public comment.

Once the application is certified by NOAA, NOAA will consider and propose terms, conditions and any necessary restrictions for the commercial recovery permit. The proposed terms, conditions and restrictions are notified to the applicant and also published in the Federal Register, together with the draft EIS, for public comment. NOAA will continue consultations with Federal agencies prior to making a final determination on the issuance of a commercial recovery permit.

If NOAA decides to grant the commercial recovery permit, notice of the issuance of the permit will be given to the applicant, together with applicable terms, conditions and restrictions (including environmental compliance and reporting requirements). NOAA will also publish the issuance of the permit, together with the final EIS, in the Federal Register.

Figure 17.2 illustrates the approval process commencing with the submission of the Commercial Recovery Permit application.

The statute anticipates that NOAA will issue a license or permit within 460 days after receipt of an application, although NOAA can extend the timelines “for good cause shown in writing.” Nothing requires NOAA to take the full time allotted for each of these steps (certification, draft EIS and draft terms, conditions, and restrictions, and publication of final EIS). The statute does, however, require NOAA to provide a minimum 60-day notice and comment period for applications, draft terms, conditions and restrictions, draft EIS, and proposals to issue licenses or permits. This means that the shortest amount of time by which NOAA can provide authorization under the Statute 180 days (Wiley, 2025).

Figure 17.2 Commercial Recovery Permit Approval Process

	within 60 days	within 100 days	within 180 days	within 180 days	
Application lodged	NOAA issues a written notice determining whether application is complete (§971.210)	*Certification of application:* Upon receipt of a complete application, NOAA undertakes consultation with various Federal agencies and publishes receipt of application in the Federal Register for "interested persons" to comment. NOAA also holds a public hearing on draft EIS and application. Subject to these consultations and public comments, NOAA certifies application. (§§971.211, 971.212, 971.300(c))	NOAA proposes issuance of commercial recovery permit together with proposed terms, conditions and restrictions ("TCRs"): 1. NOAA notifies applicant of proposed TCRs; and 2. NOAA publishes proposed issuance of commercial recovery permit together with proposed TCRs and draft EIS in the Federal Register for "interested persons" to comment. NOAA may also hold a public hearing on the proposed issuance of the commercial recovery permit. 3. NOAA completes consultations with various Federal agencies. (§§971.400, 971.401, 971.402)	NOAA makes final determination on issuance of commercial recovery permit. NOAA issues commercial recovery permit together with appropriate TCRs. NOAA publishes final EIS in the Federal Register. (§§971.400, 971.410)	Application approved

*Total time from lodgement to approval likely **520 days, and up to 1030 days (or longer)** subject to potential delays from:*

- *NOAA determining application incomplete (§971.210)*
- *If NOAA denies certification of application, additional time (max. 180 days) being given to applicant to correct any deficiencies in the application (§971.302(b)(2)(ii))*
- *If NOAA requires additional time (i.e., more than 180 days) to propose TCRs on proposed commercial recovery permit (§971.400)*
- *If NOAA requires additional time (i.e., more than 180 days) to make a final determination on the issuance of the commercial recovery permit (§971.400)*
- *If NOAA makes a final determination denying the issuance of a commercial recovery permit, additional time (max. 180 days) being given to applicant to correct any deficiencies (§971.409(b)(2)(ii))*
- *If the applicant chooses to request an administrative review of NOAA's proposed denial of a commercial recovery permit, and NOAA conducts a formal hearing (§971.409)*
- *If NOAA's final determination on the issuance of a commercial recovery permit (whether granting or denying) is subject to judicial review (§971.409(f))*
- *If, upon issuance of a commercial recovery permit together with TCRs, the permittee files an objection to NOAA's TCRs on the permit. The permittee must file an objection within 60 days of receipt of NOAA's notice of issuance of the permit, and NOAA has 90 days to decide on the objection (§971.411)*
- *If any further dispute remains between the permittee and NOAA requiring a formal hearing to be conducted by NOAA and any further judicial review of NOAA's determination (§971.411)*

Source: TMC USA

TMC USA has retained Wiley Rein LLP (Wiley), a legal counsel experienced in permitting in the U.S who have been involved in discussions with the U.S. Department of Commerce and more specifically NOAA, regarding the TMC USA applications. Wiley has opined:

"Based on the application date of April 29, 2025, should TMC USA receive an exploration license from NOAA prior to receiving a recovery permit, TMC USA could obtain a recovery permit by October 2027. The governing statute sets forth an expectation that NOAA will reach determinations on applications within 460 days of receipt. Thus, under the existing framework, TMC USA could expect to receive an exploration license in 460 days, i.e., by August 3, 2026, and a recovery permit 460 days later by November 8, 2027. However, given the Executive Order requiring NOAA to expedite the licensing and permitting process, it is unlikely that the agency will take the entire 460 days to reach its decisions on either the license or permit application even under the existing framework. Moreover, the proposed changes to the existing regulations, coupled with the Executive Order, make it possible for TMC USA to receive a recovery permit well before October 2027—possibly by late 2026—given that TMC USA will be able to consolidate its license and permit applications (achieving significant time savings), and given that the Executive Order instructs NOAA to expedite its review of commercial recovery permit applications." (Wiley, 2025).

17.1.2.2 Relevance to the Project

The Metals Company USA LLC (TMC USA) is a company incorporated in the U.S. The U.S. is not a State party to UNCLOS, and therefore DSHMRA applies to U.S. entities like TMC USA for seabed mineral activities in ABNJ. The Project therefore falls within the scope of the DSHMRA regime. NOAA is the U.S. federal agency tasked with issuing exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits for polymetallic nodules to U.S. entities in ABNJ.

TMC USA has submitted applications for exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits to NOAA under DSHMRA. These applications are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the TMC USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ.
- Commercial Recovery Permit for TMC USA-A which covers 25,160 km^2 in the CCZ.

A part of TMC USA-A overlaps with the NORI Area D area the subject of NORI's exploration contract with the ISA.

TMC USA's applications to NOAA are still under review, and the commencement of commercial recovery activities by TMC USA is subject to NOAA's approval of the exploration license and commercial recovery permit under DSHMRA.

17.1.2.3 Compliance status

Executive Order (EO). 14258 directed NOAA, in consultation with the Department of State and the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM), to expedite the process for reviewing and issuing exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits under DSHMRA, among other actions. On 29 April 2025, TMC USA submitted applications to NOAA for two exploration licenses and one commercial recovery permit under DSHMRA for areas in the CCZ.

According to the implementing regulations of DSHMRA, NOAA is to make an initial determination as to the compliance and completeness of applications: (i) within 30 days of receipt for exploration license applications (15 C.F.R. §970.209); and (ii) within 60 days of receipt for commercial recovery permit applications (15 C.F.R. §971.210).

If NOAA determines that the applications are incomplete or not compliant, additional time may be given to the applicant to complete the application or bring the application into full compliance: 15 C.F.R. §970.209; 15 C.F.R. §971.210.

17.2 Project approval pathway

TMC, through their wholly owned subsidiary, NORI, holds an exploration contract with the ISA.

NORI holds exploration rights to four areas with a combined area of 74,830 km^2 (NORI Areas A, B, C, and D) in the CCZ that was granted by the ISA in July 2011.

This contract formalize the rights of NORI, including security of tenure with respect to NORI Areas A, B, C and D. Pursuant to the ISA's Exploration Regulations, NORI has a priority right to apply to the ISA for an exploitation contract to exploit polymetallic nodules in the same area (Regulation 24 (2)).

At the time of writing, the ISA is yet to finalize the Mining Code, including the ISA's Exploitation Regulations, as required under UNCLOS. The ISA has not met its legal obligation to complete the adoption of the Exploitation Regulations in 2020, 2023 and again in 2025.

Consequently, in April 2025, TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary TMC USA, submitted applications to NOAA under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA. These applications are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the TMC USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ
- Commercial Recovery Permit for TMC USA-A which covers 25,160 km^2 in the CCZ (referred to as NORI Area D under the ISA regime).

At the time of writing, TMC USA does not hold any exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits issued by NOAA under DSHMRA. However, TMC USA has submitted applications for such rights, and subject to regulatory review and approval, expects commercial recovery activities may be possible in the future pursuant to a permit issued by NOAA.

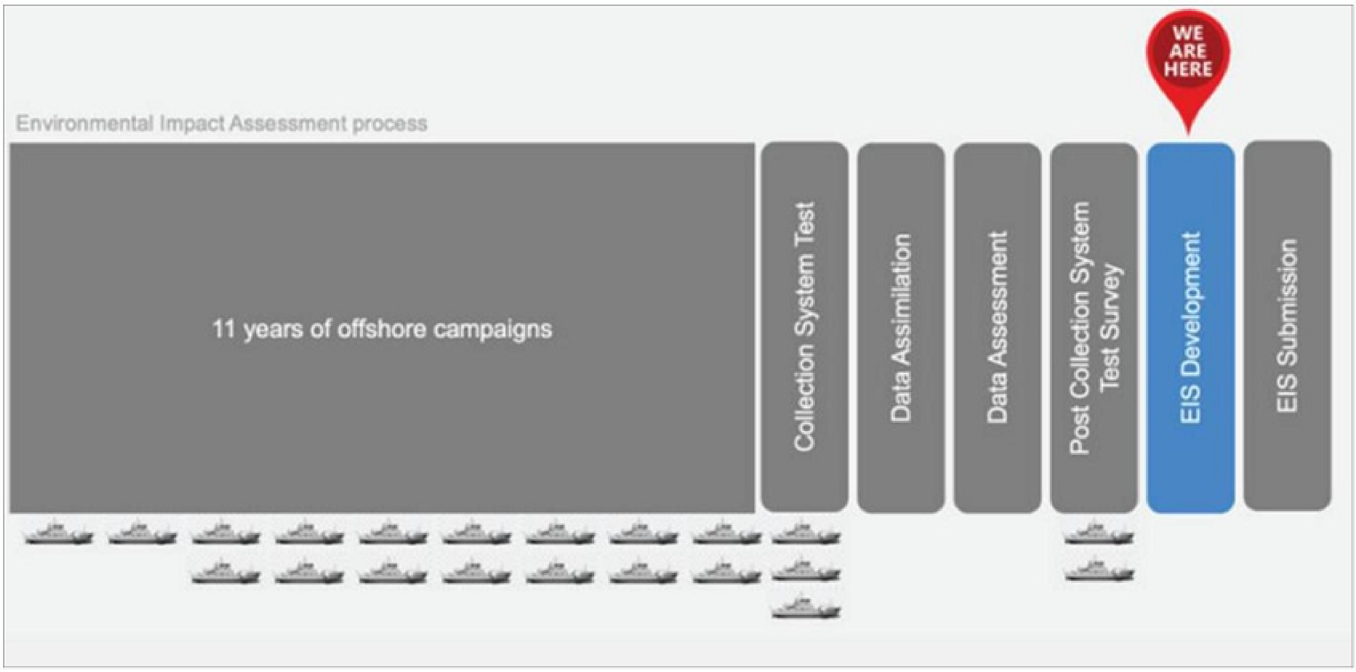
There is presently no confirmation as to whether, and if so when, TMC USA's applications will be approved by NOAA, or whether any such approvals will be issued on terms and conditions that are commercially viable for TMC USA or within anticipated timeline.

17.3 Environmental Impact Assessment status

The status of the environmental assessment is:

- Environmental baseline studies completed.
- Test mining and environmental monitoring completed.
- Post-test mining environmental monitoring completed.

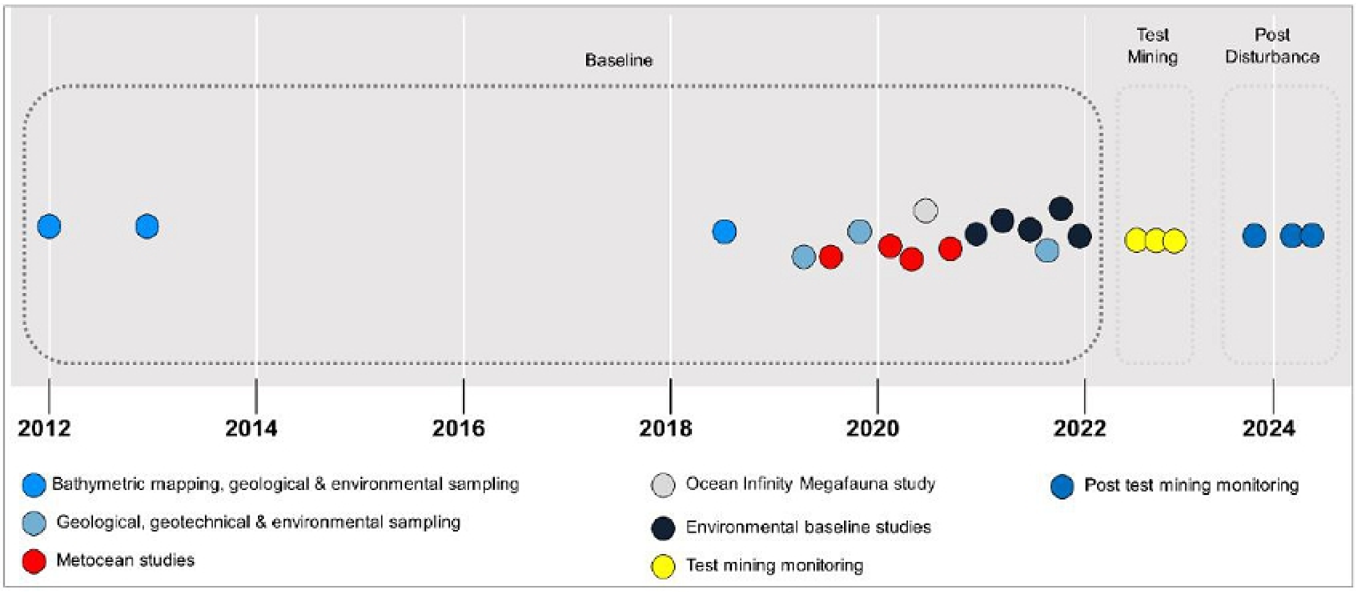
Figure 17.3 Status of the NORI Area D the environmental assessment process



Source: NORI

The completion of these activities, in conjunction with the collection of sufficient bathymetric, geological and geotechnical data, has enabled the project to progress the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) and Environmental Impact Statement (EIS). A timeline of activities is provided in Figure 17.4 below.

Figure 17.4 Data to inform the NORI D Environmental Impact Statement has been collected from 22 offshore campaigns over 12 years

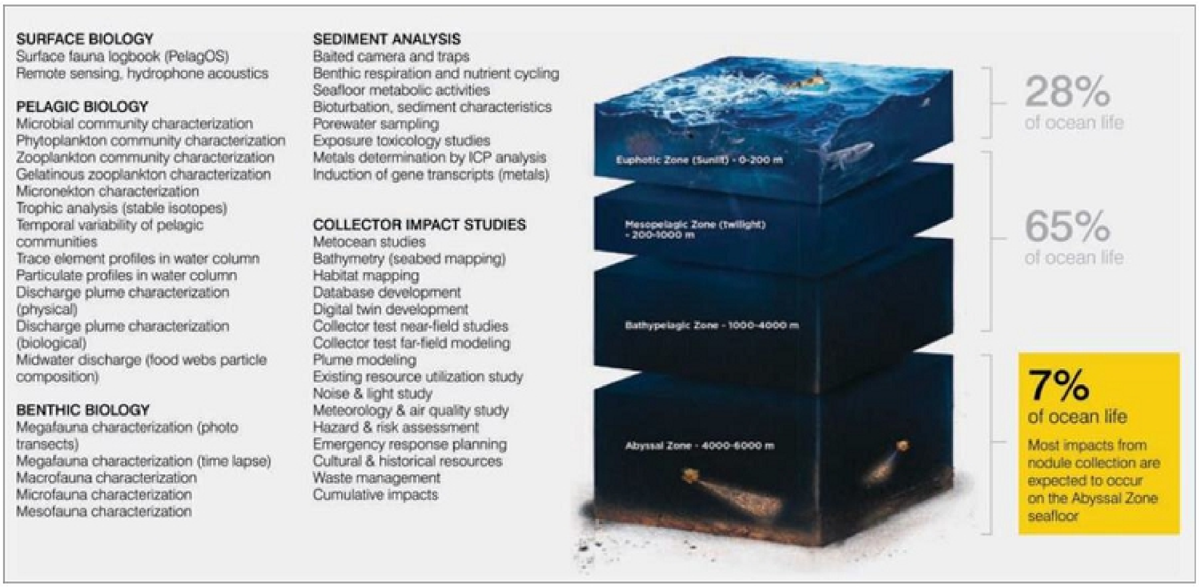


Source: NORI

Using globally recognized research institutions and a highly qualified in-house environmental team, the project has conducted original studies (see Figure 17.5) across the following primary work packages:

- Sediment analysis.
- Surface biology.
- Benthic biology.
- Pelagic biology.
- Water quality analysis.
- Collector impact studies.

Figure 17.5 Primary work packages and list of original studies



Source: NORI

Ongoing support studies that contribute to these work packages include:

- Metocean studies.
- Collector test near field data collection.
- Collector test far field data collection.

- Plume modelling.
- Habitat mapping.
- Ecosystem functioning.
- Database development.

17.4 Environmental Impacts and Mitigation

The project has identified key potential environmental impact pathways including impacts to: air quality, light, noise, water quality, sediment and pore water composition, nodule removal, biodiversity, habitat quality, ecosystem function disruption and loss of ecosystem services. Through the offshore campaigns, the project has studied the environmental conditions before, during and after the nodule collection process to better understand the environmental impacts of the proposed activities and develop appropriate mitigation measures.

17.4.1 Nodule removal

Nodules serve as a hard surface habitat to which some sessile invertebrates attach. Nodule collection will permanently remove most nodules and the organisms attached to them.

Mitigation Action: NORI continues to research the long-term distribution of the organisms that live in the seabed sediment and on nodules to understand the overall impact of nodule removal. Some organisms need hard nodule surfaces to sustain their critical life functions, but many others live in the sediment itself. Impact reference zones have been established near the site where Test Mining was conducted in 2022. These zones will not be mined and will be preserved as reference sites for comparing the long-term impacts on biodiversity between mined and unmined areas.

Figure 17.6 Qualitative data show individual organisms are present and alive one year following collection test, even right next to the collector tracks

Source: NORI

Mitigations include:

- The ISA has set aside 1.97 million km^2 of the CCZ as areas of particular environmental interest (APEIs) in which nodule collection will never occur.
- TMC USA will set aside approximately 10% of the contracted areas as additional "no take zones" or preservation reference zones (PRZs).
- TMC USA expects to leave behind approximately 15% of nodules in operational areas.

17.4.2 Benthic plume

The collector will separate the majority of the sediment that it entrains and discharge it back to the seafloor within meters from its origin, generating a benthic plume behind the vehicle. This plume will spread to other areas, and the fine sediment may clog filter feeding and respiratory structures of some benthic organisms. Sedimentation may also bury nodules and, thus, make it hard or impossible for animal larvae to attach to them.

Several studies have begun to model how the benthic plume behaves, and, to date, initial findings suggest that the plume may not have as widespread impacts as previously thought. Peer-reviewed research based on field studies on seafloor plumes found that 92-98% of the plume from pilot nodule-collector rose only 2 meters above the seafloor (Peacock et al (2023; Haalboom et al. 2023).

Detailed studies by DHI, based on empirical data from test mining, have confirmed that the benthic plume footprint is constrained as it forms a "gravity current". Further studies using isotopes to determine the areas of influence and areas of impact have provided further confidence on the limits of the sedimentation footprint resulting from the benthic plume.

Mitigation Action: During the 2022 Test Mining Trial, NORI engaged DHI Water and Environment (DHI) – leading experts on sedimentation and plume modelling – to implement a plume monitoring study. The team deployed over 50 assets and marine sensors to the 4 km x 2 km test field to collect data on all aspects of plume dynamics, concentration, and dispersal from which DHI have generated plume models. Initial models predicted that a plume will resettle in days within several kilometer radius from the origin. Preliminary results from monitoring during test mining show that the actual sedimentation footprint was much smaller than expected.

With empirical data on plume behaviour, NORI will continue to explore ways to minimise the spread of the benthic plume by optimising discharge parameters and mining patterns and finding ways to accelerate particle flocculation to speed up sediment resettlement on the seabed. The dredging industry has developed significant knowledge on plume dynamics over the years, which has been used to inform equipment design (e.g. diffusers) to minimise the impacts of the benthic plume.

Engineering improvements include further work on the height adjustment system (HAS) for the Coandă nozzles to minimize penetration depth and the amount of sediment entrained by the collector. The diffusers performed well during test mining and minor refinements have been incorporated into the design of the collector vehicle for commercial production.

Figure 17.7 Test mining footage showing that the benthic plume stays just above the seafloor

Source: Allseas and NORI

17.4.3 Return water plume

Nodules, seawater, and any residual sediment that eludes separation inside the collector on the seabed will enter the riser pipe and travel to the Production Vessel at the surface. Once aboard the Production Vessel, a cyclone separator will dewater the nodules and the seawater that the riser system used to transport nodules along with any residual sediment and nodule fines (from nodule breakage in transport up the riser) will return to the water column at depth below the measured oxygen minimum zones where it will form a very dilute plume (the "mid-water plume"). Key risks to the biotic environment from the mid-water plume include clogging pelagic nekton's respiratory and filter-feeding structures and remobilizing heavy metals and toxins sequestered in the sediment and possibly making them available for bioaccumulation in the food chain.

Mitigation action: NORI continues to research optimal mid-water reinjection depth that will cause minimal disruption to marine biota.

A discharge depth below 2,000 m releases the mid-water plume below the oxygen minimum zone and into a zone of the water column with the least biomass. This minimises exposure of pelagic organisms to any potential toxins or heavy metals and reduces the risk of bioaccumulation in the food chain and the potential exposure of commercially important fish species[27].

17.4.4 Carbon

Observed data from test mining show that 92-98% of mobilized sediment stays several meters above the seafloor and resettles within hours to days. There are no known significant pathways for carbon contained within seafloor sediments to reach the atmosphere within the short window before sediment resettles. The ocean's thermohaline circulation occurs on centuries timescale and Earth's geological cycle impacts water mass movements over tens or hundreds of millions of years. Further, existing literature has also addressed the potential impacts of nodule collection on microbial carbon sequestration service, finding that "*proposed mining of these nodule-bearing sediments and resulting resuspension of particles and organic matter will have a trivial impact on the ecosystem service of carbon sequestration*."[28]

[27] https://www.isa.org.jm/publications/technical-study-33-potential-interactions-between-fishing-and-mineral-resource-related-activities-in-areas-beyond-national-jurisdiction-a-spatial-analysis/ and https://dsm.gsd.spc.int/public/files/reports/SPCNIWA_Report_FINAL231116.pdf

[28] Orcutt, B. N., J. A. Bradley, W. J. Brazelton, and others: 2020. Impacts of deep-sea mining on microbial ecosystem services. Limonology and Oceanography 65: 1489-1510. Doi:10 10002/no. 11403

17.4.5 Noise

NORI engaged HR Wallingford, a recognized international consultant, to conduct acoustic modelling of test mining. The model was then updated with the vessel fleet, movements and frequencies expected during commercial production. The initial findings from this process are that noise levels outside a 3.8 km radius of the production vessel will be below the threshold for root-mean-square broadband sound pressure levels (SPL) of 120 dB known to cause a behavioural response in effect on marine mammals[29].

There are no specific engineering mitigation measures recommended for noise attenuation. The design of the riser pipe already incorporated an air injection point outside of the SOFAR channel, and the collector vehicle was not identified as a major source of noise by the model. The design does not use any large underwater pumps. The major source of noise for the integrated nodule transfer system is the dynamic positioning thrusters on the surface production vessel and transfer vessels.

17.4.6 Biodiversity loss

The study of biodiversity loss in the context of the NORI Area D Project has involved extensive environmental monitoring and assessment programs designed to evaluate the impacts of deep-sea mining activities on marine ecosystems. This includes a comprehensive analysis of various biotic communities through pre-mining and post-mining surveys. Specific methodologies employed include seafloor studies that assess changes in habitat structure and species composition, as well as plume monitoring to characterise the effects of mobilized sediment on water quality and biological communities. The results from these studies are critical for understanding the potential long-term ecological consequences of mining operations and informing future management decisions.

The ISA has set aside 1.97 million km^2 of the CCZ as areas of particular environmental interest (APEIs) in which nodule collection will never occur. To minimise biodiversity loss at the site level, the project incorporates several strategies. One key approach is the establishment of PRZs within NORI Area D, which serve as undisturbed areas for comparison against impacted sites, allowing for the assessment of natural variations in environmental conditions. Continuous environmental monitoring will be conducted to ensure compliance with regulations and to adaptively manage any unforeseen ecological consequences. By integrating these measures into the project's operational framework, NORI aims to uphold a precautionary approach that prioritizes the protection of marine biodiversity while pursuing its exploitation objectives.

17.4.7 Reduction in habitat quality and ecosystem function

NORI has begun studying the in-field data gathered on ecosystem functioning a year after test mining. Whilst the research is yet to be completed, the Project expects to be able to report on recovery rates at a species level by implementing long-term monitoring programs.

[29] NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service) (2018) 2018 Revisions to: Technical Guidance for Assessing the Effects of Anthropogenic Sound on Marine Mammal Hearing (Version 2.0):Underwater Thresholds for Onset of Permanent and Temporary Threshold Shifts. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-59: 167 pp.

Fish and holothurians are expected to return to disturbed areas soon after the cessation on mining activities. These mobile species are likely to be attracted by newly uncovered or deposited organic matter that results from the disturbance.

Data from NORI Area D suggest that sedimentary microbial communities are likely to recover to pre-disturbance levels.

Nodule-obligate macrofauna will be most affected by nodule removal. However, research by Simon- Lledo et al. (2019) suggests that nodule surface area availability is not a limiting factor for nodule-obligate organisms at nodule densities over 5%. As at this density, the availability of organic matter (food) becomes the limiting factor. Up to 15% of nodules will not be removed from mined areas, and 1-meter strips of nodules will be left behind between passes; studies show that buried and sediment-covered nodules begin to become uncovered (and presumably re-available as hard substrate habitat) in as little as 12 months post-mining. These observations suggest that nodule-obligate communities, even within directly mined areas, may exhibit signs of recovery over extended periods. The long-term impacts on the community structure of these groups are unknown and will be the focus of ongoing research in the disturbed areas.

17.5 Commitments to local benefits

17.5.1 Updated Sponsorship Agreement

On May 29, 2025, the Government of the Republic of Nauru and NORI signed a revised Sponsorship Agreement, updating the terms originally executed in 2017. As outlined in TMC's press release on June 4, 2025, the Agreement ensures Nauru will continue to receive all existing financial benefits, training and capacity-building programs, and in-country community and social programs it receives today, and further provides that, in consideration of its ongoing sponsorship, Nauru will receive continuity benefits upon commencement of commercial production by NORI or another TMC subsidiary. Community and social benefit programs are outlined below.

17.5.2 Scholarships

TMC, through their subsidiary NORI, has developed an undergraduate scholarship program through the University of the South Pacific (USP) and has supported Nauruan students to pursue undergraduate degrees in a wide range of disciplines. At the time of writing, TMC is actively supporting seven undergraduate scholars.

NORI also has an existing scholarship program to fund preliminary and foundation science courses for Year 11 and Year 12 students which equip them with qualifications required to pursue undergraduate science degrees.

17.5.3 Community Investment

TMC actively supports a range of community and social initiatives through its Community Assistance Program (CAP). This program allocates funds bi-annually to community-based projects. The priority areas for CAP include:

- Education.
- Youth and Healthy Living.
- Women's Empowerment.
- Clean Water and Sanitation.
- Ocean and Environmental Health.
- Agriculture and Food Security.
- Cultural Heritage.

17.5.4 Stakeholder engagement

The Project. through the works completed by NORI, has attracted broad stakeholder and media interest at both project and industry level. As an industry leader, TMC is committed to broad and representative stakeholder and community participation, as well as inclusive and transparent sharing of information.

To date, NORI has conducted various stakeholder engagement activities to develop and maintain partnership with key stakeholders such as Nauru. These activities are summarized in Table 17.1.

Table 17.1 Stakeholder analysis and engagement

Stakeholder	Engagement Method	Key Topics	Objectives
TMC Employees	Townhalls, in-person team meetings, company "AllHandsonDeck" emails, internal committees for topics such as ESIA program, ESG, Pacific Islands engagement	Vision, plan, strategy, company values, projects performance and updates, climate change, ESG performance expectations and progress	Communicate strategy and progress Gain feedback and insights Maintain an engaged purpose-driven workforce
Strategic Partners and Contractors	Meetings, emails, website, reports, contracts, exploration campaigns, technology development and testing	Project updates, opportunities, megatrends, vision, projects timeline and forecast, our policies, sustainability approach and goals, ESG performance expectations and due diligence process, scope of work, sustainability initiatives	Create shared value Leverage expertise Mitigate risk Deliver science-based solutions Foster innovation to decarbonize value chain
Scientific Community	Meetings, emails, reports, webinars	Project updates, environmental impact assessments, management and monitoring, deep sea knowledge, conservation, innovation, climate change carbon offsets, blue economy, transparency	Promote open and healthy debate and understanding that drive science - based decisions Advance deep-sea research and understanding of impacts Support conservation and advance solutions from the blue economy
Value Chain (Suppliers, Potential Customers)	Meetings, emails, reports, conferences	Project updates, critical metals demand trends: availability / security / price / ESG impacts of critical metals supply; climate change and energy transition; our value proposition; ESG performance expectations and due diligence process	Develop opportunities Foster collaboration Build ESG focus and transparency Leverage expertise Decarbonize value chain Deliver science-based solutions
NGOs and Global Community	Meetings, website, social media, press releases, reports, consultation	Project updates, transparency, accountability, climate change and energy transition, real-world data and trade-offs, shared value, best practices, our sustainability approach, goals and impact	Promote transparency, inclusivity Foster conversation and collaboration Drive science-based understanding of impacts and receive feedback to understand and address concerns

Stakeholder	Engagement Method	Key Topics	Objectives
Communities ~~of Sponsoring State~~	Meetings, townhalls, website, social media, information videos, local newsletter, local events, community programs, consultation, press releases	Project and industry updates, our vision, responsibilities and sustainability approach and goals, deep-sea mining regulations, shared value creation, local capacity building, education, local initiatives, grants climate change	Be a good partner Engage transparently Support local training and capacity building initiatives Understand community priorities Create shared value
Investors and Shareholders	Annual general meeting, meetings, emails, website, reports, webinars, conferences, press releases	Project updates, financial and ESG reporting, our sustainability approach and goals, climate change, energy transition, metals supply and market trends, governance, strategy, risks and opportunities	Communicate strategy, updates and progress, including risks and opportunities Understand market trends and expectations Build transparency and drive value by sharing financial and ESH performance
Industry Groups	Meetings, emails, website, reports, webinars, press releases	Project updates, best practices, standards development, climate change, transparency, ESG, environmental and social impacts	Go beyond compliance and support the development of transparent ESG standards and certification that drive continuous improvement for the industry
Governments, Regulators, Sponsoring States	Meetings, emails, reports, industry events, webinars	Project updates, governance, transparency, accountability, compliance, permitting, standardization, ESG strategy, climate change, ESG certification development	Support and implement best-in-class regulations and standards that build a high level of transparency and accountability Support training and capacity building

Under DSHMRA, NOAA is responsible for leading all formal stakeholder engagement and consultation activities associated with the permitting process. This includes publishing permit notices in the Federal Register, managing public comment periods, holding public hearings, and, if necessary, conducting adjudicatory proceedings. TMC USA will fully support this process by meeting NOAA's timelines, submitting all required application materials and documentation, and preparing accessible supporting materials to aid public understanding.

18 Capital and operating costs

18.1 Execution strategy

The execution strategy has been designed around a capital-light model that leverages existing TMC and third party offshore assets and established third party onshore processing facilities through tolling agreements, reducing upfront capital expenditure and enabling operational efficiencies and risk mitigations.

The offshore collection system comprises Production Vessels (PV) equipped with dual 15-m collectors, vertical transport and riser systems, dewatering, and storage and integrated storage and offloading infrastructure.

Each PV will be supported by one dedicated dynamic position Transfer Vessel (TV). Nodules will be offloaded from the PV to the TV at regular intervals during operations to ensure the PV storage capacity is not exceeded. Nodules will be transferred from the TV to bulk carriers (BCs) for shipment to onshore processing sites. Support vessels (SVs) will provide ancillary services such as bunkering, waste management and personnel transfers.

Commercial production is planned to commence with one PV (Hidden Gem) operating at approximately 1.5 million metric tonnes per annum (Mwmtpa) of wet nodules. This initial phase focuses on validating system performance and environmental compliance while establishing operational rhythms and routines. As part of the phased ramp-up strategy, vessel modifications—including increased compressor capacity and additional dewatering circuits—will enable scaling production to 3 Mwmtpa within two years. The fleet will expand progressively, to four PVs, collectively achieving a full offshore collection rate of up to 12 Mwmtpa over four years.

Onshore processing to produce alloy (first 18 months only), matte and manganese silicate will be via tolling agreements with Pacific Metals Company (PAMCO) in Japan. Production will initially be capped at 1.3 Mwmtpa, with plans to incorporate additional tolling capacity in Indonesia to accommodate higher volumes as offshore production increases. This approach minimizes initial capital expenditure related to new plant construction and aligns processing capabilities with offshore output growth.

The long-term processing strategy involves contracting third party construction of two refining facilities (12 Mwmt Nodule equivalent capacity) in United States which will refine the matte and produce copper cathode, nickel sulfate, and cobalt sulfate. TMC will own the new refineries with the operation and maintenance to be managed by a strategic partner.

Allseas will be the primary delivery partner responsible for engineering, procurement, fabrication, commissioning, and ongoing operations of the mining system and vessels, ensuring technical expertise and operational control. Third-party contractors will provide logistics support and bulk carrier services.

Environmental management will be embedded throughout the ramp-up, guided by comprehensive environmental baseline studies and pilot testing data from the 2022 Test Mining. A robust Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan (EMMP) will support adaptive management practices, allowing staged expansion contingent on meeting environmental thresholds and minimizing ecological impacts.

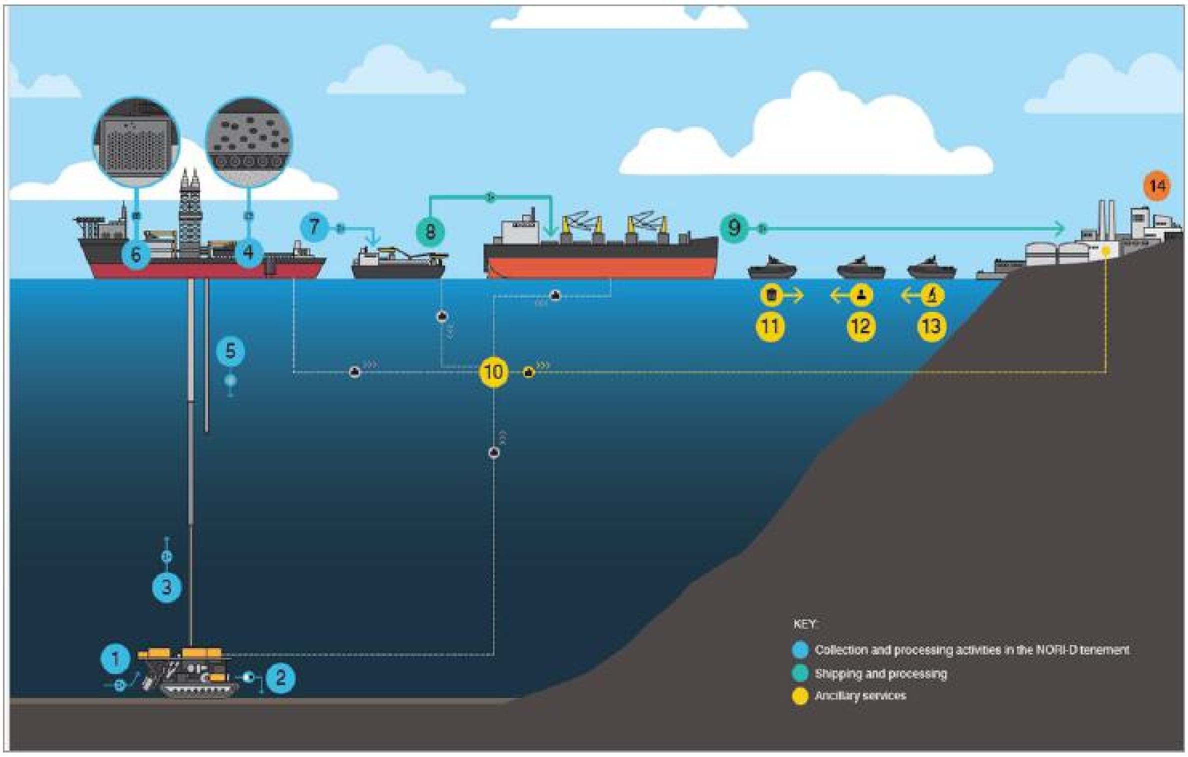
Capital expenditure will be managed as capital-light, by TMC purchasing the initial PV and TV with subsequent vessels acquired under a capital strategy where the vessels will be purchased by the contractor and capital recovered over 10 years in operating costs. TMC will pay for modifications to the SVs to support operational requirements however, the SVs will be owned and operated by third parties which will be paid for through charter agreements. BCs will be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying through standard shipping charges agreed between the parties. All processing facilities will also be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying for toll treatment per tonne of nodules. US Refining facilities will be owned by TMC and operated and maintained by strategic partners.

18.2 Detailed operations plan

Figure 18.1 illustrates the proposed project operations which underpins the operating philosophy and includes:

- Collection of nodules from seafloor
- Transportation of nodules to the surface
- Dewatering and storage of nodules
- Transhipment of nodules to transport to onshore processing facilities.

Figure 18.1 Illustration depicting proposed execution strategy



Source: TMC

A detailed description of the activity at each stage of operations is outlined below. The description number correlates to the numbered activity in Figure 18.1.

1 Collecting the nodules – collector vehicle/s collects nodules within dilute sediment/seawater slurry from the top 5 cm of the seafloor.

2 Initial separation and sizing – a separator on collector vehicles removes excess water and sediment prior to pumping via a flexible jumper to the riser.

3 Pumping to the surface – nodule slurry will be pumped to the PV on the surface through a 3-section riser with an airlift injection point between the 1st and 2nd sections to assist lift.

4 Separating the nodules and sediment – on the deck of the PV, air is released from the slurry in a cyclone separator and the slurry is passed over vibrating screens. Dewatered material >2 mm flows to the nodule product conveyor. Water and material <2 mm are further separated in a cyclone, with fines >100 µm also directed to the nodule product conveyor.

5 Return of separated water – water and fines <100 µm are collected in a holding tank and returned through the riser to a nominal depth of 2,000 m.

6 Temporary storage – the nodule product conveyor discharges to the storage holds located on the PV.

7 Transfer to TV–nodules are transferred from the storage holds via a series of conveyors, and onto the dedicated TV via conveyors on slewing and luffing booms located on both the port and starboard sides of the PV.

8 Transfer to BC –nodules are transferred from the TV from either the port or starboard side of the TV to the BC.

9 Transport to processing ports – The BC transports the nodules to onshore processing facilities.

10 Monitor and explore – Ongoing exploration and environmental monitoring activities will continue across the NORI Property and will be carried out by third party.

11 Removal of waste – a dedicated vessel will transport waste from the PVs and TVs to port to be transferred to an onshore disposal facility.

12 Refuelling – Refuelling of the PVs, TVs, and SVs for exploration, and environmental monitoring vessels.

13 Transfer of crew and supplies – A SV will transfer crew and supplies to the field.

18.3 Baseline operating assumptions

The following scope and execution assumptions underpin the CAPEX/OPEX estimates detailed in Section 18.5 and 18.6.

Offshore operations vessel numbers

- Ramp-up to 4 x PVs, each with 2 x15 m collectors and associated equipment to achieve 3.0 Mtpa mining production each for a total rate of 12 Mwmtpa
- Ramp-up to 4 x TVs with dynamic positioning and self-unloading capability
- Ramp-up to 12 x SVs for personnel, supplies and equipment change out

Transfer and shipping vessel numbers

- BC using market long term charter agreements
  - Ramp-up to 4 x Cape-sized BCs at 200k dead weight tonnes (dwt) to Indonesia per PV.
  - Ramp-up 3-5 one-way trips per year x Handymax-sized BCs at 50k dwt to US (Texas) from 2033.
  - Double-handling costs included for material handling between the Indonesian processing location and nodule supply to PAMCO.

Production schedule and capital cost

- PV 1 (PV1) – Hidden Gem; 50% capital cost recovered in operations over 10 years from PV commencement date.
- PV 2,3,4 (PV2,PV3, and PV4) – Contractor Miner strategy; 100% capital cost recovered in operations through TMC revenue over 10 years from production vessels commencement dates (year 3 PV2, year 4 PV3 and PV4).
- Total extractable resource 164.1 Mwmt (45% of total NORI D Mineral Resource).
- Life-of-mine of 19 years.

Nodule processing

- PAMCO
  - Five years of nodule processing capped at 1.3 Mwmtpa.
  - First 18 months only alloy is produced.
  - Remaining 42 months, alloy is produced and converted to matte.
- Indonesia
  - For the first five years, Indonesian RKEF plants process any nodule production that is in excess of the 1.3 Mwmtpa capacity at PAMCO.
  - From Year 6 onwards, Indonesian RKEF plants process 100% of nodule production to produce matte.
- Texas, USA
  - From Year 6 of operations, 6 Mwmtpa nodule equivalent matte product will be shipped to Texas, USA.
  - From Year 10 of operations, all matte product will be shipped to Texas, USA.
  - Matte will be converted to nickel sulfates, cobalt sulfates, and copper cathode.

18.4 CAPEX and OPEX estimate preparation

The Project capital expenditure (CAPEX) and operating expenditure (OPEX) estimates were prepared by specialists in the following areas:

- Collection CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by Allseas and TMC.
- Transfer & shipping CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by TMC.
- Contractor (offshore) was estimated by Allseas and TMC
- Consumables (offshore fuel) was estimated by Allseas and TMC
- Processing facility CAPEX OPEX was estimated by PAMCO and TMC
- Refining facility CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by a global leading consulting engineering firm.
- Corporate OPEX was estimated by TMC.

All costs in this section are presented in US dollars millions (US$ M).

Disclaimer: All capital and operating cost estimates contained in this Report are preliminary in nature and assume regulatory approvals and commercial terms that have not yet been secured. These estimates should not be relied upon for investment decision-making without additional feasibility-level validation.

18.5 CAPEX

The CAPEX estimate is reported in 30 June 2025 US$. CAPEX estimates are at a minimum PFS level of confidence and are prepared using the AACE International Class 4 estimate standards and are at a PFS level of confidence of ± 25% in accordance with S-K 1300 guidelines.

The estimate includes the cost to complete the design, procurement, fabrication, assembly, installation and commissioning associated with mining, transporting and processing nodules as per the Mine Plan. The estimate was based on Allseas, overseeing and delivering the engineering, procurement, fabrication, assembly and installation for the associated offshore infrastructure and equipment, along with the onshore operations support facilities. TMC will oversee, bulk carrier transport, onshore processing, environmental assessment and monitoring.

The estimate was derived from a combination of supplier agreements, firm quotations, budgetary pricing, historical data and allowances. The estimates were based on a number of fundamental assumptions, such as process flow diagrams, general arrangements, material take offs (MTOs), scope definition and work breakdown structures.

The Project CAPEX estimate of US$4,971M comprising of US$544.8M for Production Vessel #1 and associated costs (System #1), inclusive of Allseas credit, is summarized in Table 18.1 and US$4,426M for two 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent refining facilities in the U.S., is summarized in .

Table 18.1 Project CAPEX system #1 summary

Description	**US$ M**
Production Vessel	468.4
Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carriers	89.6
Support Vessel	15.2
Processing	-
Operations Facilities initial setup	2.3
Direct Subtotal	**575.5**
Professional Services	59.4
Owners Cost	44.6
Indirect Subtotal	**104.0**
Contingency	101.4
Escalation	53.3
Allseas Credit	(289.3)
Total Project CAPEX	**544.8**

Note: including escalation

Table 18.2 Project CAPEX US refining summary

Description	**US$ M**
General/Infrastructure	144.8
Port Facilities	281.1
Hydrometallurgy	1,027.7
Direct Subtotal	**1,453.7**
Indirect Costs	477.2
Contingency	282.2
Refining Facility Capital	**2,213.0**
Number of 6 Mwtpa refining facility	**2**
Total Project CAPEX	**4,426.0**

Item	**Total**	**PP Year 1**	**PP Year 2**	**Year 0**	**Year 1**	**Year 2-4**	**Year 5-19**	**Year 20-29**
Project CAPEX	4,971	195	229	102	107	676	3,662	

Note: PP = pre-production

Note: including escalation

18.5.1 Production vessel

The Production Vessel #1 (“Hidden Gem”) CAPEX was estimated in conjunction with Allseas and totals US$468.4M exclusive of Allseas capital contribution. The Production Vessel #1 CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.3, and comprises:

Table 18.3 Production vessel CAPEX

Description	**US$ M**
Vessel	99.4
Collector 1	38.7
Collector 2	38.7
Umbilical 1	6.0
Umbilical 2	6.0
LARS 1	25.8
LARS 2	24.8
Riser & compressor spread	156.3
Spares	24.1
Indirect	42.0
Commissioning	6.5
Production Vessel Total	**468.4**

Vessel costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

· Hidden Gem Reactivation:

— Derived from vessel punchlist of outstanding maintenance works.

· Hidden Gem Modifications:

— Fabrication and outfitting storage tanks, riser storage bay adaptation and hopper tanks.

· Offloading System:

— Two cargo diverters and associated ducting, two receiving feeder, belt conveyors, two reversible thwartship shuttling transfer conveyors, and four reversible longitudinal shuttle conveyors. Supply includes structural, mechanical, hydraulic, and electrical systems.

· Nodule Processing:

— Two single deck primary screens, primary hydrocyclone, two dewatering screens, and secondary cyclone.

· Ancillary facilities:

— Installation and commissioning for maintenance, medical and environmental facilities.

Collector #1 and #2 costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

· Structural:

— Shop detailing, supply of main structure, secondary steel, coating etc.

· Propulsion:

— Tracks assemblies including sprockets and thrusters.

· Pick up:

— Coanda nozzles assembles and associated pipe work.

· Processing:

— Hopper, buffer tank, diffuser, pumps and cleaning jets.

· Transfer:

— Jumper hose coupling mechanism.

· Buoyancy:

— Buoyancy blocks including shaping premium.

· Hydraulic:

— HPU, piping and fittings.

· Electrical and Instrumentation:

— Sensors, epods, emotors and subsea positioning equipment.

· Control and Automation:

— Control room equipment and software.

Umbilical #1 and #2 costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

· Umbilical:

— Supply duty umbilical, spooling and electrical terminations on Hidden Gem.

LARS #1 and #2 costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

· LARS:

— Tower structural steel, coating, hydraulic systems, umbilical winch motor, umbilical winch skidding actuator, cursor winch, arm actuator, skidding system actuator, snubber cardan actuator, snubber vertical actuator, snubber rotation motor, snubber primary lock, snubber secondary lock, electrical and control systems.

Riser & compressor spread costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

· First production riser:

— Riser umbilical, riser pipe first 1,500 m, Riser pipe >1,500 m 14-inch carrier pipe, connector forgings, joints, coatings, coating connectors, riser assembly, strakes, running, pulling and protection fins, flanges, spider, hang off joint and connections for air and injection lines.

· Infield upgrades riser:

— Replacement riser pipe >1,500 m sections 18 or 16-inch carrier pipe, connector forgings, joints, coatings, coating connectors, riser assembly, strakes, running, pulling and protection fins, flanges, spider, hang off joint and connections for air and injection lines.

- First production compressor spread:
  - Modularised container E-drillair, E-booster and compressor rooms up to 2 Mtpa throughput capacity (including redundancy).
- Infield upgrades compressor spread:
  - Additional modularised container E-drillair, E-booster and compressor rooms up to 4 Mtpa throughput capacity(including redundancy).

Critical spares costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

- Umbilical - complete spare on production vessel.
- Jumper hose - complete spare on production vessel.
- Riser sections – 500 m spare sections and fittings.

Indirect costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

- Layup costs associated with Hidden Gem in layup from transit to China to First Production.

Commissioning is based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

- Production Vessel wet commissioning and performance testing.

18.5.2 Transfer vessel/bulk carriers

The Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carrier CAPEX was estimated in conjunction with Allseas and other third-party vendors and totals US$89.6M. The Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carrier CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.4, and comprises:

Table 18.4 Transfer vessel/bulk carrier CAPEX

Description	US$ M
Transfer Vessel	76.9
Bulk Carrier	12.8
Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carrier Total	**89.6**

Transfer Vessel cost are based on the Allseas estimates/third party quotes and include the following:

- Purchase:
  - Second hand Panamax vessel with 50,000 DWT capacity.
- Modifications:
  - Dynamic positioning (4x thrusters, 4x E-motor, 4x VFD, Control room, 3x 5MW genset).
  - Offloading System
  - Hull modifications for dynamic positioning (DP) and offloading system

Bulk carrier costs are based on third party quotes and include hire costs for infield commissioning and performance testing of PV #1. Bulk Carriers will utilise market bulk carrier agreements and included in OPEX.

18.5.3 Support vessels

The Support Vessels CAPEX was estimated in conjunction with Allseas totals US$15.2M exclusive of Allseas capital contribution. The Support Vessels CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.5, and comprises:

Table 18.5 Support Vessels CAPEX

Description	US$ M
Support Vessel #1	8.2
Support Vessel #2	3.5
Support Vessel #3	3.5
Support Vessel Total	**15.2**

Support Vessel #1 costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

- Facilities required for lodging
- General facilities, transit and mobilisation

Support Vessel #2 and #3 costs are based on the Allseas estimates and include the following:

- General facilities, transit and mobilisation

18.5.4 Processing

No processing CAPEX is included in the CAPEX estimate. Processing utilises existing RKEF facilities through tolling agreement and included in the OPEX estimate, including capital recovery rates.

18.5.5 Operations Facilities initial setup

Operations facilities initial setup CAPEX of US$2.3M is based on historical information. The operations facilities initial setup CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.6, and comprises:

Table 18.6 Operations Facilities CAPEX

Description	US$ M
San Diego/Long Beach - Offshore Support Facility	1.2
USA - In Country Operations Facility	1.2
Operations Facilities Total	**2.3**

Operations facilities initial setup includes:

- General facilities, laydown area setup, warehouse facilities, pre-production initial lease costs during setup period.

18.5.6 Professional Services

Professional services CAPEX was estimated by Allseas and totals US$59.4M exclusive of Allseas capital contribution. The professional services CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.7, and comprises:

Table 18.7 Professional Services CAPEX

Description	US$ M
Allseas Engineering	18.6
Allseas Project Management	40.9
Professional Services Total	**59.4**

Professional Services includes:

- Project Management – built up from staffing plans
- Engineering – total hours driven by engineering deliverables and brought back to staffing plan to show position requirements

18.5.7 Project owners cost

Project owners cost CAPEX was estimated by TMC and totals US$44.6M. The project owners cost CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.8, and comprises:

Table 18.8 Project owners cost CAPEX

Description	US$ M
Onshore	17.3
Offshore Campaigns	6.8
Environmental	5.7
Mine Plan and Project Management	14.8
Project Owners Cost Total	**44.6**

Project owners cost includes

- Onshore – various test works, process development, technical consultants, R&D.
- Offshore Campaigns – pre-production offshore campaign costs.
- Environmental – various environmental vendors, consultants, deliverables.
- Mine plan and project management – Mine planning, test works, technical consultants, etc.

18.5.8Contingency

Contingency was applied to:

- Project CAPEX System #1 CAPEX Table 18.1, averaging 14.9% of total base estimate totalling US$101.4M.
- Project CAPEX US Refining CAPEX Table 18.2, averaging 15.0% of total base estimate totalling US$282.2M per 6 Mwtpa nodule equivalent US facility or US$564.3M for 12 Mwtpa nodule equivalent.

18.5.9 Escalation

Escalation is stated as a percentage at 3% and applied to costs per annum on the identified centroid totalling US$53.3M

18.5.10 Allseas capital contribution

At an estimate line-item level, costs under Allseas scope attracts a 50% CAPEX contribution under a strategic agreement. This Allseas capital contribution totals (US$289.3M).

18.5.11 System #2, #3, #4

Total estimate for System #2, #3, #4 is utilised to determine the payback costs under contractor miner strategy to be recovered over the first ten years of operating and is included in OPEX Collection Cost.

The components of each system can be summarised as per the below:

- Production Vessel - Samsung 10000 with 25,000 DWT capacity.
- 2 x 15 m collectors.
- 1 x Transfer Vessel - DP Panamax with 50,000 DWT capacity:
- 3 x Supply Vessel.
- 4 x Bulk Carriers (at peak) – Capesize with 200,000 DWT capacity.

The System #2, #3, #4 CAPEX estimate of US$1,454.2M per system, is summarized in Table 18.9.

Table 18.9 System #2, #3, #4 recovered summary

Description	**US$ M**
Production Vessel	672.4
Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carriers	89.6
Supply Vessel	15.2
Direct Subtotal	**777.2**
Indirects	486.6
Contingency	190.4
System #2, #3, #4 Recovered Capital per system	**1,454.2**

Note: Bulk carrier CAPEX for time charter for commissioning/performance testing of each system only

18.5.12 Refining facility

Refining Facility CAPEX was estimated by a global leading consulting engineering firm and totals US$4,426M. The refining facility CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.10.Table 18.10, and comprises:

Table 18.10 Refining facility summary

Description	**US$ M**
Site Development & Roads	12.7
Power Supply and Distribution	12.7
Utilities	71.9
Process Control and Communications	17.4
Non-Process Buildings	19.7
Mobile Equipment	10.4
Port Facilities	281.1
Converter Aisle Sulphidation	25.3
Matte Receiving and Handling	33.8
Leaching & Purification	200.5
Copper EW	156.1
Cobalt SX	99.0
Cobalt Purification	98.0
Nickel SX	144.5
Crystallization & Product Packaging	153.9
Reagents & Utilities	116.6
Indirect Costs	477.2
Contingency	282.2
Total Cost per 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent	**2,213.0**
Number of 6 Mwtpa refining facility	2
Total Project CAPEX	**4,426.0**

18.5.13 Sustaining CAPEX

Sustaining capital cost is based on production vessel class survey intervals, system design life, major overhaul assumptions and CAPEX estimated cost for each system component and totals US$1,550.0M. The sustaining CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.11, and comprises:

Table 18.11 Sustaining CAPEX summary

Sustaining Capital	**UOM**	**Qty**	**US$ M**
Collector Design life	Years	10	
Collector major overhaul	Years	5	

Collector x 2 CAPEX	1	Lot	115.8
Umbilical Design life	Years	5	
Umbilical x 2 CAPEX	1	Lot	17.5
Compressor Design life	Years	10	
Compressor major overhaul	Years	5	
Compressor CAPEX	1	Lot	43.5
Riser System Design life (riser considered consumable)	Years	5	
Riser System CAPEX	1	Lot	131.9
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick Design life	Years	30	
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick service period	Years	5	
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick CAPEX	1	Lot	189.1
Class Survey Intervals	Years	5	
Class Survey Duration	Months	6	
Estimated Total Sustaining Capital every 5 years per vessel (Class survey)	1	Lot	155.0
Total Class surveys across four PVs LoM	Units	10	1550.0

18.5.14 Closure CAPEX

There are no permanent facilities that require removal or rehabilitation at the cessation of the NORI Area D mining operations. The estimate assumes environmental monitoring will be required for
a 10-year period post mining operations at the NORI Area D tenement.

Closure CAPEX is based on historical actual cost for environmental monitoring including all vessel hire, equipment hire, environmental personnel, sample and imagery collection and processing of data, totalling US$115.0M. The Closure CAPEX is summarized in Table 18.12, and comprises:

Table 18.12 Closure CAPEX summary

Closure Capital	**US$ M**
Vessel Supply	6.8
Mobilisation	1.2
Other Cost	0.4
Fuel	0.9
Onboard personnel/Equipment	0.9
Other Cost	0.2
Third Party Cost	1.1
Total Closure Capital per year	11.5
Total Closure capital 10-year post mining operations	115.0

18.5.15 CAPEX exclusions

Exclusions to the CAPEX estimates include:

- Project costs incurred pre-July 2025
- No provision is made for the handling and disposal of pre-existing contaminated or hazardous materials.
- Any cost or schedule impact due to the discovery of archaeological artefacts.
- All taxes (theses are captured in the financial model)
- Foreign currency exchange fluctuations
- Impending or future legislative changes.
- No costs for force majeure events such as fire, lightning, explosion, flood, earthquake, storm, cyclone, action of the elements, acts of God, natural disaster, radioactive contamination, toxic or dangerous chemical contamination, epidemic or force of nature; riots, civil commotion, malicious damage, sabotage, acts of a public enemy, acts of terrorists, war (declared or undeclared) or revolution; action or inaction by a Government Agency (including denial, refusal or failure to grant any Approval following expiry of the period for the granting of such Approval specified in the schedule; strikes, lockouts, industrial and / or labour disputes and/or difficulties, work bans, blockades or picketing by personnel, breakdown or failure of any facilities, machinery or equipment caused by the items above or unavailability of essential equipment, goods, supplies or services.
- TMC subsidiary transfer pricing excluded
- Post FOB at processing plants CIF (cost, insurance, freight) and product sales cost
- Nodule insurance costs

18.6 OPEX

The OPEX estimate is reported in 30 June 2025 US$. OPEX estimates are at a minimum PFS level of confidence and are prepared using the AACE Class 4 estimate standards and are at a PFS level of confidence of ± 25% in accordance with S-K 1300 guidelines.

OPEX is summarised below for the Life of Mine (LOM) and average unit costs per tonne of wet (wmt) nodules collected over the LOM:

- LOM collection costs are estimated at US$12,343.6M and average US$75.2/wmt of nodules.
- LOM transfer and shipping costs are estimated at US$3,070.7M and average US$18.7/wmt of nodules.
- LOM contractor (offshore) costs are estimated at US$1,855.1M and average US$11.3/wmt of nodules.
- LOM consumables (offshore fuel) costs are estimated at US$3,848.3M and average US$23.4/wmt of nodules.
- LOM processing costs are estimated at US$13,621.8M and average US$83/wmt of nodules.
- LOM refining costs are estimated at US$3,253.7M and average US$19.8/wmt of nodules.
- LOM G&A costs are estimated at US$1,984.6M and average US$12.1/wmt of nodules.

Table 18.13 OPEX Summary

OPEX Component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**LOM (%)**
Collection Costs	12,343.6	30.9%
Transfer & Shipping Costs	3,070.7	7.7%
Contractor (offshore) Costs	1,855.1	4.6%
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	3,848.3	9.6%
Processing Cost	13,621.8	34.1%
Refining Cost	3,253.7	8.1%
Corporate Cost	1,984.6	5.0%
Total OPEX	**39,977.8**	**100%**

Table 18.14 OPEX Unit Cost US$/wmt Summary

OPEX Component	**Average LOM (US$/wmt)**
Collection Costs	75.2
Transfer & Shipping Costs	18.7
Contractor (offshore) Costs	11.3
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	23.4
Processing Cost	83.0
Refining Cost	19.8
Corporate Cost	12.1
Total OPEX	**243.6**

18.6.1 Collection Cost

The Collection Cost OPEX totals US$12,343.6M or US$75.2/wmt. The Collection Cost OPEX is summarized in Table 18.15, and comprises:

Table 18.15 Collection Cost OPEX

OPEX Component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**Average LOM US$/wmt**
Production Vessel	5,299.9	32.3
Production support	543.3	3.3
Supply vessel	1,701.5	10.4
System 2 Capital Recovery	1,599.6	9.7
System 3 Capital Recovery	1,599.6	9.7
System 4 Capital Recovery	1,599.6	9.7
Collection Costs Total	**12,343.6**	**75.2**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Contractor operated.
- Production vessel (Hidden Gem) cost was provided by Allseas and includes:
  - Production vessel day rate provided by Allseas.
  - Labour rates for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.

  - Travel costs are estimated as an allowance.

— Other support costs including, ROVs, maintenance allowances etc.

· Production Support – Allseas onshore salaries for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.

· Supply vessel cost was provided by Allseas:

— Labour rates for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.

— Travel costs are estimated as an allowance.

— Other support costs including maintenance allowances etc.

· System #2, #3 and #4 – contractor mining capital recovery as per Table 18.9 and cost of working capital (10%) for first 10 years of production of each production vessel.

18.6.2 Transfer and Shipping Costs

The Transfer and Shipping Cost OPEX totals US$3,070.7 M or US$18.7/wmt. The transfer and shipping cost OPEX is summarized in Table 18.16, and comprises:

Table 18.16 Transfer and Shipping OPEX

OPEX Component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**Average LOM (US$/wmt)**
Transfer vessel CCZ	1,045.0	6.4
Bulk Carrier CCZ to INDO - Capesize	1,713.1	10.4
Bulk Carrier INDO to Texas - Handymax	161.9	1.0
Bulk Carrier INDO to Japan - Handymax	132.1	0.8
INDO inbound Handling	18.5	0.1
Transfer and Shipping Costs Total	**3,070.7**	**18.7**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

· Transfer vessel CCZ:

— Labour rates for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.

— Travel costs are estimated as an allowance.

— Other support costs including maintenance allowances etc.

· Bulk Carrier CCZ to INDO – Capesize:

— Market pricing used for all in day rate.

— Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.

· Bulk Carrier INDO to Texas – Handymax:

— Market pricing used for all in day rate.

— based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.

— Loading/unloading of matte product.

— Panama Canal fees.

— MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.

— Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.

· Bulk Carrier INDO to PAMCO – Handymax:

— Market pricing used for all in day rate.

— based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.

— Loading/unloading of nodule.

— MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.

— Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.

· INDO inbound Handling:

— Loading/unloading of nodules while INDO is not processing nodules (Year 0 - Year 2).

18.6.3 Contractor (offshore) Costs

The Contractor (offshore) Costs OPEX totals US$1,855.1 M or US$11.3/wmt. The Contractor (offshore) costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.17Table 18.17, and comprises:

Table 18.17 Contractor (offshore) costs OPEX

OPEX Component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
Allseas Performance Incentive Payment	1,565.8	9.5
Allseas PV1 Capital Contribution Recovery	289.3	1.8
Contractor (offshore) Costs Total	**1,855.1**	**11.3**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Allseas Performance Incentive
  - Performance incentive for all system cost attributed to Allseas scope
- Allseas PV1 capital contribution cost attributed to Allseas scope, as per the contracting strategy.

18.6.4 Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs

The consumables (offshore fuel) Costs OPEX totals US$3,848.3 M or US$23.4/wmt. The consumables (offshore fuel) Costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.18, and comprises:

Table 18.18 Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs

OPEX Component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
Fuel - Production Vessel	658.2	4.0
Fuel - Collectors	1,012.7	6.2
Fuel - Transfer vessel	373.0	2.3
Fuel - Supply Vessel	263.3	1.6
Fuel - Bulk Carrier CCZ to INDO - Capesize	1,541.0	9.4
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs Total	**3,848.3**	**23.4**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Fuel - Production Vessel
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by Allseas.

- Fuel - Production Collectors (Compressor Spread)
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by Allseas
- Fuel – Transfer Vessel
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.
- Fuel - Supply Vessel
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.
- Fuel - Bulk Carrier CCZ to INDO - Capesize
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.

18.6.5 Processing Costs

The processing costs OPEX totals US$13,622.8 M or US$83.0/wmt. The processing costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.19, and comprises:

Table 18.19 Processing Costs

OPEX Component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
PAMCO Alloy Toll Charge	241.0	1.5
PAMCO Matte Toll Charge	764.0	4.7
INDO Matte Toll Charge	12,616.8	80.0
Processing Cost Total	**13,621.8**	**83.0**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- PAMCO Alloy Tolling Charge - All in tolling charge provided by PAMCO including:
  - Fixed processing costs.
  - Contracting and unloading costs.
  - Raw material, smelting and reduction costs.
  - Consumables including electricity, coal and fuel oil.
  - Fixed plant capital recovery fee.
  - Profit.
- PAMCO Matte Tolling Charge – all in tolling charge estimated by TMC from the PAMCO alloy estimates with assumed, factored or known processing increases including electricity consumption, sulphur requirements, and plant capital upgrades for matte production. Benchmarked against CA engineering and provided by a global leading consulting engineering firm's operating cost estimate.

- INDO Matte Tolling Charge – All in tolling charge estimated by SMM Information & Technology Co., Ltd processing cost study as detailed in Table 15.4. Benchmarked against known/published nickel pig iron processing cost in Indonesia. Nickel pig iron processing is closely related to nodule processing for TMC's product.

18.6.6 Refining Costs

The refining costs OPEX totals US$3,253.7M or US$19.8/wmt. The Refining Costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.20, and comprises:

Table 18.20 Refining Costs

OPEX Component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
US Refining Fixed Cost	1,082.5	6.6
US Refining Variable Cost	1,715.9	10.5
US Financing Cost	455.4	2.8
Refining Cost Total	**3,253.7**	**19.8**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- US refining fixed cost was provided by a global leading consulting engineering firm and includes:
  - Plant labour including supervisors, engineers, laboratory, site workers and operators
  - Plant equipment, materials, supplies, first fills
  - Maintenance materials
  - Plant management
- US refining variable cost was provided by a global leading consulting engineering firm and includes:
  - Reagents including sulphuric acid, sodium hydroxide, anhydrous liquid ammonia, sulphur dioxide, oxygen, nickel and cobalt extractants, SX diluent, copper IX resin, granular activated carbon and flocculant and coagulant.
  - Energy including electricity, natural gas, diesel.
  - Water including makeup water acquisition, pretreated water, demineralized water
  - Other consumables including effluent treatment, manganese oxidation scrubber consumables, filtration consumables and additives, product packaging
- US capital financing costs includes:
  - First 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent plant capital cost totals US$2,213M
  - 60% of capital cost financed through debt
  - Debt finance with real interest rate of 8%
  - Free Cashflow to debt repayment 20%
  - Total financing cost $455.4M

18.6.7 Corporate Costs

The corporate costs OPEX totals US$1,984.6 M or US$12.1/wmt. The Corporate Costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.21, and comprises:

Table 18.21 Corporate Costs

OPEX Component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
Overhead - Corporate	475.0	2.9
Campaign/EMMP	569.6	3.5
Offshore operations support	164.3	1.0
OPEX Contingency	775.7	4.7
Corporate Cost Total	**1,984.6**	**12.1**

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Overhead – corporate cost estimated by TMC based on actual and projected overhead cost.
- Campaign/EMMP cost estimated by TMC based on actual campaign and EMMP costs including:
  - Research vessel and crew.
  - AUV and ROV's.
  - Environmental monitoring equipment and personnel.
  - Fuel.
- Offshore operations support facilities cost estimated by TMC based on historical knowledge and actual costs of operations support facilities including:
  - Contractor personal – office and site.
  - TMC personal.
  - Service contracts - waste, security etc.
  - Office/laydown/warehouse lease costs.
  - Office/laydown/warehouse material, equipment, supplies.
- OPEX contingency.

19 Economic analysis

19.1 Cautionary statement regarding forward-looking information

The results of the economic analysis discussed in this section includes forward looking information and statements. The project team as the author of this chapter, provides the following cautionary statement regarding forward looking information.

TMC is subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. The results of the financial and economic analyses discussed in this section represent forward-looking statements within the meaning of applicable securities laws relating to TMC. These statements by their nature involve substantial risks and uncertainties. Statements involving the foregoing results of financial and economic analyses are forward-looking statements. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, words such as "may", "anticipate", "intend", "could", "estimate", or "continue" or the negative or other comparable terminology are intended to identify forward-looking statements. Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize or should the underlying assumptions prove incorrect, actual outcomes and results could differ materially from those indicated in the forward-looking statements.

Information that is forward-looking includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Mineral Reserve that was modified from Mineral Resource.
- Assumed commodity prices and exchange rates.
- Proposed mine production plan.
- Projected mining and process recovery rates.
- Assumptions as to mining dilution.
- Assumptions as to geotechnical requirements for collector on the seabed.
- Proposed sustaining costs and operating costs.

- TMC's intentions on payback of LCR royalty.
- Assumptions as to closure costs and closure requirements.
- Assumptions as to environmental, permitting, and social risks.

Additional risks to the forward-looking information include:

- Changes to the costs of production from what is assumed.
- Unexpected variations in quantity of mineralized material, grade or recovery rates.
- Geotechnical considerations during mining being different from what was assumed.
- Failure of mining methods to operate as anticipated.
- Failure of plant, equipment or processes to operate as anticipated.
- Changes to assumptions as to the availability of electrical power, and the power rates used in the operating cost estimates and financial analysis.
- Unrecognized environmental risks.
- Unanticipated closure expenses.
- Ability to maintain social license to operate.
- Accidents, labour disputes and other risks of the mining industry.
- Changes to interest rates.
- Changes to tax rates.

Other key considerations when reviewing the content within this chapter:

- Calendar years used in the financial analysis are provided for conceptual purposes only.

- Notional model start date of 1 July 2025 and annual discounting combined with the assumption of mid-period cash flows results in effective model years commencing 1 July and ending 30 June.
- Totals may not reflect the sum of table contents due to the effects of rounding.
- Environmental approval must still be obtained in support of operations.

19.2 Methodology used

An economic model was developed to estimate annual pre-tax and post-tax cash flows and sensitivities of the Project based on a 8% discount rate. Tax estimates involve complex variables that can only be accurately calculated during operations and, as such, the after-tax results are approximations. The economic analysis was run in real, ungeared, post-tax terms.

19.3 Economic model parameters

The economic analysis was performed used the following key assumptions:

- Production plan as per provided Resource and mining inventories and maximum run lengths.
- Cost estimates with no inflation of escalation attributed.
- Valuation date of 1 July 2025.
- Commercial production starting on October 1, 2027 (Year 0).
- LOM of 19 years.
- All cash flows discounted at an 8% discount rate.
- Products are assumed to be sold in the same year they are produced.

19.4 Total capital costs

The Project CAPEX estimate of US$4,918M (excluding escalation) comprising of US$492M for Production Vessel #1 and associated costs (System #1), inclusive of Allseas credit, is summarized in Table 19.1 and US$4,426M for two 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent refining facilities in the US, is summarized in Table 19.2.

Table 19.1 Project capital system #1 costs

Description	US$ M
Production Vessel	469
Transfer Vessel/Bulk Carriers	90
Support Vessel	15
Processing/Refining	-

Operations Facilities initial setup	2
Direct Subtotal	**576**
Professional Services	59
Owners Cost	45
Indirect Subtotal	**104**
Contingency	101
Allseas Credit	(289)
Total Project CAPEX	**492**

Table 19.2 Project capital us refining costs

Description	US$ M
General/Infrastructure	144.8
Port Facilities	281.1
Hydrometallurgy	1,027.7
Direct Subtotal	**1,453.7**
Indirect Costs	477.2
Contingency	282.2
Refining Facility Capital	**2,213.0**
Number of 6 Mwtpa refining facility	**2**
Total Project CAPEX	**4,426.0**

19.5 Total sustaining costs

The Sustaining Cost estimate of US$1,550M during operations as detailed in Chapter 18 of this document.

19.6 Total closure costs

The Sustaining Cost estimate of US$115M as detailed in Chapter 18 of this document.

19.7 Total operating costs

The Project OPEX estimate of US$39,978M, is summarized in Table 19.3.

Table 19.3 Total operating costs

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM (US$/wmt)
Collection Costs	12,344	75.2
Transfer & Shipping Costs	3,071	18.7
Contractor (offshore) Costs	1,855	11.3
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	3,848	23.4
Processing Cost	13,622	83.0
Refining Cost	3,254	19.8
Corporate Cost	1,985	12.1
Total OPEX	**39,978**	**243.6**

19.8 Commodity prices

Metal and sulfate price assumptions for Nickel, Cobalt and Copper were provided by Benchmark Mineral Intelligence as of 30 June 2025. Manganese metal price assumption was provided by CRU Consulting as of the 2 May 2025. Both sources provided long-term price forecasts based on a market analysis of supply and demand at the time of this report.

The average LOM commodity prices is summarized in Table 19.4.

Table 19.4 Average LOM commodity prices

Commodity	UOM	Price per UOM
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,295.3
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	56,116.9
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,440.1
Manganese Price	US$/t	545
Manganese Silicate Price	US$/dmtu	5.45
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,632.9
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	55,198.3

19.9 Recovery rates

Recovery assumptions were provided by Hatch, which performed a series of mass energy balance recoveries calculation. The recovery rates are summarized in Table 19.5.

Table 19.5 Recovery rates

Recovery	Value (%)
Nickel Recovery Nodule to Alloy	96.9
Cobalt Recovery Nodule to Alloy	93.1
Copper Recovery Nodule to Alloy	93.6
Nickel Recovery Nodule to Matte	94.8
Cobalt Recovery Nodule to Matte	77.5
Copper Recovery Nodule to Matte	86.4
Manganese Recovery to Mn Silicate	98.9
Nickel Recovery - Nodule to Sulfate	94.6
Cobalt Recovery - Nodule to Sulfate	77.2
Copper Recovery - Nodule to Cathode	86.2

19.10 Payable terms

Metal payable term assumptions were provided by CRU Consulting. This provides long-term payable terms forecasts based on the market analysis of supply and demand. The average LOM payable terms are summarized in Table 19.6.

Table 19.6 LOM Average Payable Terms

Recovery	Value (%)
Nickel Payable Factor for Alloy	65.0
Nickle Payable Factor for Matte	80.0
Cobalt Payable Factor for Alloy	44.1
Cobalt Payable Factor for Matte	60.0
Copper Payable Factor for Alloy	60.0
Copper Payable Factor for Matte	70.0

19.11 Royalty/continuity payments

The economic model assumes that the TMC will be subject to two royalty/payment structures, as per below.

19.11.1 Nauru Continuity Benefits

The structure for the Nauru Continuity Benefits payment is based on the NORI Sponsorship Agreement. The Nauru Continuity Benefits is based on the payment schedule in Table 19.7. An annual US$0.5M administrative fee is allowed.

Table 19.7 Nauru Continuity Benefits Payment Schedule

Item	US$ M
Year 1	1.0
Year 2	2.0
Year 3	4.0
Year 4	8.0
Year 5+	10.0

Total undiscounted payments to Nauru are approximately US$194M over the LOM.

19.11.2 Low Carbon Royalty (LCR)

In February 2023, TMC entered into a strategic partnership with Low Carbon Royalties Inc. (LCR), granting LCR a 2.0% gross overriding royalty on future revenue from TMC's NORI project in exchange for a 35% equity stake in LCR and $5 million in cash.

The LCR royalty is based on a percentage of total revenue, starting at a rate of 2% with two opportunities for buyback reducing the percentage value. The PFS assumes the first buy back occurs in 2030 with zero cost of buyback reducing the percentage to 1% and the second buyback occurring in 2031 with zero cost of buyback reducing the percentage to 0.5%.

Total undiscounted royalty payments to LCR are approximately US$465M over the LOM.

19.12 Taxes

It has been assumed that NORI Area D Project will be subject to a single taxation structure. The USA Federal taxation rate and structure assumed in the economic model is as follows:

- Federal taxation rate at 21%.
- Depreciation based on straight-line basis, based on the assumed system design life.
- Total undiscounted taxation is approximately US$5,645M over the LOM.

19.13 Economic analysis

The economic analysis was performed assuming an 8% discount rate, representing the registrant's assumption of the Project weighted average cost of capital (WACC). Compared to the 9% discount rate used in the 2021 Initial Assessment for NORI Area D, the discount rate of 8% reflects the registrant's view that the achievement of de-risking milestones on the project in the last several years has lowered the WACC for the Project. De-risking milestones include:

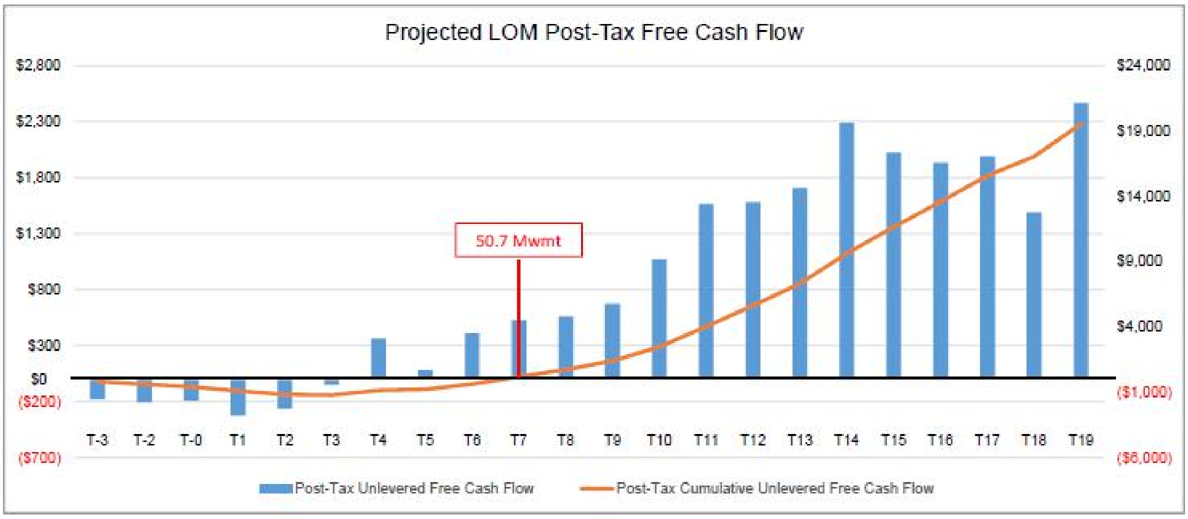
· Successful pilot collection system trial (Test Mining) in 2022 in which over 3,000 wet tonnes of nodules were lifted to the surface.

· Improved confidence in the permitting pathway through the existing U.S. regulatory regime.

The post-tax net present value (NPV) discounted at 8% is US$5,508M; the internal rate of return (IRR) is 26.8%; and payback period (production) is 7 years.

A summary of forecast Project economics is shown graphically in Figure 19.1 and listed in Table 19.8.

Figure 19.1 Forecast Project post-tax free cash flow (US$ M)



Source: TMC

Note: PP = pre-production

Table 19.8 Summary of forecast Project economics

Area	Item	Units	LOM Total/Avg.
General	Nickel Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	20,295.3
	Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	56,116.9
	Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	11,440.1
	Manganese Price	Avg. US$/t	545.5
	Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	Avg. US$/t	21,632.9
	Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	Avg. US$/t	55,198.3
	Mine Life	Years	19.0
	Total Ore Collected (wet)	Mt	164.1
Production (Nickel)	Resource Grade	%	1.40%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,654.2
	Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	96.91%
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%
	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%
	Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	18.1
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1,549.9
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	1,095.7
	Payable Factor for Alloy	%	65.00%
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%
	Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	11.7
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	361.8
	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	1,095.7
	Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	31,449.5

Area	Item	Units	LOM Total/Avg.
Production (Cobalt)	Resource Grade	%	0.14%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	165.4
	Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.06%
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%

	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%
	Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	1.7
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	126.8
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	89.4
	Payable Factor for Alloy	%	44.15%
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%
	Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	0.8
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	22.2
	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	89.4
	Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	6,465.7
Production (Copper)	Resource Grade	%	1.14%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,347.0
	Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.55%
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%
	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%
	Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	14.2
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1,151.1
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	813.0
	Payable Factor for Alloy	%	59.98%
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%
	Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	8.3
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	235.1
	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	813.0
	Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	12,090.9
Production (Manganese)	Resource Grade	%	31.15%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	36,806.5
	Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%
	Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	36,401.7
	Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	36,401.7
	Managese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	19,856.1
Operating Cost	Collection Costs	US$/Wet Tonne	75.2
	Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$/Wet Tonne	18.7
	Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$/Wet Tonne	11.3
	Consumables (fuel) Costs (offshore)	US$/Wet Tonne	23.4
	Processing Cost	US$/Wet Tonne	83.0
	Refining Cost	US$/Wet Tonne	19.8
	Corporate Cost	US$/Wet Tonne	12.1
Royalty Cost	Nauru Continuity Payment	US$/Wet Tonne	1.2
	LCR Royalty	US$/Wet Tonne	2.8

Area	Item	Units	LOM Total/Avg.
Capital Cost	Project Capital (excluding escalation)	US$ M	4,917.6
	Sustaining Capital	US$ M	1,550.0
	Closure Cost	US$ M	115.3
Financials	Total Revenue	US$ M	72,958
	Post-Tax NPV8	US$ M	5,508
	Post-Tax NPV0	US$ M	19,922
	Project IRR (Real Terms)	%	26.8%
	Project Payback – Production	Years	7
	EBITDA	US$ M	32,321
	EBITDA per tonne (dry nodules)	US$/Wet Tonne	274
	Total Project Capital	US$ M	4,918

A cashflow on an annualized basis is provided in Table 19.9.

Table 19.9 Project Cash Flow on an Annualized basis

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP1 2025	PP2 2026	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029
Nickel Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	20,295.3	--	--	18,833	18,833	18,833
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	56,116.9	--	--	34,172	34,172	34,172
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	11,440.1	--	--	11,317	11,317	11,317
Manganese Price[2]	US$/t	545.5	--	--	529	529	529
Manganese Price[2]	US$/DMTU	5.45	--	--	5.29	5.29	5.29
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)[2]	US$/t	21,632.9	--	--	19,623	19,623	19,623

Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)[2]	US$/t	55,198.3	--	--	31,347	31,347	31,347
Revenue	US$ M	72,957.8	--	--	53.4	276.2	617.7
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(39,977.8)	--	--	(154.8)	(478.7)	(642.8)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(659.1)	(0.6)	(0.6)	(2.0)	(7.5)	(17.3)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	32,321.0	(0.6)	(0.6)	(103.4)	(210.0)	(42.4)
Depreciation	US$ M	(5,592.2)	--	(11.0)	(23.1)	(30.0)	(35.2)
EBIT	US$ M	26,728.8	(0.6)	(11.6)	(126.5)	(240.0)	(77.7)
Taxation	US$ M	(5,645.3)	--	--	--	--	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	21,083.4	(0.6)	(11.6)	(126.5)	(240.0)	(77.7)
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	19,922.1	(176.3)	(207.0)	(191.9)	(325.5)	(262.2)
Project Capital	US$ M	(4,917.6)	(175.6)	(206.3)	(92.5)	(105.6)	(177.0)
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	(1,550.0)	--	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	(115.3)	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(6,582.8)	(175.6)	(206.3)	(92.5)	(105.6)	(177.0)
Production Summary							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa	164.1	--	--	0.2	1.0	2.0
Life of Mine	Years	19.0	--	--	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade	%	1.4%	--	--	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP1 2025	PP2 2026	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,654.2	--	--	2.0	10.1	20.2
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	96.9%	--	--	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.8%	--	--	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.6%	--	--	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	18.1	--	--	2.0	9.8	6.3
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1,549.9	--	--	--	--	12.9
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	1,095.7	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	65.0%	--	--	62.00%	65.00%	65.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.0%	--	--	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	11.7	--	--	1.2	6.3	4.1
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	361.8	--	--	--	--	10.3
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	1,095.7	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	31,449.5	--	--	19.4	102.2	247.0
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade	%	0.14%	--	--	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	165.4	--	--	0.2	1.0	2.0
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.1%	--	--	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.5%	--	--	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.2%	--	--	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	1.7	--	--	0.2	0.9	0.6
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	126.8	--	--	--	--	1.1
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	89.4	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	44.1%	--	--	42.00%	45.00%	45.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.0%	--	--	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	0.8	--	--	0.1	0.4	0.3

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP1 2025	PP2 2026	Year 0 2027	Year 1 2028	Year 2 2029
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	22.2	--	--	--	--	0.6
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	89.4	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	6,465.7	--	--	3.1	15.3	30.9
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade	%	1.14%	--	--	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,347.0	--	--	1.6	8.2	16.4
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.6%	--	--	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.4%	--	--	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.2%	--	--	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	14.2	--	--	1.5	7.7	5.0
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1,151.1	--	--	--	--	9.6
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	813.0	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	60.0%	--	--	54.00%	58.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.0%	--	--	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	8.3	--	--	0.8	4.5	3.0
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	235.1	--	--	--	--	6.7

Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	813.0	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	12,090.9	--	--	7.9	43.7	107.9
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade	%	31.2%	--	--	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	36,806.5	--	--	44.9	224.3	448.6
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.9%	--	--	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	36,401.7	--	--	44.4	221.8	443.6
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.0%	--	--	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**LOM Total/Avg.**	**PP1 2025**	**PP2 2026**	**Year 0 2027**	**Year 1 2028**	**Year 2 2029**
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	36,401.7	--	--	44.4	221.8	443.6
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	19,856.1	--	--	23.0	115.0	231.9
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(12,343.6)	--	--	(32.9)	(131.8)	(131.8)
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$ M	(3,070.7)	--	--	(14.5)	(64.2)	(74.6)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(1,855.1)	--	--	(14.9)	(45.6)	(59.3)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(3,848.3)	--	--	(11.3)	(45.3)	(61.2)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(13,621.8)	--	--	(26.1)	(130.3)	(249.8)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(3,253.7)	--	--	--	--	--
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(1,984.6)	--	--	(55.0)	(61.4)	(66.1)
Royalty Costs							
USA Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(194.4)	(0.6)	(0.6)	(0.6)	(0.6)	(1.9)
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(464.7)	--	--	(1.3)	(6.9)	(15.4)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
Notes: 2. Commodity prices presented as 5-year weighted averages

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 3 2030**	**Year 4 2031**	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**
Nickel Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	18,833	18,833	20,706	20,706	20,706	20,706
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	34,172	34,172	53,124	53,124	53,124	53,124
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	11,317	11,317	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456
Manganese Price[2]	US$/t	529	529	544	544	544	544
Manganese Price[2]	US$/DMTU	5.29	5.29	5.44	5.44	5.44	5.44
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)[2]	US$/t	19,623	19,623	22,007	22,007	22,007	22,007

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 3 2030**	**Year 4 2031**	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)[2]	US$/t	31,347	31,347	51,336	51,336	51,336	51,336
Revenue	US$ M	1,654.3	3,747.3	3,717.4	4,316.1	4,338.3	4,395.8
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(1,360.2)	(2,792.2)	(2,667.5)	(2,625.6)	(2,632.3)	(2,634.7)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(23.8)	(29.0)	(33.9)	(40.1)	(40.2)	(40.6)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	270.3	926.1	1,016.1	1,650.4	1,665.8	1,720.4
Depreciation	US$ M	(41.5)	(45.3)	(52.2)	(100.6)	(153.0)	(205.5)
EBIT	US$ M	228.8	880.8	963.8	1,549.9	1,512.8	1,514.9
Taxation	US$ M	--	(43.2)	(209.5)	(333.9)	(326.1)	(326.7)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	228.8	837.6	754.3	1,216.0	1,186.7	1,188.2
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	(48.6)	361.3	81.4	409.5	529.6	561.3
Project Capital	US$ M	(206.6)	(292.1)	(557.3)	(642.5)	(642.3)	(658.5)
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	(155.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(206.6)	(292.1)	(712.3)	(797.5)	(797.3)	(813.5)
Production Summary							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa	5.0	11.0	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade	%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	50.4	110.9	105.8	105.8	105.8	105.8
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	47.8	105.1	100.3	100.3	100.3	100.3
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	57.2	57.2	57.2

Payable Factor for Alloy	%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 3 2030**	**Year 4 2031**	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	38.2	84.1	80.2	34.4	34.4	34.4
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	57.2	57.2	57.2
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	706.8	1,647.5	1,684.9	2,031.8	1,949.4	1,949.4
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade	%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	5.0	11.1	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	3.9	8.6	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	4.7	4.7	4.7
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	45.00%	40.00%	40.00%	42.00%	45.00%	45.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	2.3	5.2	4.9	2.1	2.1	2.1
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	4.7	4.7	4.7
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	78.3	176.7	186.3	282.8	376.9	423.9
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade	%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	41.0	90.3	86.2	86.2	86.2	86.2
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 3 2030**	**Year 4 2031**	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	35.5	78.0	74.5	74.5	74.5	74.5
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	42.5	42.5	42.5
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	24.8	54.6	52.1	22.3	22.3	22.3
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	42.5	42.5	42.5
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	284.5	625.8	597.4	742.4	742.4	742.4
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade	%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,121.4	2,467.1	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,354.9
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	1,109.1	2,439.9	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	1,109.1	2,439.9	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	584.7	1,297.3	1,248.8	1,259.2	1,269.7	1,280.1
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(414.5)	(1,010.0)	(1,004.5)	(914.0)	(914.0)	(914.0)
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$ M	(117.0)	(214.8)	(198.0)	(179.6)	(179.6)	(179.6)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(91.3)	(149.1)	(117.7)	(136.2)	(136.2)	(136.2)

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 3 2030**	**Year 4 2031**	**Year 5 2032**	**Year 6 2033**	**Year 7 2034**	**Year 8 2035**
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(129.3)	(265.4)	(238.3)	(238.3)	(238.3)	(238.3)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(514.3)	(994.3)	(954.3)	(840.0)	(840.0)	(840.0)

Refining Cost	US$ M	(10.1)	(39.5)	(39.7)	(202.6)	(209.3)	(211.7)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(83.8)	(119.0)	(114.9)	(114.9)	(114.9)	(114.9)
Royalty Costs							
USA Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(3.1)	(5.6)	(10.6)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(20.7)	(23.4)	(23.2)	(27.0)	(27.1)	(27.5)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
Notes: 2. Commodity prices presented as 5-year weighted averages

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Nickel Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	20,706	20,360	20,360	20,360	20,360	20,360
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	53,124	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456
Manganese Price[2]	US$/t	544	550	550	550	550	550
Manganese Price[2]	US$/DMTU	5.44	5.50	5.50	5.50	5.50	5.50
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)[2]	US$/t	22,007	21,835	21,835	21,835	21,835	21,835
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)[2]	US$/t	51,336	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530
Revenue	US$ M	4,941.3	4,828.4	4,828.4	4,828.4	4,828.4	5,518.1
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(3,005.4)	(2,819.8)	(2,638.8)	(2,638.8)	(2,457.7)	(2,476.7)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(44.0)	(43.3)	(43.3)	(43.3)	(43.3)	(47.6)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	1,891.9	1,965.2	2,146.3	2,146.3	2,327.3	2,993.8
Depreciation	US$ M	(255.9)	(280.1)	(290.1)	(286.5)	(283.7)	(280.1)
EBIT	US$ M	1,636.0	1,685.1	1,856.2	1,859.8	2,043.6	2,713.7
Taxation	US$ M	(352.8)	(363.0)	(398.9)	(399.7)	(438.3)	(579.9)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	1,283.2	1,322.1	1,457.3	1,460.1	1,605.4	2,133.8
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	674.8	1,073.5	1,566.5	1,580.3	1,707.9	2,290.5

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Project Capital	US$ M	(795.2)	(366.1)	--	--	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	(155.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(795.2)	(521.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)	(155.0)	--
Production Summary							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa	12.0	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	12.0
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade	%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	121.0	105.8	105.8	105.8	105.8	121.0
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	114.6	100.3	100.3	100.3	100.3	114.6
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	57.2	100.1	100.1	100.1	100.1	114.4
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	45.8	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	57.2	100.1	100.1	100.1	100.1	114.4
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	2,182.7	2,186.2	2,186.2	2,186.2	2,186.2	2,498.5
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade	%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	12.1	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	12.1
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	9.4	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.4

Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4.7	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.3
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	2.8	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4.7	8.2	8.2	8.2	8.2	9.3
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	467.9	510.9	510.9	510.9	510.9	583.9
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade	%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	98.5	86.2	86.2	86.2	86.2	98.5
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	85.1	74.5	74.5	74.5	74.5	85.1
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	42.5	74.3	74.3	74.3	74.3	84.9
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	29.8	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	42.5	74.3	74.3	74.3	74.3	84.9
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	827.7	851.1	851.1	851.1	851.1	972.7
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade	%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	2,691.4	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,691.4

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 9 2036**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	2,661.8	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,661.8
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	2,661.8	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,661.8
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	1,463.0	1,280.1	1,280.1	1,280.1	1,280.1	1,463.0
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(1,070.4)	(1,004.5)	(914.0)	(914.0)	(732.9)	(527.1)
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$ M	(204.1)	(186.0)	(186.0)	(186.0)	(186.0)	(212.6)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(149.1)	(108.9)	(90.4)	(90.4)	(90.4)	(103.4)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(272.3)	(238.3)	(238.3)	(238.3)	(238.3)	(272.3)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(960.0)	(840.0)	(840.0)	(840.0)	(840.0)	(960.0)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(225.7)	(327.2)	(255.2)	(255.2)	(255.2)	(277.6)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(123.7)	(114.9)	(114.9)	(114.9)	(114.9)	(123.7)
Royalty Costs							
USA Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(30.9)	(30.2)	(30.2)	(30.2)	(30.2)	(34.5)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
Notes: 2. Commodity prices presented as 5-year weighted averages

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 15 2042**	**Year 16 2043**	**Year 17 2044**	**Year 18 2045**	**Year 19 2046**	**Year 20 2047**
Nickel Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	20,360	20,360	20,360	20,360	--	--
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530	--	--
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456	--	--
Manganese Price[2]	US$/t	550	550	550	550	--	--
Manganese Price[2]	US$/DMTU	5.50	5.50	5.50	5.50	--	--
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)[2]	US$/t	21,835	21,835	21,835	21,835	--	--
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)[2]	US$/t	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 15 2042**	**Year 16 2043**	**Year 17 2044**	**Year 18 2045**	**Year 19 2046**	**Year 20 2047**
Revenue	US$ M	4,828.4	4,828.4	4,828.4	2,487.7	3,095.6	--
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(2,186.1)	(2,186.1)	(2,325.1)	(1,254.5)	--	--

Total Royalties	US$ M	(43.3)	(43.3)	(43.3)	(28.7)	--	--
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	2,599.0	2,599.0	2,460.0	1,204.5	3,095.6	--
Depreciation	US$ M	(273.7)	(270.8)	(268.4)	(2,405.4)	--	--
EBIT	US$ M	2,325.3	2,328.2	2,191.6	(1,201.0)	3,095.6	--
Taxation	US$ M	(497.4)	(498.0)	(469.3)	--	(408.7)	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	1,827.9	1,830.2	1,722.3	(1,201.0)	2,686.9	--
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	2,022.3	1,933.9	1,990.0	1,489.4	2,466.3	487.4
Project Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	(155.0)	(155.0)	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	(11.5)	(11.5)
Total Capital	US$ M	(155.0)	(155.0)	--	--	(11.5)	(11.5)
Production Summary							--
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa	10.5	10.5	10.5	5.4	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	--	--
Physicals Nickel Products							--
Resource Grade	%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	105.8	105.8	105.8	54.5	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	96.91%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	--	--
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	100.3	100.3	100.3	51.7	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	100.1	100.1	100.1	51.6	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	65.00%	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	--	--
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 15 2042**	**Year 16 2043**	**Year 17 2044**	**Year 18 2045**	**Year 19 2046**	**Year 20 2047**
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	100.1	100.1	100.1	51.6	--	--
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	2,186.2	2,186.2	2,186.2	1,126.4	--	--
Physicals Cobalt							--
Resource Grade	%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	0.14%	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	10.6	10.6	10.6	5.5	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	93.06%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	--	--
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	8.2	8.2	8.2	4.2	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	8.2	8.2	8.2	4.2	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%	45.00%	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	--	--
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	8.2	8.2	8.2	4.2	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	510.9	510.9	510.9	263.2	--	--
Physicals Copper							--
Resource Grade	%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	1.14%	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	86.2	86.2	86.2	44.4	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	93.55%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	--	--
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	74.5	74.5	74.5	38.4	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	74.3	74.3	74.3	38.3	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 15 2042**	**Year 16 2043**	**Year 17 2044**	**Year 18 2045**	**Year 19 2046**	**Year 20 2047**
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	--	--
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	74.3	74.3	74.3	38.3	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	851.1	851.1	851.1	438.5	--	--

Physicals Manganese							--
Resource Grade	%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	31.15%	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	2,354.9	2,354.9	2,354.9	1,213.3	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	--	--
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	1,200.0	--	--
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	--	--
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	2,329.0	2,329.0	2,329.0	1,200.0	--	--
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	1,280.1	1,280.1	1,280.1	659.5	--	--
Operating Costs							--
Collection Costs	US$ M	(461.2)	(461.2)	(527.1)	(263.6)	--	--
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$ M	(186.0)	(186.0)	(210.4)	(105.4)	--	--
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(90.4)	(90.4)	(103.4)	(51.7)	--	--
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(238.3)	(238.3)	(272.3)	(136.2)	--	--
Processing Cost	US$ M	(840.0)	(840.0)	(840.0)	(432.8)	--	--
Refining Cost	US$ M	(255.2)	(255.2)	(255.2)	(179.2)	--	--
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(114.9)	(114.9)	(116.7)	(85.7)	--	--
Royalty Costs							
USA Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(30.2)	(30.2)	(30.2)	(15.5)	--	--

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
Notes: 2. Commodity prices presented as 5-year weighted averages

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 21 2048**	**Year 22 2049**	**Year 23 2050**	**Year 24 2051**	**Year 25 2052**	**Year 26 2053**	**Year 27 2054**	**Year 28 2055**
Nickel Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price[2]	US$/DMTU	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)[2]	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Royalties	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Depreciation	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
EBIT	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Taxation	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)
Project Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)
Total Capital	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)
Production Summary		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Nickel Products		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 21 2048**	**Year 22 2049**	**Year 23 2050**	**Year 24 2051**	**Year 25 2052**	**Year 26 2053**	**Year 27 2054**	**Year 28 2055**
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Cobalt		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Copper		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 21 2048**	**Year 22 2049**	**Year 23 2050**	**Year 24 2051**	**Year 25 2052**	**Year 26 2053**	**Year 27 2054**	**Year 28 2055**
Recovery Nodule to Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Alloy	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Alloy	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Manganese		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Operating Costs		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Collection Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Processing Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Refining Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Corporate Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 21 2048**	**Year 22 2049**	**Year 23 2050**	**Year 24 2051**	**Year 25 2052**	**Year 26 2053**	**Year 27 2054**	**Year 28 2055**
Royalty Costs									
USA Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nauru Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

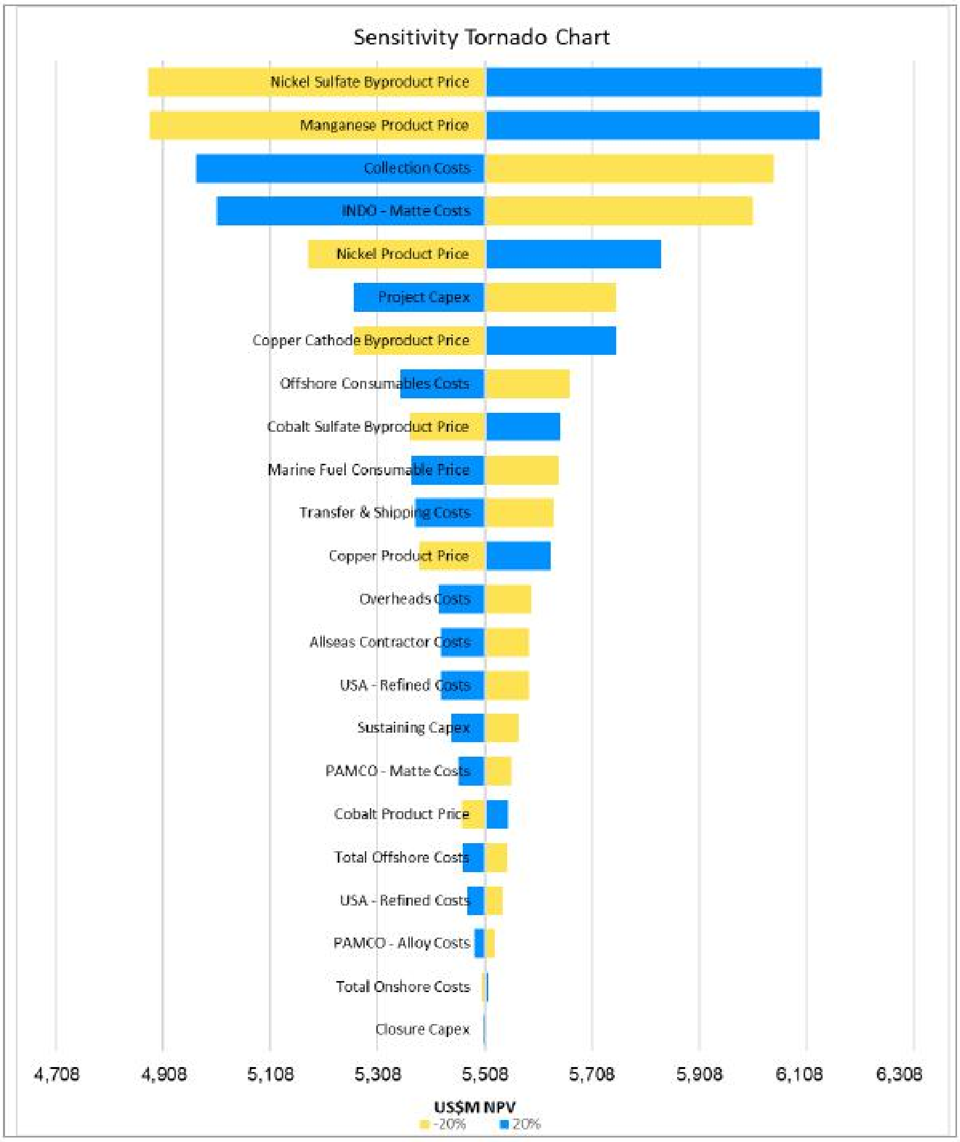
Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
Notes: 2. Commodity prices presented as 5-year weighted averages

19.14 Sensitivity analysis

To examine the impact of changes in base case assumptions, sensitivity analysis has been performed. The analysis performed allows identification of the critical components of the economic model, to determine which variables have little impact on outcomes and which have significant impact. To graphically display the relative impact and ranking of each variable on the post-tax NPV (base case NPV); the results have been displayed as a Tornado chart.

Figure 19.2 below presents a tornado chart which compares the range of each variable and calculates the NPV at each point. For each line item flexed between -20 percent and +20 percent, the length of the bar indicates the change to the NPV with the colour of the bar indicating the direction of the relationship between the variable and the NPV movement. Upper variables (and longest bar) have the most effect and the lower the least effect to NPV.

Figure 19.2 Tornado Graph



Source: TMC

19.15 Cash Cost Analysis

TMC have selected nickel as the primary commodity for the Project, and so unit costs are presented in terms of C1 Nickel Cash Cost. C1 Cash Costs are calculated as the total direct costs associated with mining, processing, G&A, and marketing costs. C1 Cash Cost is not a measure recognized by GAAP but is a standard measure used in mining as a reference point to denote the basic cash costs of running a mining operation to allow a comparison across the industry which may then be plotted on a global cost curve.

The cost curve is divided into four quartiles, with the lowest operating cost mines falling within the first quartile. In general, achieving a first quartile C1 cash cost means that the operation will be resilient to all stages of the price cycles and remain profitable during these price cycles. The cost is typically expressed as US$/t nickel or US cents/lb nickel and is presented both exclusive and inclusive of byproduct credits for other elements contained within the nodules (copper, cobalt, manganese).

Table 19.10 presents the C1 Nickel Cash Cost (US$/t Ni) through the life of mine.

The NORI Area D C1 Cash Cost including byproduct credits equals US$1,065/t nickel.

Table 19.10 C1 Nickel Cash Cost

Item	Units	Value
Collection Costs	US$'M	12,344
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$'M	3,071
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$'M	1,855
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$'M	3,848
Processing Cost	US$'M	13,622
Refining Cost	US$'M	3,254
Corporate Cost	US$'M	1,985
Total Operating Costs	**US$'M**	**39,978**
Total Nickel Production	kt	1,469
C1 Cash Cost excl. Byproducts credits	**US$/t Ni**	**27,210**
Byproduct credits	US$/t Ni	(26,144)
Period C1 Cash Cost incl. Byproducts credits	**US$/t Ni**	**1,065**

Table 19.11 presents the all-in sustaining cost (AISC) in US$/t Ni through the LOM. The AISC is calculated using the same costs as the C1 Cash Cost, plus royalties and sustaining capital. This figure represents the realistic minimum revenue per unit of production that is required to continue operating the business and as such is a proxy for the operational break-even nickel price, subject to the pricing of byproducts.

The NORI Area D all-in sustaining cost (AISC) including byproduct credits equals US$2,569/t nickel.

Table 19.11 All-in Sustaining Cost

Item	Units	Value
Collection Costs	US$'M	12,344
Transfer & Shipping Costs	US$'M	3,071
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$'M	1,855
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$'M	3,848
Processing Cost	US$'M	13,622
Refining Cost	US$'M	3,254
Corporate Cost	US$'M	1,985
Total Operating Costs	**US$'M**	**39,978**
Total Royalties	US$'M	659
Sustaining Capital	US$'M	1,550
Total All-in Sustaining Cost	**US$'M**	**42,187**
Total Nickel Production	kt	1,469
AISC excl. Byproducts credits	**US$/t Ni**	**28,713**
Byproduct credits	US$/t Ni	(26,145)
AISC incl. Byproducts credits	**US$/t Ni**	**2,569**

19.16 Conclusion Economic Analysis

Based on the assumptions and parameters presented, the economic analysis shows positive economics with a 7-year payback (production) period supported by a post-tax NPV (8%) of US$5,508M and post-tax IRR of 26.8%.

The project capital is US$4,918M (excluding escalation), with undiscounted LOM revenue of US$72,958M, sustaining capital of US$1,550M, all-in operating cost of US$39,998M, all-in royalty cost of US$659 M, and closure costs of US$115M.

20 Adjacent properties

The western boundary of NORI Area-D is adjacent to the eastern boundary of the TOML-F area held under an ISA exploration contract by TOML also a subsidiary of TMC. Polymetallic nodule mineralization is well-developed in TOML-F (AMC, 2021b). Table 20.1 summarizes the Mineral Resources reported in TOML-F. The average abundance and grades in TOML-F are similar to those in NORI Area-D.

Table 20.1 TOML Area F Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at a 4 kg/m^2 nodule abundance cut-off

TOML Area	Classification	Tonnes (x106 wet t)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
F	Indicated	12	21.6	1.5	1.2	0.1	32.5
F	Inferred	244	16.6	1.4	1.2	0.1	32.2

Source: AMC, 2021b.
Note: Tonnes are quoted on a wet basis and grades are quoted on a dry basis, which is common practice for bulk commodities. Moisture content was estimated to be 28% w/w. These estimates are presented on an undiluted basis without adjustment for resource recovery.

The northern boundary of NORI Area-D is adjacent to the southern boundary of the area held under an ISA exploration contract by the Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources of Federal Republic of Germany (BGR). BGR completed multibeam bathymetry and backscatter mapping, box core sampling and geochemical analysis of nodules and used this data as a the basis for an estimate of Mineral Resources in the eastern part of their contract area (~60,000 km^2) (Kuhn and Rühlemann 2021). The Mineral Resources reported by Kuhn and Rühlemann are summarized in Table 20.2. The qualified person has been unable to verify the information. The average abundance and grades reported in the BGR area are similar to those in NORI Area D.

Table 20.2 Summary of Mineral Resources reported for BGR exploration contract area

Mineral Resource Classification	M dry mt	Abundance (kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
Measured	7.14	14.6	1.43	1.19	0.17	31.5
Indicated	11.21	14.2	1.32	1.18	0.13	30.8
Inferred	35.53	13.4	1.39	1.17	0.17	31.1
Inferred	486.2	10.1	1.39	1.17	0.17	31.1

Source: Kuhn and Rühlemann 2021

To the south of NORI Area-D the seafloor is classified by the ISA as a Reserved Area. Under UNCLOS, the Reserved Areas are reserved for access by developing countries or the Enterprise (UNCLOS, Article 170, Annex IV and 1994 Agreement, Annex, Section 2). The area to the east of NORI Area D is open ground.

21 Other relevant data and information

No additional information or explanation is necessary to make this TRS understandable and not misleading.

22 Interpretation and conclusions

22.1 Mineral tenure

The mineral tenure for the NORI Area D project is backed by an exploration contract granted by the ISA that provides exclusive rights to explore and a priority right to apply for an exploitation contract. NORI has fulfilled all contractual obligations to date with respect to the ISA requirements. To the extent known to the QP, there are no other significant factors and risks that may affect access, title, or the right to perform work on the Project that are not discussed in this Technical Report.

The ISA is currently working on the development of the legal framework to regulate the exploitation of nodules in the Area and at the time of this report the ISA has not finalized the regulations for Nodule Exploitation. TMC has submitted an application to NOAA under DSHMRA for an exploration license and commercial recovery permit, through their subsidiary TMC USA. At the time of this report these applications are still under review and not yet approved. The Mine Plan is contained within an area with geohabitats characterized to be similar as the area of the Test Mining that has been extensively surveyed and monitored by TMC. An allowance for appropriate buffer zones to prevent impact to areas outside the NORI Area D Exploitation Contract Area and sensitive environmental areas within is included. Other than those allowances, the QPs have not included any measures within the Mine Plan to comply with the yet to be approved commercial recovery permit conditions, and the impact of those conditions on the Mineral Reserve is uncertain.

22.2 Exploration and data verification

NORI completed offshore exploration campaigns in 2012, 2013, 2018, 2019, and acquired additional data as part of a test mining in 2022. The data from these campaigns was compiled and analyzed to provide the geological foundation for engineering design and mine planning. In addition to estimation of the Mineral Resources, assessments of nodule dimensions and shape, variability of assay grades and abundance over short distances, moisture content, seafloor morphology, potential geo-obstacles and the geotechnical characteristics of the seafloor were completed.

The methods used to sample and assay the nodules in each campaign were not materially different. Certified reference materials (CRMs), blank samples (crushed rock samples with very low manganese, nickel, cobalt, and copper) and duplicate samples were used for quality control and quality assurance during the 2018 - 2023 offshore campaigns (C3, C6, C7, C8). AMC considers that the sample preparation, security, and analytical procedures were adequate for estimating Mineral Resources.

The offshore exploration campaigns consistently showed that the nodules sit on, or close to, the surface of the sediment on the seafloor. The data indicates that, for a collector designed to cut the seafloor to a maximum depth of 5 cm, 96% of the measured box core nodule abundance is expected to be available for collection by the seafloor mining system.

Type 1 nodule facies exhibit a median length in the range 2 - 3 cm, and in most cases at least 75% of the nodules are less than 5 cm in length. Small nodules generally dominate in the centre of NORI Area D, in an ENE trending belt located mainly in the abyssal plain domain. The box cores with the largest mean nodule size generally occur in the north in, or near, areas interpreted to contain Type 2/3 nodules. Box cores with a bimodal distribution or greater proportion of large nodules generally occur in, or very close to, areas interpreted to contain Type 2/3 nodules. These statistical features illustrate the complexity of nodule size distributions at the local scale and the need for further work to improve the spatial definition of Type 2/3 nodule facies.

The moisture content of the polymetallic nodules in NORI Area D was measured at various times throughout the exploration and related scientific programs. The conditions under which the samples were handled and dried by different laboratories varied, resulting in some inconsistencies in the moisture content values. So far as estimation of metal production units is concerned, the wet abundances must be converted to dry abundances at 105°C, the temperature at which the samples were dried prior to assaying. The analysis of the data by campaign shows that dry abundance measurements for the box core samples provide a better local datum for abundance because the errors and uncertainties in the moisture values have been removed, or at least reduced, by drying at 105°C.

Moisture content of 28% is the current best estimate, based on Campaign 6, 7 and 8 box cores and sampling of 3000 t of nodules recovered during the test mining in 2022. No significant correlations were identified between the moisture contents of the nodules and assays, nodule size, nodule type, abundance, bathymetry, or geological domain.

The morphology of the seafloor is an important control on the proposed mining operation. Following the initial acquisition of vessel-based MBES data in 2012, the data was reprocessed and reinterpreted several times as new data became available. The new data included high resolution data acquisition. In 2020, all of the available data was synthesized into a geological framework, from which the footwall and sediment domains which are used in the Mineral Resource estimation were interpreted.

The existing, higher resolution, AUV MBES datasets do not cover enough of NORI Area D to satisfy the requirements of planning for initial mining beyond Year 2. Detailed seafloor slope and potential geo-obstacle analysis was carried out to more accurately identify areas with slopes >4° that are expected to be suitable for mining in the Initial Mining Area.

The high-resolution AUV-based MBES data was compared to the lower-resolution hull-based MBES data to build a probabilistic model for prediction of smaller-scale terrain variability. The probabilistic model shows that there is potentially a greater area that has > 4° slopes along the flanks of abyssal hills than can be mapped with the hull-based MBES alone. Also, within the abyssal plains, there is hummocky topography, which appears to be correlated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies. The hummocky topography is only seen clearly in the higher-resolution AUV data but can be mapped probabilistically. The 0 to 4° slope classification clearly shows that in the closely-spaced abyssal hills and valleys in the northern half of NORI Area D, the areas of continuous mineable ground with the 0-4° slope range are likely to be much smaller than in the test mining area.

A preliminary integrated ground model for the collector test area was compiled ahead of the test mining and was based on analysis of geophysical and camera data. The model showed seafloor features, or geo-obstacles, that could potentially impede the efficient operation of the seafloor mining system. Five potential geo-obstacle classes were defined but only three (large-diameter circular depressions, moats, and furrows) have significant occurrence within the 10 x 15 km test mining site.

Most of these features are beyond the resolution-limits of the hull-based MBES data and are therefore only noticeable in the higher-resolution AUV MBES datasets. A predictive model was therefore developed to map the probability of these features occurring. This model was based on testing for spatial relationships with larger-scale geological features, which may exhibit some control on the geo-obstacle formation. The model relies on the low-resolution hull-based MBES data derivatives and interpretations, as this is currently the only dataset with regional distribution across NORI Area D. The probabilistic model results were incorporated in the initial mine planning for the Initial Mining Area.

Geotechnical soils data was systematically collected across the NORI Area D site from box core tests and samples, and in situ testing. In general terms the seafloor across NORI Area D can be classified as a silty clay, that in parts is very silty and sometimes more like a silt. There are exceptions to this classification associated with depressions or high areas of seafloor such as ridge lines, abyssal hills and volcanic features. The test mining area is consistently similar in composition and less complex than the Initial Mining Area and NORI Area D overall, due to the smaller area and the dominance of the flat geoform domain.

Seafloor conditions derived from seabed CPT readings indicate that the seafloor conditions are firmer than anticipated from the box core measurements obtained during Campaign 6. It was concluded that the removal of the nodules prior to testing caused disturbance in the upper layer of the box cores. This difference was also observed in the behaviour of the seafloor collector, which performed locomotive tasks at the top end of expectations.

The test mining was conducted within a small test area in NORI Area D, selected after completion of detailed bathymetric and photographic surveys in 2018. The test area is very flat, abyssal plain, and is dominated by Type 1 nodules. The nodule abundances and grades encountered during the test were consistent with expectations. It is expected that mining may be more difficult in the northern part of NORI Area D where the seafloor is more rugged.

Box core samples were collected from the planned collector test runs before (Campaign 7A) and after (Campaign 7B) the test mining. Six of the Campaign 7B box cores were located at sites within 80 m of Campaign 7A box cores, allowing comparison of nodule abundances before and after the test mining. The nodule abundances prior to collection (Campaign 7A) ranged from 12.57 kg/m^2 to 21.68 kg/ m^2 with an average of 15.8 kg/m^2 at the paired sites. The nodule abundances for the same sites after collection (Campaign 7B) ranged from 0.51 kg/m^2 to 15.66 kg/m^2 with an average of 5.72 kg/m^2. Two of the box cores are likely to have sampled seafloor not traversed by the collector, or traversed while the collector was not in pick up mode. Excluding these two results, the average recovery of nodules was 80%.

22.3 Mineral processing testwork

NORI has completed an extensive program of metallurgical testing involving nodule characterization, process flowsheet selection, bench-scale and pilot-scale confirmation on a 75 t sample of nodules collected from NORI Area D. The selected RKEF flow sheet involves calcining and smelting nodules to produce a nickel-copper-cobalt alloy that will be converted into a nickel-copper-cobalt matte and a silico-manganese product. The selected process will involve near zero solid waste generation. NORI polymetallic nodules have very little variation in chemical and mineralogical composition and accordingly, samples selected for testing were representative of the mineralization and sufficient samples were taken so that tests were performed on sufficient sample mass.

Estimated recovery factors are based on appropriate metallurgical testwork and are appropriate to the mineralization and the selected process route.

The metallurgical recoveries (to alloy) for the NORI Area D Project are estimated at 96.9% for nickel, 93.1% for cobalt, 93.6% for copper, and 98.9% for manganese, with manganese being recovered as manganese silicate and nickel-copper-cobalt recovered as an alloy or matte.

22.4 Mineral Resource

Data collected by NORI is well-documented and was subject to satisfactory QA/QC processes. Documentation verified by the Qualified Person includes photographs, daily exploration reports, digital logging sheets and original assay reports. In the opinion of the Qualified Person the NORI Area data is of high quality and suitable for estimating Mineral Resources. The 2024 Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D, reported herein, was based on box core samples and other data collected by NORI and does not include any of the lower-quality data collected by the early explorers.

All the data indicates that both grades and abundance of polymetallic nodules in NORI Area D have remarkable continuity. Abundance is more variable than grades and is recognized as the primary control on classification of the Mineral Resource. Sufficient data was collected in NORI Area D to estimate Measured and Indicated Resources.

The Mineral Resource block model was updated in 2025 with the following changes, compared to the 2020 estimate:

- Addition of Campaign 7A and Campaign 8 nodule sampling.
- Exclusion of historic nodule samples.
- No top-cuts applied to nodule abundance or nodule grades.
- Modified experimental spatial variograms.
- Estimation of dry nodule abundance.
- Reporting of wet tonnage using dry nodule abundance and assuming average moisture content of 28%. The 2020 Mineral Resource was estimated from wet nodule abundance, as measured in the box core samples. It was assumed that the moisture content was 24%.

The latest Mineral Resource tonnage estimate (2025) is 5 Mwmt Measured, 347 Mwmt Indicated and 11 Mwmt Inferred Mineral Resources. On a wet basis, the 2025 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate is 2% higher than the 2020 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate. On a dry basis, the 2025 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate is 3% lower than the 2020 Mineral Resource tonnage estimate. The changes are not material. They demonstrate the robustness of the sampling data and the estimation method, and the exceptional continuity of the abundances and grades.

22.5 Mineral Reserve

A mine plan for NORI Area D was developed using mining blocks derived from Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources. Mining commences in a subset of the proposed NORI Area D Commercial Recovery Area, known as the Initial Mining Area, which has similar geoform to that encountered in Test Mining, followed by the remainder of the NORI Area D Commercial Recovery Area.

Probable Mineral Reserve of 51 Mt at a grade of 1.4% Ni, 0.13% Co, 1.1% Cu and 31% Mn has been estimated for NORI Area D. The Mineral Reserve was restricted to the Initial Mining Area. Unmined buffers of 1,000 m were left around the lease boundary and environmentally sensitive zones. The underlying mine plan was developed in conjunction with an experienced marine contractor, Allseas, and TMC to reflect the characteristics of the proposed nodule collection system.

Mine planning parameters were developed from results observed during the Test Mining, extensive test work and analysis undertaken by Allseas and TMC. Numerous workshops were conducted with Allseas, TMC and technical specialists to develop the nodule collection strategy on which the mine plan is based. Testwork and analysis by marine specialists engaged by TMC included seafloor geotechnical data collection and analysis, analysis of seafloor surveys, plume modelling of disturbed sediments and geological data to identify and characterize the seafloor areas suitable for nodule collection. Testwork undertaken by Allseas while developing the nodule collection system included nodule collection simulation trials, and testwork specific to identifying the design and operating parameters for each of the various components of the system, and the test mining, using a 40% scale prototype collector.

The mine plan for the Initial Assessment completed by AMC in 2021 followed a strategy of using relatively equidimensional mining blocks aligned N-S, targeting the highest value blocks first. The experience gained in the Test Mining and analysis by Allseas resulted in a revision to the mining strategy to adopt long collector runs to maximize the time collecting nodules and minimize turning times to achieve high field efficiencies. Collector paths were designed along a preferred mining direction of NNW-SSE to align with the strike of seafloor ridges.

The collector runs for the initial two years in the Initial Mining Area were generated to be as long as possible to allow for initial operations to be as simple as possible while operating procedures are refined. As a result, the initial collector runs (dubbed Runs 19 & 20) deviated from the preferred NNW-SSE trend to avoid seamounts and the impact reference zone. Mining blocks subsequent to Runs 19-20 were generated in a more systematic fashion along the NNW-SSE direction. While this resulted in shorter mining blocks, it is expected that short term planning will be able to amalgamate adjacent mining blocks to form longer collector runs that enable production and cost targets to be maintained.

Key inputs used to estimate the Mineral Reserve are the Mineral Resource model developed by AMC, the nodule collection system specifications provided by TMC to Allseas (including production capability and ability to collect on slopes up to 4°), collector dimensions and capabilities provided by Allseas, geotechnical data reports and specific location analysis by APYS, analysis and modelling by Allseas to determine seafloor trafficability, geological analysis by MARGIN to determine areas where nodules could be collected (geo-obstacle probability model), and the parameters developed by AMC from the work of all of the above. Key physical parameters used by AMC to estimate the Mineral Reserve included collector recovery, geo-obstacle probability, gap left between collection paths to ensure collector efficiency, and metallurgical recoveries for each of the proposed products. An economic model of production, product prices, payabilities, revenue, royalties, and operating and capital costs developed by TMC was used to assess economic viability.

The key risks to the Mineral Reserve identified by the QPs are:

- NOAA has not yet granted an exploration license and commercial recovery permit to TMC USA to extract the nodules contained within the Mineral Reserve.
- NOAA has not yet finalized the terms and conditions of the commercial recovery permit, and the mine plan may need to be revised to comply with provisions.
- Lack of other commercial operations against which comparison and validation of production rates, OPEX, and CAPEX could be made.
- The price forecasts for the proposed products.
- Nodule recovery, which is a function of collector recovery, geo-obstacle loss, gap between collector runs, and seafloor slope domains.
- Impact of sedimentation and seafloor currents.
- The design of the nodule collection system has not yet been finalized, nor has the system been constructed to demonstrate that scale up from the 40% scale prototype used in the Test Mining can be successful.

To account for these risks, the Mineral Reserve has been classified as Probable.

The QPs consider that sufficient testwork and analysis of collection of nodules within NORI Area D has been undertaken to achieve a PFS level of assessment on the modifying factors used to convert the Mineral Resource to Mineral Reserve. Modifying factors were evaluated and applied in the areas of mining, processing, metallurgy, infrastructure, economic evaluation, marketing, legal, and environmental assessment. Specifically, the QPs have estimated the tonnage and grade of the Indicated and Measured Mineral Resource, that in the opinion of the QPs, can be the basis of an economically viable project. Specifically, the QPs have estimated the tonnage and grade of the Indicated and Measured Mineral Resource, that in the opinion of the QPs, can be the basis of an economically viable project.

22.6 Mining methods

This mining method is novel in comparison to typical terrestrial mining operations, as the unique characteristics of the location, geometry and style of mineralization of the deposit does not allow conventional terrestrial techniques to be used. Allseas, an experienced marine contractor, is collaborating with TMC to develop and operate a nodule collection system at NORI Area D, which is based on conventional deep-sea technology.

The mining method proposed for NORI Area D is to use two remotely operated, 15 m wide, self-propelled, tracked collectors tethered to a PV by a flexible jumper hose, riser-and-air-lift VTS and communication and power cables. The collector will preferentially track across the seafloor in a NNW to SSE direction to align with seafloor ridges. Coandă nozzles on the collector will mobilize and collect nodules in the top 3-5 cm of the seafloor, which will be drawn into the collector and through a hopper to separate entrained sediment for return to the seafloor. Nodules are then pumped as slurry via the flexible jumper hose and the riser to the PV, where dewatering and final separation occurs, and dewatered nodules are transferred via conveyor to storage holds within the PV. When the holds of the PV are full, a transfer vessel will pull alongside, an off-loading conveyor deployed, and nodules transferred via conveyor to the hold of the trans-shipment vessel for later transfer to a bulk carrier for transport to a processing facility.

NORI and Allseas completed a Test Mining using a 40% scale prototype collector in 2022, where 4,500 wmt of nodules were collected and approximately 3,000 wmt of nodules were lifted to the surface using an airlift riser. The Test Mining demonstrated the mining concept and provided information for detailed design of the commercial-scale system. The Test Mining was monitored by AUVs, ROVs, and bottom mounted sensors and samplers to provide environmental data to understand the environmental impacts and inform the environmental monitoring and management plans.

While the design of the collector system has not been finalized, the design is based on the results and findings of the Test Mining, an extensive program of testwork undertaken by Allseas, and detailed geotechnical and seafloor analysis undertaken by NORI and specialist service providers to confirm operating parameters.

The QP notes that as there are no deep-sea nodule mining and processing projects currently in operation, the technology required for nodule collection is still in development and the design of the collector proposed for NORI Area D has not been finalized. As a result, the production-scale collector proposed for NORI Area D has not been subjected to actual operating conditions in a production environment to determine its effectiveness, robustness, and reliability in operating in the range of seafloor domains that are expected in NORI Area D and to provide physical records for productivity, nodule recovery, collector speed, and availability. However, the system has been field tested using a 40% width (6 m) prototype.

22.7 Processing

PAMCO reviewed TMC testwork and completed a PFS testing a 22 t nodule sample provided by TMC. This work has confirmed that the existing PAMCO RKEF facilities are well suited to processing nodules and the key operating parameters – calcining and smelting temperatures, throughputs and material handing are very similar to those for the nickel laterites that the plant was designed to process.

After successful completion of the PFS, TMC and PAMCO signed a binding MOU with PAMCO to complete a commercial scale trial on the 2000t sample collected during the 2022 Test Mining Trial completed on NORI Area D. The data collected in the commercial- scale trial and resulting feasibility study confirmed with the results of the PFS and will inform the required all plant modifications required, and once completed, to undertake toll smelting for commercial operations.

22.8 Infrastructure

The majority of the required infrastructure exists at PAMCO with minor modifications required to the RKEF facility to process nodules. Key Project infrastructure as envisaged in the PFS is limited to converter aisle construction at PAMCO. The other relevant infrastructure, such as RKEF lines, port, and materials handling equipment is existing.

Additional RKEF capacity beyond the initial 1.3 million wet tonnes destined for PAMCO is still to be identified and secured for additional tolling, though the current assumption is that all infrastructure associated with this expanded pyrometallurgical capacity is existing.

For the first five years of operation, the alloy and matte products generated at PAMCO will be sold, so no refinery infrastructure is required. From Year 6 to Year 10, TMC USA intends to refine some of the generated matte at a dedicated facility in the United States, with plans for all matte to be refined here from Year 10 onwards. Such a facility would need to be constructed. The proposed facility location is in close proximity to a port, though docks would need be built while rail and utilities extended from the existing infrastructure in the area.

22.9 Market studies

CRU completed a preliminary marketing study which examined the marketability of the manganese silicate, nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and matte products, finding that the manganese silicate product will be attractive to silico-manganese alloy producers, and that the nickel-copper-cobalt alloy is similar to existing mattes in the marketplace and will have strong market acceptance. The nickel-copper-cobalt alloy will be a more novel product that will require significant marketing effort for market placement. Metal pricing forecast for copper, nickel and cobalt and nickel and cobalt sulfate premium/discounts against metal prices forecasts were provided by BMI. Manganese price forecasts used in the economic analysis were derived from the CRU preliminary market studies as were conservative payability factors particularly for the nickel-copper-cobalt alloy to ensure attractiveness in the marketplace.

22.10 Environmental studies

NORI has completed the environmental baseline data collection required to conform with ISA permitting requirements. In total, more than 100 studies involving world-leading academic and contracting organizations have completed the most extensive seafloor to surface integrated study of the deep ocean.

Environmental impacts were monitored during the Test Mining undertaken in 2022 and further monitoring of the site was undertaken on completion of the test and then 12 months later. Results indicate that the impacts are significantly less than have been proposed by many third parties. Impact assessment has demonstrated that environment impacts for the proposed NORI Area D development will not cause serious harm to the environment.

Socioeconomic benefits are positive providing training and community development to Nauru. In contrast to terrestrial developments, there is no need to relocate existing landowners from the development area and there is little to no competing economic use.

22.11 Capital and operating costs

The capital cost estimates are reported in 30 June 2025 US$. The capital costs are at a PFS level of confidence of ± 25% in accordance with S-K 1300 guidelines.

Total Capital costs are estimated at US$6,636M comprising of:

- Project Capital US$545M for Production Vessel #1 and associated costs (System #1), inclusive of Allseas credit and US$4,426M for two 6 Mwmt nodule equivalent refining facilities in the US.
- Sustaining Capital US$1,550M for the LOM.
- Closure Cost US$115M post operations.

Total Operating costs are estimated at US$39,978M over LOM comprising of:

- LOM collection costs are estimated at US$12,344M and average US$75.2/wmt of nodules.
- LOM transfer and shipping costs are estimated at US$3,071M and average US$18.7/wmt of nodules.
- LOM contractor (offshore) costs are estimated at US$1,855M and average US$11.3/wmt of nodules.
- LOM consumables (offshore fuel) costs are estimated at US$3,848M and average US$23.4/wmt of nodules.
- LOM processing costs are estimated at US$13,622M and average US$83/wmt of nodules.
- LOM refining costs are estimated at US$3,254M and average US$19.8/wmt of nodules.
- LOM G&A costs are estimated at US$1,985M and average US$12.1/wmt of nodules.

22.12 Economic evaluation

An economic analysis for NORI Area D used to support Mineral Reserves was performed using discounted cashflow analysis with expected real cashflows compiled on a $US 2025 real term basis and the following key assumptions:

- Production plan as per provided Resource and mining inventories and minimum run lengths.
- Cost estimates with no inflation of escalation attributed.
- Valuation date of 1 July 2025 based on 2025 real terms.
- Commercial production starting on October 1, 2027 (Year 0).
- LOM of 19 years.
- All cash flows discounted at an 8% discount rate.
- Products are assumed to be sold in the same year they are produced.

Based on the assumptions and parameters presented, the economic analysis shows positive economics with a 7-year payback (production) period supported by a post-tax NPV (8%) of US$5,508M and post-tax IRR of 26.8%. LOM EBITDA of US32,321M. C1 cash cost of US$1,065/t nickel (incl. byproducts) and All-In Sustaining Cost of US$2,569/t nickel (incl. byproducts).

23 Recommendations

The QPs consider that the evaluation work completed to date on NORI Area D, including exploration and data management, off-shore and on-shore engineering, mineral processing, marine operations, marketing, and environmental assessment and associated studies leading to the current Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve estimates, has demonstrated the technical and economic viability of the Project.

To further advance the Project, the following recommendations on the various aspects of the Project are made by the QPs of this Technical Report. The costs to undertake these recommendations are included in the capital and operating costs for the Project presented in Section 18 of this Technical Report.

Prior to operations commencement, the QPs recommend that:

- The collector path simulation tool being developed by Allseas continues to be developed and used to gain a better understanding of short-term planning requirements, field efficiencies, and operational flexibility.
- Collector, VTS, PV and TV design be finalized by Allseas to ensure timely commencement of operations once approvals are finalized.
- Umbilical and VTS movement simulation modelling continue to evaluate dual Collector operations and develop safe operating procedures.
- The Commercial Recovery Permit conditions, once finalized, be reviewed to confirm that mine plans and production operations comply with requirements.
- Environmental monitoring plans and adaptive management systems be finalized to ensure timely commencement of operations once approvals are finalized.
- Identification of additional processing plants to process nodules not processed by PAMCO's Hachinohe site should be progressed.
- Development of downstream hydrometallurgical processes required by Year 6 should be progressed.

Once seafloor operations commence, the QPs recommend that:

- Detailed information on nodule abundance, nodule type, and seafloor topography should be progressively upgraded in advance of operations for use in detailed short-term planning.
- Reconciliation of nodule production with Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve estimates be undertaken as a priority to confirm the Mineral Resource and the modifying factors used for conversion to Mineral Reserves.
- Use production operating experience and environmental monitoring results to refine operating practices and mine plans.
- Continue environmental monitoring prior to and during production operations to confirm that impacts associated with nodule extraction are appropriately managed.
- Use environmental monitoring results and evaluation of seafloor operations to confirm that operations can extend into geoforms outside the initial mining area that are not currently in the Mineral Reserve.
- Use detailed production data to progressively upgrade Mineral Reserve estimates in areas as they are confirmed as suitable for mining operations.
- Progressively refine long-term-mine plans to develop the full NORI Area D Commercial Recovery Permit Area.

24 References

Agarwal et al 1979, Agarwal JC, Barner HEM, Beecher N. 1979. The cuprion process for ocean nodules, Chem. Eng. Prog 75(1):59-63.

Agarwal, S., et al, “Studies on recovery of Ni, Co, Cu from polymetallic nodules by direct reduction smelting”, COM 2009, Sudbury, p. 509-517.

Allseas 2024a, Deep Sea Nodule Collection – Project Zero Work Package 1 – collector. collector Propulsion and Manoeuvrability Analysis (HG-916C1-410-Y-R-001.pdf). (Confidential).

Allseas 2024b, Base Specification (HG-91620-000-G-F-001 Rev C1 - Base specification.xlsx) (Confidential).

Allseas 2024c, Hydraulic nozzle - test results Deltares 4, collector over- and undersize analysis and Impact type II/III nodules on recovery rates (HG-916C1-100-F-R-007.pdf) (Confidential).

Allseas 2024d, Project Zero - Mass flow model 3 mln/a, HG-9162F-000-F-R-003 Rev B2.pdf (Confidential).

Allseas 2024e, PFS – Technical Note – Allseas System Description (NORI-ALL-0200-MUL-RPT-0018). (Confidential).

AMC 2016, AMC Consultants Pty Ltd, 2016. TOML Clarion Clipperton Zone Project, Pacific Ocean. Technical Report compiled under NI-43-101 by AMC Consultants Pty Ltd for Nautilus Minerals, March 2016.

AMC 2019, AMC Consultants Pty Ltd, 2019. NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone Mineral Resource Estimate, April 2019 Technical Report compiled under NI-43-101 for DeepGreen Metals Inc.

AMC 2021, AMC Consultants Pty Ltd, March 2021. Technical Report Summary, Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for Deep Green Metals Inc., In accordance with the requirements of SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300).

BMI, 2025. Benchmark Minerals Intelligence, 2025. Benchmark Mineral Intelligence Forecast Reports June, 2025 for copper, nickel and cobalt. (Confidential).

Baláž 2022, Baláž, P., 2022. Results of the second phase of deep-sea polymetallic nodules geological survey in Interoceanmetal Joint Organization licence area (2016–2021). Mineralia.

Bloomberg News. (2025, February 20). *China-backed $3 billion Indonesia nickel smelter risks shutdown*. Retrieved from www.mining.com: https://www.mining.com/web/china-backed-3-billion-indonesia-nickel-smelter-risks-shutdown/.

Celios. (2025, March 17). *The Fallout of PT Gunbuster Nickel Industry Closure: How Danantara Can Save Indonesia's Critical Minerals*. Retrieved from celios.co.id: https://celios.co.id/the-fallout-of-pt-gunbuster-nickel-industry-closure-how-danantara-can-save-indonesias-critical-minerals/.

CRU 2019, Consulting. Manganese market strategy. Technical report. 2019. (Confidential).

CRU 2020, Updated PEA market input. Report for DeepGreen Metals. Dated 23/10/2020. (Confidential).

CRU 2024, CRU International Ltd, September 2024, NORI-D project: Preliminary market research report. Published date: 24/09/2024. (Confidential).

Earney 1990, Earney F.C.F. 1990. Marine Mineral Resources. Routledge, p 387. Cited in: ISA. 2010. A geological model of polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and prospector's guide for polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone. International Seabed Authority Technical Study: No. 6.

Felix 1980, Felix, D. 1980. Some problems in making nodule abundance estimates from seafloor photographs. Marine Mining, Volume 2 Number 3, 293-302.

Flanagan and Gottfried, 1980. USGS nodule standard.

FLSmidth, 2020. Polymetallic Nodule Roasting utilizing a pilot rotary kiln system. Report number: 9232050259, December 2020, (Confidential).

Fugro 2019. Geotechnical Seafloor Sampling Survey: NORI Area D Area, Campaign 3; Report No. 1803-1344, Volume II Revision 0. Houston Texas: Fugro USA, Marine, Inc.

Golder 2015, Golder Associates, 2015. Preliminary economic assessment, NORI Clarion-Clipperton Zone Area D Project, Pacific Ocean. Report prepared by Golder Associates for Deep Green Resources Inc. (Confidential).

GSR 2018, Global Sea Mineral Resources NV, 2018. Environmental Impact Statement. Small-scale testing of nodule collector components on the seafloor of the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and its environmental impact (ISA_EIA_2018_GSRNOD2019).

Haalboom, et al. 2023, Haalboom, Sabine, et al. Monitoring of a sediment plume produced by a deep-sea mining test in shallow water, Málaga Bight, Alboran Sea (southwestern Mediterranean Sea). Marine Geology 456 (2023): 106971.

Haynes, B.W., “Laboratory processing and characterization of waste materials from manganese nodules”, USBM RI 8938, 1985. (Note by author: The EPA toxicity test and conclusions referenced above were based on the then current testing procedure and toxicity limits (from 1985).

Hein et al. 2013, Hein, J., Mizell, K., Koschinsky, A., and Conrad, T., 2013. Deep-ocean mineral deposits as a source of critical metals for high- and green-technology applications: Comparison with land-based resources. Ore Geology Reviews, 51, 1-14.

Hennigar, HF, Dick, RE, and Foell EJ, 1986, Derivation of Abundance Estimates for Manganese Nodule Deposits: Grab Samples Recoveries to Ore Reserves, Off-shore Technology Conference, OTC, 5237, May 1986, Houston.

Hessler and Jumars 1974, Hessler R.R., Jumars P.A., 1974. Abyssal community analysis from replicate box cores in the central north pacific. Deep Sea Research, 21, 185 209.

ISA 1999b, International Seabed Authority, 1999. Proposed technologies for mining deep-seabed polymetallic nodules. Proceedings of the International Seabed Authority's Workshop held in Kingston, Jamaica, 3-6 August 1999.

ISA, 2001. International Seabed Authority. (2001). Proposed technologies for mining deep-seabed polymetallic nodules. International Seabed Authority. https://www.isa.org.jm/ publications/proposed-technologies-for-mining-deep-seabed-polymetallic-nodules/.

ISA, 2009. Workshop on the results of a project to develop a geological model of polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone Kingston, Jamaica 14-17 December, 2009.

ISA, 2012, International Seabed Authority, 2012. Environmental Management Needs for Exploration and Exploitation of Deep Sea Minerals. Kingston Jamacia: International Seabed Authority (ISA Technical Study No. 10).

ISA 2010a, International Seabed Authority, 2010. A Geological Model of Polymetallic Nodule Deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and Prospector's Guide for Polymetallic Nodule Deposits in the Clarion- Clipperton Fracture Zone. International Seabed Authority Technical Study: No. 6 ISBN: 978-976-95268-2-2.

ISA 2010b, International Seabed Authority, 2010. Recommendations for the guidance of contractors for the assessment of the possible environmental impacts arising from exploration for polymetallic nodules in the Area. ISBA/16/LTC/7. Issued by the Legal and Technical Commission.

ISA, 2017, International Seabed Authority, 2017. Towards an ISA environmental management strategy for the area. Report of an international workshop convened by the German Environment Agency (UBA), the German federal Institute for Geoscience and Natural Resources (BGR) and the Secretariat of the International Seabed Authority (ISA) in Berlin, Germany, 20-24 March 2017. ISA Technical Study: No. 17.

Kaluza et al. 2010, Kaluza P., Kolzsch A., Gastner M.T. and Blasius B., 19 January 2010. The complex network of global cargo ship movements", Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment, Carl von Ossietzky Universitat, published online in Journal of the Royal Society Interface.

Kim 2018, Kim P.P. 2018. Reduction rates of silico-manganese slags from various raw materials. Paper, Norwegian University of Science and Technology. 2018. p. 1.

Kotlinski and Stoyanova 2006, Kotlinski, R. and Stoyanova, V., 2006 Buried and surface polymetallic nodule distribution in the eastern Clarion–Clipperton Zone: main distinctions and similarities. Advances in Geosciences Vol. 9: Solid Earth, Ocean Science & Atmospheric Science (2006) Eds. Yun-Tai Chen et al. World Scientific Publishing Company, pp 67-74.

Kuhn and Rühlemann 2021, Kuhn, T.; Rühlemann, C., 2021. Exploration of Polymetallic Nodules and Resource Assessment: A Case Study from the German Contract Area in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone of the Tropical Northeast Pacific. Minerals 2021, 11, 618. https:// doi.org/10.3390/min11060618.

Lee et al. 2008, Lee, G.C, Kim, J., Chi, S.B., Ko, Y.T and Ham, D.J., 2008. Examination for correction factor for manganese nodule abundance using the free fall grab and box corer. The Sea: Journal of the Korean Society of Oceanography, Vol 13, No. 3 pp 280-285.

Manheim 1978, Manheim F.T., 1978. Book review of G. P. Glasby, Marine manganese deposits. Geochemica et Cosmochimica Acta 42(5):541. Cited in: ISA. 2010. A geological model of polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and prospector's guide for polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone. International Seabed Authority Technical Study.

MARGIN 2024, Breakdown of geo-obstacle distribution per geo-obstacle probability model class (Breakdown of geo-obstacle distribution per geo-obstacle probability model class.pdf).

Mero 1965, Mero J., 1965. The Mineral Resources of the sea. Volume 1 (Elsevier Oceanography Series).

Novikov and Bogdanova 2007, Novikov G.V. and Bogdanova O. Y., 2007, Transformations of Ore Minerals in Genetically Different Oceanic Ferromanganese Rocks, ISSN 0024-4902, Lithology and Mineral Resources, 2007, Vol. 42, No. 4, pp. 303–317.

Parianos 2021, Parianos, J., & Madureira, P., 2021. Geomorphology of the Clarion Clipperton Zone, tropical North Pacific Ocean. Journal of Maps, 17(2), 760–768. https://doi.org/10.1080/17445647.2021.2001387.

Parianos et al. 2021. Parianos, J., Lipton, I., Nimmo, M., 2021. Aspects of Estimation and Reporting of Mineral Resources of Seabed Polymetallic Nodules: A Contemporaneous Case Study. Minerals 2021, 11, 200. https://doi.org/10.3390/min11020200.

PEA update 2020.

Peakcock, 2023, Peacock, T. The GSR Patania II Expedition: Technical Achievements & Scientific Learnings. Global Sea Mineral Resources. Internal Report. March 2023.

Reuters. (2024, May 8). *Indonesia says nickel reserves enough for expansion, despite moratorium call* Retrieved from www.mining.com: https://www.mining.com/web/indonesia-nickel-reserves-enough-for-further-expansions-official-says/

Shimizu Y, Sugihara M, Fujinaga K, Nakamura K, Kato Y. Air-Lift Pumping System for Hybrid Mining of Rare-Earth Elements-Rich Mud and Polymetallic Nodules around Minamitorishima Island. Journal of Marine Science and Engineering. 2024; 12(9):1470.

Simon-Lledo E, Brett BJ, Huvenne VAI, Schoening T, Benoist NMA, Jeffrey RM, Durden JM, Jones DOB 2019. Megafaunal Variation in the abyssal landscape of the Clarion Clipperton zone. Progress in Oceanography 170:119-133.

Skowronek et al. 2021. Skowronek, A., Macia̧g, Ł., Zawadzki, D., Strzelecka, A., Baláž, P., Mianowicz, K., Abramowski, T., Koneˇcný, P., Krawcewicz, A., 2021. Chemostratigraphic and Textural Indicators of Nucleation and Growth of Polymetallic Nodules from the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone (IOM Claim Area). Minerals 2021, 11, 868. https://doi.org/10.3390/ min11080868.

Spickermann 2012, Spickermann R., 2012. Rare earth content of manganese nodules in the Lockheed Martin Clarion-Clipperton Zone exploration areas. Proceedings Off-shore Technology Conference, Houston Texas.

Sridhar et al. 1976. Sridhar R, Jones W.E., and Warner J.S. Extraction of copper, nickel and cobalt from sea nodules. JOM, April 1976;28:32–7.

Sridhar R, et al. United States Patent #4,049,438, Filed February 14, 1975.

Subarna, R. A. (2024, September 14). *Smelters squeeze Indonesia's nickel ore supply*. Retrieved from eastasiaforum.org: https://eastasiaforum.org/2024/09/14/smelters-squeeze-indonesias-nickel-ore-supply/

Terayama and Ikeda 1983, Transactions of the Japan Institute of Metals, Vol. 24, No. 11 (1983), pp. 754 – 758

The Star. (2025, March 4). *Indonesia nickel boom is forcing its own smelters to shut down*. Retrieved from www.thestar.com: https://www.thestar.com.my/aseanplus/aseanplus-news/2025/03/04/indonesia-nickel-boom-is-forcing-its-own-smelters-to-shut-down#goog_rewarded

Tilot 2006, Tilot V, 2006. Biodiversity and distribution of megafauna. Vol. 1: The polymetallic nodule ecosystem of the Eastern Equatorial Pacific Ocean; Vol. 2: Annotated photographic atlas of the echinoderms of the Clarion-Clipperton fracture zone. Paris, UNESCO/IOC, 2006 (IOC Technical Series, 69).

TMC 2024, TMC the metals company Inc., October 2024. NORI Area D Prefeasibility Study, NORID-THEMC-0610-00-RPT-00025 – NORI-D PROJECT ZERO – PRE-FEASIBILITY STUDY. (Confidential).

Wiley, 2025. Wiley Rein LLP, July 2025. Reliance Memorandum: United States Regulatory Framework for Deep Seabed Mineral Recovery under the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA). (Confidential).

United Nations Division for Ocean Affairs and the Law of the Sea and the ISA. (2004). Marine Mineral Resources: Scientific advances and economic perspectives.

XPS, 2020. 'Sea Nodules Converting Testwork' XPS project 3019815.00, 22-Apr-2020. (Confidential).

25 Reliance on information provided by registrant

In preparing inputs to the Mine Plan and in estimating the Mineral Reserve, QPs have relied on information provided by the registrant, TMC, regarding the following aspects of Modifying Factors:

- Macroeconomic trends, data, and assumptions, and interest rates (see Section 19 and subsection 12.2.14 Economic Modifying Factors)
- Marketing information and plans within the control of the registrant (see Section 16 and subsection 12.2.12 Marketing Modifying Factors).
- Legal matters outside the expertise of the QPs, such as statutory and regulatory interpretations affecting the mine plan (see parts of Section 3).
- Environmental matters outside the expertise of the QPs (see Section 17 and sub-section 12.2.1)
- Accommodations the registrant commits or plans to provide to local individuals or groups in connection with its mine plans (see parts of Section 17).
- Governmental factors outside the expertise of the QPs (see parts of Section 3 and Section 19).

The QPs consider it is reasonable to reply upon the information provided by the registrant in respect of the above factors as the registrant employs specialist personnel in these areas who have access to information to which the QPs do not.

Our offices

Australia

Adelaide
Level 1, 12 Pirie Street
Adelaide SA 5000 Australia
T +61 8 8201 1800
E adelaide@amcconsultants.com

Brisbane
Level 15, 100 Creek Street
Brisbane Qld 4000 Australia
T +61 7 3230 9000
E brisbane@amcconsultants.com

Melbourne
Level 12, 477 Collins Street
Melbourne Vic 3000 Australia
T +61 3 8601 3300
E melbourne@amcconsultants.com

Perth
Level 3, 1100 Hay Street
West Perth WA 6005 Australia
T +61 8 6330 1100
E perth@amcconsultants.com

Canada

Toronto
140 Yonge Street, Suite 200
Toronto ON M5C 1X6 Canada
T +1 647 953 9730
E toronto@amcconsultants.com

Vancouver
200 Granville Street, Suite 202
Vancouver BC V6C 1S4 Canada
T +1 604 669 0044
E vancouver@amcconsultants.com

South Africa

Cape Town
First Floor, Willowbridge Centre
Carl Cronje Drive
Cape Town 7530 South Africa

T +27 720 833 231
E capetown@amcconsultants.com

United Kingdom
Reading
Registered in England and Wales
Company No. 3688365
Office 336a, Davidson House
Forbury Square
Reading, Berkshire RG1 3EU United Kingdom

T +44 1628 778 256
E unitedkingdom@amcconsultants.com

Registered Office:
Kinetic Centre
Theobald Street
Elstree
Hertfordshire WD6 4PG United Kingdom

Centurion
Ground Floor (G05), Building 14, Block B
Byls Bridge Office Park
Corner of Olievenhoutbosch and Jean Ave
Centurion 0157 South Africa

T +27 720 833 231
E capetown@amcconsultants.com

Exhibit 96.2

AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
ABN 58 008 129 164

Level 12, 477 Collins Street
Melbourne Vic 3000
Australia

T +61 3 8601 3300
E melbourne@amcconsultants.com

amcconsultants.com

Report

Technical Report Summary-Initial Assessment of TOML and NORI Properties, Clarion-Clipperton Zone
TMC the metals company Inc.

AMC Project 0225054
Effective date: 4 August 2025

Qualified Persons:
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation
APYS Subsea Ltd
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd
Lanasera Pty Ltd
Anthony O'Sullivan, Chief Development Officer, TMC the metals company Inc.
Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Manager, TMC the metals company Inc.
Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer, TMC the metals company Inc.
Adam Price, Project Controls Manager, TMC the metals company Inc.

mine smarter

1 Executive summary

1.1 Introduction

A very large nickel, manganese, cobalt, and copper resource occurring as polymetallic nodules is located on the seafloor in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone (CCZ) of the north-east Pacific Ocean. TMC the metals company Inc. (TMC), through their wholly owned subsidiaries, are undertaking assessment on the technical and economic viability of recovering metals from polymetallic nodules to support increasing demand from electrification, electric vehicle (EV) battery and stainless-steel demand. Working with offshore and onshore partners, TMC has designed and demonstrated nodule collection and processing systems that can generate nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese products with little to no solid waste (AMC Consultants, 2025).

Four consortia of offshore development companies demonstrated the technical feasibility of collecting, lifting, and converting nodules into metals in the 1970s, but development of the industry was frustrated by the absence of regulation and a governing body. In 1994, the United Nations (UN) established the International Seabed Authority (ISA) pursuant to the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS). The ISA governs the development of seabed resources for UNCLOS member states in the territories beyond the exclusive economic zones governed by coastal states. This international territory is known as the Area.

TMC through its subsidiaries, Nauru Ocean Resources Inc. (NORI) and Tong Offshore Mining Limited (TOML), holds exploration contracts for a total of ten areas in the CCZ regulated by the ISA. NORI holds exploration rights to four areas (NORI A, B, C, and D) totaling 74,830 km^2 that were granted in July 2011. TOML holds exploration rights to six areas (TOML A, B, C, D, E and F) covering 74,713 km^2 under an exploration contract approved in July 2011 and then formalized on 11 January 2012.

These exploration contracts were granted and formalize an exploration area, for a term of 15 years with a program of activities approved for the first five-year period. NORI and TOML have a priority right to apply for an exploitation contract to exploit polymetallic nodules in the respective Contract Areas (ISA Regulation 24(2)). Both the NORI and TOML exploration contracts may be extended for periods of five years at a time beyond the initial 15-year period, provided NORI and TOML have made efforts in good faith to comply with the requirements of the plan of work. These exploration contracts do not confer any commercial production rights. A separate Plan of Work for exploitation must be submitted and approved by the ISA Council before any commercial recovery may occur.

At the time of this report, the ISA is yet to finalize the Mining Code, including Regulations on the Exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area as required under UNCLOS.

In 1980, the Unites States of America (U.S) enacted the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA) 30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.) authorizing the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to issue licenses for exploration and permits for commercial recovery from the deep seabed. These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure that U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite the US not being a party to the UNCLOS or the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary The Metals Company USA LLC (TMC USA) has submitted requests directly under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA. These applications are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ.
- Exploration License for USA-B Area which covers 121,789 km^2 in the CCZ.

USA-A includes the existing ISA approved exploration Area identified as NORI Area D and TOML area F. USA-B includes the existing ISA approved exploration Areas identified as NORI Areas A, B, C and TOML Areas A, B, C, D, and E.

These applications are still under review and commencement of Commercial Recovery by TMC USA is subject to approval of these licenses under DSHMRA. At the time of writing this report, TMC USA does not hold any exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits under the DSHMRA framework.

TMC USA has submitted applications for such rights, and subject to regulatory review and approval, anticipates that any future commercial recovery activities would be conducted pursuant to a permit issued by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) under the U.S. legal regime.

Any reference in this Initial Assessment (IA) to activities proposed to be conducted by TMC USA is inherently uncertain and should be considered forward-looking in nature. No assurance can be given that any permit under DSHMRA will be issued, or that if issued, such permit will contain terms and conditions commercially or operationally viable for the project considered in this IA.

This IA considers only the Areas for which TMC have mineral rights, specifically, the NORI and TOML Areas subject to existing ISA approved exploration licenses (collectively known as the Property). This IA specifically excludes NORI Area D as this is the subject of a separate Pre-Feasibility Study (PFS) (AMC Consultants, 2025).

A phased development is outlined for the NORI and TOML areas that make up the TMC Property. Each offshore collection system comprises collectors on the seafloor, Vertical Transport System (VTS), and Production Vessels (PV) that are expected to collect polymetallic nodules. The nodules are expected to be transferred from the PV to a Transport Vessel (TV). The polymetallic nodules are expected to be shipped to onshore processing facilities, where established processing technology are expected to be used to produce manganese silicate, a feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production used in steel making, and nickel-cobalt-copper matte which is expected to be refined into products in the US that can be used in energy, defense, manufacturing, and infrastructure.

A converted drillship, the Hidden Gem, reclassed as the world's first deepwater mining ship, was used by NORI to support successful test mining in 2022 (Test Mining), where 3,000 wet metric tonnes (wmt) of nodules were lifted to the surface. Learnings from the Test Mining and further testing and modelling completed by Allseas has informed engineering of the First-Generation Mining System (1^{st} Gen), the commercial-scale system as described in the NORI Area D Technical Summary Report (AMC Consultants, 2025). The engineering of the Second-Generation Mining System (2^{nd} Gen) is expected to be informed by the operational and environmental performance of the 1^{st} Gen.

TMC has commissioned AMC Consultants Pty Ltd (AMC) to conduct an IA of developing the full ground position held by TMC through its subsidiaries NORI and TOML. An IA is a conceptual study of the potential viability of Mineral Resources. This Initial Assessment is preliminary in nature, includes Inferred Mineral Resources and describes the economic viability of mining and processing systems that are at conceptual stage of development. However, many of the concepts in the IA are based on systems studied and designed at a prefeasibility level for NORI Area D (AMC Consultants, 2025).

This IA indicates that development of the Mineral Resources within the NORI and TOML Areas, is potentially technically and economically viable and indicates a positive economic outcome is possible. Headline results of the IA financial evaluation are provided in Table 1.1. However, due to the low level of confidence in much of the Mineral Resource base, the need for more exploration, and the need for more detailed evaluation of aspects of the Project, such as seafloor bathymetry, engineering design, environmental characterization, and mine planning, the technical and economic viability has not yet been demonstrated.

Table 1.1 Project headline financials

Item	UOM	Amount
Total Revenue	US$M	$298,923
Post-Tax NPV8	US$M	$18,081
Post-Tax NPV0	US$M	$122,364
Project IRR (Real Terms)	%	35.6%
Project Payback – after pre-production period	Years	2
EBITDA	US$M	$171,852
EBITDA per tonne (dry nodules)	US$/t	$349
Total Project Capital	US$M	8,852

Note: The economic projections presented in this table are based on Measured, Indicated, and Inferred Mineral Resources and do not support a determination of Mineral Reserves or demonstrate economic viability

1.2 Location

The Property is located within the CCZ of the northeast Pacific Ocean (Figure 3.1) between Hawaii and Mexico. The western end of the CCZ is approximately 1,000 km south of the Hawaiian island group. From here, the CCZ extends over 4,500 km east-northeast, in an approximately 750 km wide trend, with the eastern limits approximately 2,000 km west of southern Mexico. The region is well-located to ship nodules to the American continent or across the Pacific to Asian markets.

The Property comprises of nine separate areas (NORI A, B, C, TOML A, B, C, D, E and F) with a combined area of 124,381 km^2.

1.3 Regulatory environmental and the tenements

The principal regulatory environments governing the international seabed area include:

- The UN Convention on the Law of the Sea, of 10 December 1982 (The Convention).
- The 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (the 1994 implementation Agreement).
- The Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA) (30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.)

Part XI of the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement deals with mineral exploration and exploitation in the Area, providing a framework for entities to obtain legal title to areas of the seafloor from the ISA for the purpose of exploration and eventually exploitation of resources.

The Convention entered into force on 16 November 1994. As of October 2024, the Convention had been signed by 169 States Parties[1] and the European Union. The US is currently not a party to the Convention.

The Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act, enacted in 1980 by the U.S., authorizes the issuance of Exploration Licenses and Commercial Recovery Permits over the deep seabed. These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite not being party to UNCLOS.

To date, the ISA has issued regulations on prospecting and exploration for polymetallic nodules in the Area.

[1] https://itlos.org/en/main/the-tribunal/states-parties/

At the time of this report, the ISA is yet to finalize the Mining Code, including Regulations on the Exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area as required under UNCLOS.

Consequently, TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary TMC USA on April 28 2025, submitted applications for two exploration licenses and a commercial recovery permit under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA.

These applications are still under review and TMC's claim to these areas under DSHMRA are subject to approval of these licenses and permits by NOAA. NOAA has advised TMC USA that the exploration license applications are substantially complete, which provides TMC USA with the priority right to areas subject to application, which includes the Property, for the duration of the application process.

1.4 Geology and Mineral Resources

Seafloor polymetallic nodules occur in all oceans, but the CCZ hosts a relatively high abundance of particularly nickel and copper-rich nodules. The CCZ seafloor forms part of the Abyssal Plains, which are the largest physiographic province on Earth.

The average depth of the seafloor in the Project area ranges from 3,800 m to over 6,000 m. The Abyssal Plains are traversed by ridges and are punctuated by inactive volcanoes rising 500 up to 2,000 m above the seafloor.

The formation and distribution of polymetallic nodules in the CCZ are primarily controlled by water depth, latitude, and seafloor sediment type. Geological domains identified include volcanic outcrops, volcanic highs, sediment drifts, and high-slope (>6°) areas, which were excluded from resource estimates.

Exploration data underpinning the Mineral Resource estimates comprise historical sampling by Pioneer Contractors using free-fall grab samplers (FFG) and box core (BC) samplers, supplemented by recent campaigns conducted by NORI and TOML involving box coring, dredging, multibeam echosounder MBES surveys, side scan sonar, sub-bottom profiling, autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV) deployments, and photographic seabed imaging.

Nodule abundance is reported on a wet basis with an assumed moisture content of 28% for TOML areas, and 24% for NORI-A, B, and C. No significant correlations were found between moisture content and nodule size, grade, or geological domain. Nodule size measurements and long-axis estimation methods were applied to improve abundance estimates from photographic data.

Mineral Resource estimation employed geostatistical techniques including declustering to correct for sample spacing bias, variogram modeling to characterize spatial continuity, and Ordinary Kriging for grade interpolation. The Mineral Resource classification follows SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300), with Measured, Indicated, and Inferred categories assigned based on data density and quality (Table 1.2). Areas with sparse data or high uncertainty, such as volcanic highs and steep slopes, were excluded.

Table 1.2 NORI and TOML Mineral Resource estimates, in situ, at 4 kg/m^2 abundance cut-off

Area	Classification	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m²)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
NORI-A	Inferred	72	9.3	1.35	1.06	0.22	28.0
NORI-B	Inferred	36	11.0	1.43	1.13	0.25	28.9
NORI-C	Inferred	402	11.0	1.26	1.03	0.21	28.3
TOML-A	Inferred	114	11.1	1.11	0.96	0.23	25.0
TOML-B	Measured	3	11.8	1.3	1.0	0.2	27.6
TOML-B	Indicated	14	11.1	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.6
TOML-B	Inferred	63	9.1	1.2	1.0	0.3	25.9
TOML-C	Indicated	15	8.6	1.3	1.2	0.2	30.5
TOML-C	Inferred	115	9.0	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.2
TOML-D	Indicated	29	12.2	1.3	1.2	0.2	30.1
TOML-D	Inferred	102	9.0	1.3	1.2	0.2	28.8
TOML-E	Inferred	58	10.6	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.7
TOML-F	Indicated	12	21.6	1.5	1.2	0.1	32.5
TOML-F	Inferred	244	16.6	1.4	1.2	0.1	32.2

Note: Tonnes are quoted on a wet basis; grades are reported on a dry basis consistent with industry practice.

Moisture content was estimated to be 28% w/w for TOML and 24% for NORI-A, -B, and -C. These estimates are presented on an undiluted basis without adjustment for resource recovery. The estimates in this table include Inferred, Measured and Indicate Mineral Resources. These are not Mineral Reserves and do not have demonstrated economic viability.

1.5 Development plan and mining methods

The development plan for the Property envisions a phased, 23-year mining operation leveraging advanced offshore technologies including remotely operated Collector Vehicles (CV), VTS, and PVs. Mining is expected to target polymetallic nodules on seafloor slopes up to 6°, with recovered nodules transported to onshore facilities for processing into manganese silicate and nickel-cobalt-copper products essential for steelmaking and battery materials.

The life of mine schedule prioritizes higher grade areas, commencing with TOML-F before progressing through the other areas in a systematic sequence designed to optimize resource extraction and maintain steady production aligned with processing capacity. Environmental safeguards such as buffer zones are integrated throughout the plan. This approach, informed by exploration in the NORI and TOML areas and Test Mining and environmental studies conducted in NORI Area D provides a framework for developing the Mineral Resource in the wider Property. The development of these NORI and TOML areas are expected to benefit from the offshore and onshore experience gained through operating in NORI Area D.

The mining method for the NORI and TOML areas employs bespoke deep-sea technology featuring remotely operated, self-propelled, tracked CVs equipped with Coandă nozzles to efficiently recover polymetallic nodules from the seafloor. These CVs are expected to operate on slopes up to 6°, removing nodules while minimizing sediment disturbance. Nodules are expected to be transported via a VTS using airlift or hydraulic pumps to PVs on the surface, where dewatering and offloading is expected to occur before shipment to processing facilities.

These 2nd Generation Production Systems are expected to build on successful Test Mining conducted in 2022 in NORI Area D and a decade of experience that is expected to be gained from operating a 1st Generation Production System in the NORI Area D.

A total of eight PVs are expected to operate within the Property across the 23 year mine life. Each PV is fitted with three 20 m wide CVs and is capable of producing 7 million wet metric tonnes per annum (Mwmtpa) of nodules in the high abundance areas within TOML-F and 5 Mwmtpa in the other areas that make up the Property.

The fleet of production, transport, and supply vessels are expected to be coordinated through centralized offshore control centers, enabling safe, efficient, and adaptive operations with reduced offshore personnel exposure. This innovative mining approach is designed to maximize resource recovery while maintaining environmental stewardship and operational reliability in the challenging deep-sea environment.

1.6 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing

The mineral processing strategy is supported by extensive bench-scale and pilot-scale metallurgical testwork that has demonstrated the technical feasibility of converting polymetallic nodules into marketable products. Bulk sampling and Test Mining successfully recovered nodule material from NORI Area D that was used for large scale processing trials.

The processing flowsheet involves drying and calcining the nodules in a rotary kiln(s) followed by electric furnace (RKEF) smelting to produce two immiscible phases: a nickel-cobalt-copper-rich alloy and a manganese silicate oxide slag. A pilot plant campaign produced 35 t of calcine that was then smelted at eXpert Process Solutions (XPS, a division of Glencore) and tested in industrial scale trials by Pacific Metals company Ltd (PAMCO), producing demonstration quantities of these target products with stable operation and emissions compliant with relevant regulations. High recoveries were achieved, including approximately 97% for nickel, 93% for cobalt, 94% for copper, and 99% for manganese. The alloy is expected to be further processed in Peirce-Smith converters to generate a matte product containing 5% iron. This was also piloted at XPS with suitable quantities of matte generated to feed downstream refinery bench-scale testing.

Matte is expected to be refined hydrometallurgically using a two-stage leach process, followed by copper electrowinning, cobalt and nickel solvent extractions (SX), impurity removal steps and crystallization of the nickel and cobalt phases to generate sulfate products. The copper phase that are expected to be generated following the electrowinning is copper cathode. Bench-scale testing at Lakefield, Ontario (SGS) was able to generate about 1 kg of nickel and cobalt sulfates suitable for use in batteries.

The process design leverages existing ferronickel production assets in Indonesia with minor modifications to accommodate nodule feedstock, supporting cost-effective commercial-scale operations. New build refineries in the USA are expected to then complete the conversion of the matte produced in Indonesia to saleable materials.

1.7 Market studies

Benchmark Mineral Intelligence (BMI) was contracted by TMC to provide market overviews for three commodities: nickel, cobalt, and copper and to provide forecasts for the premia/discounts for nickel and cobalt sulfate over nickel metal price forecasts.

CRU Group (CRU) was commissioned by NORI to examine the marketability and pricing for the three intermediate products that are expected to be produced (CRU, 2024):

- Nickel-cobalt-copper alloy.
- Nickel-cobalt-copper matte.
- Manganese silicate.

Additionally, CRU was retained to provide manganese ore market forecasts.

The global market for critical metals like nickel, cobalt, and copper is expected to grow significantly, driven by demand from sectors such as the transportation, electrical infrastructure and consumer goods sectors. BMI and CRU forecast the following metal supply, demand and price scenarios:

- Nickel production, led by Indonesia, is expected to rise from 3.6 Mt in 2025 to 4.9 Mt by 2035, fuelled by about equal its demand in stainless steel and EV batteries.
- Cobalt demand is expected to grow at a 5.8% compound annual growth rate through 2030, dominated by battery production, with supply heavily reliant on the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) and China. But as mines begin to deplete reserves and the visibility for new assets into the 2030s is limited, BMI's expectation for mine supply is a slight decline into the 2030s.
- Manganese remains essential for steelmaking, although projected demand is forecast to remain flat. However, this is expected to be tempered by rapid demand growth in battery-grade products.
- Copper, a critical for green energy infrastructure, faces an 8 Mt shortfall by 2035, despite production increases in Africa.
- Prices for these metals are forecast to rise steadily due to tightening supply-demand dynamics.

TMC manganese silicate and TMC matte are expected by CRU to gain market traction given their high quality. CRU notes:

- TMC manganese silicate offers advantages in silico-manganese alloy production and battery applications, with demand projected to grow alongside manganese markets.

1.8 Environmental studies, permitting, community, or social impact

Extensive environmental baseline studies and impact assessments have been conducted in NORI Area D and are planned to be expanded across the other NORI and

TOML areas to support responsible deep-sea mining development in the CCZ. These studies are expected to encompass geological, oceanographic, biogeochemical, benthic ecological, and trace metal analyses, building from the current knowledge base generated through extensive offshore efforts in NORI Area D and the growing dataset in published literature.

The ISA provides an exploration regulatory framework, requiring comprehensive Environmental and Social Impact Assessments (ESIA) and Environmental Impact Statements (EIS) as prerequisites for moving to exploitation licensing. Both NORI and TOML are compliant with current ISA exploration contract obligations.

Environmental management plans are expected to incorporate mitigation strategies informed by the 2022 Test Mining, which demonstrated limited and manageable environmental impacts.

Key social benefits include community development and training programs, particularly supporting the Republic of Nauru and Tonga. The absence of competing economic uses and landowner displacement further supports the project's social license. A key environmental benefit compared to terrestrial mines is that the project is expected to essentially produce zero waste from the mining and processing of the nodules.

Overall, the environmental and social programs establish a strong foundation for sustainable seabed mineral development while ensuring adherence to evolving international and national regulatory requirements.

1.9 Capital and operating cost estimates

The proposed strategy for the project includes engaging contract miners to conduct polymetallic nodule collection and transport to existing RKEF facilities in Indonesia with Contractor capital investment recovered in the first 10 years of operation. Sustaining capital during PV class surveys is included for the collection equipment. RKEF processing in Indonesia is expected to be by tolling arrangement. Matte from RKEF facilities in Indonesia is expected to be shipped to the USA for refinement through TMC built / owned / operated infrastructure with associated capital expenditure (CAPEX) and operating expenditure (OPEX) included.

The CAPEX for the NORI and TOML projects is estimated at approximately US$15,000 million, encompassing Project capital of $8,850 million, sustaining capital over the life of mine (LOM) of US$5,300 million, with closure costs estimated at US$805 million.

OPEX is forecasted at approximately US$126,000 million over the LOM, averaging US$188.3 per wet metric tonne of nodules processed. Key OPEX components include collection, transport, processing, refining, consumables, and corporate costs, with processing and refining representing the largest shares.

These cost estimates, prepared to an IA -level confidence standard, incorporate contingencies and reflect current engineering designs and operational plans.

1.10 Economic evaluation

The economic evaluation of the NORI and TOML projects demonstrates potential for strong financial viability based on a real, ungeared, post-tax discounted cash flow model using an 8% discount rate over a 23-year life of mine starting in 2037. The analysis incorporates metal price forecasts, metallurgical recoveries, payabilities, and detailed cost structures without inflation or escalation.

In the model, the proposed project delivers a post-tax net present value (NPV8) of approximately US$18,100 million and an EBITDA of US$172,000 million over the LOM. Sensitivity analyses highlight the project's resilience to fluctuations in metal prices, operating costs, and capital expenditures. Cash cost analysis positions the operation competitively within the global nickel market, supported by significant by-product credits from cobalt, copper, and manganese.

Overall, the economic evaluation confirms the robust commercial potential of the project under current assumptions. However, due to the low level of confidence in much of the Mineral Resource base, the need for more exploration, and the need for more detailed evaluation of aspects of the Project, such as seafloor bathymetry, engineering design, environmental characterization, and mine planning, the technical and economic viability has not yet been demonstrated.

1.11 Qualified Person's conclusions and recommendations

The Qualified Persons (QPs) recommend advancing the NORI and TOML projects through continued engineering development, environmental management, and operational planning to support a prefeasibility study.

Key priorities include more detailed bathymetric surveys, detailed definition and increase in confidence in the Mineral Resources, developing mine plans aligned with finalized Commercial Recovery Permit conditions, design and testing of 2nd Gen CVs, VTSs, PVs, and associated infrastructure, refinement of CAPEX and OPEX estimates. The buildup of experience expected through development and operation of the 1st Gen in NORI Area D are expected to be important for derisking the Project.

Expanding engineering studies and design efforts for the hydrometallurgical plant capabilities is required to meet required plant availability to manage proposed production volumes. Engagement and commercial arrangements with existing or emerging industry partners is key to TMC operating strategy and therefore recommended.

Environmental monitoring and adaptive management frameworks should be refined and aligned with finalized Commercial Recovery Permit conditions.

These recommendations collectively aim to mitigate risks, improve technical and economic outcomes, and support responsible advancement of the TMC Property.

Contents

1 Executive summary i
1.1 Introduction i
1.2 Location iii
1.3 Regulatory environmental and the tenements iii
1.4 Geology and Mineral Resources iv
1.5 Development plan and mining methods v
1.6 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing vi
1.7 Market studies vi
1.8 Environmental studies, permitting, community, or social impact vii
1.9 Capital and operating cost estimates vii

1.10 Economic evaluation viii
1.11 Qualified Person's conclusions and recommendations viii

2 Introduction 4
2.1 Registrant, terms of reference and purpose of report 4
2.2 Sources of information and data 5
2.3 Qualified personnel 5
2.4 Update to a previously filed Technical Report 7

3 Property description and location 8
3.1 Tenements and permits 8
3.1.1 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea 11
3.1.1.1 International Seabed Authority 13
3.1.2 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA) 13
3.1.2.1 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 13
3.2 Exploration contract obligations and sponsorship 14
3.2.1 Work program 15
3.2.2 Royalties and taxes 16

4 Accessibility, climate, local resources, infrastructure and physiography 17
4.1 Accessibility and infrastructure 17
4.2 Climate 17

5 History 18
5.1 Overview 18
5.2 Pioneer Contractors 18
5.3 NORI 21
5.4 TOML 22

6 Geological setting and mineralization 24
6.1 Global distribution of nodules 24
6.2 Regional tectonic setting and topographic features 24
6.3 Regional geological domains 26
6.4 Regional trends in polymetallic mineralization 27
6.5 Nodule formation and sedimentation 33
6.6 Nodule facies 36
6.7 Diagenetic crusts 39
6.8 Moisture content of nodules 39
6.9 Density of nodules 40
6.10 Abundance of nodules in NORI and TOML 41
6.11 Nodule size distribution 42
6.11.1 NORI Area D - Physical measurement of size and estimation of abundance 42
6.11.2 NORI Area D - Measurement of nodule dimensions using image processing 44
6.11.3 TOML Areas – Measurement of nodule sizes 48

7 Exploration 49
7.1 Free fall grab sampling method 49
7.2 Box core sampling method 50
7.3 Comparison of FFG and BC samples 53
7.4 Multibeam Bathymetry methods 54
7.5 Historical exploration data 54
7.5.1 Pioneer Contractor sample data supplied to NORI 55
7.5.2 Pioneer Contractor sample data supplied to TOML 57
7.6 NORI exploration data 59
7.6.1 Dredging and nodule sampling 59
7.6.2 Box-coring and nodule sampling 61
7.6.3 MBES surveys 61
7.6.4 AUV surveys 62
7.6.5 Long axis estimation 63
7.6.6 Geotechnical data collection 65
7.7 TOML exploration data 65
7.7.1 Dredging and nodule sampling 66
7.7.2 Box-coring and nodule sampling 67
7.7.3 MBES surveys 70
7.7.4 Deep-tow surveys 71
7.7.5 Long axis estimation 72
7.7.6 Geotechnical data collection 75

8 Sample preparation, analysis, and security 81
8.1 Pioneer Contractor data 81
8.2 TOML data 81
8.2.1 Box core samples 81
8.2.2 Abundance estimates by LAE method 83
8.3 NORI-A, B, C data 83

9 Data verification 85
9.1 TOML data 85
9.2 NORI-A, B, C data 86

10 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing 87
10.1 Metallurgical testwork 87

10.2 Bulk sample collection testwork 88
10.3 Bulk sampling testing laboratories 89
10.4 Summary of test work results 89
10.4.1 Round robin assaying program 89
10.4.2 Key findings of calcination at FLS 92
10.4.3 Piloting – Electric Furnace Smelting at XPS – Metallurgical Summary 93
10.4.4 Smelting: metallurgical results 95
10.4.4.1 Partition coefficients (PC) in smelting 95
10.4.4.2 Slag chemistry 99
10.4.4.3 Elemental distribution – partition coefficients in converting 100
10.4.5 Demonstration scale trials at PAMCO 104
10.4.6 Hydrometallurgical refinery bench scale testing 105
10.4.6.1 Two-stage leaching 105
10.4.6.2 Cobalt refining 106
10.4.6.3 Nickel refining 106
10.5 Iron in final matte 107
10.6 Manganese silicate 107
10.7 Summary and QP's opinion 108

11 Mineral Resource estimates 109
11.1 Cautionary note regarding Mineral Resource estimates 109
11.2 Estimation process for NORI-A, B and C 109
11.2.1 Geological domains 109
11.2.2 Nodule sample data 109
11.2.3 Declustering 111
11.2.4 Top-cuts 111
11.2.5 Spatial continuity 112
11.2.6 Geological block model 114
11.2.7 Mineral Resource estimation 114
11.2.8 Mineral Resource classification 115
11.3 Estimation process for TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F 115
11.3.1 Geological domains 116
11.3.2 Nodule sample data 120
11.3.3 Sample statistics 121
11.3.4 Representativeness of sampling 128
11.3.5 Spatial continuity 132
11.3.6 Variography of nodule coverage estimated from photo profiles 136
11.3.7 Variography of nodule abundance estimated from photo profiles 137
11.3.8 Variography of the backscatter data 137
11.3.9 Geological block model 138
11.3.10 Mineral Resource estimation 139
11.3.11 Mineral Resource classification 139
11.4 Cut-off grade 139
11.5 Estimation results 140
11.5.1 NORI-A, B and C 140
11.5.1 TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F 143

12 Mineral Reserve estimates 150

13 Mining methods 151
13.1 Overview 151
13.2 Development plan 151
13.3 Offshore mining system 151
13.3.1 Test Mining in NORI Area D in 2022 151
13.3.2 First generation production system to operate in NORI Area D (1st Gen) 153
13.3.3 Second generation production system (2nd Gen) 154
13.3.3.1 Mining concept 154
13.3.3.2 PV 155
13.3.3.3 Collector Vehicle (CV) 156
13.3.3.4 Vertical Transport System (VTS) 159
13.3.3.5 Dewatering 160
13.3.3.6 Nodule handling, storage and offload 160
13.3.3.7 TV 160
13.3.3.8 Operating conditions and downtime 161
13.4 Offshore support and logistics 162
13.5 Mining philosophy 164
13.6 Offshore operations 164
13.6.1 PVs 164
13.6.2 TVs 164
13.6.3 SVs 165
13.6.4 Onshore control centre and Offshore maintenance 165
13.6.5 Marine infrastructure 165
13.7 Update of potential mining domains 165

13.8 LOM basis of design 172
13.8.1 Mine planning factors overview 172
13.8.2 Quantity of nodules recovered by the collector vehicle 173
13.8.2.1 Potential mining domains 173
13.8.2.2 Buffer Zones 174
13.8.2.3 Geo-obstacles 174
13.8.2.4 Gap between collector paths 175
13.8.2.5 Nodule collection recovery 175
13.8.2.6 Overall recoverable inventory 176
13.8.3 Quantity of nodules recovered to market 177
13.8.3.1 Physical capacity of the CVs 177
13.8.3.2 Weather 177
13.8.3.3 Planned maintenance and unplanned repairs 178
13.8.3.4 Field efficiency 179
13.8.3.5 Production rate summary 179
13.9 LOM plan 180
13.9.1 LOM plan assumptions 180
13.9.2 LOM plan result 181

14 Processing and recovery methods 188
14.1 Overview 188
14.2 Flowsheet options screening and selection 189
14.2.1 Manganese product and associated market 189
14.2.2 Near zero solid waste generation 191
14.3 Process description 191
14.3.1 Alloy production 192
14.3.2 Matte production 192
14.3.3 Matte refining 192
14.4 Flowsheet development 193
14.4.1 Literature review 193
14.4.2 Bench-scale test work 194
14.4.3 Concept engineering 195
14.4.4 Piloting 195
14.4.4.1 Piloting overview 195
14.4.4.2 Calcining at FLSmidth 196
14.4.4.3 Smelting, sulfidation and converting at XPS 198
14.4.5 Demonstration scale calcining and smelting trials 200
14.4.6 Manganese silicate slag quality 201

15 Project infrastructure 202
15.1 Onshore engineering 202
15.1.1 Overview 202
15.1.2 Front-end nodule processing to matte in Indonesia 202
15.1.2.1 Recent build-out of RKEF processing capacity in Indonesia 203
15.1.2.2 Increasing difficulty sourcing high-grade saprolite ores 203
15.1.2.3 Economic performance: Increasing losses 204
15.1.2.4 Prospects for polymetallic nodule processing 204
15.1.2.5 Indonesian processing cost benchmarking 205
15.1.2.6 Product quality specifications 206
15.1.3 Matte refining in the US 207
15.1.3.1 Further processing of nodules in the US 207
15.1.4 Production plan 207
15.2 Offshore infrastructure 209

16 Market studies 210
16.1 TMC offtake agreement 210

16.2 Marketing analysis 210
16.3 Market outlook 211
16.3.1 Nickel 211
16.3.1.1 Nickel market overview 211
16.3.1.2 Nickel supply 211
16.3.1.3 Nickel demand 211
16.3.1.4 Nickel supply gap and prices 212
16.3.2 Cobalt 212
16.3.2.1 Cobalt market overview 212
16.3.2.2 Cobalt supply 212
16.3.2.3 Cobalt demand 212
16.3.2.4 Cobalt supply gap and prices 212
16.3.3 Manganese 213
16.3.3.1 Manganese market overview 213
16.3.3.2 Manganese supply 213
16.3.3.3 Manganese demand 213
16.3.3.4 Manganese supply gap and prices 213
16.3.3.5 EMM and MnSO4 214
16.3.4 Copper 214
16.3.4.1 Copper market overview 214
16.3.4.2 Copper supply 214

16.3.4.3 Copper demand 214
16.3.4.4 Copper supply gap and prices 214
16.4 TMC manganese silicate 214
16.5 TMC matte 215
16.6 Refinery products 215
16.7 Revenue forecasts 216

17 Environmental studies, permitting and social or community impact 219
17.1 Permitting process 219
17.1.1 ISA 219
17.1.1.1 NORI 220
17.1.1.2 TOML 220
17.1.1.3 Compliance status 220
17.1.2 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act 221
17.1.2.1 Compliance status 221
17.1.2.2 Alternate permitting pathways 221
17.2 Transferable information from NORI Area D and TOML-F 221
17.2.1 Baseline studies 222
17.2.1.1 Regional geological setting 222
17.2.1.2 Substrate composition and geotechnical characteristics 222
17.2.1.3 Polymetallic nodules: Abundance, chemistry, and variability 222
17.2.1.4 Water mass distribution and circulation dynamics 223
17.2.1.5 Biogeochemical baselines: Nutrients, organic carbon, and carbonate chemistry 223
17.2.1.6 Benthic biological communities: Diversity, connectivity, and temporal variability 224
17.2.1.7 Trace metals in sediments and porewaters 225
17.2.2 Test mining 225
17.2.3 Summary and implications for the wider CCZ 226
17.3 Scope of baseline studies 226
17.4 Post mining land uses 228
17.5 Remediation 228
17.6 Tailings 228
17.7 Mitigation plans 228

18 Capital and operating costs 229
18.1 Introduction 229
18.2 Operating strategy 229
18.2.1 Baseline operating assumptions 230
18.3 CAPEX 231
18.3.1 Production vessel #5-12 231
18.3.2 Refining facility 231
18.3.3 Sustaining CAPEX 232
18.3.4 Closure CAPEX 232
18.4 OPEX 233
18.4.1 Collection costs 234
18.4.2 Shipping costs 234
18.4.3 Contractor (offshore) costs 235
18.4.4 Consumables (offshore fuel) costs 235
18.4.5 Processing cost 236
18.4.6 Refining cost 236
18.4.7 Corporate cost 237

19 Economic analysis 239
19.1 Cautionary statement regarding forward-looking information 239
19.2 Methodology used 240
19.3 Economic model parameters 240
19.4 Total development costs 240
19.5 Total sustaining costs 240
19.6 Total closure costs 240
19.7 Total operating costs 240
19.8 Commodity prices 241
19.9 Recovery rates 241
19.10 Payable terms 241
19.11 Royalty / Payments 242
19.11.1 Nauru continuity benefits 242
19.11.2 Tonga continuity benefits 242
19.11.3 Low Carbon Royalty (LCR) 243
19.12 Taxes 243
19.13 Economic analysis 243
19.14 Sensitivity analysis 261
19.15 Cash cost analysis 262
19.16 Conclusion economic analysis 264

20 Adjacent properties 265
20.1 TOML-F 265
20.2 NORI-C 266
20.3 TOML-D and TOML-E 266
20.4 TOML-C 266
20.5 TOML-B and NORI-B 266
20.6 NORI-A 267
20.7 TOML-A 267

21 Other relevant data and information 268

22 Interpretation and conclusions 269
22.1 Mineral tenure 269
22.2 Exploration and data verification 269
22.3 Mineral processing testwork 270
22.4 Mineral Resource 270
22.5 Mining methods 271

22.6 LOM planning 271
22.7 Processing 271
22.8 Infrastructure 272
22.9 Market studies 272
22.10 Environmental studies 273
22.11 Capital and operating costs 273
22.12 Economic evaluation 274

23 Recommendations 275

24 References 276

25 Reliance on information provided by the registrant 282

Tables

Table 1.1 Project headline financials iii
Table 1.2 NORI and TOML Mineral Resource estimates, in situ, at 4 kg/m^2 abundance cut-off v
Table 2.1 List of Qualified Persons responsible for each Section 5
Table 2.2 TMC Qualified Persons responsible for each section 6
Table 3.1 NORI Area details 9
Table 3.2 NORI Area extents 9
Table 3.3 TOML exploration area in the CCZ 9
Table 3.4 TOML area extents 9
Table 5.1 NORI and TOML ISA exploration Contract Areas and Pioneer Contractors 18
Table 6.1 Polymetallic Nodule Facies in NORI Area D 36
Table 7.1 Summary of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data from the NORI Areas 56
Table 7.2 Summary of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data in TOML areas 58
Table 7.3 Summary of Historical Samples from the Reserved Areas outside the TOML Contract Area 58
Table 7.4 NORI-A, B, C datasets 59
Table 7.5 Assay Results for NORI-B Nodule Samples 61
Table 7.6 TOML datasets by area and by campaign 66
Table 10.1 Comparison of bulk sample analyses with NORI Area D measured resource for the test mining area. 88
Table 10.2 Location and testing methods of laboratories used 89
Table 10.3 Analytical methods undertaken by each laboratory 90
Table 10.4 Nickel laboratory results 91
Table 10.5 Copper laboratory results 91
Table 10.6 Cobalt laboratory results 91
Table 10.7 Manganese laboratory results 92
Table 10.8 CRM results for each laboratory 92
Table 10.9 Updates to Process Design Criteria from pilot kiln test work 93
Table 10.10 Pilot calcine blend assay vs. process model update mass balance 93
Table 10.11 Pilot metal assays vs. process model mass balance 93
Table 10.12 Pilot smelting slag assays vs. process model mass balance 94
Table 10.13 Pilot matte assays vs. process model mass balance 95
Table 10.14 Optimum leach parameters and extractions 105
Table 10.15 Optimum leach assays 106

Table 10.16 Assays of input and output streams from the CoSX 106
Table 10.17 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals with an external third-party specification 106
Table 10.18 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated nickel sulfate crystals with two external third-party specifications 107
Table 10.19 Target specifications for manganese silicate 107
Table 11.1 Summary statistics of samples within the NORI Area used for the 2012 Mineral Resource estimate. 109
Table 11.2 Minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for NORI Areas 111
Table 11.3 NORI-A, B, C and D declustered statistics (historic data only) 111
Table 11.4 NORI-A, B, C and D top cuts used for NORI 2012 Mineral Resource estimate 112
Table 11.5 Variogram models for NORI-A, B and C 112
Table 11.6 NORI-A, B and C block model framework (UTM coordinates) 114
Table 11.7 NORI-A, B and C model variables 114
Table 11.8 Minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for each TOML Area 121
Table 11.9 Statistics of all samples within the TOML Areas 122
Table 11.10 Declustered statistics of all nodule samples within TOML Area 122

Table 11.11 Statistics of Pioneer Contractor samples within the TOML Areas 122
Table 11.12 Statistics of TOML samples within the TOML Areas 122
Table 11.13 Statistics of TOML LAE samples within the TOML Areas 122
Table 11.14 Variogram models 134
Table 11.15 Comparison of model areas and actual license areas 138
Table 11.16 NORI-TOML breakeven cut-off abundance estimate 140
Table 11.17 NORI-A, B and C Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at 4 kg/m^2 abundance cut-off 141
Table 11.18 TOML Area Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at a 4 kg/m^2 nodule abundance cut-off 144
Table13.1 2nd Gen PV key specifications 156
Table 13.2 2nd Gen TV Key Specifications 161
Table 13.3 PV key operating parameters 164
Table 13.4 TV average cycle time estimate 165
Table 13.5 Slope and seamount adjustments 173
Table 13.6 Geo-obstacle assumptions 174
Table 13.7 Geo-obstacle mine planning factors 175
Table 13.8 Nodule recovery components 176
Table 13.9 Overall nodule inventory by area, outside of areas >6º and seamount and lease buffers with <4 kg/m^2 abundance cut off. 176
Table 13.10 Additional losses and recoverable inventory summary 177
Table 13.11 Metocean statistics for the Property 178
Table 13.12 Production rate summary 180
Table 13.13 LOM plan production summary 182
Table 14.1 Simple Screening Process for Various Nodule Processing Flowsheet Options 189
Table 14.2 Summary of Bench-scale Test Work 195
Table 14.3 Summary of pilot scale test work 196
Table 15.1 Summary of the benchmarked costs derived from SMM source data 205

Table 15.2 Sample grades of key pay metals for the matte being generated in Indonesia 206
Table 15.3 Sample specification for the manganese silicate product generated in Indonesia 206
Table 15.4 TMC USA IA production plan 208
Table 16.1 Metal and metal sulfate price forecasts (real US$2025) 216
Table 16.2 Metallurgical recoveries 216
Table 16.3 Ni-Co-Cu matte payable terms percentage of LME benchmark prices 216
Table 16.4 Forecast payable metal production - metal in matte 216
Table 16.5 Forecast payable refined metal production - metal in sulfate and cathode 217
Table 16.6 Forecast production – manganese in manganese silicate 217
Table 16.7 Revenue Forecast US$2025 Real 218
Table 18.1 Total CAPEX summary 231
Table 18.2 PV recovered CAPEX summary 231
Table 18.3 Refining facility recovered CAPEX summary 231
Table 18.4 Sustaining CAPEX 232
Table 18.5 Closure CAPEX 233
Table 18.6 OPEX summary 233
Table 18.7 OPEX unit cost US$/wmt summary 233
Table 18.8 Collection costs summary 234
Table 18.9 Shipping Costs Summary 234
Table 18.10 Offshore contractor costs summary 235
Table 18.11 Offshore fuel costs summary 235
Table 18.12 Processing costs summary 236
Table 18.13 Refining summary 236
Table 18.14 Corporate costs summary 237
Table 19.1 Total operating costs 241
Table 19.2 Average LOM commodity prices 241
Table 19.3 Recovery rates 241
Table 19.4 LOM average payable terms 242
Table 19.5 Nauru continuity benefits payment schedule 242
Table 19.6 Tonga continuity benefits payment schedule 242
Table 19.7 Summary of forecast project economics 244
Table 19.8 Project cash flow on an annualized basis 246
Table 19.9 C1 Nickel cash cost 263
Table 19.10 All-in Sustaining Cost 264
Table 20.1 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m^2 abundance cut-off 265
Table 20.2 Summary of Mineral Resource reported for BGR exploration Contract Area 266

Figures

Figure 3.1 Location of NORI and TOML Project and other ISA exploration areas within the CCZ. 8
Figure 3.2 NORI and TOML Areas 10
Figure 3.3 Map of seafloor jurisdictions 12
Figure 3.4 Maritime space under the 1982 UNCLOS 12

Figure 4.1	Global cargo shipping network	17
Figure 5.1	Schematic of Lockheed Group's 1970s trial mining system	20
Figure 5.2	Remote operated collector used by the Lockheed Group in 1970s trial mining	20
Figure 6.1	Schematic diagram of average abundance of polymetallic nodules in four major locations	24
Figure 6.2	Bathymetric map of the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone	25
Figure 6.3	Formation of abyssal hills at mid-oceanic ridges	25
Figure 6.4	Map of nickel grade distribution in the CCZ	28
Figure 6.5	Map of cobalt grade distribution in the CCZ	29
Figure 6.6	Map of copper grade distribution in the CCZ	30
Figure 6.7	Map of manganese grade distribution in the CCZ	31
Figure 6.8	Map of abundance distribution in the CCZ	32
Figure 6.9	Polymetallic Nodule Types	34
Figure 6.10	Sections through a S-type Nodule (left) and a R-type Nodule with a S-type core (right)	34
Figure 6.11	Example nodules found in the TOML area	35
Figure 6.12	Examples of nodules recovered during the 2018 NORI Area D campaign	35
Figure 6.13	Camera Imagery Showing Change from Type 3 Nodules (right) to Type 2 (left)	37
Figure 6.14	Map of nodule classification compared to backscatter intensity	38
Figure 6.15	Density data from TOML Areas B, C, D and F and Hessler and Jumars (1974)	41
Figure 6.16	Schematic representation of average proportion of nodules by depth in the box cores in NORI Area D campaign C3	42
Figure 6.17	Scatter plot comparing axis lengths of 500 manually measured nodules	43
Figure 6.18	Scatter plot comparing actual versus predicted nodule abundance in C7A box cores	44
Figure 6.19	Scatter plot of nodule major axis dimension versus nodule intermediate axis dimension for all nodules	45
Figure 6.20	Box plots of nodule major axis dimension for all box cores	46
Figure 6.21	Log probability plot of nodule major axis dimensions by interpreted nodule facies	47
Figure 6.22	Plans showing nodule sizes and types from TOML F and sub-areas B1, C1, D1, D2, and F1	48
Figure 7.1	Cartoon showing the recovery of nodules using a free fall grab sampler	50
Figure 7.2	Cartoon showing the recovery of nodules using a BC sampler	50
Figure 7.3	KC Denmark 0.75 m² box corer	52
Figure 7.4	Comparison of returned abundances from BC and FFG at test stations within the KORDI exploration area	53
Figure 7.5	MBES operations schematic	54
Figure 7.6	Box plots of sample grades within the NORI areas compared with all other data from the Reserved Blocks	57
Figure 7.7	Box Plots of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data within the TOML Contract Areas	59
Figure 7.8	Examples of Nodule Samples Recovered during NORI's 2012 Exploration Campaign	60
Figure 7.9	Photos of Nodules Collected from NORI-A during the 2013 NORI campaign	61
Figure 7.10	Example of AUV camera photo mosaic from NORI Area D, showing nodules	63

Figure 7.11	Comparison of nodule long axis measurements, taken using digital calipers, and individual nodule wet weight for BC001, BC002, BC003, and BC005	64
Figure 7.12	Dredge sample locations in TOML areas from CCZ13 and CCZ15 campaigns	67
Figure 7.13	Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-B sub-area B1	68
Figure 7.14	Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-C sub-area C1	68
Figure 7.15	Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-D sub-area D2	69
Figure 7.16	Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-D sub-area D1	69
Figure 7.17	Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-F and sub-TOML-F1	70
Figure 7.18	CCZ13 MBES bathymetry coverage	71
Figure 7.19	Photo-profile logging of nodule coverage (%) and outcrop types in TOML Areas	72
Figure 7.20	Example of LAE measurement using bottom shot, top shot and grid photographs	73
Figure 7.21	TOML-B correlations with best fit factors (L) and Felix 1980 factors (R)	74
Figure 7.22	TOML-C correlations with best fit factors (L) and Felix 1980 factors (R)	74
Figure 7.23	Comparison of physical samples and LAE in TOML-B and C	75
Figure 7.24	High degree of sediment "powder" and cover in TOML-D	75
Figure 7.25	Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area B1	76
Figure 7.26	Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area C1	77
Figure 7.27	Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area D2	77
Figure 7.28	Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area D1	78
Figure 7.29	Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Areas F and F1	79
Figure 7.30	Summary vane shear results from TOML areas	80
Figure 9.1	Comparison between TOML BC and dredge samples and historical samples	86
Figure 10.1	Bulk sampling dredge used to collect the bulk sample for metallurgical pilot tests	89
Figure 10.2	Copper partition coefficients during smelting	96
Figure 10.3	Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting	97
Figure 10.4	Manganese in metal vs. iron in slag	98
Figure 10.5	Phosphorus partition coefficients	99
Figure 10.6	Manganese and phosphorus in slag versus iron in slag	100
Figure 10.7	Nickel partition coefficients in converting	101
Figure 10.8	Copper partition coefficients in converting	102
Figure 10.9	Cobalt partition coefficients in converting	103
Figure 10.10	Manganese partition coefficients in converting	104
Figure 11.1	NORI-A, B, C and D, showing location of historic data	110
Figure 11.2	Variogram map of nickel for NORI-A, B and C	113
Figure 11.3	Major and semi-major variograms for nickel	114
Figure 11.4	TOML-A interpreted geological domains	117
Figure 11.5	TOML-B interpreted geological domains	118
Figure 11.6	TOML-C interpreted geological domains	119
Figure 11.7	TOML-D and E interpreted geological domains	119
Figure 11.8	TOML-F interpreted geological domains	120
Figure 11.9	Location of the historical sample data provided by the ISA and IOM and the TOML data	121
Figure 11.10	Histogram and log-probability plot of abundance for all samples within TOML Areas	123
Figure 11.11	Histogram and log-probability plot of Mn for all samples within TOML Areas	123

Figure 11.12	Histogram and log-probability plot of Ni for all samples within TOML Areas	124
Figure 11.13	Histogram and log-probability plot of Cu for all samples within TOML Areas	124
Figure 11.14	Histogram and log-probability plot of Co for all samples within TOML Areas	125
Figure 11.15	Log-probability plots for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co by TOML Areas	126
Figure 11.16	Box plots for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co by TOML Areas	127
Figure 11.17	Photo-profile line CCZ15-F01 that crosses TOML-B1	128
Figure 11.18	Comparison of nodule coverage against nodule abundance	129
Figure 11.19	Comparison of nodule abundance estimated from photos against nodule abundance estimated manually using the LAE method	130
Figure 11.20	Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F01 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource	131
Figure 11.21	Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F02 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource	131
Figure 11.22	Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F04 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource	132
Figure 11.23	Semi-variogram maps for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co	133
Figure 11.24	Abundance omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms	134
Figure 11.25	Mn omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms	135
Figure 11.26	Ni omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms	135
Figure 11.27	Cu omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms	135
Figure 11.28	Co omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms	136
Figure 11.29	Omni-directional and 060° directional variograms for nodule coverage estimated from sea floor photos	136
Figure 11.30	Omni-directional and 060° directional variograms for nodule abundance estimated using the LAE method from sea floor photos	137
Figure 11.31	Omni-directional variograms for backscatter values	138
Figure 11.32	Combined NORI-A, B and C abundance tonnage curves	141
Figure 11.33	Map of sample distribution and block model estimates of nickel, NORI 2012 estimates	142
Figure 11.34	Map of sample distribution and block model estimates of abundance, NORI 2012 estimates	143
Figure 11.35	Combined TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F abundance tonnage curves	144
Figure 11.36	Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area A	145
Figure 11.37	Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area B	146
Figure 11.38	Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area C	147
Figure 11.39	Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area D and Area E	148
Figure 11.40	Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area F	149
Figure 13.1	The Hidden Gem post completion of Test Mining	152
Figure 13.2	Photographs of the Test Mining Collector	152
Figure 13.3	Illustration of the First-Generation Production System during nodule offloading operations.	153

Figure 13.4	Artist impression of a second-generation PV with three seafloor CVs and TV alongside	154
Figure 13.5	Artist impression of the PV showing key components	156
Figure 13.6	Artist impression of a single seafloor collector. Note: Umbilical not shown	157
Figure 13.7	Schematic representation of the collector head.	158
Figure 13.8	Artist impression of the VTS connecting the PV on the surface to the CV on the seafloor	159
Figure 13.9	Basic airlift configuration	160
Figure 13.10	Artist impression of TV in port with hatches open during nodule offloading operations	162
Figure 13.11	MV Island Commander, example of offshore supply vessel used in the oil and gas industry	163
Figure 13.12	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-A	167
Figure 13.13	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-B	167
Figure 13.14	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-C	168
Figure 13.15	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-B	168
Figure 13.16	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-C	169
Figure 13.17	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-DE	169
Figure 13.18	Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-F	170
Figure 13.19	Bathymetric maps of NORI-A, B, C and D	171
Figure 13.20	Bathymetric maps of TOML-B, C, D, E and F	172
Figure 13.21	Artistic impression of CV operations showing a gap between collection paths	175
Figure 13.22	NORI-TOML mining progression by lease	181
Figure 13.23	LOM plan annual production by lease	182
Figure 13.24	LOM plan annual nodule abundance and grades	183
Figure 13.25	TOML-F collection sequence by year	183
Figure 13.26	TOML-D/TOML-E collection sequence by year	184
Figure 13.27	NORI-C collection sequence by year	184
Figure 13.28	TOML-B collection sequence by year	185
Figure 13.29	TOML-C collection sequence by year	185
Figure 13.30	NORI-B collection sequence by year	186
Figure 13.31	NORI-A collection sequence by year	186
Figure 13.32	TOML-A collection sequence by year	187
Figure 14.1	2018 production of manganese ore (blue) compared to 60 ktpa nickel equivalent project (green)	190
Figure 14.2	2017 Manganese ore consumption by end-use project	190
Figure 14.3	Major Equipment and Associated Streams from Pyrometallurgical Process	191
Figure 14.4	Major Equipment and Associated Stream from the Hydrometallurgical Refinery	193
Figure 14.5	Schematic of kiln and ancillary equipment as originally configured	197
Figure 14.6	Pilot Plant Rotary Kiln, Feed-End to Right.	198
Figure 14.7	Pilot Plant DC Furnace and Ancillary Equipment	199
Figure 14.8	DC Furnace Dimensions	200
Figure 15.1	Total 2023 production capacity for ferronickel and nickel pig iron smelting, and number of existing smelting facilities by country	203
Figure 15.2	Rapid increase in Indonesian ore demand, decreasing saprolite ore grades and increase ore imports from the Philippines	204

Figure 19.1 Forecast project post-tax free cash flow (US$M) 244
Figure 19.2 Tornado Graph 262

List of Acronyms

AAS	Atomic absorption spectroscopy
AC	Alternating current
ALS	ALS Laboratory Group
AMC	AMC Consultants Pty Ltd
AMR	Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe
APEI	Area of Particular Environmental Interest
AUV	Autonomous underwater vehicle
BC	Box core
BGR	German Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources
BMI	Benchmark Mineral Intelligence
BV	Bureau Veritas laboratory
CAGR	Compound annual growth rate
CCZ	Clarion-Clipperton Zone
CIF	Cost, insurance and freight
CIM	Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum
CoV	Coefficient of variation
CRU	CRU Group
CV	Collector vehicle
The Convention	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982
DC	Direct current
DeepGreen	DeepGreen Metals Inc.
DGE	DeepGreen Engineering Pte. Ltd.
DHI	DHI Water and Environment
DISCOL	Disturbance and Recolonisation Experiment
DOMES	Deep Ocean Mining Environmental Study
DP	Dynamic positioning
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DSHMRA	Deep Sea Hard Mineral Resources Act
EF	Electric furnace
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EMM	Electrolytic manganese metal
EMMP	Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan
EMS	Environmental Management System
ESIA	Environmental and Social Impact Assessment
ESG	Environment, social and governance
EW	Electro-winning
EV	Electric vehicle
FFG	Free-fall grab samplers
FLS	FLSmidth
FOB	Free on board
FV	Finishing vessel
Glencore	Glencore International Ag
Golder	Golder Associates Pty Ltd.
HPAL	High-pressure acid leaching

HPMSM	High-purity $MnSO_4$ monohydrate
Hs	Significant wave height
IA	Initial Assessment
ICP-MS	Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry
ID	Inside diameter
IDW	Inverse Distance Weighting – an estimation method utilising distance-weighted local averages
IFREMER/Ifremer	Institut Français de Recherche pour l'Exploitation de la Mer (French Research Institute for Exploitation of the Sea)
Inco	International Nickel Corporation
IMDG	The International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code
IMSBC	International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes Code
IOM	Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation
IRR	Internal rate of return
ISA	International Seabed Authority
IX	Ion exchange
KPM	Kingston Process Metallurgy
LARS	Launch and recovery system
LED	Light-emitting diode
LME	London Metal Exchange
LRMC	Long Run Marginal Cost

MBES	Multi-beam echo sounder
MHP	mixed hydroxide precipitate
MSP	mixed sulfide precipitate
MOU	Memorandum of understanding
NI 43-101	Canadian National Instrument 43-101
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NORI	Nauru Ocean Resources Inc.
NN	Nearest neighbour estimation method
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NPI	Nickel pig iron
NPV	Net present value
OK	Ordinary kriging – an estimation method utilising distance-weighted local averages
OMI	Ocean Mining Inc.
OMCO	Ocean Minerals Company
PAMCO	Pacific Metals Company
PFS	Pre-feasibility study
PLS	Pregnant liquor/leach solution
POX	Pressure oxidative leaching
PRZ	Preservation reference zone
PSD	Particle size distribution
PV	Production vessel
QA/QC	Quality assurance and quality control
QP	Qualified Person, as defined by Canadian National Instrument 43-101
R-type	Rough type nodules
Regulations	Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules in the Area
ROV	Remotely operated vehicle
RKEF	Rotary kiln and electric furnace

SBP	Sub-bottom profiler
SGS	SGS Lakefield, Ontario
SLN	Société le Niquel
SMM	Shanghai Metal Markets
S-R-type	Smooth-rough type nodules
SSS	Sidescan sonar
S-K 1300	Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the US Securities and Exchange Commission
S-type	Smooth type nodules
SV	Support vessel
SX	Solvent extraction
TOC	Total organic carbon
TOML	Tonga Off-shore Mining Limited
TMC	TMC the metals company Inc.
TMC USA	The Metals Company USA LLC
TV	Transport vessel
UN	United Nations
US	Unites States of America
UNCLOS	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea
USBL	Ultra-short baseline
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator Cartesian coordinate system
UTP	Underwater transponder array
Var	Variance
VTS	Vertical transport system
XPS	eXpert Process Solutions, a division of Glencore
XRF	X-ray fluorescence analysis
Yuzhmorgeologiya	State Enterprise Yuzhmorgeologiya (Russian Federation)

List of elements

Al	Aluminum
As	arsenic
Ba	barium
Ca	calcium
Cd	cadmium
Ce	cerium
Cl	chlorine
Co	cobalt
Cu	copper
Fe	iron
H_2O	hydrogen dioxide

H_2S	hydrogen sulfide
K	potassium
La	lanthanum
Mg	magnesium
Mn	manganese
MnO	manganese oxide
MnO2	manganese dioxide
Mo	molybdenum
Na	sodium
NaHS	sodium hydro sulfide
Na_2S	sodium sulfide
Nd	neodymium
Ni	nickel
P	phosphorus
Pb	lead
REE	rare earth elements
S	sulfur
SiO2	silicon dioxide
Sr	strontium
Ti	titanium
V	vanadium
Y	yttrium
Zn	zinc
Zr	zirconium

List of units

°	degree
°C	degrees Celsius
%	percent
% w/w	% mass/mass or weight
µm	microns
cm	centimeter
cm/s	centimeter per second
dmtu	dry metric tonne unit
G	gram
GWh	gigawatt-hours
ka	Thousand years
kg	kilogram
kg/m^2	kilograms per square meter (surface abundance)
km	kilometer
km^2	square kilometer
kn	knots
kPa	kilopascal
kt	kilotonne (metric)
kt/a	kilotonnes (metric) per annum
kWh/h	kilowatt hours per hour
kWh/t	kilowatt hours per tonne
Kt	Knots (nautical miles per hour)
Lb	pound
m	meter
m/h	meters per hours
m/s	meters per second
m^2	square meter
m^3	cubic meter
m^3/y	cubic meters per year
mbsl	meters below sea level
mg/L	milligrams per liter
mm	millimeter
MPa	megapascal
mt	metric tonnes
Mmt	million tonnes
Mmtpa	million tonnes per annum
Mwmt	million wet metric tonnes
Mwmtpa	million wet metric tonnes per annum
mV	millivolt
MW	megawatt
nm	nautical mile
ppm	parts per million
ppmw	parts per million weight
s	second
t	tonne (metric)

t/d	tonnes (metric) per day
t/h	tonnes (metric) per hour
US$	US dollar
wmt	Wet metric tonnes
y	year

2 Introduction

A very large nickel, manganese, cobalt, and copper resource occurring as polymetallic nodules is located in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone (CCZ) of the northeast Pacific Ocean between Hawaii and Mexico. The nodules are located at depths of between 4,000 to 6,000 m and have been explored with considerable success between the mid-1960s and the present day using a variety of deep-sea technologies. Successful trial extraction in the CCZ has also been carried out to demonstrate that the nodules can be collected and pumped to a surface platform and processed for recovery of metals.

Interest in seafloor mineral deposits grew through the 1960s. Several commercial and government funded organizations and consortia started exploring the oceans as part of a cooperative program known as the International Decade of Ocean Exploration. These organizations became known as Pioneer Contractors.

Exploration of the seafloor in international waters is administered by two governing bodies; the International Seabed Authority (ISA) the regulator of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), the regulator of the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA). These regulatory frameworks operate independently of one another.

TMC the metals company Inc. (TMC), through its wholly owned subsidiaries. NORI and Tonga Ocean Minerals Limited (TOML), hold exploration contracts with the ISA.

NORI holds exploration rights to four areas (NORI Area A, B, C, and D) in the CCZ that were granted by the ISA in July 2011. TOML holds exploration rights to six areas (TOML-A, B, C, D, E, and F) in the CCZ, under an exploration contract approved in July 2011, and then formalized on 11 January 2012 by the ISA.

TMC, through its wholly owned subsidiary TMC USA has submitted requests directly under the U.S. regulatory regime governed by DSHMRA. These applications are summarized below:

- Exploration License for the USA-A Area which covers 65,186 km^2 in the CCZ
- Exploration License for USA-B Area which covers 121,789 km^2 in the CCZ

USA-A includes the existing ISA approved exploration Area identified as NORI Area D and TOML area F. USA-B includes the existing ISA approved exploration Areas identified as NORI Areas A, B, C and TOML Areas A, B, C, D, and E.

As of the effective date of this report, these applications remain under review by NOAA. Any future rights to these U.S. areas remain contingent upon approval of the submitted applications. Accordingly, this report only assesses Mineral Resources located within areas covered by the ISA exploration contracts held by NORI and TOML.

2.1 Registrant, terms of reference and purpose of report

The registrant is TMC the metals company Inc. (TMC). TMC commissioned AMC Consultants Pty Ltd (AMC) to undertake an Initial Assessment (IA) of the Mineral Resources contained in NORI Area A, B, and C, and TOML-A, B, C, D, E, and F (combined as the Property) and compile a Technical Report Summary compliant with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300). This IA is preliminary in nature, includes Inferred Mineral Resources, and is not supported by a pre-feasibility or feasibility study. Mineral Resources are not Mineral Reserves and do not have demonstrated economic viability.

This IA contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of the U.S. securities laws. These statements include projections, expectations, and assumptions regarding future technical, regulatory, financial, and operational outcomes for areas of the NORI and TOML Contract Areas not currently covered by a pre-feasibility or feasibility study. These statements are based entirely on Measured, Indicated, and Inferred Mineral Resources and do not reflect demonstrated economic viability. The projected development scenarios, cost estimates, timelines, and financial metrics such as IRR and NPV are preliminary in nature and may differ materially from actual results due to changes in technical data, market conditions, permitting outcomes, regulatory frameworks, or other factors.

For a discussion of material risks and uncertainties that could affect these forward-looking statements, see “Item 1A. Risk Factors” and “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements” in TMC’s most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, as supplemented in subsequent SEC filings. Readers are also referred to the full cautionary statement regarding forward-looking information included in Chapter 19 of this report.

2.2 Sources of information and data

This Technical Report Summary is based on information and reports supplied by TMC, NORI, TOML, and TMC USA or in the public domain.

2.3 Qualified personnel

This Technical Report is authored by several experts or “Qualified Persons” (QPs), as defined in Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K promulgated by the US Securities and Exchange Commission (S-K 1300). The QPs are listed in Table 2.1 and Table 2.2. The QPs have not visited the site, as the nodules, which are the subject of the Technical Report, are located in the north-east Pacific Ocean and lie at a depth of approximately 4,500 m below sea level. As permitted by Item 1302(b)(2)(iii), personal inspection has been substituted with inspection of sample material and survey data collected using remotely operated vehicles (ROV), which the QPs consider reasonable given the depth and location of the deposit. Nodules are only accessible to autonomous or remotely operated specialist underwater vehicles.

Table 2.1 List of Qualified Persons responsible for each Section

Qualified Person	Responsible for the following report Sections:
AMC Consultants Pty Ltd	Sections 1.1, 1.4, 1.11, 2.1 - 2.4, 4, 5.1, 5.3, 6.8 - 6.10, 6.11.2, 7.1 - 7.4, 8.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.2, 8.3, 9.2, 11, 12, 13.7, 13.8.1, 13.8.2, 13.9, 20, 21, 22.2, 22.4, 22.6, 23 - 25
MARGIN - Marine Geoscience Innovation	Sections 6.1 - 6.6, 6.11.1, 7.6.2 - 7.6.5
APYS Subsea Ltd	Sections 7.6.6, 7.7.6
Canadian Engineering Associates Ltd	Sections 1.6, 10, 14, 15, 22.3, 22.7, 22.8
Lanasera	Sections 1.10, 19, 22.12
TMC the metals company Inc.	1.2, 1.3, 1.5, 1.7 - 1.9, 3.1, 3.1.1, 3.1.1.1, 3.1.2, 3.1.2.1, 3.2, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 5.2, 5.4, 6.7, 6.11.3, 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.6.1, 7.7.1 - 7.7.5, 8.2, 9.1, 13.1 - 13.6, 13.8.3, 16 - 18, 22.1, 22.5, 22.9 - 22.11 Refer to Table 2.2

Further details on the QP's employed by the Registrant are provided in Table 2.2.

Table 2.2 TMC Qualified Persons responsible for each section

Qualified Person	Responsible for the following report sections:
Anthony O'Sullivan, Chief Development Officer Anthony is a mining executive with over 30 years of experience in mineral exploration and project development. As Chief Development Officer at TMC, he oversees technical and strategic development of deep-sea polymetallic nodule projects. He has over 20 years' experience in subsea resource development with 10 of these years' experience in polymetallic nodule development involving exploration, development of environmental impact statements and permitting, project development, offshore equipment design, onshore processing and product marketing. He has held senior roles at Nautilus Minerals and BHP Billiton and is a co-inventor on multiple subsea mining patents. He is a current fellow of the AusIMM.	Sections 1.2, 1.3, 1.7, 3.1, 3.1.1, 3.1.1.1, 3.1.2, 3.1.2.1, 3.2, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 5.2, 5.4, 6.7, 6.11.3, 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.6.1, 7.7.1, 7.7.2, 7.7.3, 7.7.4, 7.7.5, 8.2, 9.1, 16, 22.1, 22.9
Rutger Bosland, Chief Innovation and Offshore Technology Officer Rutger is an offshore engineer and project leader with a track record of delivering pioneering technologies in deep-sea mining and heavy-lift engineering. He led the technical development of Pioneering Spirit, the world's largest offshore construction vessel, and oversaw the successful design, build, and testing of Allseas' integrated nodule collection system aboard Hidden Gem. Under his direction, Allseas executed the first integrated nodule collection trials in the Pacific Ocean since the 1970s. At TMC, he now leads the development and commercial scaling of the polymetallic nodule collection system. He is a current member of AusIMM.	Sections 1.5, 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, 13.6, 13.8.3, 22.5
Dr. Michael Clarke, Environmental Program Director Michael is an environmental scientist with extensive experience in marine biology, mining, environmental impact assessments, and regulatory compliance. At TMC, he leads the Environmental Program for the project, overseeing baseline studies, monitoring, and stakeholder engagement. He has contributed to the development of novel adaptive management systems and environmental monitoring protocols tailored to deep-sea mining. Michael is certified as an Environmental Practitioner and Impact Assessment Specialist by the Environmental Institute of Australia and New Zealand (EIANZ) and has participated in the planning and offshore execution of multiple research campaigns to the NORI Area D site.	Sections 1.8, 17, 22.10
Adam Price, Project Control Manager Adam is a seasoned project controls and analysis professional with over 15 years of experience managing estimate, cost, schedule, financial economics/planning /reporting and risk performance across large-scale, complex construction and infrastructure projects. In his current role at TMC, Adam leads the strategic planning, capital and operating estimating, economic analysis, modelling, implementation, and oversight of integrated project controls systems across all phases of project delivery—from Pre-Feasibility (PFS) and Feasibility Studies (FS) through to execution. Adam has worked across a wide range of estimating and contracting models and has a deep understanding of commercial structures and their implications on project performance and risk. His expertise spans the full project lifecycle, with a strong focus on establishing robust estimates, baselines, developing earned value management systems, and driving data-informed decision-making to optimize outcomes. Adam is a member of AACE International and AusIMM.	Sections 1.9, 18, 22.11

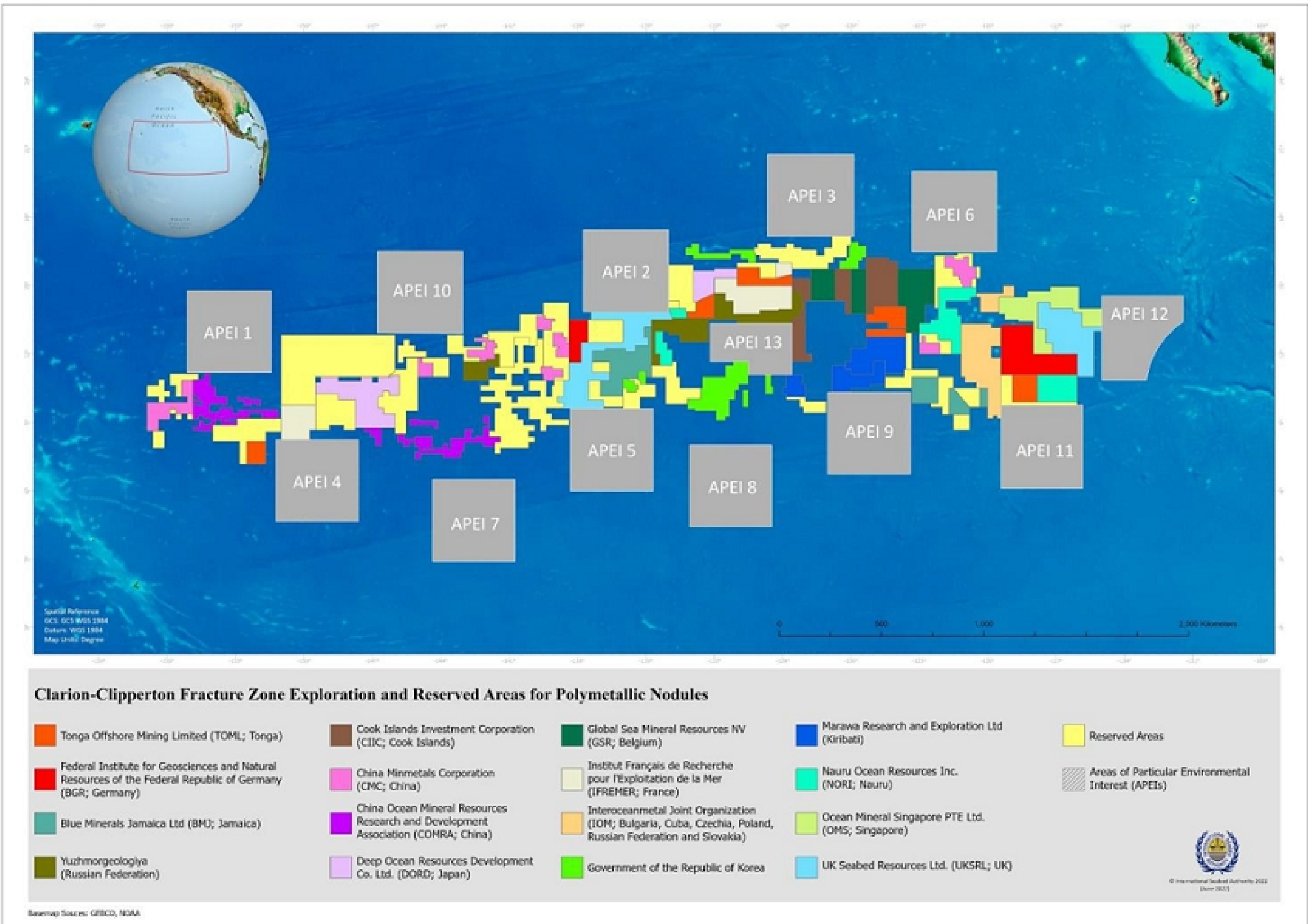
2.4 Update to a previously filed Technical Report

This IA refers to Mineral Resources previously reported for the NORI (AMC Consultants, 2021a) and TOML areas (AMC Consultants, 2021b). There has been no change to the Mineral Resources previously reported in these reports. This IA considers the combined Mineral Resources contained in NORI Area A, B, and C, and TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F.

3 Property description and location

The NORI and TOML properties are located within the CCZ of the northeast Pacific Ocean Figure 3.1. The CCZ is located in international waters between Hawaii and Mexico. The western end of the CCZ is approximately 1,000 km south of the Hawaiian island group. From here, the CCZ extends over 4,500 km east-northeast, in an approximately 750 km wide trend, with the eastern limits approximately 2,000 km west of southern Mexico. The region is well-located to ship nodules to the US or across the Pacific to Asian markets.

Figure 3.1 Location of NORI and TOML Project and other ISA exploration areas within the CCZ.



Source: https://www.isa.org.jm/map/clarion-clipperton-fracture-zone, downloaded 22 July 2025.

3.1 Tenements and permits

NORI holds exploration contracts covering four areas with a combined area of 74,830 km^2 (NORI Area A, B, C, and D) in the CCZ that was granted by the ISA in July 2011. Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 provide details regarding the location of the NORI areas. This IA considers only the NORI – A, B and C areas. NORI Area D is subject to a separate Technical Report Summary that is supported by a PFS (see AMC Consultants, 2025).

Table 3.1 NORI Area details

Area	Size (km^2)	ISA number	Pioneer Contractors
A	8,924	13	Yuzmorgeologiya
B	3,519	15	Yuzmorgeologiya
C	37,227	22	Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation (IOM)
D	25,160	25	Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe (AMR)

Table 3.2 NORI Area extents

Area	Minimum Latitude (DD)	Maximum Latitude (DD)	Minimum Longitude (DD)	Maximum Longitude (DD)	Minimum UTM X (m)	Maximum UTM X (m)	Minimum UTM Y (m)	Maximum UTM Y (m)	UTM Zone
A	11.5000	13.00000	-134.5830	-133.8330	545220.4	627276.0	1271339	1437255	8
B	13.5801	14.00000	-134.0000	-133.2000	607995.7	694759.8	1501590	1548425	8
C	12.0000	14.93500	-123.0000	-120.5000	500000.0	769458.3	1326941	1652649	10
D	9.8950	11.08333	-117.8167	-116.0667	410465.2	602326.1	1093913	1225353	11

DD – Decimal degrees, UTM - Universal Transverse Mercator map projection

TOML holds exploration rights to six areas (TOML A, B, C, D, E and F) with a combined area of 74,713 km^2 (Table 3.3 and Table 3.4) in the CCZ under an exploration contract approved in July 2011, and then formalized on 11 January 2012 by the ISA.

Table 3.3 TOML exploration area in the CCZ

Exploration Area	Reserved areas	Area (km^2)
Area A	2	10,281
Area B	15	9,966
Area C	16	15,763
Area D	20	15,881
Area E	21	7,002
Area F	25	15,820
Total		**74,713**

Table 3.4 TOML area extents

Area	Minimum Latitude (DD)	Maximum Latitude (DD)	Minimum Longitude (DD)	Maximum Longitude (DD)	Minimum UTM X (m)	Maximum UTM X (m)	Minimum UTM Y (m)	Maximum UTM Y (m)	UTM Zone
A	7.167 N	8.167 N	151.667 W	152.510 W	553972	647187	792205	902968	05N
B	13.580 N	14.667 N	132.000 W	133.200 W	694518	824685	1502009	1623605	08P
C	15.000 N	15.800 N	128.583 W	131.000 W	284947	544791	1658371	1747847	09P
D	13.125 N	14.083 N	123.583 W	125.333 W	247293	437022	1451031	1557860	10P
E	12.750 N	13.083 N	123.583 W	125.333 W	246693	436796	1409563	1447513	10P
F	9.895 N	11.083 N	117.817 W	118.917 W	289835	410804	1093917	1225828	11P

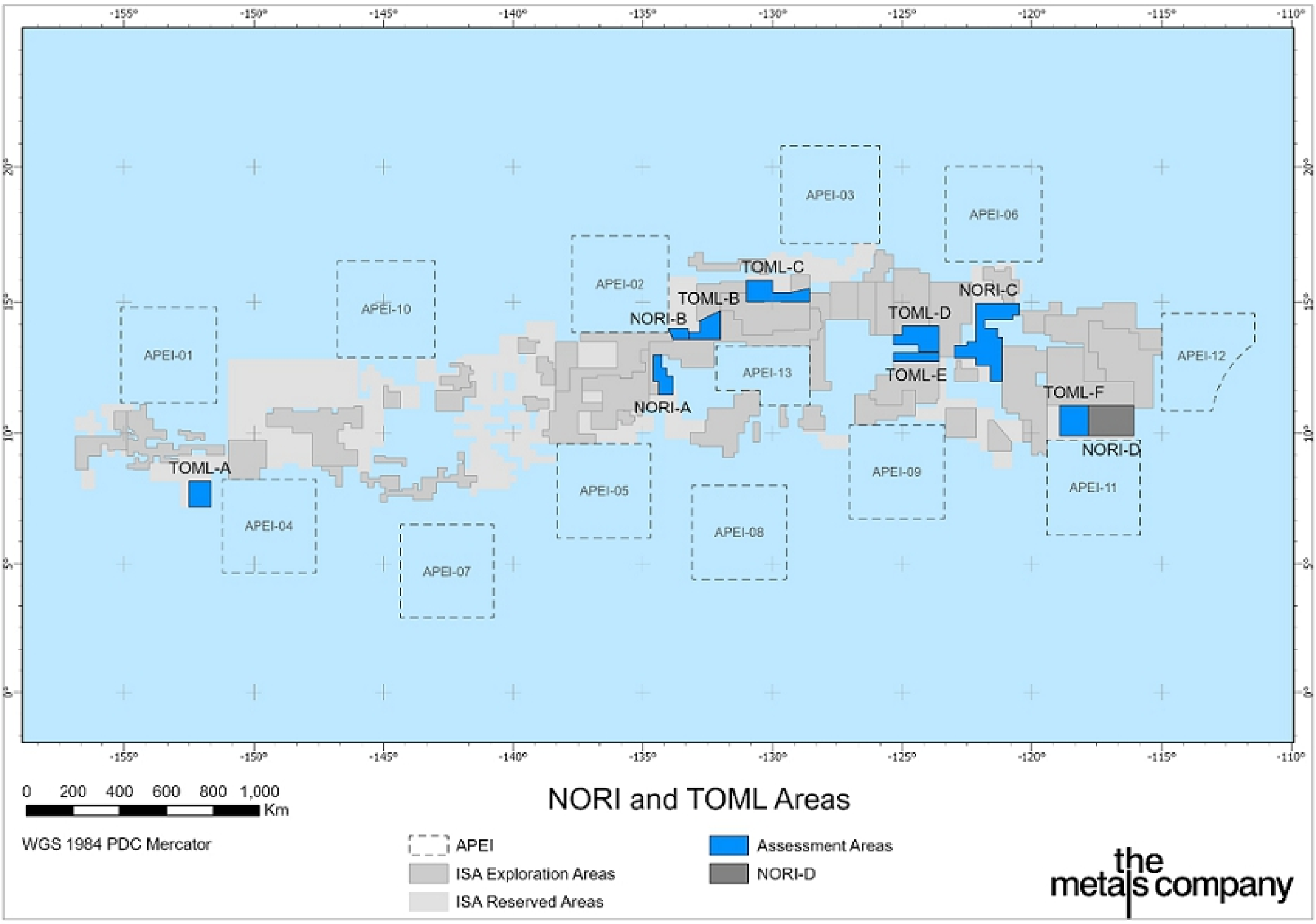
DD – Decimal degrees, UTM - Universal Transverse Mercator map projection

Figure 3.2 shows the location of the NORI and TOML Contract Areas. These contracts were granted for a term of 15 years and cover a program of activities for the first five-year period. These contracts also formalize the rights of NORI and TOML around tenure. Pursuant to the Regulations, NORI and TOML have priority right to apply for an exploitation contract to exploit nodules over the exploration Contract Area (ISA Regulation 24 (2)).

In April 2025, TMC USA submitted two applications (USA-A and USA-B) for polymetallic nodule exploration licenses and one application for a commercial recovery permit to NOAA under the U.S. DSHMRA framework. These exploration applications cover the NORI and TOML areas (Figure 3.2) currently held by TMC under the NORI and TOML ISA exploration contracts.

At the time of writing this report, TMC USA does not hold any exploration licenses or commercial recovery permits under the DSHMRA framework. However, TMC USA has submitted applications for such rights, and subject to regulatory review and approval, anticipates that any future commercial recovery activities would be conducted pursuant to a permit issued by NOAA under the U.S. legal regime. No assurance can be given that such rights will be granted or that regulatory approvals will be obtained on the anticipated timeline or terms.

Figure 3.2 NORI and TOML Areas



Source: TMC USA

To date, no commercial recovery permits for extracting minerals from the seafloor within the Property have been granted under ISA or DSHMRA.

3.1.1 United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea

The Area is defined as the seabed and subsoil beyond the limits of national jurisdiction (UNCLOS Article 1). Figure 3.3 shows a map of the Area (blue zone) as well as 200 nautical mile exclusive economic zones (grey zone) and extended continental shelf zones (orange zone). Figure 3.4 shows the relationship between depth, distance and jurisdiction.

The principal UNCLOS policy documents governing the Area include:

- The UNCLOS, of 10 December 1982 (The Convention).
- The 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (the 1994 implementation Agreement).

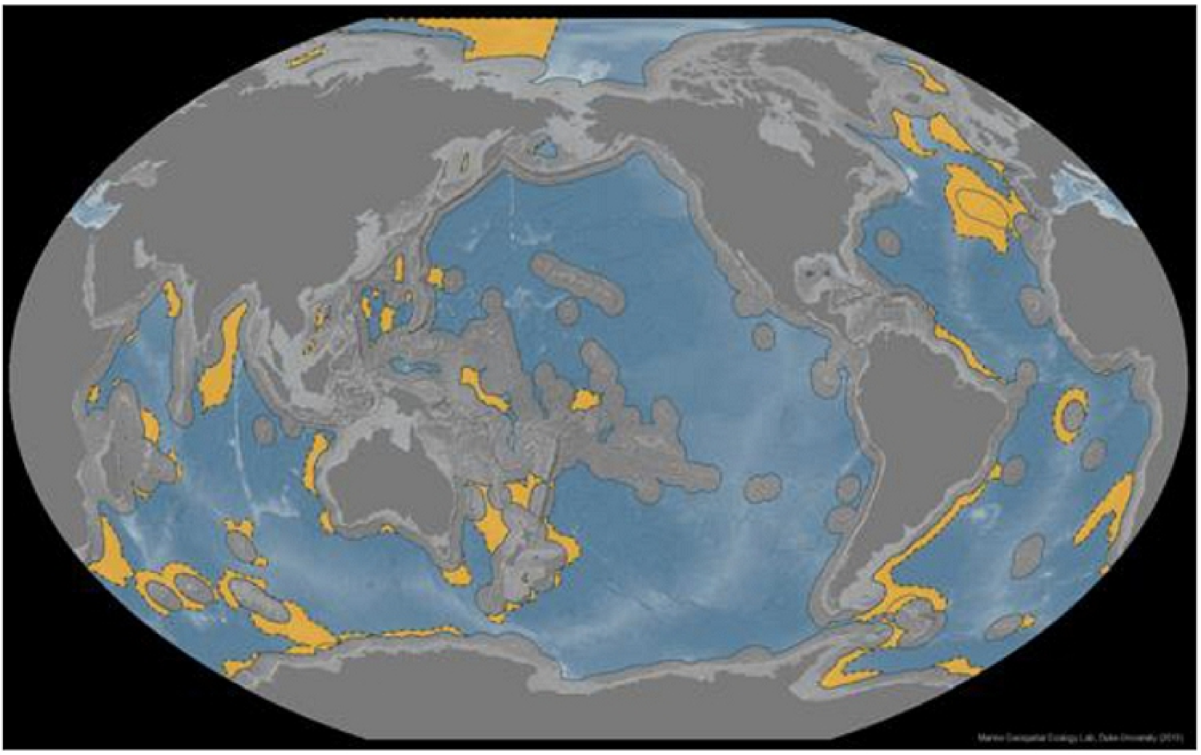
The Convention deals with, among other things, navigational rights, territorial sea limits, exclusive economic zone jurisdiction, the continental shelf, freedom of the high seas, legal status of resources on the seabed beyond the limits of national jurisdiction, passage of ships through narrow straits, conservation and management of living marine resources in the high seas, protection of the marine environment, marine scientific research, and settlement of disputes.

Part XI of the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement deals with mineral exploration and exploitation in the Area, providing a framework for entities to obtain legal title to areas of the seafloor from the ISA for the purpose of exploration and eventually exploitation of resources.

The Convention entered into force on 16 November 1994. A subsequent agreement relating to the implementation of Part XI of the Convention was adopted on 28 July 1994 and entered into force on 28 July 1996. The 1994 Implementation Agreement and Part XI of the Convention are to be interpreted and applied together as a single instrument.

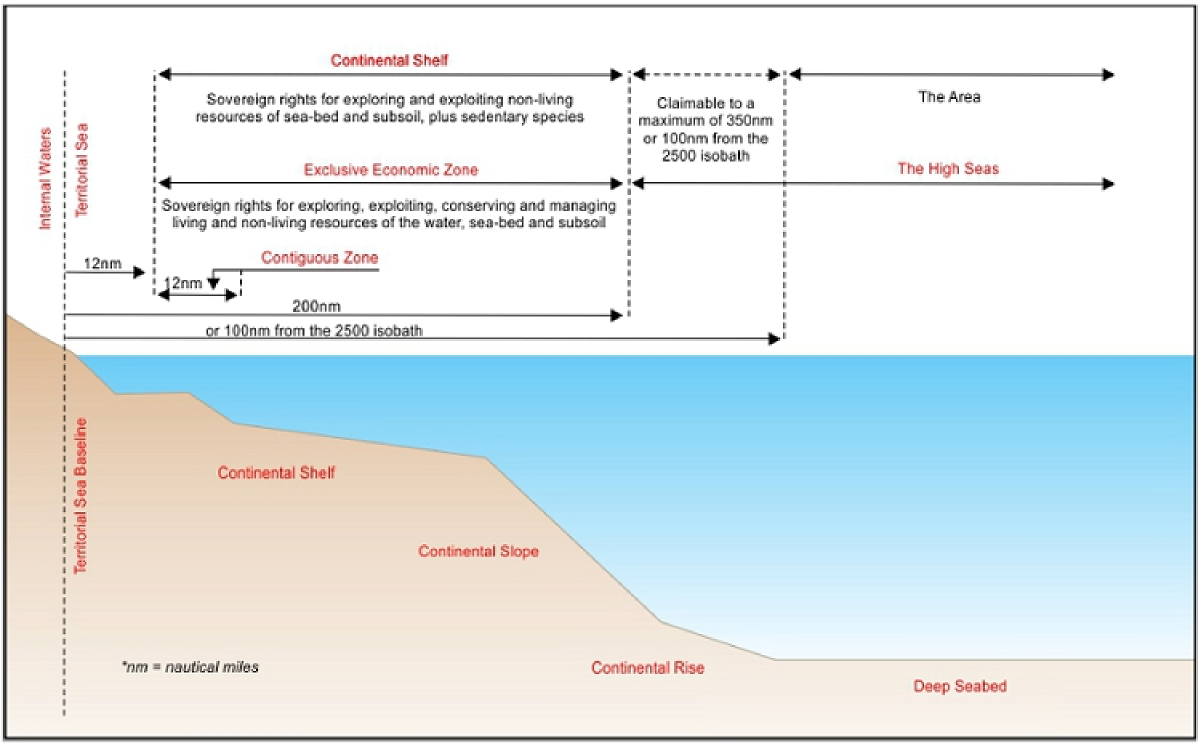
As of 20 July 2025, the Convention had been signed by 169 States (countries) and the European Union. The US is currently not a party to the Convention.

Figure 3.3 Map of seafloor jurisdictions



Note: International seabed area map (blue zone) as well as 200 nautical mile exclusive economic zones (grey zone) and extended continental shelf zones (orange zone).
Source: Marine Geospatial Ecology Lab, Duke University (2011).

Figure 3.4 Maritime space under the 1982 UNCLOS



Source: TMC - adapted from UNCLOS, 1982

3.1.1.1 International Seabed Authority

The ISA is an autonomous international organization established under the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement to organize and control activities in the Area, particularly with a view to administering and regulating the development of the resources of the Area in accordance with the legal regime established in the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

All rules, regulations, and procedures issued by the ISA to regulate prospecting, exploration, and exploitation of marine minerals in the Area are issued within a general legal framework established by the Convention and the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

To date, the ISA has issued (https://www.isa.org.jm/mining-code/ Regulations):

- The Regulations (adopted 13 July 2000 and updated in 2013; the Regulations).
- The Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Sulfides (adopted 7 May 2010).
- The Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Cobalt-Rich Ferromanganese Crusts in the Area (July 2012).

The ISA is currently working on the development of a legal framework to regulate the exploitation of polymetallic nodules in the international seabed area.

3.1.2 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA)

While the ISA regulates seabed mining for UNCLOS member states, the U.S. maintains its own regulatory regime. The U.S. legal framework for seabed mineral activities in areas beyond national jurisdiction is governed by the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), enacted in 1980 (30 U.S.C. §1401 et seq.). This Act authorizes the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to issue licenses to US citizens for exploration and permits for commercial recovery of polymetallic nodules containing manganese, nickel, cobalt, and copper from the deep seabed.

These activities are limited to areas beyond national jurisdiction and are intended to ensure that U.S. entities can participate in seabed mining despite the US not being a party to UNCLOS or the 1994 Implementation Agreement.

3.1.2.1 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)

NOAA is the U.S. federal agency responsible for administering the Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), which establishes a legal regime for the exploration and commercial recovery of hard Mineral Resources from the deep seabed in areas beyond national jurisdiction. All rules, regulations, and procedures issued by NOAA to regulate prospecting, exploration, and recovery of marine minerals under DSHMRA are issued within the legal framework established by the Act and its implementing regulations under 15 CFR, Subchapter D. To date, NOAA has issued:

- The regulations governing the issuance of exploration licenses for polymetallic nodules in areas beyond national jurisdiction (15 CFR Part 970).
- The regulations governing the issuance of commercial recovery permits for polymetallic nodules (15 CFR Part 971).

NOAA is currently responsible for reviewing and processing applications for both exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits submitted by U.S. entities. In April 2025, the President of the US signed an Executive Order establishing a national policy to advance U.S. leadership in seabed mineral exploration and responsible commercial recovery, emphasizing environmental stewardship, supply chain resilience, and interagency coordination.

In May 2025, NOAA released a draft update to its DSHMRA regulatory framework, including proposed revisions to streamline the application process for commercial recovery permits and enhance environmental safeguards. The draft incorporated feedback from interagency consultations, industry stakeholders, and environmental groups, and was published for public comment via the Federal Register. NOAA has stated its intent to finalize the revised regulations by early 2026, in alignment with the Executive Order’s directive to modernize the permitting process and ensure timely access to critical minerals.

Pursuant to DSHMRA and 15 CFR § 970.209, a licensee who submits a timely and substantially complete application for a commercial recovery permit for the same area covered by their exploration license is granted a priority of right over other applicants, provided regulatory requirements are met.

Further permitting detail is outlined in Section17.

3.2 Exploration contract obligations and sponsorship

NORI and TOML, under their ISA exploration contracts, are required to, among other things:

- Submit an annual report to the ISA.
- Meet certain performance and expenditure commitments.
- Pay an annual overhead charge (currently US$60,000) to cover the costs incurred by the ISA in administering and supervising the contract.
- Implement training programs for personnel of the ISA and developing countries in accordance with a training program proposed by NORI and TOML in its application and five-year work plans.
- Take measures to prevent, reduce, and control pollution and other hazards to the marine environment arising from its activities in the Area.
- Maintain appropriate insurance policies.
- Establish environmental baselines against which to assess the likely effects of its program of activities on the marine environment.
- Establish and implement a program to monitor and report on such effects.

NORI is sponsored to carry out its mineral exploration activities in the Area by the Republic of Nauru, pursuant to a certificate of sponsorship signed by the Government of Nauru on 11 April 2011.

TOML is sponsored to carry out its mineral exploration activities in the Area by The Kingdom of Tonga, pursuant to a certificate of sponsorship signed by The Kingdom of Tonga on the 23 September 2021.

Sponsorship of an entity requires the sponsoring State to certify that it assumes responsibility for the entity's activities in the Area in accordance with the Convention. NORI and TOML as incorporated entities in their respective countries (Nauru and Tonga) are subject to applicable regulations and legislation applicable to their respective national regulatory frameworks.

As sponsoring nations, both the Republic of Nauru and The Kingdom of Tonga have enacted Seabed Mineral Acts (Nauru International Seabed Minerals Act 2015 and Tongan Seabed Minerals Act 2014) to regulate and manage their respective countries' involvement in deep sea mineral activities.

In June 2017 and September 2021, NORI and TOML, entered into Sponsorship Agreements with the Republic of Nauru and The Kingdom of Tonga, respectively formalizing certain obligations of the parties in relation to exploration and potential exploitation of the Contract Area of the CCZ. The NORI sponsoring agreement was revised on June 4, 2025.

Under the Sponsorship Agreements, NORI and TOML have the exclusive right to explore for nodules in the Area pursuant to the contracts for exploration dated between the ISA and NORI and TOML (the “exploration contracts”).

The terms of the NORI and TOML Sponsorship Agreements are aligned with the duration of each exploration contract (15 years) and contain provisions for automatic extension for a further 20 years upon reaching the Minimum Recovery Level (as such term is defined in the Sponsorship Agreement) under an ISA exploitation contract.

3.2.1 Work program

As of the date of this Technical Report, both NORI and TOML are in the fourteenth year of their exploration contracts.

Under the NORI and TOML exploration contracts, 23 offshore campaigns were completed over 997 days focused on resource assessment, seabed mapping, and environmental baseline studies in the Clarion Clipperton Zone.

Key offshore work included deploying and testing a full-scale prototype CV that recovered 3,000 mt of nodules from NORI Area D, extensive bathymetric and geotechnical surveys, metocean mooring deployments for oceanographic data, and comprehensive benthic and water column biological monitoring using remotely operated vehicles (ROVs), (AUVs), and other instruments.

These efforts established a detailed understanding of seafloor conditions, mining system performance, and environmental impacts to support commercial recovery planning.

Both NORI and TOML have submitted detailed annual reports to the ISA which include financial statements on levels of expenditure on the Contract Area.

As of the date of this report, TMC USA has submitted two applications for exploration licenses, USA-A and USA-B. These are currently being reviewed by NOAA in accordance with 15 CFR Part 970.

The activities included in the proposed exploration plan for USA-A include:

- Completing resource definition and environmental baseline data collection outside the NORI Area D initial development area.
- Pursuing the commercial recovery permit application for the NORI Area D, where sufficient work has already been completed.
- Advancing mine planning and feasibility studies for offshore nodule collection systems and onshore processing facilities in the USA.

The activities included in the proposed exploration plan for USA-B include:

- Selecting an Initial Development Area by mapping the entire Contract Area using hull-based multibeam surveying (where it has not been done already) and assessing Mineral Resource distribution to Inferred status.
- Conducting reconnaissance environmental baseline sampling and habitat mapping to support selection of the Initial Development Area, followed by completing an environmental scoping study and obtaining approval for the environmental baseline program.
- Upgrading Mineral Resource definition to Indicated status through closer-spaced sampling, completing habitat mapping to define a two-year mining area and Preservation Reference Zones (PRZ), and identifying a preliminary development sequence.
- Completing comprehensive environmental baseline studies to meet NOAA regulations, concurrently upgrading the Initial Development Area to Measured Mineral Resource status with detailed bathymetric, photographic, and geotechnical surveys for collector path planning.

- Undertaking mine planning and pre-feasibility studies for offshore nodule-collection systems in partnership with Allseas and onshore processing facilities in the USA, culminating in preparation of a Commercial Recovery Permit application supported by pre-feasibility, environmental impact assessment (EIA), and management plans.

3.2.2 Royalties and taxes

Under DSHMRA, royalties and taxes payable on any future commercial recovery of polymetallic nodules by U.S. entities in areas beyond national jurisdiction are governed by domestic U.S. law rather than international frameworks such as the ISA, to which the U.S. is not a party.

DSHMRA does not prescribe specific royalty rates, it authorizes NOAA to issue exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits, with terms and conditions that may include financial obligations. These obligations are determined on a case-by-case basis during the permitting process and are designed to ensure that U.S. seabed mining activities are conducted responsibly and in alignment with national interests.

NOAA’s regulatory framework under DSHMRA includes provisions for public comment and environmental review but does not currently mandate a fixed royalty or taxation regime akin to the ISA’s proposed ad valorem models. As such, financial terms are negotiated individually and may evolve with future legislative or executive directives, such as the April 2025 Executive Order promoting U.S. leadership in seabed mineral recovery.

A revised sponsorship agreement with NORI has been signed. The updated agreement with NORI, announced in June 2025, ensures that the Republic of Nauru continue to receive financial benefits, training, and community development support. Importantly, it introduces "continuity benefits" that are expected to be activated once commercial production begins, either by NORI or another TMC subsidiary. A similar revised agreement is currently being finalized with The Kingdom of Tonga.

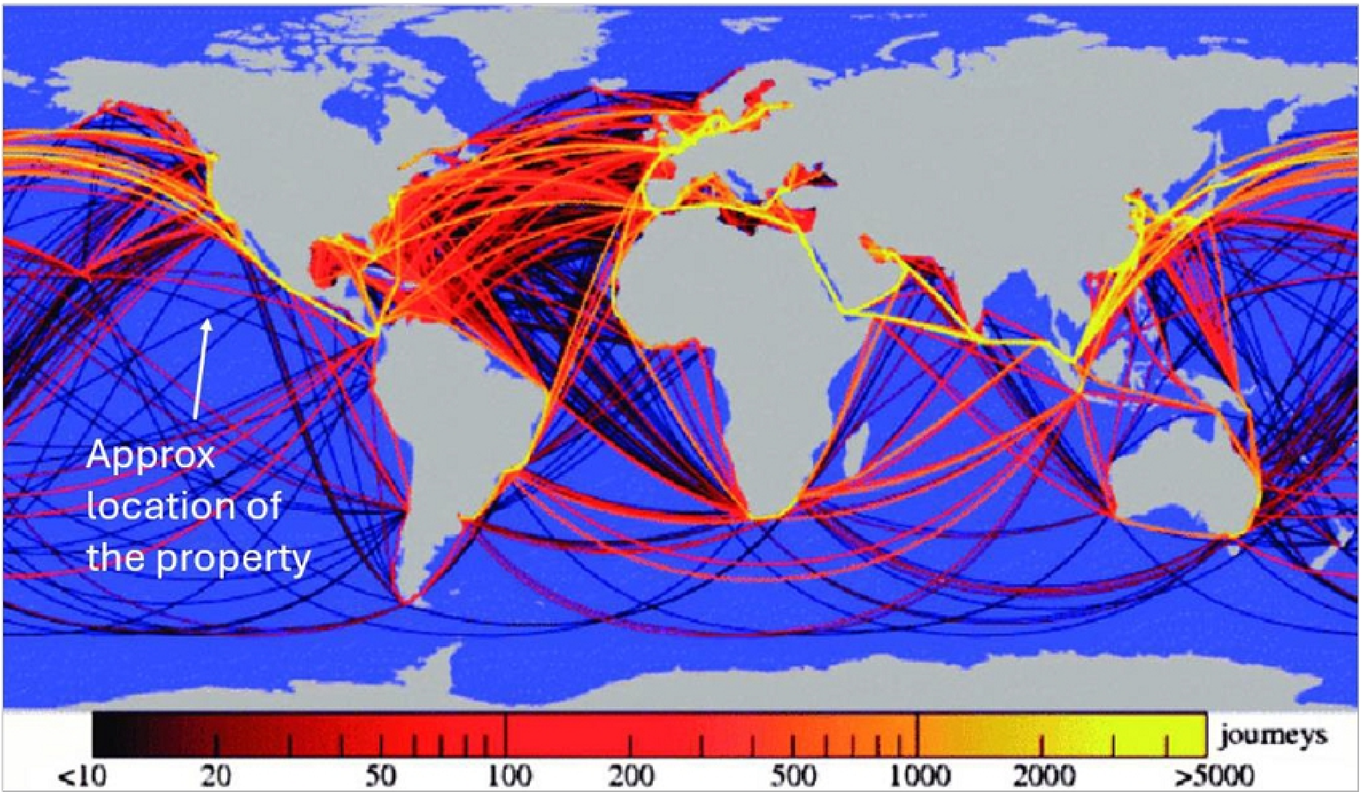
4 Accessibility, climate, local resources, infrastructure and physiography

4.1 Accessibility and infrastructure

The CCZ lies between Hawaii and Mexico and is accessible by ship from various ports in the US and South America. As the CCZ deposit does not include any habitable land and is not near coastal waters. All personnel and material is expected to be transported to the project area by ship. The region is well located to ship nodules to the American continent or across the Pacific Ocean to Asian markets.

The CCZ is generally outside major shipping lanes as indicated in Figure 4.1 which shows the global cargo shipping network, illustrating the trajectories of all cargo ships bigger than 10,000 gross tonnage during 2007.

Figure 4.1 Global cargo shipping network



Note: The color scale indicates the number of journeys along each route.
Source: Adapted from Kaluza et al. 2010.

4.2 Climate

The CCZ has a tropical oceanic climate, with average temperatures of from 20°C to 32°C. Minimum and maximum temperatures generally occur in March and September, respectively (ISA, 2001), and the average sea surface temperature is 25°C. The CCZ is located in open ocean and is subject to tropical weather patterns.

Off-shore operations are planned to run throughout the year, with the exception of hurricane events, which are expected to occur once every three years. Tropical hurricanes are difficult to predict due to their erratic frequency but have high intensity over short periods and occur mostly during the period from May to October (Tilot, 2006, GSR 2018).

5 History

5.1 Overview

Submarine ferromanganese concretions were first discovered in the Kara Sea off Siberia in 1868 (ISA 2010a, citing Earney 1990). HMS Challenger, during its round the world expedition from 1873 to 1876, collected many small dark brown balls, rich in manganese and iron, which were named manganese nodules (ISA 2010a, citing Murray and Reynard [1891], Manheim [1978], and Earney [1990]).

Since the 1960s, polymetallic nodules have been recognized as a potential source of nickel, copper, cobalt, and manganese, and have been comparatively well studied because of their potential economic importance (Mero 1965). Scientific expeditions demonstrated that polymetallic nodules have a widespread occurrence in the world's oceans although their metal content and concentration vary from region to region.

During the International Decade of Ocean Exploration (1971 – 1980) and prior to the implementation of UNCLOS, many offshore exploration campaigns were completed in the CCZ by international organizations and consortia (the Pioneer Contractors). Several at-sea trial mining operations were also successfully carried out in the CCZ in the 1970s to test potential mining concepts. These system tests evaluated the performance of a self-propelled and several towed collection and mining devices, along with submersible pumps and airlift technology for lifting the nodules from the deep ocean floor to (SV).

NOAA monitored some of these tests as part of the Deep Ocean Mining Effects Study (DOMES II) program. The information collected during these activities provided key inputs to the impact analysis presented by NOAA in its Final Programmatic Deep-Sea Mining Environmental Impact Statement in 1981.

5.2 Pioneer Contractors

For the purpose of this report, the Pioneer Contractors include those entities that carried out substantial exploration in the Area prior to the entry into force of UNCLOS, as well as those entities that inherited such exploration data. This Section describes some of the more important activities of the Pioneer Contractors. Table 5.1 lists the Pioneer Contractors that operated in the areas that form the NORI and TOML areas.

Table 5.1 NORI and TOML ISA exploration Contract Areas and Pioneer Contractors

Area	Size (km^2)	Pioneer Contractor
NORI A	8,824	Yuzhmorgeologiya
NORI B	3,519	Yuzhmorgeologiya
NORI C	37,227	Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation
TOML A	10,281	DORD[1]
TOML B	9,966	Yuzhmorgeologiya
TOML C	15,763	Ifremer
TOML D	15,881	DORD
TOML E	7,002	KORDI, Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation
TOML-F	15,820	Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe (AMR) and Ocean Management Inc. (OMI)

Notes: [1] Deep Ocean Resources Development Co. Ltd

NORI Area D and TOML-F were originally explored AMR. AMR subsequently joined Ocean Management Inc. (OMI). The OMI consortium comprised Inco Ltd (Canada), AMR (Federal Republic of Germany), SEDCO Inc. (US), and Deep Ocean Mining Co. Ltd (Japan). OMI completed a successful trial mining operation in 1978. Hydraulic pumps, an air lift system, and towed collectors were tested in approximately 4,500 m of water. Approximately 800 t of nodules were recovered.

Kennecott consortium (now a division of Rio Tinto) first became seriously interested in seafloor polymetallic nodules in 1962 (Agarwal et al. 1979). In the 1970s, Kennecott developed and tested components and subsystems of a seafloor mining system and also carried out significant polymetallic nodule metallurgical processing test work.

Ocean Mining Associates (OMA) was formed in the mid-1970s, and comprised Essex Minerals (US), Union Seas (Belgium), Sun Ocean Ventures (US), with Deepsea Ventures as contractor. OMA conducted trial mining in the CCZ in 1977-78, recovering about 550 tonnes of nodules via suction dredge and airlift systems.

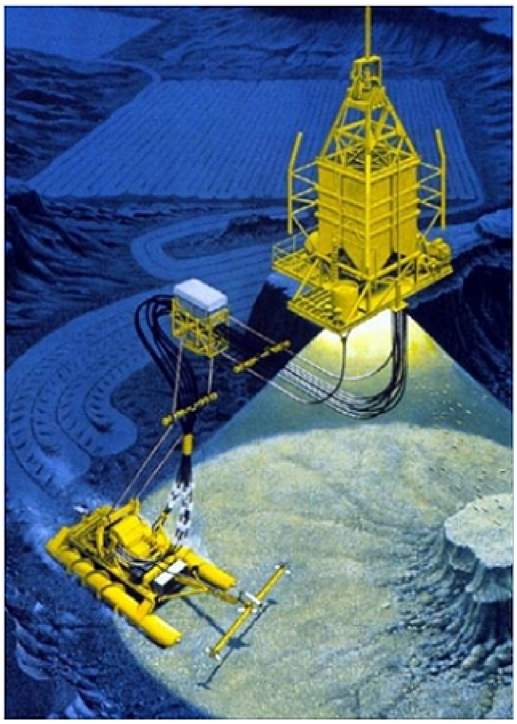
Between 1969 and 1974, Deepsea Ventures Inc. carried out 16 survey cruises of three to four weeks' duration each, to define the extent of the polymetallic nodule deposit discovered by them in 1969 in the CCZ. As reported by Deepsea Ventures Inc:

"These activities included the taking of some 294 discrete samples, including the bulk dredging of some 164 tonnes of manganese nodules from some 263 dredge stations, 28 core stations and three grab sample stations, cutting of some 28 cores, approximately 1000 lineal miles of survey of seafloor recorded by television and still photography, etc. As a result, the deposit of nodules identified with the discovery has been proved to extend generally throughout the entire area (American Society of International Law, 1975)."

Also active in the CCZ was the Ocean Minerals Company (OMCO), comprising Amoco Minerals Co. (US), Lockheed Missiles and Space Company Inc. (US), Billiton International Metals BV, and dredging company Bos Kalis Westminster (Netherlands). In a program lasting 16 years, OMCO collected thousands of free-fall grab and BC samples of nodules from its claim area and carried out trial mining. Lockheed's design efforts resulted in over 80 patents, a seafloor production system that consisted of a remote-controlled collector and crusher, a seafloor to surface slurry riser system, the first industrial scale DP system for a vessel, and a metallurgical processing plant (Spickermann, 2012).

In 1978, OMCO used a remote controlled fully maneuverable self-propelled miner with conveyor and crusher Figure 5.1 and Figure 5.2 to trial mine polymetallic nodules in the CCZ at approximately 4,500 m below sea level. The miner used an Archimedes screw drive system to provide traction and accurate maneuverability on the seafloor. Nodules were picked up by the miner and transferred to the buffer, where they were to be pumped to the surface by an airlift system.

Figure 5.1 Schematic of Lockheed Group's 1970s trial mining system



Source: DeepGreen. Used with permission of Prof. Jin Chung.

Figure 5.2 Remote operated collector used by the Lockheed Group in 1970s trial mining

Source: Spickerman 2012.

Yuzhmorgeologiya (Russian Federation) conducted extensive sampling in NORI Areas A and B using enclosed FFG combined with photographic units. Their sample preparation and chemical analysis methods closely resembled those of OMCO.

Six Pioneer Contractors are known to have surveyed areas within the TOML areas and collected samples of polymetallic nodules. Much of this work overlapped as it predated the signing of the Law of the Sea. These Pioneer Contractors include the Japanese group, Deep Ocean Resources Development Co. Ltd. (DORD), the South Korean group (KORDI), Yuzhmorgeologiya, the French group (Ifremer), the German group (FIGNR or BGR), and OMCO. The timing and location (ISA, 2003) of the OMCO sampling is known but the results are not available outside of ISA published contour maps. The samples within the TOML Area used for the Mineral Resource estimate were collected by Yuzhmorgeologiya, DORD, KORDI, IOM, and Ifremer.

Interoceanmetal Joint Organization (IOM), a consortium of Bulgaria, Cuba, Czech Republic, Poland, Russia, and Slovakia, registered as a Pioneer Contractor in 1992. IOM focused on geological and geophysical surveys covering large parts of the eastern CCZ, followed by research into mining system design and metallurgical processing.

Preussag (Germany) explored the CCZ in the 1970s using FFG and box corers. Their detailed laboratory procedures included cleaning, drying, photographing, measuring, crushing, pulverizing, and assaying nodules for key metals using atomic absorption spectrophotometry (AAS) and X-ray fluorescence (XRF).

AFERNOD (Association française pour l'étude et la recherche des nodules) / GEMONOD (France) completed programs backed by the French government, starting in the 1970s. The programs were focused on exploration near Marquesas Islands and the CCZ. Innovative mining concepts were developed, including free-shuttle autonomous vehicles and hydraulic lift systems. Detailed biological studies and metallurgical test work were conducted.

Deepsea Ventures Inc (DVI) was active from the mid-1960s, supported by US academic research. DVI conducted collector and airlift trials in the Blake Plateau and later formed part of the OMA consortium focusing on higher-grade nodules in the central CCZ.

DORD (Japan) began manganese nodule exploration activities in 1983 and was formally accepted as a Pioneer Contractor in late 1987. Between 1981 and 1989 it spent some JPY20 B (~US$80 M at the time; Kajitani, 1990). Much of the research and development expenditure was on a mining system concept, models and simulations and pilot development.

KORDI (now KIOST: Korea) began studying CCZ nodules in the 1980s, with collaboration and data collection through the 1990s. From 1995–2002, they defined Mineral Resources and established environmental baselines. Since 2002, research prioritized environmental impacts and benthic experiments, with detailed surveys and sampling. Their mining concept has undergone successful pool, shallow, and deep sea testing, with pilot-scale subsea components built and tested in 2015.

COMRA (China) conducted multiple oceanographic expeditions from 1978 onwards, with pilot-scale vehicle tests and lifting experiments conducted in the early 2000s.

Further details of these programs are presented in:

- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "NORI Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 17, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a).
- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "TOML Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b).

5.3 NORI

NORI completed several offshore campaigns that included collection of geological data between 2012 and 2023. The offshore campaigns were named as follows:

Campaign 1. In 2012, NORI completed an offshore exploration campaign in NORI-C and Area D aboard the RV Mt. Mitchell, which sailed from the port of Seattle. NORI conducted extensive hull-based multibeam geophysical surveying of the seafloor and bulk sampling.

Campaign 2. In 2013, NORI carried out a second exploration campaign within NORI-A and B. This cruise was carried out in collaboration with TOML, using the RV Mt. Mitchell, and focused on hull-based multibeam bathymetry in NORI-A and B, identifying nodule fields based on acoustic data (including interpretation of backscatter data), and recovering bulk polymetallic nodule samples.

Campaign 3. In 2018, NORI conducted a successful survey and seafloor sampling program in NORI Area D. The work completed included detailed survey work using an multi-beam echo sounder (MBES) deployed on an AUV, side scan sonar (SSS), sub-bottom profiler (SBP), and camera payload; collection of 45 box cores from which nodule samples, biological samples and geotechnical samples were collected.

Campaign 6A and 6B. In 2019, NORI conducted two campaigns (6A and 6B) in NORI Area D. Campaign 6A was undertaken from 19/08/2019 to 03/10/2019 and Campaign 6B was undertaken from 10/11/2019 to 21/12/2019. The work completed included collection of 207 box cores from which nodule samples, biological samples, and geotechnical samples were collected.

Further details of Campaigns 1 to 6B are presented in:

- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "NORI Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 17, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a).

Campaign 7A and 7B. In 2022 NORI completed an integrated collection system test, supported by the*Hidden Gem* collector vessel in NORI Area D. Campaigns 7A and 7B in NORI Area D were primarily concerned with collecting environmental data. Campaign 7A was conducted prior to the collector system test and Campaign 7B was collected after the collector system test. Box cores were collected and environmental sampling and geotechnical testing, including in situ cone penetration tests (CPT) conducted from a ROV, were carried out. High resolution AUV MBES bathymetric, side scan and SBP and camera imagery surveying within the collector system test area were completed.

Campaign 8

Campaign 8A was conducted in late 2023 and early 2024, 12 months after completion of Test Mining, and was focused on collecting benthic biological data and conducting high resolution mapping work in the proposed initial production area within the NORI Area D. During this campaign six (6) box cores were collected to provide additional resource information in areas which had not been directly impacted by collection.

Additionally, 196 line km of AUV deployed MBES, SSS, SBP, and 245 line km of camera data were collected over an area of 245.712 km^2 in areas delineated as runs 19 and 20 in the NORI Area D PFS (AMC, 2025).

5.4 TOML

TOML completed offshore campaigns in 2013 and 2015 to collect data define Mineral Resources. The offshore campaigns were named as follows:

CCZ13. In 2013, the MBES system of the chartered vessel RV Mt Mitchell was used to map the seafloor in TOML Areas B through F. Dredge samples were collected from TOML B and TOML D to confirm the nodule grades indicated by Pioneer Contractor samples and support metallurgical test work.

CCZ15. In 2015, TOML used the experienced team and equipment spread on the RV Yuzhmorgeologiya to sample and image map priority areas so that a higher confidence and expanded Mineral Resource could be estimated, and to collect environmental baseline and geotechnical data. A total of 113 box cores were collected from TOML-B, TOML-C, TOML-D, TOML-E and TOML-F for resource definition purposes. Biological samples and geotechnical samples were also collected. Deep-tow sonar, including SSS, SBP and high-resolution bathymetry were completed.

Further details of these programs are presented in:

· The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary-TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "TOML Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b).

6 Geological setting and mineralization

6.1 Global distribution of nodules

Seafloor polymetallic nodules occur in all oceans, and the CCZ hosts a relatively high abundance of nodules. Other relatively dense zones are found in the Peru Basin in the southeast Pacific, the centre of the north Indian Ocean, and the Cook Islands Figure 6.1.

Figure 6.1 Schematic diagram of average abundance of polymetallic nodules in four major locations

Source: GRID-Arendal 2014b.

6.2 Regional tectonic setting and topographic features

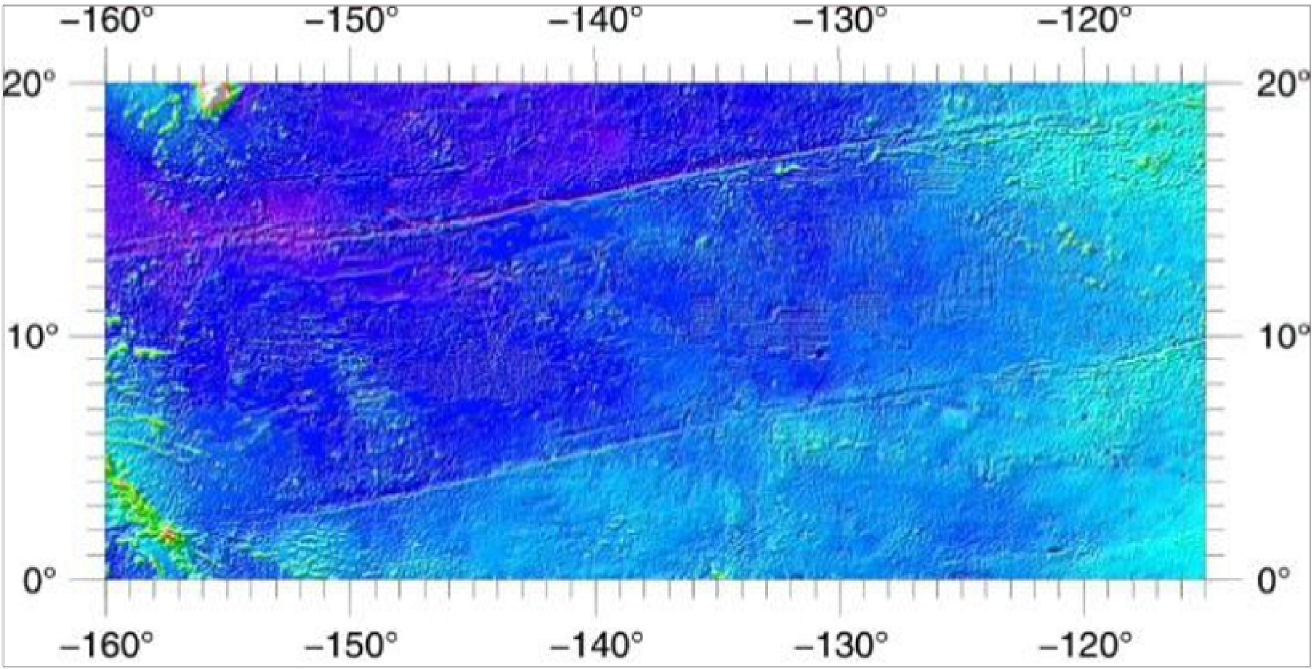
The CCZ is defined by two major west-south-west and east-north-east trending fracture zones running through the seafloor; the Clipperton Fracture Zone to the south and the Clarion Fracture Zone to the north. These fractures zones can be seen clearly on the bathymetric map Figure 6.2. The eastern and western limits can be defined by the Mathematicians Seamounts or Ridge in the east, and the Republic of Kiribati or Line Islands in the west.

The CCZ seafloor forms part of the Abyssal Plains, which are the largest physiographic province on Earth, covering some 70% of the area of ocean basins and 30% of the Earth's surface (ISA 2004). The Abyssal Plains are traversed by ridges, believed to have formed from the process of seafloor spreading. Orientation is north-north-west to south-south-east (locally ±20°), with amplitude of 50 m to 300 m (maximum 1,000 m; Hoffert 2008) and wavelength of 1 km to 10 km. The Abyssal Plains are punctuated by extinct volcanoes rising 500 m to 2,000 m above the seafloor.

Depth increases from 3,800 m to 4,200 m at 115° west to 4,800 m to 5,200 m at 130° west, and 5,400 m to 5,600 m at 145° west.

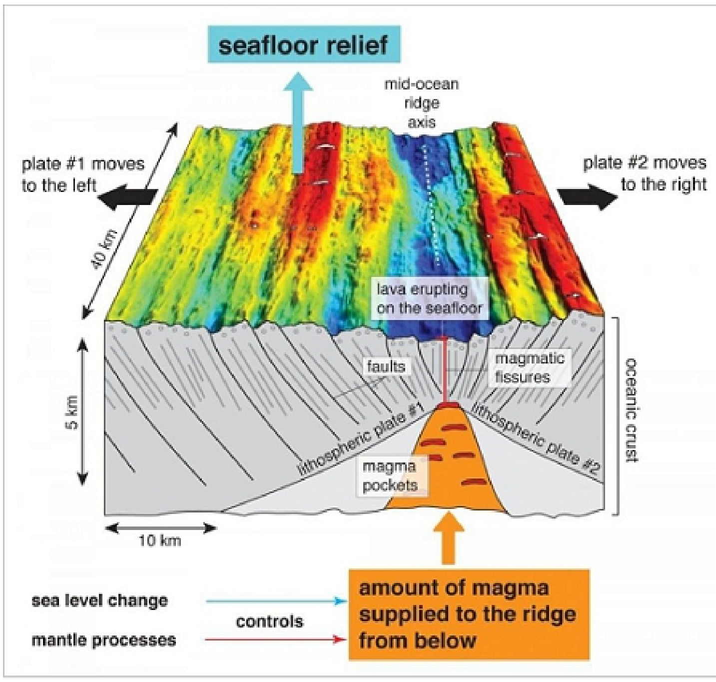
The seafloor sediments exhibit trends perpendicular to the fracture zones, from predominant carbonate sediments in the south-eastern extreme to predominant siliceous red clay in the west north-west.

Figure 6.2 Bathymetric map of the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone



Source: ISA 2010.

Figure 6.3 Formation of abyssal hills at mid-oceanic ridges



Source: modified from Olive et al. (2015)

6.3 Regional geological domains

Classification of the seafloor into geological domains allows the important geological, topographic, and tectonic features which characterize nodule prospectivity to be captured for Mineral Resource estimation and mine planning purposes. Based on analysis of bathymetric data together with BC data, TMC recognized and mapped eight geological domains within NORI Area D:

1) **Abyssal plains:** these constitute the majority of the CCZ and are characterized by gentle slopes of 0° to 6°, and nodules lying on soft sediment. Nodules were observed to be ubiquitous in this domain wherever it was surveyed and sampled. It is considered a highly- prospective domain for nodules.

   The abyssal plains can be further divided into three subdomains based on backscatter response and ground-truthing (box core samples and land-out video footage):

   — Areas considered indicative of Type 2 and 3 nodule facies (see Table 6.1), as determined from high amplitude backscatter response.

   — Areas considered indicative of Type 1 nodule facies (see Table 6.1), as determined from moderate amplitude backscatter response.

   — Sediment drift domains—characterized by a soft sediment ooze with low amplitude backscatter response, and extremely low to no nodule abundance.

— Volcanic cones (see below).

2) **Abyssal hills:** these are topographically higher features, oriented NNW-SSE, and are parallel to one another. Slopes of the hills are mostly gentle on the western side, while they are very steep at the eastern side, likely representing horsts (fault blocks) bounded by inward-dipping normal faults and outward-dipping volcanic growth faults respectively.

3) **Abyssal hills (hard)**: abyssal hills where the hill crests are associated with the occurrence of hardgrounds, caused by proximity of underlying (harder) Neogene-age footwall sediment succession at the seafloor, typically covered by a veneer of unconsolidated sediment.

4) **Slopes ≥ 6°**: these are associated with the flanks of abyssal hills, where the slope is 6° or greater, and are likely associated with hardgrounds and/or volcanic debris and volcanic outcrop development typically associated with NNW trending faults. These steep slopes are considered to have low nodule prospectivity but have not been fully tested with sampling or photography.

5) **Slopes ≥ 6° (hard)**: these are associated with the flanks of abyssal hills where the slope is 6° or greater, and are associated with hardground development, typified by outcropping (harder) Neogene-age sedimentary rocks. These steep slopes are considered to have low nodule prospectivity, based on limited box core sampling, AUV SBP data and photography.

6) **Volcanic outcrops:** these are associated with volcanic growth-faults along the abyssal hill flanks, which trend NNW-SSE, and are elongated, narrow bodies mapped through integration of AUV SBP and camera data with EM 122 MBES data backscatter data.

7) **Volcanic cones**: these are typically grouped in chains and follow the east-southeast "Hawaiian trend". These are isolated features and were not sampled, however, due to their volcanic origin, steep slopes (>6°) and dominant high-intensity backscatter (typically associated with volcanic outcrop), they are also considered to have low nodule prospectivity.

8) **Volcanic high:** this is a macro-scale topographic feature situated in the SE corner of NORI Area D. It is interpreted as a relic volcanic intersection high, which also includes a relic transform parallel trough. Both are volcanic related features associated with the Clipperton transform zone, situated to the south of NORI Area D.

Geological investigations and the mapping of geological domains are less advanced in the other NORI and TOML areas, compared to NORI Area D. Features such as abyssal plains, abyssal hills, volcanic cones, and slopes ≥ 6° have nonetheless been identified in these areas using MBES surveys. In addition, sediment drifts ponded in depressions, covering approximately 7 % of TOML Areas B to F, have been interpreted from MBES data. There is also evidence for sediment accumulation near the base of some seamounts.

6.4 Regional trends in polymetallic mineralization

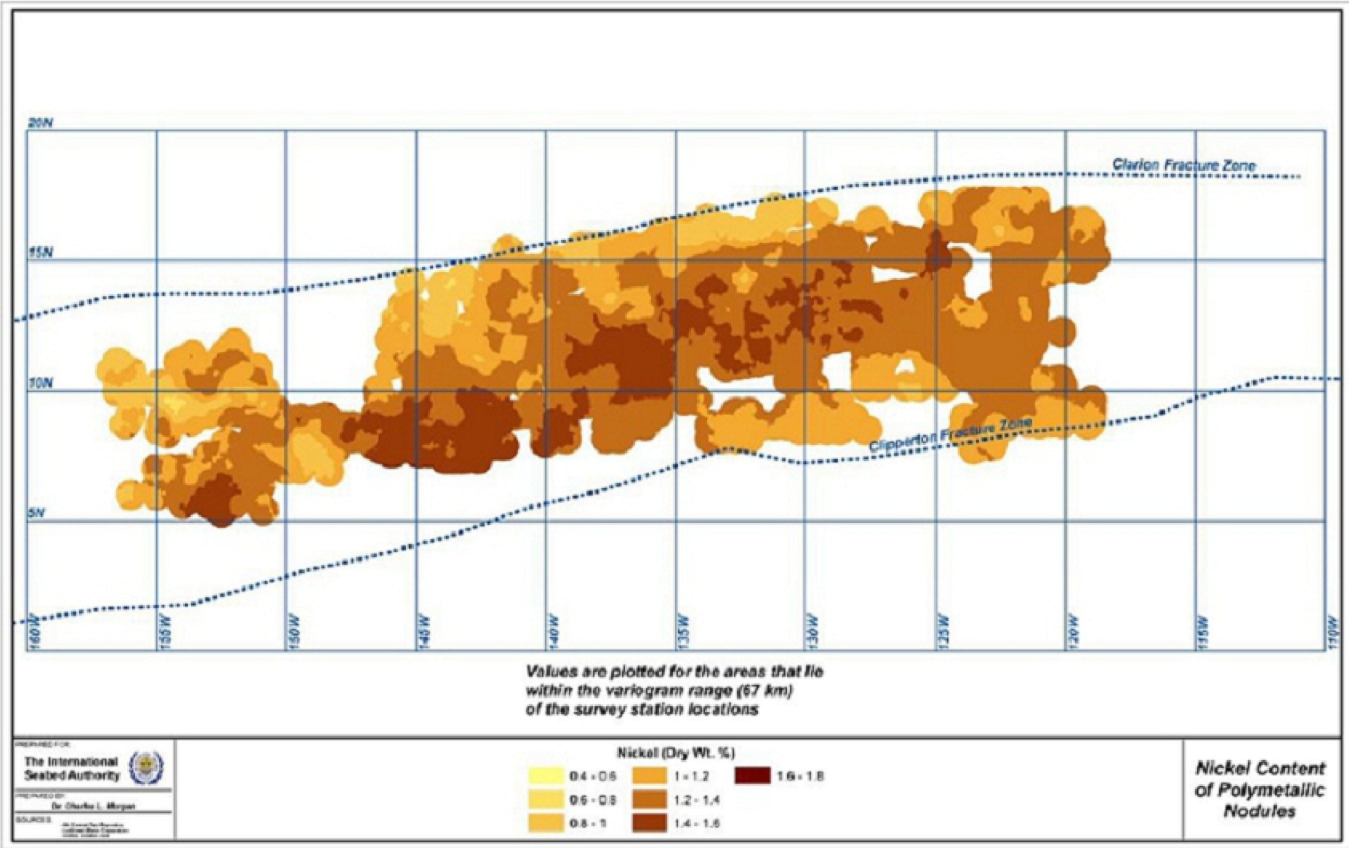
The ISA completed a geological modelling project in 2009, based on data collected by Pioneer Contractors over the preceding 30 years (ISA, 2010a).

Nodule chemistry varies only slightly within the CCZ. Figure 6.4 to Figure 6.7 show the distribution of nickel, cobalt, copper, and manganese grades across the CCZ, as estimated by the ISA. The high continuity and low variability of grades across vast distances is remarkable. Copper and manganese generally increase towards the southeast, cobalt is generally higher towards the north, and nickel is generally higher towards the centre and southwest of the CCZ. The reason for these very large-scale trends is not clear. The German data for NORI Area D were not included in the ISA geological model.

The nodules vary in abundance, in some cases touching one another and covering more than 70% of the seafloor. The highest concentrations of nodules have been found on abyssal plains between 4,000 m and 6,000 m below sea level.

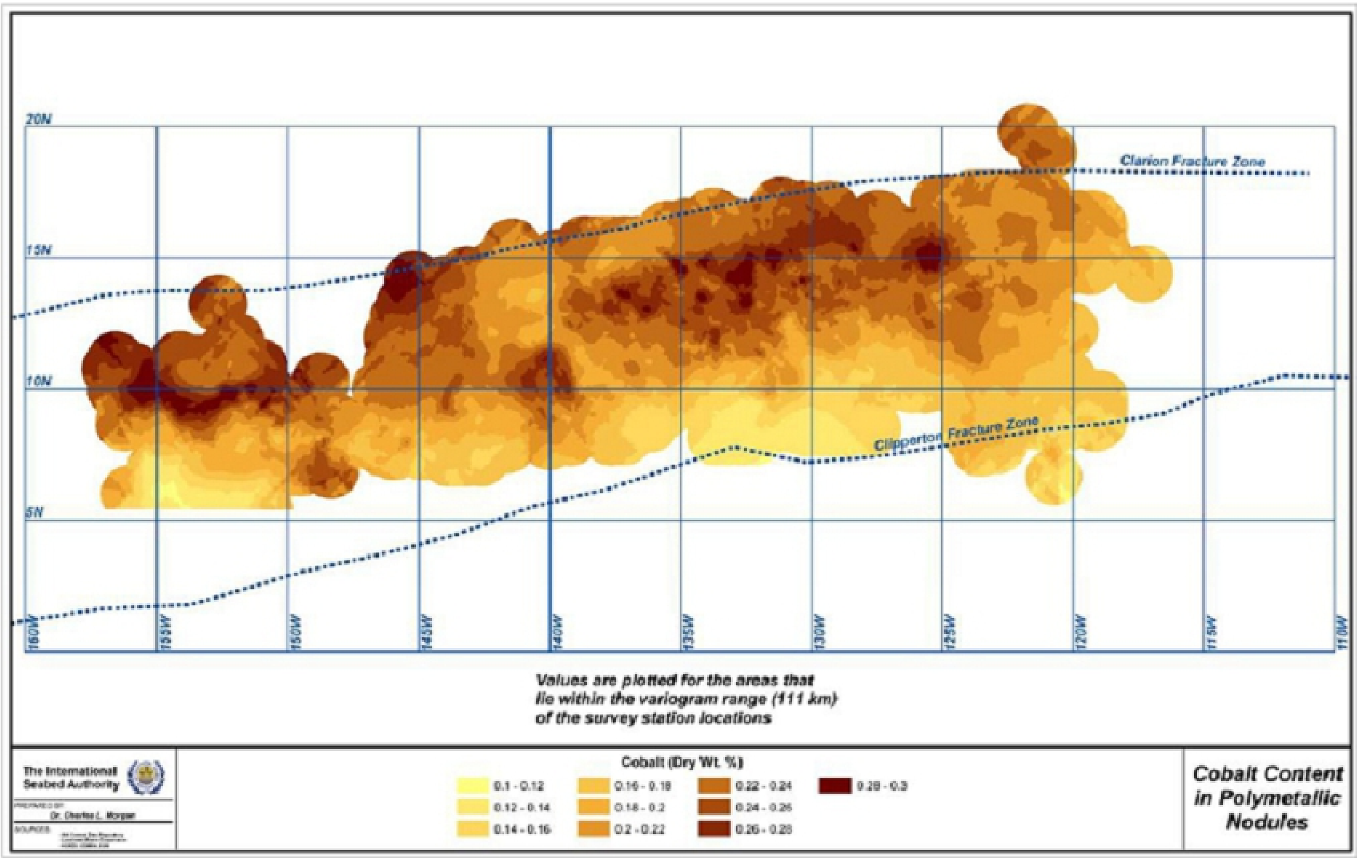
Figure 6.8 shows estimated nodule abundance data from the ISA geological model project. Data analysis shows that variability of nodule abundance is significantly higher than variability of metal grades.

Figure 6.4 Map of nickel grade distribution in the CCZ



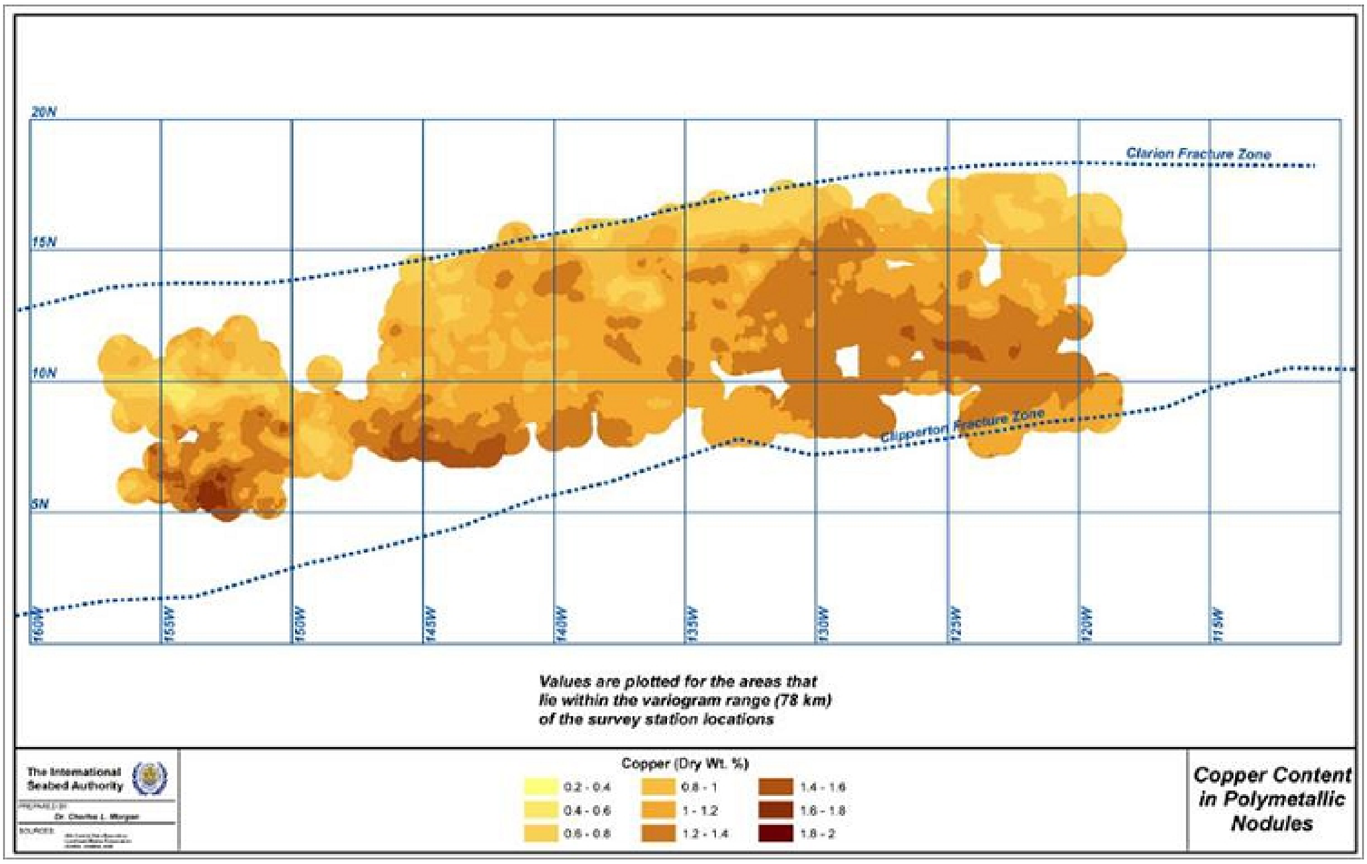
Source: ISA (2009)

Figure 6.5 Map of cobalt grade distribution in the CCZ



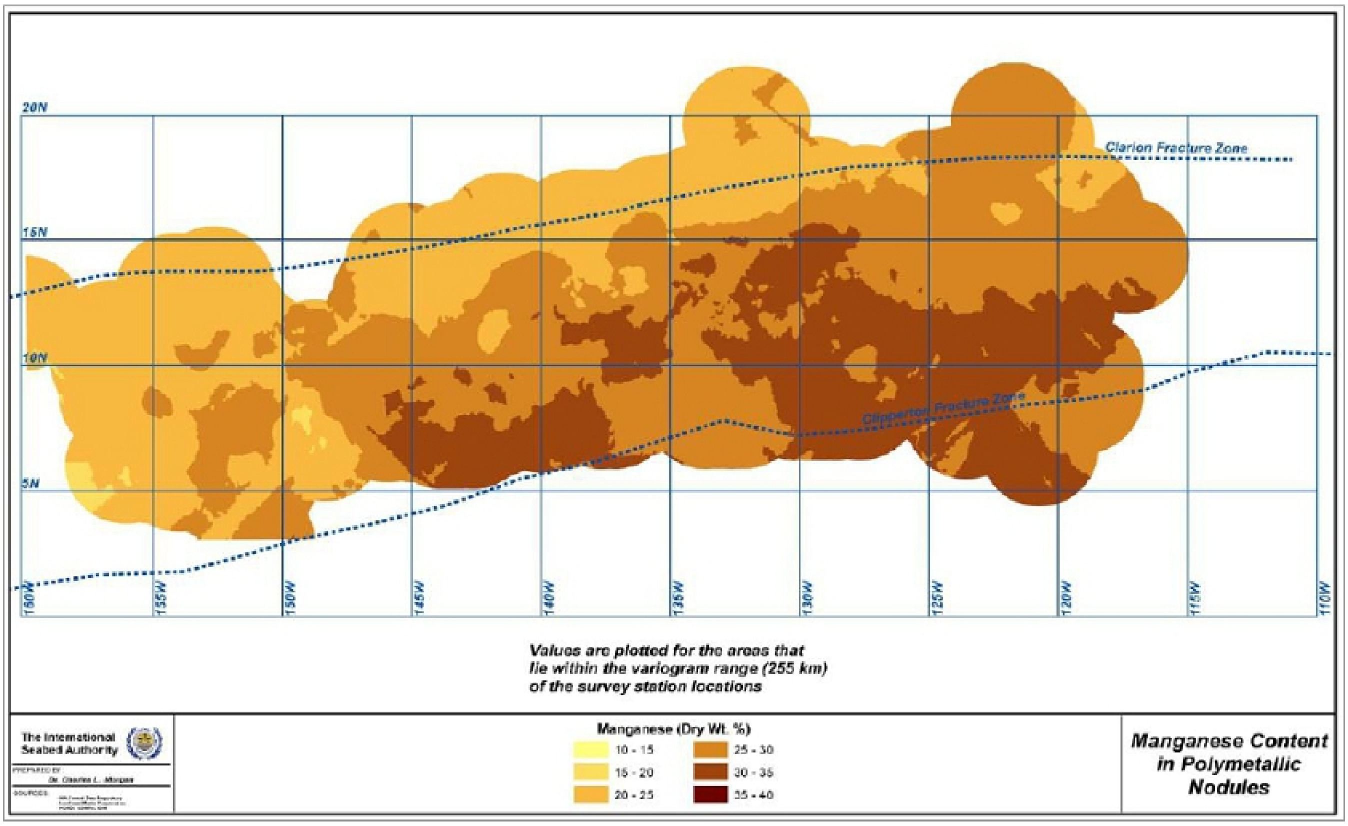
Source: ISA

Figure 6.6 Map of copper grade distribution in the CCZ



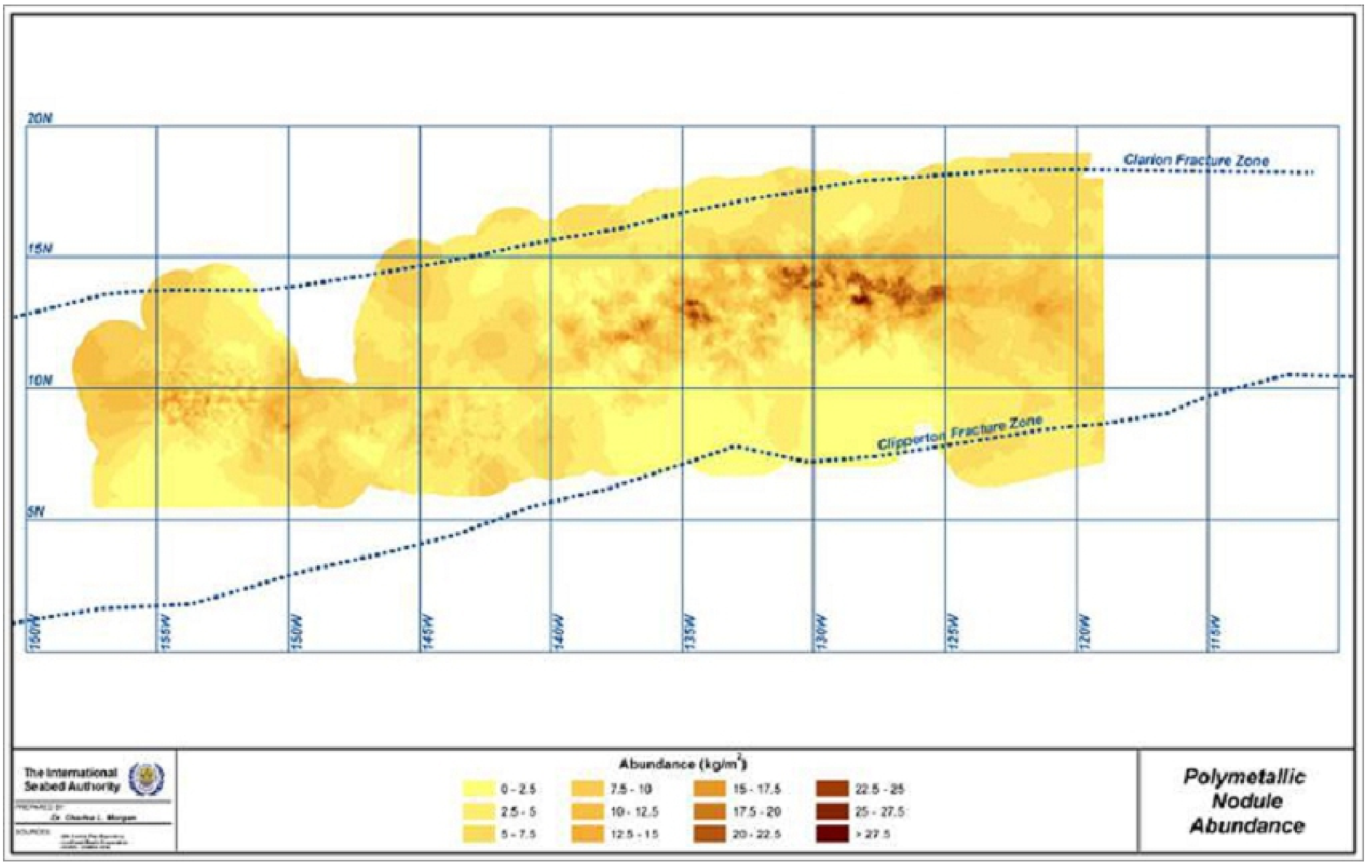
Source: ISA

Figure 6.7 Map of manganese grade distribution in the CCZ



Source: ISA

Figure 6.8 Map of abundance distribution in the CCZ



Source: ISA

6.5 Nodule formation and sedimentation

Seafloor polymetallic nodules are composed of nuclei and concentric layers of iron and manganese hydroxides and formed by precipitation of metals from seawater. The metal accumulation rates are slow, and it takes a few million years to form a nodule (Skowronek et al, 2021).

Nodules are abundant in abyssal areas with oxygenated bottom waters, low sedimentation rates (less than 10 cm per thousand years), and where sources of abundant nuclei occur (Hein et al. 2013). Nodules grow on 0.1 cm to 1 cm nuclei (e.g., pieces of pumice and older broken nodules) and generally range from about 1 cm to 12 cm in their longest dimension, with the low to middle-range typically the most common (1 to 5 cm).

The specific conditions of the CCZ (water depth, latitude, and seafloor sediment type) are considered to be the key controls for its formation, along with the following factors:

- Supply of metals to the growing surface.
- Presence of a nucleus.
- The erosive forces caused by benthic currents.
- Occurrence of semi-liquid surface layer on the seafloor (sediment water interface).
- Bioturbation.

The highest values of metals in nodules are thought to be developed on the seabed in the equatorial regions away from land sources of sediments. In these regions surface waters have high primary productivity. Tiny plants and animals concentrate the metals from seawater and when they die, they sink to the seafloor, dissolve, and release the metals into the pore water of seafloor sediments. Sediments from the CCZ consist mostly of clays and siliceous biological casts. Sands and larger sediments are not generally found so far from land, and the commonly formed carbonate biological casts dissolve on the seabed in these deep-water regions faster than they accumulate.

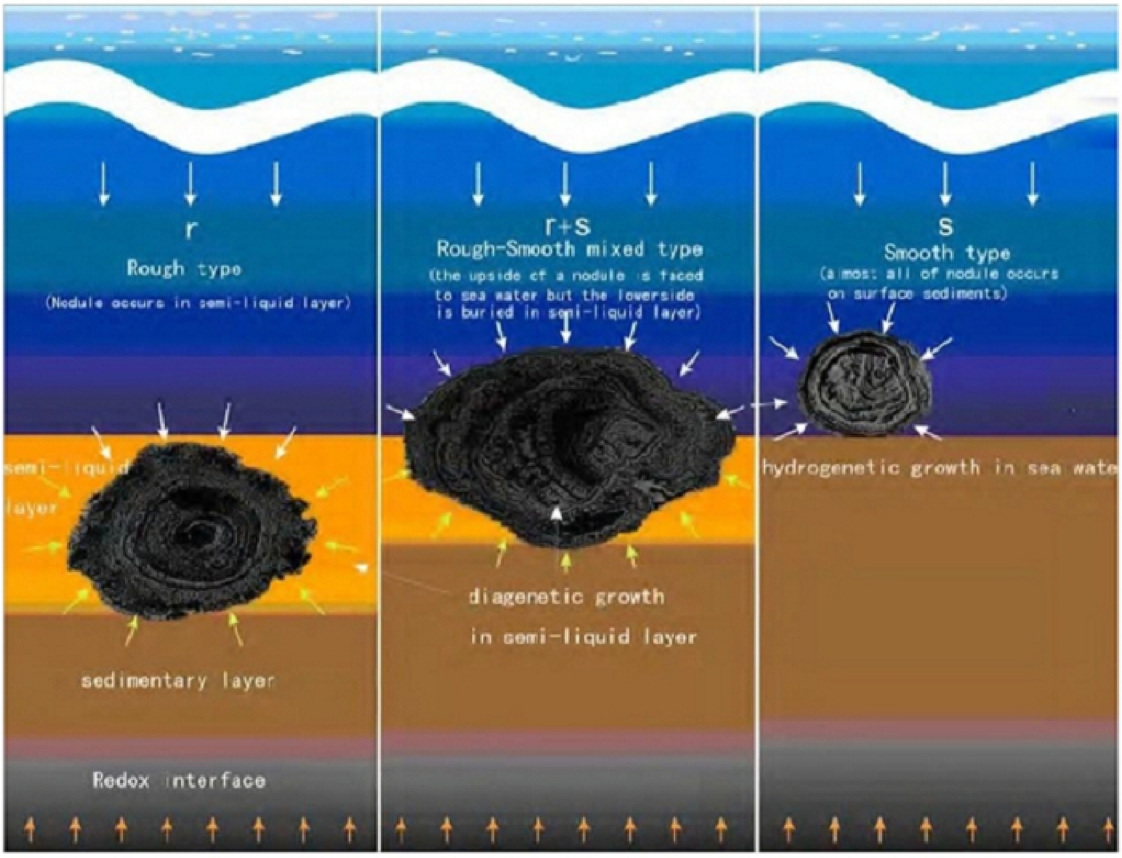
Nodules are classified according to their morphology or texture, as:

- S-type (smooth type).
- R-type (rough type).
- S-R-type (smooth-rough mixed type).

It is postulated that the different textures are related to the position of the growing nodule, relative to the seafloor, as shown in Figure 6.9. The S-type nodules are interpreted to have grown by absorption of metals directly from seawater (hydrogenetic processes), the Rough type nodules (R-type) are interpreted to have absorbed metals from the water within the seafloor sediment (diagenetic processes), and the Smooth-rough type nodules (S-R-type) are interpreted to have grown as a result of both hydrogenetic and diagenetic processes.

In the NORI and TOML areas, most of the polymetallic nodules lie on the seafloor, often partly covered with soft sediment. In other locations, some nodules have been recorded as completely buried but the frequencies of such subsurface occurrences are very poorly defined (e.g., Kotlinski and Stoyanova (2006).

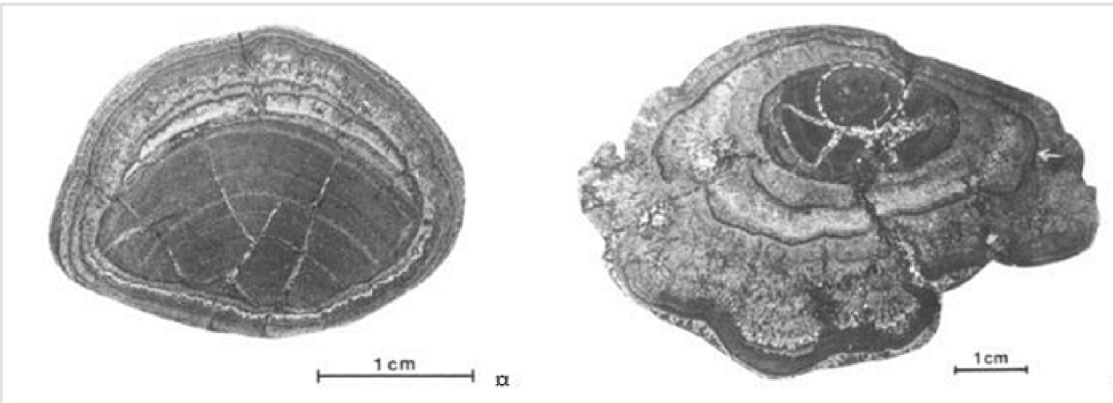
Figure 6.9 Polymetallic Nodule Types



Source: ISA (2010)

NORI and TOML developed classification systems for nodules similar to the ISA system, using descriptors of nodule form, such as size, shape, texture, and fragmentation. These were recorded and the logs were captured in digital databases. Examples of nodule type are shown in Figure 6.10, Figure 6.11 and Figure 6.12.

Figure 6.10 Sections through a S-type Nodule (left) and a R-type Nodule with a S-type core (right)

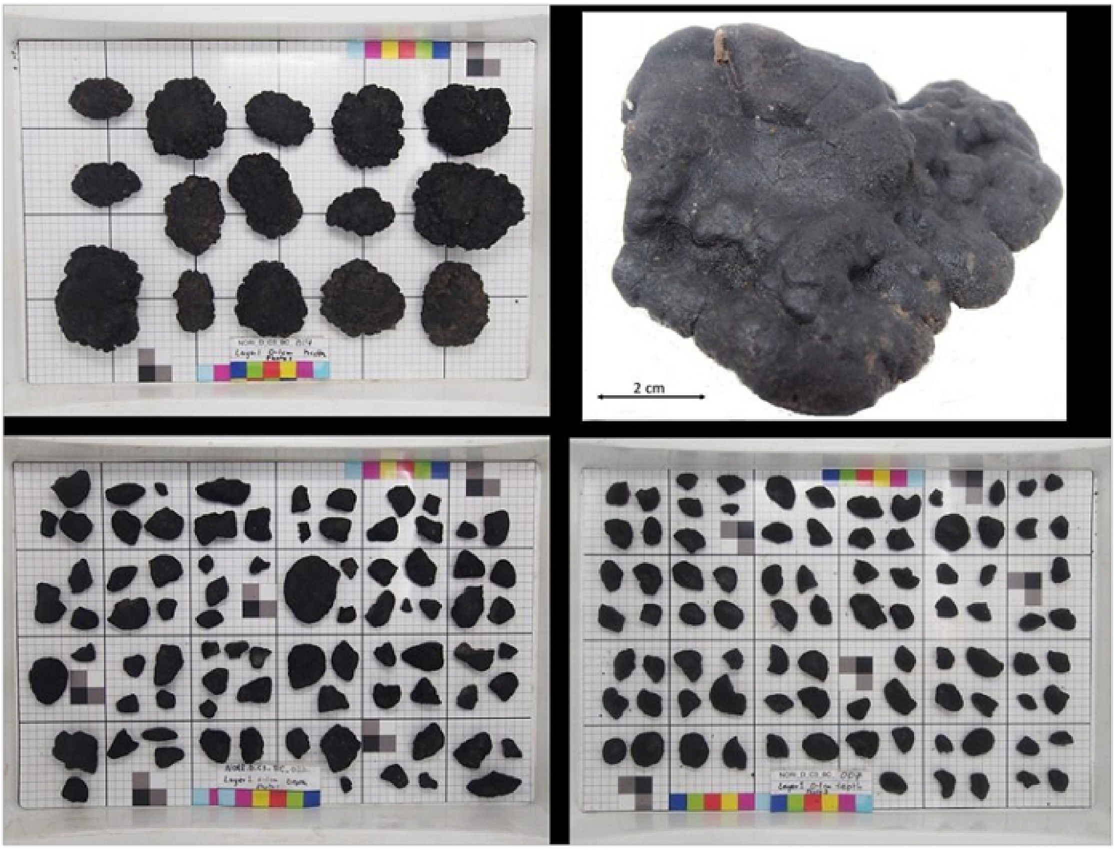


Source: von Stackelberg and Beiersdorf (1991).

Figure 6.11 Example nodules found in the TOML area

Source: TMC. Smooth (top left), rough-smooth (top right), rough (bottom left) and overturned rough-smooth (bottom right) types.

Figure 6.12 Examples of nodules recovered during the 2018 NORI Area D campaign

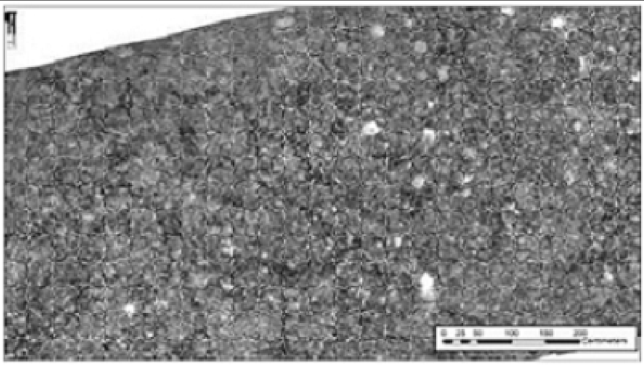
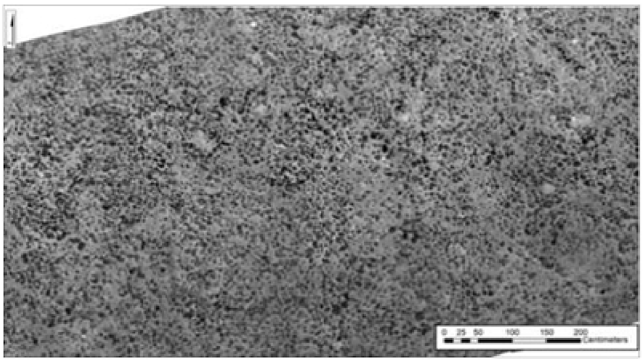
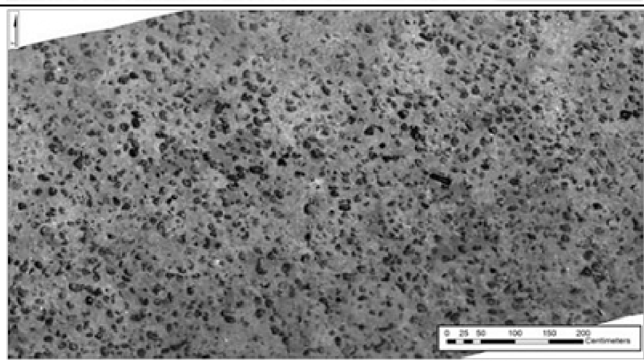
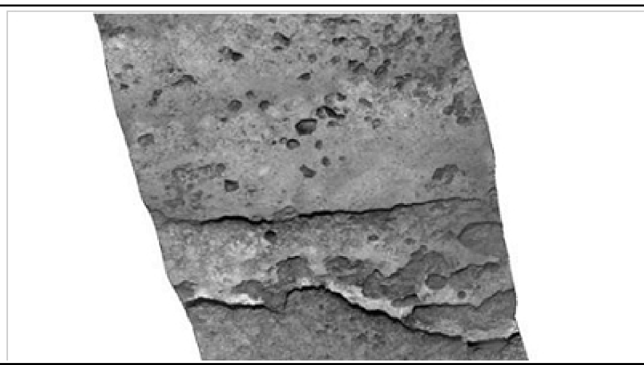


Upper left – example of large nodules with rough texture. Top right – close-up of large nodule. These nodules were the least-dominant size class. More common were nodules in the 2-5 cm range, as shown by examples in lower left and right. Source: TMC

6.6 Nodule facies

Nodule size, shape and texture can be quite variable within a single sample. As a consequence, it is difficult to apply practical classification schemes based on these characteristics to broad areas of the seafloor. In order to characterize nodule occurrences on the seafloor at a larger, more practical scale, NORI identified three broad *facies* of nodule distribution. These are based on nodule coverage and the range of nodule sizes, as interpreted from camera imagery. They are summarized in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1 Polymetallic Nodule Facies in NORI Area D

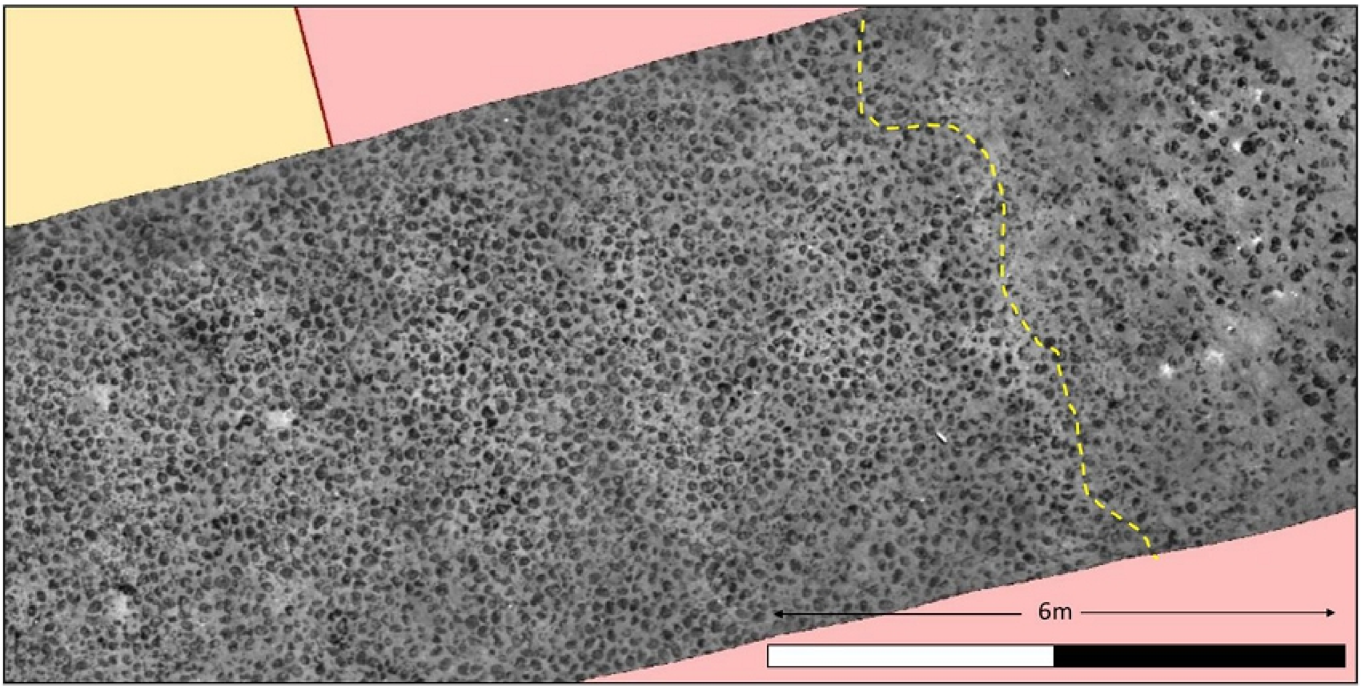
Nodule camera facies type	Description	Example
Type 1 - densely packed / interconnected	>50% of seafloor covered by nodules ~1 – 10 cm length	
Type 2 - mostly individual / locally interconnected	~20 – 40% of seafloor covered by nodules Mostly 5–20 cm length	
Type 3 – mostly individual / sparse	10 – 20% of seafloor covered by nodules Mostly 5 – 20 cm length	
Other	Volcanic outcrop - associated with NW-SE ridges	

Type 1 nodule facies is typically characterized by >50% nodules (by area of coverage). The majority of these nodules are typically medium-sized and are closely packed, with many nodules in contact with their neighbors.

Types 2 and 3 are characterized by larger nodules, and the nodules are typically separated (i.e., there are noticeable sediment gaps between individual nodules).

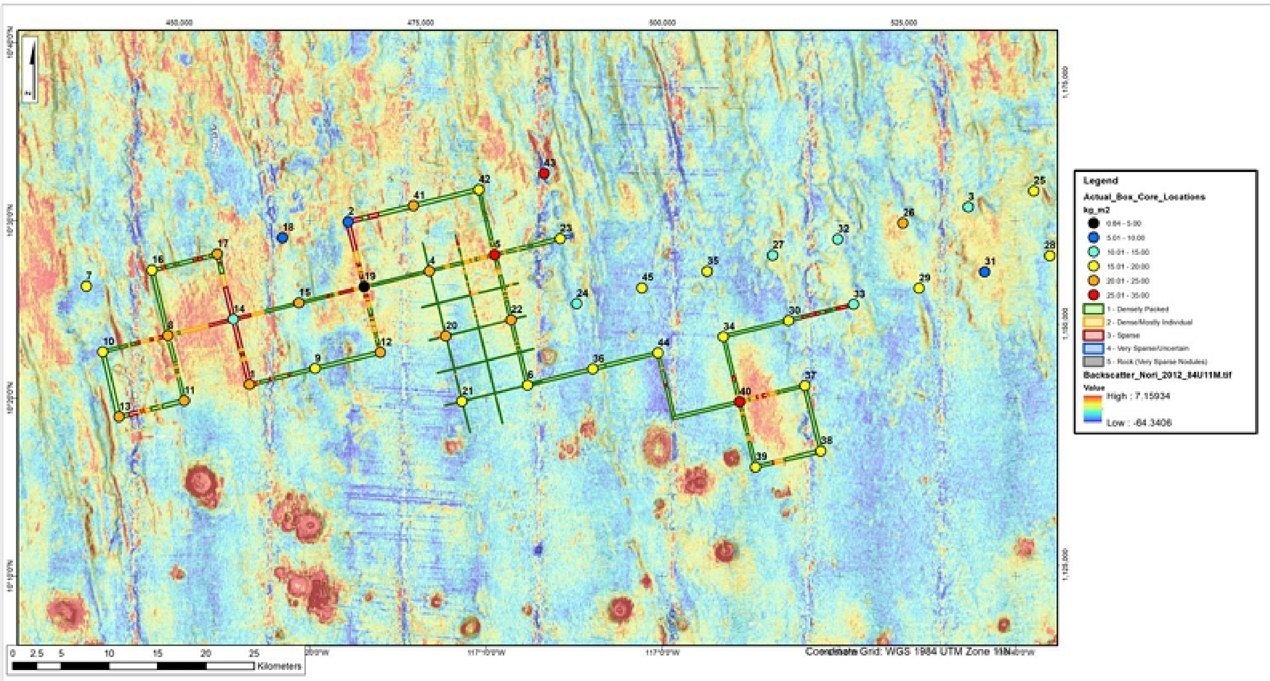
In high-resolution camera imagery, facies boundaries may be quite sharp (i.e., not gradational) and variable over short distances (<100 m), as illustrated in Figure 6.13.

Figure 6.13 Camera Imagery Showing Change from Type 3 Nodules (right) to Type 2 (left)



Nodule distributions can be mapped by measuring the backscatter (return signal) response from multi-beam echo sounding (MBES) from vessels on the ocean surface. Type 1 nodule facies correlates with moderate-amplitude backscatter areas and is the most common facies. Type 2 and 3 nodule facies typically correlate with higher-amplitude backscatter areas. These correlations are shown in Figure 6.14, which shows the density of nodule coverage according to photographic traversing by AUV. In this figure, the ribbon-tracks are colored as Type 1 (green), Type 2 (yellow), Type 3 (red) against a background of backscatter data. The backscatter data are colored by amplitude; high-amplitude areas associated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies shown in warmer colors, with Type 1 represented by colder colors. The highest amplitude signals indicate volcanic outcrops associated with seamounts and ridge-tops.

Figure 6.14 Map of nodule classification compared to backscatter intensity



Source: MARGIN. Note: box core locations are labelled with box core number and coloured by abundance. Ribbon-track coloured by facies Type: Type 1 (green), Type 2 (yellow), Type 3 (red)) against a background of backscatter data. The backscatter responses are coloured by amplitude; high-amplitude areas associated with Type 2 and 3 nodule facies shown in warmer colours, with Type 1 represented by colder colours.

6.7 Diagenetic crusts

Minor amounts of ferro-manganese crust were observed in photo-profiles collected from TOML areas. Two types of crusts were logged in a few locations by TOML and have been recognized by other workers (e.g., Menot et al., 2010):

- Massive crust is five to ten centimeters thick and is typically found in blocks tens of centimeters wide but occasionally as pavement; and
- Crustal-nodules are small to medium sized (<20 cm) discrete fragments of ferro-manganese that can grade into nodules.

In total, crusts were logged in ~0.6% of the photo-profiles, with crustal nodules more common (~0.5%) and massive crusts being present in only ~0.1% of the photographs Neither type was collected in box cores during the TOML CCZ15 campaign, and their extent is deemed insignificant in terms of the Mineral Resource estimate.

6.8 Moisture content of nodules

The moisture content of polymetallic nodules determined by laboratory analysis is the free (chemically unbound) water occurring within the pore spaces of the individual nodules which is released by drying of the samples prior to chemical analysis. The drying temperature for this is typically 105°C. Moisture contents of the nodules in the NORI and TOML areas are reported on a wet basis (wet weight-dry weight)/wet weight.

The nodules also contain chemically-bound water and hydroxide ions, mainly within manganese and iron minerals. Manganese minerals with various types of crystalline lattice have different levels of thermal stability. Layered manganese minerals (buserite I, asbolane-buserite, and birnessite) are stable up to 120°C –150°C; asbolane up to 180°C, vernadite, up to ∼500°C; todorokite up to 600°C, and pyrolusite up to 670°C (Novikov and Bogdanova, 2007). The chemically-bound water and any other volatiles, such as carbon dioxide, are measured by measuring the loss of mass on ignition (LOI) that occurs when the samples are heated from 105°C to 1000°C.

The moisture content of the nodules in the NORI and TOML areas has been measured at various stages throughout the exploration and related scientific programs. The conditions under which the samples were collected, stored and dried varied and, consequently, some systematic differences between data sets were observed. In order to understand these differences, AMC reviewed the moisture content data from NORI Area D, TOML, the Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources (BGR) Contract Areas, and Interoceanmetal Joint Organization (IOM) Contract Area.

Studies of the impact of drying nodules for different lengths of time by TOML and NORI indicate that nodules should be dried for at least 24 hours. In the studies reviewed, moisture contents of about 28% were reported for the nodules dried at 105°C or 110°C for 24 hours and moisture contents of 32% were reported for those dried for 48 – 72 hours. This suggests gradual breakdown of very loosely-bound water of crystallization during extended drying periods.

Differences between the nodule moisture contents measured in the off-shore campaigns at NORI Area D are probably due primarily to differences in the time of exposure of the nodules to air prior to sealing in plastic sample bags. It is likely that in a production environment there will be some fluctuation in moisture content of shiploads of nodules due to variations in ambient conditions during handling and transport.

No correlations were identified between the moisture contents of the NORI Area D nodules and assays, nodule size fraction, nodule type, abundance, bathymetry, or geological domain.

So far as estimation of metal production units is concerned, the wet abundances must be converted to dry abundances. This should be done using the measured moisture contents, on a sample by sample basis. In this way any biases arising from different handling of the samples prior to sealing them, will not compromise the estimation of dry abundance and metal content. The corollary of this is that dry abundance should be estimated in the Mineral Resource block model.

The current estimate of moisture content of in situ nodules in NORI Area D is 28%, based on data from Campaign 6, 7 and 8 box cores and sampling of 3000 t of nodules recovered during the collector system test in 2022.

The current estimate of the moisture content of nodules in NORI-A, NORI-B and NORI-C is 24% and in the TOML areas is 28%.

For production planning and accounting, it is necessary to use the wet abundance of nodules calculated by adding the moisture content to the estimate of dry abundance.

6.9 Density of nodules

In 2018, during campaign C3, NORI measured the density of 45 samples of individual nodules or batches of nodules. Non-breakable beakers ranging from 200 ml to 2L were used for taking nodule weights and for volume displacements. These measurements were used to calculate wet density values. The average of the results was 2.0 t/m^3 (wet).

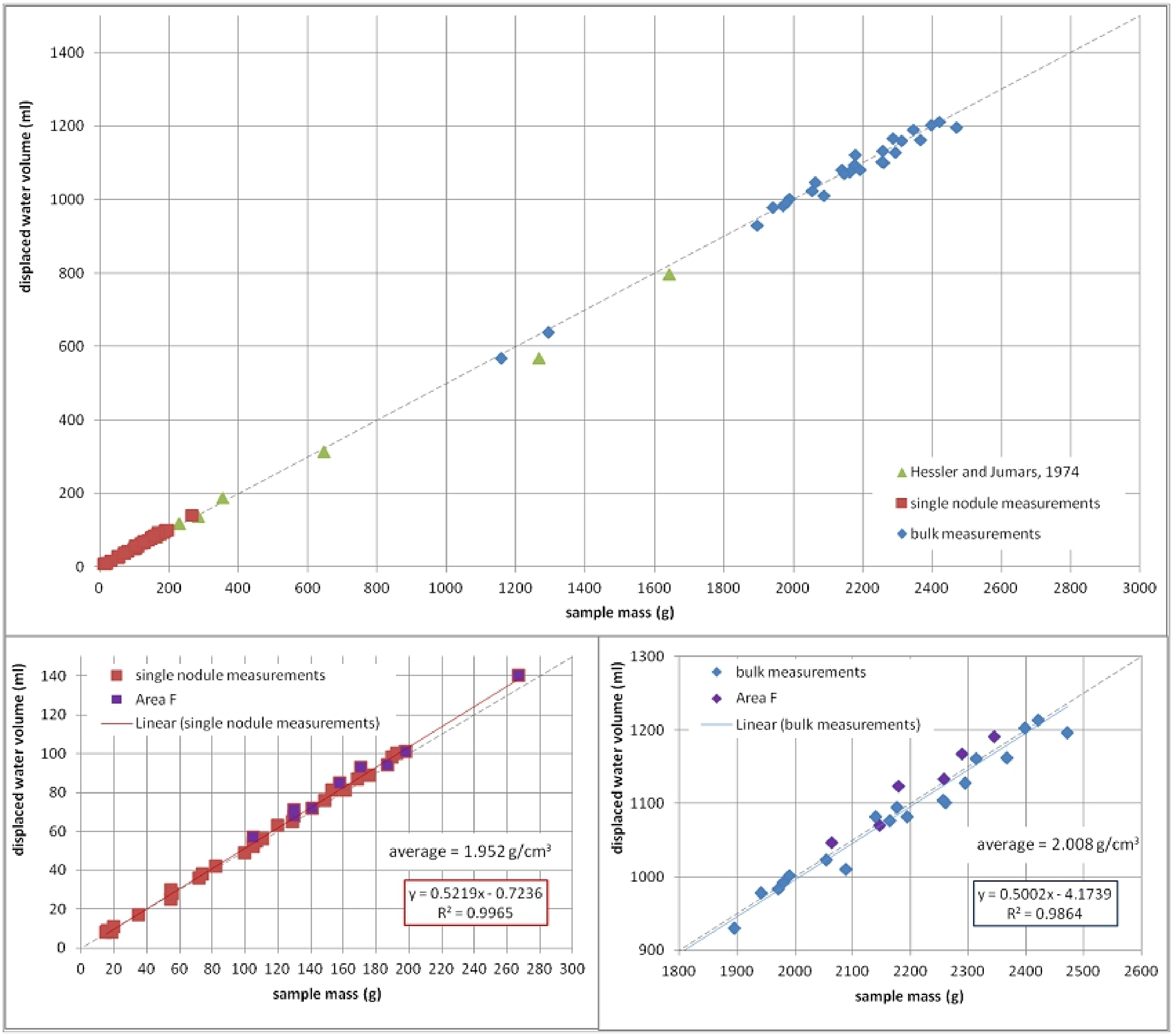
TOML measured the density of 76 individual nodules or batches of nodules from TOML Area B, C, D and F (AMC Consultants, 2016). The batches of nodules included fragments and sand resulting from attrition during transport and handing. The mean density of 34 individual nodules was 1.95 t/m^3 (wet) and that of 27 batches of nodules was 2.0 t/m^3 (wet).

TOML confirmed historical results from the north Pacific by Hessler and Jumars (1974). Figure 6.15 shows the data from TOML and Hessler and Jumars. The data points are consistent with a mean density of 2.0 t/m^3 (wet).

Baláž (2022) reported the results of investigation of nodules in the IOM contract TOML-From 2016 to 2021. The IOM Contract Area is in the eastern part of the CCZ but not immediately adjacent to NORI Area D. A total of 1,005 individual and batch sample measurements were reported, with a mean of 1.96 t/m^3 (wet) (Figure 6.15).

AMC considers that a wet density of 2.0 t/m^3 is supported by the data and is appropriate for use on the NORI and TOML areas.

Figure 6.15 Density data from TOML Areas B, C, D and F and Hessler and Jumars (1974)

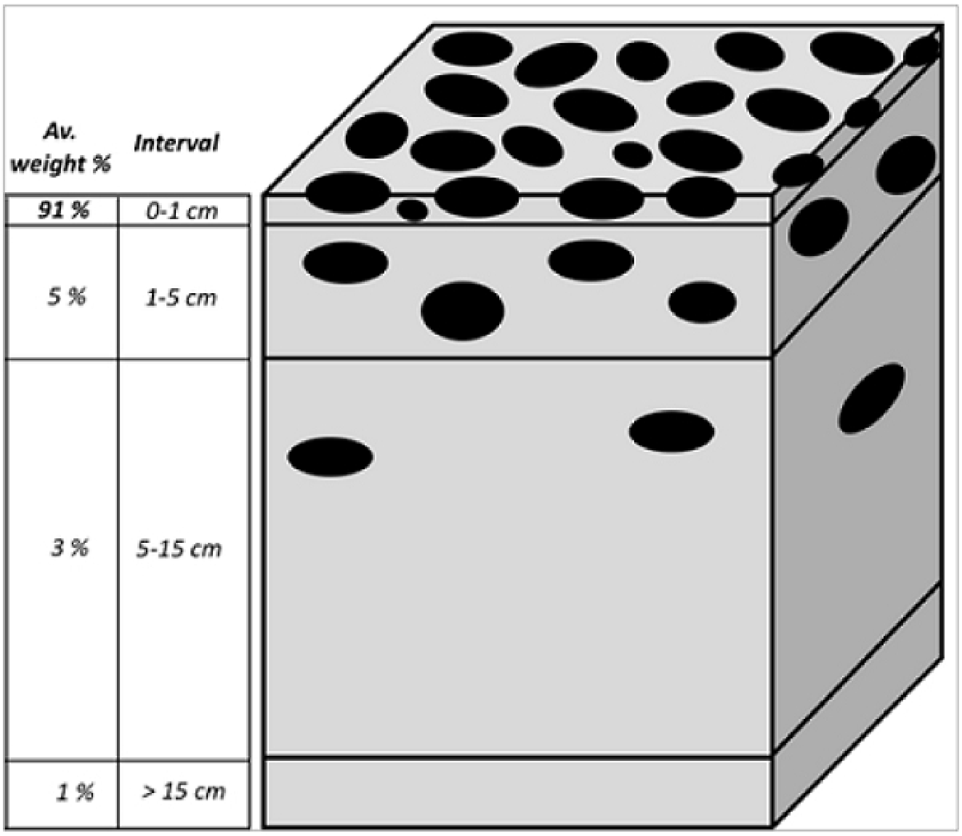


Source: TOML

6.10 Abundance of nodules in NORI and TOML

In detailed sampling of nodules by depth in the box cores from NORI Area D, on average, 96% of the nodules were recovered between the surface and a depth of 5 cm. Figure 6.16 presents a schematic representation of the average proportion of nodules by depth in the box cores in campaign C3 from NORI Area D. The nodules recovered below 5 cm depth from NORI Area D were generally interpreted to have been pushed into the soft clay by the BC frame. There were only two box cores where nodules deeper than 15 cm were confidently observed *in situ*, but these nodules were so friable that they crumbled when attempts were made to remove the surrounding clay and were not recoverable.

Figure 6.16 Schematic representation of average proportion of nodules by depth in the box cores in NORI Area D campaign C3



Source: TMC

The abundance of buried nodules in NORI-A, B, and C is poorly known at this time. Buried nodules were not included in Mineral Resource estimates.

In the TOML areas, nodules buried more than 10 cm beneath the surface were observed but are not very common. A total of 16 out of the 113 box cores taken during CCZ15 had buried nodules, however all of these were located in Area D and F. If just Areas D and F are considered then buried nodules were found in about 23.8% of samples which is a similar ratio to that described by Kotlinski and Stoyanova (2006). Buried nodules tend to be of much lower abundance and larger than the average nodules found at the surface. They were collected from the box-cores in CCZ15 purely for reference purposes and their weights and chemical analyses were not included in the dataset supporting the Mineral Resource statement.

6.11 Nodule size distribution

Understanding of the particle size distributions (PSD) of the nodules is important for the engineering design of the collector and for estimating nodule recovery during mining operations. The collector is expected to pick up nodules up to a certain maximum size and nodules greater than this size may be left on the seafloor. Therefore, measurements of nodule dimensions and understanding of how nodule dimensions vary across the NORI and TOML areas is expected to enhance the accuracy of mine plans and recovery predictions.

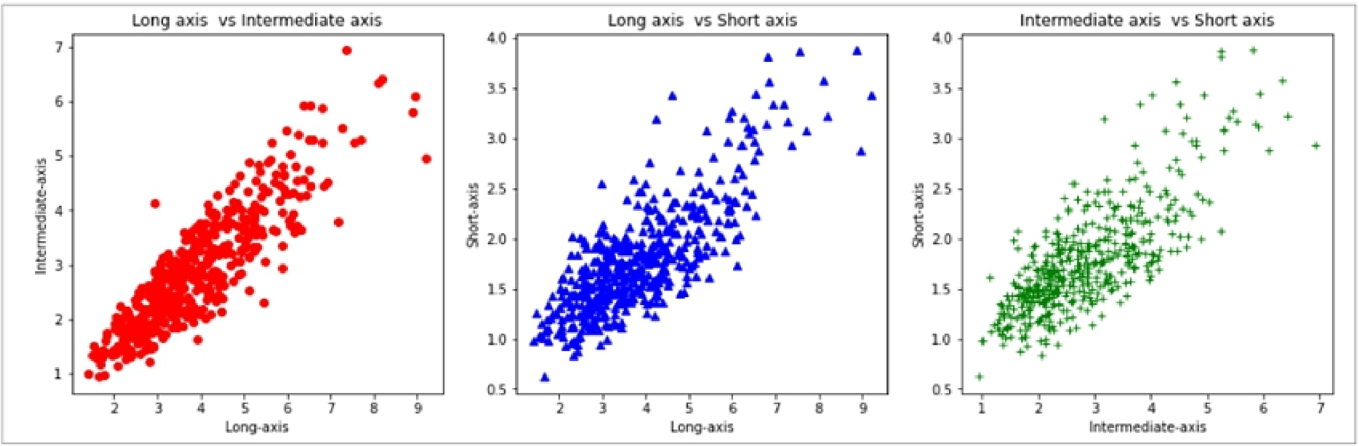
6.11.1 NORI Area D - Physical measurement of size and estimation of abundance

Subsea imagery, BC top shots, and laboratory photographs of trays of nodules, only provide measurements of the major and intermediate axes of the nodules. During Campaign 7A at NORI Area D, the axial lengths of selected nodules were manually measured during offshore nodule processing. The objective was to assess whether addition of the short (vertical) axis measurement can be used to significantly improve the estimation of nodule abundance from subsea imagery.

For each tray of nodules presented for photography in the offshore laboratory, the major, intermediate, and minor axes of the four nodules in the corners of each tray were measured. This resulted in 500 individual measurements acquired over the campaign, from 22 box cores.

The first step in the analysis of the data was to assess whether there was a relationship between major (X), intermediate (Y) and short (Z) axes data. Figure 6.17 shows scatter plots comparing the axial lengths of the 500 nodules. It is clear that the axial lengths are positively, linearly correlated. Variability in these relationships increase as the size of the nodule increases (seen as a comet-tail distribution, widening with increase in axes length).

Figure 6.17 Scatter plot comparing axis lengths of 500 manually measured nodules



Source: MARGIN

A regression model was established to predict short axis lengths Z_i as a function of major axis X_i and intermediate axis Y_i,. The data was split into test (70%) and training (30%) subsets. An initial regression model with an R^2 of 0.66 was achieved:

$$Z_i = 0.2323X_i + 0.1396Y_i + 0.5081$$

The model has a training set accuracy of 0.687 and test set accuracy of 0.601, so the model is not significantly over-fitting the data.

ImageJ image-processing software was used to measure the major and intermediate axes of all the nodules in the laboratory photographs of the trays of nodules collected from the 22 BC's in Campaign 7A. All the nodules were weighed as part of the normal BC processing, so each BC had a measured nodule abundance.

The new regression model was then applied to all the ImageJ data to derive an estimate of minor axis length for each nodule. The volume of each nodule was then estimated, assuming that each nodule is a perfect ellipsoid, using the following equation:

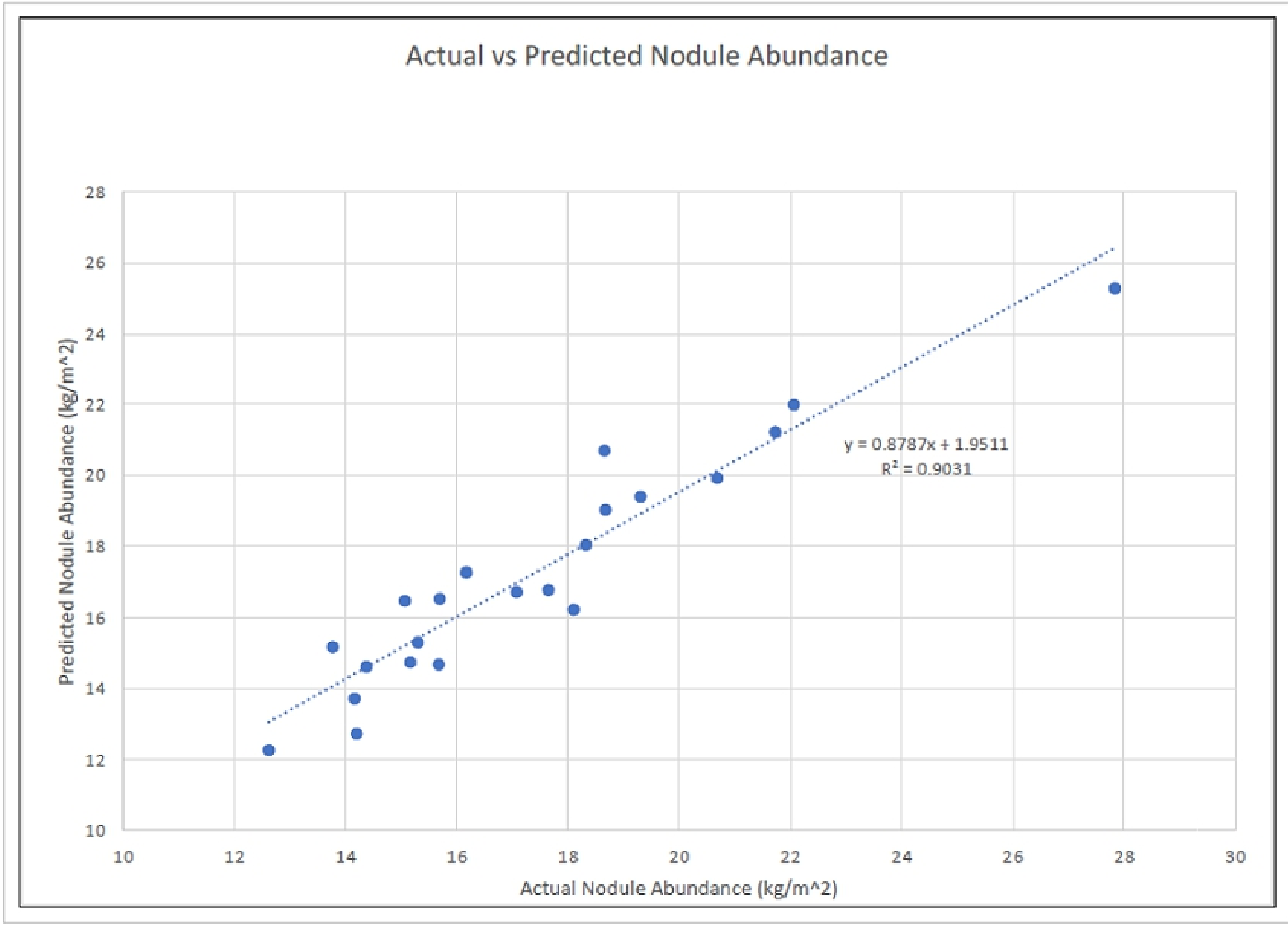
$$V = (4/3) * \pi * X_i/2 * Y_i/2 * Z_i/2,$$

The estimated nodule volumes were then converted to nodule weights using an assumed nodule wet density of 2 g/cm^3. This density value is supported by 45 measurements by NORI, 76 by TOML (AMC Consultants, 2016) and 1005 by IOM (Baláž, P. 2022).

Figure 6.18 shows a scatter plot comparing the nodule abundance measured by weighing the nodules in each of the 22 box cores versus the nodule abundance estimated from the axes lengths. There is a very strong linear correlation and a linear regression model shows an R^2 value of 0.90.

The study shows that it may be possible to apply this method to high resolution AUV images to generate estimates of nodule abundance that are sufficiently accurate to inform production planning. The tray images show numerous broken nodules and are likely to be more fragmented compared to in-situ seafloor imagery and are thus not perfect ellipsoids. Nonetheless, the method performed remarkably well.

Figure 6.18 Scatter plot comparing actual versus predicted nodule abundance in C7A box cores



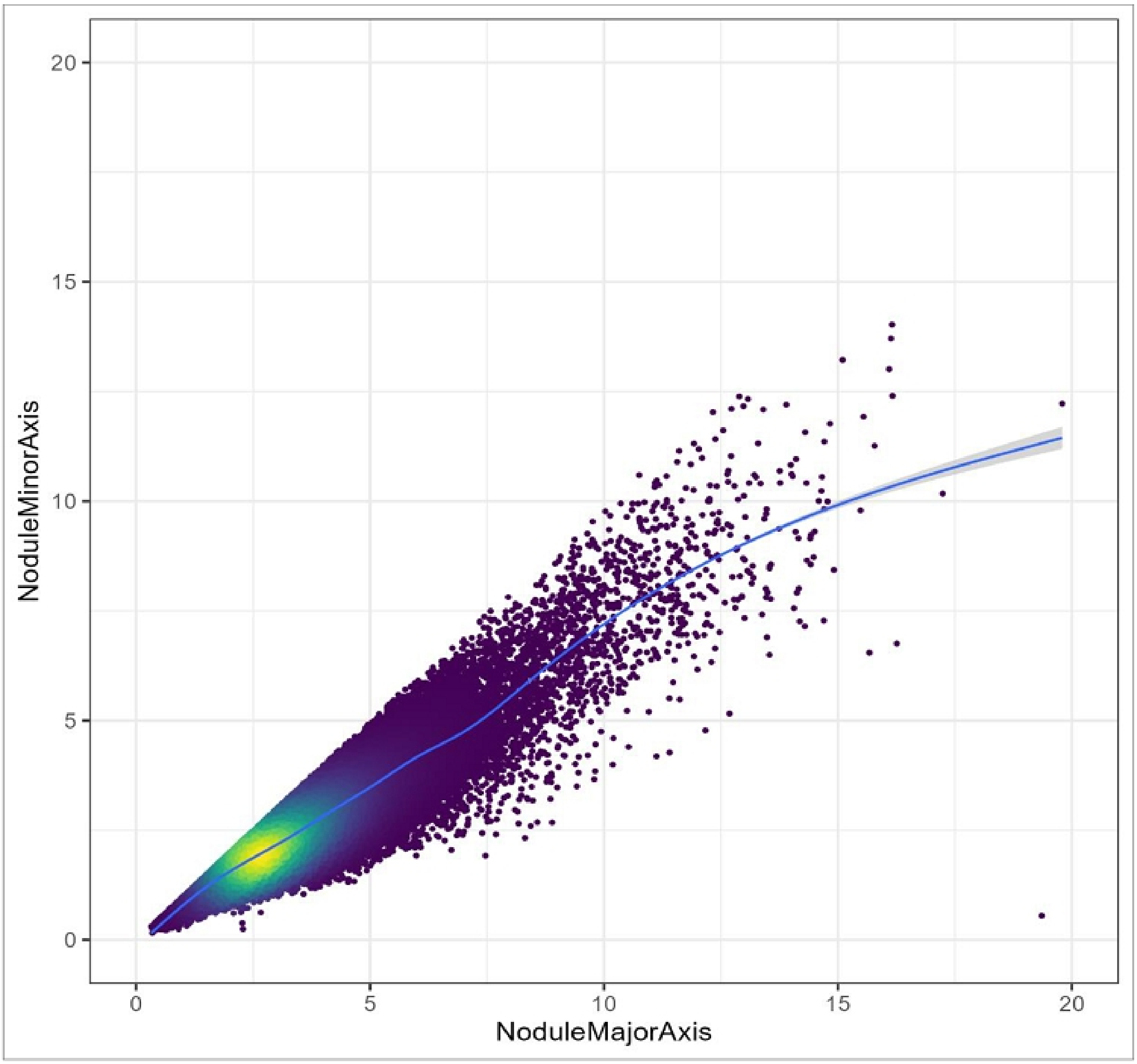
Source: MARGIN

6.11.2 NORI Area D - Measurement of nodule dimensions using image processing

During Campaign 3 at NORI Area D, an image classification approach was tested for measuring the long and intermediate axes of individual nodules taken from BC samples. NORI collected nodule size measurements from the BC samples by photographing all the nodules nominally greater than 1 cm in length and then using ImageJ to automate the measurement of the orthogonal major and intermediate axes of the nodules. The minor axis of the nodules is the vertical axis of the nodules which cannot be seen in the photographs. Nodules < 1 cm diameter were bagged and sealed into small clear sample packets and included in the photographs but not measured by the image processing software. They were included in the weighing process and are included in the abundance measurements. The image classification method showed a very good correlation against hand-held calliper measurement (see Section 6.11.1) and was adopted for subsequent offshore campaigns at NORI Area D.

The NORI Area D data consists of 232,068 individual nodule measurements from 287 box cores. Figure 6.19 shows a scatter plot of the major axis length versus the intermediate axis length for all the nodules in this data set. The points are colored according to the local density of points, where the light green cloud highlights the region with the most points. A curve is fitted to the data using a non-linear smoothing algorithm. The plot demonstrates that most nodules manifest some ellipticity, confirmed by the cloud of points lying below the 1:1 line, along which any circular nodules would lie. The mean ratio nod_intermediate : nod_major is 0.75 and the ratio nod_intermediate : nod_minor is similar. Note that the data does not discriminate between whole nodules and broken fragments.

Figure 6.19 Scatter plot of nodule major axis dimension versus nodule intermediate axis dimension for all nodules

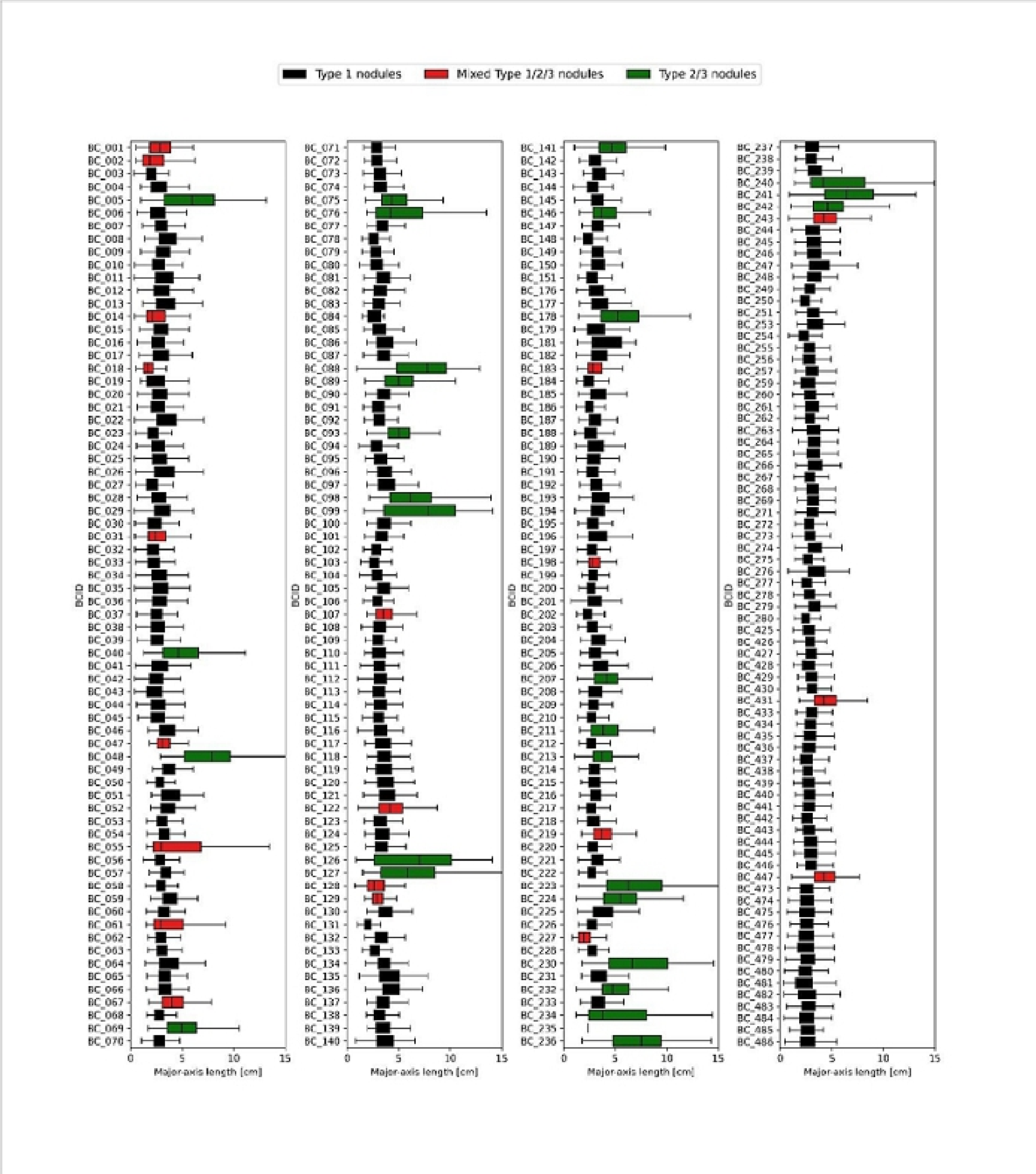


Source: AMC

Figure 6.20 shows boxplots of the major axis lengths of all 287 box cores. It shows that most of the box cores exhibit a median length in the range 2 cm - 3 cm, and in most cases at least 75% of the nodules (as indicated by the righthand limit of the boxes) are less than 5 cm. This is typical of Type 1 nodule facies (colored black in Figure 6.20). The nodule size distributions are in all cases positively skewed. That is, the distributions show a tail of longer nodule lengths extending to the right of the plots.

In most cases, the skewness is weak and the tail is short. However, the box plots and histograms show that 48 box cores are dominated by larger nodules or have more strongly skewed distributions or even bimodal distributions, with a large population of small values and a small population of higher values. These anomalous box cores correlate with the extent of Type 2/3 nodule facies interpreted from backscatter data. Kuhn and Rühlemann, (2021b) made similar statistical observations in the BGR Contract Area, to the north of NORI Area D.

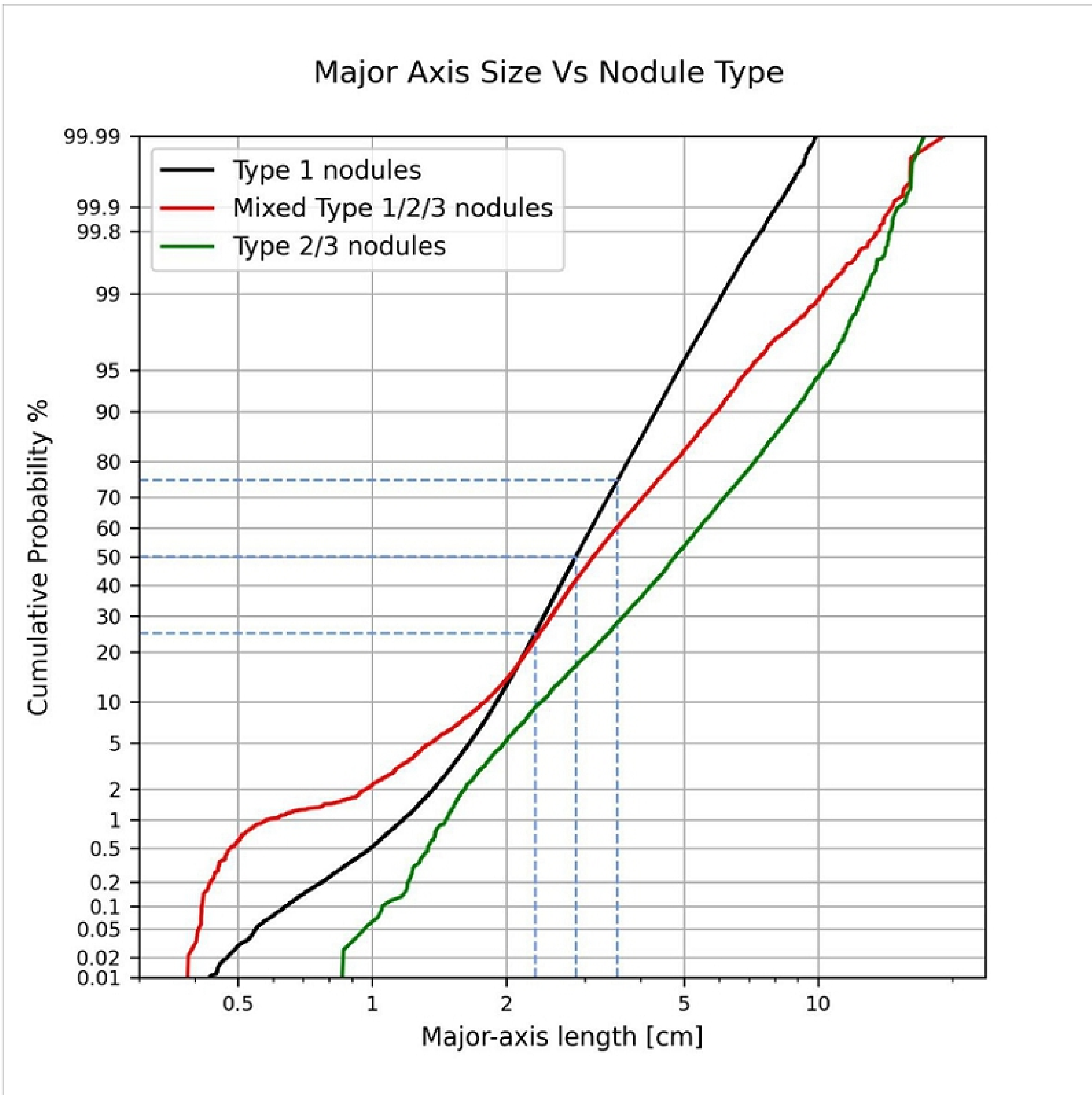
Figure 6.20 Box plots of nodule major axis dimension for all box cores



Source: AMC

Figure 6.21 shows a plot of the cumulative distributions of nodule major axis lengths for all the 287 box cores from NORI Area D for which the ImageJ major axis length data were available. The data was divided into Type 1, Type 2/3, and mixed Type 1 and Type 2/3 groups. The plot shows that there are significant differences between the statistical distributions of major axis length in the three nodule types. The Type 1 box cores have the smallest median major axis length. The Type 2/3 box cores have the largest median major axis length. The mixed facies box cores have an intermediate size distribution. These statistical features illustrate the complexity of nodule size distributions at the local scale and the need for further work to improve the spatial definition of Type 2/3 nodule facies.

Figure 6.21 Log probability plot of nodule major axis dimensions by interpreted nodule facies



Source: AMC

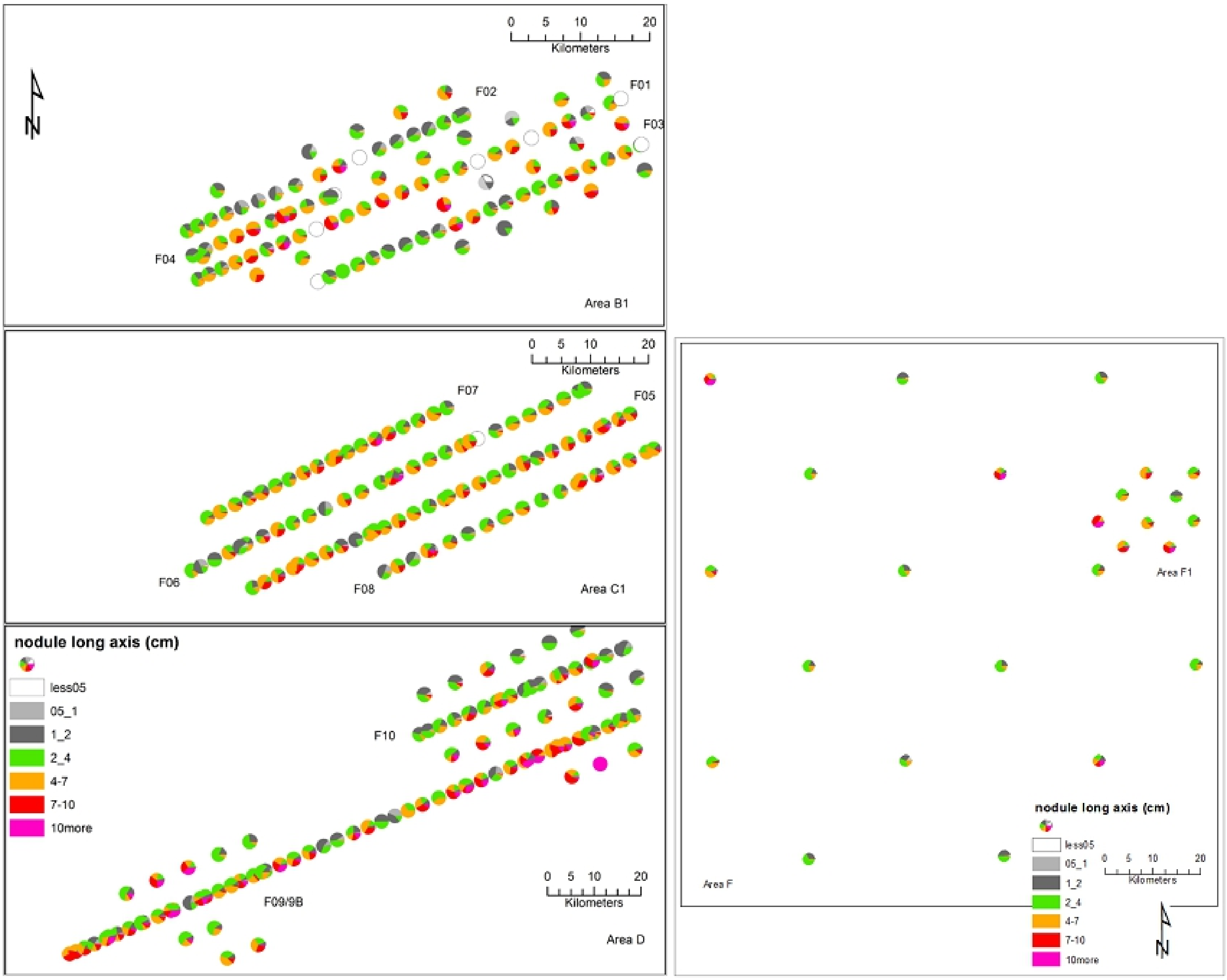
6.11.3 TOML Areas – Measurement of nodule sizes

TOML made physical measurements of nodule dimensions in box cores and measurements using the long axis estimation method applied to photo-profile images. Roughly every 100th image was measured for the purpose of estimating abundance. The results of these measurements are shown in Figure 6.22. The distribution of nodule long axis length at each BC and photograph location is represented by pie-charts.

The surveyed TOML areas host a range of nodule sizes at each location and there is variation on a scale of several kilometers across the surveyed areas. Within TOML-D, there is a mixture of sizes with some very large nodules found in the BC samples. Bigger nodules were recovered from the BC than were measured on the photo-profiling lines because partial cover by sediments resulted in an underestimation of nodule length.

The characteristics of nodule size and nodule size variation appear similar in NORI Area D and TOML-B, C, D, E and F. For the IA, it is reasonable to assume that mining systems designed for NORI Area D would be appropriate for the TOML areas.

Figure 6.22 Plans showing nodule sizes and types from TOML F and sub-areas B1, C1, D1, D2, and F1



Source: TMC. Top: B1, Middle-left: C1, Bottom-left: D1-D2, Bottom right: F and F1

7 Exploration

Exploration in the NORI and TOML areas can be considered in terms of three broad phases:

- Historical work and data collected by the Pioneer Contractors who returned Reserved Areas to the ISA. This work underpins much of the Inferred Mineral Resource estimate for NORI A, B and C, and TOML A- F.
- Offshore exploration campaigns completed by NORI in 2012, 2013, 2018, and 2019. This work underpins the Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D.
- Offshore campaigns completed by TOML in 2013 and 2015. This work underpins part of the Inferred Mineral Resource estimates as well as all of the Indicated and Measured Mineral Resource estimates for TOML A- F.

This report presents information summarized from these exploration programs. Further details of these programs are presented in:

- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "NORI Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 17, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a).
- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "TOML Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b).

Additional information is provided in the Technical Report on NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone Mineral Resource Estimate, April 2019 (AMC Consultants, 2019).

Nodule abundance (wet kg/m^2) is derived by dividing the weight of nodules recovered by a sampling device by the surface area covered by the sampler.

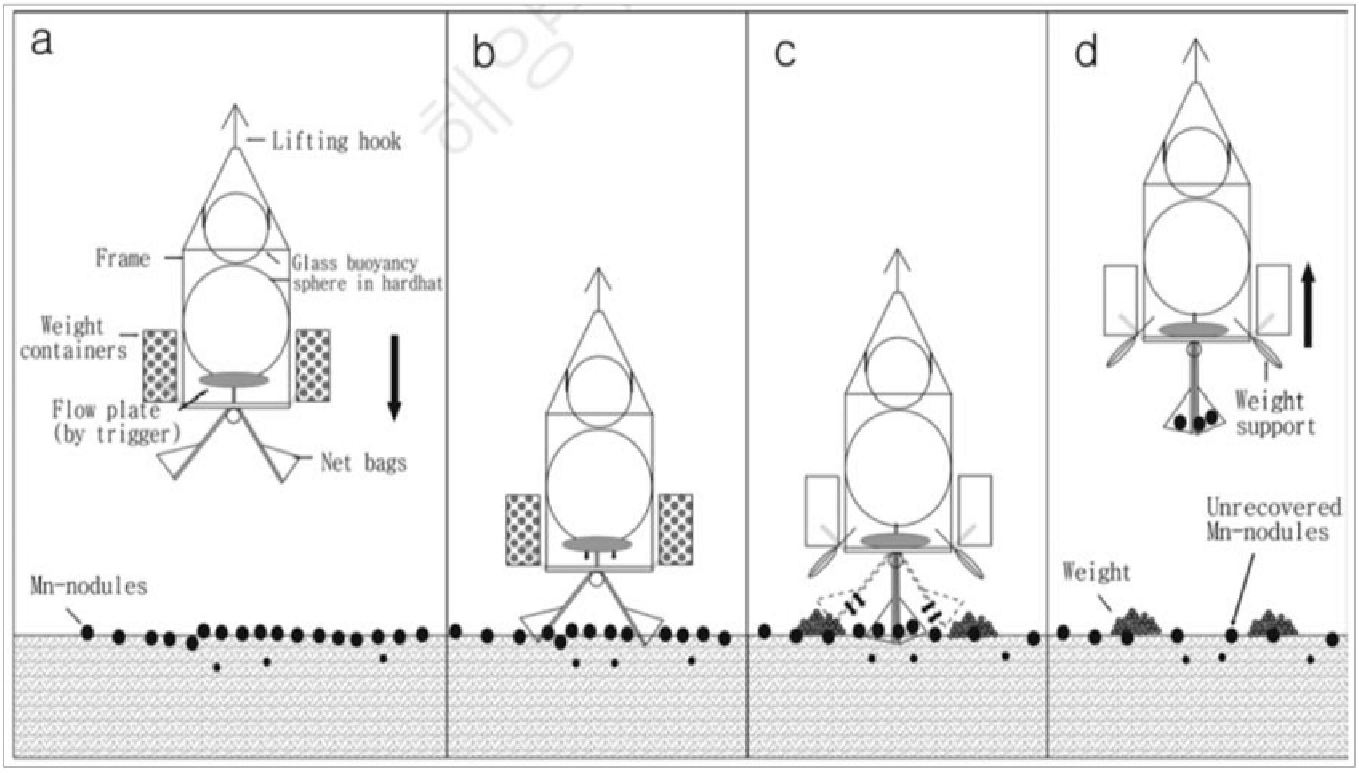
7.1 Free fall grab sampling method

Free fall grab (FFG) samplers have been widely used in the CCZ for collection of samples of nodules. The principal components of FFG samplers are a pair of spring-loaded clamshell net bags for collecting the sample, an air-filled sphere to create buoyancy and containers filled with ballast.

The operation of a FFG sampler is shown schematically in Figure 7.1. The FFG sampler is released, untethered, over the side of the exploration ship and sinks to the seafloor under the weight of the ballast. When the FFG sampler makes contact with the seafloor ejection of the ballast is triggered which makes the sampler buoyant. As the sampler begins to rise, the clamshell net bags close, capturing the nodules at the land-out point. After it reaches the sea-surface, the FFG sampler is recovered by the boat.

FFG samplers are quicker, easier and cheaper to operate than box corers and so were preferred by the Pioneer Contractors for much of the early exploration. However, research shows that they produce less accurate, conservative, measures of nodule abundance.

Figure 7.1 Cartoon showing the recovery of nodules using a free fall grab sampler

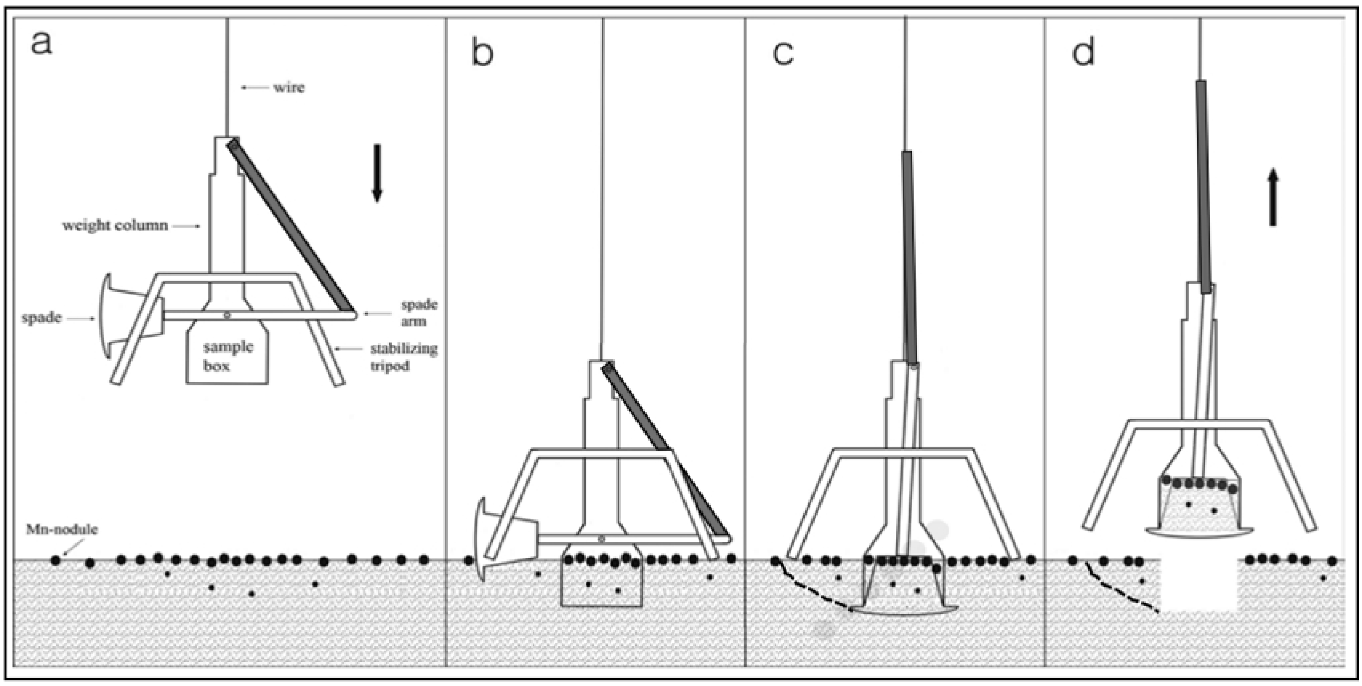


Source: Lee et al., (2008).

7.2 Box core sampling method

The BC is the preferred sampling method for retrieving polymetallic samples for resource evaluation and environmental studies. The BC consists of a steel box (without a base), a trigger, a plunger, and a rotating spade-like bottom plate. Upon land out on the seafloor, the trigger is released which allows the plunger to push the open sample box into the substrate. Upon retraction, the cutting shovel rotates under the box while cutting into the seafloor and sealing the sample box from below (Figure 7.2).

Figure 7.2 Cartoon showing the recovery of nodules using a BC sampler



Modified after: Lee et al., (2008).

Box corers have been used in the CCZ since the 1970s. As they collect a relatively undisturbed sample of the seabed, they are seen by most explorers as the best possible sampling device to measure the nodule abundance in any given location. Box cores come in different sizes ranging from typically 0.1 m^2 or 0.25 m^2 to 1 m^2. Larger box cores provide more accurate measurements of the nodule abundance, especially if the nodules are large or sparsely distributed. Figure 7.3 shows photographs of a KC Denmark 0.75 m² box corer used for sampling at NORI Area D.

Both TOML and NORI carried out BC sampling. Handling of nodules and chain of custody were supervised by the Lead Scientists. Nodule sampling for geological purposes was carefully integrated with collection of biological data. The differences between the sampling procedures in the various campaigns were minor. In summary, the procedure was as follows:

- When the box cores arrive on deck, photograph the nodules in situ.
- Remove the nodules from the box and weigh in the laboratory.
- Photograph the nodules on a white background with a graticular scale.
- Split some samples to create duplicates for assaying.
- Pack the nodule samples in specially marked paint pails and seal with tamper-proof tape.
- Store the pails in a refrigerated container (reefer) on deck prior to transport to assay laboratories.

In most samples, there were no buried nodules, although some were occasionally entrained by the sides of the box or the shovel. If present, buried nodules were separated at the point of collection from the box and were washed, weighed, and packed separately. Entrained nodules were sampled for reference purposes only and were not weighed.

Figure 7.3 KC Denmark 0.75 m² box corer

Note: Insert top right shows USBL beacon (circled top) and GoPro camera and lighting system (circled bottom)

7.3 Comparison of FFG and BC samples

Comparison of nodule abundance measurements by FFG and box cores suggests that FFG commonly underestimate the actual abundance (e.g., Hennigar, Dick and Foell, 1986). This is due to smaller nodules escaping the sampler during ascent and larger nodules around the edge of the sampler being knocked out during the sampling process. Additionally, FFG occasionally fail to return any nodules where nodule abundance is known to be very high because the sampler fails to penetrate the layer of nodules.

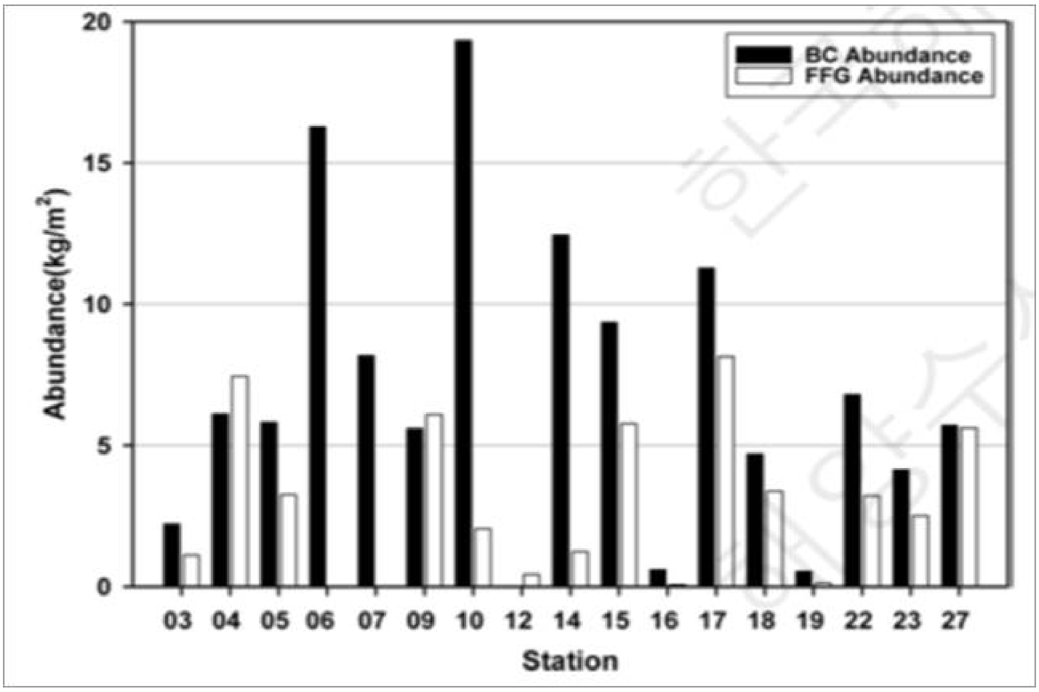
Lee et al. (2008) compared FFG BC data in some detail. They found a wide range but consistent differences with FFG under-reporting compared to BC (Figure 7.4). They recommended an overall correction factor of 1.4 to convert FFG abundance to BC abundance. However, they acknowledged that any simple factor lacks precision.

No corrections were applied to the nodule abundance data in the TOML and NORI areas because:

- Sample collection type is not specified in the historical data (i.e. proportion and identity of BC versus FFG samples is unknown (although most are likely to be FFG).
- The size of collector and nodule sizes is not specified in the historical data.

Therefore, estimates of nodule abundance estimates based on historical samples are likely to be conservative.

Figure 7.4 Comparison of returned abundances from BC and FFG at test stations within the KORDI exploration area

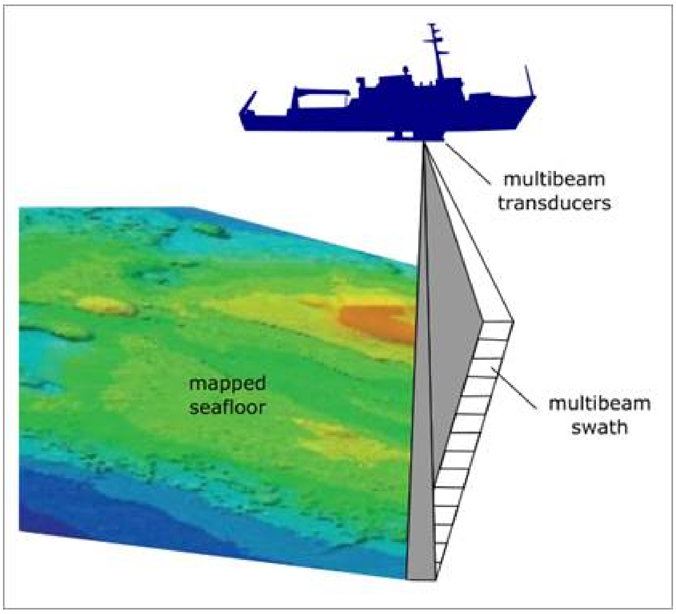


Source: Lee et al., (2008).

7.4 Multibeam Bathymetry methods

MBES is used to determine the depth of water (bathymetry) and the acoustic reflectance (backscatter) of the seabed. It operates by transmitting a focused acoustic pulse (Figure 7.5) from a specially designed transducer across a swath across the vessel track. These pulses return as a set of receive beams that are weaker and narrower and whose arrival time at the detector varies depending on speed through the water column and distance. Thus, position and depth can be measured and seafloor hardness can be qualitatively assessed from the attenuation of the backscattered acoustic pulse.

Figure 7.5 MBES operations schematic



Source: TOML

7.5 Historical exploration data

Six exploration groups are known to have surveyed areas within the TOML Contract Areas and collected samples of polymetallic nodules. Much of this work overlapped as it predated the signing of the Law of the Sea. These include the Japanese group (DORD), the South Korean group (KORDI), the Russian Federation group (Yuzhmorgeologiya), the French group (Ifremer), the German group (FIGNR or BGR), and the consortium, OMCO. The timing and location (ISA, 2003) of the OMCO sampling is known but the results are not available outside of ISA published contour maps.

Sampling of seafloor nodules within the NORI areas was conducted by three Pioneer Contractors; AMR, State Enterprise Yuzhmorgeologiya of the Russian Federation and IOM, a consortium formed by Bulgaria, Cuba, the Czech Republic, Poland, the Russian Federation, and Slovakia.

Virtually all the samples in the TOML areas and NORI A, B and C were obtained by free fall grab (FFG) samplers, although a few results from box corers (BC) were also included.

Each of the Pioneer Contractors used their own procedures for sampling and assaying. The differences in methods were relatively minor. The general approach was as follows:

- The nodule samples cleaned of any adhering sediment, weighed and photographed.
- The nodules were air-dried in order to make it practical to crush and sub-sample them.
- The crushed samples were dried at 105°C or 110°C for various lengths of time in order to drive off all free moisture.
- The dried samples were pulverized and sub-sampled for assaying.
- The grades of manganese, nickel, cobalt, copper, iron and in some cases zinc, silica, calcium, and magnesium were analyzed by mixed acid digest followed by atomic absorption spectrophotometry (AAS) or pressed-powder X-ray fluorescence. Yuzhmorgeologiya used a photometric (electrometric) titration method for determination of manganese.
- Some Contractors reportedly used polymetallic nodule Certified Reference Materials (CRMs) (e.g., NOD-P-1; Flanagan and Gottfried, 1980) and duplicate samples for quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC), however details of the CRMs and QA/QC results were not included in the datasets supplied by the ISA.

Upon making an application for an exploration contract under ISA regulations, the Pioneer Contractors were required to submit sufficient data and information to enable designation of a reserved area based on the estimated commercial value. This sample data provided the basis of the database held by the ISA.

Systematic QA/QC information was not provided to TOML or NORI by the ISA. Nonetheless, the acceptance of the data by the ISA suggests the ISA was satisfied with the quality of the data.

The quality of the Pioneer Contractor data was assessed Golder Associates Pty Ltd r 2015 (Golder) using comparative measures between the different datasets. The correlation of data from different sources, including Pioneer Contractors and government scientific institutes, provides a satisfactory level of quality assurance to support Mineral Resource estimates at an Inferred level of confidence.

7.5.1 Pioneer Contractor sample data supplied to NORI

Statistics for the samples that contain both abundance and grade data inside the NORI Areas are tabulated in Table 7.1 and illustrated as boxplots in Figure 7.6. The box plots show the range of grades; the box represents the range of grades in the middle 50% of the samples, centered on the median (middle value) and box width reflects number of samples. The dashed lines represent the range of the lowest 25% and highest 25% of the data.

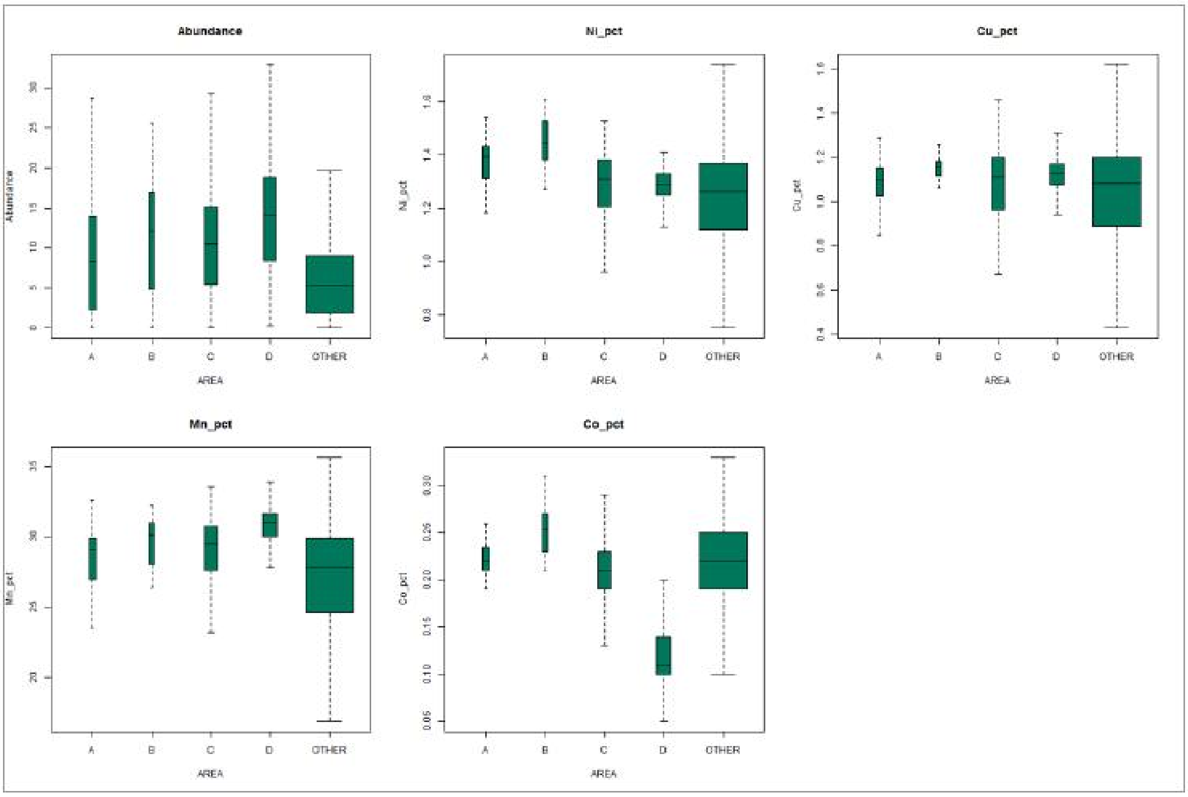
The range of the assays (as summarized by the coefficient of variation(CoV) is remarkably low compared to most terrestrial Mineral Resources. Abundance values vary more widely, making abundance the key variable of uncertainty in Mineral Resource estimation.

Table 7.1 Summary of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data from the NORI Areas

NORI Area	Grade	Number	Min	Max	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
A	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	50	0	28.7	9.3	8.2	57.37	0.81
	Ni (%)	40	1.04	1.75	1.37	1.39	0.02	0.09
	Cu (%)	40	0.66	1.29	1.07	1.1	0.02	0.12
	Mn (%)	40	19.77	32.6	28.06	28.98	8.58	0.1
	Co (%)	40	0.16	0.28	0.22	0.22	0.00	0.11
B	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	31	0	25.55	11.24	12	50.54	0.63
	Ni (%)	26	1.01	1.61	1.42	1.44	0.02	0.1
	Cu (%)	26	0.72	1.26	1.12	1.16	0.02	0.11
	Mn (%)	26	20.8	32.2	28.88	29.8	9.94	0.11
	Co (%)	26	0.21	0.31	0.25	0.25	0.00	0.09
C	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	152	0	44.1	10.55	10.33	52.90	0.69
	Ni (%)	135	0.68	1.53	1.27	1.31	0.03	0.12
	Cu (%)	135	0.4	1.46	1.05	1.11	0.05	0.21
	Mn (%)	135	12.84	33.54	28.63	29.42	11.65	0.12
	Co (%)	135	0.12	0.33	0.21	0.21	0.00	0.17
D	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	159	0.2	52.2	14.12	13.9	72.24	0.6
	Ni (%)	159	1.09	1.41	1.28	1.29	0.00	0.05
	Cu (%)	159	0.88	1.5	1.14	1.13	0.01	0.1
	Mn (%)	159	23.8	33.9	30.58	31	3.12	0.06
	Co (%)	159	0.05	0.2	0.12	0.11	0.00	0.26

Notes: Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation.

Figure 7.6 Box plots of sample grades within the NORI areas compared with all other data from the Reserved Blocks



Source: AMC. Note: Box size represents 1st and 3rd quartiles centered on the median and box width reflects number of samples.

7.5.2 Pioneer Contractor sample data supplied to TOML

The statistics for the samples that contain both abundance and grade data inside the TOML Contract Areas are tabulated in Table 7.2. Samples in the CCZ but outside the TOML Contract Area are presented in Table 7.3. Figure 7.7 shows box plots of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data within the TOML Contract Areas. The data shows that the TOML Contract Areas have similar ranges of grade and abundance to the rest of the CCZ deposit.

The CoV of grades are low compared to most terrestrial Mineral Resources. Abundance values vary more widely, making abundance the key variable of uncertainty in Mineral Resource estimation.

Table 7.2 Summary of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data in TOML areas

TOML Area and source	Grade	Number	Min	Max	Mean	Median	Var	CoV
A (data from DORD)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	18	2.68	17.93	10.12	9.19	25.81	0.50
	Ni (%)	18	0.71	1.47	1.14	1.15	0.06	0.21
	Cu (%)	18	0.46	1.51	1.00	1.02	0.12	0.35
	Mn (%)	18	21.46	30.05	25.40	25.50	5.95	0.10
	Co (%)	18	0.15	0.30	0.22	0.21	0.00	0.18
B (from Yuzhmor-geologiya)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	88	0.03	26.00	8.82	8.09	34.46	0.67
	Ni (%)	88	0.53	1.51	1.16	1.23	0.05	0.20
	Cu (%)	88	0.40	1.40	0.94	1.02	0.07	0.28
	Mn (%)	88	10.30	31.20	25.40	26.55	17.56	0.16
	Co (%)	88	0.02	0.35	0.25	0.25	0.00	0.24
C (from Ifremer)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	78	1.35	21.25	9.98	9.17	17.64	0.42
	Ni (%)	78	0.93	1.42	1.27	1.29	0.01	0.08
	Cu (%)	78	0.71	1.44	1.15	1.19	0.02	0.13
	Mn (%)	78	22.01	30.90	27.91	28.55	4.54	0.08
	Co (%)	78	0.14	0.32	0.25	0.25	0.00	0.12
D (from DORD)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	36	0.12	16.37	7.68	7.78	16.73	0.53
	Ni (%)	36	1.09	1.44	1.31	1.32	0.01	0.06
	Cu (%)	36	0.79	1.36	1.16	1.17	0.01	0.09
	Mn (%)	36	22.79	30.45	28.52	28.76	2.16	0.05
	Co (%)	36	0.19	0.30	0.22	0.22	0.00	0.09
E (from KORDI, IOM)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	10	1.48	22.90	11.34	9.22	46.51	0.60
	Ni (%)	10	0.96	1.43	1.21	1.21	0.03	0.15
	Cu (%)	10	0.69	1.27	1.07	1.11	0.03	0.16
	Mn (%)	10	24.04	31.34	27.54	27.17	6.66	0.09

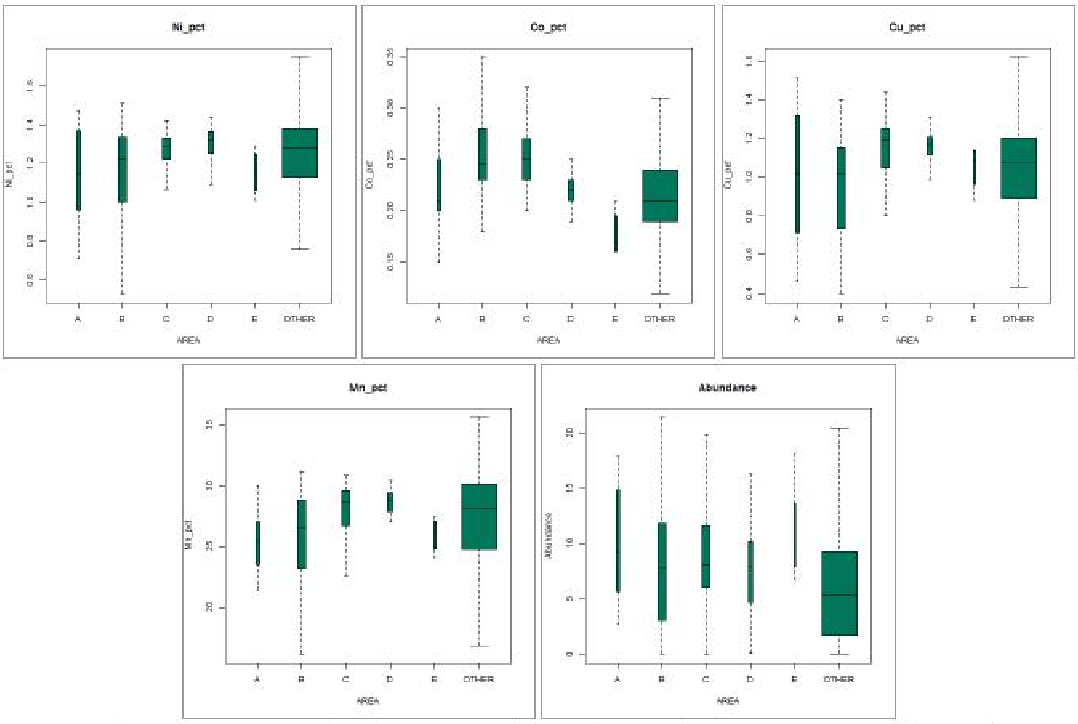
	Co (%)	10	0.16	0.27	0.21	0.22	0.00	0.19
F	Only two samples - statistics not calculated							

Notes: Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation.

Table 7.3 Summary of Historical Samples from the Reserved Areas outside the TOML Contract Area

	Mn (%)	Co (%)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)
Count	2188	2188	2188	2188	2188
Minimum	4.14	0.05	0.15	0.12	0.01
Maximum	35.62	3.23	1.75	1.62	52.20
Mean	27.47	0.21	1.25	1.04	8.21
Median	28.47	0.21	1.30	1.09	7.10
Standard Deviation	4.06	0.08	0.20	0.24	6.06
Coefficient of Variation	0.15	0.40	0.16	0.24	0.74

Figure 7.7 Box Plots of Pioneer Contractor sample assay data within the TOML Contract Areas



Source: AMC. Note: Box size represents 1st and 3rd quartiles centered on the median and box width reflects number of samples

7.6 NORI exploration data

Offshore campaigns were completed by NORI in NORI -C and Area D in 2012, and NORI-A and NORI-B in 2013. Detailed exploration data was gathered in NORI Area D in 2018, 2019, and as part of a collector system test in 2022. Table 7.4 summarizes data collected from each NORI area.

Table 7.4 NORI-A, B, C datasets

	MBES (km^2)	Photo-profile (line km)	Dredge (kg)	Box core (#)	Deep Tow Sonar (line km)
NORI-A	8,924	–	190	–	–
NORI-B	2,911	–	85	–	–
NORI-C	25,720	–	28	–	–

Note: MBES excludes AUV data.

7.6.1 Dredging and nodule sampling

In 2012, bulk samples were collected by five dredge deployments in NORI-C and 28 dredge deployments in NORI Area D. Approximately 280 kg of nodules were recovered from NORI-C and approximately 4,500 kg from NORI Area D. Video footage was also obtained during dredge deployments and, together with the samples recovered, provided physical verification of nodules within NORI-C and NORI-D. Figure 7.8 shows examples of the nodules recovered.

Twenty (20) nodule samples (two (2) from NORI-C and 18 from NORI Area D) were assayed. Each sample for assaying, was a subsample of a free fall grab sample and weighed approximately 1 kg. Results of assaying indicated a mean grade of 1.20% nickel, 1.03% copper, 27.9% manganese, and 0.13% cobalt. These mean values are consistent with the mean grades derived from the historical grab samples in NORI-C and NORI Area D (see Table 7.1). The cobalt value of 0.13% confirmed the cobalt grades recorded from samples in the German data in NORI Area D. A drying test undertaken on a nodule sample collected during the NORI 2012 campaign indicated moisture loss of 24% at 120 °C.

Figure 7.8 Examples of Nodule Samples Recovered during NORI's 2012 Exploration Campaign

Source: TMC

In 2013, dredging was carried out using an epibenthic sled that was designed by KC Denmark Research Equipment specifically for polymetallic nodules sampling. Approximately 190 kg of nodules were recovered from NORI-A and approximately 85 kg of nodules were recovered from NORI-B.

Figure 7.9 Photos of Nodules Collected from NORI-A during the 2013 NORI campaign

Source: TMC

Four subsamples from NORI-A and B were sent to ALS Laboratories in Brisbane for preparation and analysis. The samples were dried at 120 C for 12 hours then assayed using a four-acid digest specifically designed for high-manganese samples, followed by AAS (method Mn-AA62) and four-acid digest followed by Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) for concentrates (ME-MS61c). The Mn-AA62 method has a claimed precision of ±5%. Table 7.5 shows the results for cobalt, copper, iron, manganese, molybdenum, and nickel. The average moisture content after drying at 120 C for 12 hours was 28.7%.

Table 7.5 Assay Results for NORI-B Nodule Samples

Sample ID	Co (%)	Cu (%)	Fe (%)	Mn (%)	Mo (ppm)	Ni (%)
NA1	0.23	1.08	5.27	29.0	589	1.36
NA2	0.22	1.12	5.06	28.9	545	1.34
NB1	0.25	1.16	5.62	29.2	601	1.38
NB2	0.25	1.11	5.60	28.2	590	1.38

Note: Co = cobalt, Cu = copper, Fe = iron, Mn = manganese, Mo = molybdenum, Ni = nickel, ppm = parts per million

7.6.2 Box-coring and nodule sampling

Due to the prioritization of work on NORI Area D, no box-coring has yet been undertaken by
NORI in NORI-A, B, or C.

In NORI Area D, a total of 252 box cores were acquired during the 2018 and 2019 offshore campaigns. The sample spacing was generally 10 km by 10 km or 7 km by 7 km. Spatial analysis showed that this spacing was sufficient to classify the Mineral Resources in these areas as Indicated Mineral Resources. For the IA of NORI A, B and C it is reasonable to assume that BC sampling programs on similar spacings to those used in NORI Area D could potentially provide data suitable for upgrading Mineral Resource estimates in NORI A, B and C to a level of confidence sufficient for mine planning and a PFS.

7.6.3 MBES surveys

In 2012, NORI completed an offshore exploration campaign in NORI-C and NORI Area D aboard the RV Mt. Mitchell using a hull-mounted Kongsberg Simrad EM120 12 kHz, full-ocean depth multibeam system. Due to swath width and vessel orientation relative to course-made-good, some data were recorded beyond the bounds of those areas. Approximately 69.1% of NORI-C (25,720 km^2) was surveyed. NORI Area D was surveyed in its entirety (25,439 km^2).

In 2013, NORI carried out an offshore exploration campaign within NORI-A and B using RV Mt. Mitchell. This campaign was focused mapping bathymetry, identifying nodule fields based on acoustic data (including interpretation of backscatter data), and recovering bulk polymetallic nodule samples. A hull-mounted Kongsberg Simrad EM120 12 kHz, full-ocean depth multibeam system was used to survey approximately 8,924 km^2 in NORI-A and approximately 2,911 km^2 in NORI-B. The Applanix Pos MV 320 V4 system was used to measure vessel position and attitude, and a dual Trimble Zephyr unit was used as the Global Positioning System (GPS) system.

First pass processing of the data was carried out with the intent identifying areas of nodule abundance to be further surveyed with higher resolution AUV-based sonar and to selecting priority areas for nodule sampling. More sophisticated processing to clean the MBES data and achieve the highest possible resolution maps of the bathymetry was not carried out for NORI A, B and C at that time and NORI's attention shifted almost exclusively to NORI Area D.

7.6.4 AUV surveys

Due to the prioritization of work on NORI Area D, no AUV surveys were undertaken by
NORI in NORI-A, B or C.

MBES surveys show that the topography of the seafloor in NORI-A to C and TOML-A to F shows many of the geological features mapped in NORI Area D, such as abyssal plains, abyssal hills, volcanic cones, and slopes ≥ 6°. The nodules recovered from NORI-A to C and TOML-A to F are also similar in size and shape to those from NORI Area D, although nodule facies mapping and analysis of genetic types (hydrogenetic or diagenetic) has not yet been undertaken. Consequently, the information gathered by AUV surveys in NORI Area D is considered to provide insight to the possible distribution patterns of nodules on the seafloor in NORI-A to C and TOML-A to F and supports the assumptions of the IA.

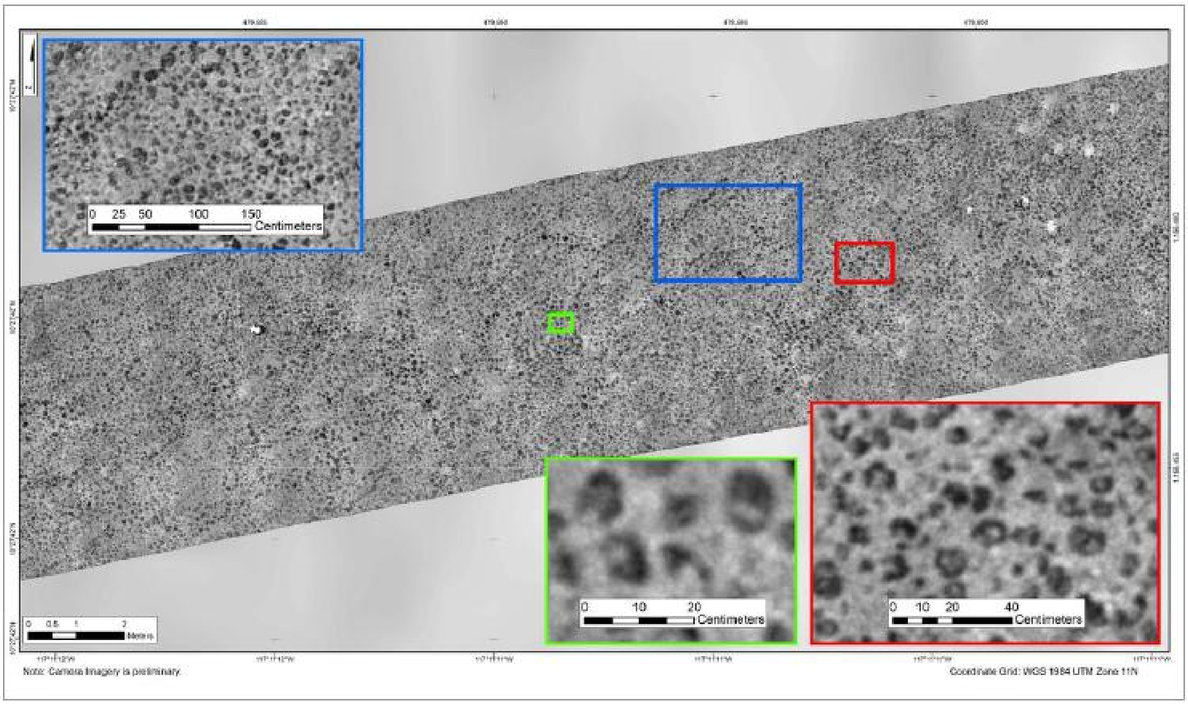
Successful AUV surveys were conducted by NORI in 2018 over selected sub-areas within NORI Area D. An ESVII 4500 m-rated Kongsberg Hugin AUV was used to conduct the detailed survey work, utilizing an MBES, SSS, SBP and camera payload. The surveys included:

- Reconnaissance lines collected at 35 m AUV altitude in order to assess geological and near-surface conditions prior to acquiring low-altitude camera data.
- Camera lines collected at 6 m AUV altitude in order to map the distribution and abundance of the nodules.
- MBES, SSS and SBP data lines collected at 22 m altitude in a 10 km x 15 km area, in order to evaluate geologic and near-surface conditions for future Test Mining activities.

There was an excellent correlation between the AUV bathymetric data and that collected by hull-based multibeam methods in 2012, providing confidence in both sets of results. Low-altitude surveys using the AUV's camera payload provided visual continuity of nodule distribution between the majority of the BC sample sites along the surveyed lines.

A 3.5 km × 3.5 km grid of camera data was acquired over the Test Mining Site provided near-continuous photomosaic coverage. Each camera frame was 6 m across-track and 4 m along-track. Figure 7.10 provides an example.

Figure 7.10 Example of AUV camera photo mosaic from NORI Area D, showing nodules



Source: MARGIN

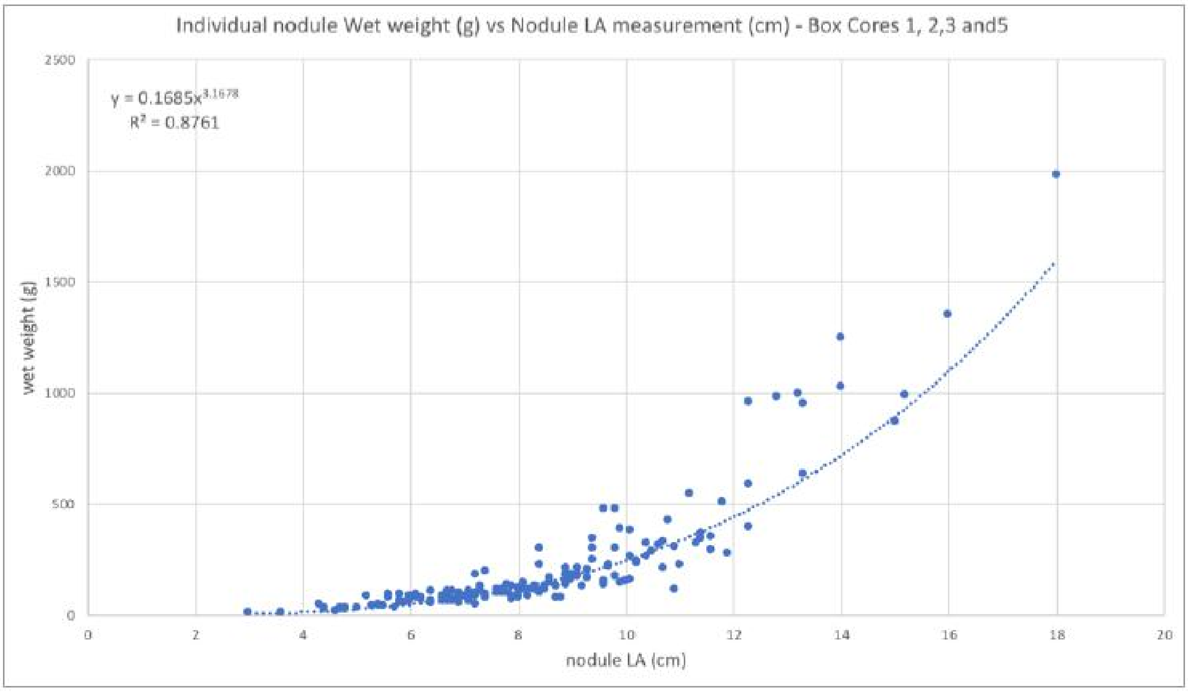
7.6.5 Long axis estimation

Although box coring is an effective method for measuring nodule abundance, it is slow and expensive. Therefore, it is advantageous if BC estimates can be supplemented by an alternative method. There is a well-documented relationship between nodule length and nodule wet weight (e.g., Felix, 1980):

$$Log_{10}\ (nodule\ wet\ weight) = (2.71)(log_{10}(long\ axis\ length) - 0.18$$

The process of estimating the weight of nodules using the nodule length is called Long Axis Estimation (LAE). NORI confirmed this relationship by taking measurements of the long-axis length of individual nodules, using digital calipers, and wet weight, for nodules from NORI Area D BC samples BC001, BC002, BC003, and BC005 (Figure 7.11).

Figure 7.11 Comparison of nodule long axis measurements, taken using digital calipers, and individual nodule wet weight for BC001, BC002, BC003, and BC005



Source: MARGIN

In areas where nodules are not closely packed, image processing techniques can be used to identify each nodule in a photograph unambiguously and measure its long axis length. In this case, it is possible to estimate nodule abundance from photographs. However, if nodules are closely packed and touch each other, image processing techniques are currently unable to reliably discriminate each individual nodule.

NORI developed an alternative methodology for NORI Area D using a combination of long-axis measurement and percentage nodule coverage which was applied to the data. A multiple linear regression relationship between percentage nodule coverage estimated from the photographs and mean nodule long-axis measurement from six BC samples within the Test Mining Site was found to provide a good correlation with nodule abundance.

Subsets (1 m × 1 m) of AUV camera data acquired on a 3.5 km × 3.5 km grid pattern over the NORI Area D Test Mining site were extracted for each intersection point of the survey lines. The percentage nodule coverage was measured by applying a color threshold to the image to distinguish nodules from sediment. This allowed the percentage area covered by nodules in the image to be calculated. Mean nodule long axis measurements were manually extracted from these images. Nodule abundance estimates were then derived for each of these intersection points, resulting in a 3.5 km × 3.5 km grid of nodule estimation points over the Test Mining site which were used to supplement the Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D.

7.6.6 Geotechnical data collection

No geotechnical data is currently available from NORI-A, B or C.

Geotechnical data collected from BC tests and samples, and *in situ* testing in NORI Area D is considered to provide insight to the likely geotechnical conditions on the seafloor in NORI-A, B or C, and is sufficient to support this IA.

Geotechnical soils data was systematically collected across the NORI Area D site during Campaign 3, Campaign 6 and Campaign 7. BC samples were geotechnically investigated to a maximum depth of 0.50 m below sea floor. BC samples were sub-sampled, geotechnically described and tested onboard the recovery vessel. Box cores from Campaign 6 and Campaign 7 were additionally subject to cone penetrometer testing and a subset were subject to a series of tests, including shear vane profiles and plate load tests. Sub-samples from the Campaign 6 BC were transported ashore and a comprehensive campaign of laboratory testing was undertaken. During Campaign 7 seabed in-situ testing was conducted down to 2.2 m below seabed by an ROV deployed Cone Penetration Test system.

An assessment of the soils across the NORI Area D area was made based on observations from the fieldwork and onshore laboratory testing reports. In general terms the seafloor across the abyssal plains can be classified as a very soft (extremely low strength) silty clay, that in parts is very silty and sometimes silt like. There are exceptions to this classification associated with depressions or high areas of seafloor such as ridge lines, abyssal hills and volcanic features.

7.7 TOML exploration data

TOML completed offshore campaigns in 2013 and 2015 to collect data define Mineral Resources. Much of the exploration was focused on smaller sub-areas within TOML-B, C, D, and F areas in order to increase understanding of local variations in seafloor conditions and nodule mineralization. TOML-A was only explored by dredging and TOML-E was only explored with an MBES survey and a single water column survey.

Table 7.6 summarizes data collected from each TOML area. MBES (12 kHz MBES echo-sounding) includes bathymetric and backscatter products and geological geomorphological interpretation. Photo-profile includes still and video products and logging. Dredge sample data includes grade characterization and some size distribution data. Water column includes temperature, pressure, turbidity and in some cases physical samples and current. BC data includes nodule grade and abundance, fauna, and in some cases vane shear and/or sediment characterization. Deep-tow sonar includes SSS, sub-bottom profiler and micro survey and altimetry. Further details of these programs are presented in:

- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "NORI Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 17, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a).
- The technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "TOML Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b).

Table 7.6 TOML datasets by area and by campaign

	MBES (km^2)	Photo-profile (line km)	Dredge (#)	Water column (#)	Box core (#)	Deep Tow Sonar (line km)
TOML-A	–	–	2 CCZ15	–	–	–
TOML-B	9,966 CCZ13	–	–	–	–	–
Sub-area B1	Included in B	178 CCZ15	1 CCZ13	14 CCZ15	30 CCZ15	88 CCZ15
TOML-C	15,763 CCZ13	–	–	–	–	–
Sub-area C1	Included in C	231 CCZ15	1 CCZ15	14 CCZ15	16 CCZ15	32 CCZ15
TOML-D	15,881 CCZ13	92 CCZ15	6 CCZ13	–	–	–
Sub-area D2	Included in D	47 CCZ15	2 CCZ13	26 CCZ15	26 CCZ15	120 CCZ15
TOML-E	7,002 CCZ13			1 CCZ13		
TOML-F	15,820 CCZ13		4 CCZ13	15 CCZ15	15 CCZ15	
Sub-TOML-F1	Included in F			9 CCZ15	10 CCZ15	

Total	64,432	587	17	259	113	280

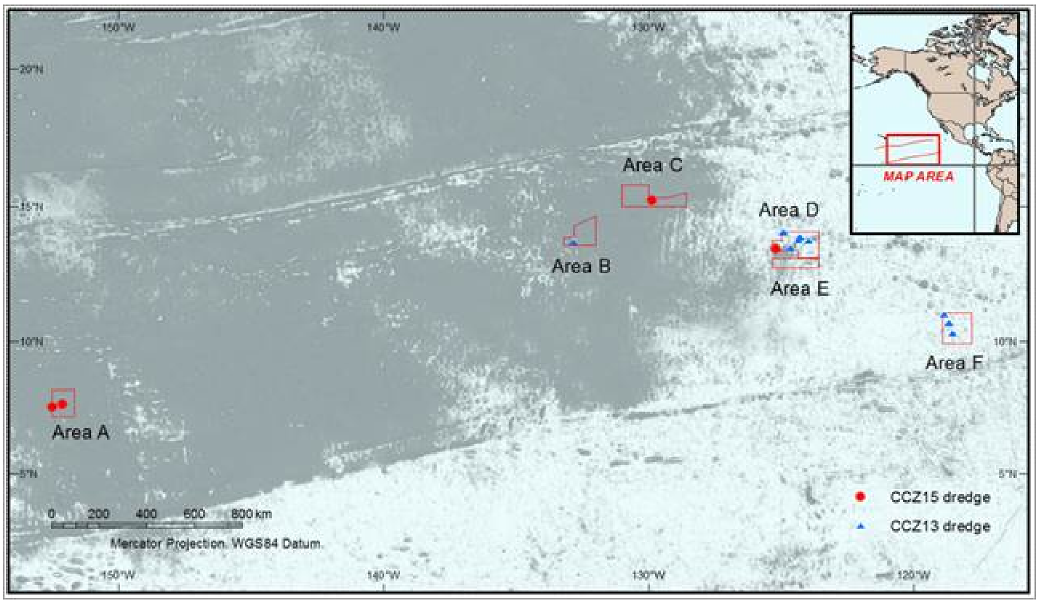
Note: CCZ13 = TOML 2013 offshore campaign, CCZ15 = TOML 2015 offshore campaign

7.7.1 Dredging and nodule sampling

Dredging was carried out during both the CCZ13 and CCZ15 campaigns. The intent was to collect samples for whole rock chemical analysis and metallurgical test work. Seventeen sites were sampled (Figure 7.12).

The samples were logged and sub-sampled extensively (up to 30 fragments per dredge sample). The sub-samples were assayed to confirm historical grades and to study variability in grade, used in drying test work and used for metallurgical test work.

Figure 7.12 Dredge sample locations in TOML areas from CCZ13 and CCZ15 campaigns



Source: TMC

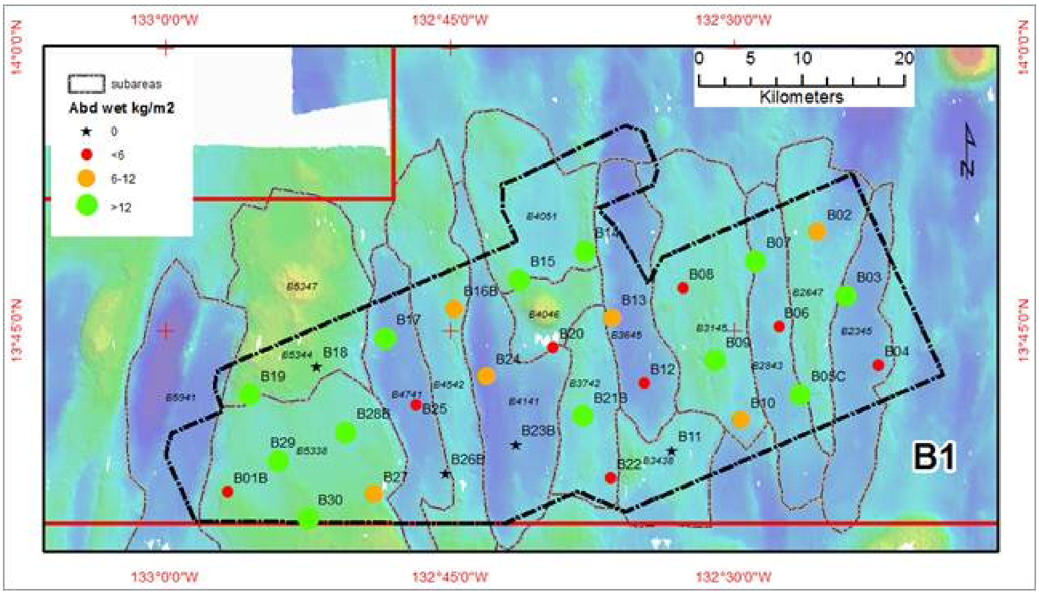
7.7.2 Box-coring and nodule sampling

Box-coring was undertaken to collect samples for Mineral Resource estimation, to collect biological samples for environmental base-line measurement and to collect geotechnical data. Landing points were chosen to avoid steeper areas (>10° slope) based on pre-existing multi-beam data. Two types of box corers were used:

- 0.75 m^2 box corer manufactured by KC Denmark, similar to the ones used by NORI.
- 0.25 m^2 box corer manufactured by YMG based on a design from the 1970s.

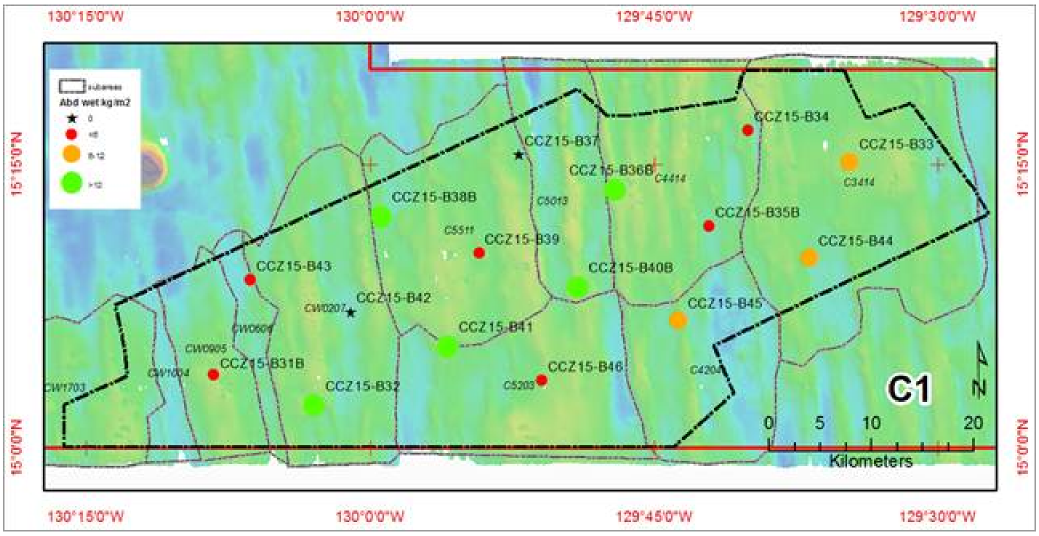
Figure 7.13 to Figure 7.17 show nodule abundances at the BC locations and the MBES bathymetry. Nodule abundances are reported in wet kg/m^2.

Figure 7.13 Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-B sub-area B1



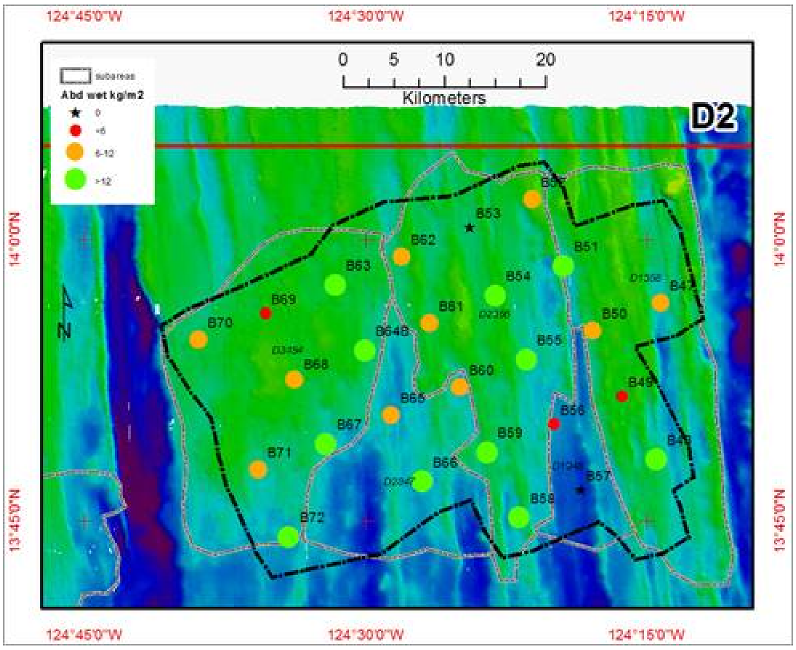
Source: TMC

Figure 7.14 Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-C sub-area C1



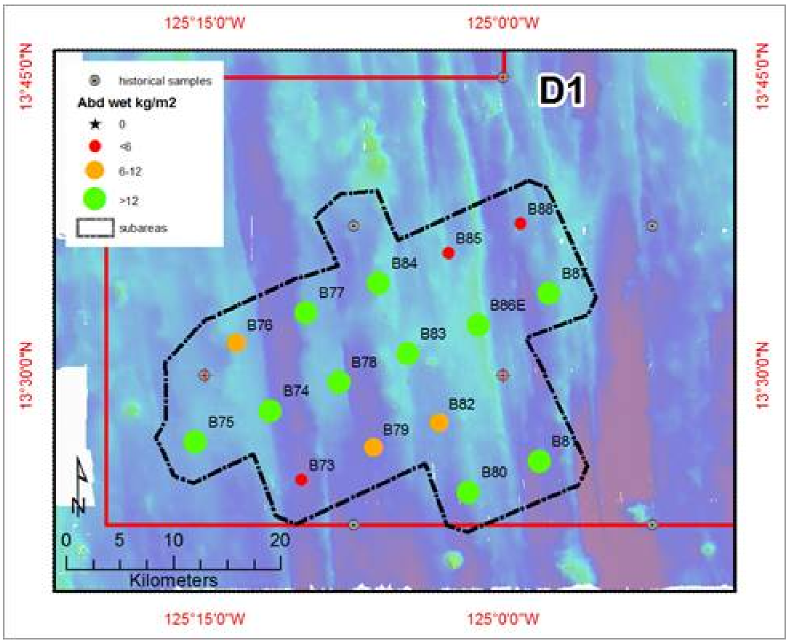
Source: TMC

Figure 7.15 Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-D sub-area D2



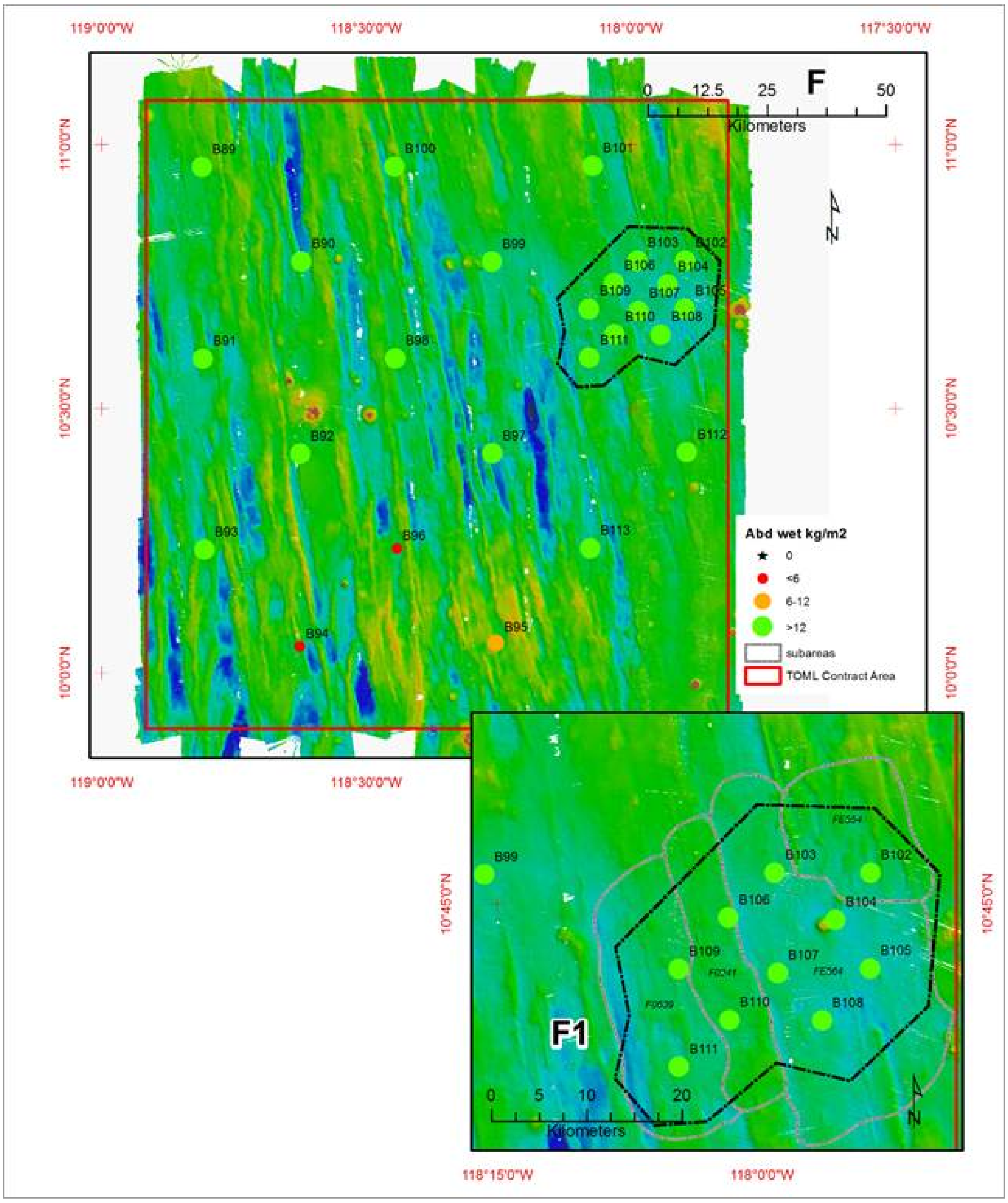
Source: TMC

Figure 7.16 Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-D sub-area D1



Source: TMC

Figure 7.17 Nodule abundance and BC locations, TOML-F and sub-TOML-F1



Source: TMC

7.7.3 MBES surveys

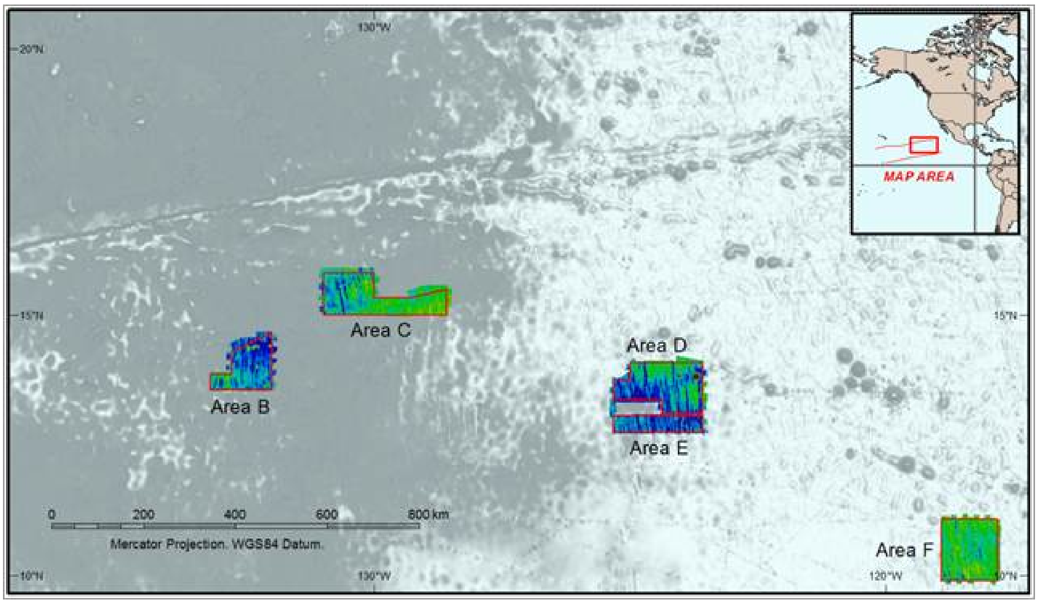
During the CCZ13 campaign the RV Mt Mitchell operated a hull-mounted Kongsberg EM120 MBES over TOML- B through - F. This equipment operates at 12 kHz and is capable of operation in up to 11,000 m water depth. It has better than 5 m vertical resolution and ~60 m horizontal resolution for bathymetry and ~30 m for backscatter at water depths between 4,500–6,000 m. It has a maximum swath width of 6 times the water depth but the effective swath width varies from 2 to 6 times the water depth depending on the depth, sea state and heading.

Conductivity-temperature-depth (CTD) soundings were performed at each of the survey areas in 2013. The primary reason for this is that the MBES system requires an accurate full water column sound velocity profile with which to perform real time beam steering and location calculations.

TOML-A was not surveyed.

The MBES results are shown at a small scale in Figure 7.18. The bathymetry shows that almost the entire area is composed of abyssal plains and abyssal hills. The bathymetry and backscatter together show that most of the area is covered by nodule bearing sediment. Larger scale maps of the bathymetry are presented in Section 13.7.

Figure 7.18 CCZ13 MBES bathymetry coverage



Source TMC. Relief range blue to yellow is about 400 m scaled by each area. Background is the GEBCO bathymetric product

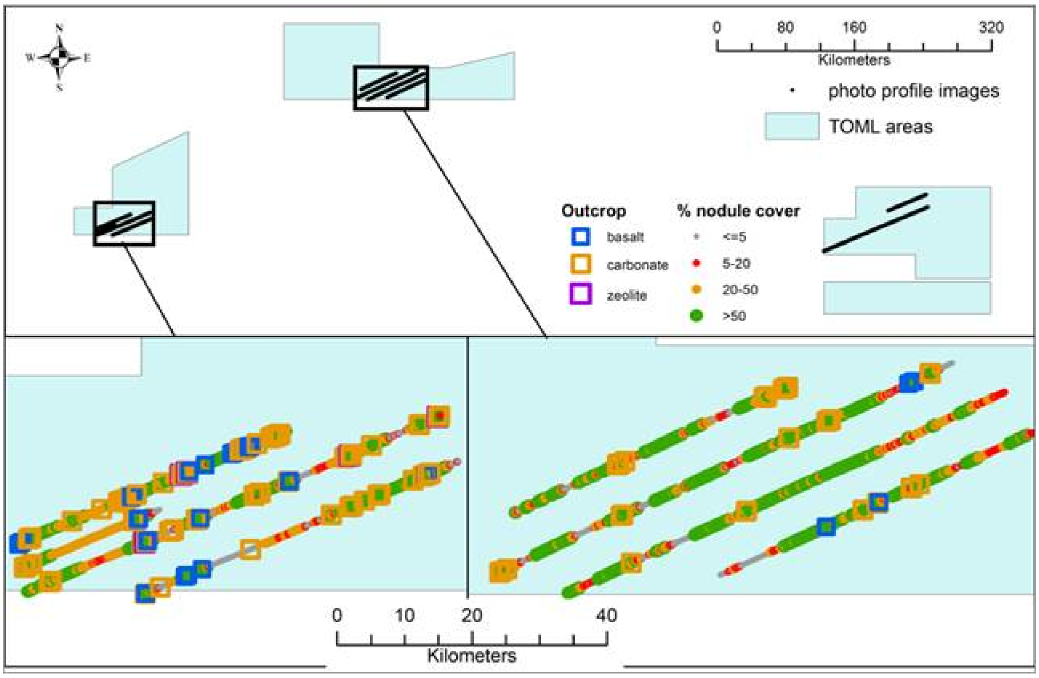
7.7.4 Deep-tow surveys

A photo-profiling survey was undertaken in 2015 using a towed camera system along ten lines in parts of TOML-B, C and D, by contractor Yuzhmorgeologiya. Photographs were taken automatically at an altitude of 3.5 m above the seafloor, a minimum of 30 seconds apart and continually uploaded to the vessel where scientists collected them from the central server and logged them for geology and biology.

The photographs provided data on short-range continuity of nodules and photogrammetric estimates of nodule abundance for Mineral Resource estimation. The photographs also provided a census of mega-fauna and macro-fauna for environmental base line measurement and habitat mapping. Finally, photo-profiling helped calibrate the MBES and deep-towed sonar results.

The percentage nodule coverage was measured by applying a color threshold to the image to distinguish nodules from sediment, allowing the percentage area covered by nodules in the image to be calculated. This was useful for visual assessment of nodule continuity. When combined with observations of outcrop, the nodule coverage plots give a good indication of the high levels of continuity for the nodules (Figure 7.19). The process was not successful in TOML-D where sediment obscures the nodules.

Figure 7.19 Photo-profile logging of nodule coverage (%) and outcrop types in TOML Areas



Source: TMC. Note: Insets only shown for Area B (left) and C (right)

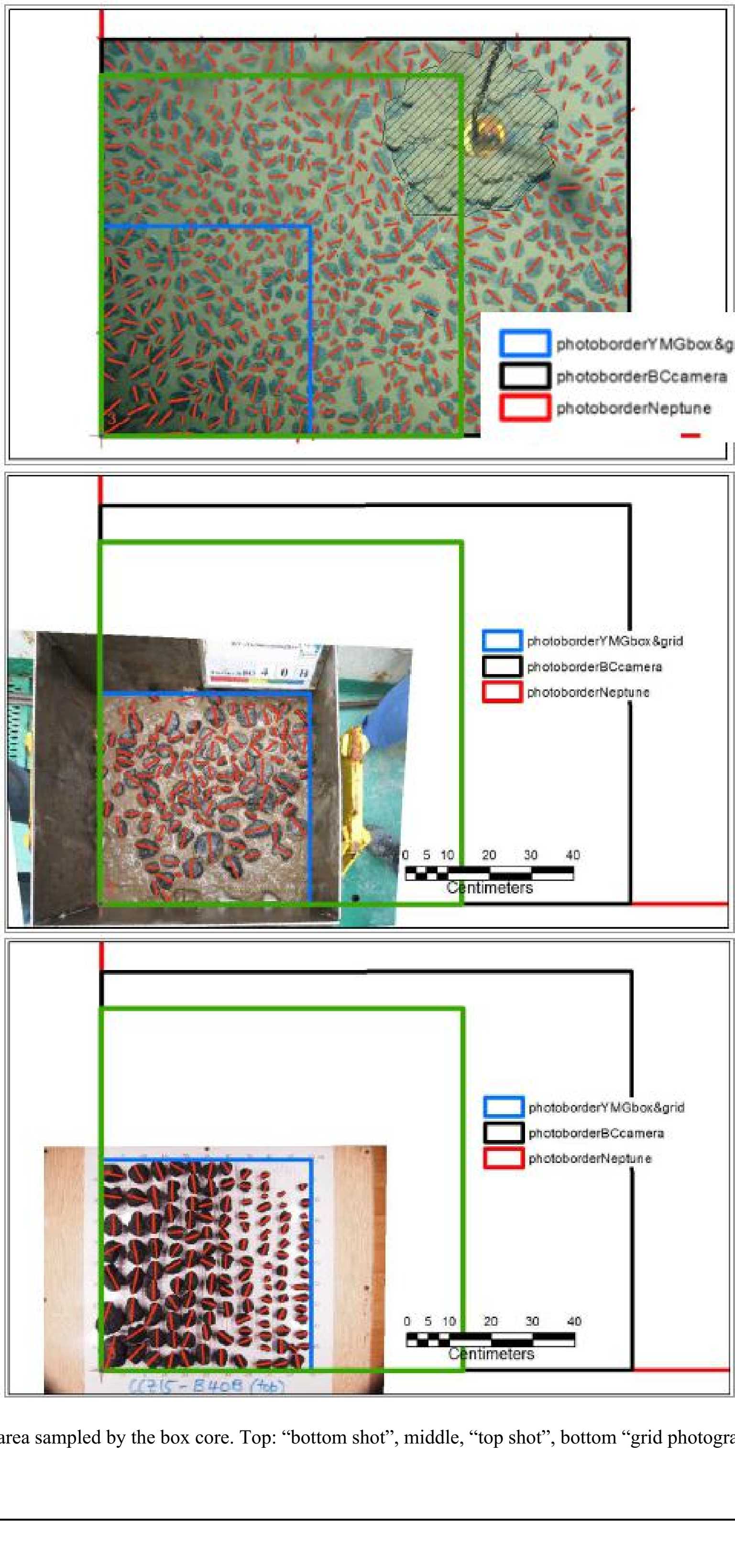
7.7.5 Long axis estimation

TOML used a BC mounted camera system to collect seabed photos from TOML-B, C, D and F (bottom shots). Photographs taken on the vessel included top shots of the sample in the BC as it landed on deck and photographs of the nodules from the BC on a gridded background, after washing off mud. Figure 7.20 shows examples of the three types of photographs.

In TOML- B and C, it proved possible to use the bottom shots and the top shots to estimate the weighed abundance of each box core. The process involved referencing the photos to scale in a GIS package. A line was digitized along the long axis of each nodule before recording the length of each line into a database. The line measurements were then analyzed in MS Excel, comparing the total calculated weight with the total actual sample weight. Accurate weighing of individual nodules was not possible due to the heave of the vessel, but a motion compensated scale was used to accurately weigh entire BC samples (±50 g).

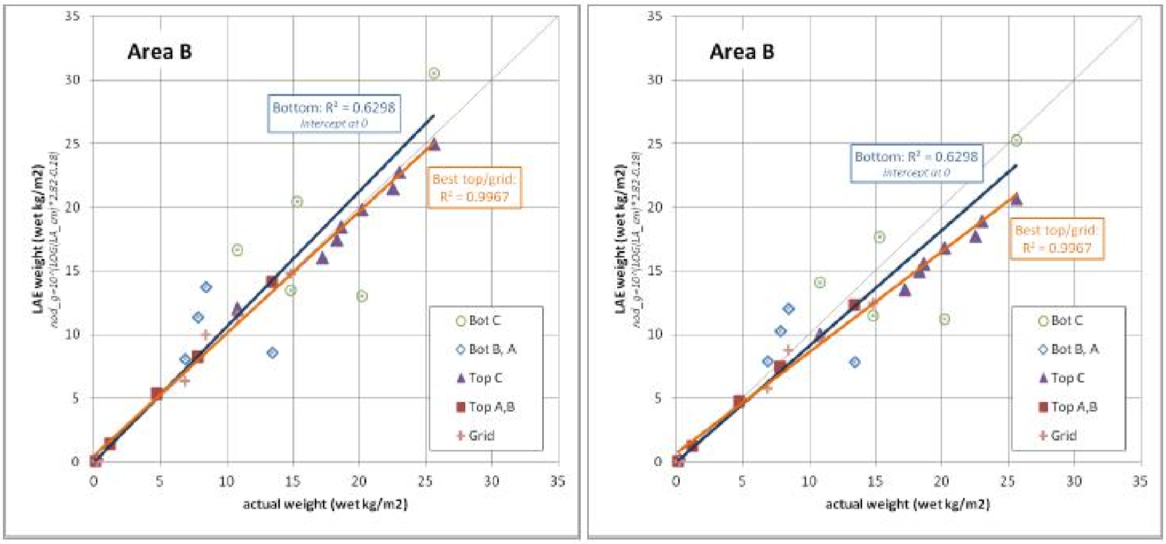
In TOML-B, long-axis estimates were made using bottom shots, top shots and, where needed, sample grid photos. Initially the formula of Felix (1980) (see Section 7.6.5) was used to estimate the nodule weights but a much better fit was achieved if the factors were modified (Figure 7.21). The need to modify the factors probably relates to differences in nodule shape between areas.

Figure 7.20 Example of LAE measurement using bottom shot, top shot and grid photographs



Source: TMC. Note: Green frame is area sampled by the box core. Top: “bottom shot”, middle, “top shot”, bottom “grid photograph”

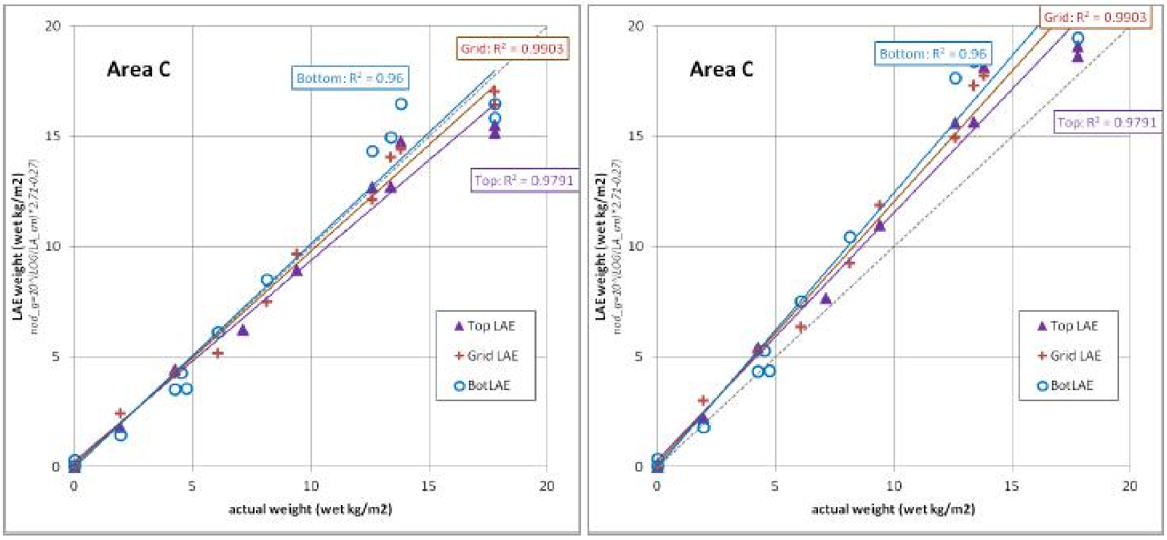
Figure 7.21 TOML-B correlations with best fit factors (L) and Felix 1980 factors (R)



Source: TMC

The process was then extended to TOML-C. Again, the factors in the Felix (1980) formula were adjusted to improve accuracy (Figure 7.22). In TOML-C the correlations between bottom photograph-based estimates and actual weights show less scatter; this might be due to a slightly different camera with a wider field of view being used.

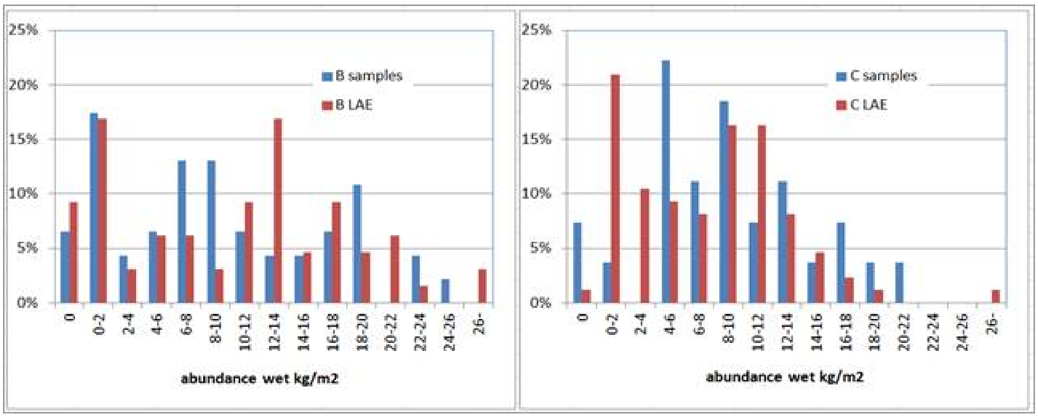
Figure 7.22 TOML-C correlations with best fit factors (L) and Felix 1980 factors (R)



Source: TMC

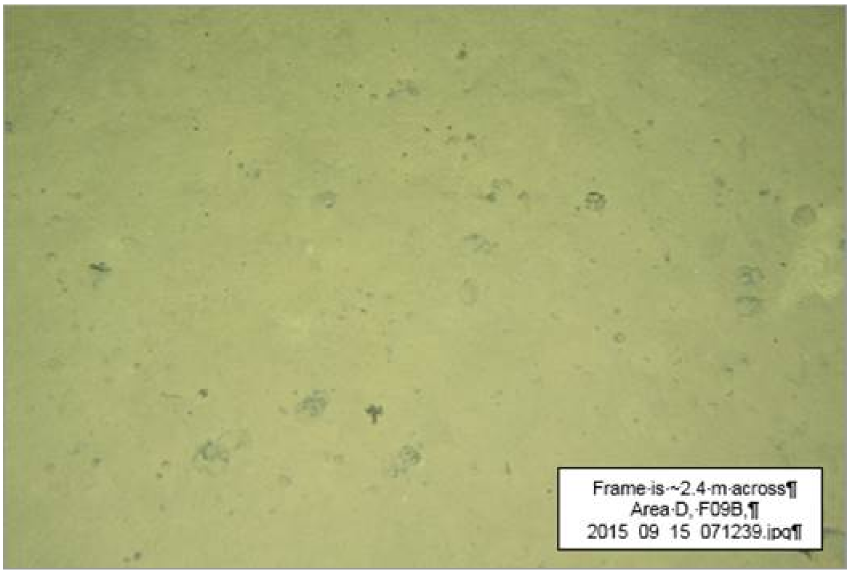
The modified formula was also applied to the towed camera system photographs (approximately every 100th image) with results broadly agreeing with the BC samples. Figure 7.23 compares the distribution of nodule sizes in the box cores in TOML-B and C with the distributions estimated by LAE. In TOML-D however, the partial cover of the nodules by unconsolidated sediment (Figure 7.24) confounded the process. In TOML-F, no towed camera survey was done, but a visual comparison between bottom shots, top shots and grid photos revealed good exposure of nodules.

Figure 7.23 Comparison of physical samples and LAE in TOML-B and C



Source: TMC

Figure 7.24 High degree of sediment “powder” and cover in TOML-D



Source: TMC

7.7.6 Geotechnical data collection

Vane shear test measurements were collected in all box cores from TOML areas that were recovered in an undisturbed state. A calibrated hand-held shear vane device with a 33 mm vane was used. Vane shear strength was classified into one of four classes:

- W is mostly weak from top to base.
- A is all stiff from top to base.
- G is soft at the top with gradual stiffening with depth.
- S is soft at the top with more sudden stiffening with depth.

Data was also reviewed by box and the most coherent reading selected. Averaging of readings was not undertaken as some measurements were taken in disturbed sediment, especially near the base. The most coherent readings were generally taken in the center of the box.

Figure 7.25 to Figure 7.29 show the vane shear strength classifications at the BC locations and the MBES bathymetry. Figure 7.30 shows the vane shear strength profiles by area.

The data shows clear differences in the uppermost part of the sediment between areas, with:

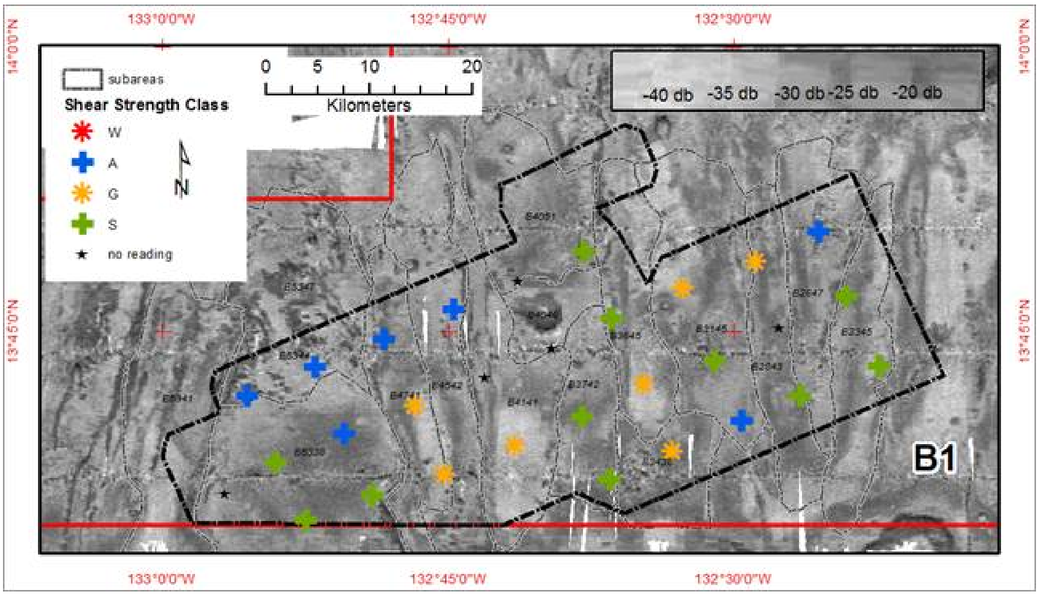
- TOML-C1 showing consistently suddenly stiffening ground conditions (mostly class S).
- TOML-D1 showing a slightly wider range to TOML-C1 including some more rapidly stiffening situations (mostly class S).
- TOML-B1 and TOML-D2 have a wider range of conditions and both areas have occurrences of sediment drift.
- TOML-F (and F1) has a universally weak upper layer then generally and gradually stiffens (mostly class G).

The soil strength properties of the TOML sediments appear to be similar to those investigated at NORI Area D. At TOML the soil strengths are broadly similar to NORI Area D at depths down to 0.3 m below seabed. The TOML sediments are indicated as ~2 kPa stiffer than the general trend observed at the NORI Area D Initial Mining area.

The TOML Class W, G and S are all comparable in strength to NORI Area D where the increase in shear strength from seabed to a range of 4-6 kPa at 20 cm to 30 cm below seabed is observed. TOML Class A has a similar profile to the higher ground/ridges investigated at NORI Area D where shear strength up to 14 kPa was observed.

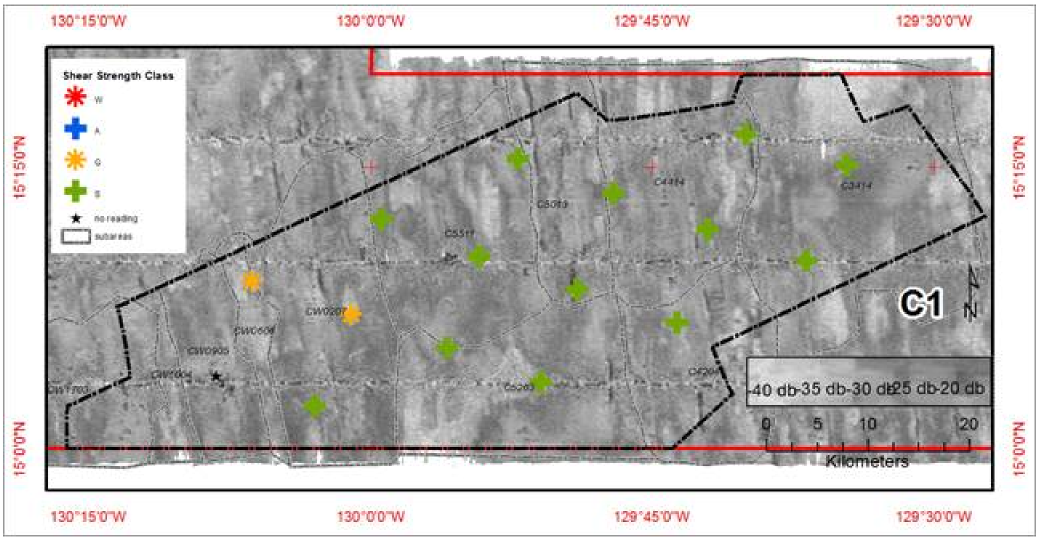
The available data indicates that it is reasonable to assume in this IA that mining systems designed for NORI Area D would be appropriate, from a geotechnical perspective, for the TOML areas. More detailed investigation is required in future to confirm these observations.

Figure 7.25 Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area B1



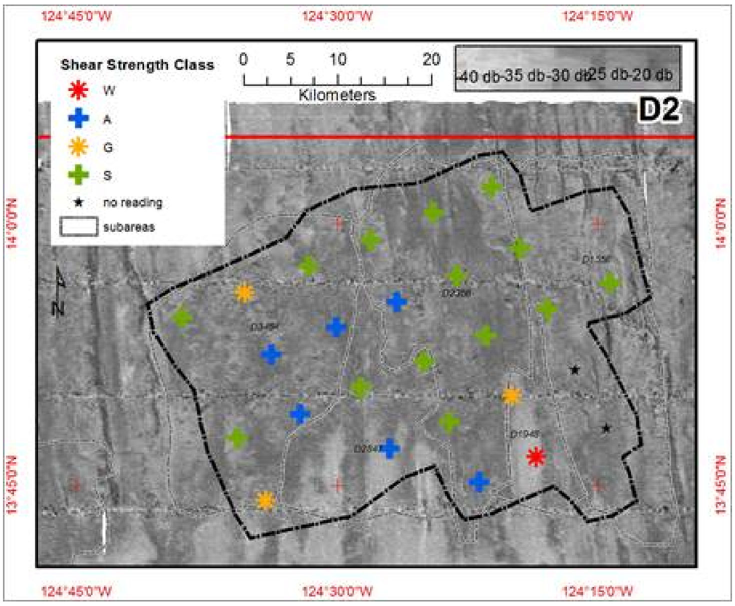
Source: TMC

Figure 7.26 Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area C1



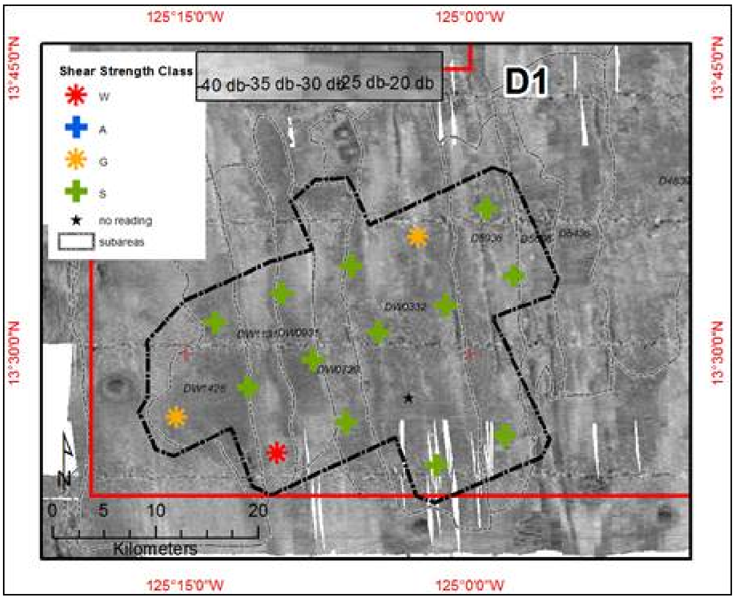
Source: TMC

Figure 7.27 Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area D2



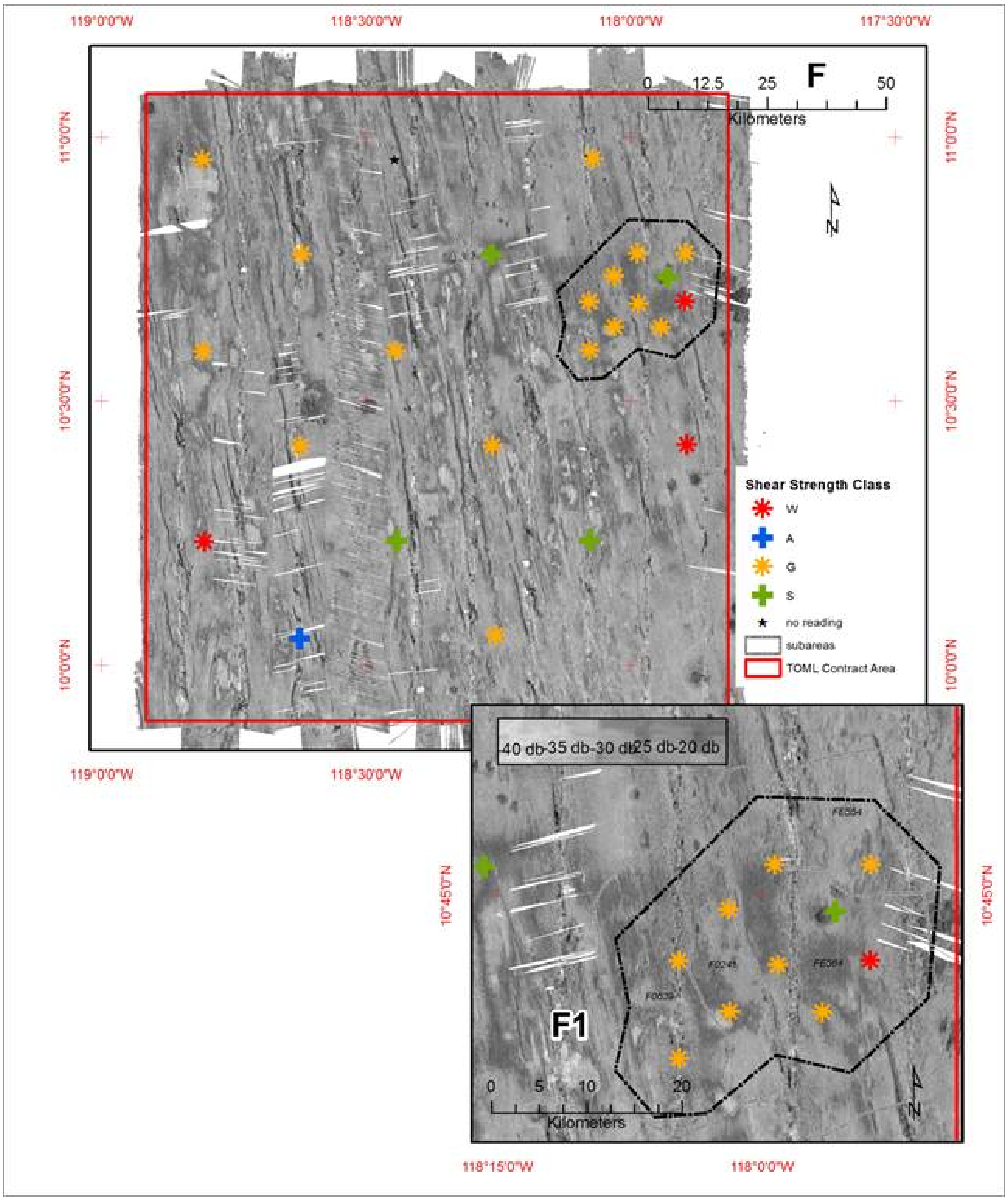
Source: TMC

Figure 7.28 Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Area D1



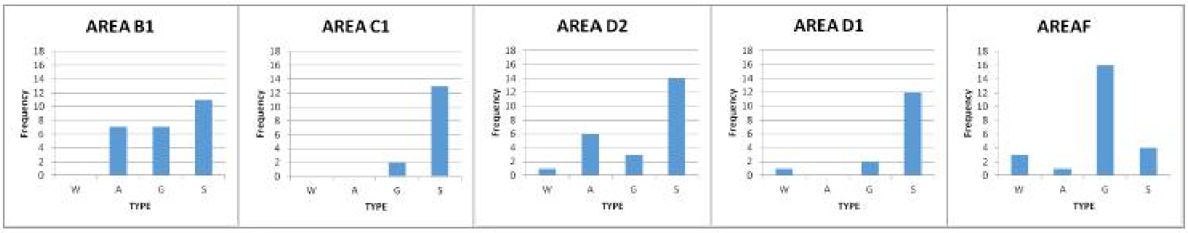
Source: TMC

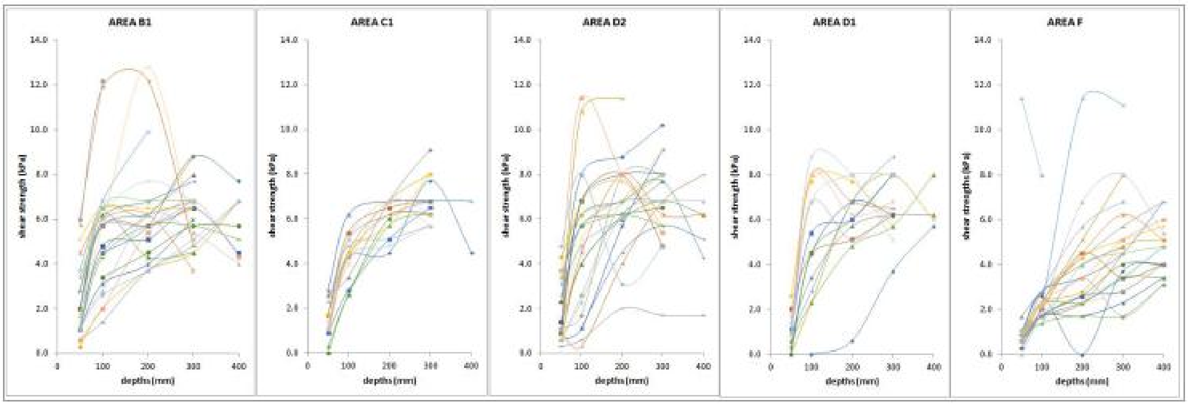
Figure 7.29 Vane Shear Strength Class and BC locations, Areas F and F1



Source: TMC

Figure 7.30 Summary vane shear results from TOML areas





Source: TMC

8 Sample preparation, analysis, and security

8.1 Pioneer Contractor data

Consultants Golder Associates (Golder, 2015) sent requests to the Pioneer Contractors and received partial responses from Yuzhmorgeologiya (TOML-B) and DORD (TOML-A and D) which are included below. Golder Associates also compiled information from Dr Charles Morgan who had been previously directly involved with one of the US exploration programs (OMCO) that was carried out during the same period as these other programs. Morgan conferred with representatives of other Pioneer Contractors at several formal professional meetings and informal settings, comparing methods and procedures used for sample collection, analysis, and quality control. Many aspects of the OMCO procedures were used by the other explorers. The description of sample preparation and analysis methods provided below is based on these enquiries.

Free fall grab samplers were generally used. Each of the DORD sample stations was a combination of three sub-sampling points which effectively form an isosceles triangle with lengths of sides
1.4 nm, 1.4 nm and 2.0 nm.

The differences between the sampling procedures used by the Pioneer Contractors were minor. In summary, the procedures included:

- Removal of the nodules from the sampler and weighing in a laboratory. In many cases, it is unknown exactly when the nodule weights were taken by the Pioneer Contractors. However, OMCO air-dried the nodules prior to weighing, so it is possible that the wet abundance measurements may be slightly conservative.
- Photographing of nodules on a white background with a graticular scale.
- Splitting of some samples to create duplicates.
- Preparation of sub-samples for assaying by drying, crushing and pulverizing to a fine pulp (e.g., **100 mesh** particle **size (0.074 mm**).
- Final drying of the pulps before assay at 105°C to 110°C to constant weight.
- Multi-acid digest of the pulps and analysis by Atomic Absorption Spectrophotometry (AAS). OMCO's standard analysis included determination of Mn, Fe, Co, Ni, Cu, Zn, Si, Ca and Mg. Yuzhmorgeologiya determined Ni, Cu, Co and Fe by AAS and Mn by photometric (electrometric) titration.
- The inclusion of standard reference samples and/or CRMs formulated by the U.S. Geological Survey (NOD A-1 and NOD P-1; see Flanagan and Gottfried, 1980) for quality control. Unfortunately, no systematic QAQC information is available as this information was not provided by the Pioneer Contractors to the ISA.

Overall, the comparison of the sampling and assaying between the Pioneer Contractors (Section 9) shows that the data are adequate for geological modelling and are reliable for Mineral Resource estimation at an Inferred level of confidence. This is supported by the very similar grades obtained in the TOML and NORI sampling.

8.2 TOML data

8.2.1 Box core samples

Box core sampling and assaying by TOML are described in detail in the technical report summary titled "Technical Report Summary--TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc." (the "TOML Technical Report"), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b). The key points are as follows.

BC sampling was managed only by the TOML ship-based science team under the supervision of one Chief Scientist and two Lead Scientists.

After air-drying to remove surface water, the primary samples were weighed (air-dried weight; used for abundance estimation for the Mineral Resource estimate) and then some samples were split for field duplicates by cone and quarter.

Sample security was managed during the chain of custody by transport of samples in drums that were sealed with tamperproof tape.

The submitted primary and field duplicate samples were prepared and analyzed by ALS Global in Brisbane using XRF. This laboratory has extensive experience in the analysis of high manganese materials by the XRF method. ALS operates quality systems based on international standards ISO/IEC17025:1999 "General requirements for competence of calibration and testing laboratories" and ISO9001:2000 "Quality Management Systems - Requirements".

- Samples were dried at 90° – 105° C, before preparation for assaying.
- After drying, samples were jaw crushed in a Jacques jaw crusher to bring particle size to less than 10 mm. The crushed samples were then pulverized in an LM5 mill to a pulp with typical
particle size >85% passing 75 um.
- Pulps were dried at 105°C for a minimum of 1 hour immediately before assaying.
- ALS method XRF26s, which is specifically designed for difficult to fuse chromite and manganese ores, was used. The dried pulp was fused in a platinum crucible and analyzed with X-ray fluorescence for:
  — LOI, Al_2O_3, BaO, CaO, Cr_2O_3, CoO, Fe_2O_3, K_2O, CuO, MgO, MnO, Na_2O, P_2O_5, SO_3, SiO_2, NiO, TiO_2, PbO, ZnO.
- The dried pulp was also dissolved by four-acid digest and analyzed by inductively-coupled atomic emission spectrophotometry (ICP-AES method ME-ICP61a) for:
  — Ag, Al, As, Ba, Be, Bi, Ca, Cd, Co, Cr, Cu, Fe, Ga, K, La, Mg, Mn, Mo, Na, Ni, P, Pb, S, Sb, Sc, Sr, Th, Ti, Tl, U, V, W, Zn. Many of these elements were at levels below the detection limit of ME-ICP61a.

Jacobs is the Laboratory operated by the Integrated Environmental Studies Program Group, Earth and Space Sciences Program, at Jacobs University in Bremen, Germany. This group had been involved in nodule analysis and study for over 10 years. Duplicate samples and pulps were analyzed at Jacobs as part of the TOML quality control program.

Jacobs supplied data by single acid (0.5M HNO_3) digest, inductively-coupled optical emission spectrophotometry (ICP-OES) for:

Al, Ca, Co, Cu, Fe, K, Mg, Mn, Na, Ni, Sr, V, Zn

They also supplied data by 0.5M HNO_3, inductively-coupled mass spectrophotometry (ICP-MS) for selected samples:

Li, Be, Sc, Ti, Rb, Y, Zr, Nb, Mo, Te, Cs, Ba, La, Ce, Pr, Nd, Sm, Eu, Gd, Tb, Dy, Ho, Er, Tm, Yb, Lu, Hf, Ta, W, Pb, Th, U

For the 104 BC samples submitted to ALS, 34 were duplicated (32.6%) with:

- 25 submitted duplicates to ALS (24.0%); and
- 15 field duplicates to Jacobs (14.4%).

Six submitted primary samples were duplicated both as ALS and Jacobs field duplicates (5.7%). Comparisons of duplicate results for Ni, Cu, Co and Mn indicated that the assay results showed close agreement, generally without bias. The most notable discrepancy was for copper, where there appears to be a bias of the order of 0.05% Cu to 0.1% Cu with Jacobs reading higher than ALS.

Blank samples (i.e., material known to have very low grades of the elements of economic interest) were included in the samples sent to ALS. All blanks assayed below detection limit for Ni, Mn, Cu, Co, indicating that no contamination had occurred from nodule samples to blank samples during the sample preparation.

TOML also submitted samples of the NOD P-1 CRM formulated by the U.S. Geological Survey amongst the submitted primary samples and duplicates. The ALS assays for the CRMs were satisfactory.

TOML had clear and secure chain of custody for the nodule samples collected during their exploration campaigns. Sufficient duplicates have been submitted to demonstrate the lack of significant error in the chemical analyses. Data storage was secure and there is no evidence of any tampering of grade and abundance measurements. Overall, the data are considered to be reliable for Mineral Resource estimation. This is supported by the very similar grades and abundances obtained in the historical sampling.

8.2.2 Abundance estimates by LAE method

High resolution photographs of the seafloor were taken during the CCZ15 campaign. The photos were transmitted from the towed camera sled in real time to a camera operator and were automatically named with the date and time (in UTC) of the survey. File posting location was on a secure server (airwalled) with access by camera operator, surveyor and geoscientists.

Location of the camera sled at the time of photography was recorded separately by the Yuzhmorgeologiya hydrographic surveyor on watch using a combination of vessel GPS and either Ultra-short baseline (USBL) signal or estimate of position from length of line out. Survey periods are recorded in the bridge log, vessel log and daily progress reports. Photos were logged in near real time for geology and biology, with periodic updates of photo files to the filing on the TOML master computer.

Abundance estimates were made only for select photos due to the intense nature of the work and issues with sediment cover in some areas. Normally in TOML-B1 and C1 every 100th photo was selected. The selected photos were georeferenced to a template in a GIS program by a geoscientist and the long axis of each nodule within selected swaths was digitized. Each photo was checked by the Lead Geoscientist on watch and by the Lead Geoscientist designated accountable for data quality. The Chief Scientist ran a routine to measure the digitized lengths and also compiled the data into a MS Access database. Copies of the processed data were passed, via email, to the Mineral Resource Qualified Person midway through the photo-profiling program and after the campaign.

8.3 NORI-A, B, C data

The Mineral Resource estimates for NORI-A, B and C are based on data collected by the Pioneer Contractors AMR, Yuzmorgeologiya, and IOM.

Virtually all the samples in the TOML areas and NORI A, B and C were obtained by free fall grab (FFG) samplers, although a few results from box corers (BC) were also included.

Upon making an application for an exploration contract under ISA regulations, the Pioneer Contractors were required to submit sufficient data and information to enable designation of a reserved area based on the estimated commercial value. This sample data provided the basis of the database held by the ISA. The acceptance of the data by the ISA suggests the ISA was satisfied with the quality of the data.

The quality of the Pioneer Contractor data was assessed using comparative measures between the different datasets (Golder, 2015). The correlation of data from different sources, including Pioneer Contractors and government scientific institutes, provides a satisfactory level of quality assurance to support Mineral Resource estimates at an Inferred level of confidence.

9 Data verification

The original assay sheets for the individual samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors from within the TOML and NORI Areas are not available for auditing against the values in the database. Neither AMC, NORI nor TOML have had access to the original assay sheets for the individual samples that are within the Contract Areas, nor the quality control procedures used by the laboratories and the ISA. However, the consistency between the abundance and grade data collected by the Pioneer Contractors, as presented in Section 9.1, supports the contention that the quality of the Pioneer Contractor data is satisfactory.

It is also reasonable to infer that the Pioneer Contractor data are of sufficient quality for Mineral Resource estimation because the ISA is an independent agency with significant accountability under the Law of the Sea. Part of its mandate is the receipt and storage of seafloor sampling data suitable for the estimation of nodule resources and the legally binding award of licenses. It is reasonable to assume that a reasonable level of care was applied by the ISA.

Data collected by NORI and TOML is well-documented and was subject to satisfactory QA/QC processes. Documentation verified by the Qualified Person includes photographs, daily exploration reports, digital logging sheets and original assay reports.

Assaying of nodules collected by NORI in 2012, 2013, 2018, and 2019 confirmed the mean grades of the historical grab samples and support the contention that the quality of the Pioneer Contractor data is satisfactory for inclusion in Mineral Resource estimation. The main limitation with the Pioneer Contractor data is the likelihood that some of the abundance values were too low, due to loss of nodules from the FFG. Estimates of abundance that include Pioneer Contractor data are therefore likely to be conservative.

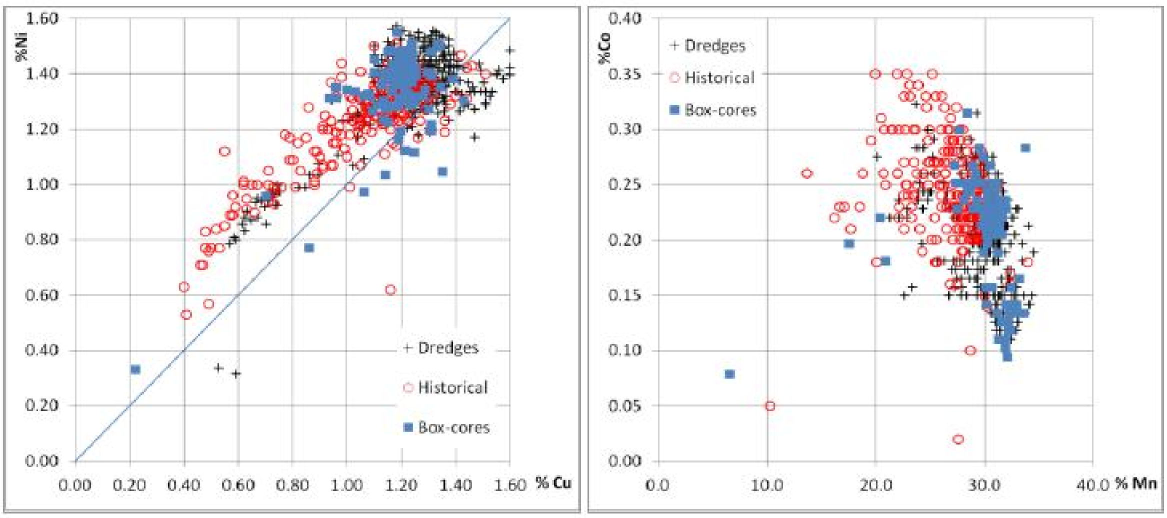
In the opinion of the Qualified Person the sample preparation, security, and analytical procedures were adequate for estimation of Mineral Resources.

9.1 TOML data

The CCZ13 and CCZ15 BC sample results for TOML were compared with the samples from the Pioneer Contractors within the TOML areas (Figure 9.1). The TOML and Pioneer Contractor samples are not from the same individual locations, therefore a perfect correlation is not expected. Nevertheless, there is good correspondence. High Cu and Mn grades are less common in the historical samples but the ranges are the same. This comparison provides additional support for the reliability of the Pioneer Contractor data for use in the estimation of Inferred Mineral Resources.

The The Qualified Person, as defined by Canadian National Instrument 43-101 (QP) considers that the combination of the TOML and historical nodule sample data (physical samples and photo based long axis estimates) combined with detailed backscatter, photo profiling and geological interpretation is sufficient to estimate polymetallic nodule Indicated Mineral Resources in parts of TOML-B, C, D and F and Measured Mineral Resources in one small especially data rich area of TOML-B.

Figure 9.1 Comparison between TOML BC and dredge samples and historical samples



Source: TMC

9.2 NORI-A, B, C data

The Mineral Resource estimates for NORI-A, B and C are based on data collected by the Pioneer Contractors AMR, Yuzhmorgeologiya, and IOM.

Box core sampling completed by NORI in NORI Area D and TOML has supported the abundances reported by the Pioneer Contractors as well as grades of Ni, Co, Cu, and Mn. It is reasonable to assume that a similar correlation is likely in the NORI-A, B and C Contract Areas and that the abundances reported by the Pioneer Contractors can be relied upon for estimation of Inferred Mineral Resources. It is likely that any errors in the Pioneer Contractor data are on the conservative side, due to the use of FFG samplers.

10 Mineral processing and metallurgical testing

10.1 Metallurgical testwork

Work commenced with review of the extensive literature regarding nodule mineralogy and historical metallurgical processing outlining:

- Nodules are fine-grained intergrowths of a complex suite of ferromanganese oxide and hydroxide minerals with nickel-copper-cobalt ingrained into the structure of the ferromanganese minerals.
- As a result, mineral dressing methods are not possible to upgrade to mineral concentrates, and flow sheet development focused on whole nodule treatment, initially by pyrometallurgical methods followed by hydrometallurgical refining.

TMC has completed an extensive metallurgical flowsheet selection, development and proof of concept program over the last fourteen years. The selected flowsheet involves a front-end pyrometallurgical process, where the nodules are first put through a rotary kiln and then further processed in an electric arc furnace. The furnace generates two materials – a manganese silicate slag representing TMC USA's final manganese product, and a nickel-copper-cobalt alloy that is rich in iron. The alloy is further processed pyrometallurgically in Peirce-Smith Converters, where sulfur is added and iron removed to generate a higher-valued matte product. The matte product can then be fed into a downstream hydrometallurgical refinery which separates the nickel, copper and cobalt into their individual components to generate final products.

Testwork has been conducted on the entire flowsheet to date, with larger-scale demonstrations completed for the RKEF aspects of the flowsheet, consistent with TMC's strategy to begin operations through using existing RKEF facilities. Product development testing has also been conducted along with the flowsheet development and testing program.

Preliminary bench-scale testing was completed by Kingston Process Metallurgy (KPM), a specialized research and development metallurgical facility based in Kingston, Ontario, Canada. TMC selected the FLSmidth Inc. (FLS) facility in Whitehall, Pennsylvania, USA for pilot-scale rotary kiln calcining trials. Prior to the trials, some bench scale testing was completed at FLS in parallel with KPM testwork. The rotary kiln calcining piloting was executed successfully in November of 2020, generating approximately 35 t of calcined material from 75 t of nodules collected from NORI Area D.

The EF smelting, sulfidation and converting pilot scale trials were conducted by the XPS (A Glencore subsidiary) testing facility in Sudbury, Ontario, Canada. Bench-scale testing was conducted at XPS prior to the piloting on both synthetic and pilot generated materials. The smelting trials were also successful, generating approximately 1,700 kg of alloy and 25 t of manganese silicate. The furnace was then used for the sulfidation and converting piloting, as pilot-scale Peirce-Smith converters do not exist. Approximately 332 kg of final nickel-copper-cobalt matte was generated.

Two programs were conducted for product development. The first, a full bench-scale testing program which generated nickel and cobalt sulfates suitable for use in batteries from the matte generated at XPS was commissioned at SGS Lakefield, Ontario (SGS) Canada in Lakefield, Ontario using a combined atmospheric and pressure sulfuric acid leach flowsheet. The second program, on the manganese silicate product, was conducted at Norwegian laboratory SINTEF Industri, who specialize in the processing of manganese ores. The SINTEF program was also successful in generating silico-manganese alloy using TMC's manganese silicate as the sole manganese source, first at bench scale and later at the kilogram scale. Silico-manganese alloy is a key additive in steel manufacturing, and the success of this program represents the demonstrated value in use to potential customers in using silico-manganese alloy derived from TMC's manganese silicate product compared with their existing feedstocks. The success of this program also confirms that the company's near zero solid waste processing objective was met, as a usable material has been generated from a TMC final product.

10.2 Bulk sample collection testwork

Key findings of the exploration work documented in Section 7 of this report are that:

- The chemical composition and mineralogy of nodules in the Property is remarkably consistent.
- Nodules can be classified into three different categories (types 1 to 3), based primarily on size and morphology. The majority of the Mineral Resource is comprised of type 1 nodules.

Utilising this work, an area to the north and west of the identified Test Mining Trial area was selected to collect a nodule bulk sample to undertake metallurgical pilot testing. This bulk sample was collected from 6 separate areas using a bespoke designed 6 m-wide ploughing system (Figure 10.1), which was deployed to the seafloor using the main anchor winches of the *MV Maersk Launcher*, an anchor handler tug supply vessel that was used to deploy the system.

The system was designed to recover nodules from the top 5 cm of the seafloor and reject the surface sediment through a metal mesh which retained the nodules. The system successfully collected 77.3 t of nodules from 62 runs along a total run length of 5.8 km. A scallop-dredge mesh was used with mesh size varied from 10 mm to 19 mm. The fines rejection was not fully successful, with the nodules needing to be washed ahead of being processed. This is not expected to be an issue for the commercial-scale collection system as demonstrated by the Test Mining completed in 2022 outlined in section 13, where little seafloor sediment was lifted to the surface.

A total of 62 samples were taken of the bulk sample and assayed to confirm sample grade and moisture. Grab samples were taken primarily from the middle (number 4 of 6) chain bags during unloading. Samples were shipped to ALS in Brisbane and analysed using the same analysis method for samples used for resource evaluation; moisture by OA-GRA05 and analysis by X-ray fluorescence using ALS code ME-XRF26s. Table 10.1 shows a comparison of the nodule analysis for the bulk sample compared to the measured resource for the test mining area. The nodule grades compare well with slightly elevated moisture for the bulk sample which can be attributed to high moisture in the entrained sediment.

Table 10.1 Comparison of bulk sample analyses with NORI Area D measured resource for the test mining area.

Category	Moisture	Ni	Cu	Co	Mn

	%	%	%	%	%
Bulk Sample					
Mean	29.7	1.40	1.18	0.12	32.9
Max	30.9	1.45	1.29	0.14	34.5
Min	28.2	1.35	1.12	0.09	31.4
Standard Deviation	0.60	0.0002	0.0005	0.0001	0.0053
Measured Resource (Test Mining Area)	28	1.41	1.15	0.13	31.9
Difference in mean	1.7	-0.01	0.03	-0.01	1.05

Runs were planned to collect type 1, 2 and 3 nodules, nominally in the proportions of the NORI Area D Mineral Resource.

Samples were bagged into one tonne bulka bags and were brought by the*MV Maersk Launcher* to San Diego and then trucked directly to FLS's facility in Pennsylvania where calcining was undertaken. A 5 t reference sample has been retained in storage in San Diego.

Figure 10.1 Bulk sampling dredge used to collect the bulk sample for metallurgical pilot tests

Source: TMC

It is the QP's opinion that the bulk nodule sample collected for pilot testing is representative of the NORI Area D field, particularly for the Initial Mining Area from which some of the sample was extracted.

10.3 Bulk sampling testing laboratories

Feed samples, products and intermediate control samples were analyzed by the various testing laboratories using the methods outlined in Table 10.2.

Table 10.2 Location and testing methods of laboratories used

Name	Location	Testing/Assaying Methods
KPM	Kingston, Ontario, Canada	ICP-OES, ICP-MS, various microscopy methods
FL Smidth	Whitehall, PA, USA	XRF, XRD
eXpert Process Solutions (XPS)	Sudbury, Ontario, Canada	XRF, ICP-OES
SGS Canada Inc.	Lakefield, Ontario, Canada	ICP-OES, ICP-MS
SINTEF Industri	Trondheim, Norway	ICP

10.4 Summary of test work results

10.4.1 Round robin assaying program

TMC conducted a round robin assaying program with Japanese operator PAMCO, using 22 t of nodules collected during NORI's Test Mining in Q4 of 2022. The nodule sample was delivered to PAMCO in March of 2023. The program involved 10 standard samples that were created by PAMCO and sent for assay by several participating labs (including PAMCO internally).

The following procedure was undertaken at PAMCO to generate each of the 10 standard samples for assay:

1 Take 60 kg of nodules from flexible container bag.
2 Dry using a dryer at 105℃ until weight is constant. Dry weight of the nodules was 45 kg.
3 Pulverize the entire mass to -150 µm using a disc mill.
4 Divide the mass into 3 bags containing 15 kg per bag (Bags A, B and C).
5 Using a rifle divider, separate each of the 3 bags into 2 separate subsamples, each containing 7.5 kg (A1, A2, B1, B2, C1, C2).
6 Create 2 composites using one subsample from each bag (A1+B1+C1, A2+B2+C2).
7 Mix the new composites in a plastic bag.
8 Divide the composites into 2 samples (Composite 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b).
9 Mix to make 2 new composites (1a+2a, 1b+2b).
10 Repeat Steps 8 and 9 three times. This still results in 2 composites (X and Y).
11 Divide the 2 composites into 10 samples per composite (X1-X10, Y1-Y10).
12 Mix subsamples based on their corresponding numbers (X1+Y1 = standard sample 1).
13 Place each of the samples into individual bottles.

The following laboratories were contracted to conduct analysis as part of this program:

- PAMCO, Hachinohe, Aomori, Japan.
- ALS, Brisbane, QLD, Australia.
- SGS Canada, Lakefield, ON, Canada.
- Kingston Process Metallurgy, Kingston, ON, Canada.

The program required each laboratory to conduct analysis on nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese only. Table 10.3 summarizes the analytical methods undertaken by each of the laboratories to complete this task.

Table 10.3 Analytical methods undertaken by each laboratory

Element	PAMCO Method	KPM Method	ALS Method	SGS Method
Nickel (Ni)	JIS M 8126: Dimethylglyoxime Precipitation Separation EDTA Titration Method	ICP-OES	XRF – Chromite / Manganese Ore – Disc / XRF	XRF
Copper (Cu)	JIS M 8242: Inductively Coupled Plasma Emission Spectrometry (ICP-OES)			
Cobalt (Co)	JIS M 8129: Inductively Coupled Plasma Emission Spectrometry (ICP-OES)			
Manganese (Mn)	JIS M 8232: Potassium Permanganate Titration			

Table 10.4 to Table 10.7 shows the outcomes from each of the laboratories for each of the elements specified. All values are in weight %. Average, standard deviation (SD) and CV are shown.

Table 10.4 Nickel laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	1.4317	1.460	1.410	1.390
2	1.4362	1.462	1.470	1.410
3	1.4381	1.438	1.370	1.390
4	1.4330	1.457	1.410	1.390
5	1.4334	1.445	1.460	1.400
6	1.4304	1.424	1.400	1.390
7	1.4351	1.456	1.440	1.390
8	1.4347	1.435	1.400	1.380
9	1.4343	1.427	1.350	1.380
10	1.4364	1.434	1.440	1.380
Average	1.4343	1.4438	1.4150	1.3900
SD	0.0023	0.0141	0.0381	0.0094
CoV(%)	0.16	0.98	2.69	0.68

Table 10.5 Copper laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	1.1382	1.162	1.170	1.130
2	1.1528	1.162	1.220	1.140
3	1.1462	1.157	1.150	1.150
4	1.1433	1.160	1.170	1.130
5	1.1334	1.132	1.190	1.150
6	1.1396	1.146	1.160	1.140
7	1.1272	1.150	1.160	1.130
8	1.1231	1.144	1.150	1.160
9	1.1342	1.146	1.130	1.160
10	1.1339	1.158	1.180	1.140
Average	1.1372	1.1517	1.1680	1.1430
SD	0.0088	0.0098	0.0249	0.0116
CoV(%)	0.78	0.85	2.13	1.01

Table 10.6 Cobalt laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS

1	0.1430	0.1440	0.1400	0.1400
2	0.1462	0.1450	0.1400	0.1400
3	0.1436	0.1410	0.1400	0.1300
4	0.1438	0.1430	0.1400	0.1400
5	0.1415	0.1400	0.1400	0.1400
6	0.1414	0.1400	0.1300	0.1400
7	0.1431	0.1430	0.1400	0.1400
8	0.1444	0.1400	0.1400	0.1400
9	0.1445	0.1400	0.1300	0.1400
10	0.1423	0.1410	0.1400	0.1400
Average	0.1434	0.1417	0.1380	0.1390
SD	0.0015	0.0019	0.0042	0.0032
CoV(%)	1.02	1.33	3.06	2.28

Table 10.7 Manganese laboratory results

Bottle No	PAMCO	ALS	KPM	SGS
1	31.600	32.063	31.5000	31.700
2	31.770	31.978	31.3000	31.800
3	31.620	31.823	32.6000	31.700
4	31.665	32.039	31.5000	31.700
5	31.680	31.714	31.5000	31.700
6	31.785	31.404	31.9000	31.600
7	31.745	31.962	32.6000	31.600
8	31.665	31.474	32.7000	31.700
9	31.815	31.428	32.0000	31.700
10	31.785	31.575	31.5000	31.600
Average	31.713	31.746	31.910	31.6800
SD	0.076	0.261	0.540	0.0632
CoV(%)	0.24	0.82	1.69	0.20

QA/QC was completed with a sample of CRM manufactured by the USGS, known as NOD-P-1, at all laboratories except for ALS, who used alternative CRMs. Previous analysis of the USGS-NOD-P-1 was completed at ALS for a separate analytical program, and these results are included in Table 10.8 showing CRM results for each of the laboratories. All values are in weight%.

Table 10.8 CRM results for each laboratory

Lab	Nickel (Ni%)	Copper (Cu%)	Cobalt (Co%)	Manganese (Mn%)
PAMCO	1.372	1.171	0.233	29.92
ALS	1.34	1.15	0.22	29.12
KPM	1.28	1.14	0.21	28.3
SGS	1.31	1.15	0.22	29.4

The results showed good alignment between the laboratories using varying analytical methodologies providing confidence in the results. It is the QP's opinion that analytical methods used for the metallurgical samples were suitable and provided reliable results.

10.4.2 Key findings of calcination at FLS

The nodules were successfully calcined by FLS in a 15 m long, 0.9 m diameter kiln under conditions consistent with the intended commercial operation. Table 10.9 summarizes the updates to the project process design criteria (PDC) arising from the calcining test work at FLS.

Table 10.9 Updates to Process Design Criteria from pilot kiln test work

Parameter	Units	Original PDC	FLS Pilot Kiln/Update	Comment
Nodule Angle of Repose	Deg.	N/A	42.5	Email from R. Penso, 24-Feb-21 10:24 AM
Degree of Nickel Reduction	%	20	20	FLS did not detect any Ni reduction, but given the degree of Fe reduction, it is expected. Therefore, keep PDC value
Degree of Cobalt Reduction	%	30	30	Not measured, keep PDC value
Degree of Copper Reduction	%	50	50	Not measured, leave at PDC value
Degree of Iron Reduction to Wüstite	%	85	100	None to metallic
Degree of Iron Reduction to Magnetite	%	15	N/A	
Degree of MnO2 to MnO by Thermal Decomposition	%		80	Based on MnO2 from 48.74% to avg 9.7% during oxidizing run
Degree of MnO2 to MnO by Reduction	%		20	By difference. No detectable MnO2 after reduction runs
LOI in Calcine	%	0.5	0.4	Average during oxidizing at 950°C

Dusting Rate of Nodules	%	5	5	Pilot was 2.1% dry basis, but this may be optimistic given the scale vs. commercial. FLS tumble test gave similar results to laterites, but fines screened out in both cases. FLS conclusion: "Given the lack of fines present in the nodule sample the overall dusting potential is lower than typical nickel laterite kiln operations". So leave at 5%
Dust Nickel Enrichment Factor (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt	1.3x	1.0x	If anything, Ni in dust is depleted
Dust Iron Enrichment (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt	1.3x	1.0x	Fe in feed, sediment and baghouse dust all about the same Also, Co, Cu about the same as in feed
Dust Potassium Enrichment (Dust/Feed)	wt/wt		5x	Na also said to be higher*
LOI in Dust	dry wt%	5	16	Same as feed**
Moisture in Dust	**wt%**	**5**	**3**	**2.91% measured**

Notes: *Na in feed = 1.77%, Na in dust = 2.6, i.e., possibly within assaying error.
**Unexpected since TGA tests show low temperature weight loss.

10.4.3 Piloting – Electric Furnace Smelting at XPS – Metallurgical Summary

Table 10.10, Table 10.11, Table 10.12 and Table 10.13 compare the principal elements for the main stages of pyrometallurgical processing (calcination, smelting, sulfidation, and converting) between the piloting campaigns and the latest version of a process model developed for the project. The process model was originally derived from a nickel laterite model, which was modified as understanding of the differences for the nodule system has developed over the course of the project. The results obtained in the piloting campaigns allowed for further refinement of process modelling for nodule processing.

Table 10.10 Pilot calcine blend assay vs. process model update mass balance

Smelting	%Ni	%Co	%Cu	%Mn	%Fe	%S
Mass Balance Calcine	1.58	0.16	1.29	35.2	7.55	0.12
Pilot Calcine Blend	**1.66**	**0.15**	**1.32**	**37.2**	**7.76**	**0.27**

Table 10.11 compares smelting campaign metal tap major element assays to the values in the project process model. There is significant assay variation. On average, nickel and cobalt grades are high compared to the mass balance values—nickel, was high in calcine. Manganese was lower in the alloy than expected given the relatively high iron, which may provide some insight into the relationship between degree of reduction and the relative concentration of these elements reporting to the alloy. Sulfur is a deleterious element for ferronickel producers and has received considerable attention in process modelling. Clearly, the nodule process, with its different slag chemistry, does not appear to have this issue. By inspection of the %S columns in Table 10.11 and Table 10.12, it can be seen that sulfur deports much more to slag and much less to metal than is normally assumed for nickel laterite slags.

Table 10.11 Pilot metal assays vs. process model mass balance

Smelting	%Ni	%Co	%Cu	%Mn	%Fe	%S
Mass Balance Furnace Alloy	15.8	1.5	12.5	3.6	61.9	0.54
Pilot Average*	18.1	1.9	11.9	1.1	65.0	0.03
Campaign 1 (Tap 11)	15.6	1.5	10.3	1.4	67.5	0.03
Campaign 2 (Tap 8)	17.7	1.5	10.1	1.2	65.1	0.00
Campaign 2 (Tap 15)	18.6	2.4	12.3	0.8	63.3	0.05
Campaign 2 (left in furnace)	**20.4**	**2.1**	**14.8**	**1.0**	**64.1**	**0.03**

Note: *Simple average, not weighted

Table 10.12 compares the ranges for slag chemistry from the main slag taps for the two campaigns to the mass balance values. The mass balance values lie within the range achieved. Phosphorus can be controlled to the levels in the mass balance.

Table 10.12 Pilot smelting slag assays vs. process model mass balance

Smelting	%Mn	%Fe	%Si	%P	%S
Mass Balance Furnace Slag	40.7	1.8	10.9	0.06	0.05
Campaign 1	39.1 – 43.0	1.0 – 7.9	10.2 – 11.3	0.01 – 0.17	0.41 – 1.07
Campaign 2	**40.1 – 44.1**	**0.8 – 4.8**	**9.9 – 11.2**	**0.02 – 0.23**	**0.34 – 0.49**

In Table 10.13, the matte sample that was closest to the target intermediate matte (i.e. the nearly steady-state operating point of the sulfidation vessel in the commercial process) is compared to the mass balance composition. The target sulfidation operating point is 30% Fe and the closest sample to that was at 35.6% Fe. The table also compares the final matte obtained in the pilot campaign to the mass balance final matte. Pilot nickel levels seem significantly higher than projected whereas cobalt is lower. It should be borne in mind that the mass balance is based on the recycle of slag from the finishing vessel (FV) back to the sulfidation vessel to improve pay-metal recoveries, which was not possible for the pilot work. This explains the low value for cobalt, which has a much lower partition coefficient than nickel and copper at low levels of iron in matte. This highlights why it is important not to rely on the recoveries achieved in the once-thru test work, but instead to apply measured partition coefficients to the process model to estimate recoveries in the commercial plant. The recirculating loads will have little impact on these coefficients.

Table 10.13 Pilot matte assays vs. process model mass balance

Sulfidation, Converting	%Ni	%Co	%Cu	%Mn	%Fe	%S
Mass Balance Intermediate Matte	27.3	3.0	20.6	0.01	30.0	13.0

Pilot Closest (Matte 4)	28.5	2.4	18.4	0.04	35.6	13.6
Mass Balance Final Matte	40.9	3.4	30.5	0.01	5.0	20.0
Pilot Final Matte	**45.8**	**2.8**	**30.5**	**0.00**	**9.9**	**16.4**

Overall, it can be concluded that the pilot campaigns to process the calcine to matte for subsequent hydrometallurgical treatment largely achieved the expected metal and matte targets, albeit falling somewhat short on iron concentration target, while providing additional insights into the metallurgy of nodule processing.

10.4.4 Smelting: metallurgical results

Metallurgical control was generally good and covered a range of compositions and degrees of reduction. This is best illustrated by the amount of residual iron in slag, which ranged from just under 1% Fe to nearly 5% Fe, whereas the current mass balance is 1.8% Fe. While the proposed operating point is within the band of the test work, the range experienced provides an opportunity to understand metallurgical trends as a function of iron grade in the slag.

10.4.4.1 Partition coefficients (PC) in smelting

Overall recoveries of elements to alloy as reported in the mass balances for the pilot work are not useful for predicting commercial recoveries due to:

- Poor accountability in some cases.
- Pilot results encompass a range of conditions with respect to degree of reduction, and not just the target conditions for the commercial operation.
- Pilot trials did not include recycle streams which are used commercially to maximize pay metal recovery.

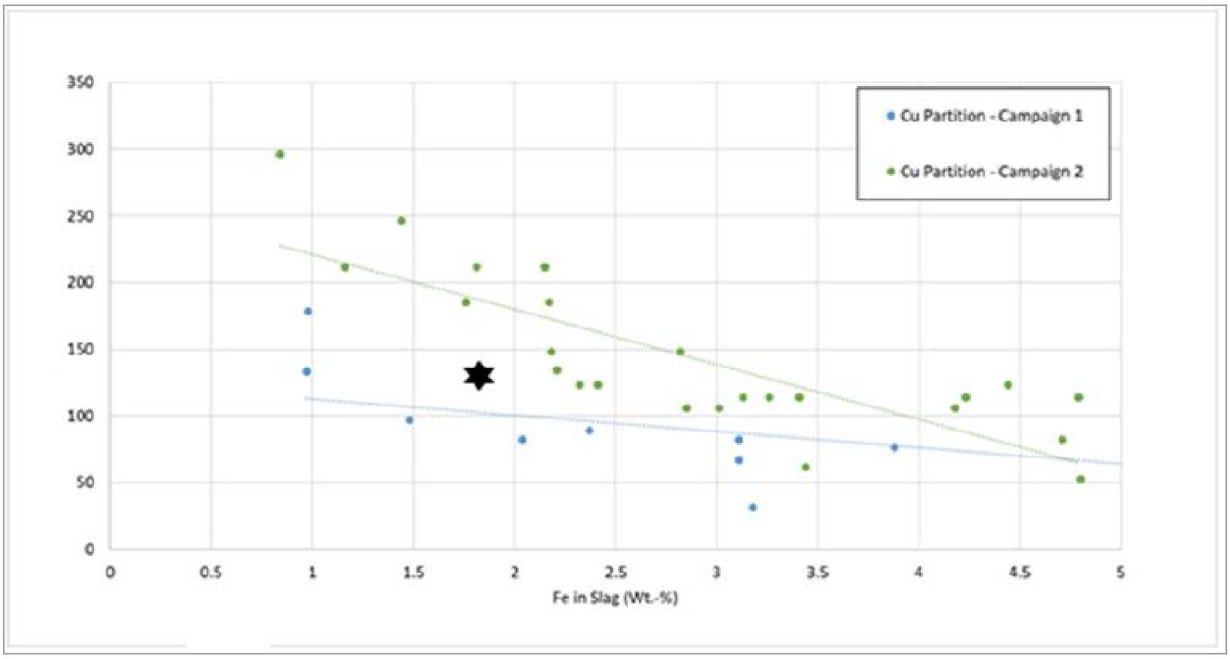
Instead, predictions of recovery can be made using partition coefficient information from the test work at the target degree of reduction. This is represented by the amount of iron reduced to the alloy or the iron content of the resultant slag, which is currently 1.8% Fe in the process model, but may be adjusted to 1.5% (see Section 10.4.4.2).

$$Partition\ Coefficient = \frac{wt\%\ X\ in\ Metal}{wt\%\ X\ in\ Slag}$$

Copper partition coefficients

Figure 10.2 shows the Cu partition coefficients (PCCu) reported for the two smelting campaigns as a function of iron grade in the slag. There are reasonably clear trends, particularly for Campaign 2, showing higher coefficients at lower iron, i.e., more reducing conditions. Also shown is the target point in the process model (PCCu = 130 at 1.8% Fe displayed as a ★). It lies near the middle of the pilot data at that given amount of iron in slag. There is a case to be made for the Campaign 2 data being better than for Campaign 1 due to better temperature control, which would yield PCCu = ~190 at 1.5% Fe, however it is recommended that it is left at the current more-conservative value.

Figure 10.2 Copper partition coefficients during smelting



Source: TMC

Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients

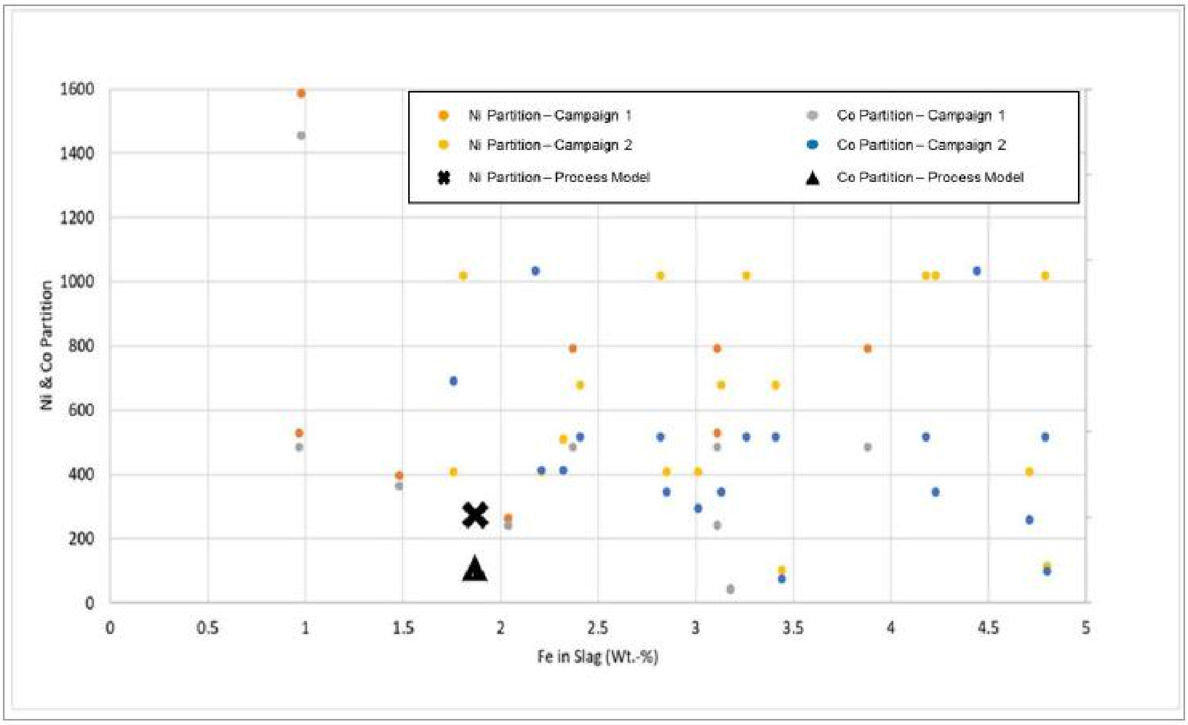
Figure 10.3 shows the partition coefficients for nickel and cobalt obtained during the smelting campaigns. There is a great deal of scatter and no clear trend with iron (degree of reduction). One major reason for the scatter is that the concentrations reported in slag are very low. As reported in the pilot mass balances (excluding outliers):

- Nickel ranges between 0.010 to 0.060, and
- Cobalt between 0.001 to 0.007.

Thus, the PCs are highly sensitive to slight variations due to assay uncertainties.

Current process model (1.8% Fe) values for nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting are 285 and 120 respectively and these are shown as X (nickel partition coefficient = 285) and Δ (cobalt partition coefficient = 120) in Figure 10.3. They are clearly at the lower end of the range calculated for the pilot plant operation. However, given the wide scatter and assay uncertainty of the pilot data, it is not proposed to change the process model values. It can be said, however, that the pilot values certainly don't indicate that the commercial values will be any lower than the current model values.

Figure 10.3 Nickel and cobalt partition coefficients during smelting

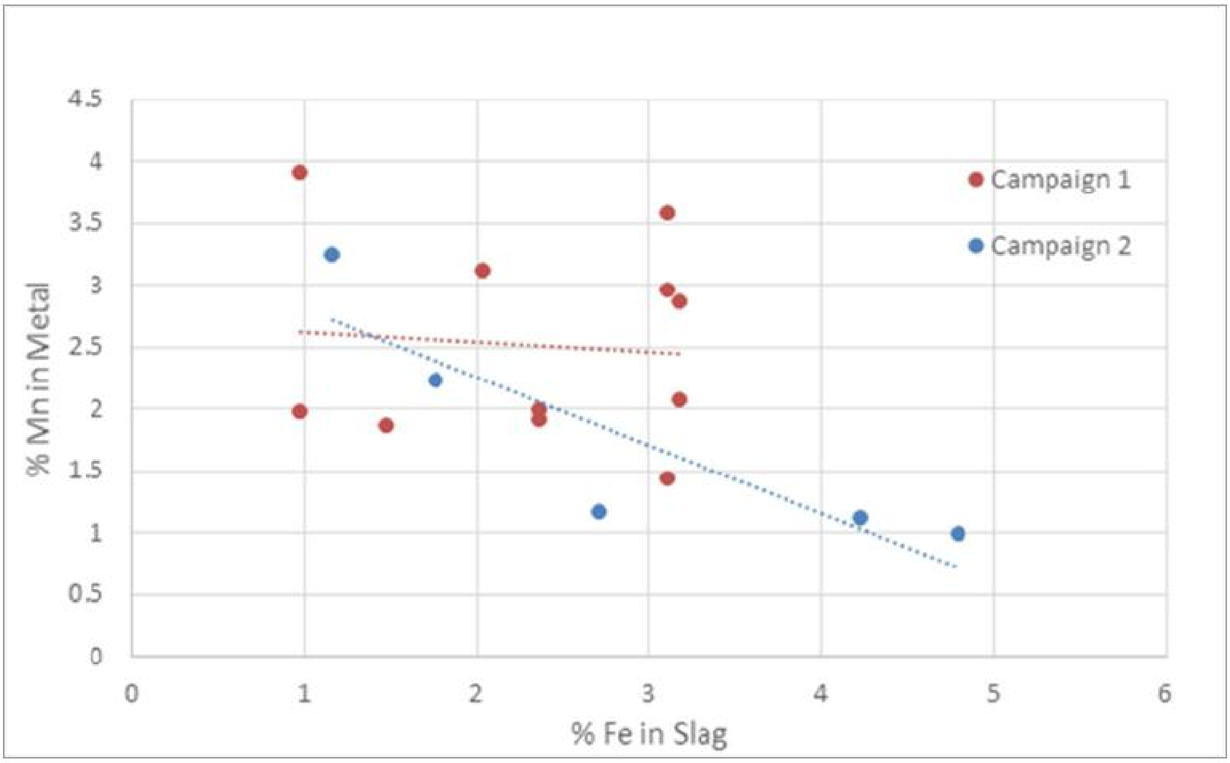


Source: TMC

Manganese deportment

Figure 10.4 shows manganese in metal versus iron in slag. There is considerable scatter but there are no high levels of manganese in metal. The values are generally lower than what was achieved during Smelt Test 8 at KPM during the bench-scale testing (considered to be a benchmark), which is favorable considering any of the over-reduced smelt tests at KPM yielded manganese in metal levels of up to 50%. While Campaign 2 appears to show a trend to lower manganese at higher iron in slag, which would be expected, the same cannot be said of Campaign 1. The data support that, for an operating range of 1-2% Fe in slag, a value for manganese in metal of 2.5% manganese can be adopted in process modelling.

Figure 10.4 Manganese in metal vs. iron in slag

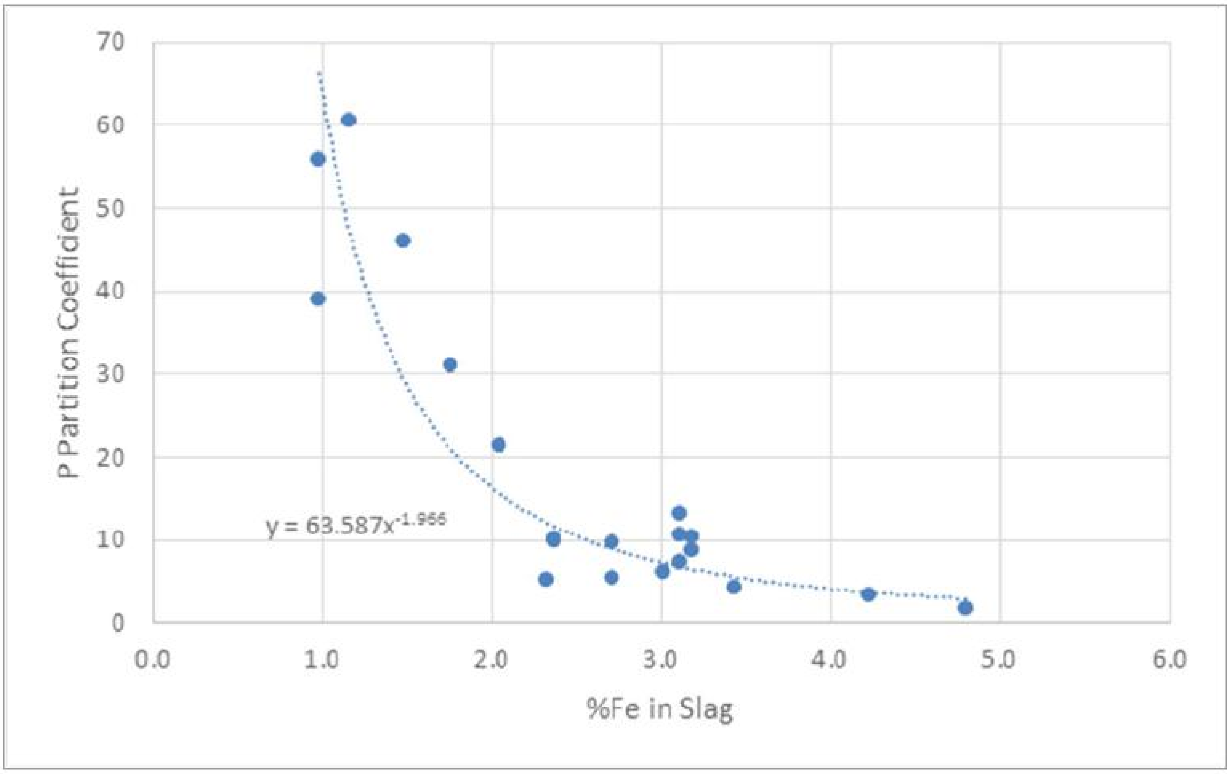


Source: TMC

Phosphorus Partition Coefficient

Figure 10.5 shows phosphorus partition coefficients for both campaigns combined. The process model used a value of 25, with iron at 1.8% Fe, which is broadly in keeping with the data from the pilot operation. Using the regression curve will give a phosphorus partition coefficient of approximately 30 at 1.5% Fe in slag.

Figure 10.5 Phosphorus partition coefficients



Source: TMC

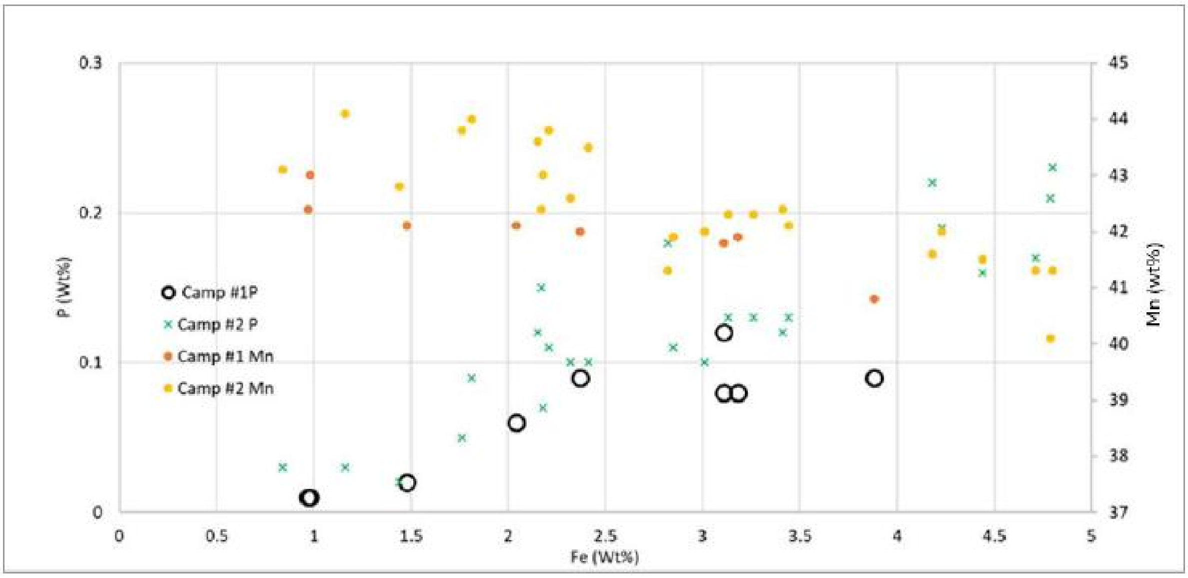
10.4.4.2 Slag chemistry

The slag produced during smelting is proposed to be sold as a feed to the silico-manganese industry. Desirable feeds are high in manganese and low in iron and phosphorus. A simplified guidance is:

- Mn >40% or MnO >50%,
- Mn/Fe ~25 or FeO ~2%, and
- Mn/P >670.

In Figure 10.6, it can be seen that for iron at or below 2% Fe, manganese in slag is about 43% (59% MnO). At 1.5% Fe, both the Mn/Fe ratio and %FeO requirements are met. There is a clear trend for low phosphorus at low iron, and at 1.5% Fe, phosphorus in slag appears likely to be below 0.05% P, yielding Mn/P > 860. Iron at 1.5% Fe is quite close to the current process model value of 1.8% Fe, which was based on reducing 80% of the iron from the slag.

Figure 10.6 Manganese and phosphorus in slag versus iron in slag



Source: TMC

10.4.4.3 Elemental distribution – partition coefficients in converting

In the commercial operation, the sulfidation vessel operates within a narrow range of chemistry near the target intermediate matte composition (currently 30% Fe). This matte composition is selected so as to produce a slag that has acceptable pay-metal losses and can be sold as aggregate or similar useful product. The matte is then taken to a FV where the iron is blown down to the target grade (currently 5% Fe). This produces a slag that has higher levels of pay-metals and needs to be recycled back to the sulfidation vessel to achieve acceptable overall recoveries. It was not possible to perform slag recycle in the piloting process and thus the overall recoveries achieved in pilot sulfidation and converting are not representative of the proposed commercial operation. Instead, the partition coefficients obtained during piloting can be considered for use in the process model, which does include slag recycle, to calculate commercial recoveries.

$$Partition\ Coefficient = \frac{wt\%\ X\ in\ Matte}{wt\%\ X\ in\ Converter\ Slag}$$

The following sub-sections show the partition coefficients reported for the pilot work together with small scale work performed with artificial mattes at XPS in 2020 (XPS, 2020). Also shown, where available, are partition coefficients from two commercial smelters (Benchmark A and B) processing Ni-Cu-Co sulfide concentrates. (Benchmark A' information is the same operation as Benchmark A, but is from a different source.)

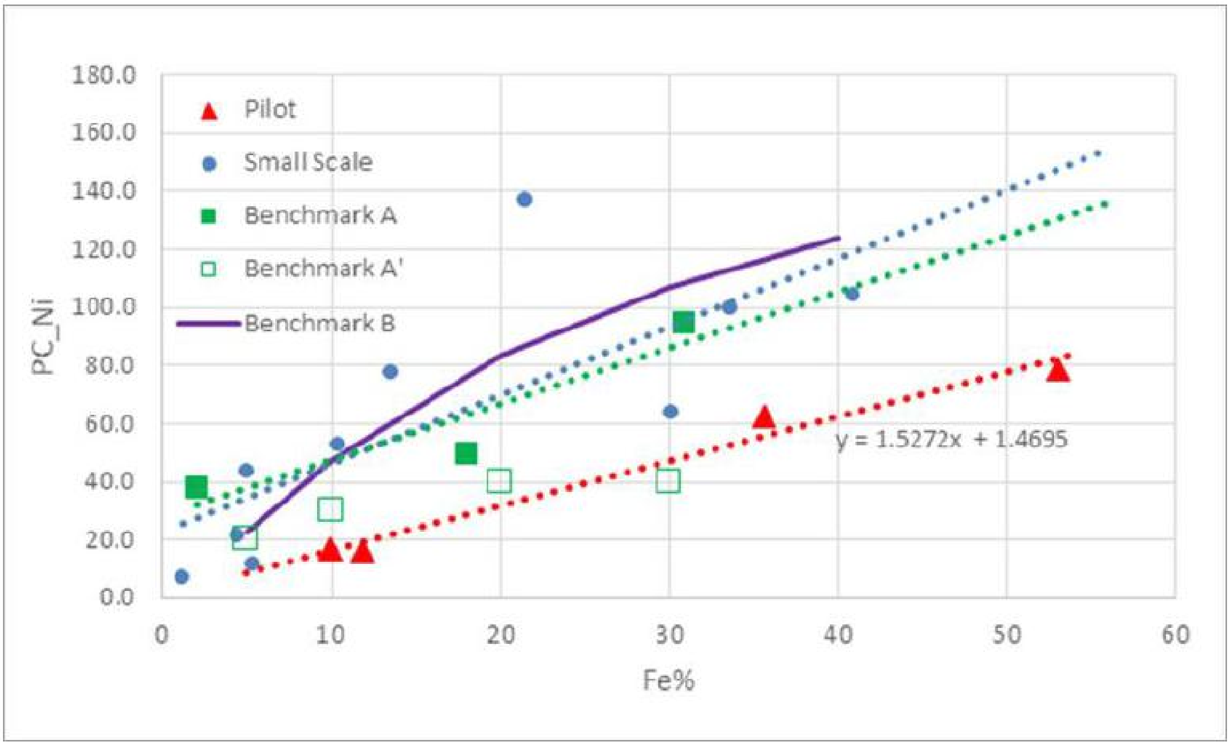
The availability of benchmark information for commercial converting operations means that there needs to be less reliance placed on the pilot results for nickel, copper and cobalt (unlike smelting, where there are no commercial benchmarks for this system). The pilot converting was perhaps the most challenging part of the piloting. Nevertheless, the partition coefficients obtained were reasonably in line with the benchmark values (perhaps to the low side). In general, it can be said that the proposed commercial converting operation should be able to obtain partition coefficients within the range of pilot, small-scale and benchmark values.

Given the importance of these coefficients to overall recoveries, the relevant samples were sent to another laboratory for re-assay. There were no significant differences.

Nickel Partition Coefficients

Figure 10.7 shows nickel partitions from test work and benchmark. The results from piloting are disappointingly low compared to the small-scale (artificial matte) results and two sets of benchmark numbers. They are, however, in agreement with the 'Benchmark A' information (no trendline was plotted for those data).

Figure 10.7 Nickel partition coefficients in converting

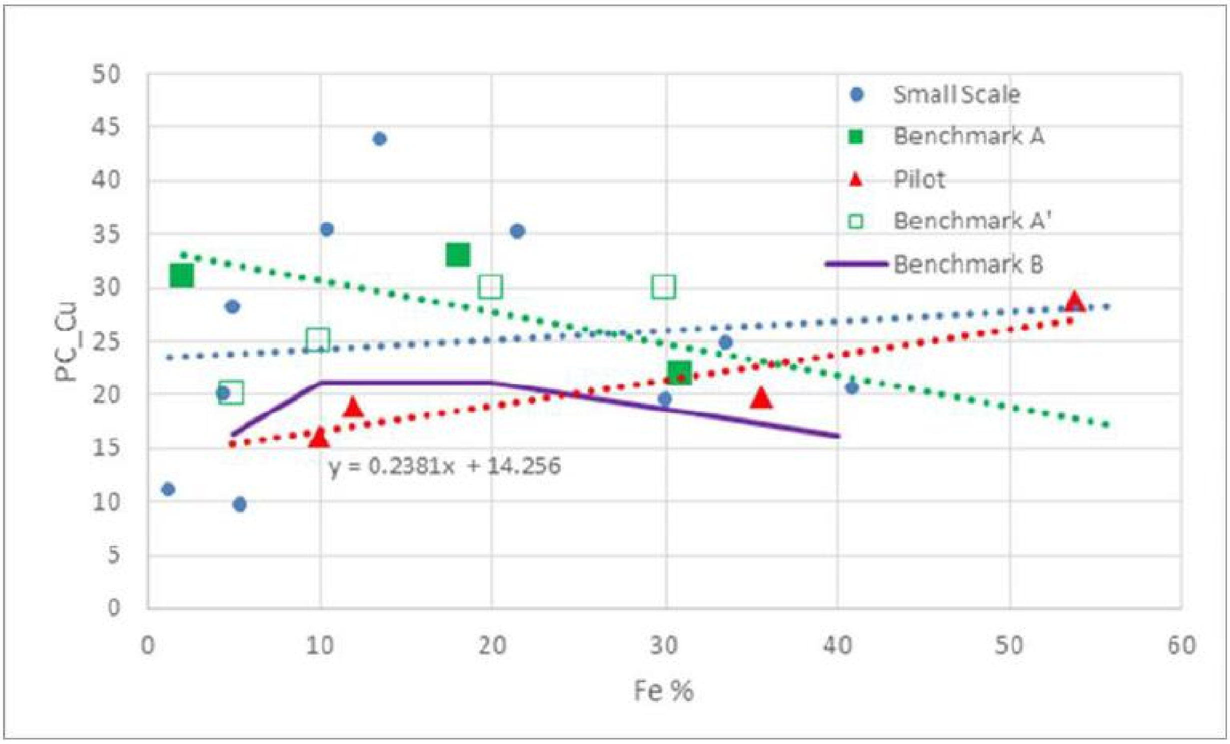


Source: TMC

Copper Partition Coefficients

Results and benchmarks for copper are shown in Figure 10.8. In the range of interest, there are no obvious trends with %iron in matte. There is little to differentiate the different sets of data.

Figure 10.8 Copper partition coefficients in converting

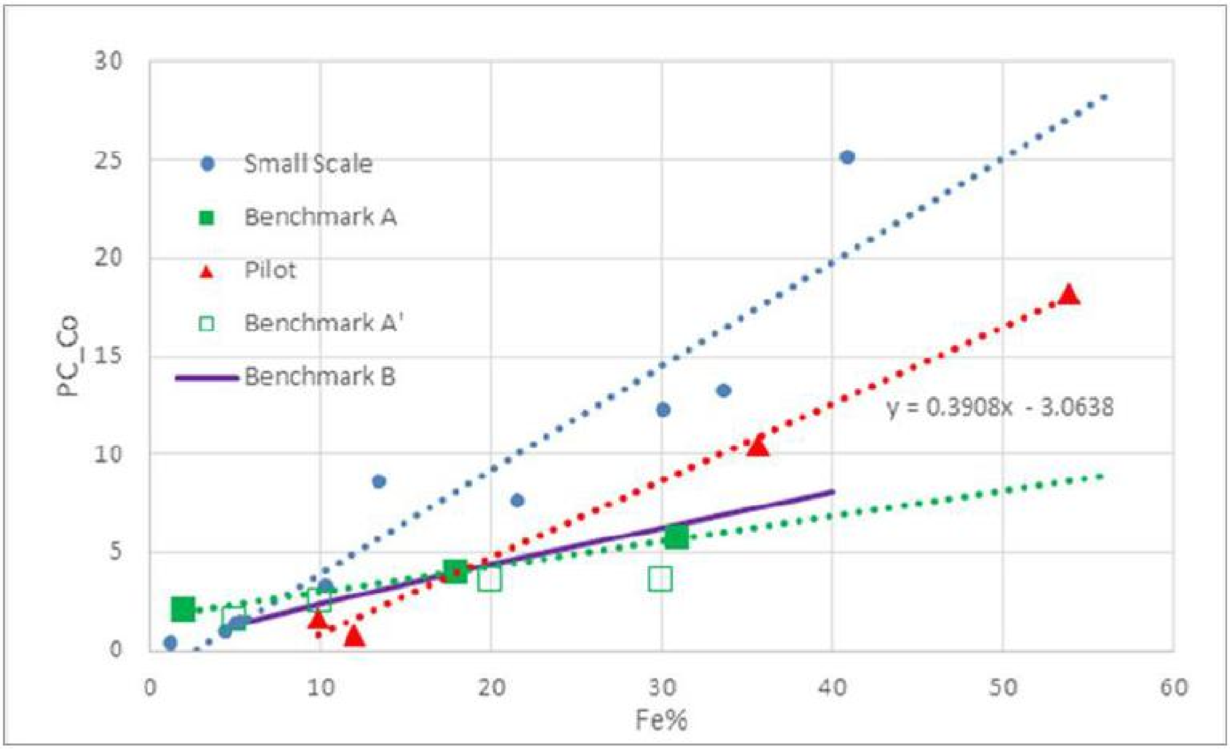


Source: TMC

Cobalt Partition Coefficients

Figure 10.9 shows partition information for cobalt. The pilot trend at the slag discard point (30% Fe) is within the range of benchmark and small-scale test work results.

Figure 10.9 Cobalt partition coefficients in converting

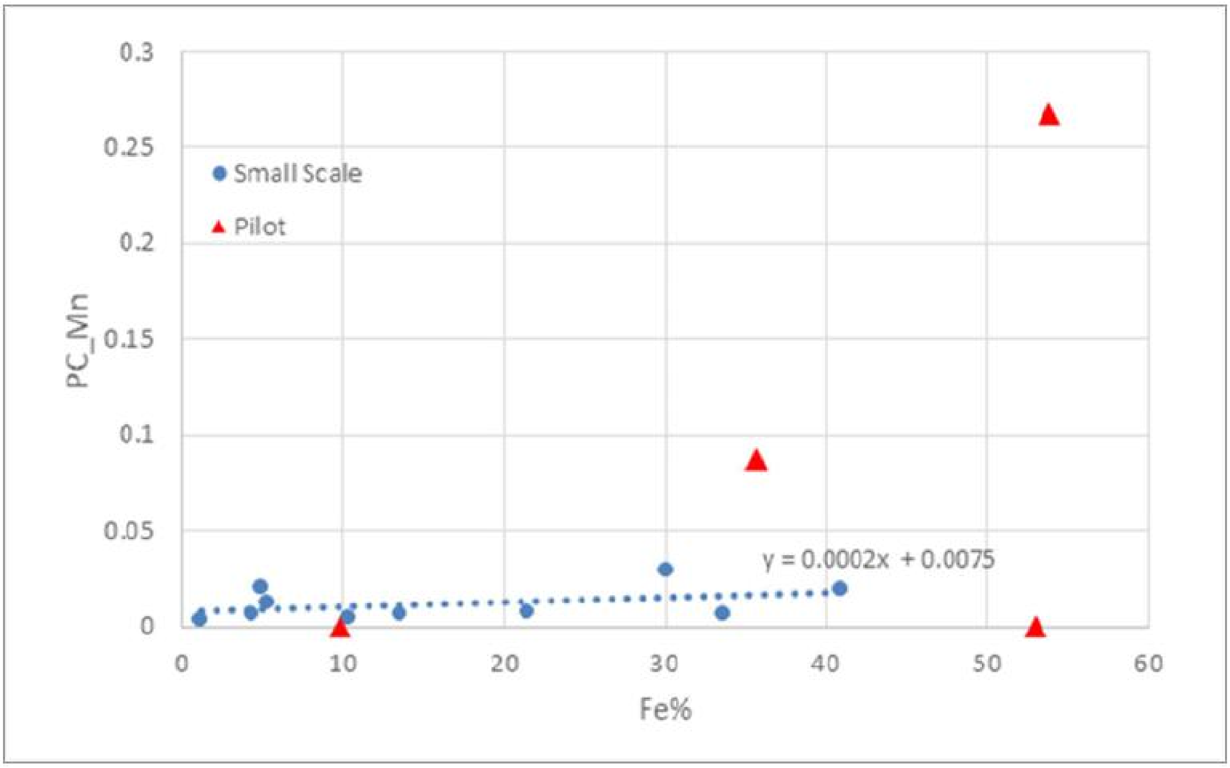


Source: TMC

Manganese Partition Coefficients

Manganese partition coefficients are shown in Figure 10.10. The pilot data are few and widely scattered. They do not provide any conclusive information. The current process model has simply adopted a fixed value for manganese in product matte, namely 0.01wt%. It is proposed that manganese deportment be changed to a partition coefficient basis using the small-scale correlation shown in Figure 10.10.

Figure 10.10 Manganese partition coefficients in converting



Source: TMC

10.4.5 Demonstration scale trials at PAMCO

TMC and PAMCO recently completed a demonstration scale trial at an existing RKEF facility in Hachinohe, Japan, using the 2000 t of nodules collected from NORI Area D. The nodules were calcined over six campaigns using a commercial scale rotary kiln. The calcine was collected in storage bins and smelted over four campaigns in a 4,000 kVA furnace. The furnace is located in the plant's recycling operation and has previously been used to process fly ash, though at the time of the trials it was not in operation.

Several calcining campaigns were required as the calcine had to be cooled prior to transfer to the smelting facility and the hot calcine storage capacity was limited. The time between campaigns was four to six weeks which allowed for the cooling and transfer of the calcine.

During the smelting campaigns, it was determined that better manganese silicate properties could be obtained by changing the iron in slag target down from 1.8 to 1.1. The reduction in iron drives the manganese to phosphorus ratio to be greater than 1000, which is very desirable for the market. The resultant manganese silicate that was produced under these conditions represents an even more attractive product composition relative to the original target. The improvement to the target manganese silicate specification is expected to feed into a revision of TMC's marketing material and conversations with external parties around the sale of the product.

The smelting campaign also assessed refractory wear, and the results show that greater lining erosion was experienced in comparison to baseline laterite operations. Furnace upgrade modifications may be required for long term vessel integrity, workplace safety and equipment reliability. These furnace upgrades and associated capital costs required to prepared furnaces for processing nodules are expected to be considered in the commercial arrangement with Indonesian RKEF facilities that TMC plans to toll the nodules through. These and any other relatively minor modifications will be assessed on a plant-by-plant basis depending on the equipment available on each site.

The campaigns were able to produce demonstration quantities of on target alloy and manganese silicate. These materials are planned for use in potential downstream product development, as well as for product samples for marketing and demonstration purposes.

The campaigns also proved that the off gas cleaning equipment works for nodule feed as is, and all emissions were compliant with relevant regulations. It is expected that this will translate to any potential Indonesian operation. Overall, it was demonstrated that all major process parameters were all in line with expectations and confirmed that stable operations producing target products is achievable commercially.

10.4.6 Hydrometallurgical refinery bench scale testing

Following the generation of matte at XPS, a bench-scale hydrometallurgical refining program was conducted by TMC at the SGS Canada testing facility in Lakefield, Ontario. The program culminated in generation of nickel and cobalt sulfate crystals, which represent final products that TMC USA intends to produce out of the US-based refinery.

10.4.6.1 Two-stage leaching

Bench-scale leach tests demonstrated that high levels of nickel and cobalt leaching (75% Ni, 63% Co) from the matte were possible in the atmospheric leach stage provided the matte was exposed to sufficient oxidizing conditions. While initial testing achieved desired nickel and cobalt performance, the resulting leach liquors contained excessively high amounts of copper for the two-stage leach approach. Through a process development program, various test parameters were evaluated to assess their impact on reducing copper levels in the leach liquors. Variations in oxidization time, overall reaction time, and acid addition were all considered, and it was determined that an atmospheric leach with an acid addition of 498 kg/t and 48-h overall retention time was able to achieve 75% nickel extraction while limiting copper levels in the Pregnant liquor/leach solution(PLS) to just 0.6 g/L. The optimized atmospheric leach was operated under oxidizing conditions for the initial 6 h with the reactor operated under slight pressure to improve the oxygen contact time in the lab scale reactor and then without atmosphere control for the remainder of the test.

The second stage of leaching is a pressure oxidation (POX) performed on the atmospheric leach (AL) residue, and the results from this program indicated that at 180 °C and 600 kPa oxygen overpressure, 98% of the nickel was leached from the AL residue. This resulted in overall nickel leaching of 99.5% while also leaching 97% of the copper. Key parameters and results of the optimized AL and POX conditions are listed in Table 10.14. Assays of notable components for both liquors and residues from the atmospheric leach and POX are shown in Table 10.15.

Table 10.14 Optimum leach parameters and extractions

Leach	Temp	Time	Oxygen over-pressureO2	Stage Extractions (%)			
	°C	h	kPa	Ni	Cu	Co	Fe
AL	95	48	70	75	-15	56	-17
POX	180	2	600	98	97	98	-1

Table 10.15 Optimum leach assays

Leach	Liquor Assays (g/L)					Residue (%)			
	Ni	Cu	Co	Fe	H_2SO_4	Ni	Cu	Co	Fe
AL	84.1	0.59	4.72	0.003	0	15.5	52.7	1.64	3.60
POX	16.6	50.3	1.62	0.19	14	0.51	5.28	0.11	37.9

10.4.6.2 Cobalt refining

The first stage of the processing for the PLS was a pH adjustment stage, where the pH of the PLS was increased to 4.9 to remove additional copper and any trace iron remaining. Lab-scale cobalt SX (CoSX) testing was conducted using a solvent mixture of 10% Cyanex 272 in Exxsol D80 at an organic to aqueous phase ratio (O/A) of 1/1, a contact temperature of 40 °C, and an equilibrium contact pH of 5.0 via the addition of ammonium hydroxide solution. Process development resulted in selection of a 10 g/L cobalt as cobalt sulfate solution as the aqueous feed to the CoSX scrubbing tests in which magnesium and trace levels of co-loaded nickel were fully removed from the loaded organic phase. Sulfuric acid was used to strip the organic phase. Assays for the feed (pH adjusted AL PLS) and the resultant strip liquor are summarized in Table 10.16.

Table 10.16 Assays of input and output streams from the CoSX

Stream	Ni (g/L)	Cu (g/L)	Co (g/L)	Mn (g/L)	Mg (g/L)
CoSX Feed Liquor	84.3	0.55	5.10	0.10	0.605
CoSX Strip Liquor	< 0.1	4.80	79.4	2.00	0.044

Process development testing has demonstrated that copper IX (CuIX) using Lewatit® MDS TP 208 is able to fully extract the copper from the CoSX strip liquor. Multiple resins were tested for the removal of manganese from the cobalt strip liquor without success, but oxidation of manganese from the soluble Mn^{2+} state to the nonsoluble Mn^{4+} has been demonstrated to be successful. In initial laboratory tests, this is achieved using Caro's acid (H_2SO_5, made by combining sulfuric acid and hydrogen peroxide). The cobalt refining work culminated in the generation of cobalt sulfate crystals. TMC sourced an external third-party specification for cobalt sulfate and compared them with analysis of the lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals produced as SGS, presented in Table 10.17.

Table 10.17 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated cobalt sulfate crystals with an external third-party specification

	TMC Result	Comparative Specification
Co (wt%)	22.1	> 20.5
Cu (ppm)	< 5	< 5
Ca (ppm)	< 100	< 50
Fe (ppm)	< 100	< 10
Mg (ppm)	82	< 100
Na (ppm)	< 100	< 300

10.4.6.3 Nickel refining

Nickel SX (NiSX) testing was conducted on samples of CoSX raffinate produced during CoSX testing, identifying 40% Versatic 10 in Exxsol D80 as the desired solvent mixture for the loading of nickel. Optimum contact pH was 6.35, and contact temperature was 50°C. Trace levels of cobalt, magnesium, and manganese were scrubbed using a 15 g/L nickel as nickel sulfate solution. The scrubbed organic was stripped with sulfuric acid to produce a strip liquor that assayed at 117 g/L nickel. The strip liquor was further concentrated via evaporation to directly produce nickel sulfate crystals with a calculated purity of 99.996% (total impurity content of 40 g/t). As with cobalt sulfate, TMC sourced some external third-party specifications and compared them with the analyses of the crystals generated at SGS, presented in Table 10.18.

Table 10.18 Comparison between TMC's lab-generated nickel sulfate crystals with two external third-party specifications

	TMC Result	Comparative Specification 1	Comparative Specification 2
Ni (wt%)	>= 22.0	>= 22.0	>= 22.0
Cu (ppm)	< 1	<= 5	<= 5
Ca (ppm)	< 20	<= 20	<= 50

Fe (ppm)	< 5	<= 10	<= 10
Mg (ppm)	2.3	<= 20	<= 50
Na (ppm)	< 20	<= 500	<= 200

10.5 Iron in final matte

The current process model has a final matte iron composition of 5% iron. The target iron in matte is based on limiting the amount of iron going into the downstream hydrometallurgical refinery (the lower the iron the better) while maintaining reasonable recoveries of pay metals.

Potential economic exploitation of the matte could be affected if the iron content is too high. The eventual customer looking to further refine the matte into individual pay metals components is expected to have issues processing with high iron contents.

10.6 Manganese silicate

The manganese silicate product is a key contributor to the overall economic case for the project. With nodules containing around 30% manganese, the manganese silicate is expected to represent approximately 90% of the product generated from the flowsheet by mass. The intended market for the manganese silicate is as a feed for silico-manganese production, which is a key additive in steel manufacturing. Market analyses have shown that key indicators for a high value product in this area are based on achieving the following targets for manganese silicate as identified in Table 10.19.

Table 10.19 Target specifications for manganese silicate

Component	Target Specification (wt%)
Mn	> 40
Fe	1 – 2
Mn / P	> 670

These targets are based on a combination of high grades of manganese relative to other sources, as well as limiting impurities like iron and phosphorus. The impurity profile of target and pilot generated products are consistent with presently understood market requirements.

During the piloting of TMC's flowsheet, 25 t of manganese silicate was generated, most of which met the target parameters. The material from the most representative tap (Campaign 2, Tap 4) was then used to perform silico-manganese generation testing at a laboratory in Trondheim, Norway. Results from this program identified at both lab and kilogram scale that silico-manganese alloy can be generated using TMC's manganese silicate as the sole source of manganese. Producing manganese silicate that meets the targets as outlined in the table above and the success of the program in Norway provided confidence in TMC's strategy to sell the manganese silicate for use in silico-manganese alloy production.

10.7 Summary and QP's opinion

TMC has undertaken a metallurgical development process that has included extensive review of relevant technical information in the literature, appropriately scoped and detailed bench-scale and pilot-scale testwork that demonstrated the fundamentals of the process, and executed appropriate process engineering to support the project economic analysis. In addition, the scope of the project is to employ existing assets presently operated to produce ferronickel from nickel laterite ore. The nodule feed process is analogous to nickel laterite operations in terms of equipment, consumables, estimated flowrates, temperatures, and other conditions. The estimated data employed compare reasonably with commercial benchmarks.

It is the QP's opinion that the experimental and benchmark data are adequate to demonstrate that existing RKEF assets are suitable for smelting polymetallic nodules into saleable products with proven markets that meet potential customer quality requirements. The QP also endorses the fact that preliminary bench scale testing has shown that generation of final nickel and cobalt products suitable for use in battery applications is possible using intermediates derived exclusively from pyrometallurgical processing of nodules.

11 Mineral Resource estimates

11.1 Cautionary note regarding Mineral Resource estimates

The estimates of Measured, Indicated, and Inferred Mineral Resources presented in this section are not Mineral Reserves and do not demonstrate economic viability. No pre-feasibility or feasibility study has been completed for the Property. Inferred Mineral Resources are considered too speculative geologically to have the economic considerations applied to them that would enable classification as Mineral Reserves, and there is no certainty that any portion of the Mineral Resources will be converted to Mineral Reserves or result in future development or production.

11.2 Estimation process for NORI-A, B and C

Mineral Resources were first estimated for NORI-A, B, C and D by Golder Associates in late 2012 (Golder, 2015), primarily using data collected by the Pioneer Contractors. Data collected by NORI in 2018 and 2019 was used by AMC to update the Mineral Resource estimate for NORI Area D in 2020.

The Mineral Resource estimates for NORI-A, B and C have not been updated. The existing Mineral Resource estimate generated by Golder in 2012 remains the current estimate. There has been no new exploratory work conducted in the areas to warrant an update to the estimates.

All information for this section has been summarized from Golder 2015 technical report. The information presented for NORI Area D in this section is provided only for comparison.

11.2.1 Geological domains

Based on the geophysical interpretation of the NORI multibeam data there are areas identified as low nodule density and possible lava flows and outcrops in NORI-C.

These areas cover a lower percentage of NORI-C than the areas identified as high, medium, or indeterminate nodule density. The areas identified as low nodule density and possible lava flows and outcrops are numerous, discontinuous, and are generally smaller than the average sample spacing. Since the NORI Area falls within a single bathymetric domain (abyssal hill province) and entirely within the CCZ deposit boundary, it was not considered necessary to domain the data for an Inferred Mineral Resource.

11.2.2 Nodule sample data

The data was checked for anomalous or erroneous data and cross-checked with data supplied directly by the ISA. Resetting zero assay values to missing and zero abundance values to 0.01 where there are assay values. Summary statistics for the data are listed in Table 11.1. Note that this summary includes Pioneer Contractor data for NORI Area D.

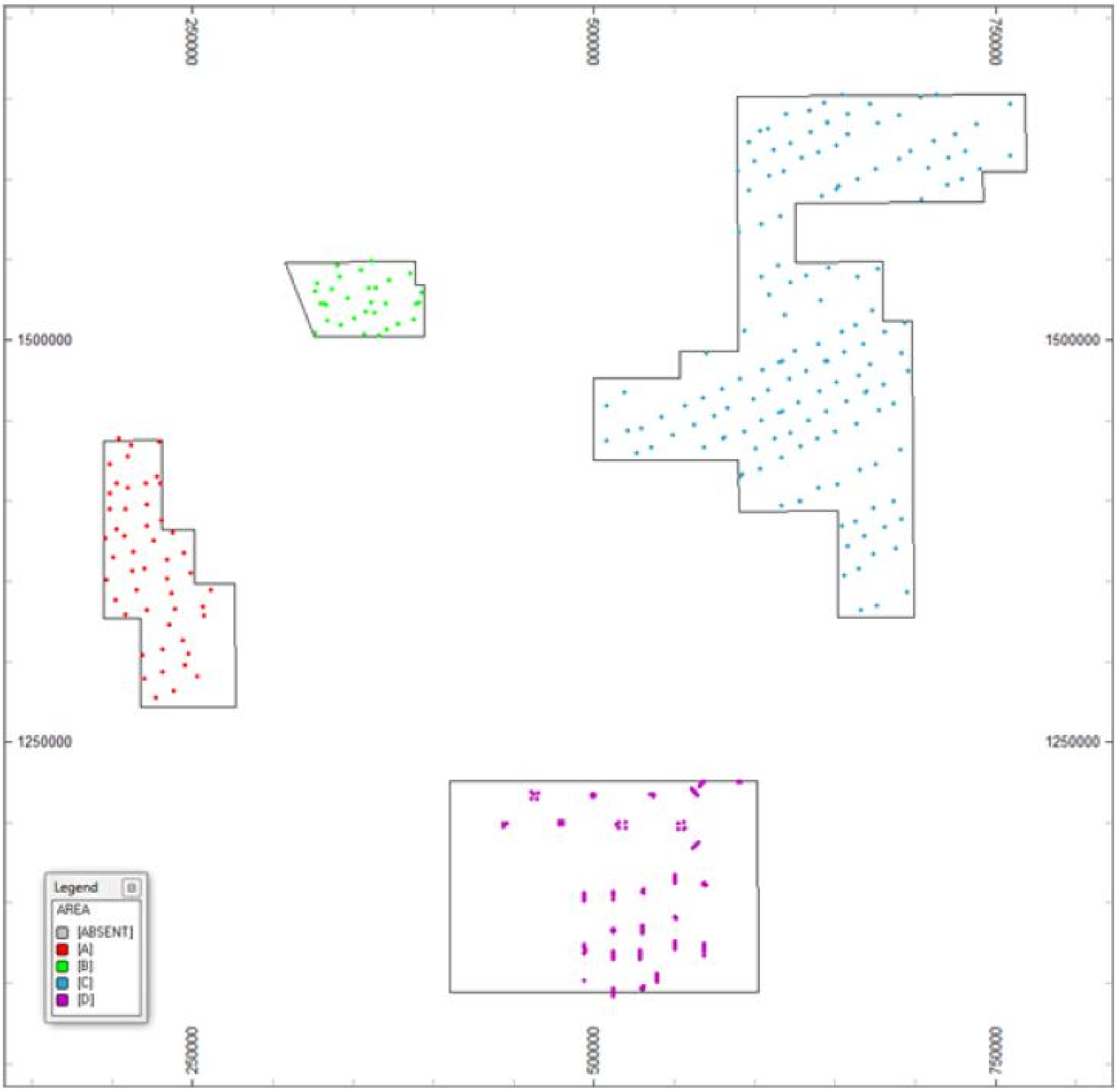
Table 11.1 Summary statistics of samples within the NORI Area used for the 2012 Mineral Resource estimate.

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min	Max	Mean	Var	CV	Median
Ni (%)	360	32	0.68	1.75	1.30	0.016	0.10	1.31
Co (%)	360	32	0.05	0.33	0.17	0.004	0.35	0.19
Cu (%)	360	32	0.40	1.50	1.10	0.028	0.15	1.13
Mn (%)	360	32	12.84	33.90	29.45	8.406	0.10	30.20
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	**392**	**0**	**0**	**52.2**	**11.9**	**64.303**	**0.67**	**12.00**

Source: Golder 2015. Var = variance; CV = coefficient of variation; Ni = nickel; Co = cobalt; Cu = copper; Mn = manganese

Latitude/longitude coordinates were converted to Universal Transverse Mercator Cartesian coordinate system (UTM) coordinates using WGS 84 datum. The minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for each of the NORI areas are listed in Table 11.2. To streamline the estimation process, the coordinates of the data in each area were modified to bring the data for the four areas closer together, so the Mineral Resources could be estimated in a single block model. A plan of the Area locations in transformed space is presented in Figure 11.1. The apparent distances between the Areas in this figure are not real distances.

Figure 11.1 NORI-A, B, C and D, showing location of historic data



Source: AMC

NB: NORI-A, B, C and D cover several UTM zones but were overlaid to facilitate modelling of all areas in one model. The apparent distances between the Areas in this figure are not real distances.

Table 11.2 Minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for NORI Areas

Area	Pioneer Contractor		UTM Easting	UTM Northing	UTM Zone
NORI-A	Yuzhmorgeologiya	Minimum	546318.6	1276704.2	8
		Maximum	612250.2	1438373.8	
NORI-B	Yuzhmorgeologiya	Minimum	627009.7	1502544.4	8
		Maximum	693143.2	1548239.6	
NORI-C	IOM	Minimum	508307.5	1651913.6	10
		Maximum	759829.0	1331443.7	
NORI Area D	AMR	Minimum	444252.3	1091225.8	11
		Maximum	**592471.8**	**1224898.2**	

Source: Golder 2015.Yuzhmorgeologiya = State Enterprise Yuzhmorgeologiya (Russian Federation). IOM = Inter Ocean Metal Joint Organisation; AMR = Arbeitsgemeinschaft Meerestechnisch Rohstoffe.

11.2.3 Declustering

Declustering was used to remove potential biases in statistics that can arise from variable sample spacing, which can arise from the multiple sampling at close locations as the ship undertakes its voyage.

Normal cell declustering without any boundaries can present issues where the edge cells become overweighted as the cell size is increased. A modified cell declustering algorithm was used that weights the cells to the block model volume within each cell. The process provides a declustering weight which is used to weight the univariate statistics (Table 11.3). For this method, the cell size was optimized for a square window size of 30 km and the origin offset 10 times.

Table 11.3 NORI-A, B, C and D declustered statistics (historic data only)

Variable	Samples	Min	Max	Mean	Var	CoV	Median
Ni (%)	360	0.68	1.75	1.29	0.021	0.11	1.32
Co (%)	360	0.05	0.33	0.19	0.003	0.27	0.20
Cu (%)	360	0.40	1.50	1.08	0.035	0.17	1.12
Mn (%)	360	12.84	33.90	28.91	10.524	0.11	29.81
Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	**392**	**0**	**52.20**	**11.57**	**66.736**	**0.71**	**11.00**

Source: Golder 2015 Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

11.2.4 Top-cuts

The Cov is very small for nodule abundance, nickel, copper, manganese, and cobalt, suggesting that the application of top-cuts is not necessary. However, due to the wide spacing of samples, a top-cut was applied to trim the high (99.5th percentile) values to reduce the likely impact of the high-grade outliers.

The presence of outliers (extreme values) and the need to apply "top-cut" values or "capping" (where samples above a certain threshold are assigned the top-cut value) to sample populations was assessed using a number of techniques:

- Examination of grade distributions using cumulative probability plots.
- Statistical assessment of the grade distributions.
- Examination of the spatial locations of identified outlier samples.

Top cuts defined in Table 11.4 are roughly equivalent to the 99.5th percentile of the mineralized samples and do not have a significant impact on the average grade. Application of top cuts reduced the mean only for manganese, which was reduced by a very low 0.2% of the uncut mean. This is simply because the grades within the CCZ are very consistent due to the deposit's hydrogenetic and diagenetic origin.

Table 11.4 NORI-A, B, C and D top cuts used for NORI 2012 Mineral Resource estimate

Variable	Top-Cut Value (%)
Ni	1.56
Co	0.31
Cu	1.46
Mn	33
Abundance	32

Source: Golder 2015

11.2.5 Spatial continuity

The samples with top-cuts applied were used for variogram analysis. Search parameters were generally as follows:

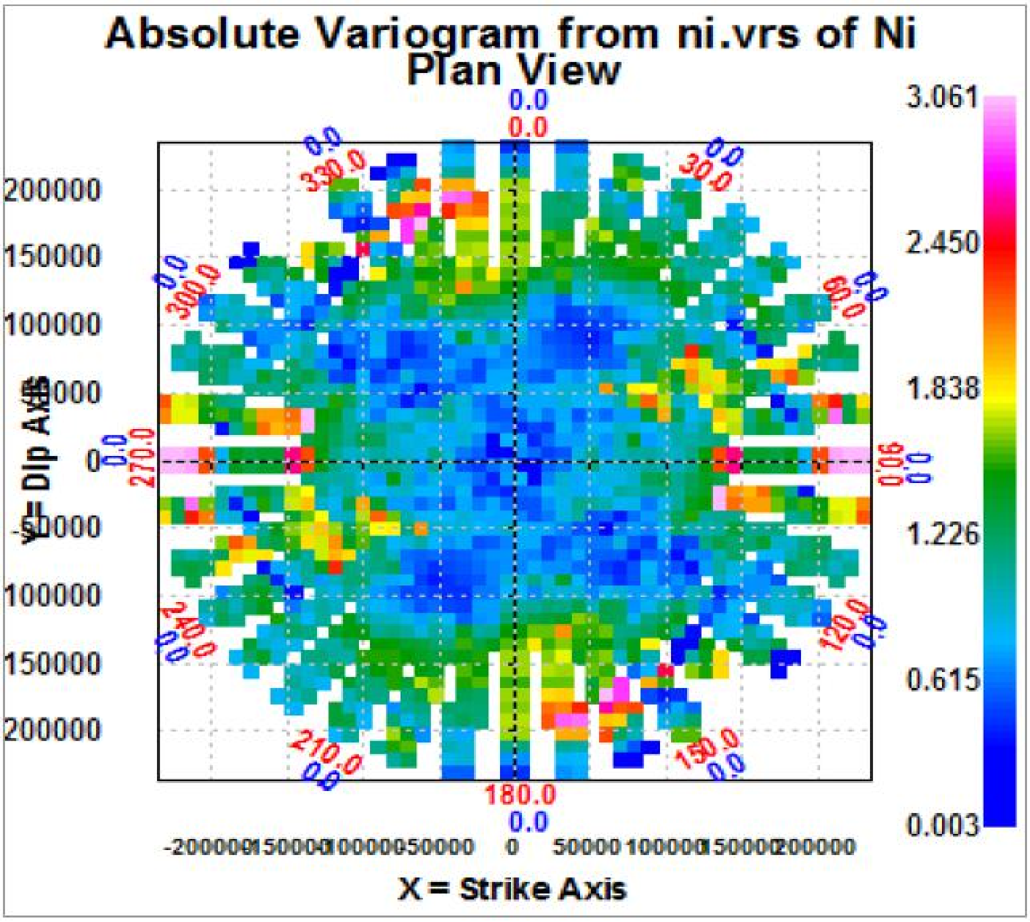
- Lag distance of 5 km.
- Horizontal search angle of 15°.
- Vertical search angle of 15°.
- Horizontal distance of 30 km.

Single structure Gaussian models with common nugget and incremental sill levels showed good structure and were used for all variogram modelling. The variograms were scaled to the population Var. Variogram maps were calculated for the purpose of determining direction of greatest continuity. The variogram map for nickel is shown as an example in Figure 11.2. Variogram models are presented in Table 11.5.

Table 11.5 Variogram models for NORI-A, B and C

Variable	Nugget	Sill	Range Along Strike(km)	Range Cross Strike(km)
Ni	0.2	0.8	20	20
Co	0.2	0.8	30	30
Cu	0.2	0.8	30	30
Mn	0.2	0.8	50	50
Abundance	0.2	0.8	30	30

Figure 11.2 Variogram map of nickel for NORI-A, B and C



Source: Golder 2015

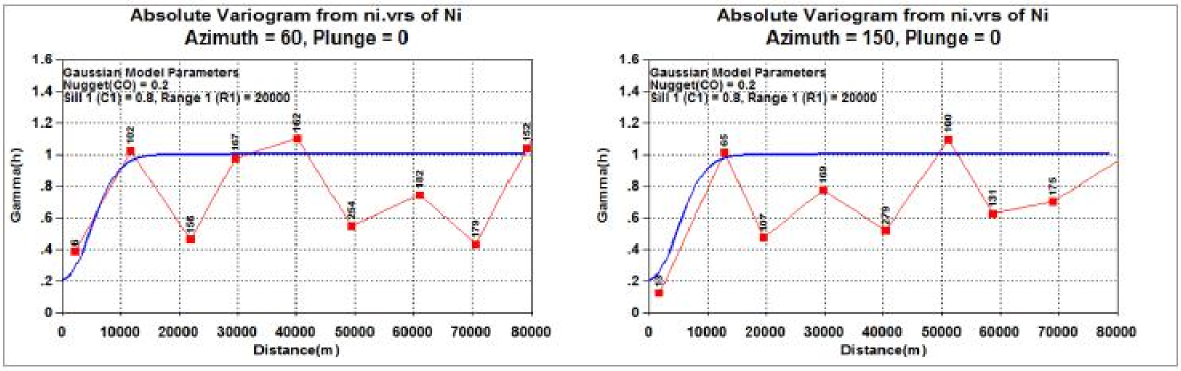
Where possible, similar values for the variogram model parameters for nickel, cobalt, copper, manganese, and abundance were chosen, to ensure relationships between the elements were respected implicitly during estimation and reflected in the resource estimate. Also, the same type of variogram model was fitted to the experimental variograms.

Gaussian variogram models were fitted to the experimental variograms. Typically, spherical models are sufficient for modelling the spatial continuity, but in this case the Gaussian model better fits the data. Gaussian models give greater weight to the very close samples (in the range of 0 to 5 km) and then rapidly decay to the sill compared with the spherical model. This fits in with the likely short-range variability possibly being controlled by the ridges, which are of the frequency of 3 to 5 km and oriented approximately north-northwest.

The directions of greatest continuity from the variogram maps are 060° and 150°, which are roughly parallel and orthogonal to the broad regional trend of the CCZ. Smaller scale local trends oriented parallel with ridges are not visible in the wide-spaced data. The long-range experimental variograms for abundance are erratic with an almost nugget model.

Major and semi-major variograms for nickel are shown in Figure 11.3.

Figure 11.3 Major and semi-major variograms for nickel



Source: Golder 2015. Red line is actual data and blue line is modelled curve

11.2.6 Geological block model

The block model was built using the framework defined in Table 11.6 and with additional block attributes listed in Table 11.7. A vertical block size of 1 m was used, essentially creating a two-dimensional model. The 1 m thickness is simply to give the blocks a default value. The tonnage of nodules in each block was estimated from the surface area of the block multiplied by the abundance (kg/m^2) estimate. Parent blocks were split into sub-blocks at the Contract Area boundaries to improve resolution.

The total area of the block model, including NORI Area D is 74,840 km^2 which is 100.01% of the actual total area of the NORI Area of 74,830 km^2. This indicates that the sub-blocks provided satisfactory resolution for estimating the Contract Area boundaries.

Table 11.6 NORI-A, B and C block model framework (UTM coordinates)

	Easting	Northing	Elevation
Model origin (m)	195000	1093000	–0.5
Model limit (m)	775000	1653000	0.5
Model extent (m)	580000	560000	1
Parent block dimensions (m)	10000	10000	1
Number of parent blocks	58	56	1
Minimum sub-block size	500	500	1

Table 11.7 NORI-A, B and C model variables

Variable	Type	Description
Area	alphanumeric	Contract Area (A to D)
Ni	numeric	Estimated Ni weight % value
Co	numeric	Estimated Co weight % value
Cu	numeric	Estimated Cu weight % value
Mn	numeric	Estimated Mn weight % value
Abundance	numeric	Estimated nodule abundance wet kg/m^2

11.2.7 Mineral Resource estimation

Ordinary kriging (OK) was used to estimate nickel, cobalt, copper, manganese, and abundance in the block model. Grades were estimated on a parent block basis using block discretization of 3 by 3 by 1. Grades were also estimated using inverse distance weighting (IDW) to the power of 2 and nearest neighbor estimation (NN) for validation of the Ordinary kriging – an estimation method utilizing distance-weighted local averages (OK) estimates.

To ensure that all blocks in the model had values for nickel, cobalt, copper, manganese, and abundance, a three-pass elliptical search strategy was used for selecting the neighboring samples for estimation. Dimensions of the search ellipse radii were based on the ranges of the variogram models and average sample spacing. The search pass ellipse radii that were used are:

- PASS 1: 30 km by 30 km.
- PASS 2: 60 km by 60 km (pass 1 expanded by a factor of 2).
- PASS 3: 90 km by 90 km (pass 1 expanded by a factor of 3).

A minimum of 1 and a maximum of 8 samples were allowed per octant for each search pass, with a minimum of 4 and maximum of 32 samples per estimate. The required minimum number of samples per estimate was relaxed to 1 sample for the third search pass. The relatively large number of samples used in the estimate will ensure the estimates are smoothed for this early stage of evaluation.

To complete the block estimates and avoid potential issues for missing grades the third and final search passes used large search radius to ensure most relevant blocks were assigned estimated grades. This ensured that nearly all mineralized blocks were assigned estimates. Any remaining unassigned grades were set to 0.01% for nickel, cobalt, and copper, and to 26.86% for manganese.

The Mineral Resource model was validated by comparing the global mean and Vr of the model against alternative nearest neighbor and inverse distance weighting estimates and the declustered samples. The mean grades compare favorably and the expected Vr reduction is observed, indicating that the estimate is satisfactory.

11.2.8 Mineral Resource classification

Mineral Resource classification was done on the basis of the quality and uncertainty with the sample data. Accordingly, NORI-A, B and C are considered to have sufficient data and continuity to warrant Inferred Mineral Resource classification in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300).

In the Qualified Person’s opinion, the Mineral Resources have reasonable prospects of economic extraction. No fatal flaws have been identified. It is reasonable to expect that, with further engineering design and testwork, the technical and economic factors relevant to the collection of nodules and the extraction of nickel, cobalt, copper and manganese products from the nodules can be resolved. Accordingly, it is the Qualified Person’s opinion that all issues relating to all relevant technical and economic factors likely to influence the prospect of economic extraction can be resolved with further work.

11.3 Estimation process for TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F

Estimation of tonnage and grade for TOML-A, B, C, D, E, and F was undertaken in 2016. The estimates are based on the historical BC and free fall-grab nodule sampling (262 samples) supplemented with TOML box cores (113 samples) and photo-profile data (20,857 frames over 587 line km). Only sample data within the TOML Area was used to inform the estimates. Further details are presented in the technical report summary titled “Technical Report Summary--TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for Deep Green Metals Inc.” (the “TOML Technical Report”), with an effective date of March 26, 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021b).

The modelling methodology used for estimating the Mineral Resource was determined through careful consideration of the scale of deposit, geological mechanism and controls behind nodule formation and nature of the sampling method. The approach involved estimating nodule abundance and grades into a two-dimensional block model. abundance, in wet kg/m^2, was used for calculating tonnage. abundance and grades were estimated using OK. The OK estimates were validated using IDW and Nearest neighbour estimation method (NN) estimates.

11.3.1 Geological domains

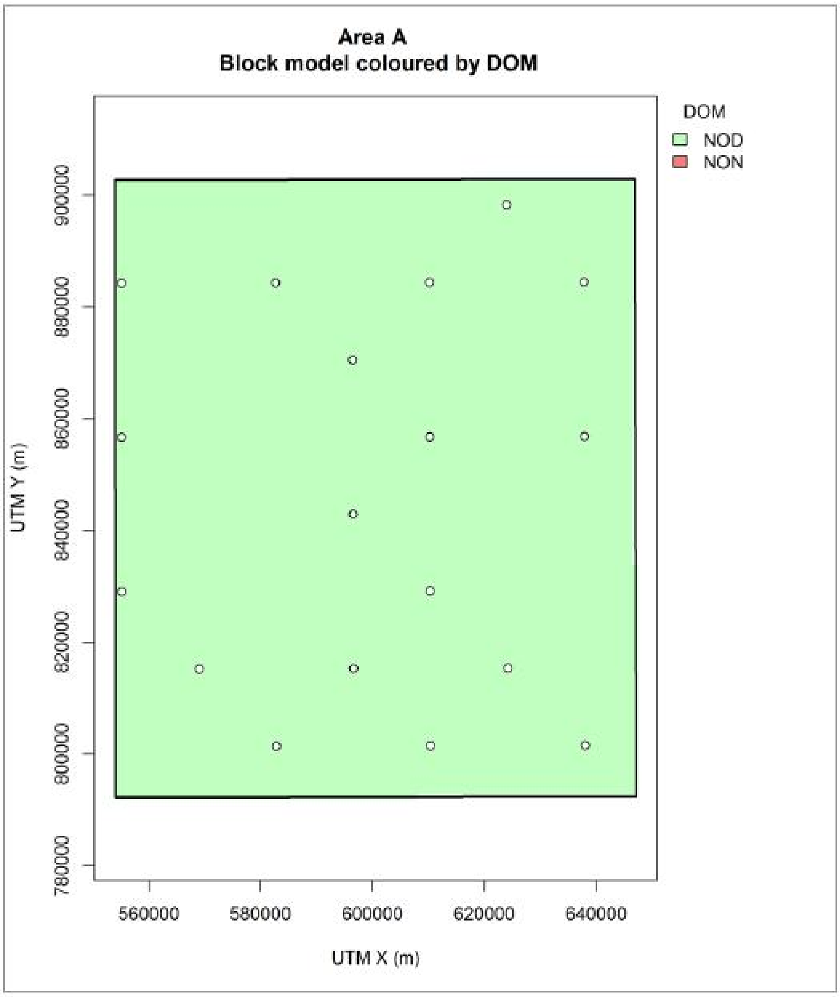
The entire TOML Area falls within the regional abyssal hill domain. Based on interpretation of the GEBCO bathymetry data from the ISA, and TOML’s own bathymetry, less than 2% of the TOML Area is covered by isolated sea mounts. Within the TOML Area there are small, disconnected zones where there are no polymetallic nodules present or the polymetallic nodule abundance is very low. These zones are controlled by local geology (presence of basalt or carbonate ooze) and bathymetry.

The TOML Area was split into two domains. Areas with polymetallic nodules and areas predominately without polymetallic nodules. The MBES bathymetry and the backscatter data was used to interpret the parts of TOML-B through F with no polymetallic nodules. For the Mineral Resource estimate two broad domains were interpreted from the data. These are:

1. NOD – polymetallic nodule domain. This domain exists almost everywhere and extends beyond the boundaries of the TOML Areas.
2. NON – areas with no or low nodule abundance of polymetallic nodules. This domain includes areas covered with soft sediment, seamounts and areas with basalt. Nodule abundance in the NON areas was set to zero in the block model. It was not defined in TOML-A as that area has not been surveyed by MBES.

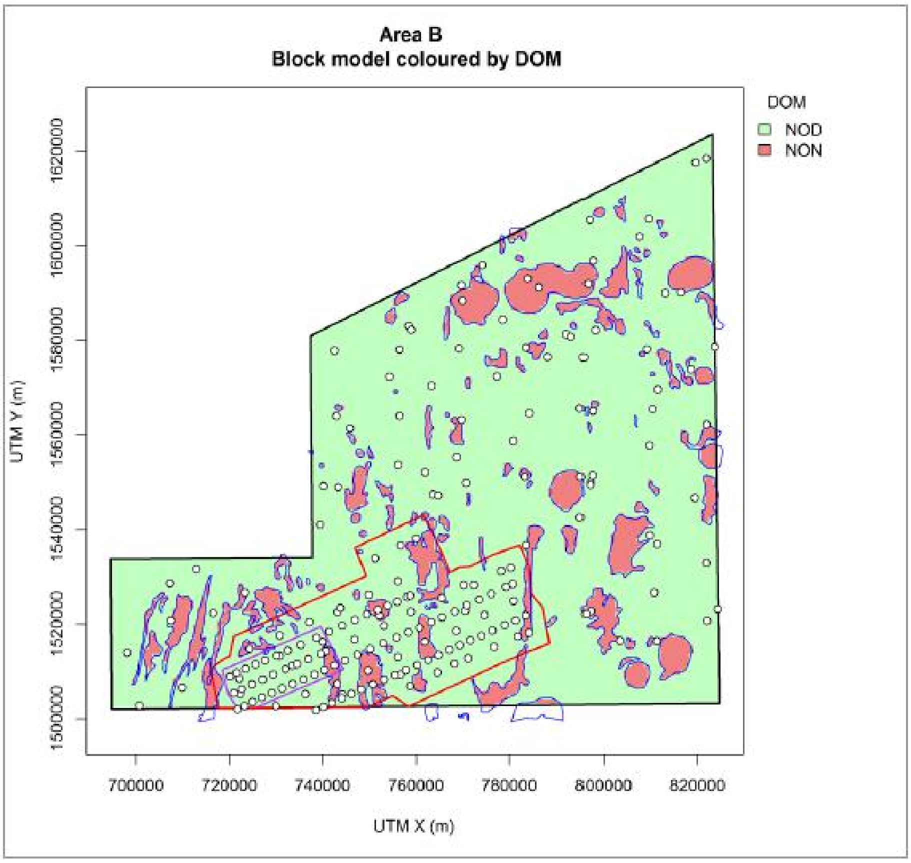
Figure 11.4 through to Figure 11.8 show the geological domains in the TOML Contract Areas used for the Mineral Resource estimate. Sample locations are indicated by white circles.

Figure 11.4 TOML-A interpreted geological domains



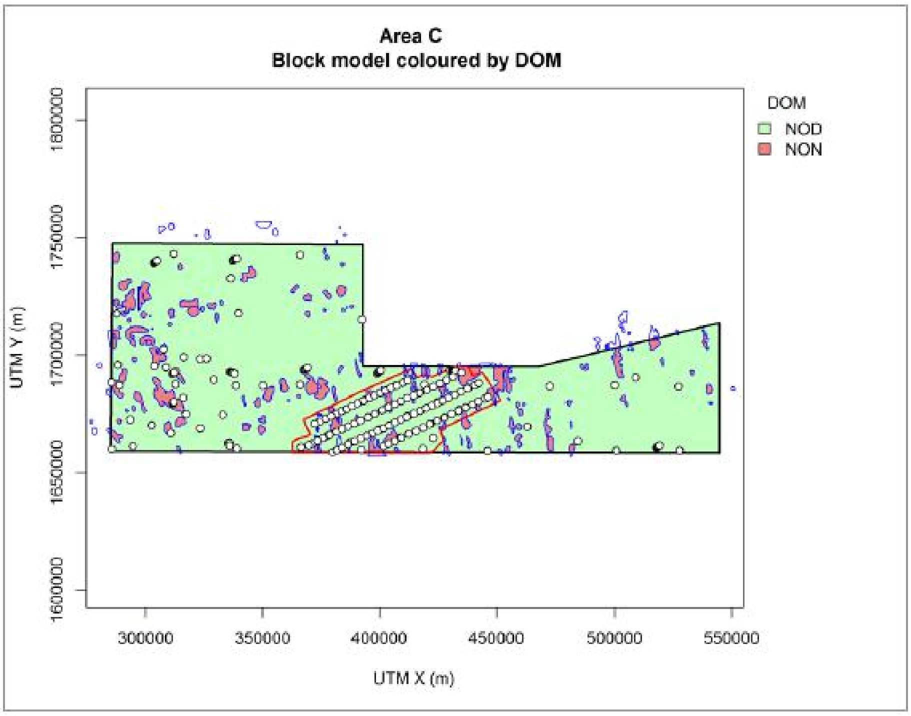
Source: TMC

Figure 11.5 TOML-B interpreted geological domains



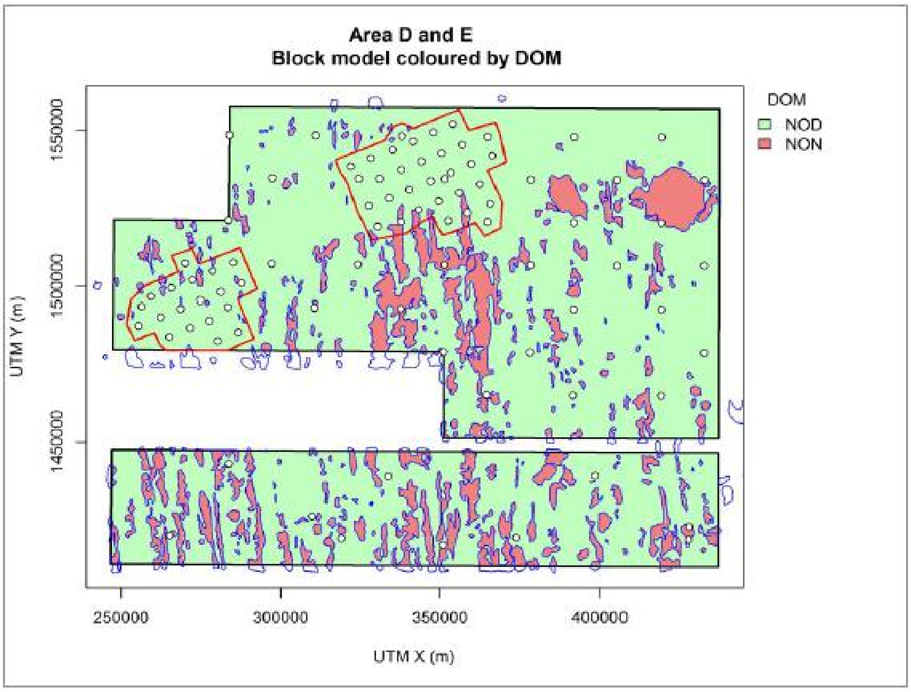
Source: TMC

Figure 11.6 TOML-C interpreted geological domains



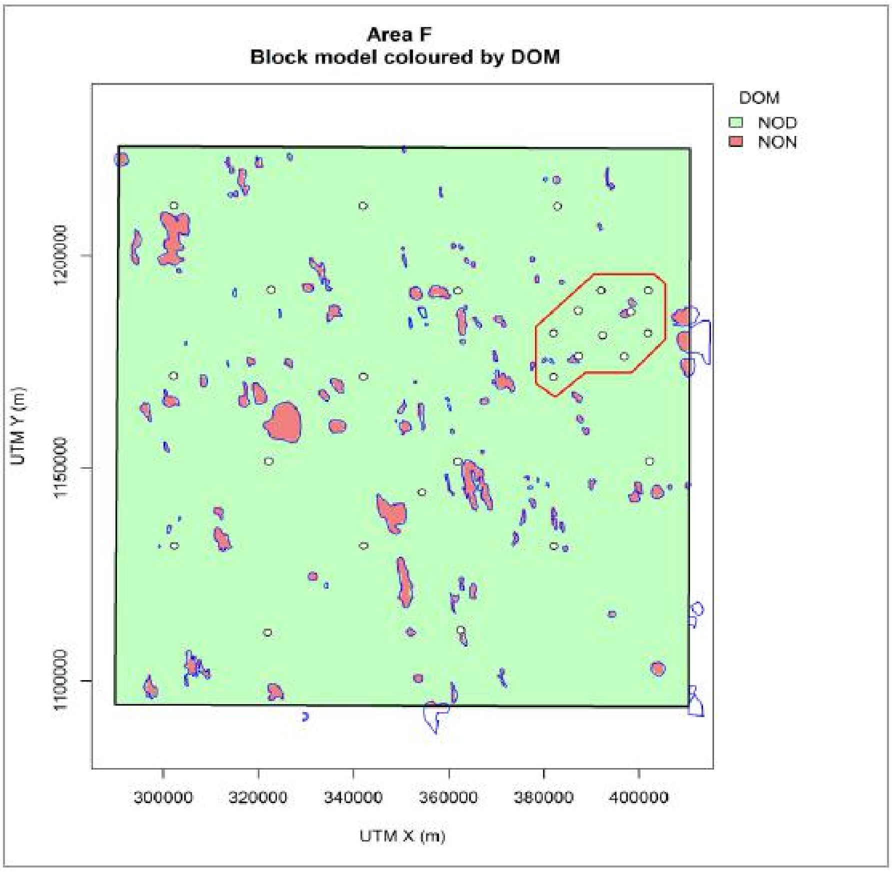
Source: TMC

Figure 11.7 TOML-D and E interpreted geological domains



Source: TMC

Figure 11.8 TOML-F interpreted geological domains



Source: TMC

11.3.2 Nodule sample data

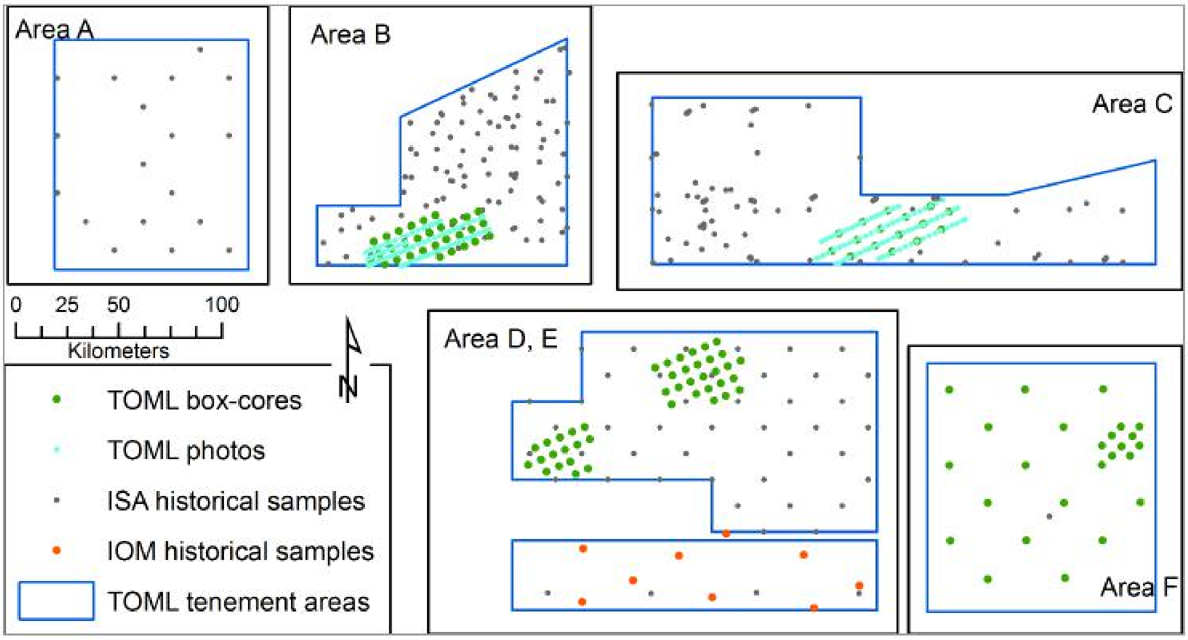
Box core and free fall grab sampling data from the Pioneer Contractors was initially provided to TOML by the ISA. This data included samples for TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F (Figure 11.9). An additional eight samples within TOML-E were provided by IOM. The data were provided in comma delimited format. The historical polymetallic nodule sample data consists of 2,211 records of which only 268 of the nodule samples fall within the TOML Area.

Polymetallic nodule samples were collected during the TOML 2015 campaign within the TOML-B, C, D, and F. A total of 104 BC samples were collected, sampled and assayed.

A separate data set containing the nodule abundance for 113 TOML BC samples and calculated abundance for 536 sea floor photos was provided by TOML. The calculated abundance was derived from every 100th photo of the TOML 2015 sea floor photo-profiling, providing an average spacing of 2.7 km between photo observation points. The photos were processed manually by measuring the long axis of every nodule within the photo or within a subset of the photo. This enabled an accurate estimate of the nodule abundance in each photo.

The spatial coordinates of the data were in digital latitude and longitude. For spatial modelling and Mineral Resource estimation the coordinates were transformed into (UTM) using the World Geodetic System (WGS 84) spatial reference system. Table 11.8 lists the minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for each TOML Area.

Figure 11.9 Location of the historical sample data provided by the ISA and IOM and the TOML data



Source: TMC

Table 11.8 Minimum and maximum UTM coordinates for each TOML Area

TOML Area	Easting		Northing		UTM Zone
	Min (m)	Max (m)	Min (m)	Max (m)	
A	553 976.1	647 191.3	792 205.9	902 969.6	5
B	694 523.4	824 684.8	1 502 007	1 623 606	8
C	284 947.0	544 795.5	1 658 368	1 747 831	9
D	247 296.3	437 027.2	1 451 032	1 557 860	10
E	246 691.9	436 798.9	1 409 560	1 447 514	10
F	289 837.4	410 806.1	1 093 913	1 225 830	11

The Pioneer Contractor and TOML data were combined into a single data set and checked for anomalous or erroneous values. The zero assay values in the historical data represent absent data and were reset to absent value where abundance was recorded as zero, and to 0.01 where abundance was greater than zero.

11.3.3 Sample statistics

The descriptive statistics of the nodule sample data are listed in Table 11.9 to Table 11.13. Comparison of the Pioneer Contractor samples within the TOML Area (Table 11.11) and the TOML BC samples (Table 11.12) indicate slightly higher mean grades for abundance, Mn, Ni and Cu, and slightly lower Co for the TOML samples.

Table 11.9 Statistics of all samples within the TOML Areas

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min (%)	Max (%)	Mean (%)	Var	CoV	Median
Abundance	527	9	0	30.77	9.50	43.088	0.69	8.79
Mn	338	198	6.54	33.79	27.91	13.426	0.13	28.9
Ni	338	198	0.33	1.55	1.26	0.034	0.15	1.31
Cu	338	198	0.22	1.51	1.09	0.046	0.2	1.16
Co	338	198	0.02	0.35	0.23	0.002	0.21	0.23

Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Declustering weights were calculated and applied to the nodule sample data to assess the potential bias in the descriptive statistics that can arise from clustering of sample data. Table 11.10 lists the declustered nodule descriptive statistics for all samples within the TOML Contract Area. Declustering the data resulted in a slight increase in the mean of abundance, but no significant change for Mn, Cu and Co indicating that the statistics are not significantly affected by clustering.

Table 11.10 Declustered statistics of all nodule samples within TOML Area

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min (%)	Max (%)	Mean (%)	Var	CoV	Median
Abundance	527	9	0	30.77	10.20	39.35	0.61	9.16
Mn	338	198	6.54	33.79	28.09	10.414	0.11	28.71
Ni	338	198	0.33	1.55	1.26	0.03	0.14	1.31
Cu	338	198	0.22	1.51	1.11	0.045	0.19	1.16
Co	338	198	0.02	0.35	0.22	0.003	0.24	0.22

Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Table 11.11 Statistics of Pioneer Contractor samples within the TOML Areas

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min (%)	Max (%)	Mean (%)	Var	CoV	Median
Abundance	253	9	0.03	26.0	8.82	27.134	0.59	8.09
Mn	234	28	10.3	32.4	26.88	11.097	0.12	27.67
Ni	234	28	0.53	1.51	1.22	0.034	0.15	1.27
Cu	234	28	0.4	1.51	1.06	0.053	0.22	1.13
Co	234	28	0.02	0.35	0.24	0.002	0.18	0.24

Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Table 11.12 Statistics of TOML samples within the TOML Areas

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min (%)	Max (%)	Mean (%)	Var	CoV	Median
Abundance	113	0	0.0	29.13	12.23	66.384	0.67	12.6
Mn	104	9	6.54	33.79	30.23	11.006	0.11	30.84
Ni	104	9	0.33	1.55	1.34	0.025	0.12	1.37
Cu	104	9	0.22	1.43	1.18	0.019	0.12	1.2
Co	104	9	0.08	0.31	0.21	0.003	0.24	0.22

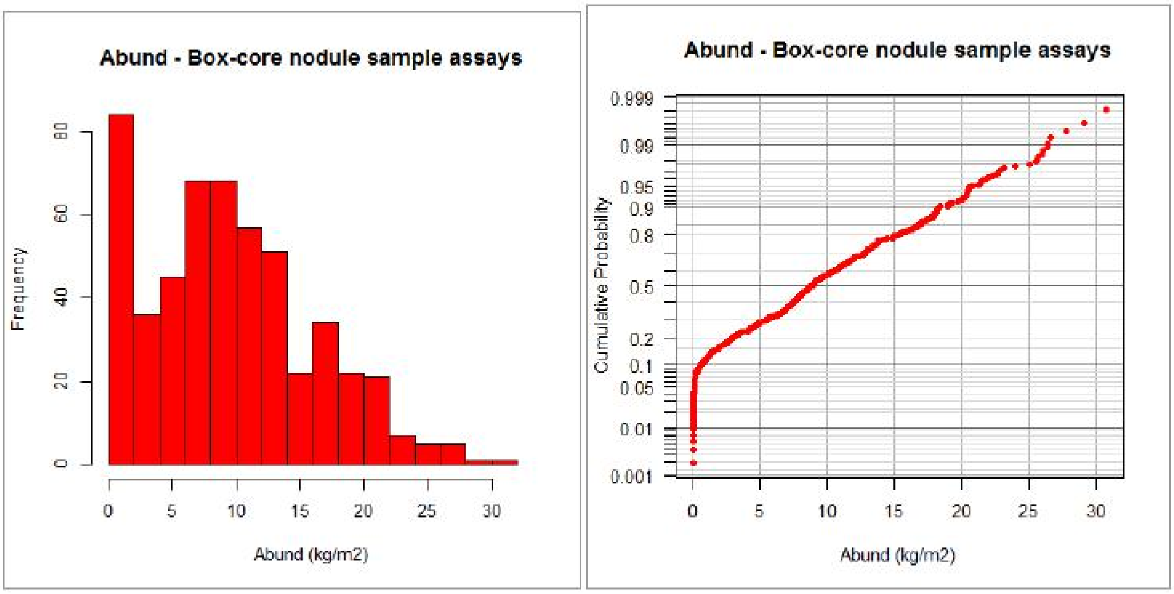
Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Table 11.13 Statistics of TOML LAE samples within the TOML Areas

Variable	Samples	Missing	Min (%)	Max (%)	Mean (%)	Var	CoV	Median
Abundance	161	0	0	30.77	8.65	45.745	0.78	8.78

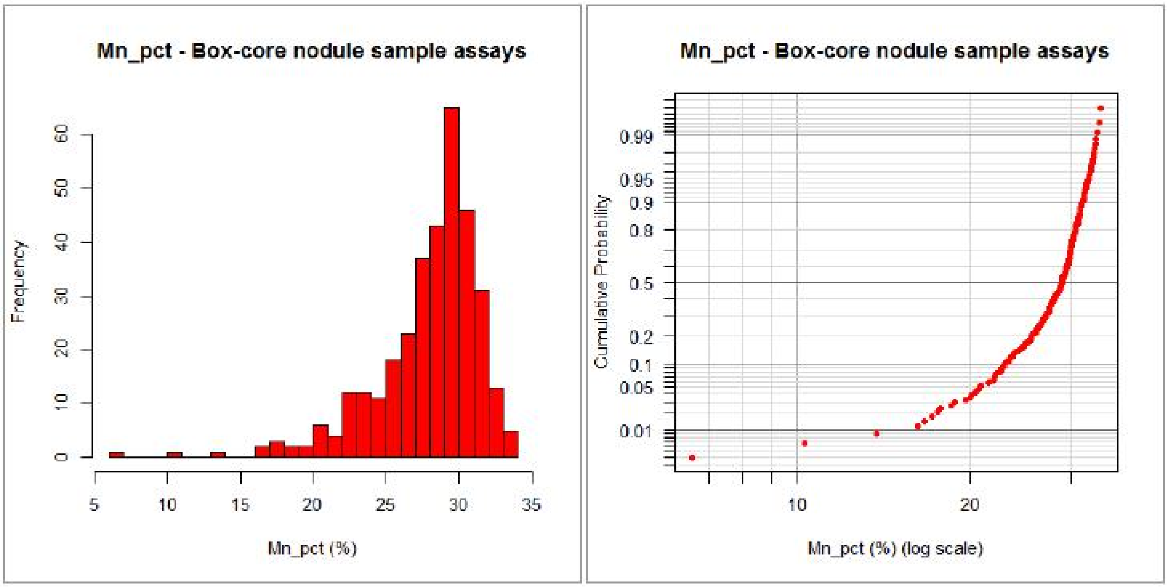
Var = variance; CoV = coefficient of variation

Figure 11.10 Histogram and log-probability plot of abundance for all samples within TOML Areas



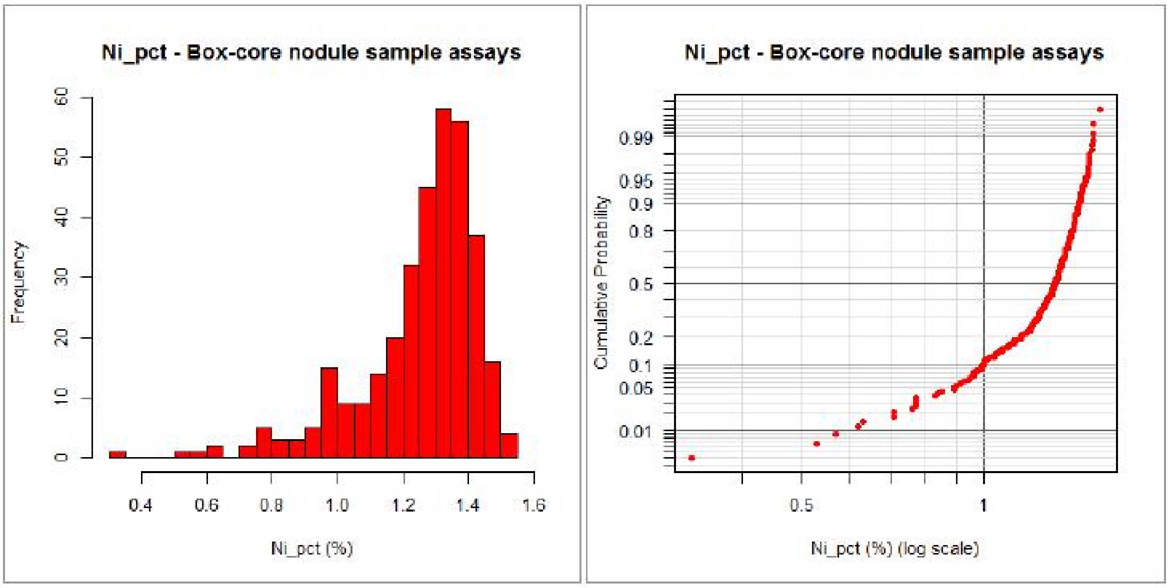
Source: TMC

Figure 11.11 Histogram and log-probability plot of Mn for all samples within TOML Areas



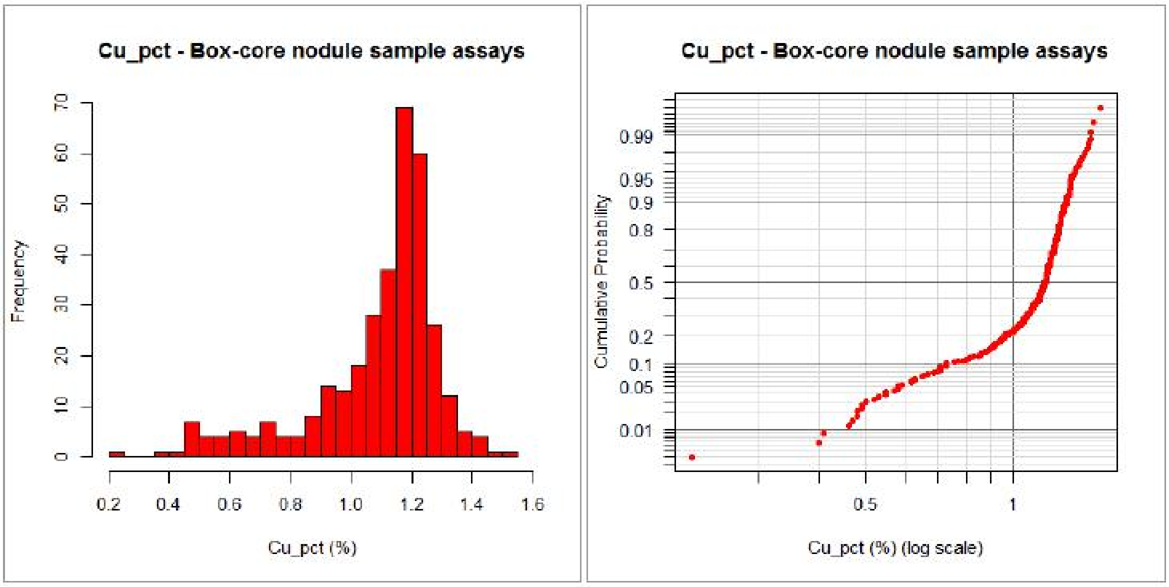
Source: TMC

Figure 11.12 Histogram and log-probability plot of Ni for all samples within TOML Areas



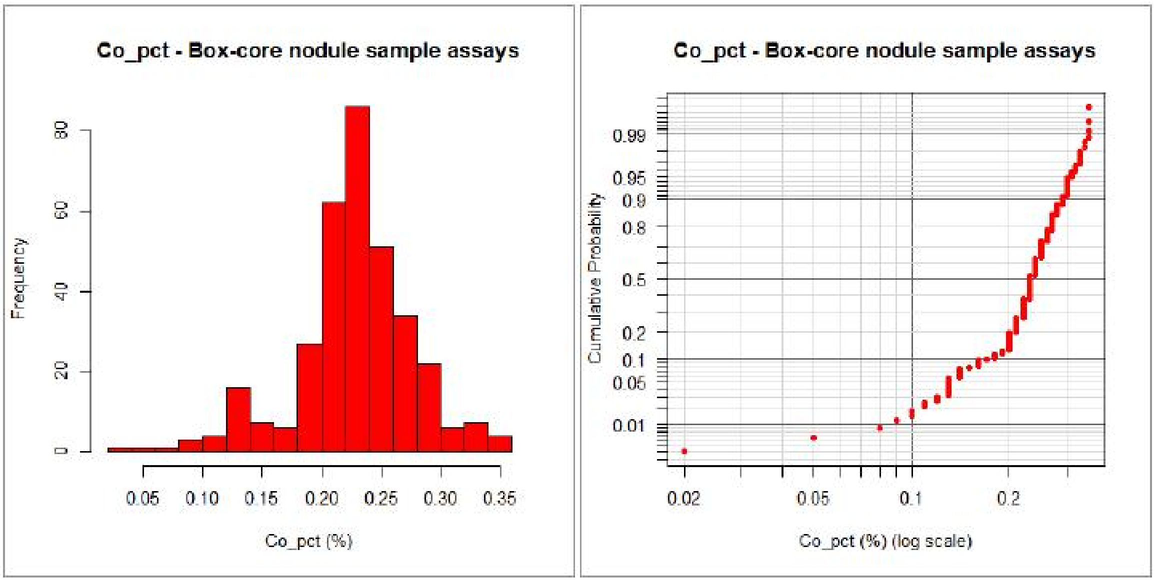
Source: TMC

Figure 11.13 Histogram and log-probability plot of Cu for all samples within TOML Areas



Source: TMC

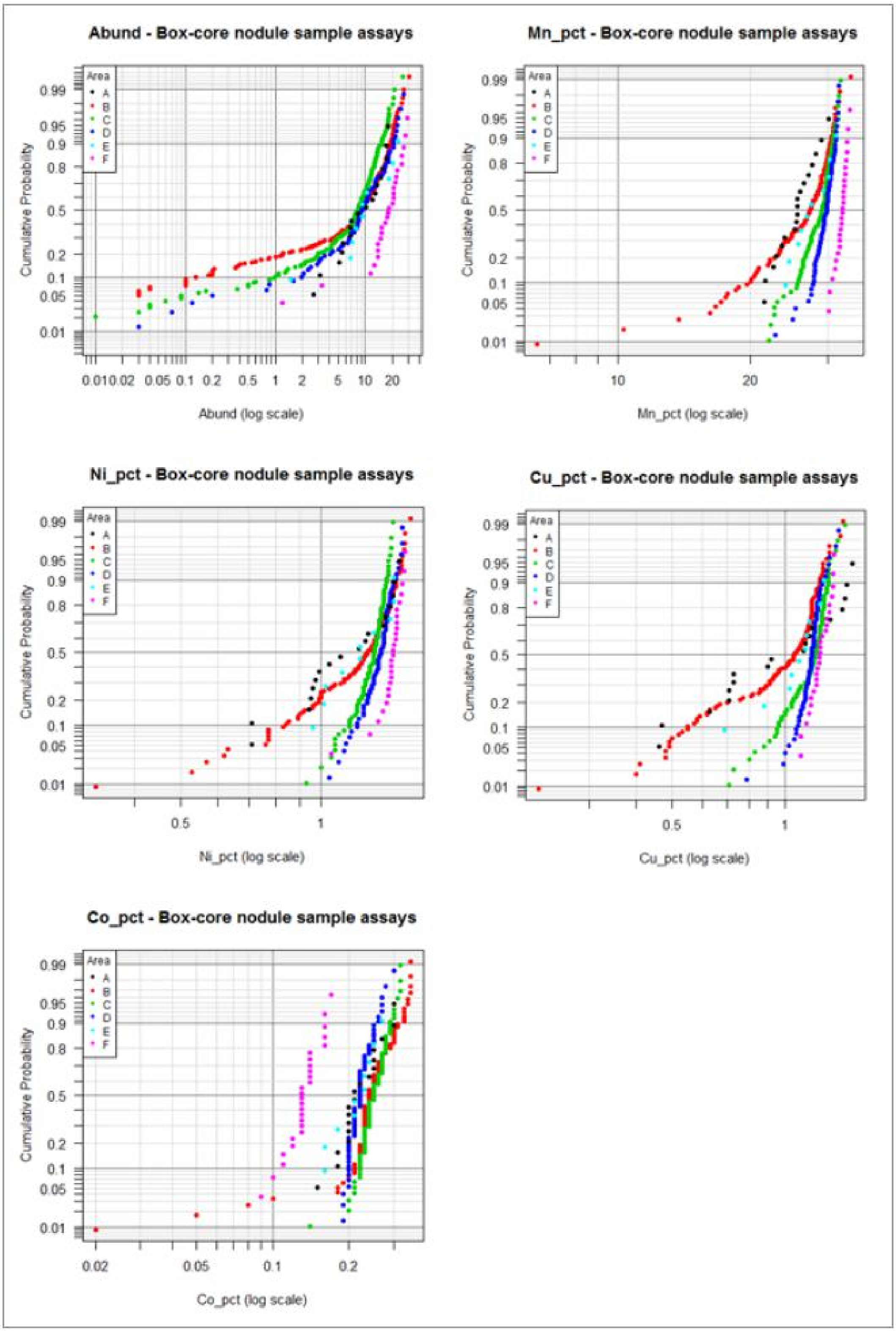
Figure 11.14 Histogram and log-probability plot of Co for all samples within TOML Areas



Source: TMC

The log-probability plots (Figure 11.15) for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co by TOML Area indicate variations in the grade distributions between the areas, as is expected from the ISA maps shown in Section 6.4. The distributions for Ni and Cu for samples in TOML-A, B and E are different than the samples in TOML-C, D and F. This feature is also present in the full CCZ data set and is interpreted to be due to regional-scale geological differences. Nodule samples from TOML-F show significantly lower Co than samples from all the other areas while Mn shows a gradual increase from TOML-A and B through to TOML-F.

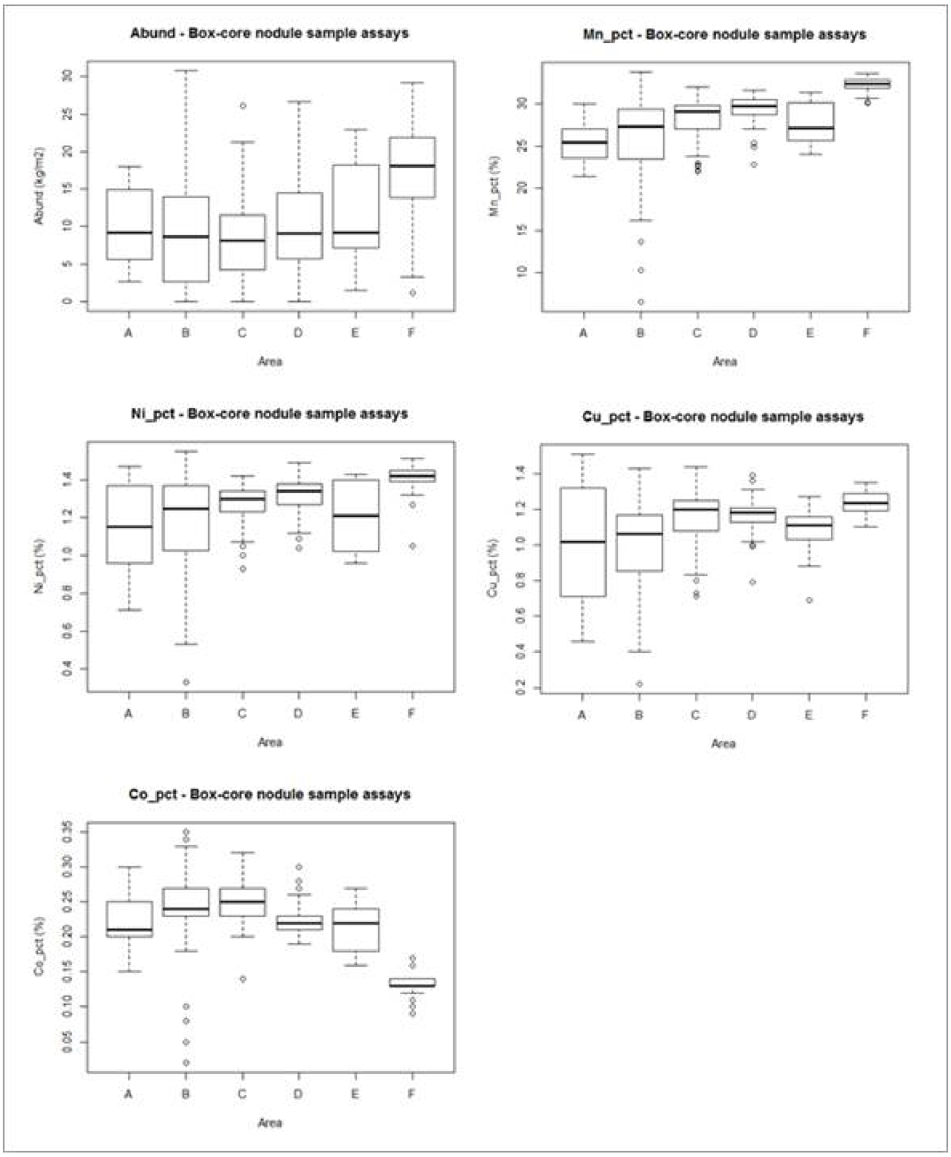
Figure 11.15 Log-probability plots for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co by TOML Areas



Source: TMC

Box plots provided in Figure 11.16 clarify the differences in assays between TOML Contract Areas. These plots also reveal that the Var in Ni and Cu is higher for TOML-A and B than the other areas. Also, TOML-E shows higher Ni Var similar to TOML-A and B. TOML-F appears to have anomalously high Mn with a much lower Var than all other areas. TOML-F appears to also have higher median Ni and Cu and significantly lower Co values.

Figure 11.16 Box plots for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co by TOML Areas



Source: TMC

The coefficients of variation for nodule abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co are very small, suggesting that the application of top-cuts is not necessary. Also, the approximate natural limits for absorption of the Ni (~6.02%), Cu (~8.03) and Co (~6.60%) metals, suggested in the study by Novikov and Bogdanova (2007), are significantly higher than the maximum values (Ni=1.55%, Cu=1.51%, Co=0.35%) in the data. This suggests that all the Ni, Cu and Co values are within natural limits. The presence of outliers (or 'extreme' values) was assessed by examining the summary statistics and probability plots. No outliers were detected. Top cuts were not applied to the data prior to grade estimation.

11.3.4 Representativeness of sampling

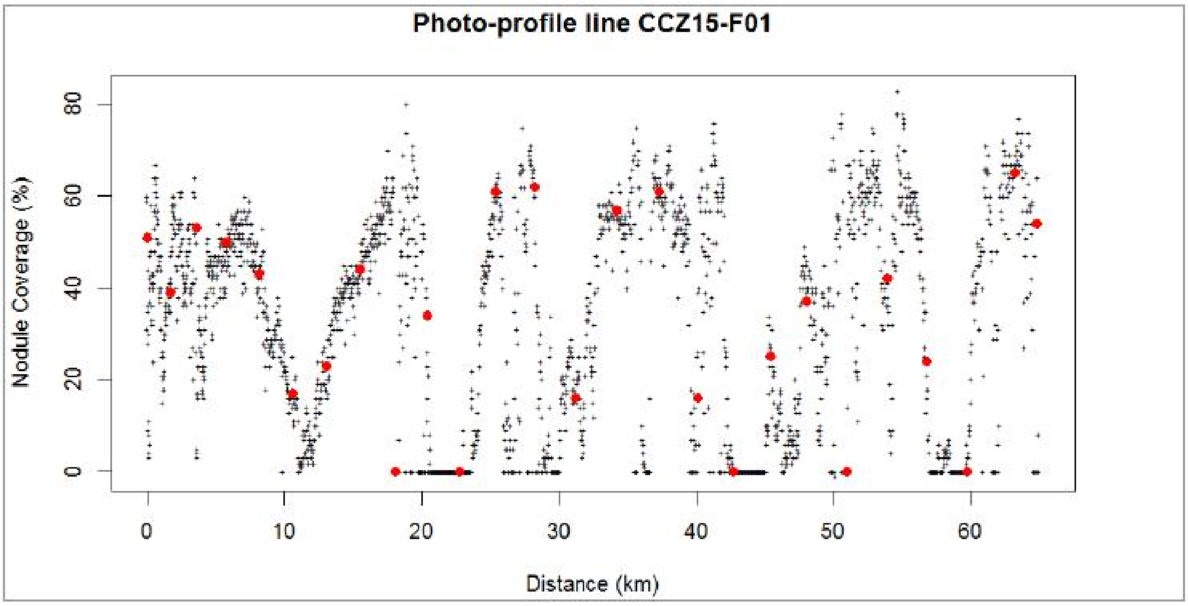
Box core sampling by TOML in 2015 confirmed the presence of nodules at similar grade and abundance to the wider spaced sampling by Pioneer Contractors.

The representativeness of the sampling with respect to the abundance of nodules and continuity across the seafloor was examined using sea floor photographs. TOML collected continuous sea floor photo profiles along three (3) lines in TOML-B1 and four (4) lines in TOML-C. From these photos it is possible to derive the nodule coverage (%) using automated image processing techniques.

The percent nodule coverage is the amount of image pixels identified as nodules divided by the total number of pixels in the photo. It is also possible to use the LAE method for determining nodule abundance. Figure 11.17 shows the nodule coverage for one of the lines that cross the TOML sub-area B1. These plots show the presence of nodules between BC locations. The average distance between each photo is approximately 25 m and ranges from 5 m to 79 m.

Figure 11.17 also shows the location of the images from which abundance was estimated using the LAE method. Nodule coverage estimated from the sea floor photos shows a positive correlation with nodule abundance from LAE (Figure 11.18).

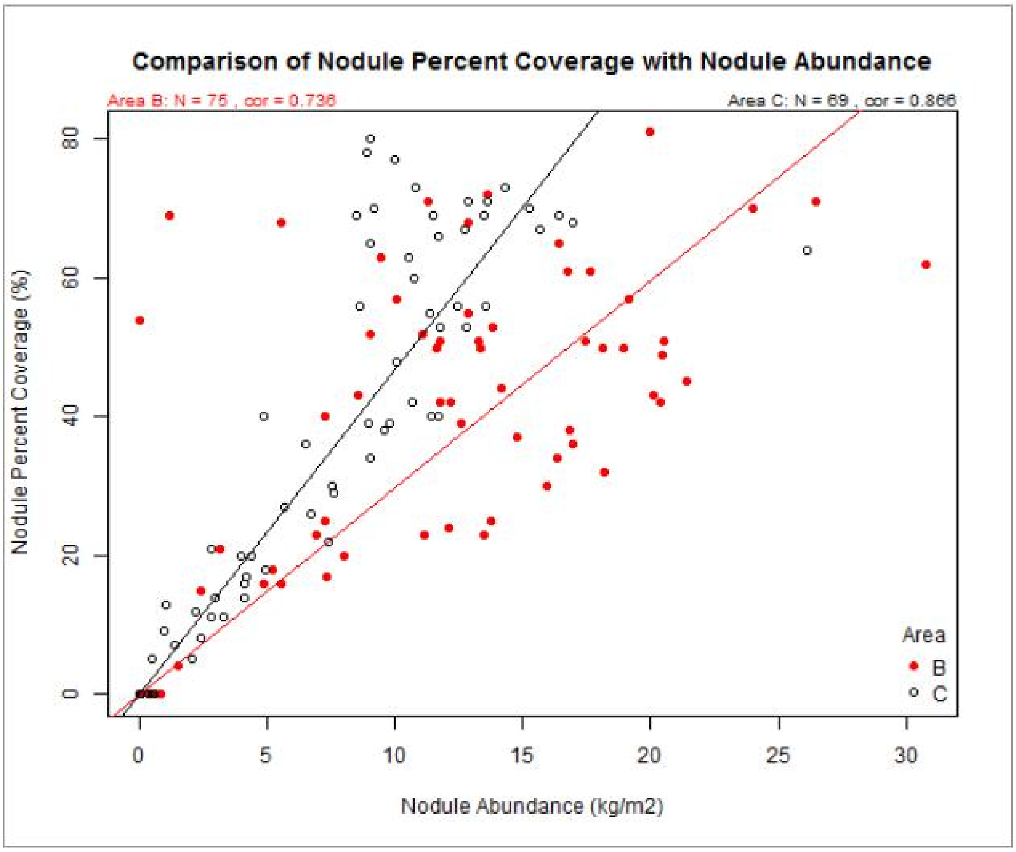
Figure 11.17 Photo-profile line CCZ15-F01 that crosses TOML-B1



Source: TMC

Red dots – nodule coverage for seafloor photos which were used in the manual estimate of abundance using the long-axis estimation method and used in the Mineral Resource estimate. Black dots – nodule abundance for all other seafloor photos.

Figure 11.18 Comparison of nodule coverage against nodule abundance



Source: TMC

There is also very good agreement between the nodule abundance estimated from automated analysis of the seafloor photos and the nodule abundance estimated from manual measurement of the nodule long-axis (Figure 11.19).

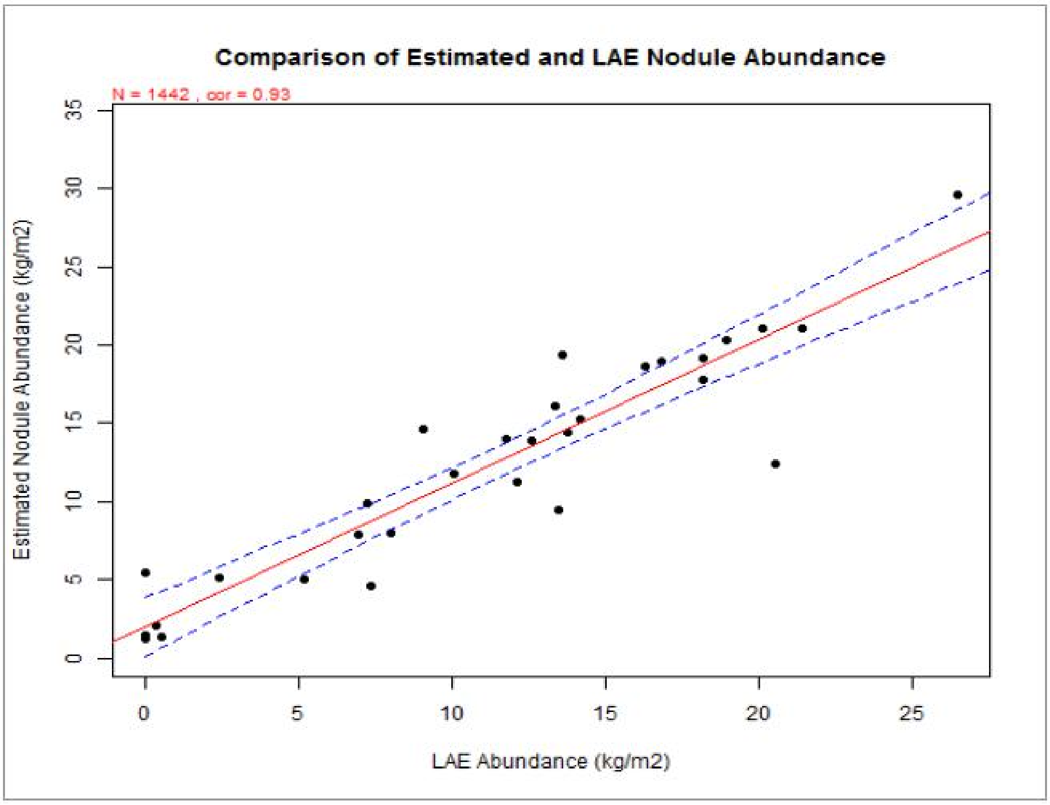
Figure 11.20 to Figure 11.22 show plots of the nodule abundance estimated from the seafloor photos. Note that the distance between each photo is approximately 30 m. The plots show that, notwithstanding short scale fluctuations, abundance varies gradually in a structured manner over many kilometers.

Polymetallic nodule grades (Table 11.9) within the CCZ have very low coefficients of variation which indicate a low risk in estimating grades and that ordinary kriging is an appropriate technique to use for estimation. The dredge sampling program conducted by TOML on polymetallic nodules during their 2013 campaign, included analysis of multiple individual nodules taken from each dredge sample. It confirmed the very low Var in the nodule grades at the local scale.

Variograms of the polymetallic nodule grades of Mn, Ni, Cu and Co within the TOML Area show reasonable spatial continuity with ranges greater than the average sample spacing. The long variogram ranges for the nodule grades reflect the very large-scale diffuse distribution of metals within the ocean water column and that the manganese acts like a sponge absorbing the metals. The variogram for abundance, on the other hand, has significantly shorter ranges. This reflects the mechanism of nodule formation and the less continuous distribution of nodules.

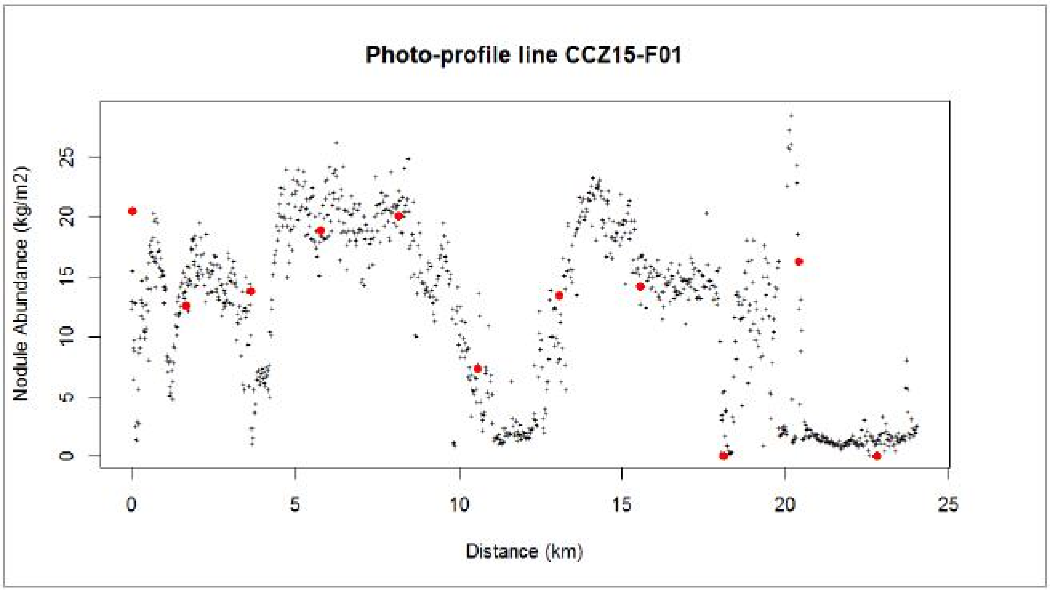
The Qualified Person considers that the BC and free fall grab sample spacing within the TOML-A to F are sufficient to demonstrate continuity of Mn, Ni, Cu and Co. The addition of photo profiling enables confidence in the continuity of nodule abundance.

Figure 11.19 Comparison of nodule abundance estimated from photos against nodule abundance estimated manually using the LAE method



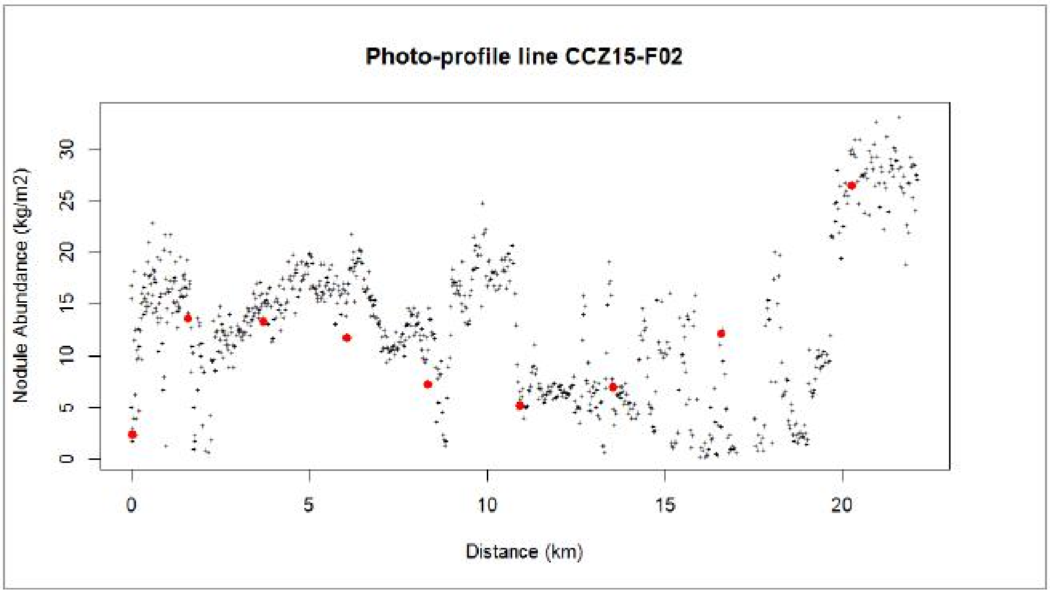
Source: TMC. Note: The red line is the fitted linear regression. The blue dashed lines are the 95% confidence intervals for the linear regression model.

Figure 11.20 Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F01 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource



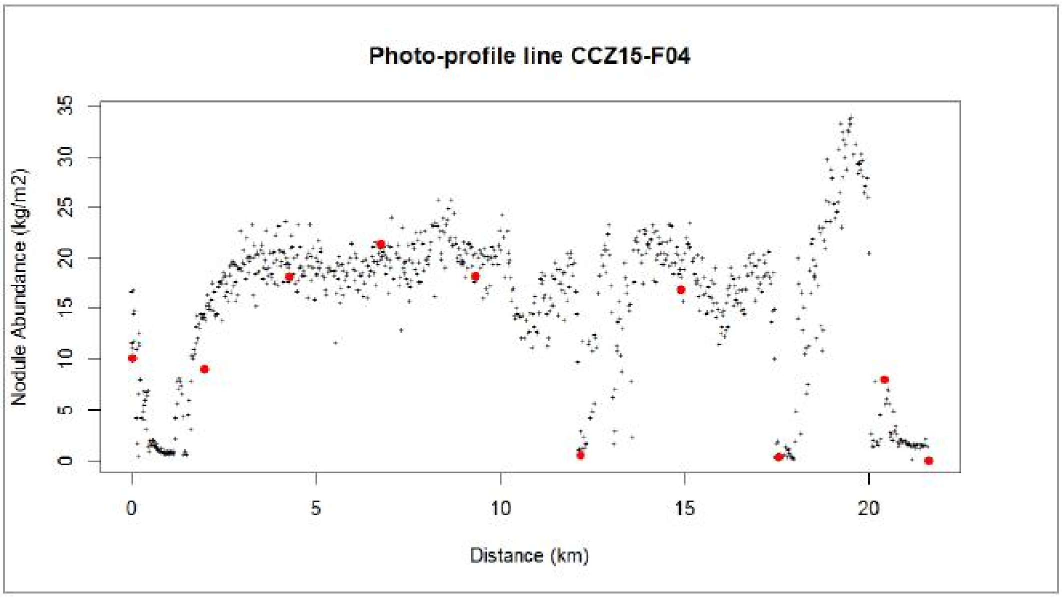
Source: TMC. Note: Red dots – nodule coverage for seafloor photos which were used in the manual estimate of abundance using the long-axis estimation method and used in the Mineral Resource estimate. Black dots – nodule abundance for all other seafloor photos.

Figure 11.21 Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F02 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource



Source: TMC. Note: Red dots – nodule coverage for seafloor photos which were used in the manual estimate of abundance using the long-axis estimation method and used in the Mineral Resource estimate. Black dots – nodule abundance for all other seafloor photos.

Figure 11.22 Nodule abundance photo-profile line CCZ15-F04 that crosses sub-area B1 Measured Mineral Resource



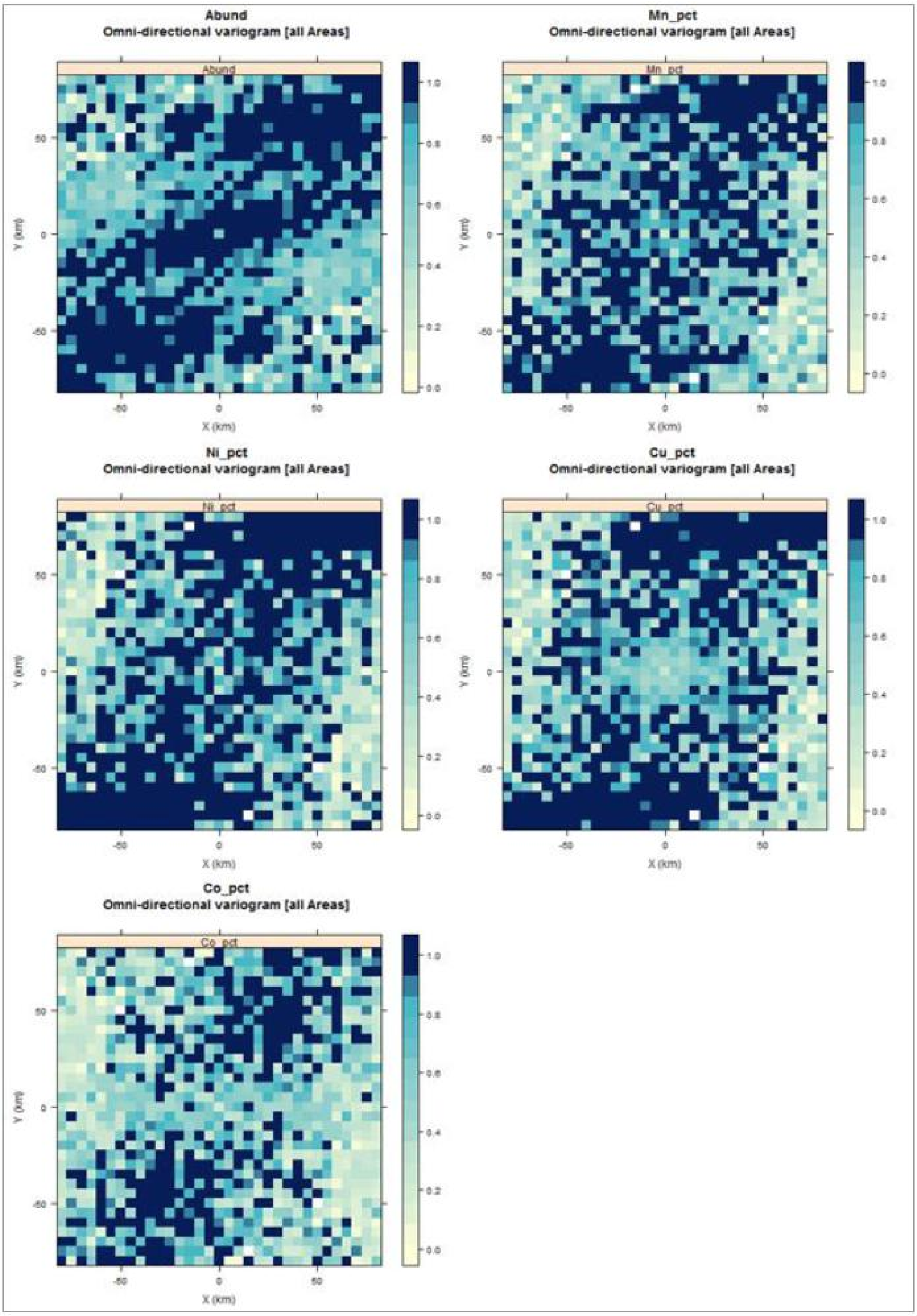
Source: TMC. Note: Red dots – nodule coverage for seafloor photos which were used in the manual estimate of abundance using the long-axis estimation method and used in the Mineral Resource estimate.

Black dots – nodule abundance for all other seafloor photos.

11.3.5 Spatial continuity

All nodule samples (historical BC and free fall-grabs, TOML BC and photos) within the TOML Contract Area were combined and used for analysis of spatial continuity. The experimental semi-variograms were scaled to the population Var. Variogram maps (Figure 11.23) were calculated for the purpose of determining the direction of greatest continuity.

Figure 11.23 Semi-variogram maps for abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co



Source: TMC

Spherical semi-variogram models were fitted to the experimental variograms using two structures (Figure 11.24 to Source: TMC

Figure 11.28, Table 11.14). Where possible, consistent parameters were used between the fitted variogram models for each direction and each of the variables. This was done to ensure element relationships or correlations evident between samples are respected implicitly during estimation and reflected in the resource estimate. Also, the same type of variogram model was fitted to the experimental semi-variograms.

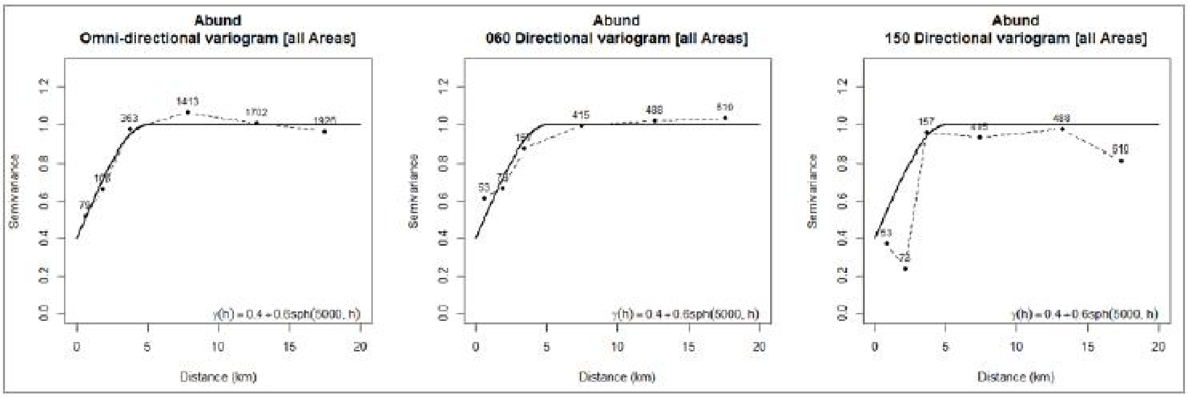
The directions of greatest continuity deduced from the variogram maps appear to be approximately 150° and 060°. Abundance and Cu show no anisotropy in the variogram ranges while Mn and Ni appear to show greater continuity in the 150° direction and Co shows greater continuity in the 060° direction. The 060° direction is roughly parallel to the broad regional trend of the CCZ and the 150° direction is parallel to the abyssal hills. Smaller scale local trends oriented parallel with bathymetry ridges are not visible in the wide spaced data.

The variogram models listed in Table 11.14 were used in estimating the values for nodule abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co.

Table 11.14 Variogram models

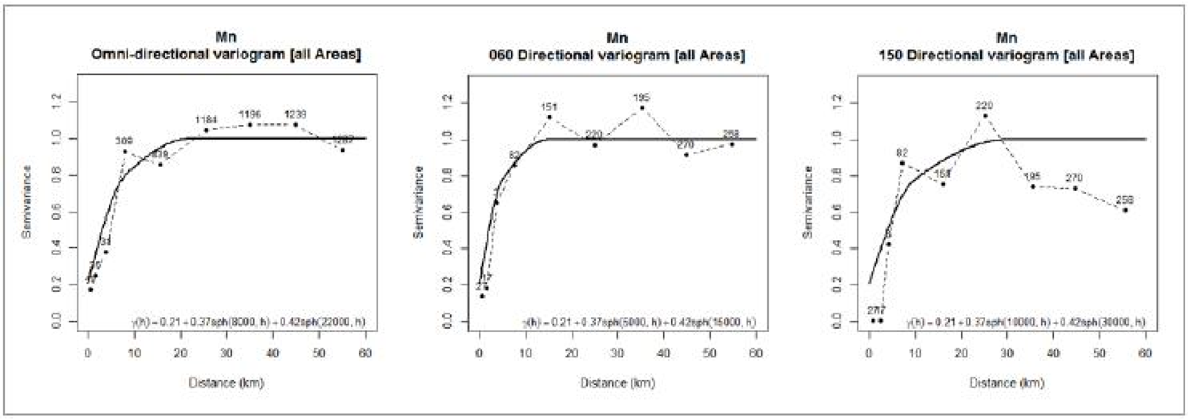
Variable	Nugget	Spherical Structure 1			Spherical Structure 2			Anisotropy Ratio
	C0	C1	Range H1		C2	Range H2		
			060º (km)	150º (km)		060º (km)	150º (km)	
Abundance	0.40	0.60	5	5	–	–	–	1.0
Mn	0.21	0.37	5	10	0.42	15	30	0.5
Ni	0.21	0.37	5	10	0.42	15	30	0.5
Cu	0.21	0.37	22	22	0.42	70	70	1.0
Co	0.21	0.37	22	16	0.42	70	50	0.714

Figure 11.24 Abundance omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms



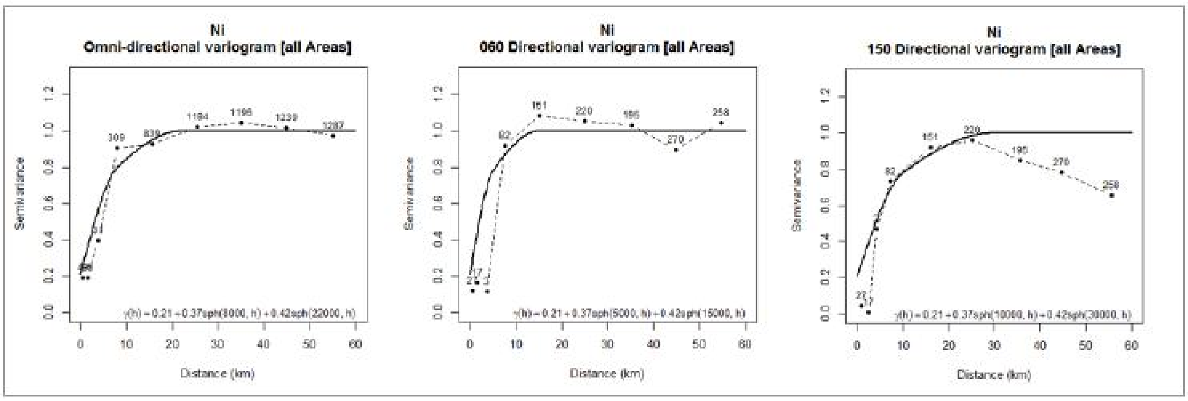
Source: TMC

Figure 11.25 Mn omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms



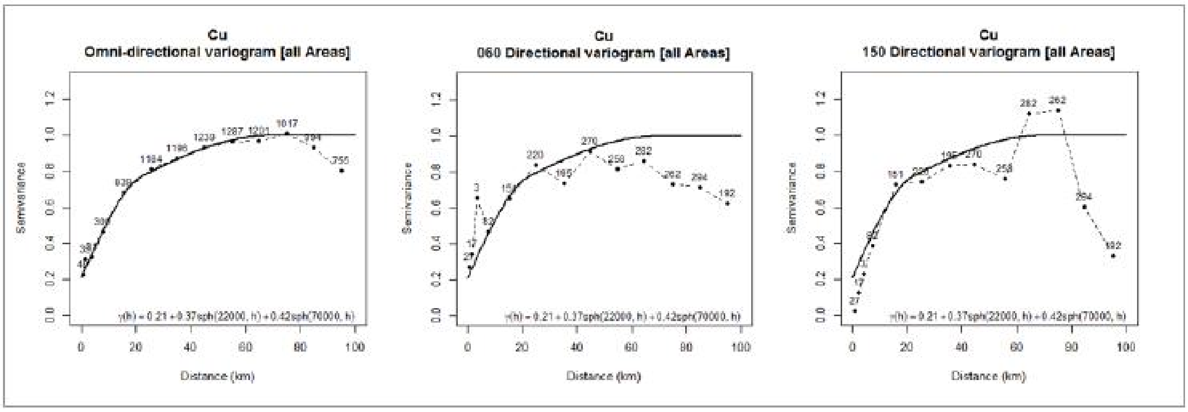
Source: TMC

Figure 11.26 Ni omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms



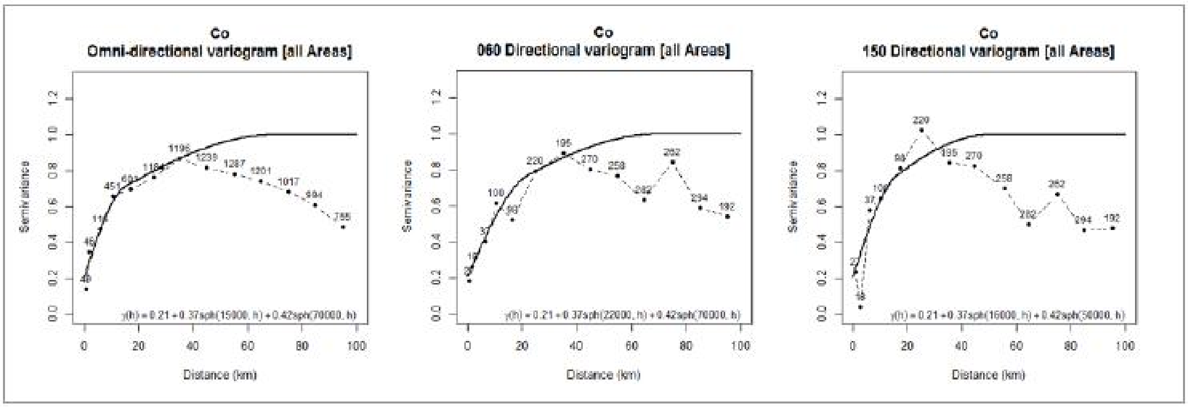
Source: TMC

Figure 11.27 Cu omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms



Source: TMC

Figure 11.28 Co omni-directional, 060° and 150° directional variograms



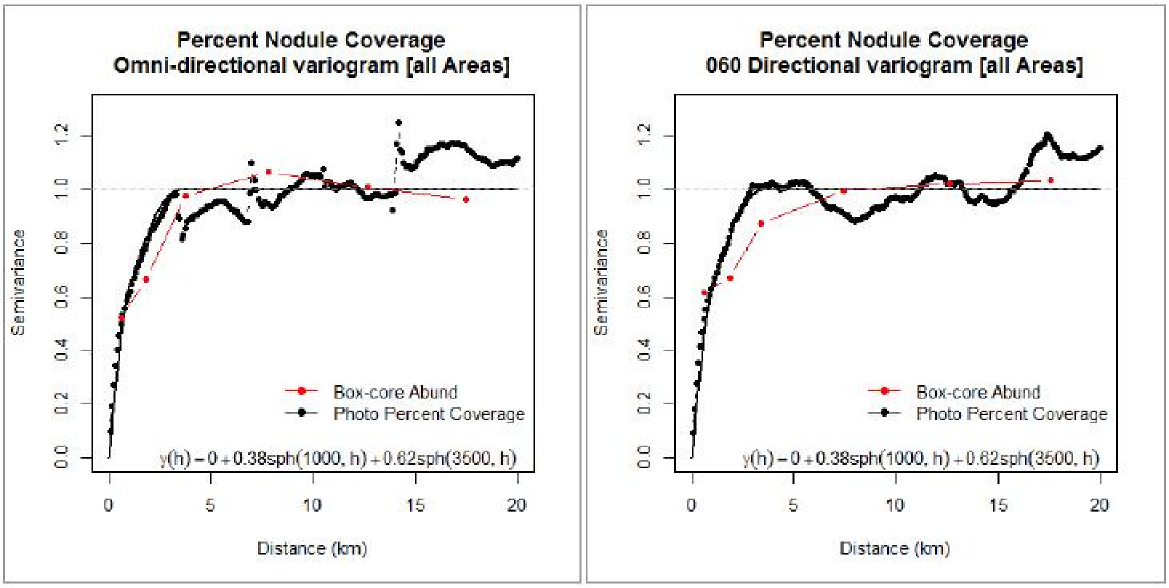
Source: TMC

11.3.6 Variography of nodule coverage estimated from photo profiles

The continuity of nodule abundance as measured by the abundance variograms was checked by using the photo profile data.

The omni-directional and 060˚ directional variograms (Figure 11.29) for the nodule coverage (%) estimated from the sea floor photos are similar to the variograms of abundance calculated from the physical samples. The range of nodule coverage is slightly shorter than the range of the abundance calculated from the physical samples. The large number of close spaced photos allows for a better estimate of the very short-range spatial variability and nugget. The periodic fluctuations evident in the sill at ranges of approximately 7.5 km and 15 km could be related to the spacing between the abyssal hills.

Figure 11.29 Omni-directional and 060° directional variograms for nodule coverage estimated from sea floor photos



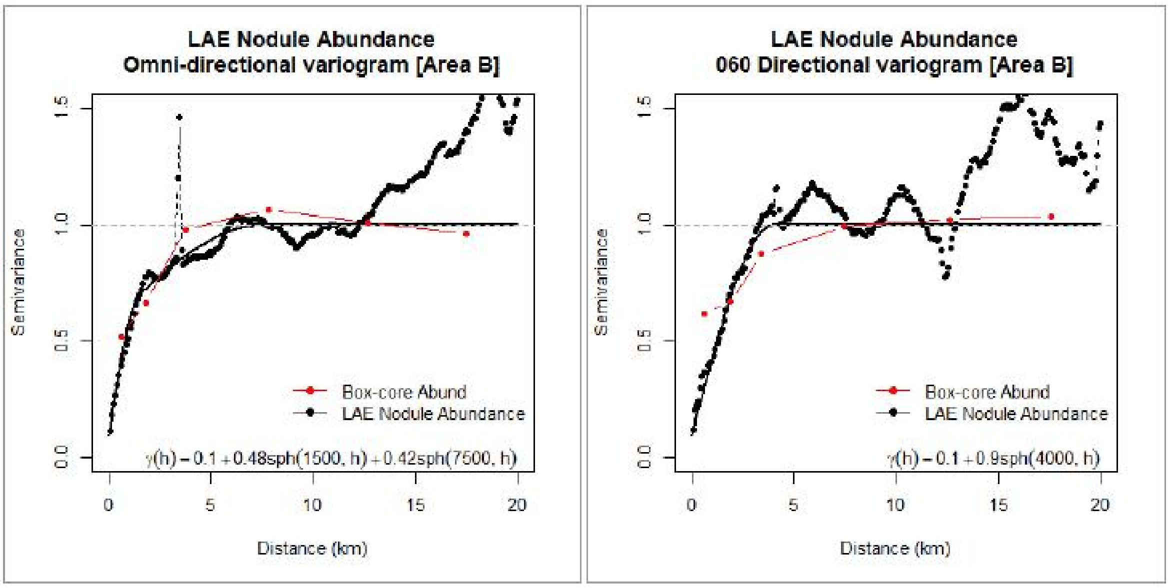
Source: TMC

11.3.7 Variography of nodule abundance estimated from photo profiles

The nodule abundance estimates derived from the seafloor photos using the LAE method were used to check the continuity of nodule abundance and compared with the variograms from the physical sample data.

Compared with the nodule coverage variograms (Figure 11.29), the LAE nodule abundance omni-directional variograms (Figure 11.30) show a slightly longer range of 7,500 m. The same periodic fluctuations evident in the nodule coverage variograms are also present in the 060° directional variogram while the omni-directional variogram hints at the presence of a long-range trend in the data. The omni-directional variogram is very similar to the nodule sample variogram but again shows a very low nugget Var.

Figure 11.30 Omni-directional and 060° directional variograms for nodule abundance estimated using the LAE method from sea floor photos

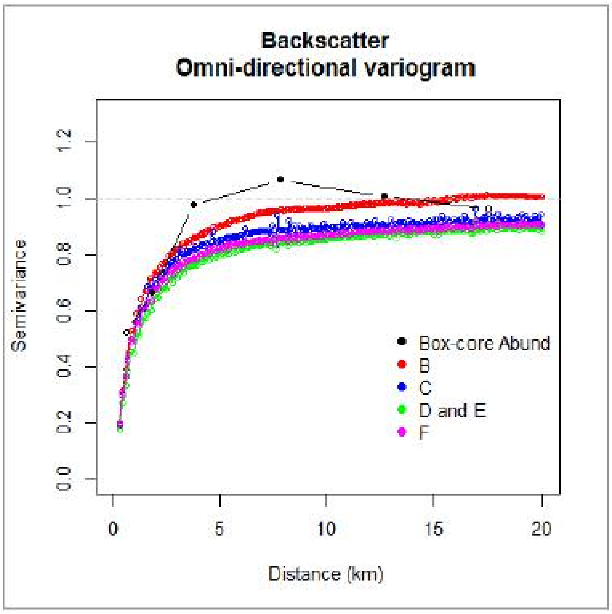


Source: TMC

11.3.8 Variography of the backscatter data

The backscatter data shows limited correlation with abundance but, in a broad sense, can be used to delineate zones of nodules from zones with very low to no nodules (the no nodule (NON) domain). Omni-directional variograms (Figure 11.31) of the backscatter values indicate spatial continuity that is consistent with the nodule sample data. The omni-directional variogram of the nodule sample data has a shorter range than the backscatter variograms but with similar very short range spatial variability. TOML-B has the shortest range of the backscatter variograms and TOML-D and E have the longest.

Figure 11.31 Omni-directional variograms for backscatter values



Source: TMC

11.3.9 Geological block model

Six block models were constructed, one for each TOML Contract Area (A through to F). Each model was blocked according to the data spacing. Blocks of 1.75 km by 1.75 km were used to fill the areas tested by BC and photo profiles on a 3.5 km by 3.0 km grid (Measured Mineral Resource). Blocks of 3.5 km by 3.5 km were used to fill areas tested by BC sampling on a nominal spacing of approximately 7 km by 7 km (Indicated Mineral Resources), while the remainder were filled with blocks of 7.0 km by 7.0 km (Inferred Mineral Resources). Sub-cells with dimensions of 0.875 km by 0.875 km were used to accurately represent the boundaries of the TOML Areas, the areas interpreted to contain no nodules and the boundaries between Measured and Indicated.

The total area of the block model is 74,683 km^2 which is 99.96% of the actual total area of the TOML Areas of 74,713 km^2 (Table 11.15). This indicates that the sub-blocks provided satisfactory resolution for estimating the Area boundaries.

Table 11.15 Comparison of model areas and actual license areas

Area	Actual Area (m^2)	Model Area (m^2)	Percent Difference
TOML-A	10 280.560	10 309.141	0.278
TOML-B	9 966.266	9 950.062	–0.163
TOML-C	15 763.385	15 785.656	0.141
TOML-D and E	22 882.804	22 843.953	–0.170
TOML-F	15 819.900	15 794.078	–0.163
All	74 712.915	74 682.891	–0.04

11.3.10 Mineral Resource estimation

Ordinary Kriging (OK) was used to estimate abundance, Mn, Ni, Cu and Co into the block model. Grades were estimated on a parent block basis using block discretization of 5 by 5 by 1. Grades were also estimated using NN and IDW to the power of 2 for validation of the OK estimates. Blocks and sub-blocks within the NON domain were set to zero.

Three separate estimation passes were run, one for each parent cell size. The estimates for Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource used a search range of 30 km while for Indicated and Inferred a search range of 70 km was used. A minimum of 1 and a maximum of 3 samples were allowed per octant search with a maximum of 8 samples per estimate.

The Mineral Resource model was validated by comparing the global mean and Var of the model against alternative NN and IDW estimates and the declustered samples. The mean grades compare favorably and the expected Var reduction is observed, indicating that the estimate is satisfactory.

11.3.11 Mineral Resource classification

Classification of the Mineral Resource into Measured, Indicated and Inferred categories, in accordance with SEC Regulation S-K (subpart 1300), considered: the nodule sample quality, uncertainty in the nodule sample abundance and grades, continuity of nodule abundance and grade and scale of the deposit.

- Inferred Mineral Resource classification was based on sampling by Pioneer Contractors on a nominal spacing of 20 km, the variation and uncertainty in the sample quality, and the likely presence of short-range variation to nodule abundance.
- Indicated Mineral Resource classification was based on BC sampling by TOML on a nominal spacing of approximately 7 km by 7 km (including photo profiling in some cases at 7 km by 3 km), supplemented by sampling by Pioneer Contractors.
- Measured Mineral Resource was based on BC sampling by TOML on a nominal spacing of approximately 7 km by 7 km plus photo-profiling on a nominal spacing of 3.5 km by 3.0 km, supplemented by sampling by Pioneer Contractors.

11.4 Cut-off grade

Mining operations typically use an economic value to differentiate between material that is mined to generate revenue (ore) and material that is either left behind or considered as waste. The cut-off value is derived from an economic assessment to determine the minimum grade of material that generates an acceptable profit or the minimum grade of material that allows a marketable product to be produced.

Nodules are remarkably consistent in grade and the characteristic that will contribute most to determine profitability is abundance, which is more variable. Furthermore, assessment by Allseas identified that a minimum abundance value is required to achieve the production rate required to meet annual production targets for a given collector speed. Therefore, the variable chosen to define the cut-off for definition of Mineral Resources was abundance.

The method of calculation of the cut-off determines the minimum average nodule abundance needed during steady state operations such that the revenue minus costs (excluding capital) is greater than zero. Revenue includes metal pricing and metallurgical processing recoveries, and the costs include the collection, transport, processing, corporate costs, and royalties.

Although the breakeven cut-off abundance varies slightly by area because grades vary slightly by area, a cut-off of 4 kg/m^2 abundance was chosen as a reasonable average for the NORI and TOML Areas, based on the estimates of costs and revenues presented in this report.

Assumptions used for the estimation are as described throughout this 2025 IA, the key parameters are as follows:

- Mine planning assumptions as described in Section 0, LOM basis of design (1.8 Mwmt annual tonnage mined per CV).
- Metal prices, metallurgical recoveries, and metal payabilities as described in Section 19, economic evaluation.
- Operating cost assumption as described in Section 18.
- Nodule grades as described in Section 11.5.

The abundance cut-off estimation for the areas that make up the Property are shown in Table 11.16.

Table 11.16 NORI-TOML breakeven cut-off abundance estimate

Area	Opex ($/wmt)	Production (m^2/hr)	Nodule Revenue ($/wmt)	Opex per hour ($/hr)	Breakeven Abundance (kg/m^2)	Revenue per hour ($/hr)
NORI A	188	33,660	484	61,339	3.8	61,339
NORI B	188	33,660	517	61,339	3.5	61,339
NORI C	188	33,660	465	61,339	3.9	61,339
TOML A	188	33,660	430	61,339	4.2	61,339
TOML B	188	33,660	458	61,339	4.0	61,339
TOML C	188	33,660	491	61,339	3.7	61,339
TOML D	188	33,660	492	61,339	3.7	61,339
TOML E	188	33,660	478	61,339	3.8	61,339
TOML F	188	33,660	488	61,339	3.7	61,339

The calculations indicate that a cut-off of 4 kg/m^2 abundance, as has been used for Mineral Resource estimates in NORI Area D, is appropriate for definition of the Mineral Resources in NORI -A, B, and C and TOML -A, B, C, D, E and F.

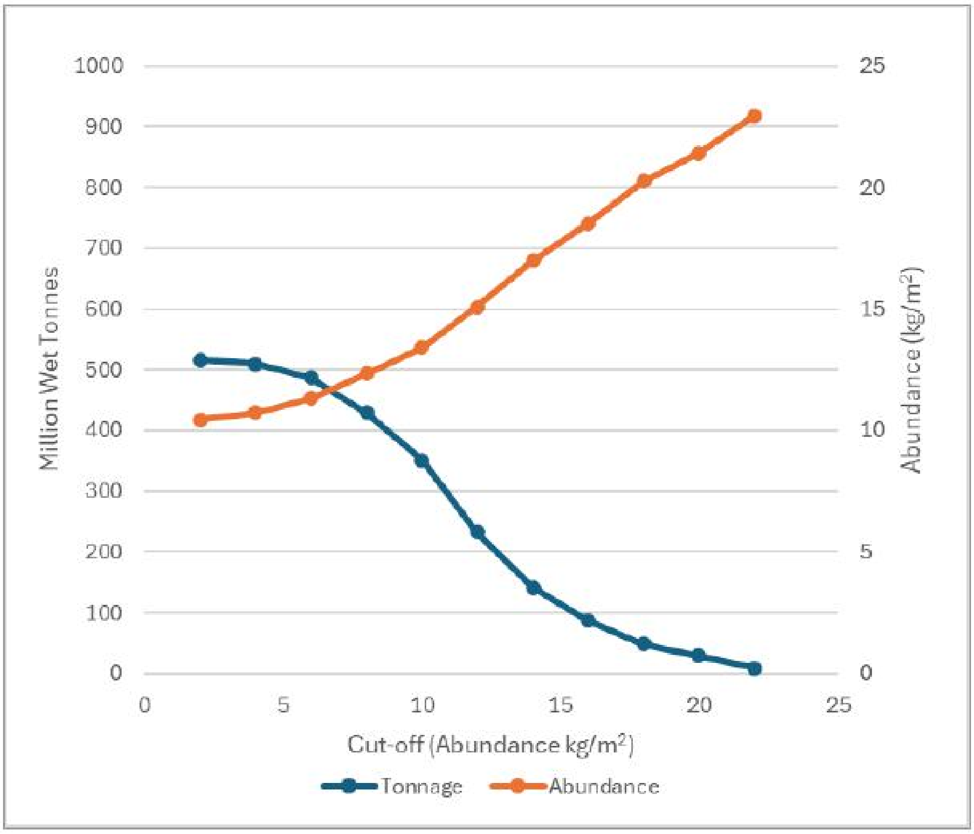
11.5 Estimation results

11.5.1 NORI-A, B and C

The nodule abundance and tonnage curves for various nodule abundance cut-offs (kg/m^2) are presented in Figure 11.32. The curves indicate rapid reduction in global tonnage between abundance cut-offs of approximately 6 to 20 kg/m^2, which brackets the mean abundance for the NORI Area.

The Mineral Resources, with an effective date of 31 December 2020, are reported in Table 11.17 at an abundance cut-off value of 4 kg/m^2. This cut-off is justified by the estimates of costs and revenues presented in Section 11.4.

Figure 11.32 Combined NORI-A, B and C abundance tonnage curves



Source: AMC

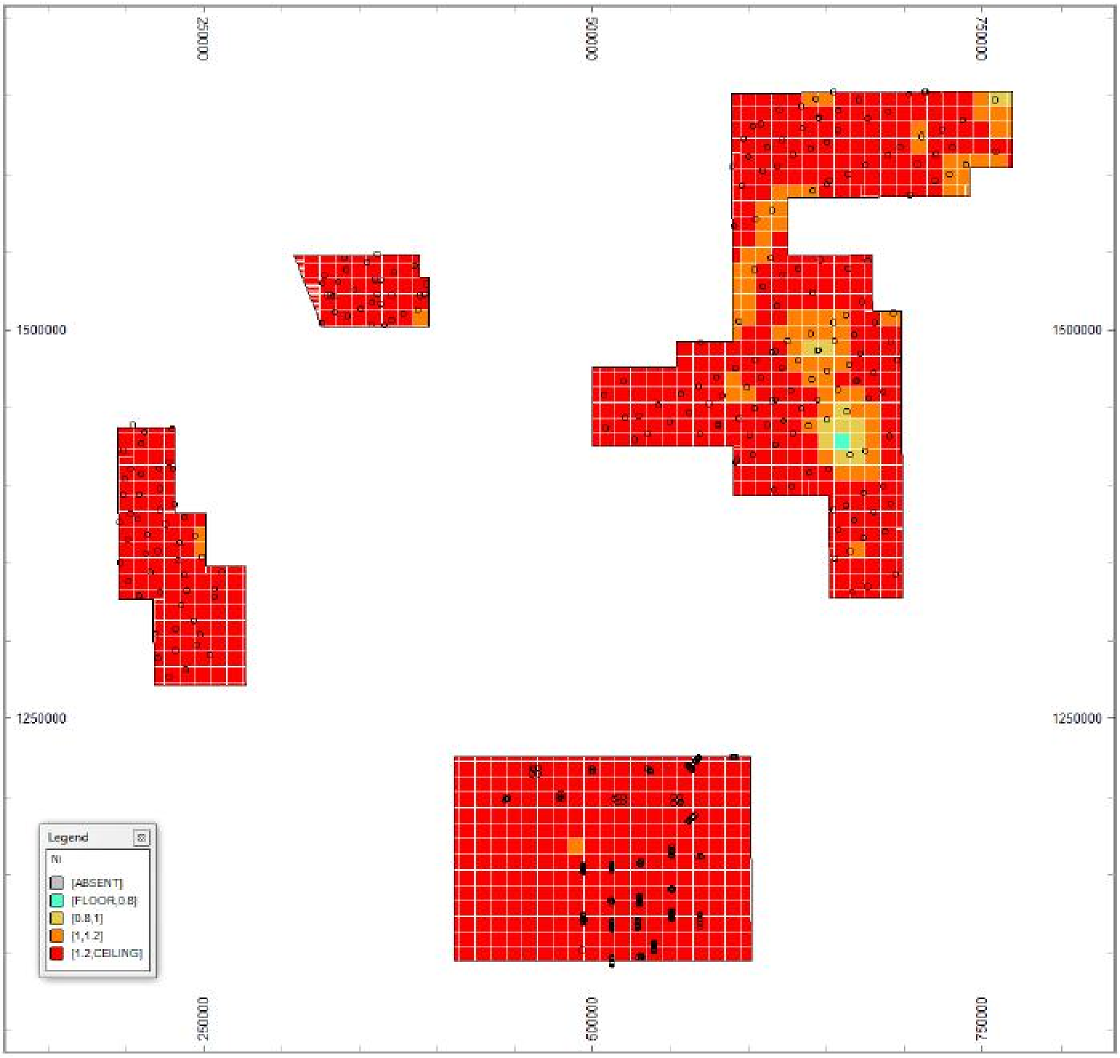
Table 11.17 NORI-A, B and C Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at 4 kg/m^2 abundance cut-off

NORI Area	Category	Nodule tonnage (Mt (wet))	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
NORI-A	Inferred	72	9.4	1.35	1.06	0.22	28.0
NORI-B	Inferred	36	11	1.43	1.13	0.25	28.9
NORI-C	Inferred	402	11	1.26	1.03	0.21	28.3

Source: Golder 2015. Note: Tonnes are quoted on a wet basis and grades are quoted on a dry basis, which is common practice for bulk commodities. Moisture content was estimated to be 24% w/w. These estimates are presented on an undiluted basis without adjustment for resource recovery.

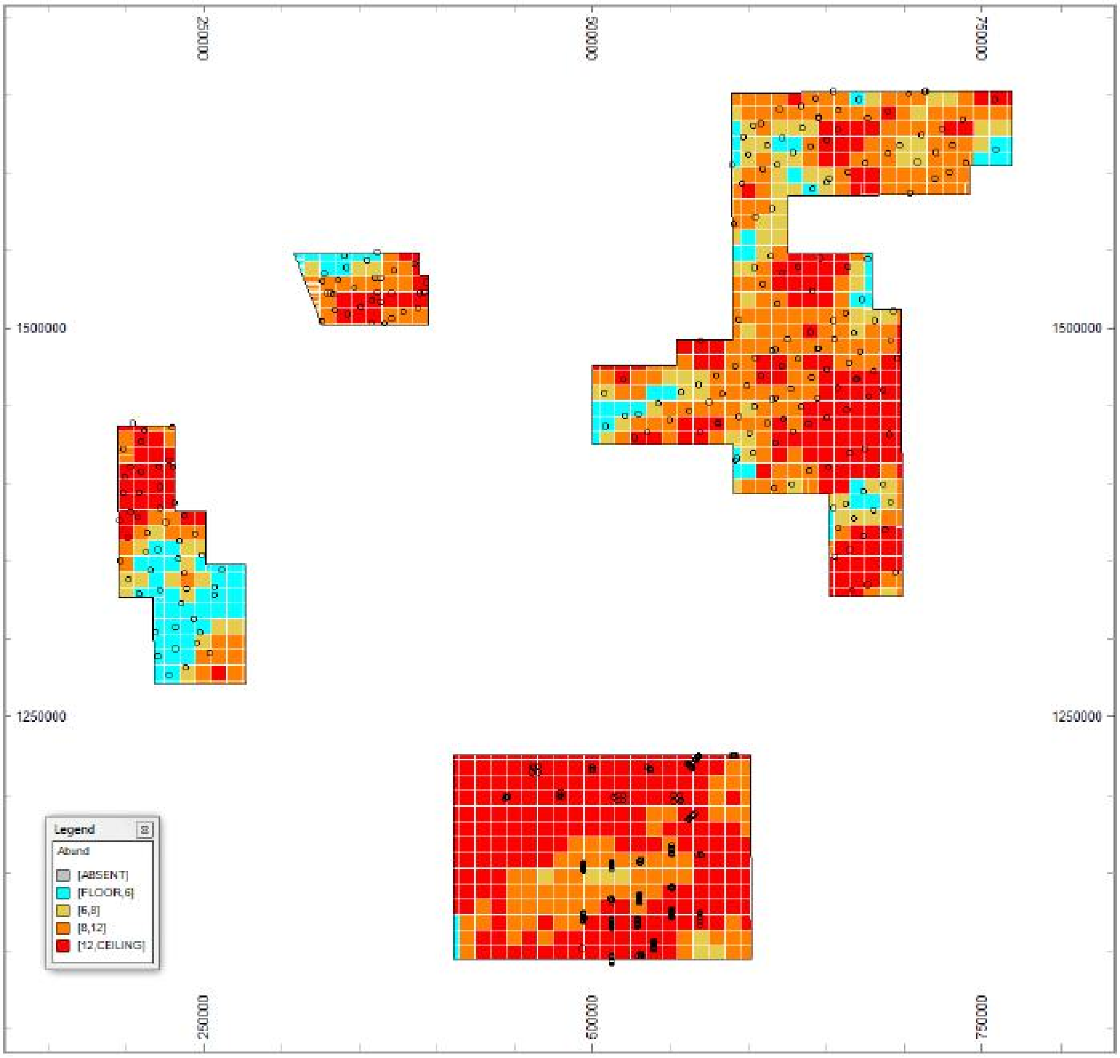
Figure 11.33 shows sample locations and estimated block grades for nickel and Figure 11.34 shows sample locations and estimated abundance. The low variability of the estimates is consistent with the homogenous nature of the nodule chemistry across the NORI Area.

Figure 11.33 Map of sample distribution and block model estimates of nickel, NORI 2012 estimates



Source: TMC. Note: NB: Areas A, B, C and D cover several UTM zones but were overlaid to facilitate modelling of all areas in one model. The apparent distances between the Areas in this figure are not real distances. The estimates for NORI Area D were superseded in 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a)

Figure 11.34 Map of sample distribution and block model estimates of abundance, NORI 2012 estimates



Source: TMC. Note: NB: Areas A, B, C and D cover several UTM zones but were overlaid to facilitate modelling of all areas in one model. The apparent distances between the Areas in this figure are not real distances. The estimates for NORI Area D were superseded in 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a)

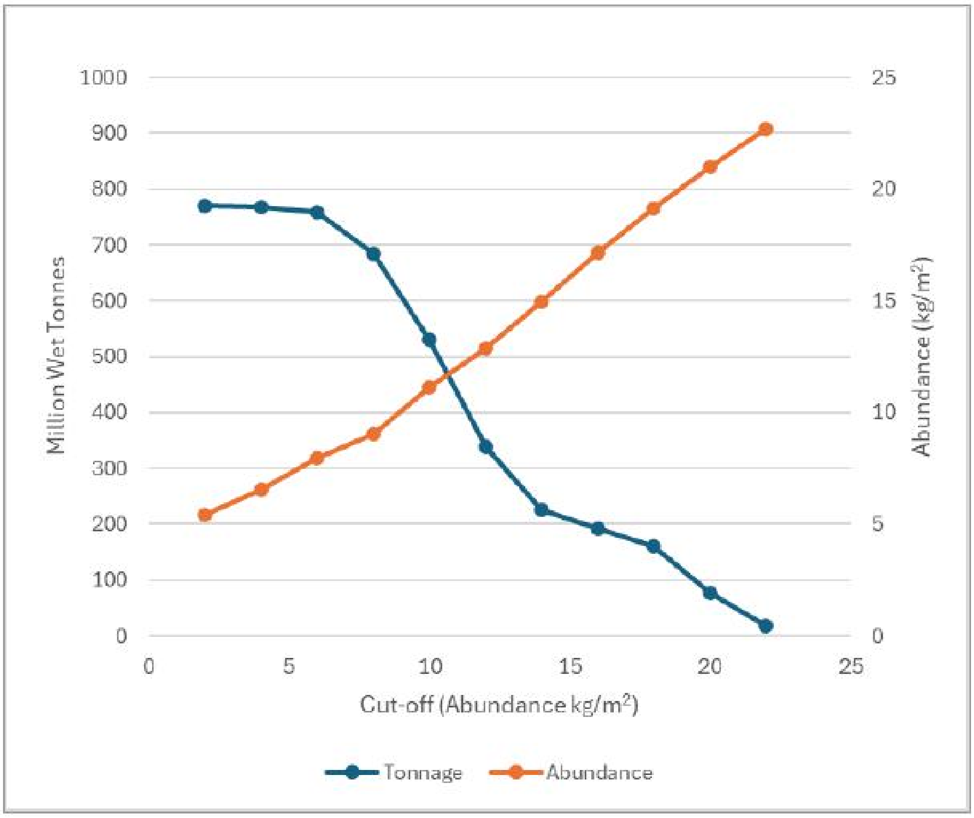
11.5.1 TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F

The nodule abundance and tonnage curves for various nodule abundance cut-offs (kg/m^2) are presented in Figure 11.35. At abundance cut-offs of 7 kg/m^2 or less the tonnage and grade are relatively insensitive. Above 7 kg/m^2, global tonnage declines rapidly.

The Mineral Resources, with an effective date of 31 December 2020, are reported in Table 11.18 at an abundance cut-off value of 4 kg/m^2. This cut-off is justified by the estimates of costs and revenues presented in this IA.

Figure 11.36 to Figure 11.40 show plans of the estimated block grades for abundance, Ni, Co, Cu, and Mn, resource class, and the sample locations. The low variability of the estimates is consistent with the homogenous nature of the nodule chemistry across the TOML Area.

Figure 11.35 Combined TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F abundance tonnage curves



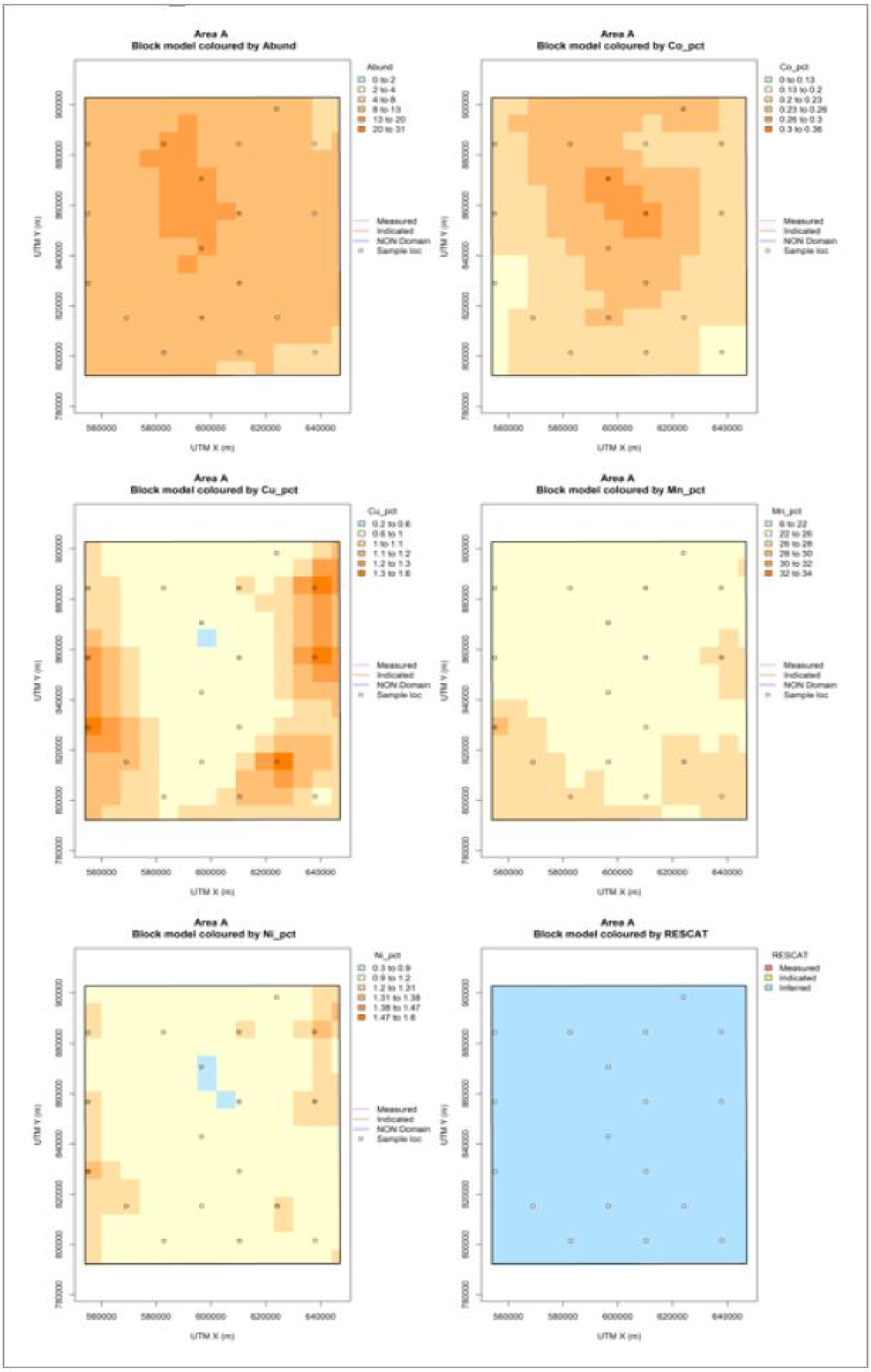
Source: AMC

Table 11.18 TOML Area Mineral Resource estimate, in situ, at a 4 kg/m^2 nodule abundance cut-off

TOML Area	Classification	Tonnes ($x10^6$ wet t)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
A	Inferred	114	11.0	1.1	1.0	0.2	25.0
B	Measured	3	11.8	1.3	1.0	0.2	27.6
B	Indicated	14	11.1	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.6
B	Inferred	63	9.1	1.2	1.0	0.3	25.9
C	Indicated	15	8.6	1.3	1.2	0.2	30.5
C	Inferred	115	9.0	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.2
D	Indicated	29	12.2	1.3	1.2	0.2	30.1
D	Inferred	102	9.0	1.3	1.2	0.2	28.8
E	Inferred	58	10.6	1.3	1.1	0.2	28.7
F	Indicated	12	21.6	1.5	1.2	0.1	32.5
F	Inferred	244	16.6	1.4	1.2	0.1	32.2
Total	**Measured**	**2.6**	**11.8**	**1.3**	**1.0**	**0.2**	**27.6**
Total	**Indicated**	**69.6**	**11.8**	**1.3**	**1.2**	**0.2**	**30.3**
Total	**Inferred**	**696**	**11.3**	**1.3**	**1.1**	**0.2**	**29.0**

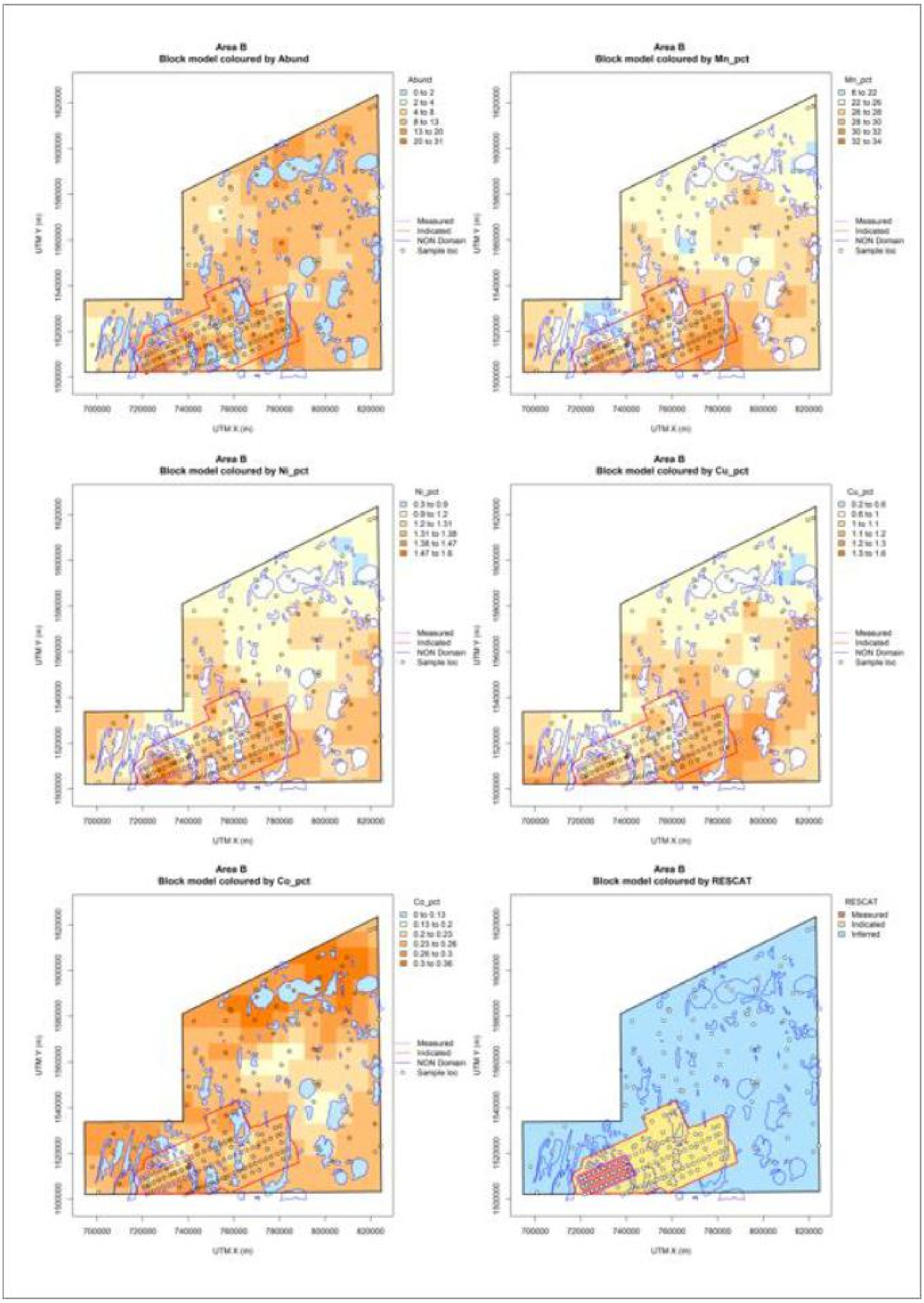
Note: Tonnes are quoted on a wet basis and grades are quoted on a dry basis, which is common practice for bulk commodities. Moisture content was estimated to be 28% w/w. These estimates are presented on an undiluted basis without adjustment for resource recovery.

Figure 11.36 Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area A



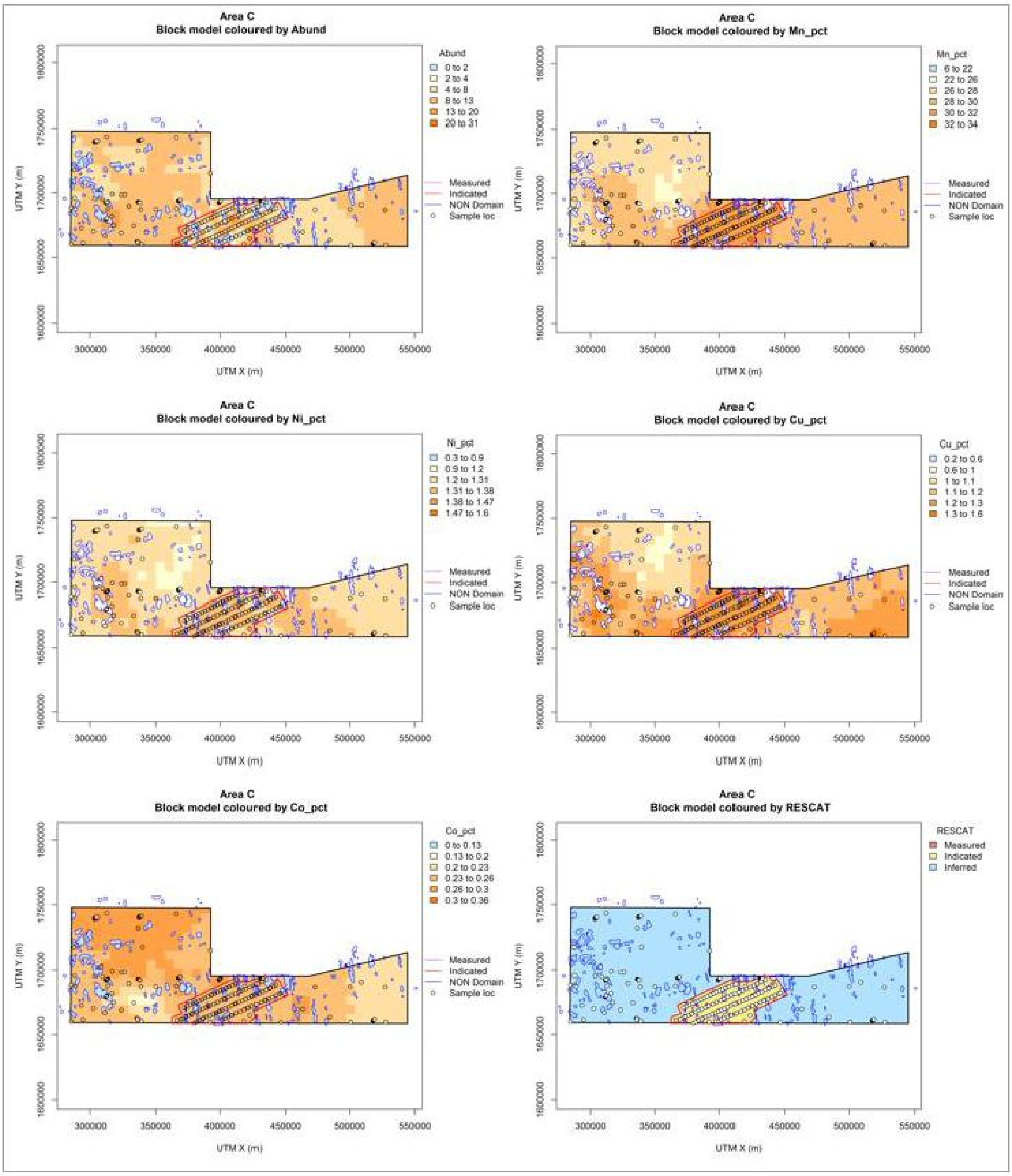
Source: TMC

Figure 11.37 Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area B



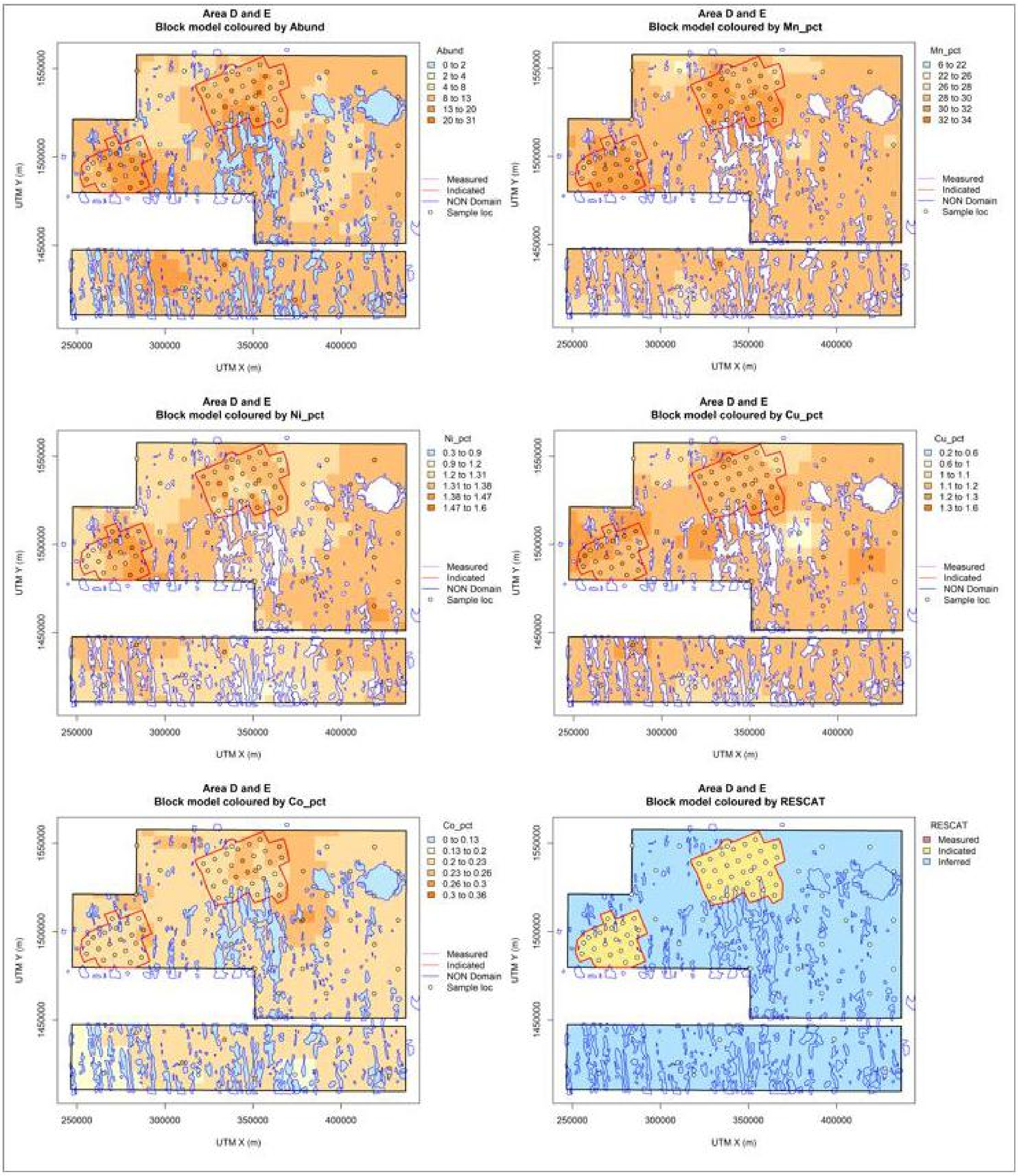
Source: TMC

Figure 11.38 Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area C



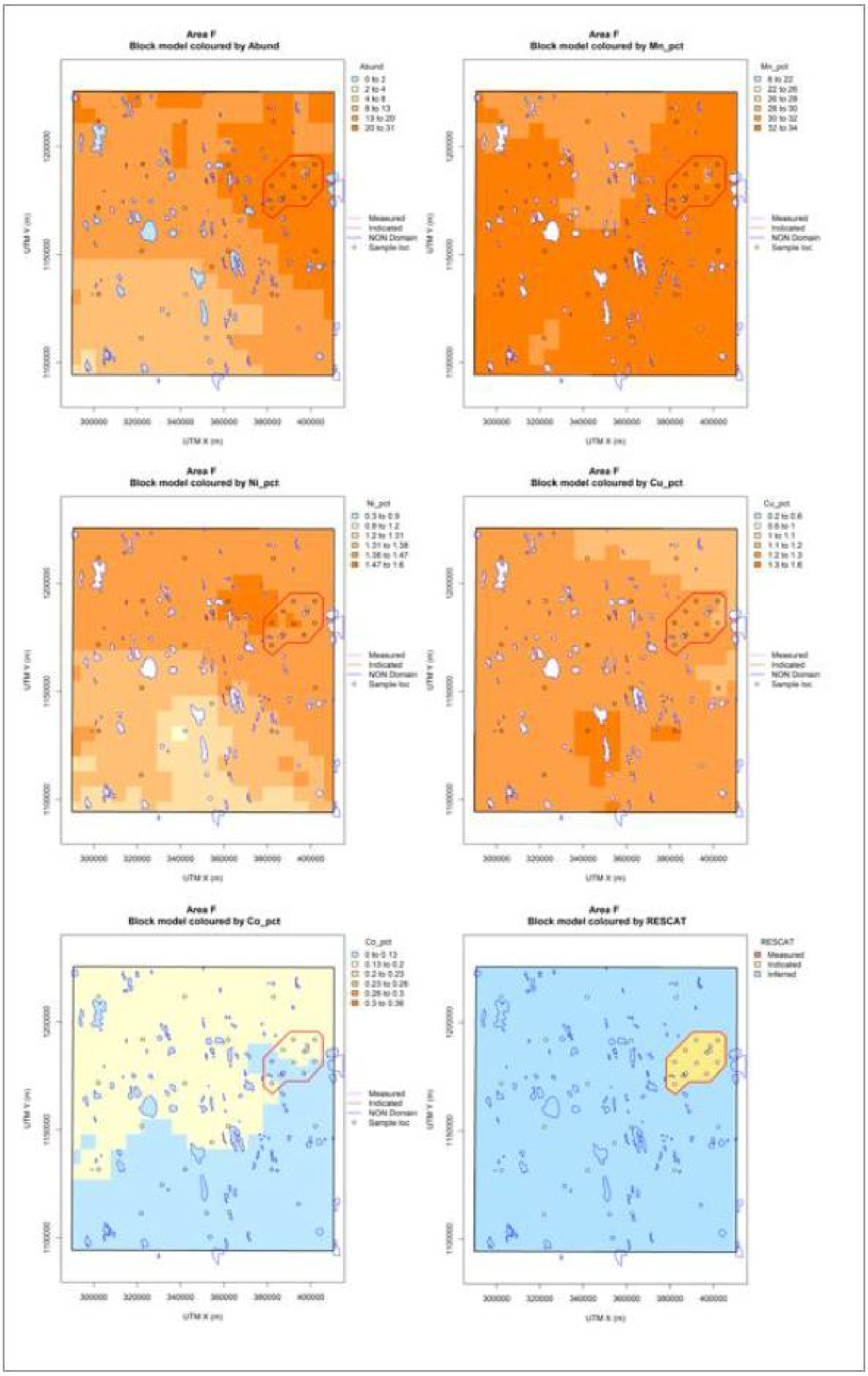
Source: TMC

Figure 11.39 Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area D and Area E



Source: TMC

Figure 11.40 Map showing block model and sample distribution for Abundance Mn, Ni, Cu and Co in TOML Area F



Source: TMC

12 Mineral Reserve estimates

There are no Mineral Reserve estimates for the TMC Property outside of the NORI Area D, and the potential viability of the Mineral Resources has not yet been supported by detailed mine design or optimization processes nor a PFS or a feasibility study.

13 Mining methods

13.1 Overview

The nodule mining equipment and mining methods proposed in this IA build on the Test Mining and extensive engineering programs completed by TMC and its partners as part of the NORI Area D prefeasibility study. Given the nascent nature of the industry, commercially available deep-sea nodule collection systems are non-existent, necessitating the development of custom-engineered mining solutions tailored to the specific environmental and operational conditions within the TMC Property.

13.2 Development plan

TMC propose to begin mining in the NORI and TOML areas of higher nodule abundance. A total of eight separate 2nd Generation Production Systems (2nd Gen) are expected to be employed, moving to new areas once higher abundance areas are mined out in a manner that sustains consistent production rates across the life of mine.

Each of the eight 2nd Gen systems consists of a PV that powers seafloor CVs in addition to a VTS, dewatering plant, and nodule handling and offloading infrastructure. The PV is expected to be supported by TVs that receive dewatered nodules from the PV and transport the nodules to port for processing. Supply vessels provide resupply of fuel, personnel and logistics and operate out of the mainland USA. Each of the eight systems is assumed to be identical and capable of meeting a nameplate capacity of 7 Mwmtpa in the TOML-F area and 5 Mwmtpa in the other areas of lower abundance.

The first three PVs are brought online over a three-year period in the TOML-F area, with the five additional systems coming online over a period of 5 years.

All nodules are assumed to be shipped to a receiving deepwater port in Indonesia for unload and processing to matte before shipping to the USA for further refinement.

13.3 Offshore mining system

The 2nd Gen systems are expected to build on operational experience gained through NORI Area D Test Mining and the operation of a 1st Gen system in NORI Area D, if TMC's Commercial Recovery Permit is granted. The following sections provide an overview of the Test Mining and 1st Gen system, followed by a description of the 2nd Gen system that are expected to be used to recover and transport nodules from the TMC Property to shore for processing.

13.3.1 Test Mining in NORI Area D in 2022

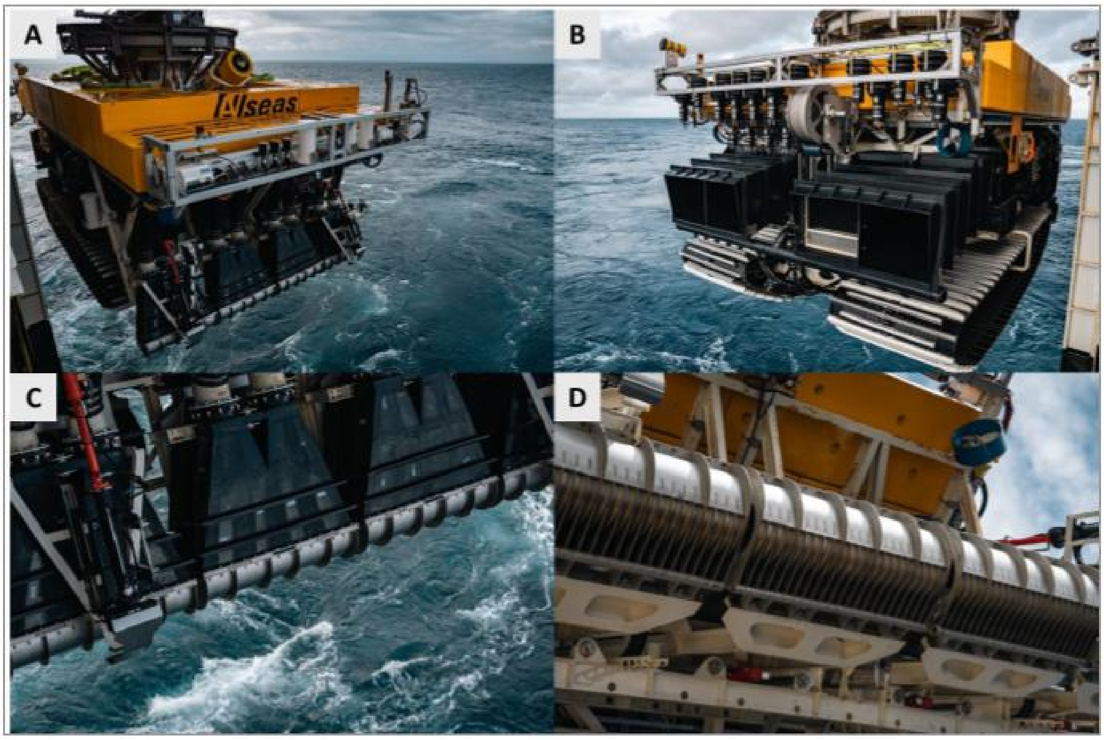
TMC conducted Test Mining on the seafloor in September to November 2022 from the *Hidden Gem*. During the test led by Allseas, the test CV drove across over 80 km of seafloor, collecting approximately 4,500 wmt of nodules and lifted over 3,000 wmt up a 4,300 m riser system to the *Hidden Gem*. The Allseas-designed test mining system achieved all test production milestones and reached a sustained production rate of approximately 85 wmt per hour.

The Test Mining was conducted within a small area in NORI Area D, selected after completion of detailed bathymetric and photographic surveys in 2018. The Test Mining System consisted of a tracked collector that removed nodules from the seafloor using a Coandă nozzle, an air lift VTS and mechanical shaker screen for the dewatering process. The working principles of this test system are carried through to the 1st Gen proposed for development of NORI Area D.

Figure 13.1 The Hidden Gem post completion of Test Mining

Source: TMC

Figure 13.2 Photographs of the Test Mining Collector



Source: TMC

Note: A) Forward View, B) Aft View, C) Top View of Coandă Nozzles, D) Close-up of Coandă nozzles (collector heads)

13.3.2 First generation production system to operate in NORI Area D (1st Gen)

The Hidden Gem is expected to serve as the PV and operational base for the initial commercial operations in the NORI Area D. The Hidden Gem is expected to undergo modifications to upgrade mining and nodule handling equipment from the Test Mining configuration to meet increased production rates required for commercial scale operations. This upgraded vessel along with supporting transfer and supply vessels are termed the First-Generation Production System (1st Gen) and is capable of achieving a nominal production rate of 3 Mwmtpa.

Design of the 1st Gen and associated equipment is expected to draw on experience gained during Test Mining and includes similar mining system configurations and working principles. The 1st Gen PV houses the following:

- 2 x 15.5 m wide Collectors (effective collection width of 15 m).
- 2 x LARS.
- Air lift VTS.
- Dewatering plant to separate the nodules from seawater.
- Nodule storage holds and offloading conveyor booms for the nodules to be loaded onto the nodule transfer vessel.

The TV receives nodules from the PV during mining operations. The TV then performs an in-field transfer to load Cape-size bulk carriers with nodules for shipping to port.

Figure 13.3 Illustration of the First-Generation Production System during nodule offloading operations.

Source: TMC

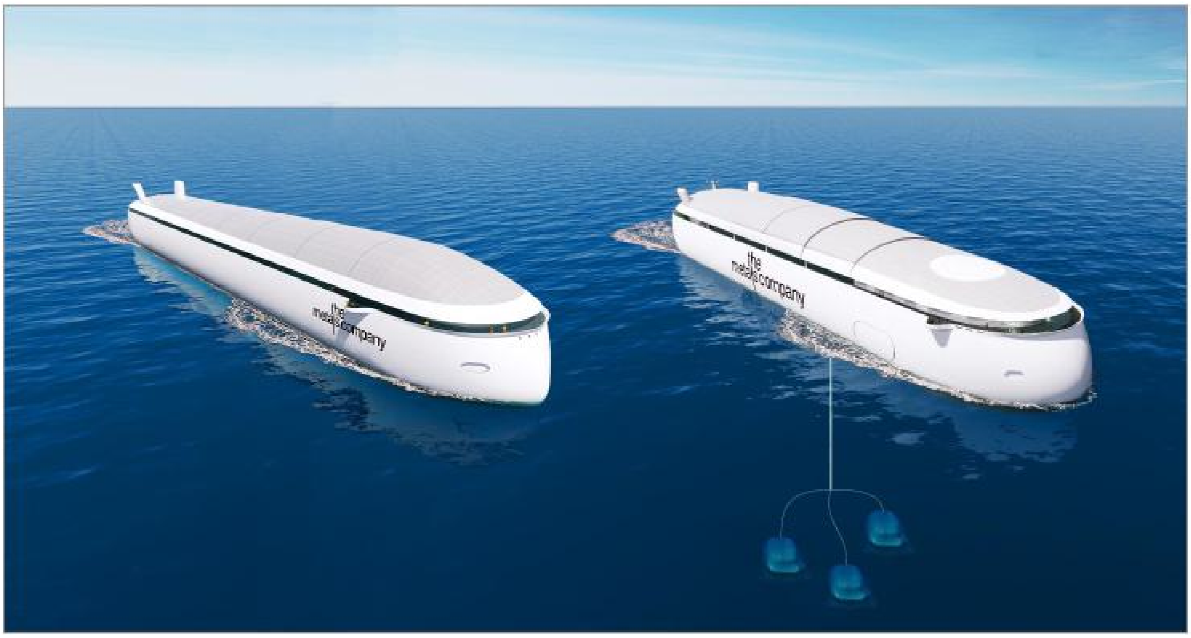
An additional three converted drill ships similar to the Hidden Gem are brought online within the NORI Area D, increasing total production to 12 Mwmtpa. Each PV is expected to have a dedicated TV and fleet of bulk carriers. For further details of NORI Area D operations and the 1st Gen system, see AMC 2025.

13.3.3 Second generation production system (2nd Gen)

Purpose built and identical production systems are expected to conduct mining operations within the Property. Each system will consist of a PV, TV and SVs, with each of the eight systems capable of operating independently of one another. The transfer vessel concept used in 1st Gen systems is assumed to be rendered obsolete by the new bespoke PV and TV in the 2nd Gen system.

The 2nd Gen follows the working principles of the previous systems including multiple tracked seafloor CVs outfitted with nodule collecting Coandă nozzles (collection heads), VTS powered by airlift or hydraulic pumps, PV with DP capabilities and dry bulk offloading technologies. The 2nd Gen system is scheduled to commence mining operations some 15 years after Test Mining and 10 years after the scheduled date of commissioning and first operation of the 1st Gen system and therefore is expected to benefit from approximately a decade of deep sea mining operations and associated lessons and optimizations.

Figure 13.4 Artist impression of a second-generation PV with three seafloor CVs and TV alongside



Source: TMC

13.3.3.1 Mining concept

CVs remove nodules from the seafloor by following a predetermined path designed to avoid obstacles. As nodules are collected, they are separated from entrained seafloor sediment within the CV before being transferred to the VTS for transport to the surface. Residual sediment and the carrier water used during collection are discharged via diffusers located at the rear of each CV.

The VTS consists of a flexible jumper hose that links the CV to the base of a vertical riser that runs from near the seafloor to the PV on the surface. Air is injected to the vertical riser at around 1,500 m below the PV inducing a flow in the riser bringing nodules from the seafloor to the riser head installed on the PV.

Nodules and seawater received from the riser pass through an onboard dewatering system, where nodules are extracted from the flow and deposited into the PV storage holds. Seawater, residual sediment and fine nodule particles that pass the dewatering system are returned to the midwater at 2,000 m below the vessel via the return water line.

The nodules are offloaded from the PV to a TV via an offloading boom. The TV, once loaded to capacity, departs the mining area and begins transit to port in Indonesia for nodule offloading operation.

The main components and operating details of the 2nd Gen systems are described in further detail in the following sections.

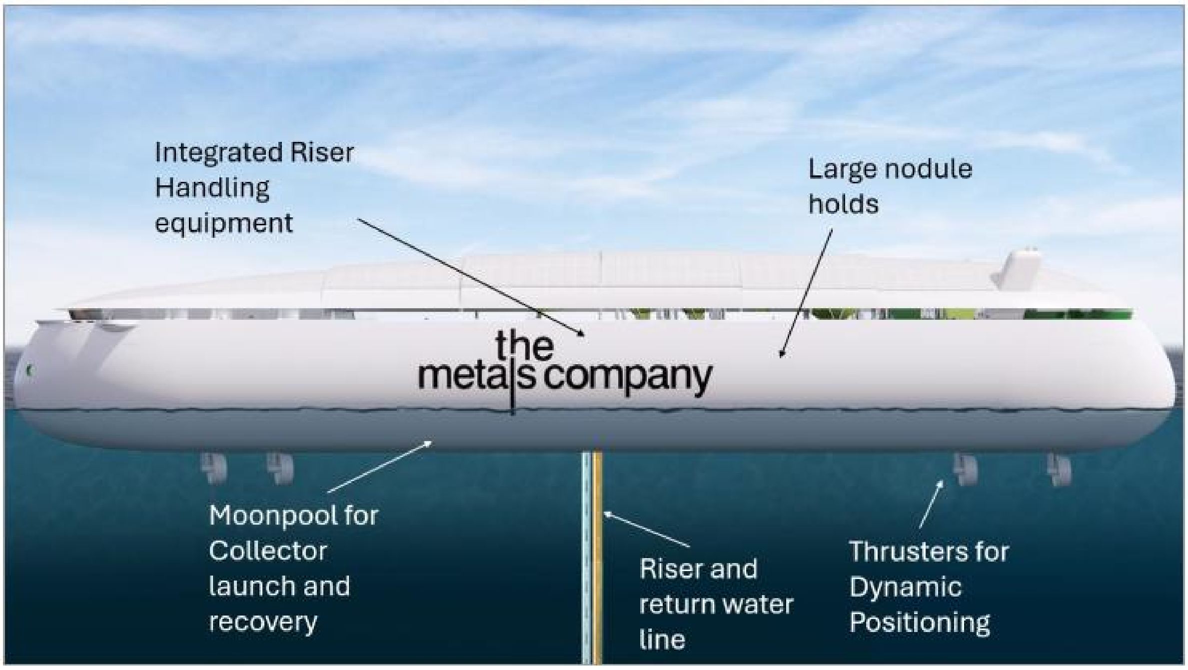
13.3.3.2 PV

The PV houses key mining equipment including the CV, power generation infrastructure, riser and collector umbilical launch, recovery and management systems, nodule dewatering, storage and offloading equipment, in addition to crew accommodation and operation management centers. An overview of the PV key components is provided in Figure 13.5 and key vessel specifications are provided in Table13.1.

The PVs power plants generate electricity to power all the PV equipment, including powering the CVs deployed to the seafloor.

While the current cost model for the power plant is based on conventional diesel generator sets, it is anticipated by TMC that by the projected commissioning date—approximately 15 years from now—significant advancements in low and zero-emission marine energy systems will have reached commercial maturity. In alignment with the International Maritime Organization (IMO) 2050 net-zero emissions goal and the anticipated rise in emissions-related compliance costs under global greenhouse gas pricing schemes, future configurations are expected by the QP to incorporate state-of-the-art solutions such as dual-fuel or ammonia-compatible generator sets. Although current CAPEX for alternative-fuel systems—particularly those based on green ammonia or hydrogen—is higher than for conventional diesel, OPEX is expected to decline over time due to improved fuel efficiency, reduced maintenance requirements, and the scaling of renewable fuel production. TMC has stated that it is committed to proactively adopting these emerging technologies to minimize environmental impact and position the operation as a frontrunner in responsible, climate-aligned offshore industrial development.

Figure 13.5 Artist impression of the PV showing key components



Source: TMC

Table 13.1 2nd Gen PV key specifications

Parameter	Value	Unit
Length	265	m
Beam	50	m

Displacement	150,000	tonnes
Installed power	80	MW
Accommodation	100	Beds
Nodule storage capacity	100,000	Wet metric tonnes
Nodule offload rate	5,000	Wet metric tonnes per hour

Electrically driven azimuth thrusters powered by the PV's generators provide the vessel with DP capabilities in order to maintain heading and position during mining operations.

Large nodule storage tanks provide buffer capacity to the mining system, eliminating the need to halt operations when a TV is not available to offload the collected and dewatered nodules.

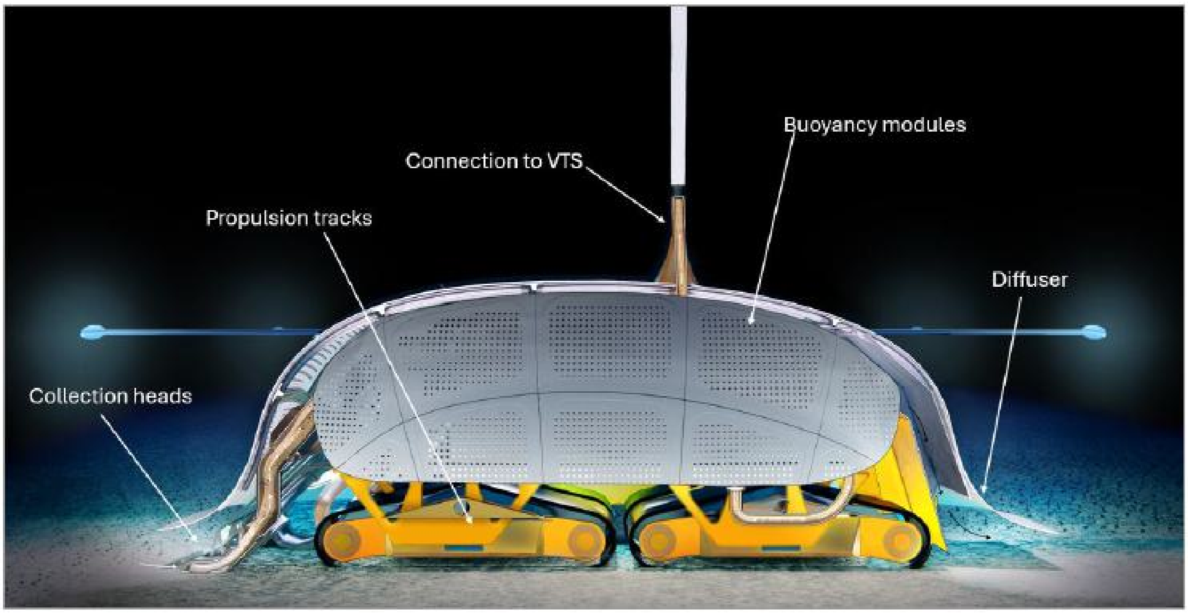
13.3.3.3 Collector Vehicle (CV)

Each PV is equipped with three identical CVs that are launched and recovered through a moonpool. Permanently connected umbilicals supply the CVs with power and control signals during seafloor operations. The self-propelled vehicles are fitted with buoyancy modules to reduce their effective weight on the seafloor, optimizing traction and maneuverability. Nodules are collected using a Coandă nozzle system mounted at the front of each vehicle, which generates a controlled suction flow to lift nodules from the seafloor surface. Once collected, the CVs separate nodules from seafloor sediment and direct the nodules to the VTS.

The CV's main functions are as follows:

- Nodule pick-up.
- Nodule-sediment separation.
- Nodule transfer to VTS.
- Propulsion and navigation of vehicle along the seabed.
- Heading and position control of vehicle during descent/ascent through the water column.
- Environmental monitoring.

Figure 13.6 Artist impression of a single seafloor collector. Note: Umbilical not shown

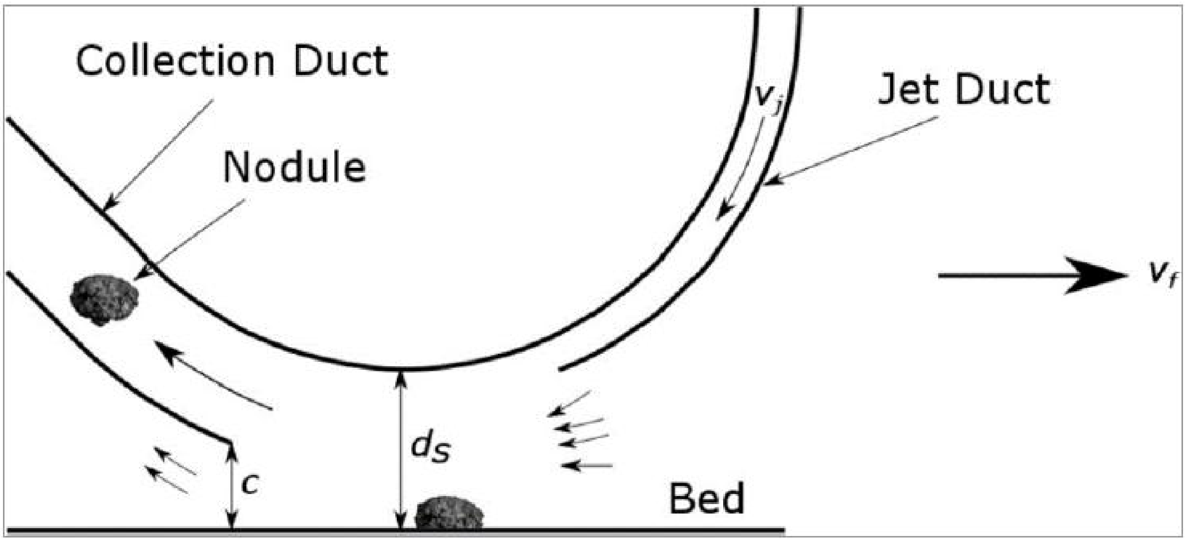


Source: TMC

Nodule pick-up and internal separation

The nodule collection mechanism is based on the working principles validated during the Test Mining campaign and proposed for the 1st Gen system. The collector heads use water jets to pick-up nodules from the seabed. These jets flow over a curved plate, creating a low-pressure zone beneath the nozzles—an effect known as the Coandă principle (Figure 13.7). This mechanism enables the gentle lifting of nodules from the seafloor with minimal erosion and limited disturbance to the surrounding seabed sediment, therefore minimizing the intake of sediment.

Figure 13.7 Schematic representation of the collector head.



Source: TMC

Note: vj is the jet velocity, vf is the forward velocity of the collector and c is clearance. The smallest arrows depict the direction of water entrainment. (Alhaddad et al, 2023

The resulting nodule-laden slurry is drawn upward through a duct into the CV hopper, where the flow velocity decreases. As the flow slows, the heavier particles (nodules) settle at the bottom of the hopper, while lighter particles (seafloor sediment) remain suspended and follow the main flow path toward the aft of the CV and to the diffuser. Washing off the sediment during decanting is further enhanced by introducing clean water from the bottom of the hopper acting as a counter current.

Forward looking sensors installed on the CV monitor variations in seabed height with the collection heads being raised and lowered by the control system to maintain a constant clearance between the seabed and the collection heads, in turn maximizing nodule collection efficiency and minimizing entrainment of seafloor sediment.

The diffuser discharges the sediment laden water at the rear of the CV. The velocity of this discharge is controlled to promote a rapidly settling plume that follows a quickly settling density driven flow regime, rather than suspending upwards into the water column.

Seafloor propulsion

Propulsion is delivered through a system of four individually controlled tracks, enabling precise maneuverability and effective navigation across challenging seafloor terrain. Each CV is equipped with integrated buoyancy modules that reduce its effective weight in water, enhancing traction and mobility on soft or uneven substrates. These modules are specifically sized to limit sinkage while still providing sufficient downward force to minimize track slippage. As a result, it is expected that the CVs can maintain nominal collection performance on slopes of up to 6 degrees from horizontal and can traverse inclines of up to an expected 10 degrees at reduced speeds.

Umbilical - Power and communications

The CV is connected to the PV by an umbilical at all times during operations. The umbilical provides power to the CV electrical consumers and signals to control all the CV mining, navigational and monitoring functions. The umbilical is not used for lifting the collector during launch or recovery from the PV to the seabed.

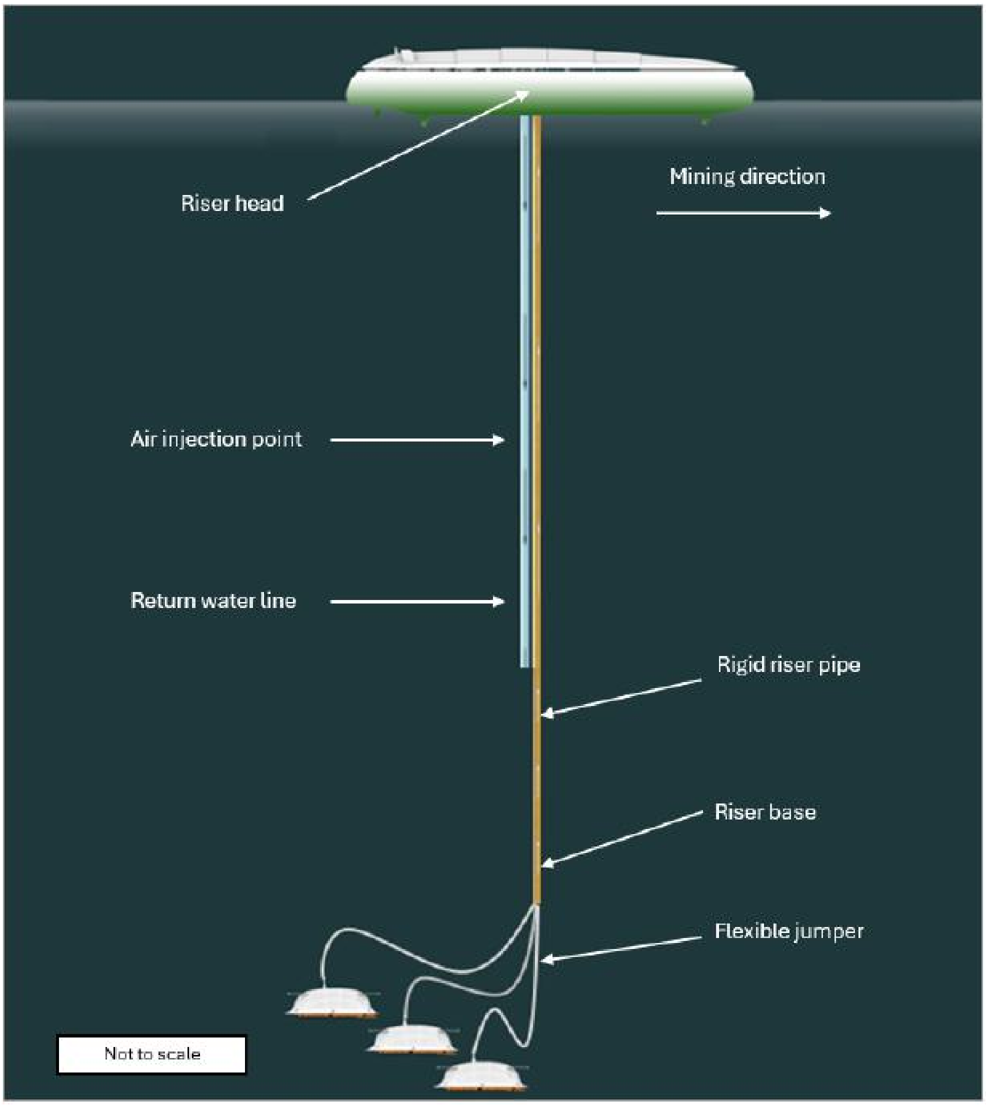
Launch and Recovery System (LARS)

A dedicated winch with heave compensation capabilities and spooled with high tensile fiber rope controls the launch of the CV from the PV internal CV maintenance and storage hangar, through a dedicated CV deployment moonpool to the seafloor. A snubber controls any movement of the CV as it is suspended and lowered through the moonpool and splash zone, releasing the CV below the waterline. Once on the seafloor, the fiber rope is disconnected from the CV, leaving the umbilical to provide power and communications to the CV during mining operations.

13.3.3.4 Vertical Transport System (VTS)

The VTS for the 2nd Gen follows the same working principles as the Test Mining and as proposed for the 1st Gen, with a flexible jumper hose connection to the seafloor CVs and rigid vertical riser with an air injection point to induce a vertical flow bringing nodules from the CV on the seafloor to the PV on the surface. The return water line hangs off the rigid section of the rigid vertical riser.

Figure 13.8 Artist impression of the VTS connecting the PV on the surface to the CV on the seafloor



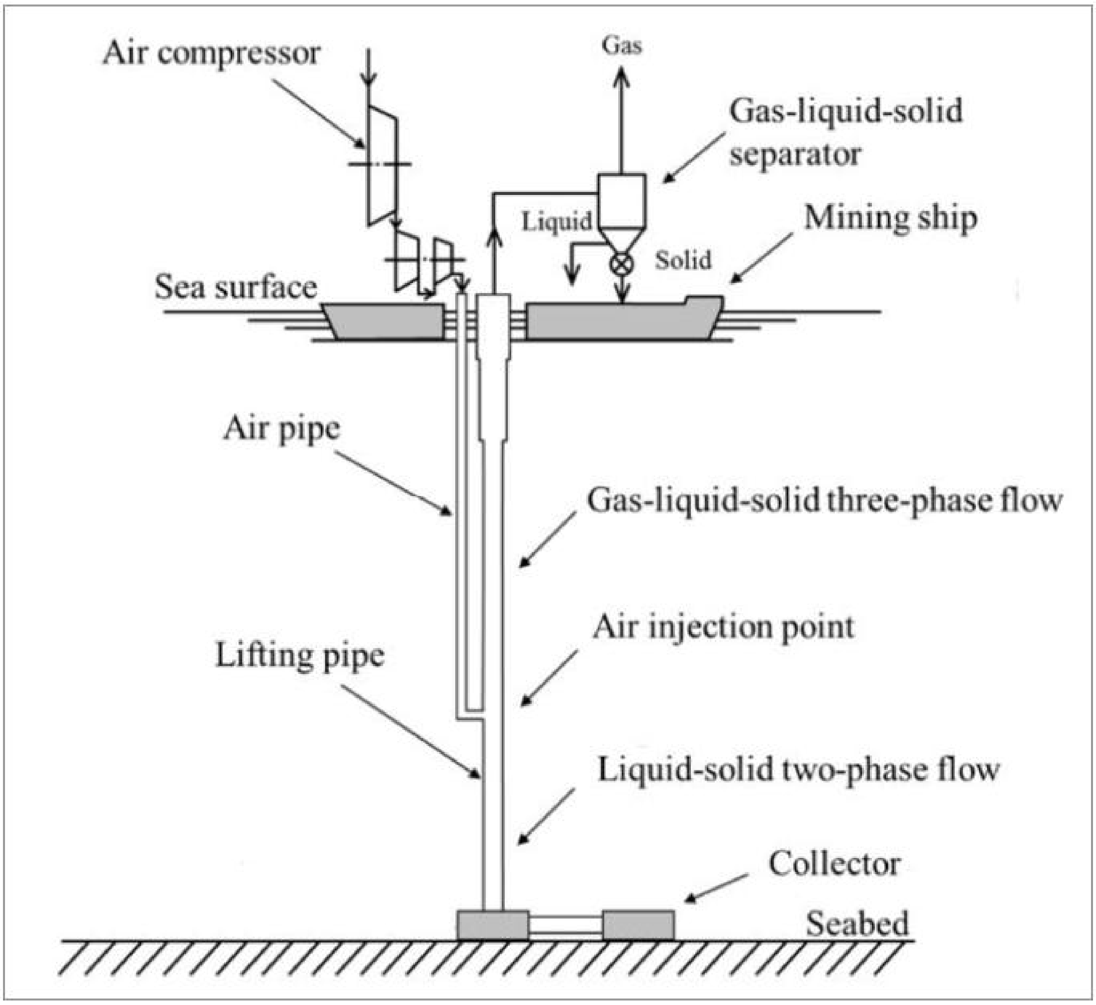
Source: TMC

A flexible jumper hose with approximate length of 500 m connects each CV to the base of the VTS rigid riser pipe sections allowing the CVs to vary their horizontal distance from the riser base when avoiding seabed obstacles and to assist in umbilical and VTS management during turning. The jumper maintains an S shape through installation of buoyancy and ballast along the jumper hose length.

Rigid riser sections make up the majority of the VTS and connect the surface PV to the jumper hose and CVs on the seafloor. The length of this rigid section can be altered from the PV VTS hang off point in varying water depths to keep the riser base close to the seabed but above any seamounts identified within the mine plan.

Air compressors installed on the PV feed compressed air down an airline that is injected into the rigid riser at approximately 1,500 m below sea level. This air injection at depth induces an upwards flow bringing seawater and nodules introduced by the CV at the seafloor to the riser head integrated into the PV. Figure 13.9 provides a schematic overview of the main components included in the airlift configuration.

Figure 13.9 Basic airlift configuration



Source: (Shimizu Y, 2024)

The jumper and rigid riser is deployed from the PV through a dedicated moonpool. The rigid sections are pieced together onboard the PV and built up, as is done in conventional offshore drilling operations.

13.3.3.5 Dewatering

At the riser head, deaeration occurs and the air injected at depth returns to atmospheric pressure. The nodules, water and residual sediment, termed slurry, is fed to the dewatering system installed on the PV. The slurry passes over mechanical dewatering screens that remove the coarse nodules from the slurry while the water, sediment and any fine nodule fragments pass to a bank of hydrocyclones. Here, nodule fragments are captured leaving seawater and sediment remaining in the slurry that is then fed to a return water tank. Return water pumps pass the slurry from this tank, through the return water line to 2,000 m depth where it is discharged.

13.3.3.6 Nodule handling, storage and offload

Nodules that are removed from the slurry by the dewatering system are carried to dedicated nodule storage holds installed on the PV. These holds have a capacity of 100,000t of nodules which reach capacity in three to four days when operating continuously at nominal production. Downtime due to weather and maintenance is expected to extend this average loading time to five days over the year.

Offload operations commence when the PV is approaching maximum hold capacity or as a TV is available to receive the nodule cargo. The nodules within the PV hold are fed through a controllable feed door to a conveyor that runs below the holds and moves the nodules to deck level. An offloading boom extends off the PV and deposits the nodules to a receiving TV.

Handling practices and bulk handling equipment is designed to minimize nodule attrition to maintain a coarse cargo size. The dewatering process removes the majority of free water from the cargo prior to storage and offload to the TV for transport. Test Mining offered valuable insights into the PSD and other physical properties of nodules following collection from the seabed, vertical transport, and dewatering. The nodule product from these trials underwent thorough physical property testing and cargo classification evaluations to assess potential risks related to vessel stability and other hazards during bulk handling and transport. The dewatered nodules in bulk are expected to maintain a particle size and possess free draining characteristics that will not pose a risk to vessel stability due to liquefaction or dynamic separation during storage on the PV and shipping on the TV.

13.3.3.7 TV

A fleet of purpose-built TVs with DP capabilities receive dewatered nodules from the PV via the offloading boom. The PV mining operations continue during the offload that takes approximately 20 hours if the PV holds are at full capacity.

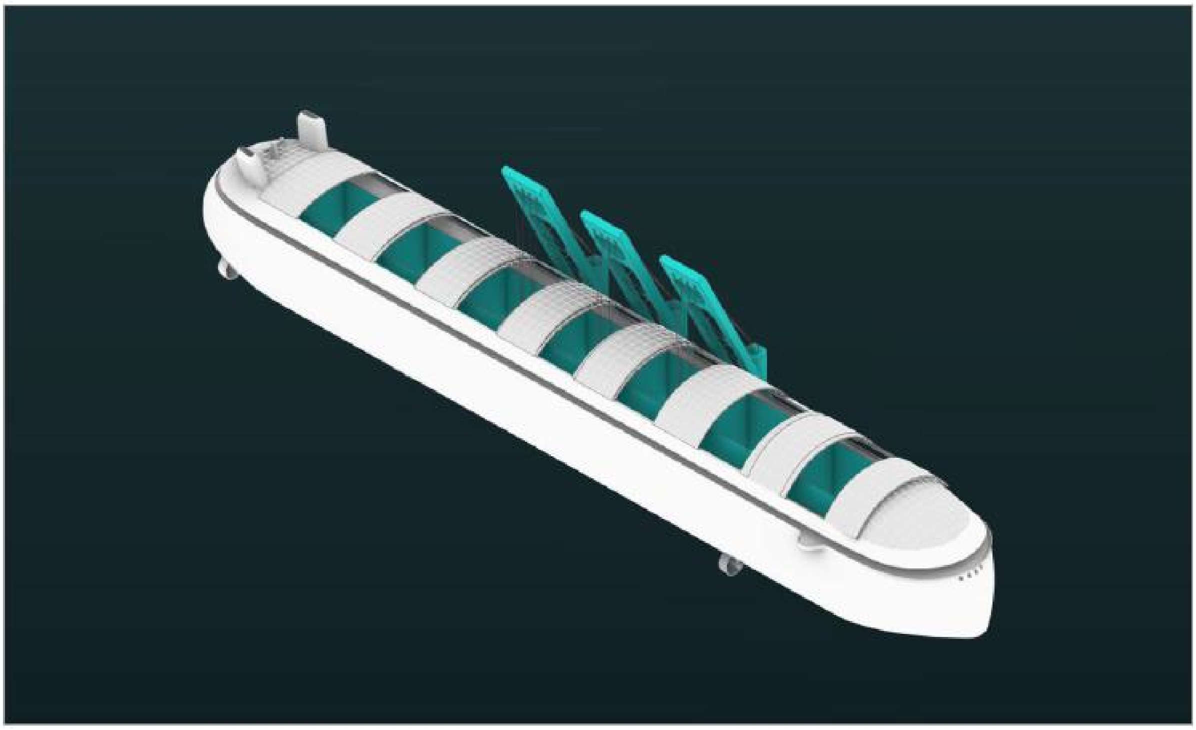
The TV propulsion thrusters and other electrical consumers are powered by the vessel's diesel generator powerplant. The 2nd Gen TV key specifications are detailed in Table 13.2.

Table 13.2 2nd Gen TV Key Specifications

Parameter	Value	Unit
Length	295	m
Beam	50	m
Displacement	240,000	tonnes
Installed power	30 MW	MW
Accommodation	30	beds
Nodule storage capacity	200,000	Wet metric tonnes
Transit speed	12	knots

The TV is designed to accommodate two full offloads from the PV. Once the vessel reaches its 200,000-tonne nodule hold capacity, it departs the mining area and begins transit to Indonesia for offloading operations. Upon arrival, the TV docks alongside the terminal, where unloading is carried out using shoreside cranes. The vessels multiple hatch covers provide simultaneous access to multiple cargo holds, enabling efficient and timely discharge of the collected nodules (Figure 13.10).

Figure 13.10 Artist impression of TV in port with hatches open during nodule offloading operations



Source: TMC

13.3.3.8 Operating conditions and downtime

The 2nd Gen is designed to allow all nodule collection, dewatering, storage and transfer operations to occur in sea states up to significant wave height (Hs) of 3.5 m and wind speeds up to 25 knots. The PV and TV may be placed into a survival mode in extreme sea states resulting from severe storms or tropical hurricanes. The TV and PV have the option to leave the area if conditions are forecasted that are deemed to put the vessels safety at risk.

Given the extended project timeline and rapid advancements in maritime automation, it is anticipated by the QP that key elements of the transport fleet, particularly the TV, will feature semi- or fully autonomous capabilities by the time of deployment. Developments in autonomous navigation, real-time situational awareness, remote monitoring, and predictive maintenance are expected by the QP to make long-range autonomous cargo operations technically feasible and commercially attractive. The incorporation of these technologies is expected by the QP to enhance operational safety, reduce crew requirements, and optimize routing. As part of its commitment to innovation and sustainability, TMC has stated that it will assess and integrate autonomy-enabling technologies as they mature.

The PV is assumed to undergo survey at sea and at drydock to meet class requirements. In field surveys are planned on an annual basis and include internal inspections and external inspections by divers or ROV. Every 10 years, the PV is expected to return to port for a dry dock survey. The TV is expected to have survey in drydock every 5 years. Due to the proximity of Indonesian unloading ports to potential dry dock locations, the surveys may occur more frequently to clear biofouling from the TV hull and at times that match dips in the PV fleet's production forecasts.

13.4 Offshore support and logistics

Offshore operations in the TMC property are expected to be supported by a fleet of SVs and an operations management and supply base located on the West Coast of the USA. The PVs are expected to be refueled and resupplied at sea, removing the need for the PVs to conduct port calls. The TVs take on bunkers during their offloading operation in Indonesia. Crew changes and resupply for the TVs also occur in Indonesia to avoid at sea personnel, bunker and cargo transfers.

The supply base provides an area for equipment spare storage, area for offshore personnel to prepare for the transit to the TMC property and will be located in proximity to bunkering facilities. All personnel, fuel, equipment, spares and other logistics to support the offshore operations pass through this supply base.

A fleet of SVs provide the connection between offshore operations and the supply base. These vessels are modelled on offshore supply vessels and are capable of carrying personnel, equipment and fuel on the approximate 4 day transit to the field.

Figure 13.11 MV Island Commander, example of offshore supply vessel used in the oil and gas industry

Source: https://www.vard.com/shipbuilding/references/island-centurion

Personnel are transferred from the SV to the PV via man basket or walk to work solution. Bunker fuel is transferred from the SV to the PV via a flexible fueling hose, while other cargo is craned from the deck of the SV by the PV deck cranes.

13.5 Mining philosophy

Eight identical PVs are brought online over the LOM, each supported by a fleet of TVs and SVs, with synergies expected when multiple PVs are operating in the same area concurrently.

Long term mine planning for the fleet of PVs is based on the limited available bathymetry and resource data, with high abundance and high-grade Contract Areas to be targeted first. Production is expected to be scheduled to match onshore processing capacity. Prior to operations, high resolution acoustic and visual survey of the proposed mining areas is conducted from AUV. This survey identified obstacles or conditions that may impede nodule collection and provides detail on nodule abundance and the short-range variability of abundance within the mine plan.

Long mining paths are planned where possible to reduce turn frequencies which require orchestrated maneuvers of the CV umbilical and VTS and may reduce collection speed and therefore production rates. Long runs without turns provide extended periods for TVs to come alongside the PV for offloading operations.

For each PV, a path planning tool is utilized to plan the optimal paths that the three CVs follow on the seafloor. This path considers the overall mining sequence, seafloor bathymetry and obstacles, nodule type and abundance, in addition to other operational constraints such as surface vessel offloading or resupply operations.

13.6 Offshore operations

13.6.1 PVs

The seafloor collection system, PVs, TVs, and SVs must operate in a coordinated and synchronized manner to ensure efficient system-wide performance. Priority is given to maintaining continuous mining operations with minimal downtime. Table 13.3 outlines the key production parameters of the (PV), which form the basis for all transport and offshore logistics planning. Note that the table reflects operations in the lower abundance areas of NORI A-C and TOML A to E where 5 Mwmtpa is expected, rather than the TOML-F area where 7 Mwmtpa is expected in the production schedule.

Table 13.3 PV key operating parameters

Description	Value	unit
Annual Production	5	Mwmtpa
Annual operating time	5,584	h
Nominal production rate	895	wmt/h
Hold capacity	100,000	t
Time to full capacity	5	days
Offloading rate	5,000	wmt/h

13.6.2 TVs

The TV, once loaded to the 200,000 mt capacity by the PV will sail approximately 7,100 nm west to Indonesia for unloading for processing at an RKEF facility.

Table 13.4 summarizes the primary movements of the TVs for a 2nd Gen producing 5 Mwmtpa between the Property and an unloading port in Indonesia. Key assumptions for the TV operations include:

- Offloading from the PV to the TV occurs during daylight hours (12 hours) at 5,000 mtph.
- Time for the PV to reach 100,000 mt capacity is expected to vary and is influenced by planned and unplanned breakdown and weather events leading to a reduction or stop to nominal production rates, and therefore the PV fill rate. This range is reflected in the 'standby between loads'.
- A loading allowance has been included, this covers time required for the TV to come alongside the PV, hatch opening, repositioning of the TV to allow the PV to load a new hatch.
- Unloading in port only conducted during day light hours and at 2,500 mtph.

Table 13.4 TV average cycle time estimate

Activity	Location	Distance (nm)	Speed (kn)	Duration (days)
Loading 100,000 tmo - PV to TV	CCZ			2
Standby between loads	CCZ			4-7
Loading 100,000 mt - PV to TV	CCZ			2
Loading allowance	CCZ			2
Transit	CCZ to Indonesia	7,100	12	25
Port Access	Indonesia			1
Unloading	Indonesia			7
Transit	Indonesia to CCZ	13,200	12	25
Total cycle time				**68 - 71**

To meet the annual production rates of 7 Mwmtpa and 5 Mwmtpa, 35 trips and 25 trips are conducted by the TVs, respectively. To avoid production halting due to TV availability, an allowance of seven and five TVs has been made for operations in the TOML-F and other areas, respectively.

13.6.3 SVs

SVs are brought online as PV operations ramp up. An allowance is made for three SVs for each PV. This brings a total of 24 SVs supporting the eight PVs across the LOM.

The SVs follow a scheduled cycle where personnel, bunker and supplies are delivered to the operating PVs to meet offshore personnel roster timings and bunker consumption requirements

13.6.4 Onshore control centre and Offshore maintenance

To improve operational efficiency and reduce offshore personnel requirements, TMC has stated that it plans to prioritize development of autonomous systems that will be managed remotely from the Supply Base. This centralized approach will enable real-time oversight and decision-making while minimizing the need for continuous crew presence at sea. Maintenance activities are expected to be conducted by specialized mobile teams who travel between vessels as required, rather than stationing dedicated personnel on each unit. This model will not only enhance safety by limiting offshore exposure but also optimize staffing levels and reduce associated logistical and accommodation costs.

13.6.5 Marine infrastructure

TMC is planning to utilize existing marine and port infrastructure to receive and unload nodule cargo from the TVs in Indonesia. Similar and existing ports are assumed to be used to load matte produced by the Indonesian RKEF facilities onto Handymax size bulk carriers. The matte is planned to be packed and shipped in bulk bags for ease of handling.

The matte will be shipped across the Pacific Ocean and through the Panama Canal for offload at an existing port facility in Texas, USA. Here, the bulk bags of matte are expected to be unloaded by shoreside cranes and transferred to a refinery for further processing to marketable material.

13.7 Update of potential mining domains

TOML and NORI collected MBES data in 2012 and 2013, respectively, using the hull-mounted Kongsberg Simrad EM120 12 kHz, full-ocean depth multibeam system aboard the RV Mt. Mitchell. First pass processing of the MBES data was carried out at the time with the intent of identifying areas of nodule abundance to be further surveyed with higher resolution AUV-based sonar and to selecting priority areas for nodule sampling.

More sophisticated processing to clean the MBES data and achieve the highest possible resolution maps of the bathymetry was not carried out at the time. In particular, the MBES survey data for these areas was not processed with identification of slope angles as a specific objective. Interpretation of domains likely to be unsuitable for mining was based on interpretation of the areas of volcanic rocks or nodule-poor areas, based on backscatter data.

For the conceptual design of a seafloor mining system as part of the IA of TOML Areas A to F and NORI Areas A to C, it is assumed that mining operations are expected to be limited to seafloor slopes less than 6°. To align the domain interpretations with this assumption, the MBES data and domain interpretations were re-examined.

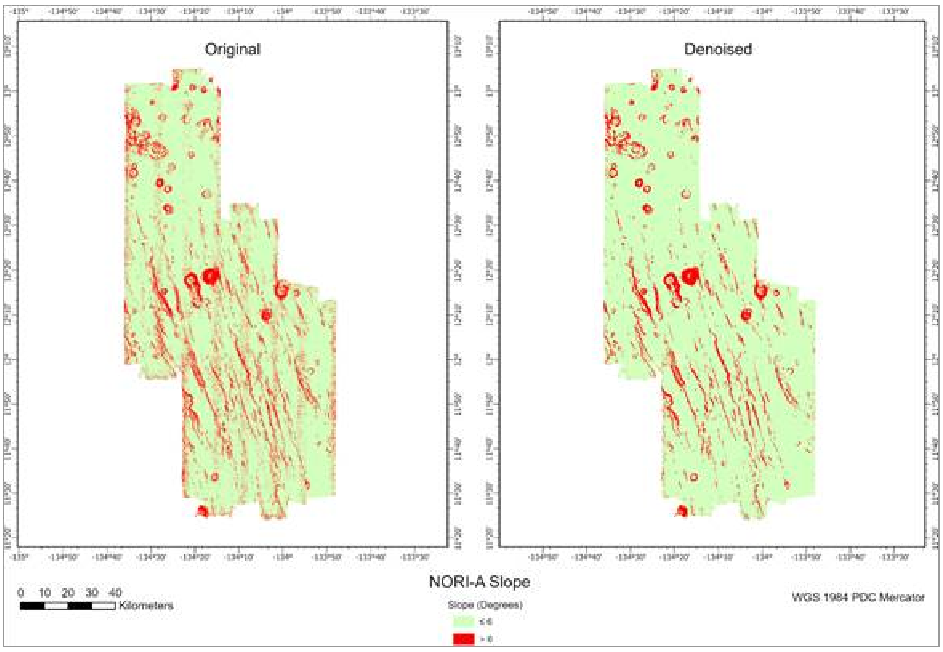
The bathymetry maps produced by the first pass modelling show significant noise in the areas of overlap between the surveyed swaths. The noise included many points with slopes incorrectly modelled as greater than 6°. TMC used the "Mesh Denoise" tool in QGIS software to remove noise from the bathymetric models. The algorithm behind the denoise tool is specifically designed to remove noise that may lower the quality of geomorphometric analyses. The algorithm denoises three-dimensional objects while preserving sharp features. The authors of the algorithm note that "the feature-preserving nature of the algorithm allows significant smoothing to be applied to flat areas of topography while limiting the alterations made in mountainous regions, with clear benefits for geomorphometric analysis in areas of mixed topography

(Stevenson et al, 2010).

After applying the mesh denoise tool, the areas with slopes greater than 6° were calculated. The maps of slopes greater than 6° before and after denoising were examined visually and statistically. Figure 13.12 to Source: TMC

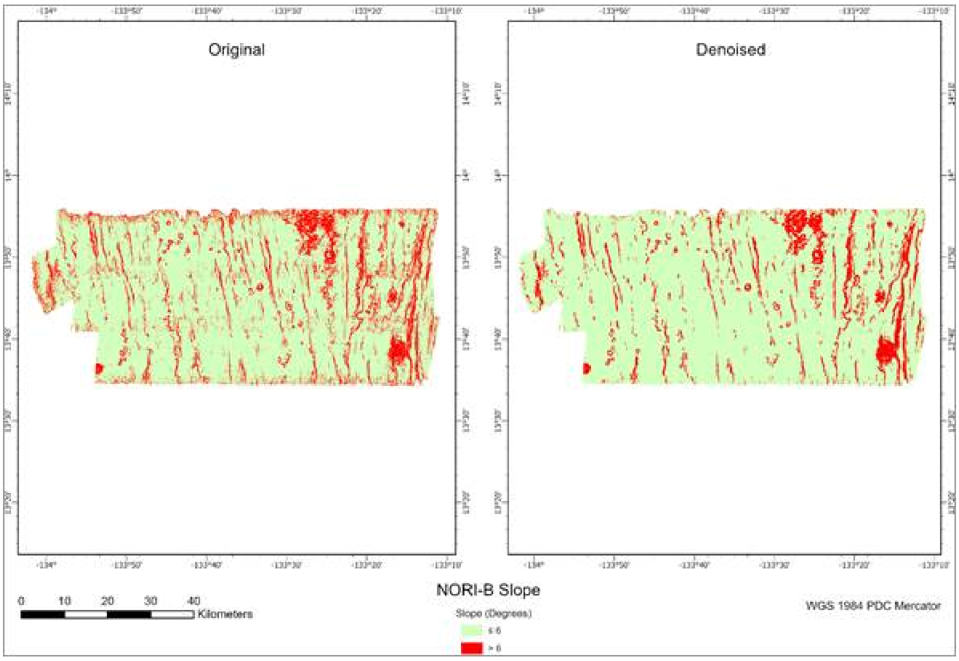
Figure 13.18 compare original and denoised maps for NORI-A to C and TOML-B to F. The maps before denoising (left hand side) show bands of noise in east-west or north-south directions where the MBES swaths overlapped. In the denoised maps on the right-hand side, this noise has been effectively removed. The NNE-trending ridges and volcanic cones do not appear to be significantly affected by the denoising process.

Figure 13.12 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-A



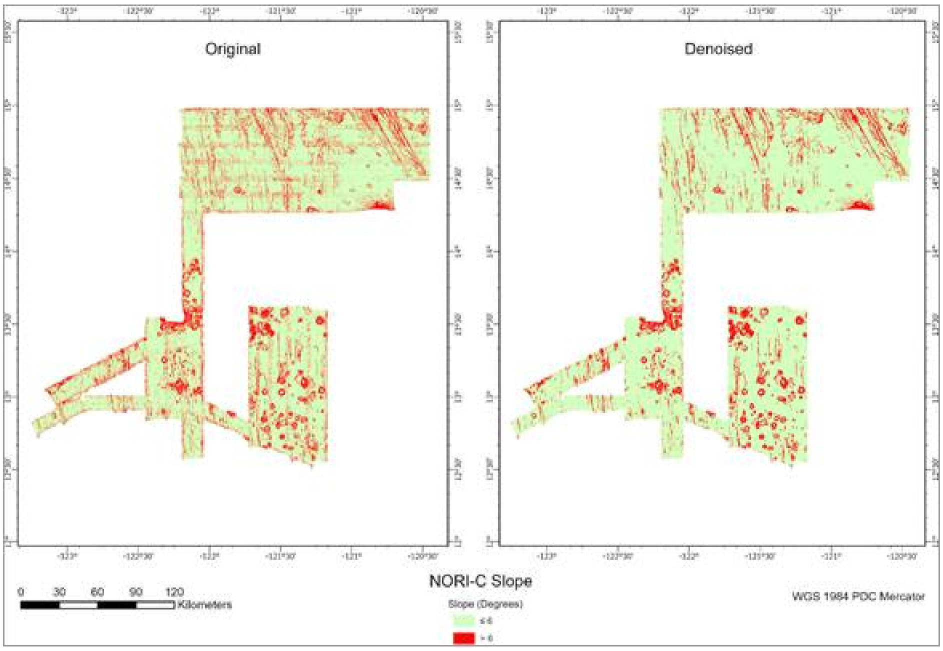
Source: TMC

Figure 13.13 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-B



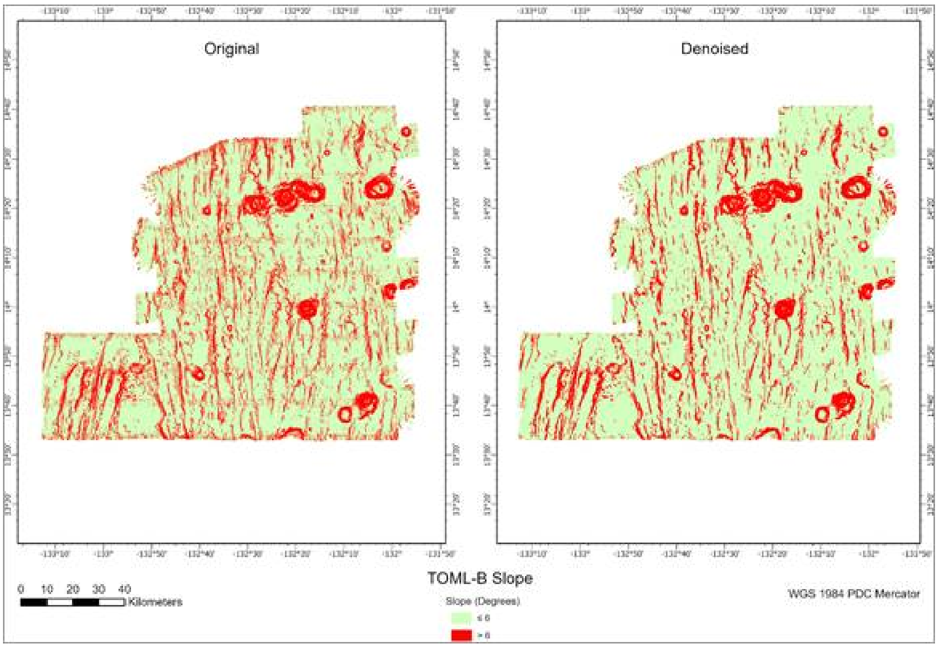
Source: TMC

Figure 13.14 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, NORI-C



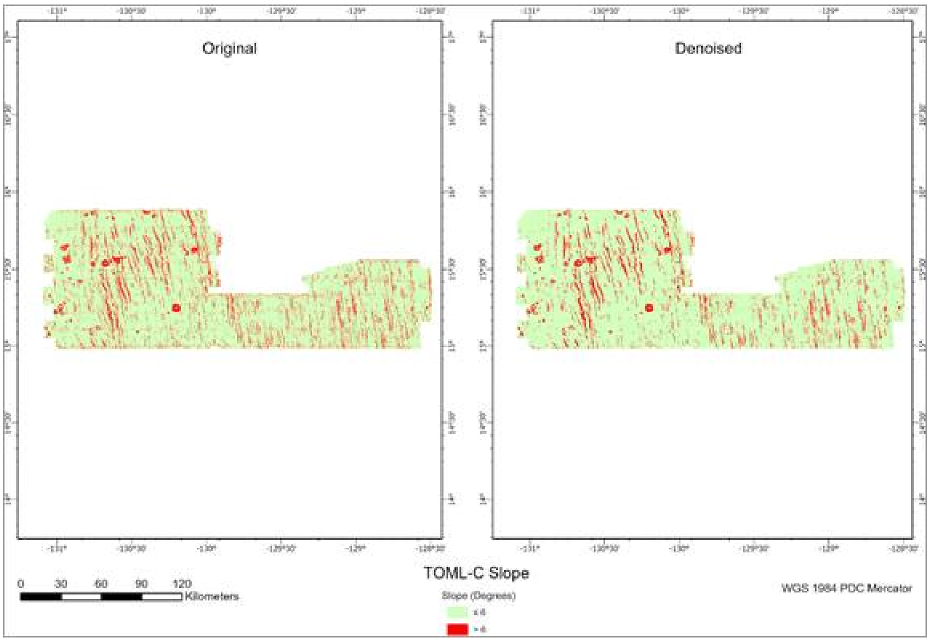
Source: TMC

Figure 13.15 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-B



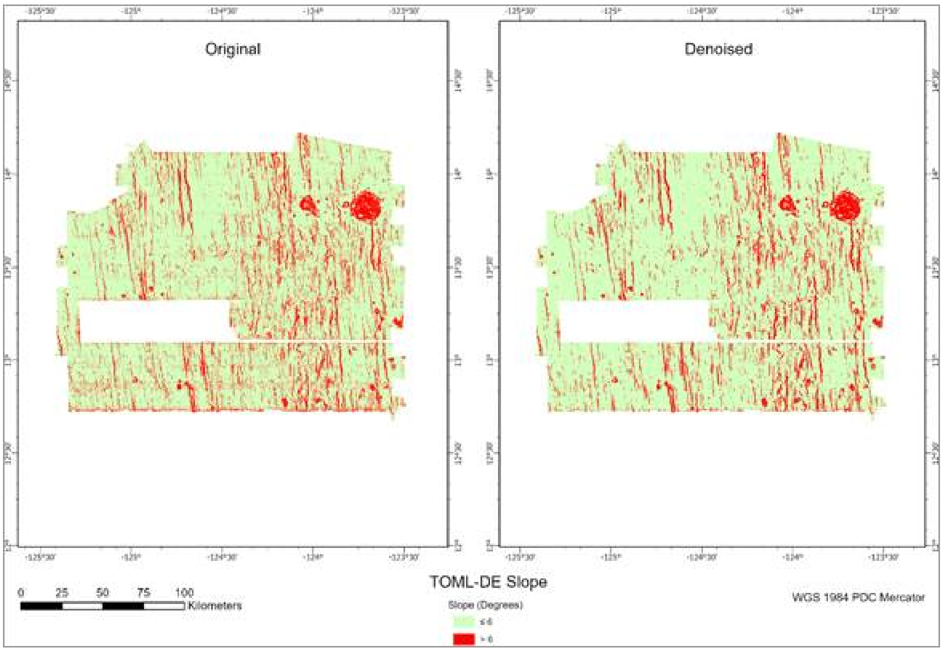
Source: TMC

Figure 13.16 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-C



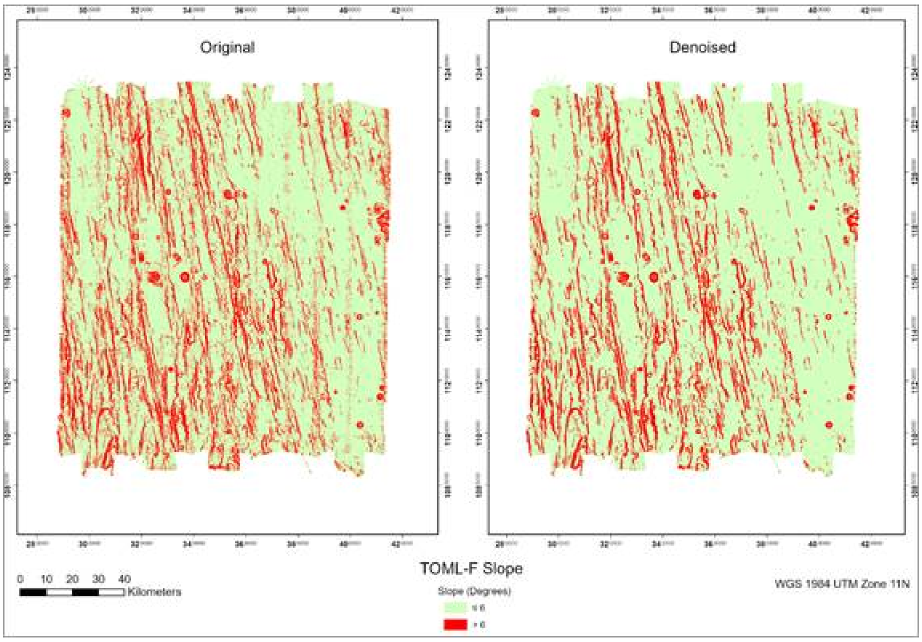
Source: TMC

Figure 13.17 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-DE



Source: TMC

Figure 13.18 Comparison of slopes >6° in original and denoised bathymetry, TOML-F



Source: TMC

Figure 13.19 compares denoised bathymetric maps of NORI-A, B, C and D, colored by depth below sea level. Source: TMC

Figure 13.20 presents a similar comparison for TOML B, C, DE, and F. Each TOML exhibits elements of the structural features and nine geological domains described in Section 6.2 and Section 6.3. The dominant geological and geomorphological domain in all areas is abyssal plain. Within the plains, abyssal hills with a northerly or north-northeasterly trend and scattered volcanic cones are common but form minor proportions of the areas. Although a bathymetric model of similar resolution is not available for TOML A, its similar regional and geological setting indicates that similar geomorphology can be expected.

These similarities indicate that it can be reasonably assumed that seafloor mining systems designed for NORI Area D may be suitable for mining nodules within the same geomorphological domains in NORI-A, B, C and TOML A, B, C, D, E, and F.

The key geomorphological domains considered in the engineering design and mine planning for NORI Area D are the slopes of the abyssal hills and volcanic cones. In the PFS for NORI Area D, the seafloor mining system was designed to operate on slopes less than 4° and slopes steeper than this limit were excised from the mine plan and production schedule. TMC considers that with the accumulation of operating experience in NORI Area D and further enhancements of engineering design, future mining systems are expected to be able to operate up to 6°, which was the assumption made in the IA of NORI Area D in 2021 (AMC Consultants, 2021a).

Therefore, for the purposes of the 2025 IA of NORI-A, B, C and TOML A, B, C, D, E, and F, it is appropriate to excise areas with slopes greater than 6° from the Mineral Resource that would otherwise be available for mining.

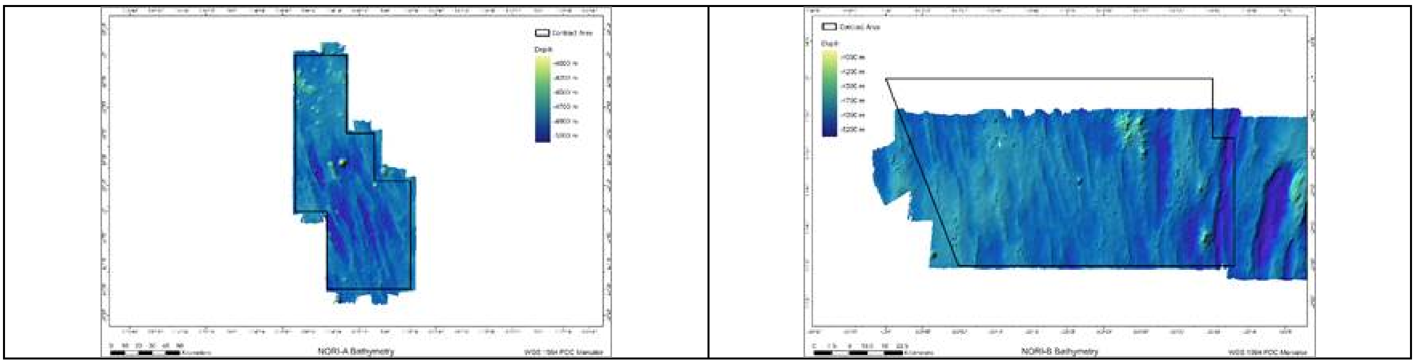
No blocks were excised from the Mineral Resource block models for NORI A, B, and C when the models were generated in 2012 because the areas interpreted from backscatter as nodule-poor were considered to be insignificant in respect to the Inferred Mineral Resources and areas with slopes greater than 6° were not recognized as a potential impediment to mining. Therefore, in these models there are no blocks with zero abundance or zero grades.

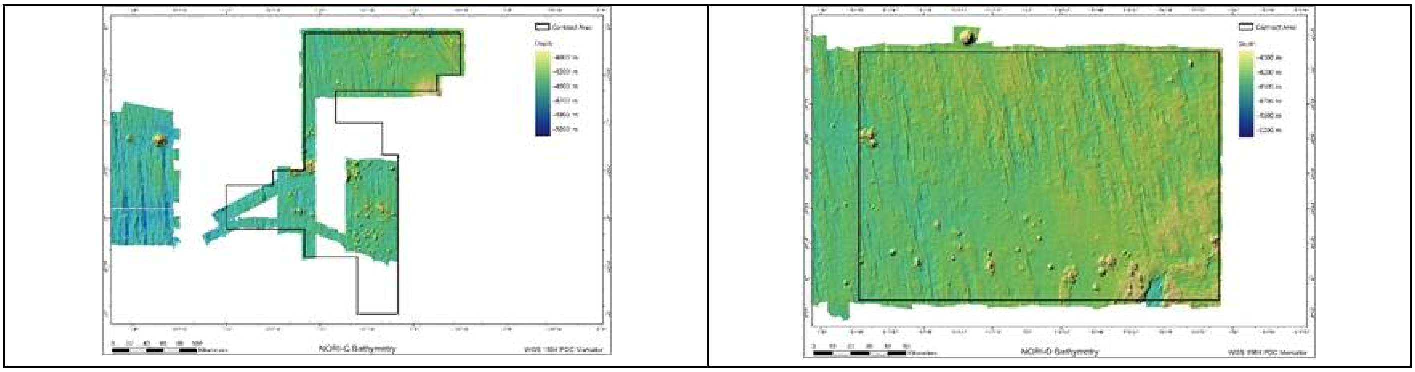
The approach taken with the Mineral Resource block models for TOML-A, B, C, D, E and F when they were originally generated in 2013 was different to the NORI models. On average, 16% of blocks were excised from the TOML Mineral Resource block models because they were interpreted as nodule-poor areas of volcanic rocks or sediment cover. Abundance and grades were set to zero in these blocks. Slope angles were not explicitly considered in the interpretation. Therefore, although there is a high degree of overlap between slopes > 6° and volcanic cones, the abyssal ridges > 6° were commonly not excised. Furthermore, the interpreted areas of sediment cover ("no nodule ooze") were not ground-truthed with BC sampling or photography.

In order to prepare the TOML block models for excision of slopes greater than 6° and volcanic cones, it was first necessary to fill the blocks that had previously been assigned zero abundance and zero grades. This was achieved by estimating the grades of the zero blocks from the grades of the surrounding blocks. IDW with a circular search was used and NN estimates were also generated as a check. The total tonnage and grade of nodules was not materially changed.

For the 2025 IA, the proportion of seafloor with slopes > 6° within each area were excised from the Mineral Resource models as an average proportion.

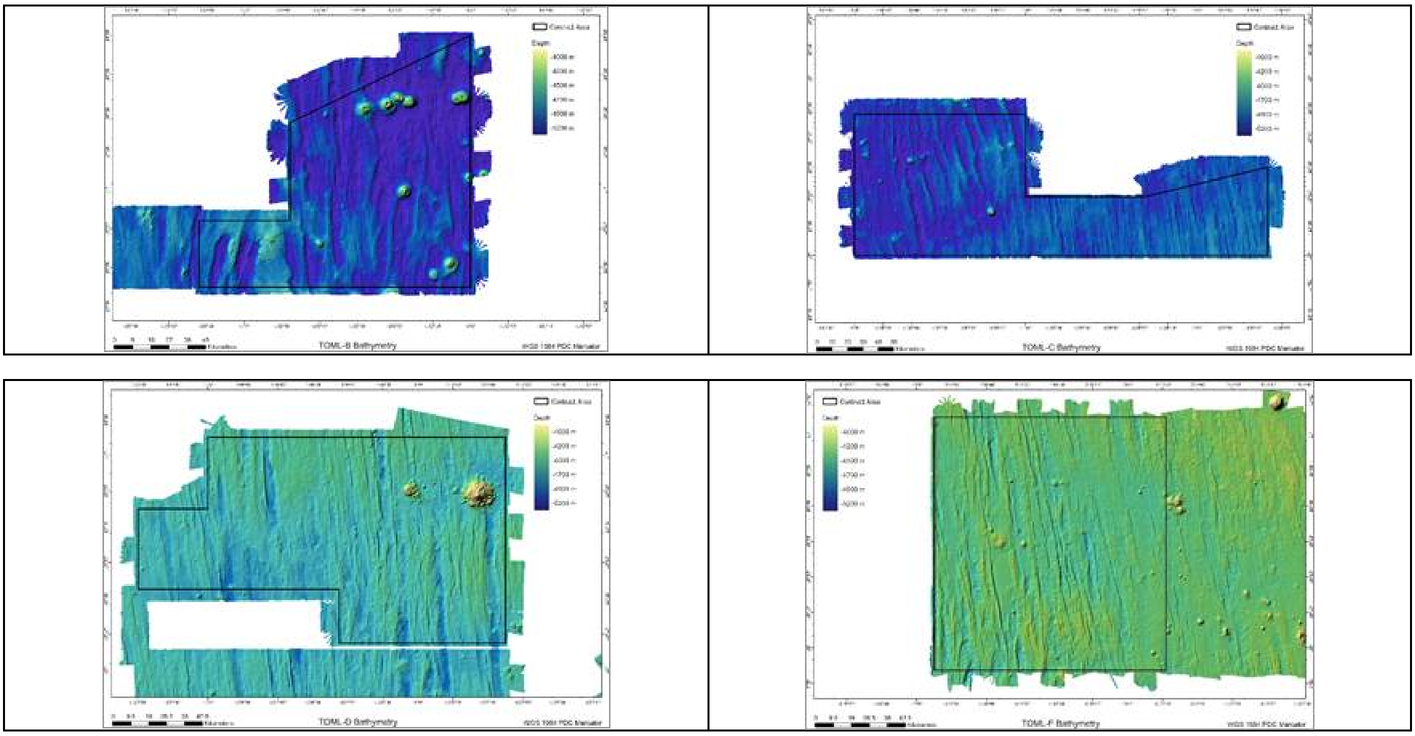
Figure 13.19 Bathymetric maps of NORI-A, B, C and D





Source: TMC

Figure 13.20 Bathymetric maps of TOML-B, C, D, E and F



Source: TMC

13.8 LOM basis of design

13.8.1 Mine planning factors overview

Mine planning factors are the assumptions and parameters that are used to quantify the amount of nodules that can be recovered from the seafloor and transported to market. Mine planning factors are broadly separated into three groups:

- Factors used to estimate the quantity of nodules collected.
- Factors used to estimate the rate at which nodules can be collected.
- Factors used to determine the economics of nodules being collected (see Section 19).

To estimate the quantity of nodules collected, the following mine planning factors are taken into consideration:

- Nodules must be located outside sensitive environmental zones (such as seamounts and their associated buffers) and outside the buffer around the lease boundary. Buffer zones of 1 km were applied in both cases to ensure that there is no impact on the sensitive environmental areas or other leases from sediment that is disturbed and mobilized during the nodule collection operation. Buffer zones were not applied to adjoining lease boundaries.
- Nodules must be located in potential mining domains, consisting of areas of less than 6° slopes, which is the maximum slope assumed for safe and productive collector operations. As collector technology matures, this slope may be increased.
- Nodules must be located outside areas of disruption on the seafloor (Geo-obstacles), where depressions, hardgrounds, and minor geological obstacles are expected to prevent collection operations.

- Nodules must be located outside the 1 m gap between collector paths that is left to ensure collectors are not operating over previously collected seafloor.
- Not all nodules traversed by the collector on the seafloor are picked up by the collector, and in addition there are losses caused by some nodules being beneath the collection zone of the collector (top 1-5 cm) or are lost within the collector hopper, VTS, dewatering screens or during transport to market.
- Areas where subsea cables have been installed, including a buffer around the cable.

To estimate the rate at which nodules can be collected, the following mine planning factors are taken into consideration:

- Physical dimensions and capability of the collectors, in particular, width and speed.
- Time the collection system is in operation, accounting for both the impact of the weather and the planned maintenance and repairs of the collector, VTS, and surface SV.
- Field efficiency of collection system, to account for the time the collector may be operating but not collecting nodules, such as when turning around at the end of a collector run, running over previously collected ground in avoiding Geo-obstacles, and general operating issues/delays.

To estimate the economics of nodules being collected, the following mine planning factors are taken into consideration:

- Nodule grades, abundance, moisture content, metal prices, metallurgical recoveries, and payabilities.
- Operating costs of the collection system, transport costs, processing costs and selling costs.
- Capital costs of the collection system and on-shore and off-shore infrastructure.
- Royalties.

13.8.2 Quantity of nodules recovered by the collector vehicle

13.8.2.1 Potential mining domains

Mining domains were delineated through the following process to estimate the quantity of nodules in areas of slope of less than 6° and outside sensitive environmental areas that are available to include in the mine plan. Refer to section 13.7 for a summary of the work to update potential mining domains.

The adjustment factors to account for nodules contained in areas of slope greater than 6° and in seamounts and associated 1 km buffers are shown by lease in Table 13.5.

Table 13.5 Slope and seamount adjustments

Lease	Slope > 6° and Seamount + 1 km Buffer
NORI-A	14.0%
NORI-B	13.7%
NORI-C	21.9%
TOML-A	16.4%
TOML-B	20.7%
TOML-C	13.1%
TOML-D	16.1%
TOML-E	16.3%
TOML-F	16.9%

13.8.2.2 Buffer Zones

Buffer zones of 1 km were used around sensitive environmental areas and the lease boundary to ensure that there is no impact on the sensitive environmental areas or other leases from sediment that is disturbed and mobilized during the nodule collection operation. Although TMC seafloor current modelling and sediment modelling indicate that the zone of disturbance will be significantly less than 1 km, a buffer zone of 1 km was selected to align with assumptions in the NORI Area D PFS TRS (AMC Consultants, 2025).

13.8.2.3 Geo-obstacles

Analysis of the short-scale geological features probability models developed for the NORI Area D was used to estimate nodule losses during collection in the NORI Area D as part of the PFS for NORI Area D (AMC Consultants, 2025). Visual assessment of these areas showed that, in addition to the area covered by the Geo-obstacles themselves, the Collector may not be able to access the areas between adjacent Geo-obstacles, isolating the nodules in these areas from collection.

The sterilization factors from the NORI Area D were used as a basis and were extrapolated over the property considered in this 2025 IA, in addition to assumptions related to the increased size of the 20 m wide CV and its ability to traverse obstacles of larger size than the 15 m wide CV considered under the PFS for NORI Area D (AMC, 2025).

For the IA of mining in NORI-A to C and TOML-A to F, it was assumed that a 20 m CV that was able to operate on slopes up to 6° would be less affected by the Geo-obstacles than the 15 m collector operating on slopes up to 4°. Conceptual-level estimates of the reduction in impacts with the larger collector were applied to the NORI Area D PFS estimates (AMC, 2025) for the smaller collector; firstly to the different types of geo-obstacle in the Initial Mining Area of NORI Area D (see Table 13.6).

A 20 m wide CV able to operate on slopes up to 6º would be able to straddle and therefore mine through larger Geo-obstacles than the 15 m wide CV operating on slopes up to 4º assessed as part of NORI Area D. While design specifications of the 20 m wide CV are unknown at this stage, an allowance for a 20% reduction in losses from depressions was assumed for this 2025 IA. In a similar way, an allowance for a 50% reduction loss in losses was made for the impact of the 2nd Gen CV being able to operate on slopes up to 6º compared to the 1st Gen CV which could only operate on slopes up to 4º. It was assumed that losses due to hardgrounds and volcanic features would not be impacted by the increased width of the CV and its ability to operate on steeper slopes. This resulted in an overall reduction of 26% in losses due to Geo-obstacles (7.7% instead of 10.4%) for the Initial Mining Area of NORI Area D. This was then applied to the areas of the total NORI Area D lease covered by each Geo-obstacle probability class to determine a net loss of nodules due to Geo-obstacles (see Table 13.7). This same percentage (15%) was then applied to NORI-A to C and TOML-A to F.

Table 13.6 Geo-obstacle assumptions

Geo-obstacle	Initial Mining Area, 15 m CV up to 4° Slope	Impact of 20 m CV, 6° Slope	Initial Mining Area, 20 m CV up to 6° Slope
Depression	5.0%	-20%	4.0%
Slope	3.4%	-50%	1.7%

Hardground	1.8%	-	1.8%
Volcanic	0.1%	-	0.1%
Total	**10.4%**	**-26%**	**7.7%**

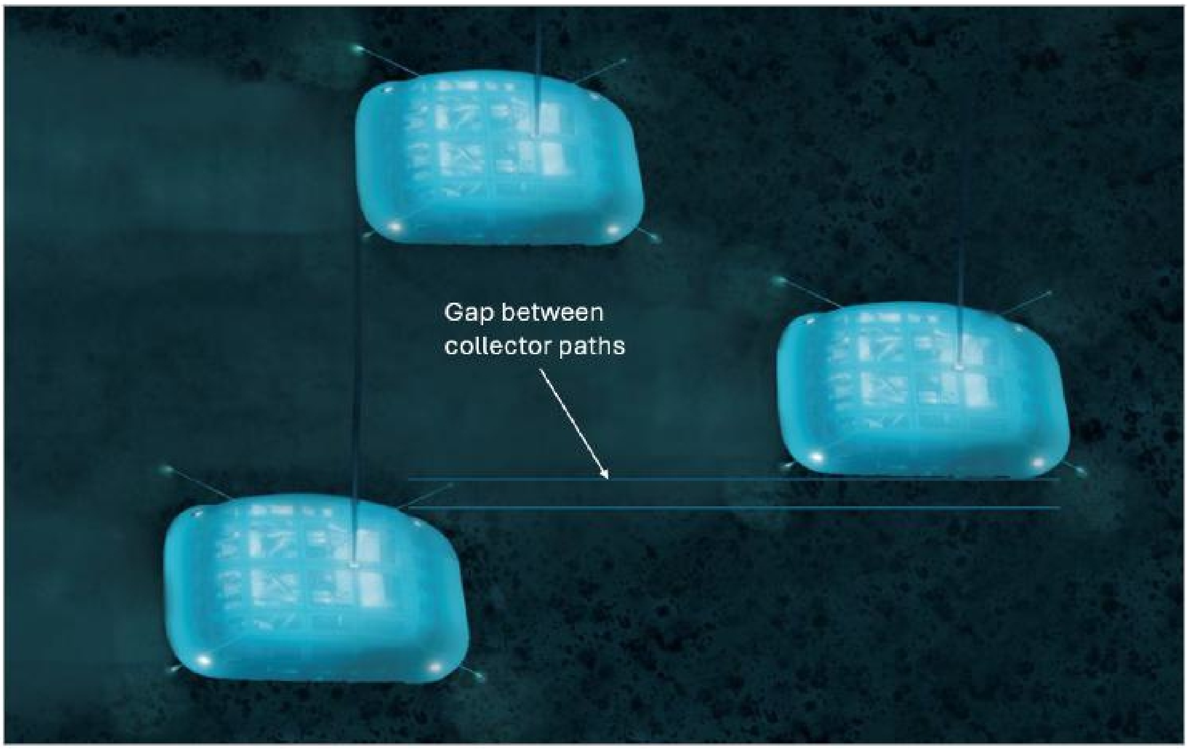
Table 13.7 Geo-obstacle mine planning factors

Probability Class	Total NORI Area D Lease 15 m CV/up to 4° Slope	Impact of 20 m CV, 6° Slope	Total NORI Area D Lease 20 m CV/up to 6° Slope
1	5.1%	-26%	3.8%
2	11.4%	-26%	8.4%
3	3.5%	-26%	2.6%
4	0.5%	-26%	0.3%
Total	20.4%	-26%	15.1%

13.8.2.4 Gap between collector paths

CVs on the seafloor will rely on acoustic systems for relative and absolute positioning. Optical and supplementary acoustic instrumentation installed on the CV will also assist in detecting previous collection paths and unexpected obstacles in the planned path of the vehicle. Inaccuracies resulting from these relative positioning systems are accounted for by the assumption that a 1 m gap will exist between each collection path during nominal operations. This allowance covers the scenario where a CV is operating on ground already mined by a leading CV, or the CV drifts off the collector path leaving a strip of nodules (Figure 13.21). The net size of the gap left by the CVs is 5% of the total collection width.

Figure 13.21 Artistic impression of CV operations showing a gap between collection paths



Source: TMC

13.8.2.5 Nodule collection recovery

The nodule recovery is defined as the mass of nodules removed from the seafloor and delivered to port, divided by the mass of nodules that the CV passes over.

Geological investigations indicate that 96% of nodules are within the collection layer of the top 5 cm of the seafloor, and therefore an allowance is made to account for nodule losses due to the collection heads not being able to access the nodules more than 5 cm below the seafloor.

The collection head efficiency, subsea separation that occurs in the CV hopper, dewatering system efficiency and losses during transfer at sea and from the TV to quayside is derived from results of Test Mining and first-generation collection vessel engineering works (refer to AMC 2025).

Recovery of nodules from the seafloor is itemized in Table 13.8.

Table 13.8 Nodule recovery components

Component	Recovery
Nodules accessed in the collection layer (vertical distribution)	96%
Collection system	85%
Sub-sea separation losses (CV to PV)	98%
Dewatering efficiency (PV)	98%
Transfer efficiency (transport from PV to market)	99%
Overall system recovery	78%

13.8.2.6 Overall recoverable inventory

The quantity of nodules estimated by area is shown in Table 13.9.

Table 13.9 Overall nodule inventory by area, outside of areas >6º and seamount and lease buffers with <4 kg/m^2 abundance cut off.

Recoverable Inventory	Area (km²)	Mt (wet)	Abundance (kg/m²)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
NORI-A	6,200	58	9.3	1.35	1.06	0.22	28.0
NORI-B	2,686	30	11.0	1.43	1.13	0.25	28.9
NORI-C	27,586	304	11.0	1.26	1.03	0.21	28.3
TOML-A	8,255	91	11.1	1.11	0.96	0.23	25.0
TOML-B	7,370	70	9.5	1.20	0.97	0.25	26.4
TOML-C	13,045	116	8.9	1.28	1.16	0.25	28.5
TOML-D	12,787	124	9.7	1.33	1.16	0.22	29.1
TOML-E	5,482	59	10.7	1.29	1.15	0.21	28.7
TOML-F	12,809	215	16.8	1.40	1.25	0.13	32.2
Total	**96,219**	**1,066**	**11.1**	**1.29**	**1.10**	**0.21**	**28.8**

Note: 1. Losses due to Geo-obstacles included in table below

The additional losses that are considered part of the collection system are shown in Table 13.10.

Table 13.10 Additional losses and recoverable inventory summary

Additional Adjustments	Recovery	Recovered (Mt wet)	Losses (Mt Wet)
Gap between collector paths (1 m per 21 m)	95.2%	1,015	50.8
Geo-obstacles	85%	863	152.3
Nodules accessed (vertical distribution)	96%	829	34.5
Nodule collection efficiency	85%	704	124.3
Collector separation efficiency	98%	690	14.1
Dewatering efficiency	98%	676	13.8
Losses during handling and transport	99%	670	6.8

13.8.3 Quantity of nodules recovered to market

13.8.3.1 Physical capacity of the CVs

The CV are 20 m wide and will travel along the seafloor and vary the forward speed to match the local nodule abundance. In areas of low abundance, the forward speed will be increased to maintain the nominal production rate, while in areas of high abundance, the forward speed will be reduced to control the quantity of nodules collected and avoid overfeeding the VTS with nodules that may cause blockage or overwhelming the vertical transport and dewatering functions. At a nominal forward speed of 0.55 m/s, each PV is expected to produce in excess of 8 Mwmtpa in the TOML-F area and in excess of 5 Mwmtpa in the other (lower abundance) areas. For the purposes of mine planning, the production rates are capped at 7 Mwmtpa and 5 Mwmtpa in the TOML-F and other areas, respectively. This production cap is introduced to account for anticipated constraints derived from limitation in the capacity and size of the VTS.

The CVs are assumed to be capable of maintaining nominal nodule collection rates on seafloor slopes up to 6°.

13.8.3.2 Weather

The production and LOM schedule include an allowance for operational downtime resulting from wave height and strong winds that halt operations. Sea surface conditions exceeding the operational limits of 3.5 m Hs and 25 knot wind speeds, in combination with an allowance for hurricanes, leads to an allowance of annual downtime due to weather of 5% or 18 days.

These weather exceedance events are typically expected to be brief, lasting less than two days. However, large hurricanes in close proximity to the PV may necessitate the recovery of VTS and the relocation of the PV. In such cases, the riser would need to be redeployed once the PV returns to the mining area, resulting in additional downtime. This contributes to the assumption of a 5% allowance, despite the weather condition operational limit exceedance for the area being less than 1% (Table 13.11).

Table 13.11 Metocean statistics for the Property

	Significant Wave Height (m)				
Month	Hs < 1.5	1.5 ≤ Hs < 2.0	2.0 ≤ Hs < 2.5	2.5 ≤ Hs < 3.5	Hs ≥ 3.5

January	3%	26%	43%	27%	1.3%
February	2%	28%	46%	23%	1.3%
March	2%	29%	44%	24%	0.6%
April	4%	36%	44%	16%	0.2%
May	11%	49%	35%	5%	0.0%
June	15%	60%	22%	3%	0.0%
July	17%	54%	26%	3%	0.1%
August	12%	49%	31%	7%	0.2%
September	11%	51%	29%	9%	0.2%
October	12%	49%	31%	7%	0.2%
November	7%	44%	38%	11%	0.2%
December	4%	27%	42%	25%	1.1%
All year	**8%**	**42%**	**36%**	**13%**	**0.4%**

Wind Speed (kn)						
Month	**Wsp < 5**	**5 ≤ Wsp < 10**	**10 ≤ Wsp < 15**	**15 ≤ Wsp < 20**	**20 ≤ Wsp < 25**	**Wsp ≥ 25**
January	1%	10%	47%	40%	1.9%	0.02%
February	0%	8%	52%	39%	1.2%	0.00%
March	0%	7%	51%	41%	0.6%	0.00%
April	1%	9%	61%	29%	0.2%	0.00%
May	5%	31%	55%	9%	0.0%	0.00%
June	3%	50%	42%	5%	0.0%	0.00%
July	5%	44%	29%	6%	0.4%	0.09%
August	3%	37%	52%	5%	0.2%	0.02%
September	1%	14%	35%	35%	1.2%	0.00%
October	2%	33%	45%	17%	0.6%	0.14%
November	1%	16%	42%	39%	1.0%	0.00%
December	4%	18%	49%	28%	1.1%	0.02%
All year	**1%**	**27%**	**42%**	**20%**	**0.7%**	**0.02%**

Source: MetOffice WAVEWATCH III (115168 data points from 24 Jan 1980 to 31 May 2019.

13.8.3.3 Planned maintenance and unplanned repairs

Routine planned maintenance programs covering all critical equipment is assumed to be implemented to minimize unplanned breakdowns. Critical spares are expected to be held onboard the PV with additional parts available for rapid mobilization to field from the supply base onboard a SV.

An unplanned breakdown allowance covers instances where production is halted or reduced due to collector malfunction, VTS issues or other breakdowns of critical nodule production, storage, offloading or transport equipment.

An annual allowance of 20% or 73 days has been included in the production and LOM schedule for planned maintenance and unplanned repairs.

13.8.3.4 Field efficiency

A field efficiency factor was applied to account for loss of production to various operational challenges. These include turning CVs at the end of a collection path, navigating around seafloor obstacles, passing over previously mined areas due to overlapping tracks and the potential impacts of offloading or resupply activities on production. To reflect the field efficiency of operations, a 15% reduction in production rate is added to the production figures.

13.8.3.5 Production rate summary

The above mine planning factors result in a production rate estimate as summarized in Table 13.12. Note that annual production rates for the 2nd Gen are capped at 7 Mwmtpa and 5 Mwmtpa for TOML-F and other areas, respectively. This cap has been introduced to reflect the potential limitations of the VTS to increase production rates due to the diameter of the flexible jumper and rigid section and limits on the concentration of nodules that may be transported through the VTS without causing increased risk of blockages.

Table 13.12 Production rate summary

Parameter	**2nd Gen**	**Unit**
CV Width	20	m
CV type	Tracked, Coanda nozzle	
No. CV	3	m
CV Speed	0.55	m/s
Nodule Collection Efficiency - Type 1	85%	%
Nodule Collection Efficiency - Type 2/3	85%	%
CV separation efficiency	98%	%
Dewatering Efficiency	98%	%
Losses during handling and transport	99%	%
Nodules accessed (vertical distribution)	96%	%

Seabed slope constraint	<6	Deg to Horizontal
Gap between runs	1	m

Non-productive time (downtime)	25%	%
Planned maintenance		
Unplanned maintenance/ breakdown		
Waiting on Weather		

Field Efficiency	15%	%
Slopes		
Turning time		
Obstructions		

Total hours	8760	h
Non-productive time (downtime)	25%	%
Collecting hours	5584.5	h

Field efficiency loss in production rate	15%	%

Avg abundance (TOML-F)	16.8	kg/m^2
Avg abundance (Other)	10.3	kg/m^2
Production per annum per PV (TOML-F)	8.65 (capped at 7)	Mwmtpa
Production per annum per PV (Other)	5.29 (capped at 5)	Mwmtpa

13.9 LOM plan

13.9.1 LOM plan assumptions

Production assumptions are discussed in Section 13.4.

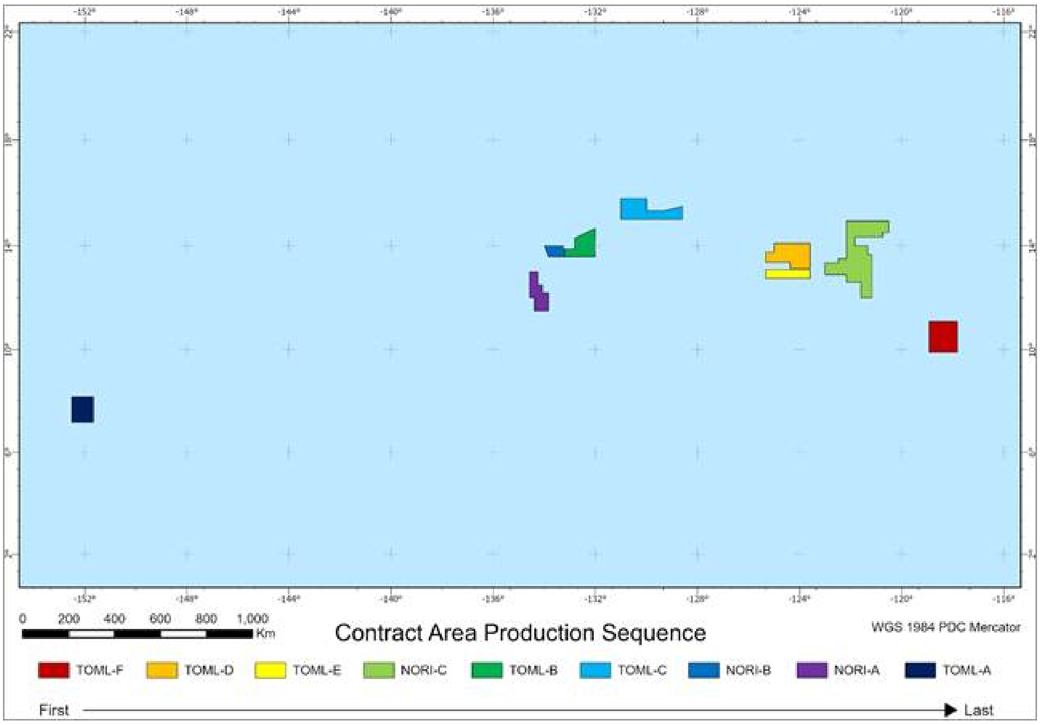
Sequencing of the NORI-TOML area for this IA was assumed in the following order:

- TOML-F – highest abundance, high grade and closest to NORI Area D
- TOML-D – next highest grade close to TOML-F
- TOML-E – mined in conjunction with TOML-D and immediately to the south
- NORI-C – largest lease, close to TOML-D and TOML-E
- TOML-B – close to NORI-C

- TOML-C – close to TOML-B
- NORI-B – next closest
- NORI-A – next closest
- TOML-A – lowest grade, furthest away

This predominantly east to west progression sequence is shown graphically in Figure 13.22.

Figure 13.22 NORI-TOML mining progression by lease



Source: AMC

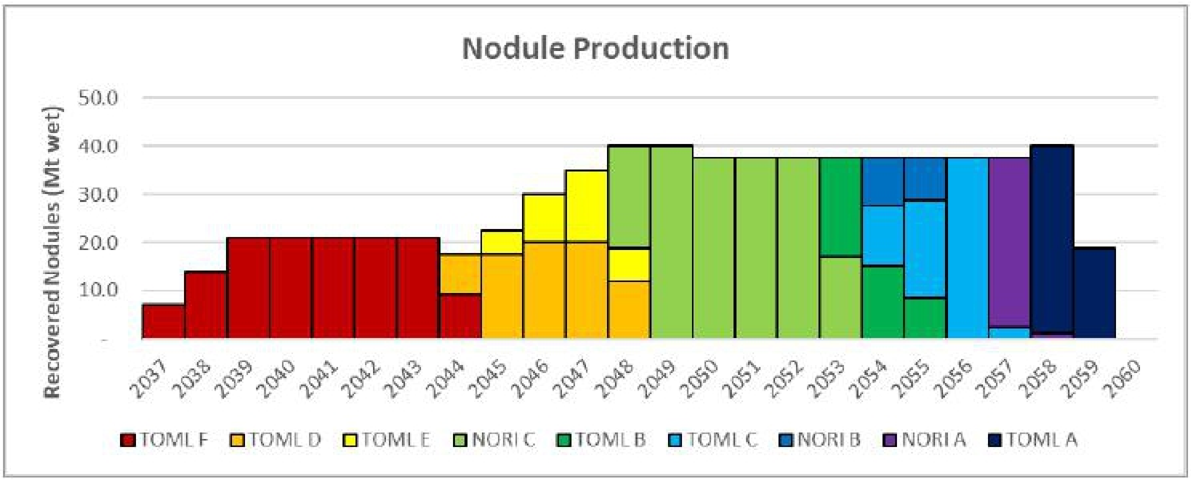
13.9.2 LOM plan result

The annual tonnage profile by lease is shown in Table 13.13 and graphically in Figure 13.25 (annual production by area) and Figure 13.26 (annual nodule abundance and grade).

Table 13.13 LOM plan production summary

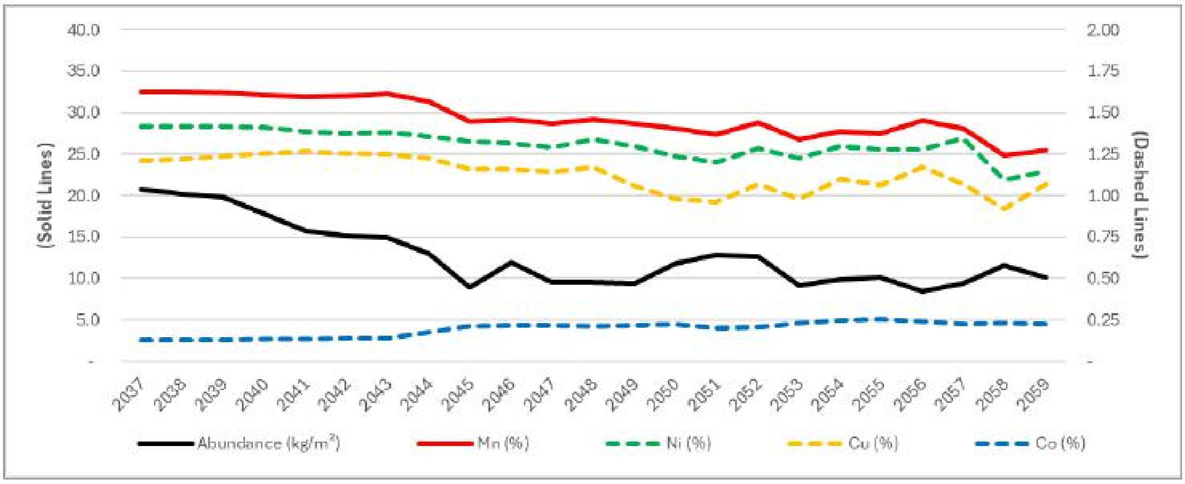
Year	TOML-F	TOML-D	TOML-E	NORI-C	TOML-B	TOML-C	NORI-B	NORI-A	TOML-A	Total
2037	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
2038	14	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	14
2039	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21
2040	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21
2041	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21
2042	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21
2043	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21
2044	9.3	8.2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	17.5
2045	0	17.5	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	22.5
2046	0	20	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	30
2047	0	20	15	0	0	0	0	0	0	35
2048	0	11.9	6.8	21.3	0	0	0	0	0	40
2049	0	0	0	40	0	0	0	0	0	40
2050	0	0	0	37.5	0	0	0	0	0	37.5
2051	0	0	0	37.5	0	0	0	0	0	37.5
2052	0	0	0	37.5	0	0	0	0	0	37.5
2053	0	0	0	17	20.5	0	0	0	0	37.5
2054	0	0	0	0	15	12.5	10	0	0	37.5
2055	0	0	0	0	8.6	20.3	8.6	0	0	37.5
2056	0	0	0	0	0	37.5	0	0	0	37.5
2057	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	35.2	0	37.5
2058	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1.2	38.8	40
2059	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	18.7	18.7
Total	**135.3**	**77.6**	**36.8**	**190.8**	**44.1**	**72.7**	**18.6**	**36.4**	**57.5**	**669.7**

Figure 13.23 LOM plan annual production by lease



Source: AMC

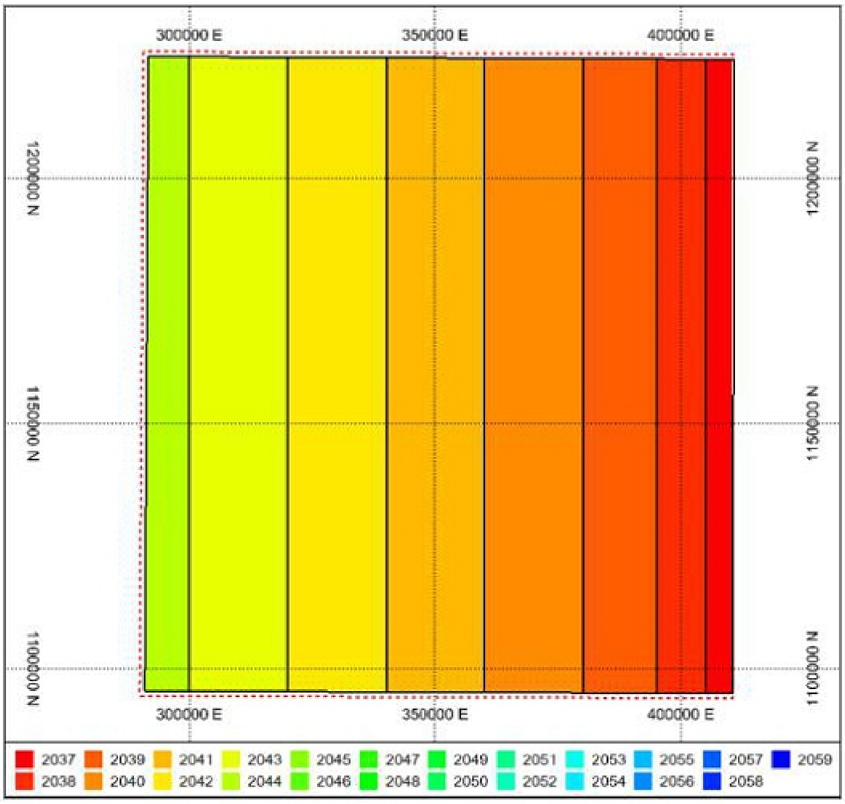
Figure 13.24 LOM plan annual nodule abundance and grades



Source: AMC

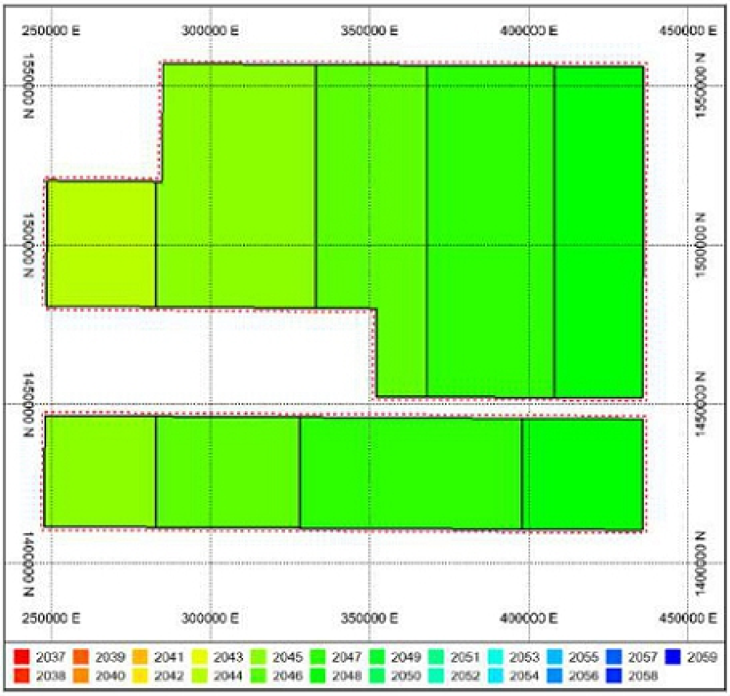
Lease by lease progression plans are shown in Figure 13.25 to Figure 13.32.

Figure 13.25 TOML-F collection sequence by year



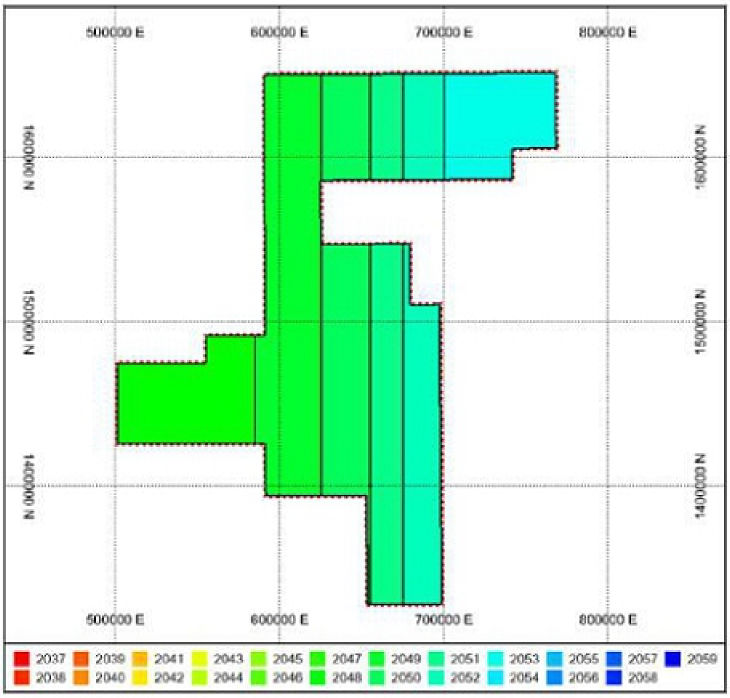
Source: AMC

Figure 13.26 TOML-D/TOML-E collection sequence by year



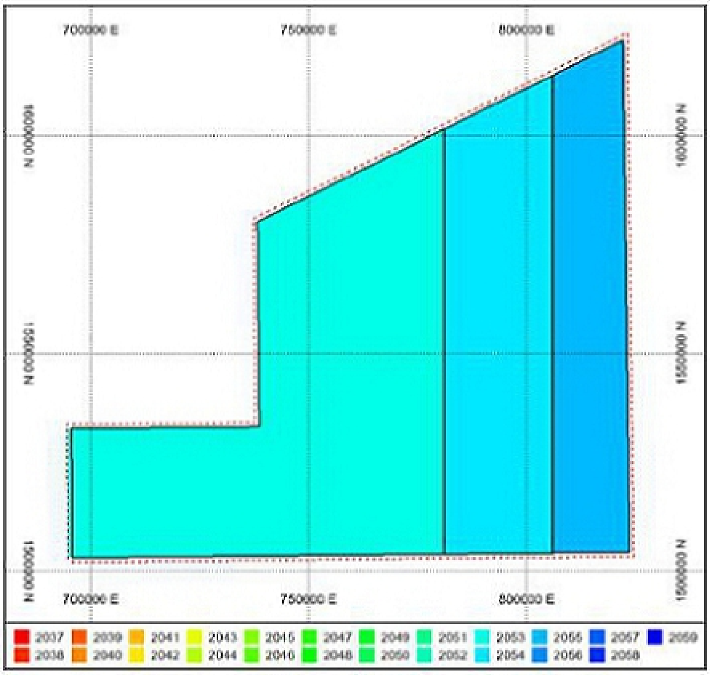
Source: AMC

Figure 13.27 NORI-C collection sequence by year



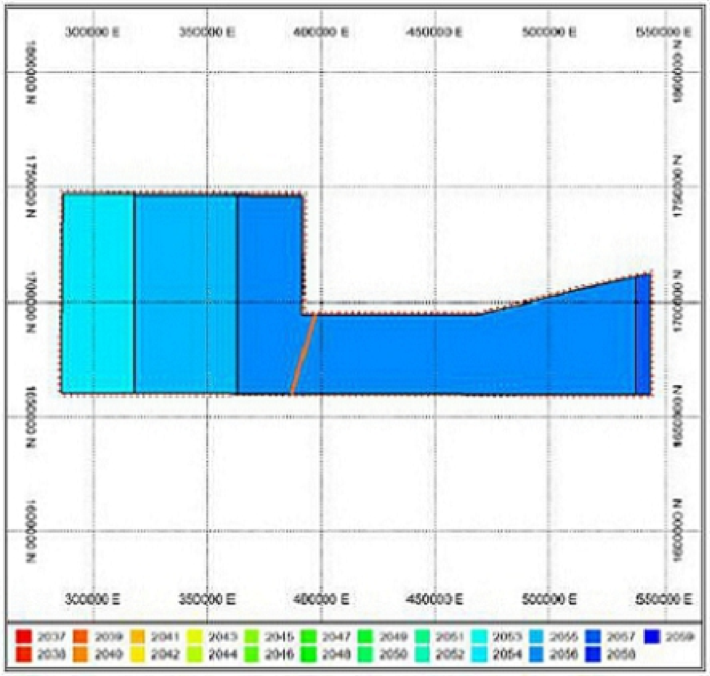
Source: AMC

Figure 13.28 TOML-B collection sequence by year



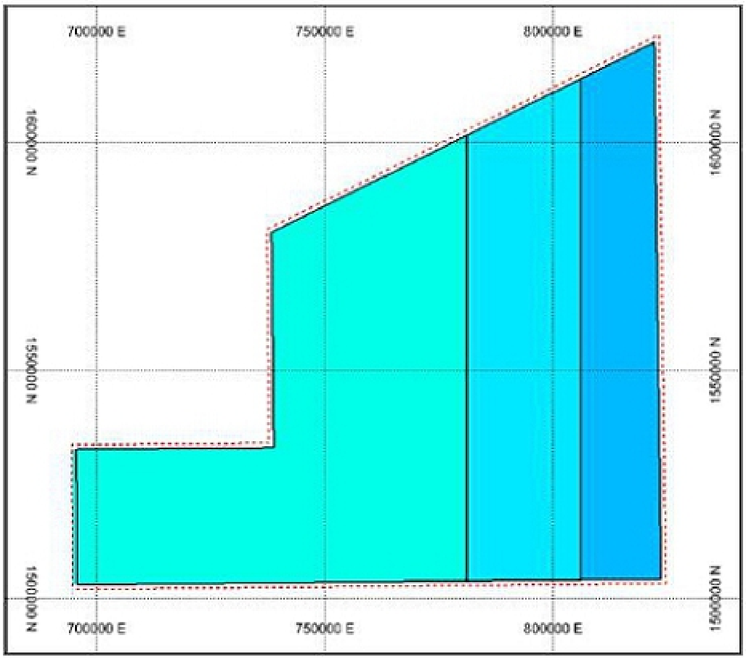
Source: AMC

Figure 13.29 TOML-C collection sequence by year



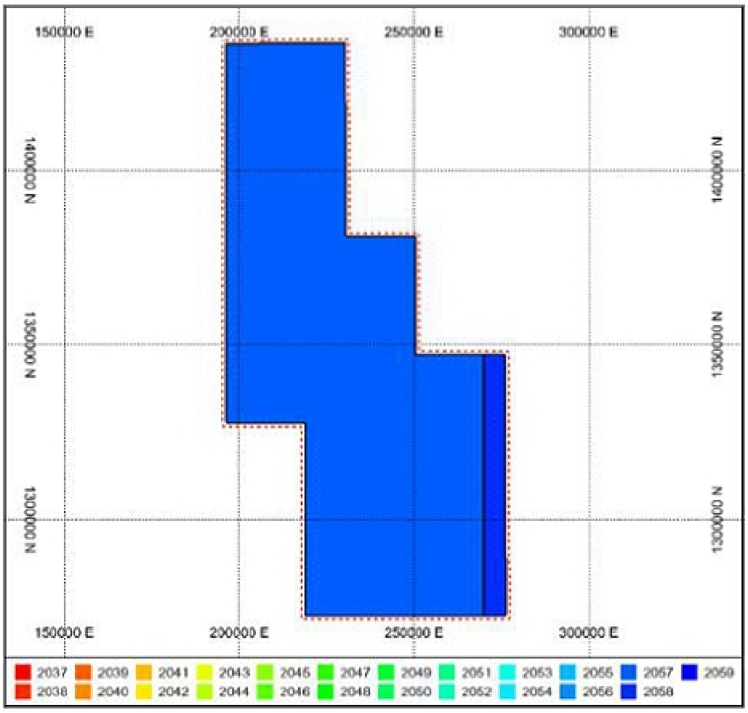
Source: AMC. Note a cable has been identified within the TOML-D area. The cable will be considered within the mine plan when developed with any exclusion zones to be confirmed.

Figure 13.30 NORI-B collection sequence by year



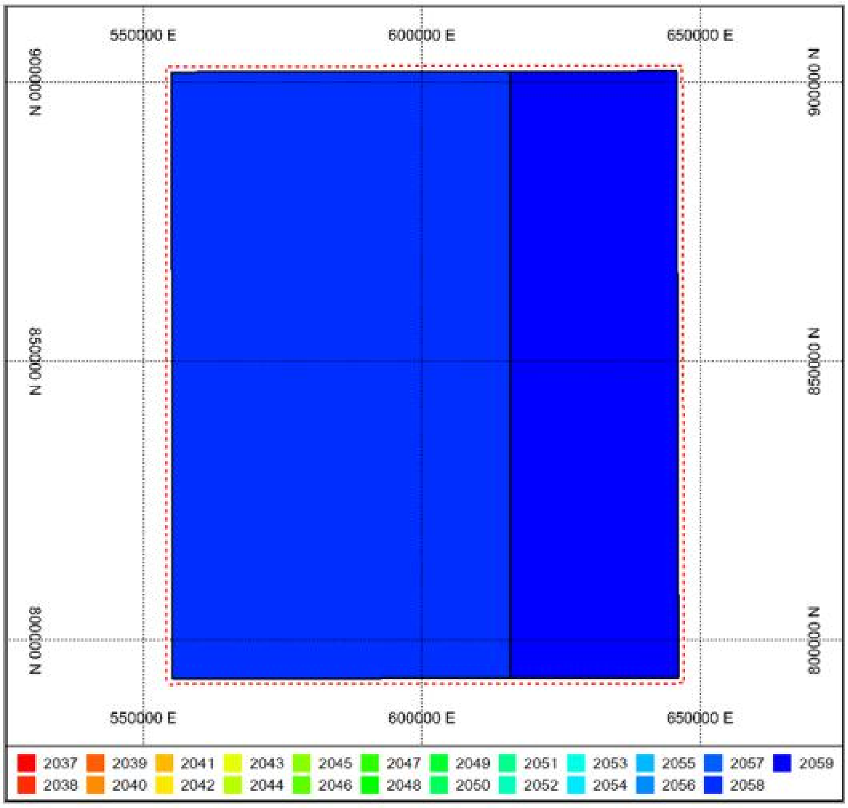
Source: AMC

Figure 13.31 NORI-A collection sequence by year



Source: AMC

Figure 13.32 TOML-A collection sequence by year



Source: AMC

14 Processing and recovery methods

14.1 Overview

Processing of nodules collected from the Property is required to recover the metals contained and realize the economic viability of the project. This section outlines the flowsheet selection process that was undertaken and explains how the selected process works to recover these metals for sale. The flowsheet development process for the selected flowsheet is discussed, though some specific outcomes and learnings from test work can be found in Section 10.

The flowsheet selection process involved ideation of plausible flowsheet configurations and creation of a shortlist. The shortlist of flowsheet options then underwent a screening process, where each was assessed against a range of criteria and objectives as developed by TMC. Eventually, the flowsheet selected for further development was RKEF/Refining, which combines pyrometallurgical unit operations on the front end and hydrometallurgical refining to generate final products. The pyrometallurgical section of the flowsheet combines three existing processes: RKEF technology, sulfidation and converting to generate a matte material. The matte is then fed downstream into conventional hydrometallurgical refinery unit operations to generate final products.

TMC's long term scenario for NORI and TOML involves processing the nodules initially through multiple lines in one or more existing RKEF facilities in Indonesia. The intended commercial agreement would be to process the nodules through a tolling arrangement, where TMC retains ownership of the nodules, any intermediates and final products from the process. The assumption is that each Indonesian operation will process the nodules through a RKEF and Peirce-Smith converter aisle to generate a matte product. The matte is expected to be shipped to the US for further refinement. The refinement facility is expected to be a hydrometallurgical refinery using an existing flowsheet to produce nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate and copper cathode as the primary final products that may be sold as feedstocks for battery production and energy storage.

This section provides an overview of flowsheet development to date. There is a particular focus on the front-end pyrometallurgical process due to further advancement of the flowsheet development process in preparation for negotiations with existing Indonesian operations, though progress completed to date on downstream refinery testing is also included. Specific outcomes and learnings from all test work can be found in Section 10.

The front-end of this process involves first drying, dehydrating, initiating the reduction and pre-heating the nodules through a rotary kiln, with the resulting calcine discharged at high temperature. The resultant calcined nodules are then transferred from the kiln to feed bins above an electric smelting furnace, where electric power is employed to smelt the material into two immiscible (distinct) layers that are removed from the furnace through tapping at separate height levels. The nickel, copper and cobalt deport to the higher density, and thus bottom alloy phase, while the manganese deports to the lower density, top layer oxide phase, called manganese silicate. The manganese silicate represents a final product from this process and is crushed, screened and sold as feedstock for production of manganese alloys for use in steel production.

The alloy phase is transferred into a two-step process employing Peirce-Smith converters. In this configuration, sulfur, silica flux and air/oxygen as a carrier gas are added in the first (sulfidation) vessel to "convert" the metal to a sulfide phase called "matte" while simultaneously deporting some of the iron to an oxide "slag" phase that floats on the surface of the matte. In the second (finishing) vessel, more air/oxygen and silica flux are added to deport even more iron to the slag phase, which is recycled back into the sulfidation vessel to maximize metal recovery. The matte from the second vessel containing 5% iron is planned to be shipped for refining in the US.

In the refinery, the matte is assumed to undergo a two stage leach process to remove the copper from the nickel and cobalt. The copper will be subject to electrowinning to produce copper cathode, an important product that is most commonly used to make copper wiring. The nickel and cobalt bearing liquor will proceed into a cobalt SX to separate the two components. The resultant cobalt stream will be subject to an IX and manganese removal before being crystallized into pure cobalt sulfate. The nickel phase will undergo its own SX and subsequent crystallization to nickel sulfate. The cobalt and nickel sulfate are final products that will be sold as feedstocks for battery production and energy storage. Ammonium sulfate is also generated during the nickel SX, and this is intended to be sold as a fertilizer material.

14.2 Flowsheet options screening and selection

The foundational objective of the flowsheet development was to create a configuration that can maximize recoveries of battery grade metals and steel-making feedstocks while minimizing solid waste. To achieve the near zero solid waste objective, every product or resultant stream from the eventual process will need to be a useful material with an identifiable, existing market or an identified destination to recycle the stream.

Project objectives were developed for the screening of the plausible flowsheet options. Multiple process types and flowsheet configurations were identified and assessed against these objectives. Technical, financial market, and strategic considerations were all assessed as part of the screening process. Table 14.1 below, shows a simplified description of the screening of the different process options that were assessed, and the project objectives against which they were judged. A green cell indicates that the flowsheet meets requirements for that objective. Orange means the flowsheet partially meets objectives or there is significant uncertainty, while red means the flowsheet does not or is unlikely to meet the objective.

Table 14.1 Simple Screening Process for Various Nodule Processing Flowsheet Options

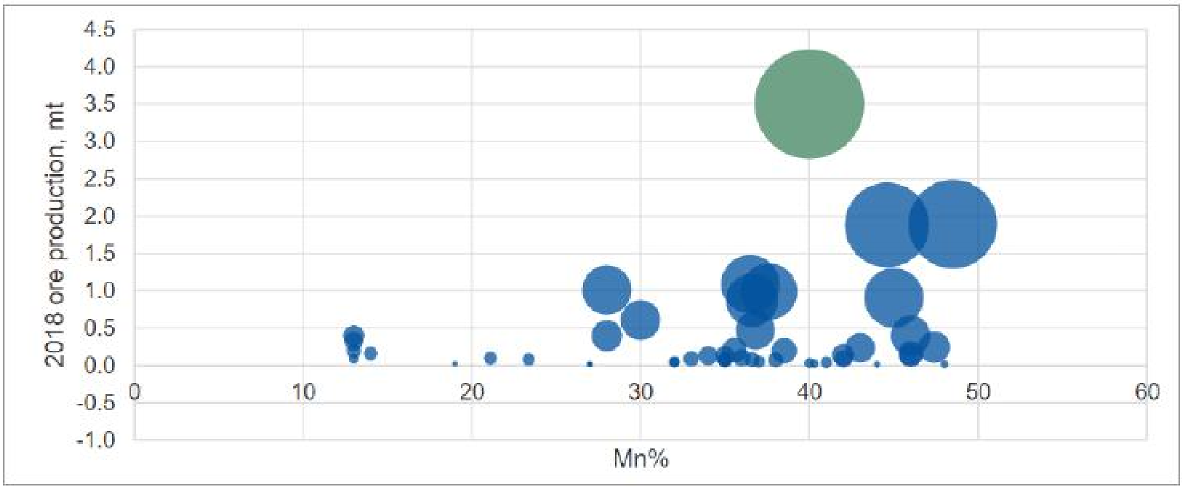
Flowsheet Option	Recoveries	Battery Grade Products	Mn Product Fits Existing Markets	Zero Solid Waste	Q1 Cash Costs	Cost/Time for Development	Risk/Reward
RKEF/Refining	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Thermal Upgrading	Orange	Red	Red	Red	Green	Orange	Orange
Nitric Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Red	Red
Cuprion Process	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Orange	Red
Sulfuric Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Green	Red	Orange
Chloride Leach	Green	Green	Red	Red	Orange	Red	Red

The primary differentiating factors for selecting the flowsheet were generation of a manganese product that fits within an existing market and a flowsheet that yields near zero solid waste.

14.2.1 Manganese product and associated market

The development of nodule projects is expected to have a significant impact on the global manganese markets. Figure 14.1 presents the world's existing manganese mines, with a 60 ktpa nickel equivalent mine overlaid in green. A mine of this scale is equivalent to a 6.4 Mwmtpa nodule project, approximately 15% of the peak production reached in year 11 as proposed in this IA.

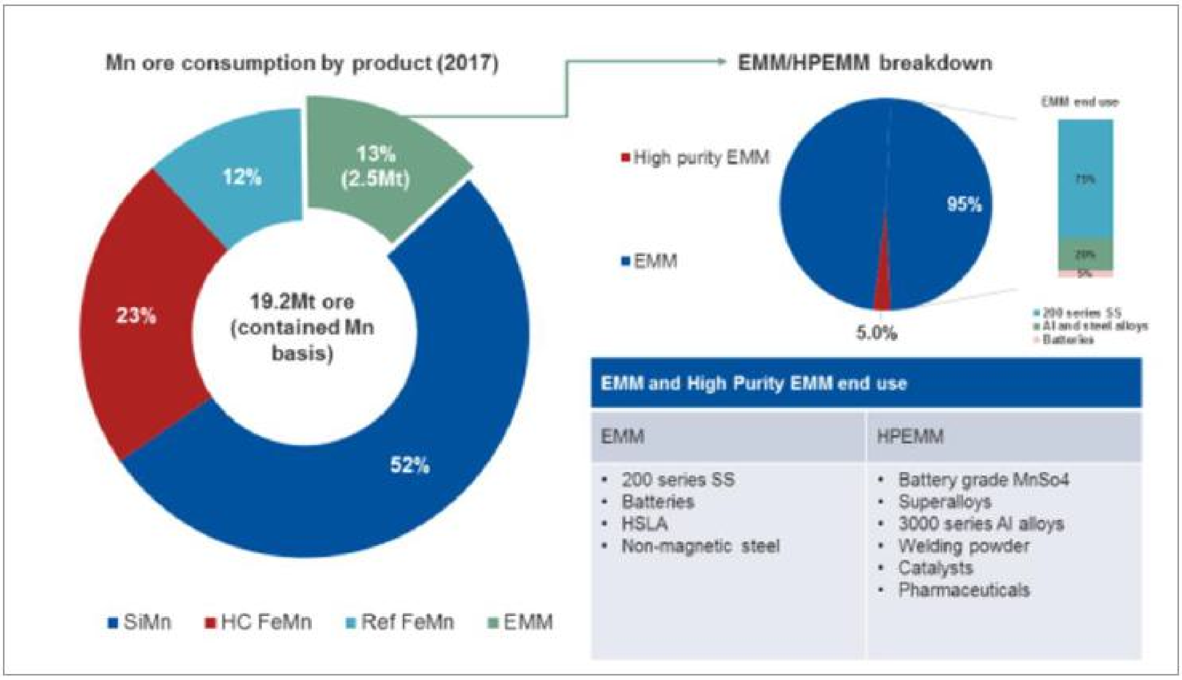
Figure 14.1 2018 production of manganese ore (blue) compared to 60 ktpa nickel equivalent project (green)



Source: CRU 2019. The bubble size indicates the total contained manganese in ore production

The primary uses of manganese are in the steel industry, which consumes upwards of 90% of all production. The manganese reacts with dissolved oxygen in the liquid steel melt and creates an oxide layer that can be removed. Dissolved oxygen in the steel melt creates a porous structure when the melt eventually solidifies. The removal of this dissolved oxygen with manganese creates a stronger and more durable final solid steel product (Kim 2018). Portable batteries and aluminum beverage cans are primary non-steel uses. In each case, manganese plays a vital role in improving the properties of the alloys and compounds. The chart in Figure 14.2 shows an estimate of how much manganese is consumed in each of its end-use applications.

Figure 14.2 2017 Manganese ore consumption by end-use project



Source: CRU 2019.

Processing of the nodules by pyrometallurgy (RKEF) produces a manganese silicate product that can be further processed to manganese alloys (Kim, 2018), (Sridhar et al,1976), (Sridhar et al, 1975). The high grade of manganese in this product rivals conventional high-grade manganese ores. Additionally, the product has a dry, pre-reduced nature, a favorable impurity profile, and the physical attributes of a slag material (strong, dense). The manganese silicate also contains the stable oxides from the nodules, notably silica and a portion of the iron, that are required in the downstream manganese alloying process. All these characteristics make this a potentially disruptive product in the production of manganese alloys, as it conceptually compares favorably in relation to both manganese ore and manganese-rich slags as feed in the production of silico-manganese alloy.

The manganese silicate slag product from the smelting unit operation represents about 90% of the mass of the solids from the operation. Although there is significant growth in manganese sulfate for battery uses and a sizeable market for Electrolytic Manganese Metal (EMM) and other specialized manganese products, the production volumes from nodules overwhelms the manganese demand in these markets. In an effort to achieve TMC's near zero solid waste objective, the selected manganese product had to have a market that could consume the large volumes of manganese being generated. The RKEF flowsheet was the only one from Table 14.1 that was able to fulfill this objective.

14.2.2 Near zero solid waste generation

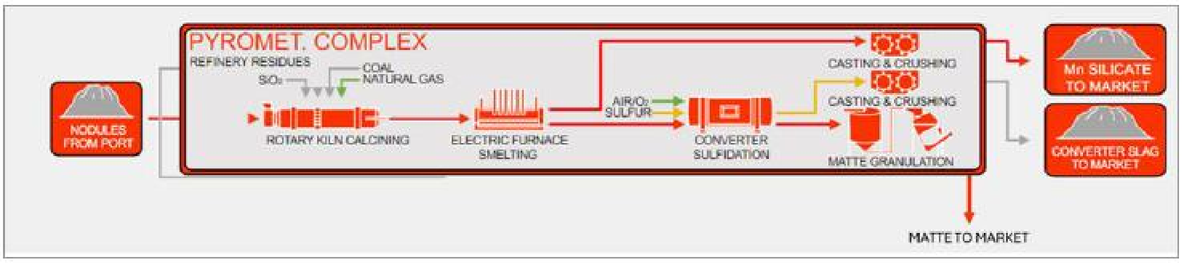
The RKEF and refining flowsheet was the only option to offer near zero waste. This is because of the production of a fayalite slag that is a saleable product, instead of residues that require disposal to residue storage facilities. Slags are commonly employed as construction aggregate, rail ballast, and sand blasting, while there is very little commercial precedence for large scale uses of residues produced in other hydrometallurgical processes used to generate alternative products, such as those described above.

Combined with good performance across other selection criteria and a comparatively straight-forward development pathway given RKEF's extensive global operating experience, this flowsheet was selected for further development.

14.3 Process description

The selected processing route for the nodules originally envisaged a greenfield plant comprising both pyrometallurgical and hydrometallurgical plants, producing nickel and cobalt sulfates (battery grade) as well as copper cathode and a manganese silicate slag product. The converting process also produces a slag by-product, which is intended for sale as a construction aggregate, and therefore should not require disposal as waste. The process to produce matte is depicted in Figure 14.3.

Figure 14.3 Major Equipment and Associated Streams from Pyrometallurgical Process



Source: Hatch

14.3.1 Alloy production

Nodules are reclaimed from stockpiles and fed directly to rotary calcining kilns, together with coal to act as a reductant and silica to regulate slag chemistry. In the rotary kilns, the nodules are heated to high temperatures. Free moisture in the nodules is removed, as is the crystalline moisture (de-hydrated). Higher oxides of manganese first decompose thermally and then are further partially reduced carbothermically together with selected other oxides.

The calcined nodules are transferred hot in refractory-lined containers to the EF. Here, residual carbon left after calcining completes the desired degree of reduction. It is important to control reduction such that most of the manganese remains in the slag phase, while ensuring nickel, copper and cobalt reports to alloy.

The alloy and manganese silicate are tapped periodically at different heights from the furnace. The alloy is transferred to the sulfidation and converting steps (matte production), while the manganese silicate is cast into a pit, allowed to freeze, and then recovered and crushed to a suitable size distribution (based on customer requirements) for sale to the silico-manganese alloy industry.

14.3.2 Matte production

Most ferronickel RKEF plants have refined ferronickel as their final product. At least two plants (Société le Niquel (SLN)'s Doniambo smelter in New Caledonia and PT Vale Indonesia) have produced or currently produce matte by adding sulfur to the process. The Doniambo process is far more efficient in terms of sulfur utilization and has lower SO_2 emissions to the environment, so has been chosen for the matte process.

The production of matte is achieved using a two-step process in a Peirce-Smith converter aisle. The first step is in dedicated sulfidation vessels. Alloy is added to the partially filled vessel and air is blown through most of the vessel tuyères to partially and selectively oxidize some of the iron which deports to slag and combines with silica flux to achieve a manageable fluidity. At the same time, liquid sulfur at 140°C (maintained by steam heated lines) is pumped intermittently through a limited number of dedicated tuyères to transform the alloy to matte. When sulfur is not being injected, steam is used to keep the tuyères open. The sulfidation vessels operate with a large matte heel in a semi-continuous mode (i.e., relatively small amounts of product matte are removed at a time). Slag from the sulfidation vessels represents the converter slag and is sold.

The intermediate matte from the sulfidation vessels is taken to a FV, where blowing commences and more silica flux is added to form slag with the iron that is being oxidized. Blowing continues until the iron in the matte decreases to 5%. The 5% iron matte is sent to a facility in the US for refining into final products. Slag from the FV is rich in pay-metals so it is therefore recycled back to the sulfidation vessels to improve recovery.

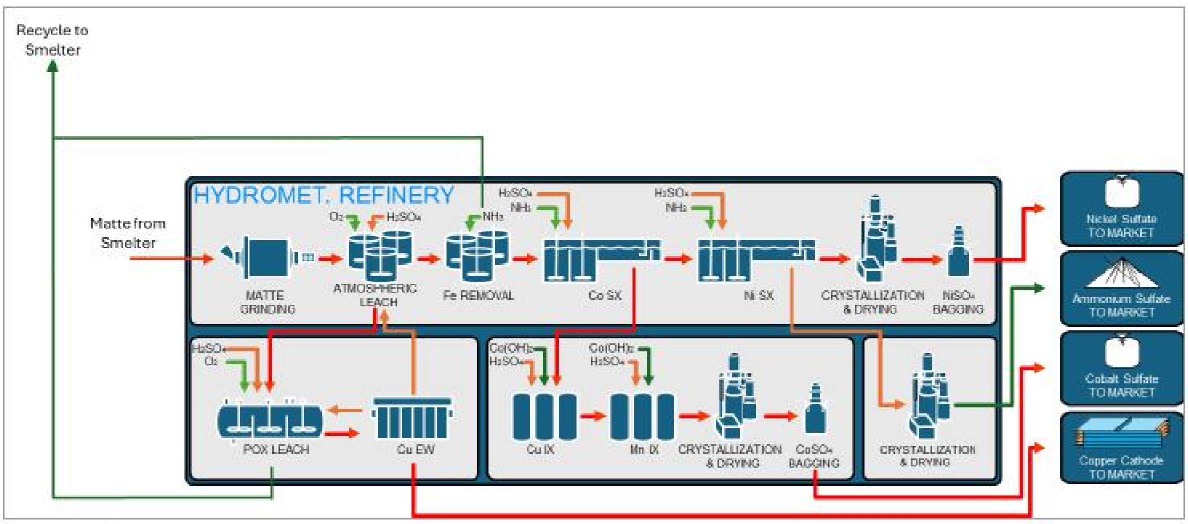
14.3.3 Matte refining

Matte produced at the Indonesian RKEF plants are assumed to be shipped to a dedicated hydrometallurgical refinery in the USA to generate refined products. As with the pyrometallurgical section of the flowsheet, the matte refining process uses existing technologies that are already in use commercially.

The downstream refining program begins by putting the granulated matte through a mill before subjecting it to a two-stage leach process – an initial agitated atmospheric leach (AL) and subsequent pressure oxidation (POX) leach. The leaching process is designed to separate the copper from the nickel and cobalt. Small amounts of nickel and cobalt that remain in the AL residue are removed during the POX and recycled back to the smelter to maximize recoveries. The copper stream from the POX undergoes electrowinning, resulting in copper cathode which represents a final product from the process.

The nickel and cobalt that is separated during the leaching process is then fed into a cobalt SX, which separates the nickel and cobalt into their individual components. Copper that was not removed during the leaching phase is extracted after the cobalt SX and recycled to the POX. The cobalt phase also undergoes a manganese removal step, with the residual manganese recycled back into the smelter to maximize its recovery to the manganese silicate. The nickel phase resulting from the cobalt SX then proceeds to a nickel SX where it is separated from the ammonium that has been added throughout the process. All three phases – cobalt, nickel and ammonium – proceed to individual crystallization processes to create sulfates, all of which represent final productions from the refinery. Nickel and cobalt sulfate can be sold as feedstocks for battery production and energy storage, while the ammonium sulfate is sold for use as a fertilizer. The process to generate final products from the matte is depicted below in Figure 14.4.

Figure 14.4 Major Equipment and Associated Stream from the Hydrometallurgical Refinery



Source: Hatch

14.4 Flowsheet development

14.4.1 Literature review

Pyrometallurgical processing of nodules has been extensively studied from the early 1970s until the present day and appears to be the preferred process for most of the other currently active nodule processing research groups. Many groups including Kennecott Utah Copper LLC[2] ; Inco Limited[3]; Cuban / Bulgarian; German; Indian; Japanese; and Korean entities have studied pyrometallurgical processing of nodules at a laboratory scale. The nodule samples for these tests were collected from their respective license areas in the CCZ.

A detailed review of specific process, modelling and available bench-scale testing data from the following parties was reviewed to inform the design process for TMC's preliminary flowsheet:

- Inco (Canada)
- Sumitomo (Japan)
- German Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources (Germany)
- US Bureau of Mines (USA)

---

2 Kennecott Utah Copper LLC is a division of Rio Tinto Group. It is a mining, smelting and refining company and has its corporate headquarters in South Jordan Utah

3 Inco Limited (Inco) was a Canadian mining company and the world's leading producer of nickel for much of the 20th century. In October 2006, Inco was purchased by the Brazilian mining company Vale.

- Indian National Metallurgical Laboratory (India)

The literature review focused on specific content provided by each of the above groups. Testwork at both bench and pilot scale (if available) involving calcining, smelting and matte production were all assessed. Key results that were analyzed included composition of intermediate materials (calcine, alloy, manganese silicate and matte) as well as energy usage, consumables used and quantity requirements, and operating conditions that were tested by each of the groups. References from the literature review are provided at the end of the chapter. Based on review of the data, it was concluded that the best data for designing a preliminary pyrometallurgical flowsheet for treating nodules was provided by Inco, Japanese and German references.

14.4.2 Bench-scale test work

NORI has commissioned numerous small-scale investigations in support of the project, prior to, during and after the larger scale pilot work described in Section 14.4.4.

The work was carried out at:

- Kingston Process Metallurgy, Ontario (KPM)
- FLS, Pennsylvania
- Expert Process Solutions (Glencore), Ontario (XPS)
- SINTEF, Norway.
- SGS Lakefield, Ontario (SGS)

The test work is summarized in Table 14.2.

Table 14.2 Summary of Bench-scale Test Work

Final Report Date	Facility	Description	Reason
29-May-2019	KPM	Evaluation of alternate manganese products	Exploring potential opportunities for added value for project
19-Nov-2019	FLS	Calcination and carbothermic reduction of nodules in a lab tube furnace and direct-fired batch kiln	Investigation of reduction process prior to pilot-scale work. Preliminary assessment of sintering and dusting behavior.
22-Apr-2020	XPS	Oxidation of artificial matte to final product matte	Investigation of converting prior to pilot-scale work. Measuring elemental partition coefficients as a function of %Fe in matte.
28-Aug-2020	XPS	Chemical analyses of calcine, slag and metal samples as part of a 'Round Robin' campaign	To help establish reliable assaying methods
9-Oct-2020	XPS	Oxidation of Mn in alloy and sulfidation using pyrite and pyrrhotite	Investigation of pre-converting steps ahead of pilot-scale work
11-Dec-2020	KPM	Smelting of calcine produced at FLS part way through piloting	To resolve issues with determining correct reductant coal addition at FLS
7-May-2021	KPM	Small scale calcination of nodules in batch rotary-kilns followed by induction furnace smelting	Inputs to process modelling and for planning pilot-scale work
14-Sep-2021	KPM	Determination of residual moisture in nodules after draining excess water	Provide basis for moisture content of nodules entering process plant
24-Jan-2022	SINTEF	Production of silico-manganese alloy from smelting slag samples	Preliminary investigation of suitability of smelting slag product as feed to silico-manganese industry
16-Mar-2022	KPM	Quantitative SEM investigation of slag samples from smelting and converting tests	Determination of elemental distribution amongst different phases
23-Jun-2022	KPM	Assaying material from FLS and XPS pilot campaigns	Assay cross-checks
10-Oct-2024	SGS	Refining of TMC's pilot matte into nickel and cobalt sulfates	Proof of concept and preliminary data collection for the hydrometallurgical refinery aspect of the flowsheet

14.4.3 Concept engineering

The NORI IA (AMC Consultants, 2021a) study assessed the entire flowsheet as it was then envisaged, with large scale processing of nodules from recovery from the ocean bottom through pyrometallurgical and hydrometallurgical processing plants to final products. The pyrometallurgical component of the IA was based on the process outlined in Section 14.3.

14.4.4 Piloting

14.4.4.1 Piloting overview

A set of pilot-scale pyrometallurgical processing campaigns using a large sample (75 t) of nodules harvested from NORI Area D of the CCZ. The work comprised calcining, smelting, sulfidation and converting steps in accordance with the chosen process for the project.

The main objectives of the pilot scale work were to:

- Demonstrate the chosen pyrometallurgical process.
- Produce on-spec matte for subsequent hydrometallurgical test work and on-spec manganese silicate slag for product development activities.
- Update process design criteria in support of project development and engineering design. The work was carried out in two separate locations:
  - FLS testing facility in Bethlehem, Pennsylvania calcined the nodules, and

  - The XPS technology centre in Falconbridge, Ontario smelted the calcine from FLS, sulfidized the resultant alloy, which was then converted to product matte.

The nodules were calcined at the FLS pilot kiln facility in Pennsylvania and the calcine was shipped to Falconbridge, Ontario, where the remainder of the pyrometallurgical work was performed in the XPS pilot-scale DC arc furnace. The pilot-scale testwork conducted is summarized in Table 14.3. Selected results from the piloting are available in Section 10.

Table 14.3 Summary of pilot scale test work

Final Report Date	Facility	Description
December 2020	FLS	Polymetallic nodule calcining using a pilot rotary kiln system
10-Feb-2022	XPS	Pilot smelting of calcined sea nodules
23-Dec-2021	XPS	Sulfidation and converting of alloy

The pyrometallurgical pilot phase of work is considered complete and was able to demonstrate that:

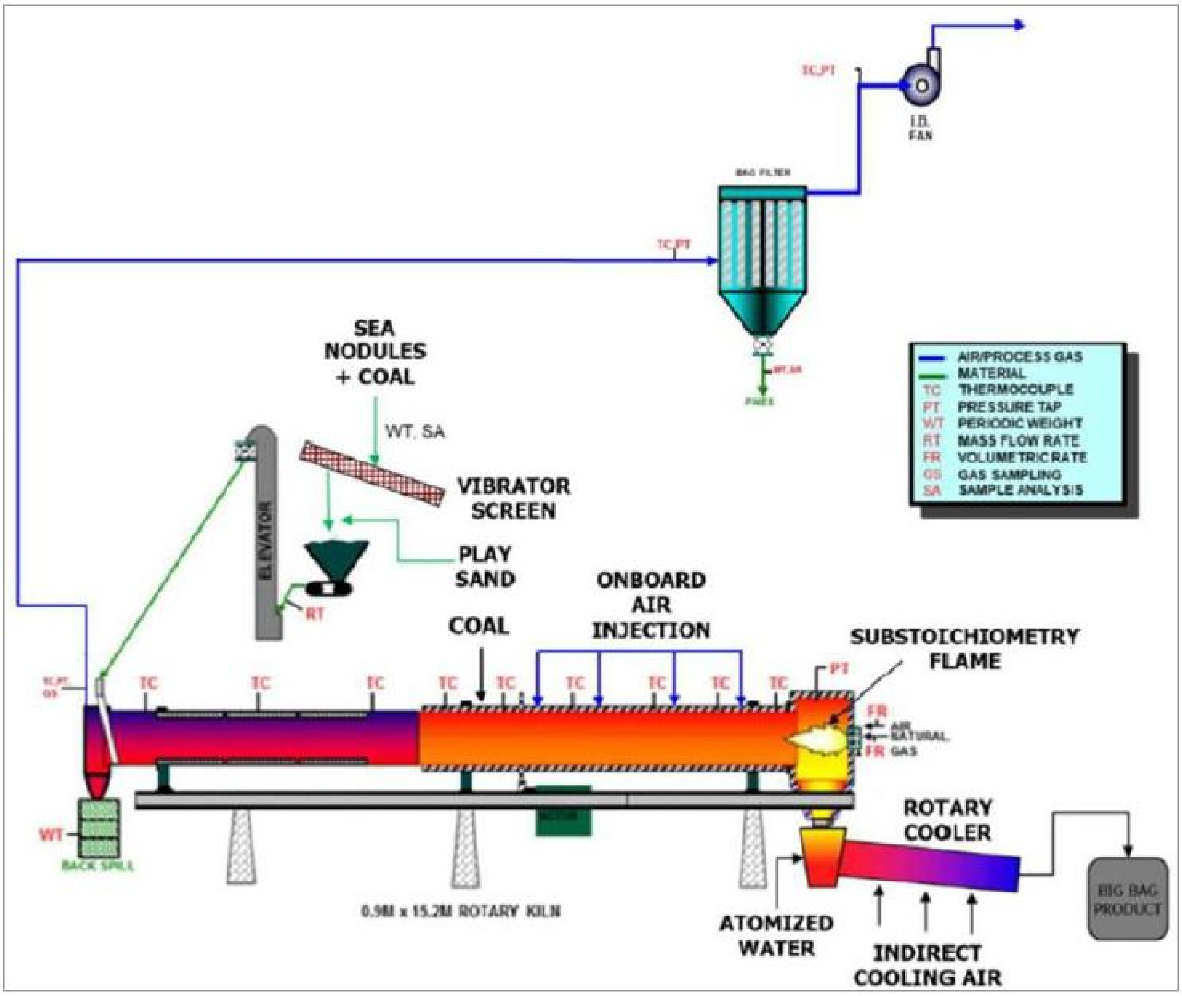
- The nodules can be smelted to an alloy with excellent recoveries of nickel, copper and cobalt.
- A manganese silicate slag product can be made that conforms to TMC's preliminary specification under suitably reducing conditions consistent with the current plan for the process.
- A final matte can be made that is suitable for hydrometallurgical processing (albeit with an iron level that is a little higher than planned for the project).

14.4.4.2 Calcining at FLSmidth

Nodules retrieved during the 2020 campaign were shipped to FLS for calcining, which took place between 12 October and 14 November 2020.

Calcining was performed in the facility's large pilot kiln, which is 15 m long and 0.9 m in diameter. This kiln has been in use for several years, including for test work with which TMC's technical consultant had been involved in and has witnessed in the past. The equipment is depicted in Figure 14.5 and Figure 14.6. Note that feeding and cooling underwent some changes during the work as no-processing had been planned since the currently proposed commercial plant is expected to feed as-received nodules directly to the kilns.

Figure 14.5 Schematic of kiln and ancillary equipment as originally configured



Source: FLSmidth

Figure 14.6 Pilot Plant Rotary Kiln, Feed-End to Right.

Source: FLSmidth

14.4.4.3 Smelting, sulfidation and converting at XPS

Pilot operations vs commercial

The proposed commercial operation for the project closely follows matte production as practiced by SLN at their Doniambo nickel laterite processing facility in New Caledonia until 2016, where calcine is smelted conventionally in an alternating current (AC) furnace to produce a ferronickel alloy, similar to many plants worldwide. Uniquely at SLN, some of this ferronickel was taken to a Peirce-Smith converter aisle where liquid sulfur was added through one of the tuyères, while air was used simultaneously in the other tuyères to oxidize out some of the iron. This first vessel operated under more or less steady chemistry conditions (at the point of an intermediate matte containing around 30% iron). Once the vessel was full of matte, roughly half of the matte was then transferred to a second converter to remove most of the remaining iron to produce a Bessemer matte for downstream hydrometallurgical refining.

There are only a limited number of facilities worldwide that offer pilot-scale EF smelting facilities at a scale suitable for the project needs. Pilot-scale Peirce-Smith converters are not available, and representative liquid sulfur injection would be challenging in other pilot equipment. Under these circumstances, it is not possible to closely replicate the proposed commercial operation. Some degree of compromise is necessary to devise test work that adequately reproduces the key process steps from a metallurgical perspective. Thus, it was decided to proceed with both the smelting and sulfidation/converting work using the same furnace, namely the direct current DC furnace at Glencore's XPS facility in Falconbridge, Ontario, as it is at least partially analogous of the anticipated industrial process.

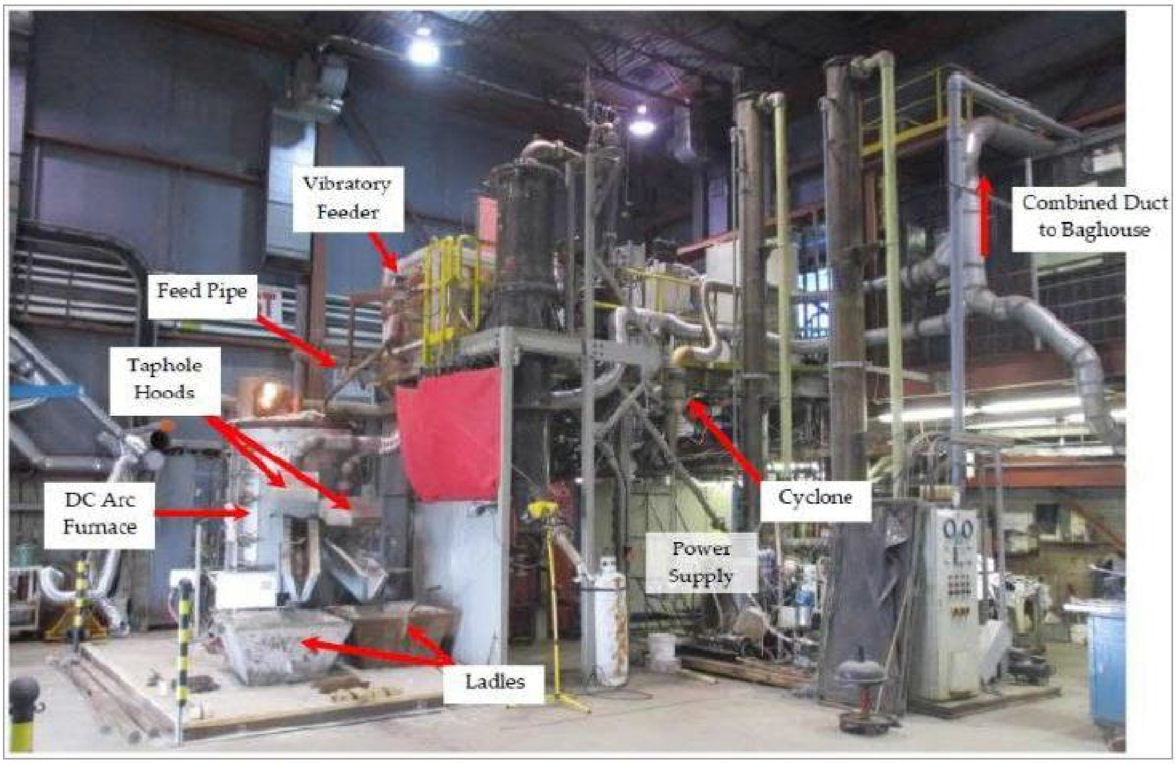
Equipment description

The XPS DC furnace is a 250 kW cylindrical furnace with a diameter inside the refractory lining of 762 mm and a total height of nearly 3 m above the floor. It is equipped with metal and slag tapholes for intermittent removal of molten material. It has an off-gas system for particulate capture. See Figure 14.7 and Figure 14.8 for layout and for dimensions.

A heel of material is needed upon which to strike an arc for the furnace to power up. Feed can then be added semi-continuously through a vibratory feed system connected to a feed pipe through the furnace roof, or to a pneumatic conveying system and injection lances. Lumps can also be added by hand through the roof port. A viewing port can be used to measure melt temperature via optical pyrometer, although that is dependent on not having any solids/partially melted material on top of the slag layer.

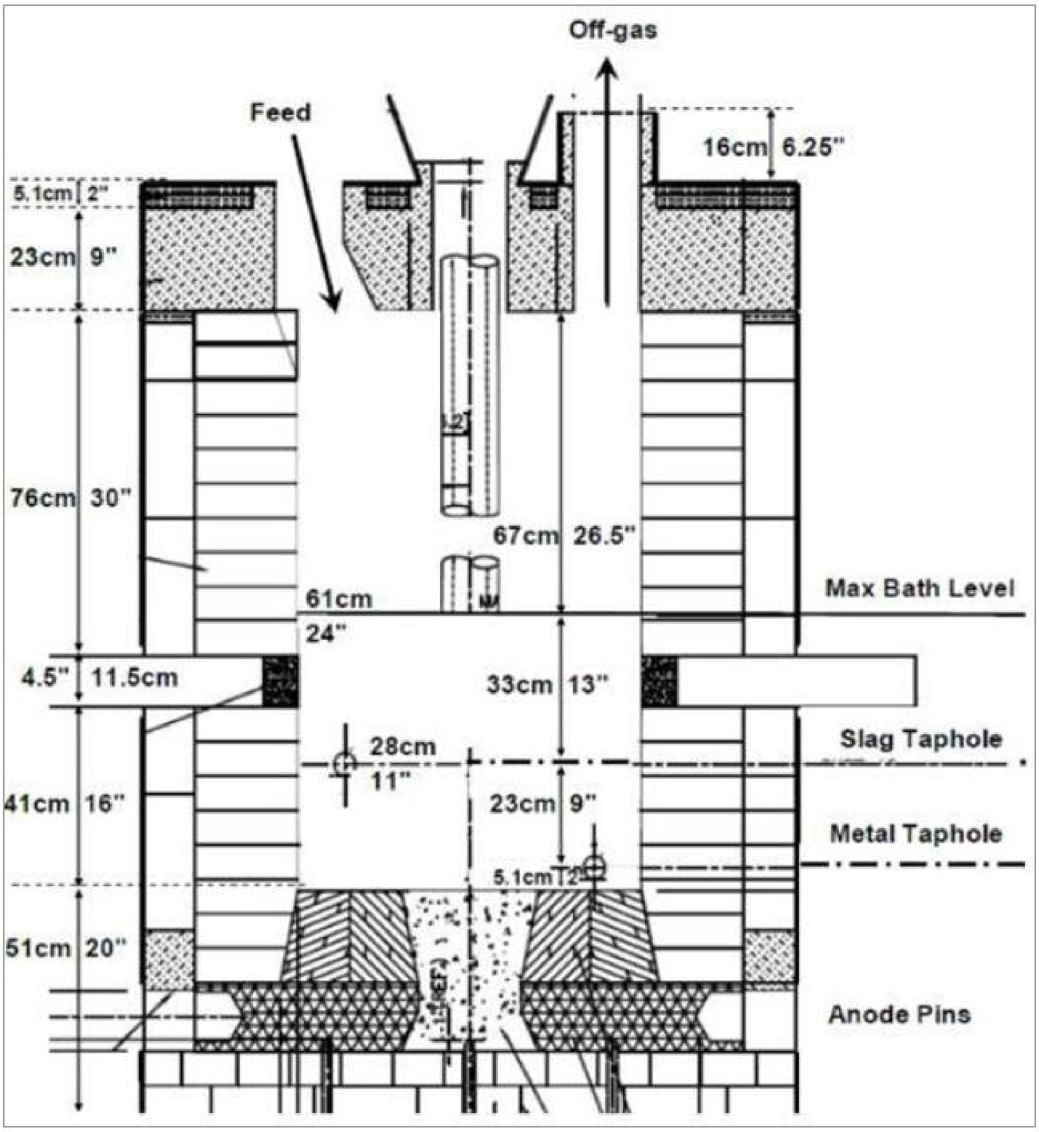
An operator control station has a computer and screen interface that can totalize power input and calculate bath temperature from known heat losses and smelting energy requirements. This is cross-checked against temperatures taken from molten streams when the furnace is tapped for slag and matte.

Figure 14.7 Pilot Plant DC Furnace and Ancillary Equipment



Source: XPS

Figure 14.8 DC Furnace Dimensions



Source: XPS

14.4.5 Demonstration scale calcining and smelting trials

Following the successful pilot mining trial completed in Q4 of 2022, TMC identified an opportunity to process 2,000 tonnes of collected nodules in a demonstration-scale metallurgical test at an existing RKEF facility in Hachinohe, Japan. The nodules were delivered to Japan in April of 2024, and testing was completed in April of 2025.

The trial involved first processing the nodules in one of the commercial kilns over six campaigns. Multiple campaigns were required as the nodules could not be calcined all at once due to limited hot calcine storage, and the calcine had to be cooled prior to transfer to the smelting facility. The calcine generated was stored and cooled over several weeks before transfer to an adjacent smelting facility containing a 4,000 kVA furnace that was used for smelting. The smelting took place over four campaigns.

The overall goals of the trial were to confirm the metallurgy (confirm operating parameters, process control approaches and gather data), gain operations experience with nodules and their derived intermediates, generate samples for product marketing and downstream metallurgical testing and to assess the slag behavior during smelting and associated refractory wear.

The tests were able to achieve all objectives and confirm that stable operations can be achieved at commercial scale. Commentary on technical outcomes from the trials can be found in Section 10.

14.4.6 Manganese silicate slag quality

The slag from the EF smelting process is intended to be sold as a feed to the silico-manganese industry and constitutes a significant portion of the project's revenue stream. The potential customers have certain parameters in mind that may make the slag more or less desirable. This imposes some additional constraints on running the smelting operation for optimal products.

A slag high in manganese and low in phosphorus is desirable. Low phosphorus is achieved by using high degrees of reduction to bring the phosphorus into the alloy. On the other hand, this also tends to bring more manganese into the alloy, depleting the slag to some extent. The mass ratio of slag to metal is quite high however, which helps to mitigate this. High degrees of reduction are, of course, beneficial to pay-metal recovery, but they also lead to more blowing requirements to remove iron, manganese, silicon, carbon, and phosphorus in the downstream converting/sulfidation process.

The XPS pilot campaigns indicate that a preliminary specification for slag can be met by reducing to the point where iron in slag is below 2% without raising manganese in alloy to high levels or significantly depleting manganese in slag. Outcomes from the commercial scale trial indicate that a target iron in slag is about 1.1%, and the associated manganese to phosphorus ratio would exceed 1000, which is desirable for most potential customers of the product.

15 Project infrastructure

15.1 Onshore engineering

15.1.1 Overview

TMC intends to begin operations onshore by using existing facilities in Indonesia that are already operating RKEF equipment, presently processing nickel laterite ores.

TMC has assumed that its onshore capacity through third party processing facilities is expected be able to handle up to 40 Mwmtpa of nodules, all of which are processed at existing RKEF facilities in Indonesia. The Indonesian operations are assumed to produce a nickel-copper-cobalt matte, a manganese silicate and a converter slag. The matte is assumed to be shipped to a dedicated US-based refinery that is owned and operated by TMC and further refined in nickel and cobalt sulfates and copper cathode.

The manganese silicate represents a final product from the process and is planned to be sold as a feedstock to silico-manganese alloy producers supplying the steel industry with this important consumable. The proximity of Indonesia to the Asian target market countries for manganese silicate, considering this product can constitute up to 90% of product production by mass, is an advantage to processing the nodules through these locations.

The converter slag is a product of the Peirce-Smith converting process and is assumed be sold for use as a construction aggregate. All capital scope required by the Indonesian operations to prepare plants to accept nodules is assumed by TMC to be the responsibility of that operator, with the cost being considered in the commercial arrangement between TMC and the third party.

15.1.2 Front-end nodule processing to matte in Indonesia

TMC has developed a strategy to de-risk and reduce capital required to perform preliminary processing on nodules. The front-end pyrometallurgical section of the selected flowsheet uses conventional RKEF technology that is employed in many existing processing facilities worldwide. This has informed the TMC approach to process the nodules at existing facilities under a tolling arrangement. In this setup, the nodules are assumed to be processed through an RKEF configuration followed by a Peirce-Smith converter aisle, ultimately producing a nickel-copper-cobalt matte, which is brought to a dedicated TMC-owned facility in the US for refining to final products. This strategy allows TMC USA to retain sole ownership of the nodules, and all intermediate and final products generated at all stages of the processing operations. TMC has assumed that the operators of the existing RKEF facilities are responsible for any capital modifications to prepare the plant to operate and compensated under an appropriate commercial arrangement.

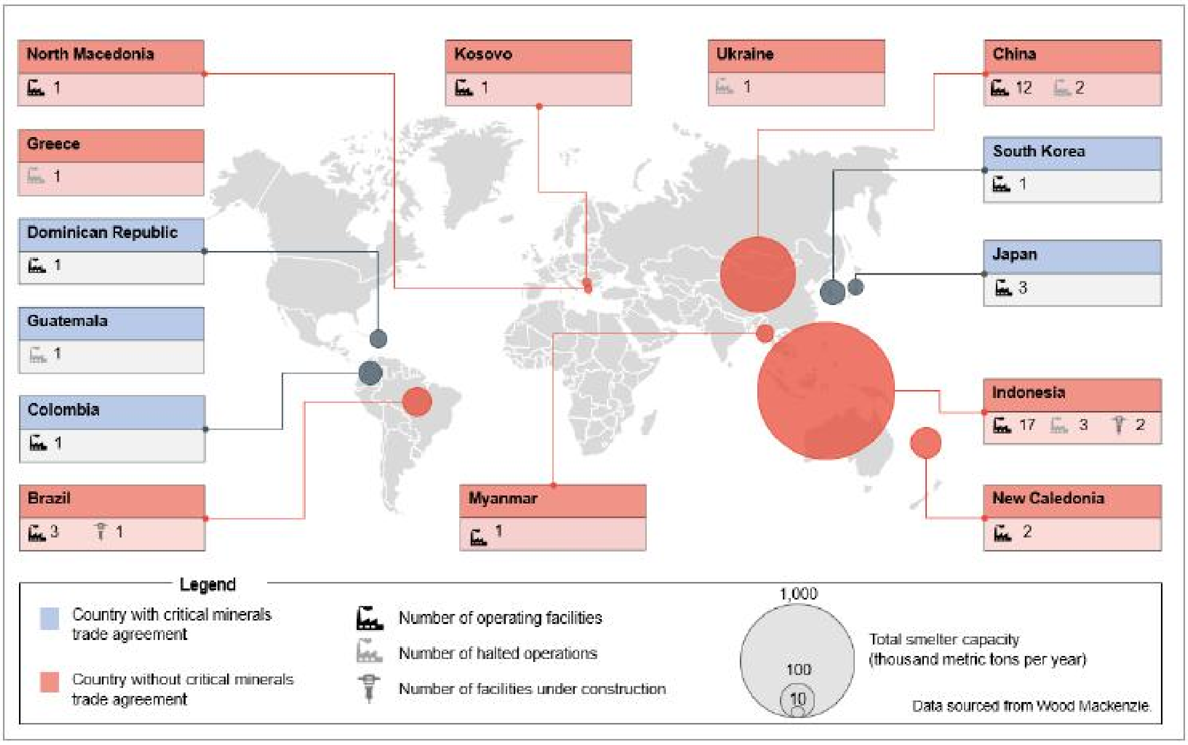
Several factors contributed to the pursuit of this strategy for Indonesian processing to matte, of which some are highlighted below.

- The construction of a new processing plant is extremely capital intensive.
- No construction or long lead item procurement issues will arise.
- There will be no requirement to hire and train operators or plant staff, as experienced personnel are already on-site.
- Recently and/or currently operating equipment does not require (re)commissioning.

This strategy is low risk, eliminates almost all capital expenses required to get into operation, and allows for the onshore timeline to align with anticipated commercial recovery permitting and offshore commercial recovery capabilities.

TMC actively investigated options for potential facilities to perform this front-end processing. Figure 15.1 shows a map of RKEF facility distribution worldwide, compiled by Hatch using data supplied by Wood Mackenzie (Jabber et al, 2024).

Figure 15.1 Total 2023 production capacity for ferronickel and nickel pig iron smelting, and number of existing smelting facilities by country



Source:

As shown in the figure, the biggest opportunity is clearly in Indonesia.

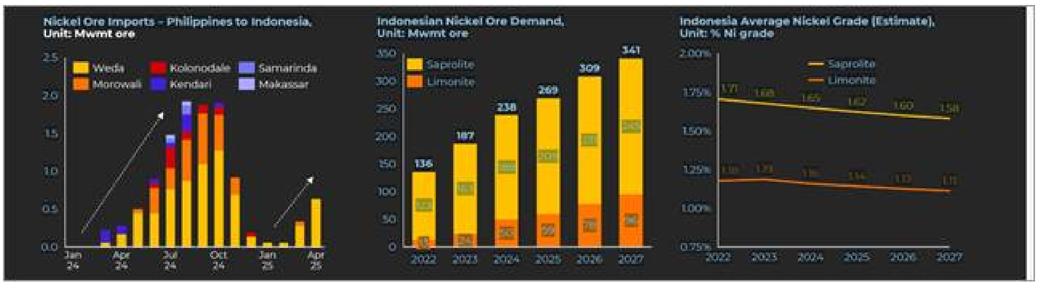
15.1.2.1 Recent build-out of RKEF processing capacity in Indonesia

In the past seven years, Indonesia has experienced a dramatic expansion in RKEF processing capacity, emerging as the world's leading nickel producer and processor. Following the 2014 ban on raw ore exports which was finalized in 2020, the nation initiated an aggressive downstream policy, prompting a surge in investments – primarily from Chinese firms – in onshore smelters and associated infrastructure. The number of operational nickel smelters rose from 13 in 2019 to over 100 lines by 2025, with total installed RKEF capacity exceeding 260 Mwmtpa with additional projects under construction. This rapid growth has made Indonesia responsible for over 60% of global nickel production, solidifying its strategic importance within the steel, EV battery, and stainless-steel industries.

15.1.2.2 Increasing difficulty sourcing high-grade saprolite ores

The proliferation of RKEF smelters has considerably increased demand for high-grade saprolite ore (typically >1.5% nickel grade). However, ore supply growth has not matched the pace of smelter build-out. High rainfall – particularly on Sulawesi and Halmahera – has hampered mine operations, and new Indonesian Government regulatory nickel ore quota (RKAB) requirements have further constrained availability, encouraging increasing ore imports from the Philippines, as shown in Figure 15.2 (Benchmark Mineral Intelligence, 2025b). Premiums for high-grade saprolite have persisted amid supply tightness, with market participants reporting record tender prices for 1.6% nickel ore in 2025 (SMM, 2025).

Figure 15.2 Rapid increase in Indonesian ore demand, decreasing saprolite ore grades and increase ore imports from the Philippines



Source: Benchmark Mineral Intelligence.

The push to maximize throughput has led to declining average nickel grades in the ore feed for many RKEF facilities, as shown in Figure 15.2. Ore blending and longer haulages from more remote or lower-quality deposits are increasingly necessary to maintain plant utilization, further deteriorating grade profiles. These lower grades directly impact smelter economics via increased energy consumption and reduced nickel output per tonne processed, exacerbating operational cost pressures. The Indonesian Mining Ministry estimates that laterite reserves total around 5.3 billion tonnes and the Indonesia Nickel Miners Association projected that the country's high-grade ore reserves may be depleted in the next six years (Reuters, 2024 and Subarna, 2024).

15.1.2.3 Economic performance: Increasing losses

The supply-demand imbalance, combined with global oversupply and weak stainless steel and EV demand, has resulted in a sustained decline in nickel prices since 2023. As prices have approached multi-year lows, a significant portion of Indonesia's RKEF operations – especially those with outdated technology or high reliance on market-bought high-grade saprolite – have become loss-making. (The Star, 2025). Industry insiders report delayed payments to suppliers and plant curtailments, with risks of further closures unless prices or input costs recover. The margin squeeze is compounded by persistent operational challenges, such as rising fuel costs and environmental compliance expenses.

15.1.2.4 Prospects for polymetallic nodule processing

Based on the above struggles in Indonesia, the country's established RKEF infrastructure is well-suited for adapting to alternative feedstocks, notably polymetallic nodules from deep-sea sources. Recent developments, such as the TMC-PAMCO arrangement in Japan, have demonstrated the technical viability of processing nodules containing nickel, copper, cobalt, and manganese in RKEF lines with minimal plant modifications. The partnership's success in pilot and feasibility phases – producing high-grade nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and manganese silicate – offers a model Indonesia could readily emulate, leveraging its processing capacity to diversify beyond terrestrial ores and access new revenue streams from the growing battery metals market.

TMC has engaged in discussions with key Indonesian processing counter-parties and entered into a non-binding MOU with a major processor who has indicated the potential to process 80 Mwmtpa of polymetallic nodules.

PT Gunbuster Nickel Industries provides an example of potential assets that could become available for toll treatment. Established in 2021, with a nameplate capacity of 1.8 Mwmtpa of nickel pig iron (NPI) per year with the capacity to process 21 Mwmtpa of laterite ore and representing about 9% of Indonesian refined nickel capacity. The facility owner Jiangsu Delong Nickel Industry has entered bankruptcy, caused by weak nickel prices and ore supply constraints and is currently only operating at 30% of capacity. (Bloomberg News, 2025). Experts suggest that a government-backed or national consortium acquisition could ensure operational continuity, advance environmental and labor standards, and further Indonesia's ambitions in nickel value addition and battery manufacturing, especially if aligned with domestic partners such as MIND ID or Indonesia Battery Corporation (Rakhmat et al, 2025)

15.1.2.5 Indonesian processing cost benchmarking

To establish a cost basis for the future cost of processing through existing capacity in Indonesia, TMC USA engaged Shanghai Metal Markets (SMM) to benchmark costs of these operations and opine on tolling rates required to incentivize nodules processing on this basis. The benchmarking exercise was done on a laterite ore basis with the assumption that the processing costs of nodules are the same on a dry basis (nodules have lower water content). PAMCO work to date has concluded that nodule processing consumes less power than laterite ores and has similar or potentially less cost in comparison to laterite ore processing.

SMM is a credible and well-established source for benchmarking RKEFprocessing costs in Indonesia. They provide detailed cost analysis comparing Indonesian and Chinese RKEF operations, publish an Indonesia NPI FOB price index, and offer real-time tracking of nickel ore quotas (RKAB) that affect feedstock availability and smelter economics. SMM also delivers in-depth consulting and strategic procurement reports, backed by direct project-level intelligence and extensive market data, making them a reliable authority on cost structures and operational dynamics in the Indonesian nickel smelting sector. SMM teams are based in Indonesia and frequently visit the relevant operations.

The benchmarking of the NPI processing costs was conducted through direct interviews, data and information processing, analysis as well as employing information already in SMM's extensive in-house database and is summarized below in Table 15.1.

Table 15.1 Summary of the benchmarked costs derived from SMM source data

	Total Processing Cost				
	Large RKEF 1	**Large RKEF 2**	**Large RKEF 3**	**Average**	**Ore Equivalent**
	$/t Ni			**$/wt ore**	
Power	1,700	1,722	1,946	1,789	16.85
Coke	689	668	1021	793	7.47
Coal	931	917	1,135	995	9.37
Other Materials	372	367	443	394	3.71
Labour & Management	1,203	1,203	1,253	1,220	11.49
Environmental	100	119	104	108	1.01
Depreciation	671	602	817	697	6.56
Others	300	269	323	297	2.80
Alloy to Matte				685	6.45
Capital Modification Recovery					3.85
Toll Profit (10%)					**6.57**
Contingency (5%)					3.81
Total	**5,966**	**5,866**	**7,043**	**6,977**	**79.95**

The key cost components are the cost of power at $0.06 per kWh and coal at $176 per mt. The capital modification recovery cost assumed $50M, depreciated over 10 years at a production rate of 1.3 Mwmtpa.

On this basis, a tolling rate of $80/wet tonne has been used as a cost basis for nodule processing in Indonesia.

15.1.2.6 Product quality specifications

The commercial arrangement between TMC and any Indonesian RKEF operators are expected to have agreed upon targets for specific pay metals in matte and manganese silicate which are required to be met to achieve intermediate/final product quality specifications. Table 15.2 below shows a sample of these grades for matte and manganese silicate, though the exact specifications will be part of commercial arrangement negotiations between TMC and the party and may vary depending on the plant based on a variety of factors.

Table 15.2 Sample grades of key pay metals for the matte being generated in Indonesia

Component	**Grade (wt %)**
Nickel (Ni)	43.4

Copper (Cu)	29.3
Cobalt (Co)	3.48
Iron (Fe)	5.00
Sulfur (S)	18.5

A sample of target parameters for the manganese silicate product are shown below in Table 15.3, though exact specifications will be subject to negotiation with each individual party.

Table 15.3 Sample specification for the manganese silicate product generated in Indonesia

Parameter	Units	Specification
Mn Composition	wt %	> 40
Fe Composition	wt %	1 to 2
Cr Composition	wt %	< 0.1
S Composition	wt %	< 0.3
$MnO:SiO_2$ Ratio		2.25 to 2.6
Mn:P Ratio		> 670

The above tables represent a sample of select components that will be considered in the target specifications. In addition to pay metal grades, all commercial arrangements with Indonesian operators will reference other elements that will be of material interest by TMC's potential customers.

There is a target of 5% iron in the final matte. This value was determined as it allowed for manageable levels of iron being introduced into the refinery while not sacrificing recoveries of key pay metals. The iron in matte is subject to change dependent on customer negotiations.

The sample process to determine product quality for this purpose is:

· Definitive sampling is supervised by a third party and samples are to be delivered to both parties.
· Subject to finalization of agreed upon sampling protocol, final weights, moisture determination and assays completed at an Indonesian location.
· Both parties develop an effective metallurgical accounting sampling protocol for each monthly throughput for the final determination of nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese recoveries to determine the Recovery Incentive Bonus Payment and Recovery Non-Performance Penalty Payment.
· Multiple assays of a single sample is conducted by both the operator and TMC USA, with the mean of the respective assays being used to govern activities.

· The difference between the TMC USA and Indonesian assays (mean assays per above) cannot exceed:

- ± 0.05% for Ni,
- ± 0.05% for Cu,
- ± 0.01% for Co, and
- TBD for Mn.

· Should the difference be outside of these splitting limits, a third party that is mutually agreed upon by the parties will perform umpire analysis using a sample taken by the operator.
· If the analysis done by the umpire is between the results of the TMC USA and the operator analyses, or is consistent with the result of either party, that result shall be the conclusive result.
· If the umpire's analysis is not between the results of the TMC USA and operator analyses, or is not consistent with either, then the exact mean of the umpire result and the nearest assay result that is conducted by either TMC USA or the operator is deemed to be the conclusive result.

15.1.3 Matte refining in the US

15.1.3.1 Further processing of nodules in the US

Existing capacity to process and refine nodules does not currently exist in the US with onshore processing capabilities between now and Project Commencement uncertain. In the USA, TMC propose to convert the matte delivered from Indonesia into saleable products including nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate and copper cathode. TMC is also evaluating the possibility of this facility being an integrated plant that can further process the nickel and cobalt sulfate into downstream products such battery pre-cursor materials Processing capacity of this type is proposed to be online by the time the Project commenced, largely driven by the need for USA processing capacity derived from nodule matte from the NORI Area D.

TMC recently completed a study evaluating possible refinery site locations in the U.S. The study also included a preliminary refinery design, plant layout, permitting and construction execution schedule schedules and 2025 basis capital and operating costs. The site options focused on the Gulf region with a final recommendation for locations in Texas near existing ports.

15.1.4 Production plan

The production plan is structured to align and balance the offshore collection capabilities with availability of onshore processing capacity in Indonesia and the US. Table 15.4 below shows the updated production plan through 2067, and this also serves as a basis for the Marketing and Economics sections of this IA.

Table 15.4 TMC USA IA production plan

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total	Year 1 2037	Year 2 2038	Year 3 2039	Year 4 2040	Year 5 2041
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmt	670.0	7.0	14.0	21.0	21.0	21.0
Total Dry Ore Collected	Mwmt	492.2	5.0	10.1	15.1	15.1	15.1
Matte							

Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	302.9	-	4.8	14.3	14.3	28.6
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	37.9	-	0.4	1.1	1.1	2.2
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	237.3	-	3.9	11.6	11.6	23.3
Manganese Silicate							
Manganese (Mn) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	140,229.0	1,605.6	3,211.1	4,816.7	4,816.7	4,816.7
Refined Product							
Nickel Sulfate (NiSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	5,708.2	66.6	128.3	185.4	185.4	171.1
Cobalt Sulfate (CoSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	745.8	5.2	10.0	14.4	14.4	13.3
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	4,444.8	54.1	104.4	150.7	150.7	139.1

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 6 2042**	**Year 7 2043**	**Year 8 2044**	**Year 9 2045**	**Year 10 2046**	**Year 11 2047**
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmt	21	21	17.6	22.5	30	35
Total Dry Ore Collected	Mwmt	15.1	15.1	12.8	16.6	22.2	25.8
Matte							
Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	14.3	14.3	-	-	-	-
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	1.1	1.1	-	-	-	-
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	11.6	11.6	-	-	-	-
Manganese Silicate							
Manganese (Mn) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	4,816.7	4,816.7	3,815.0	4,595.5	6,127.3	7,148.5
Refined Product							
Nickel Sulfate (NiSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	185.4	185.4	161.3	198.8	265.1	309.3
Cobalt Sulfate (CoSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	14.4	14.4	17.6	28.8	38.3	44.7
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	150.7	150.7	127.9	153	204	230

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 12 2048**	**Year 13 2049**	**Year 14 2050**	**Year 15 2051**	**Year 16 2052**	**Year 17 2053**
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmt	40	40	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5
Total Dry Ore Collected	Mwmt	29.5	29.5	27.7	27.7	27.7	27.7
Matte							
Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	35.4	35.4	13.3	13.3	13.3	13.3
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	5.1	5.1	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	27.3	27.3	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2
Manganese Silicate							
Manganese (Mn) (Recovered Metal)	kmt	8,169.8	8,169.8	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2
Refined Product							
Nickel Sulfate (NiSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1
Cobalt Sulfate (CoSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kt	46	46	46	46	46	46
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 18 2054**	**Year 19 2055**	**Year 20 2056**	**Year 21 2057**	**Year 22 2058**	**Year 23 2059**
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmt	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	40	18.9
Total Dry Ore Collected	Mwmt	27.7	27.7	27.7	27.7	29.5	14
Matte							
Nickel (Ni) (Recovered Metal)	kt	13.3	13.3	13.3	13.3	35.4	-
Cobalt (Co) (Recovered Metal)	kt	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9	5.1	-
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kt	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	27.3	-
Manganese Silicate							
Manganese (Mn) (Recovered Metal)	kt	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	8,169.8	3,860.2
Refined Product							
Nickel Sulfate (NiSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	167
Cobalt Sulfate (CoSO4) (Recovered Metal)	kt	46	46	46	46	46	24.2
Copper (Cu) (Recovered Metal)	kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	128.5

Scheduled maintenance and shutdowns of both offshore technology and onshore facilities are considered in the production plan, as nodule delivery volumes can be affected by these periods.

15.2 Offshore infrastructure

All details of offshore and marine infrastructure, including ports and quayside bulk cargo facilities are described in Section 13.6.5.

16 Market studies

16.1 TMC offtake agreement

On 25 May 2012, DeepGreen Engineering Pte. Ltd. (DGE) (a wholly owned subsidiary of TMC) and Glencore International AG (Glencore) entered into a copper off-take agreement and a nickel off-take agreement whereby DGE agreed to deliver to Glencore 50% of the annual quantity of copper material and 50% of the annual quantity of nickel material produced by DGE owned and operated facilities fed by ore from the NORI project area.

The pricing mechanism was agreed as follows:

- For London Metals Exchange (LME) Registered Grade "A" Copper Cathodes, the delivered price is the official LME Copper Grade "A" Cash Settlement quotation as published in the Metal Bulletin averaged over the month of shipping or the following month at Glencore's choice, plus the official long-term contract premium as announced annually by Codelco, basis cost, insurance and freight (CIF) Main European Ports.
- For LME Registered Primary Nickel, the delivered price is the official LME Primary Nickel Cash Settlement averaged over the month of shipping or the following month at Glencore's choice. For other copper-bearing material and other nickel-bearing material, the parties shall agree a price annually for the forthcoming calendar year on the basis of prevailing market prices for such copper products and such nickel products.

Both the nickel and copper off-take agreements are for the life of the NORI Areas, and either party may terminate the agreement upon a material breach or insolvency of the other party. Glencore may also terminate the agreement by giving 12 months' notice.

16.2 Marketing analysis

BMI was contracted by TMC to provide market overviews for three commodities from NORI and TOML areas: nickel, cobalt, and copper (BMI, 2025a) and to provide forecasts for the premia/discounts that nickel and cobalt sulfate over nickel metal price forecasts (BMI, 2025a).

CRU was commissioned by NORI to examine the marketability and pricing for the three intermediate products that are expected to be produced by TMC from the NORI and TOML areas (CRU, 2024):

- Nickel-cobalt-copper alloy.
- Nickel-cobalt-copper matte.
- Manganese silicate.

Additionally, CRU was retained to provide manganese ore market forecasts.

Over a five-year horizon, BMI and CRU’s price forecasts are based primarily on supply and demand fundamentals. These are established from detailed bottom-up analysis of supply by individual mine and intermediate product or refined metal producer, and in-depth analysis of demand from individual applications. Both BMI and CRU also consider operating costs and inventories in its forecasts, as well as various other factors where relevant.

For the forecast beyond a five-year horizon, cyclical supply-demand balances become hard to predict. Therefore, the longer term price forecasts are based on the Long Run Marginal Cost (LRMC) concept. That is, that prices in the long term will trend towards, and fluctuate around, the full economic costs (i.e., operating costs including an allowance for a return on capital) of the marginal tonne required to meet long term demand. For example, when prices are above the LRMC, it would be assumed that supply will be added, and prices will subside. Assets selected for the LRMC analysis are a representative sample that are likely to be in production to satisfy future demand. They use the Project Gateway classification system to select projects. It is important to consider where these new assets are expected to be located, how large they will be and what processing technology they will adapt. The composition of future capacity and accompanying demand levels will have a significant impact not just on the LRMC assessment, but also the upside and downside risk associated with that assessment.

Two exceptions to this long-term price forecasting methodology are the cobalt market and copper forecast. Since the majority of cobalt is produced as a by-product of copper or nickel mining, supply is inelastic to the cobalt price, with supply decisions instead more likely to be driven by the market environment for the operations’ main copper or nickel product. This means that the LRMC concept cannot readily be applied. Instead, estimates refer to historic pricing trends to establish a long-term equilibrium price, taking into account longer term factors, such as the increasing importance of batteries as a cobalt end use, that might result in cobalt prices and product premia differing with historical trends. BMI have completed price forecast out to 2030 based on fundamental supply demand balance. The 2030 price has been projected forward long-term. Copper represents about 18% of total revenue.

16.3 Market outlook

16.3.1 Nickel

16.3.1.1 Nickel market overview

Nickel is a high-melting-point, silvery-white metal valued for its hardness and resistance to oxidation. Traditionally found with copper, iron, and cobalt, nickel is extracted from two main ore types: sulfide and laterite. Historically, sulfide ores dominated production, but laterite ores, particularly saprolite and limonite types, now predominate due to scarce new sulfide deposits. Laterite ores are commonly processed via RKEF to produce ferronickel or NPI or high-pressure acid leaching (HPAL) to produce intermediates like mixed hydroxide precipitate (MHP) and mixed sulfide precipitate (MSP). Nickel products are typically classified as Class 1 (high-purity, such as nickel sulfate) and Class 2 (nickel alloy products, such as ferronickel). Nickel is primarily used in stainless steel (65% market share) and increasingly in batteries for EVs. BMI predict total nickel market CAGR of 5.4% and 11.3% growth in nickel demand in lithium ion batteries to 2040 (BMI, 2025b).

16.3.1.2 Nickel supply

Global refined nickel production is forecast to grow from 3.6 Mt nickel in 2025 to 4.9 Mt by 2035 (CAGR of 2.95%). Indonesia is projected to drive this growth, increasing from 2.3 Mt nickel in 2025 to 3.3 Mt nickel by 2035 representing about 70% of global production. However, production in other parts of Asia, such as the Philippines, is expected to decline as reserves dwindle. The majority of Indonesian refined nickel output is expected to be in NPI, while China is adding capacity for nickel sulfate production, led by major companies like Huayou Cobalt and CNGR. Indonesian MHP production is expected to more than double from 493 Kt in 2025 to 989 Kt 2029 in with the rapid construction HPAL plants largely driven by Chinese interests.

16.3.1.3 Nickel demand

Global nickel consumption is projected to grow significantly at a CAGR of 5.4% from 2025-2035, largely due to rising demand for 300-series stainless steel and high-nickel NMC (nickel-manganese-cobalt) cathodes in lithium-ion batteries for the EV sector. Currently, stainless steel represents 65% of total nickel demand, while batteries are expected to constitute 28% of demand by 2035, driven by a 2.4 Mt nickel increase. China, already accounting for over half of global nickel consumption, is anticipated to remain the primary demand driver with a forecasted CAGR of 5.5% from 2022-2035. Indonesia is also emerging as a major consumer, developing domestic industries due to its export ban on laterite ore, leading to significant growth in NPI and stainless-steel production.

16.3.1.4 Nickel supply gap and prices

Nickel supply is expected to slightly exceed demand until 2030, after which production must increase by 0.8 Mt to meet projected 2035 demand. Tight supply pushed prices up in 2020-2022, with the Russia-Ukraine conflict further spiking prices to $100,000/t, prompting market intervention. Rapid expansion of nickel supply from Indonesia has depressed prices to around the current value of $US15,000-15,500 tonne. BMI estimates that 20% of the nickel industry is currently loss making including non-integrated Indonesian and Chinese NPI and FeNi producers. Increasingly challenged access to, lower quality of and increased price of Indonesian laterite ores are expected to apply increased cost pressure on Indonesian RK-EF operations and provide upward nickel price pressure. BMI predict that long-term demand will likely drive prices above $21,000 (2025 US$) by 2032 to provide the inducement price to bring on required additional production to expected supply shortfall at this time.

16.3.2 Cobalt

16.3.2.1 Cobalt market overview

Global cobalt reserves, currently at 7.65 Mt, are concentrated in the African copper belt, particularly in the DRC, which provides cobalt as a by-product of copper-cobalt mining. Secondary reserves are found in nickel laterites in countries like Australia, Indonesia, Cuba, and the Philippines, as well as in nickel sulfide deposits in Canada, Russia, and Western Australia. The cobalt value chain involves diverse ore types, processing methods, intermediates, and final products, mainly split between hydrometallurgical and pyrometallurgical routes, ultimately yielding cobalt in forms like metal, chemicals, and other compounds.

16.3.2.2 Cobalt supply

The DRC dominates global cobalt production, supplying nearly 75% of mined cobalt, of which 50% is processed in China. Chinese ownership of DRC mines and significant imports make China the main producer of refined cobalt, accounting for 80% of total supply and nearly 90% in cobalt chemicals. Indonesia is an emerging supplier, producing cobalt as a by-product from its growing laterite ore mining sector. By 2030, Indonesia's share of global cobalt supply is projected to reach 24%. However, the DRC and Indonesia alone are expected to drive 93% of supply growth from 2025 to 2030. BMI forecast that primary cobalt supply will reach 324 kt in 2030, up by 32% compared with projected 2025 levels of 245 kt. But as mines begin to run through reserves and the visibility for new assets into the 2030s is limited, BMI expectation for mine supply is a slight decline into the 2030s, although secondary supply will continue to increase: by 2040, recycled material will account for 36% of total supply, up from 8% in 2024.

16.3.2.3 Cobalt demand

Battery production has become the primary end use of cobalt, driven by the rapid expansion of the EV market. In 2035, battery demand is expected to account for 84% of overall cobalt demand, up from less than half in 2017. Cobalt demand from the battery sector is anticipated to grow more than 100% between 2024 to 2034, despite decreasing cobalt intensities in batteries. China and Europe currently lead demand growth due to transportation electrification, but North America's demand is expected to increase substantially, from 17 kt in 2020 to 50 kt in 2035.

16.3.2.4 Cobalt supply gap and prices

BMI expects the cobalt market to remain oversupplied throughout the 2020s, with the market rebalancing in 2032 and shifting to deficit from 2033 onwards. Refined cobalt supply will see strong growth in the short term, driven largely by output from China. However, by 2033, supply is forecast to struggle to keep pace with demand, leading to a projected 46 kt supply gap by 2035. Additional production beyond current forecasts will be required to meet future demand.

Cobalt prices are historically volatile, given that much of the production is a by-product of copper and nickel mining, making supply less responsive to demand. Long-term price estimates from BMI suggest that European cobalt prices will average around $62,500/tonne in $2025 real terms. Cobalt's price inelasticity is due to its low proportion of costs in most applications, where alternatives are limited or costs are passed downstream (such as batteries and pharmaceuticals).

16.3.3 Manganese

16.3.3.1 Manganese market overview

Manganese is a critical metal with high chemical reactivity and melting point, essential in steelmaking for its deoxidizing and alloying properties. About 85-90% of current manganese demand is for steel production, including in high-strength low alloy, stainless, and engineered steels. Additionally, manganese is used in aluminum alloys and in chemicals, particularly manganese sulfate for agriculture and battery applications.

16.3.3.2 Manganese supply

Manganese ore production is concentrated in Africa, especially South Africa, Gabon, and Ghana, along with Australia, representing over 75% of global supply. Africa's production is forecast to grow by 722 kt of contained manganese from 2023 to 2028, with significant expansions in Gabon and Ghana. In contrast, China's production is declining at a 1.7% CAGR due to high costs and declining ore quality. While China leads in global manganese ferroalloy production, declining domestic steel demand is expected to reduce production by 3% CAGR from 2024 to 2028. Other regions, including Asia, CIS, and Europe, will compensate partially, keeping global ferroalloy supply stable.

16.3.3.3 Manganese demand

China, consuming 60% of global manganese ore, is set to reduce its demand by 600 kt through 2028, driven by lower ferroalloy demand. However, demand from other regions is expected to offset this, with a global increase of over 4 Mt of contained manganese forecast by CRU by 2035. Silicomanganese alloy will maintain the largest share of demand (52%), but growth will be highest for Electrolytic Manganese Metal[4](EMM) and battery applications, with projected CAGRs of 10% and 22%, respectively. These segments will constitute 21% of demand by 2035, up from 9% today.

16.3.3.4 Manganese supply gap and prices

A supply deficit of 3.3 Mt over and above existing mines and committed projects is anticipated by 2035 due to rising demand, particularly for EMM and battery uses. Prices are expected to grow in real terms by 2035, with 44% Mn lump prices reaching $5.50/dmtu[5] and 36-39% Mn lump at $4.90/dmtu (both real 2025 US$).

4 Electrolytic Manganese Metal (EMM) is a significant alloy component in the production of stainless steel, high-strength low-alloy steel, aluminium-manganese alloy, and copper-manganese alloy. It is also used as a primary ingredient for producing Manganese tetraoxide (Mn_3O_4) and sulfate ($MnSO_4$).

5 dtmu means dry metric tonne unit. A 'unit' is 10 kg, or 1 tonne divided into 100 units. For example, $8/dmtu is equal to $800/tonne of pure manganese metal. This pricing structure is commonly used for manganese ore sales (as opposed to pure manganese metal). A typical manganese ore will grade 45% Manganese so a price per tonne of this 'impure' ore will be 45% of $800/tonne = $360/tonne.

16.3.3.5 EMM and MnSO4

While it is expected that most of the manganese silicate product will be sold as feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production, it is also suitable as feedstock for EMM and MnSO4 production. Approximately 10% of manganese is processed into EMM and $MnSO_4$, the latter being vital for fertilizers and lithium-ion battery production. Demand for high-purity $MnSO_4$ monohydrate (HPMSM) is surging due to EV demand, with prices expected to grow alongside EMM costs. By 2035, EMM prices are forecast at $2,110/t and HPMSM at over $2,200/t (both real 2023 US$).

16.3.4 Copper

16.3.4.1 Copper market overview

Copper is primarily mined as sulfide or oxide ore, with sulfide ores containing 0.3-1.5% copper and oxide ores reaching 4% or higher. Around 80% of copper mining is done via open-pit operations. Oxide ores are processed through SX-electrowinning (SXEW) to produce high-purity copper cathodes. Sulfide ores undergo flotation, yielding copper concentrate (20-40% copper) for smelting and refining.

16.3.4.2 Copper supply

BMI forecast global copper mine production is forecast to grow from 22.9 Mt in 2025 to 25.6 Mt by 2028, driven by African output, particularly in the DRC (+436 kt) and Zambia (+306 kt). Chile is expected to remain the largest producer with modest 0.4% CAGR from 2025 to 2030 producing around 5.8 Mt in 2030. The DRC, the world's second largest producer is expected to increase 436 kt to 3.5 Mt, with Peru (third largest producer) increasing 330 kt at a CAGR of 2.4% to 2.9 Mt over the same period. US domestic policy favoring reshoring of industrial production is expected to drive copper production growth by a CAGR of 4.4% to 1.4 Mt for an increase of 275 kt from 2025 to 2030.

16.3.4.3 Copper demand

Copper demand is projected to rise from 34 Mt in 2025 to 42 Mt by 2035, driven by the transportation, electrical infrastructure and consumer goods sectors. By 2035, green-energy applications like EVs, renewable energy, and storage are forecast to account for ~20% of copper demand, up from 4% in 2020. Significant consumption growth is expected in North America, Europe, India, and Southeast Asia, with each region adding 1.1-1.7 Mt of demand.

16.3.4.4 Copper supply gap and prices

A 7.9 Mt supply gap is anticipated by 2035, as demand for primary copper surpasses production from current and committed projects. To bridge this gap, the industry needs to advance a significant portion of "Probable" and "Possible" projects over the next decade.

The copper price averaged $9,147/t in 2024, and is currently above $9,800/t. With the expected supply gap widening towards the late 2020s, prices are expected to reach $11,126/t by 2029. The long-term price for is estimated at $11,456/t (real 2025 US$).

16.4 TMC manganese silicate

The manganese silicate presents a unique profile as a feedstock for silico-manganese alloy production, offering high manganese content (42-43%), comparable to high-grade manganese ore or slag, with controlled SiO_2, Al_2O_3, CaO, and MgO levels and manganese in a reduced 2+ valence state. This offers value in use advantages to customers using the manganese silicate product to produce silico-manganese alloy – the largest sector of the manganese market. These attributes position TMC manganese silicate as a competitive material against traditional high-grade slags and ores. However, phosphorus levels from pilot testwork showed variability which is likely to be well controlled in the industrial process at PAMCO and other future processors. The optimized Mn/Fe ratio of 22:1 and Mn/P ratio above 500:1 are positive market indicators. Additional testing just completed by PAMCO demonstrated the ability to produce manganese silicate with Mn/P ratio greater than 1,000:1 confirming, effective phosphorus control which is critical for broader market acceptance.

Nodule-sourced manganese silicate could also serve as feedstock for EMM, Electrolytic Manganese Dioxide (EMD)[6], and HPMSM production due to its MnO form, which simplifies acid solubility without needing roasting. Although current consumption of manganese ore in these chemical sectors is lower than silico-manganese alloy, forecasts suggest growth from 2 Mt in 2023 to 4.8 Mt by 2035, potentially increasing demand for nodule-sourced manganese silicate over time. TMC currently has test work ongoing with KPM in Canada to demonstrate production of battery grade HPMSM from the manganese silicate.

From a value perspective, nodule-sourced manganese silicate is expected to be competitive, aligning closely with the 44% Mn ore benchmark price, provided it is integrated into optimized ore blends. Depending on blend composition, its implied value ranges from $5.18 to $5.406 per dmtu ($US 2023 basis). Key blends with high grade South African ore (Wessels ore) and iron ore are expected to perform comparably to the benchmark, although the value could vary depending on market conditions and processing costs for other feedstocks.

The marketing strategy for nodule-sourced manganese silicate must carefully manage blending practices to ensure its characteristics maximize value.

The proposed production profile would see TMC producing 2.4 to 2.8 Mt of manganese contained in silicate from 2031 to 2036 from the NORI Area D (AMC, 2025), however a significant increase in production to 7.5 Mt of manganese contained in silicate to 2039 is proposed, which would represent about 29% of the total manganese market. This would represent 40% of the silico-manganese and EMM and HPMSM markets which is about 73% of the total manganese market and is effectively the total available market for the manganese silicate product. Review of manganese ore industry producer cost curves prepared by CRU indicates that 7.5 Mt of manganese ore production has a cost of $US 4.70/dmtu or greater providing an indication of the pricing that would be required to displace this production. Manganese pricing after 2036 has assumed a linear decreasing price from $US 5.50 per dmtu (2025 real CRU forecast) in 2036 to $US 4.70/dmtu in 2039 and remaining flat after this.

16.5 TMC matte

TMC matte, with composition and characteristics resembling Anglo Converter Matte and Jinchuan Converter Matte, is projected to have high compatibility in refining processes. Key refineries, including Vale Canada, Glencore Nikkelverk, and Jinchuan, collectively account for approximately 85% of spare global refining capacity and are primary candidates for NORI matte processing. CRU expects NORI matte's net value to reach 75% of its gross metal value, contingent on forming long-term partnerships with these facilities.

However, the matte market could become buyer-dominant with growing feedstock supply, possibly pushing payables down to 80% for nickel, 70% for copper, and 60% for cobalt. Establishing stable refinery relationships will enhance payables over time, securing a consistent outlet for NORI matte substantial volumes.

CRU estimates a total available refining capacity for TMC matte of about 200 Kt contained nickel per annum. TMC nickel refining in the US mitigates the risk of increasing matte production exceeding the global matte refining capability.

16.6 Refinery products

It is intended TMC US subsidiary TMC USA will construct refining facilities in Texas to produce battery-grade nickel and cobalt sulfate crystal, copper cathode and fertilizer grade ammonium sulfate. Forecasts for cathode and sulfate prices are included in Table 6.1 based on the forecasts from BMI.

6 Electrolytic Manganese Dioxide (EMD) is a critical component of the cathode material in modern alkaline, lithium and sodium batteries

16.7 Revenue forecasts

Revenue assumptions are outlined in this section using the forecast data provided by CRU and BMI.

Table 16.1 outlines the metal price forecast in 2025 real $US dollars based on the CRU and BMI forecasts outlined above. Table 16.2 shows the metallurgical recoveries used in the revenue estimate as outlined in Section 14. Table 16.3 outlines the payable factors provided by CRU and outlined above for nickel-copper-cobalt matte. Table 16.4 to Table 16.6 provide forecasts of payable metal production in matte, refinery products and manganese silicate respectively. Table 16.7 provides the revenue forecast by metal.

Table 16.1 Metal and metal sulfate price forecasts (real US$ 2025)

Commodity Pricing - Real	LOM Average	2037-2041	2042-2046	2047-2059
Price - Nickel Class 1 LME (US$/t)	20,360	20,360	20,360	20,360
Price - Cobalt LME (US$/t)	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530
Price - Copper Class 1 LME(US$/t)	11,456	11,456	11,456	11,456
Price - Manganese (US$/dmtu)	4.71	4.79	4.70	4.70
Price – Ni Sulfate (Contained Ni basis)	21,835	21,835	21,835	21,835
Price – Co Sulfate (Contained Co basis)	62,530	62,530	62,530	62,530

Source: CRU, BMI

Table 16.2 Metallurgical recoveries

Product	Recovery (%)
Matte – nickel recovery – nodule to matte	94.76
Matte – cobalt recovery – nodule to matte	77.54
Matte – copper recovery – nodule to matte	86.43
Sulfate – nickel recovery – nodule to sulfate	94.60
Sulfate – cobalt recovery – nodule to sulfate	77.20
Cathode – copper recovery – nodule to cathode	86.20
Manganese recovery – nodule to Manganese Silicate	98.9

Source: TMC

Table 16.3 Ni-Co-Cu matte payable terms percentage of LME benchmark prices

Payable Terms	Terms
Matte - Payable Terms – Ni	80.0%
Matte - Payable Terms – Co	60.0%
Matte - Payable Terms – Cu	70.0%

Source: CRU

Table 16.4 Forecast payable metal production - metal in matte

Metal	LOM Total Kt	Year 1 2037	Year 2 2038	Year 3 2039	Year 4 2040	Year 5 2041
Payable Nickel	242.3	--	3.8	11.4	11.4	22.9
Payable Cobalt	22.7	--	0.2	0.7	0.7	1.3
Payable Copper	166.1	--	2.7	8.1	8.1	16.3
Metal	**Year 6 2042**	**Year 7 2043**	**Year 8 2044**	**Year 9 2045**	**Year 10 2046**	**Year 10+ 2047+**
Payable Nickel	11.4	11.4	--	--	--	170.0
Payable Cobalt	0.7	0.7	--	--	--	18.5
Payable Copper	8.1	8.1	--	--	--	114.6

Source: TMC, Note: All matte is used in the US refineries for years 2038, 2039 and 2040

Table 16.5 Forecast payable refined metal production - metal in sulfate and cathode

Metal	**LOM Total Kt**	**Year 1 2037**	**Year 22038**	**Year 3 2039**	**Year 4 2040**	**Year 5 2041**
Payable Nickel in Sulfate	5,759.8	71.6	128.3	185.4	185.4	171.1
Payable Cobalt in Sulfate	752.3	5.6	10.0	14.4	14.4	13.3
Payable Copper in Cathode	4,485.2	58.2	104.4	150.7	150.7	139.1
Metal	**Year 6 2042**	**Year 7 2043**	**Year 82044**	**Year 9 2045**	**Year 10 2046**	**Year 10+ 2047+**
Payable Nickel in Sulfate	185.4	185.4	179.8	217.8	265.1	3,984.5
Payable Cobalt in Sulfate	14.4	14.4	19.6	31.5	38.3	576.2
Payable Copper in Cathode	150.7	150.7	142.5	167.7	204.0	3,066.3

Source: TMC

Table 16.6 Forecast production – manganese in manganese silicate

Product	**LOM Total Kt**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Mn in manganese silicate	140,229.0	1,605.6	3,211.1	4,816.7	4,816.7	4,816.7
Product	**Year 15 2042**	**Year 16 2043**	**Year 17 2044**	**Year 18 2045**	**Year 19 2046**	**Year 20+ 2047+**
Mn in manganese silicate	4,816.7	4,816.7	3,815.0	4,595.5	6,127.3	96,791.3

Source: TMC

Table 16.7 Revenue Forecast US$ 2025 Real

Metal	**LOM Total**	**Year 10 2037**	**Year 11 2038**	**Year 12 2039**	**Year 13 2040**	**Year 14 2041**
Nickel Revenue	130,670.3	1,557.0	2,880.2	4,280.9	4,280.9	4,202.2
Cobalt Revenue	48,456.4	347.2	638.9	944.6	944.6	917.0
Copper Revenue	53,278.3	664.4	1,226.9	1,820.6	1,820.6	1,781.0
Manganese Revenue	66,078.1	839.9	1,594.5	2,263.8	2,263.8	2,263.8
Metal	Year 15 2042	Year 16 2043	Year 17 2044	Year 18 2045	Year 19 2046	Year 20+ 2047+
Nickel Revenue	4,280.9	4,280.9	3,908.9	4,744.9	5,788.7	90,464.7
Cobalt Revenue	944.6	944.6	1,222.6	1,965.1	2,397.5	37,189.6
Copper Revenue	1,820.6	1,820.6	1,625.9	1,916.0	2,337.5	36,444.5
Manganese Revenue	2,263.8	2,263.8	1,793.0	2,159.9	2,879.8	45,491.9

Source: CRU

17 Environmental studies, permitting and social or community impact

TMC, through their wholly owned subsidiaries NORI and TOML, hold exploration rights under the ISA regulatory framework to the NORI and TOML areas. TMC, through its affiliate TMC USA is in the process of applying for exploration rights for these areas under the existing DSHMRA regulatory regime administered by NOAA. TMC USA has submitted a commercial recovery permit application to NOAA for the NORI Area D (identified as TMC USA A-A under the DSHMRA application process), see Section 3.1 for more information on existing exploration areas and the current commercial recovery application.

TMC, through its subsidiaries, has completed extensive offshore environmental baseline and impact assessment studies with efforts focused on the NORI Area D and TOML-F areas. Section 17.2 describes the information collected during these studies that is transferable to the other TMC USA application areas.

The development and status of the environmental and social program for the NORI and TOML Contract Areas is described below. Note that details pertaining to NORI Area D can be found in the Technical Report Summary for NORI-D (AMC Consultants, 2025), with this report focusing specifically on the areas outside of NORI Area D under exploration.

17.1 Permitting process

17.1.1 ISA

The ISA is mandated through UNCLOS to organize, regulate, and control all mineral-related activities in Areas Beyond National Jurisdiction (ABNJ) whilst preserving and protecting the marine environment. As NORI and TOML are in the ABNJ, the ISA is responsible for assessing any ESIA prepared by Contractors and for granting the relevant contracts. TMC, through affiliates NORI and TOML are currently one of 16 contractors with a license to explore for polymetallic nodules in the CCZ (refer ISBA/23/C/7, 5 June 2017).

Between 1998 and 2014, the ISA conducted workshops and developed several documents to guide contractors on expectations for responsible environmental management during the exploration and exploitation phases of mineral development. The ISA held a workshop "Towards an ISA environmental management strategy for the Area" over 20-24 March 2017 in Berlin Germany. The results of the workshop were published as ISA Technical Study 17 (ISA 2017).

The ISA has issued Regulations on Prospecting and Exploration for Polymetallic Nodules (adopted on 13 July 2000, updated on 25 July 2013). The regulations were complemented by the Legal and Technical Commission (LTC) recommendations for the guidance of contractors on assessing the environmental impacts of exploration (ISBA/25/LTC/6/Rev.1) which was updated on 30 March 2020. The draft exploitation regulations on deep-seabed mining were discussed at the 25th Session of the ISA (25 February to 1 March 2019 in Kingston, Jamaica). The ISA had declared a target of 2020 to have the regulations approved, but the COVID-19 pandemic disrupted the ISA program.

Although the environmental impact review process has not yet been finalized, the draft regulations outline the application process and the conditions that contractors would need to implement during operations. All contractors have been made aware that the ISA requires the completion of the ESIA studies, culminating in an EIS, in support of an applications for an exploitation license. Guidance for contractors in terms of what is expected in the EIS has been provided in ISA Technical Study No. 10 (ISA 2012). Further guidance will be provided with the completion of Standards and Guidelines for exploitation activities. The EIS, along with an Environmental Management System (EMS) with subordinate Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans (EMMP), are stated as requirements as part of the application for an exploitation license within the Area.

The environmental permitting process for the Area has been developed through a consultation program initiated by the ISA in 2013 and includes feedback obtained from multiple stakeholder groups. It is expected to involve a series of checks and balances, with reviews being conducted by the LTC with input from independent experts, as required. The recommendations of the LTC are expected to then go before the ISA Council, which review the information provided and decide whether to approve the license application and, if so, what conditions should be applied.

TMC conducted ESIA studies under the draft ISA guidelines “Recommendations for the guidance of contractors for the assessment of the possible environmental impacts arising from exploration for marine minerals in the Area issued by the Legal and Technical Commission”.

17.1.1.1 NORI

As a sponsoring state, Nauru has a responsibility to ensure that NORI’s activities in the international seabed area are carried out in conformity with Part XI of UNCLOS.

NORI is regulated by Nauru’s International Seabed Minerals Act 2015 (“Nauru Act”), which requires NORI to, amongst other things, “*apply the Precautionary Principle, and employ best environmental practice in accordance with prevailing international standards in order to avoid, mitigate or remedy adverse effects of Seabed Mineral Activities on the Marine Environment*”.

The Nauru Seabed Minerals Authority, established under the Nauru Act, has several functions, including ,*inter alia*:

- Develop policies and institutional arrangements for the purpose of regulating and monitoring the development of seabed minerals in the international seabed area.
- Develop standards and guidelines for Seabed Mineral Activities.
- Conduct due diligence enquiries into Sponsorship Applicants or Sponsored Parties.
- Assist the ISA in its work to establish, monitor, implement and secure compliance with the Rules of the ISA.
- Undertake any advisory, supervisory or enforcement activities in relation to Seabed Mineral Activities or the protection of the Marine Environment, insofar as this is required in addition to the ISA’s work in order for Nauru to meet its obligations under the UNCLOS as a Sponsoring State.

17.1.1.2 TOML

As the sponsoring state, Tonga has a responsibility to ensure that TOML’s activities in the international seabed area are carried out in conformity with Part XI of UNCLOS. Similar to NORI’s obligations under the exploration regulations, TOML is to submit annual reports summarizing exploration progress activities and 5-year plans detailing future exploration activities.

17.1.1.3 Compliance status

At the effective date of this report, NORI and TOML are in compliance with their exploration contracts. NORI and TOML are required to submit 5-year work plans which they report on annually to the ISA. Every 5 years the ISA reviews the work completed in the past 5 years and then NORI and TOML develop and submit new 5-year work plans.

It is planned for the following tasks to be undertaken:

- Characterizing nodule mineralization.
- Characterizing the nature of the seabed, water column and biology.
- Conducting environmental baseline studies and impact assessments.
- Characterizing the nature of any materials returned to the environment.

- Developing oceanographic and physical information to inform models (e.g., sediment plume models).
- Developing other plans, including the master environmental management plan (EMP) and the various subordinate plans.

TOML is in the process of conducting a scoping study from which a plan of work for the studies required to inform the EIA are expected to be developed.

17.1.2 Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act

TMC USA is currently exploring a parallel regulatory route through the DSHMRA. DSHMRA is an established framework authorizing U.S. citizens (e.g., individuals, corporations) to explore for and recover minerals from the seabed in ABNJ. DSHMRA defines exploration as the at-sea observation and evaluation of seabed Mineral Resources and the taking of the resource as needed to design and test mining equipment, and commercial recovery (or exploitation) as the actual at-sea mining and processing of seabed minerals for the primary purpose of commercial use.

While DSHMRA has long been in force, no commercial recovery permit has ever been issued under this regime. In 2025, NOAA published proposed revisions to its implementing regulations under 15 C.F.R. Parts 970 and 971, which introduce new procedures for consolidated applications, environmental reviews, and information disclosure. As of the date of this report, the rulemaking process remains ongoing, and the practical application of the commercial recovery permit process is untested.

TMC USA is actively evaluating its eligibility under DSHMRA and has engaged with NOAA and other U.S. federal agencies; however, the permitting pathway under DSHMRA involves material legal and procedural uncertainty.

Major Federal actions covered by the Act include:

- Designation of Reciprocating States.
- Regulatory Framework.
- Possibilities for Retaining Manganese Tailings.
- NPDES Findings by EPA.

17.1.2.1 Compliance status

Executive Order (EO) 14258 directed NOAA, in consultation with the Department of State and BOEM, to expedite the process for reviewing and issuing exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits under DSHMRA, among other actions. On April 29, 2025, TMC's U.S. subsidiary TMC USA, submitted applications to NOAA for two exploration licenses and one commercial recovery permit under DSHMRA for areas in the CCZ. According to the Code of Federal Regulations, NOAA is to make an initial determination within 30 days of receipt for exploration license applications (15 C.F.R. §970.209) and within 60 days of receipt for commercial recovery permit applications (15 C.F.R. §971.210).

17.1.2.2 Alternate permitting pathways

The exploration of permitting opportunities through both ISA and DSHMRA increases the project's potential for permitting success. By progressing through both systems, the company mitigates geopolitical, legal, and regulatory risk by demonstrating flexibility in adapting to global political or regulatory shifts in seabed governance. If one pathway is delayed or faces legal challenges, a contingency is in place.

17.2 Transferable information from NORI Area D and TOML-F

TMC has conducted 22 research cruises to the CCZ over the past 12 years, primarily focusing on the NORI Area D, with some data also collected from TOML-F. During this time, TMC has built a substantial database of information on the physical and environmental baselines of both areas, some of which can be applied to other parts of the CCZ. This transferable information provides a foundation for developing the scope of offshore studies in other areas covered under the exploration applications. An overview of the transferable information is provided below.

Details of the environmental baseline studies conducted by TMC can be found in Section 17 of the Technical Report Summary for NORI-D (AMC Consultants, 2025) The following summary integrates geological, oceanographic, biogeochemical, benthic ecological, and trace metal baseline data from multiple campaigns and scientific investigations that may be of relevance to areas outside of NORI Area D and TOML-F.

17.2.1 Baseline studies

17.2.1.1 Regional geological setting

The NORI Area D lies within the eastern equatorial Pacific Ocean, approximately 1,500 km southwest of Mexico’s coast, situated towards the far east of the CCZ (Menard, 1955, 1966; Seton et al., 2020). This region is characterized by young oceanic crust formed at the East Pacific Rise about 18 to 20 million years ago, bounded by major fracture zones—the Clipperton Fracture Zone to the south and the Clarion Fracture Zone to the north (Menard & Fisher, 1958). The basement rock is overlain by a thin sediment veneer composed variably of carbonaceous and siliceous materials, which has allowed the formation of polymetallic nodules rich in manganese, cobalt, nickel, copper, and trace metals at the sediment-water interface (ISA, 2010b; Parianos, 2021).

The geological units in NORI Area D reflect a restricted stratigraphy from the lower Miocene onwards, with sediment thickness reaching up to 90 m, comprising siliceous ooze overlying carbonate sediments (Parianos et al., 2022). Sediment distribution varies spatially, with thicker deposits in flatter central areas and thinner sequences over ridges and abyssal hills, likely influenced by bottom currents and sediment remobilization processes (Parianos, 2021). These features are broadly representative of the eastern CCZ, where sedimentation rates are low (~0.3 cm/1,000 years), and sediment remobilization plays a significant role in shaping benthic habitats.

17.2.1.2 Substrate composition and geotechnical characteristics

NORI Area D sediments can be visually divided into four layers, with the uppermost layer being a dark brown, poorly consolidated silty clay with high water content, transitioning downward into more consolidated beige matrices with bioturbation traces (O’Malley et al., 2023). The flat seafloor areas predominantly consist of silty clay or clayey silt, though variations occur near topographic highs such as ridges and abyssal hills, where soils exhibit greater stiffness (APYS, 2024). In situ cone penetration tests (CPT) reveal undrained shear strength increasing steadily with depth, indicating geotechnical properties important for mining equipment design and environmental impact assessments.

These substrate characteristics align with observations from other CCZ Contract Areas, suggesting that similar sedimentary and mechanical properties may be expected regionally, particularly in areas with comparable bathymetry and sediment thickness (Volz et al., 2018; Kuhn & Rühlemann, 2021a).

17.2.1.3 Polymetallic nodules: Abundance, chemistry, and variability

Nodule abundance in NORI Area D varies considerably over scales of ~10 km, ranging between 8 kg/m² and 30 kg/m², consistent with patterns observed throughout the CCZ.

Chemical analyses indicate relatively uniform grades of cobalt, nickel, copper, manganese, and iron across NORI Area D, with cobalt concentrations higher in the northern part of the lease area and slightly lower in the south (ISA, 2010b). These grade distributions demonstrate spatial continuity, supported by multiple sampling campaigns and equiprobable simulations.

Solid-phase metal contents in sediments beneath nodules also reflect elevated manganese and cobalt levels compared to deeper sediment layers, with surface enrichments attributed to micronodules and nodule fragments (Volz et al., 2020). Porewater dissolved metal concentrations, including manganese and cobalt, exhibit peaks near the sediment-water interface, indicating active diagenetic cycling and metal mobilization processes common to the southeastern CCZ (Paul et al., 2024).

17.2.1.4 Water mass distribution and circulation dynamics

The northeastern tropical Pacific, encompassing the CCZ and NORI Area D, exhibits complex hydrographic structures shaped by both locally formed and advected water masses (Fiedler & Talley, 2006). Deep-sea circulation in NORI Area D is influenced by abyssal flows varying in intensity and direction, modulated by mesoscale eddies, deep recirculation, and topographically steered currents (Pegliasco et al., 2022).

Mooring arrays deployed from 2019 to 2023 recorded zonal and meridional currents, revealing high-frequency tidal components dominated by semidiurnal M_2 tides and near-inertial oscillations, especially in the upper 500 m of the water column. Internal wave dynamics include semidiurnal internal tides propagating westward and near-inertial waves exhibiting complex vertical energy redistribution, with enhanced mixing near seamounts and abyssal hills (Xie et al., 2023).

Mesoscale eddy activity is prominent, with local cyclonic (CC) and anticyclonic (AC) eddies frequently crossing NORI Area D. AC eddies originate both locally and remotely (e.g., Gulf of Tehuantepec), whereas CC eddies appear primarily local. Eddy lifecycles feature growth, maturity, and decay phases, influencing regional heat, salt, and tracer transport critical for nutrient and oxygen distributions (Pegliasco et al., 2022). These circulation patterns and eddy dynamics are characteristic of the broader CCZ and inform understanding of physical drivers affecting benthic ecosystems.

17.2.1.5 Biogeochemical baselines: Nutrients, organic carbon, and carbonate chemistry

Baseline measurements in NORI Area D demonstrate that bottom water nitrate concentrations range narrowly around 36.9 to 39.3 $\mu mol\ L^{-1}$, consistent with values reported for the wider southeastern CCZ (Shulse et al., 2017; Washburn et al., 2021). Phosphate, silicate, ammonia, and nitrite concentrations align similarly with regional datasets, reflecting the homogeneity in deep-water nutrient profiles across the CCZ.

Particulate organic carbon (POC) fluxes measured at depths near 2,000 m and 500 m above the seafloor correspond closely with satellite-derived net primary productivity (NPP) estimates, showing seasonal and interannual variability linked to climatic events such as La Niña (Dunne et al., 2005; Henson et al., 2012; Li & Cassar, 2016). Approximately 1.2% of surface NPP reaches 1,000 m depth, with only 0.4% reaching the seafloor, equating to about 0.63 $g\ C\ m^{-2}\ yr^{-1}$, slightly lower than some modelled estimates for the CCZ (Lutz et al., 2007; McQuaid et al., 2020).

Sediment inorganic carbon (IC) content in NORI Area D ranges from 0.04% to 1.69%, generally below global averages but higher than neighboring BGR-E Contract Area sediments due to proximity to calcareous ooze zones (Kuhn & Rühlemann, 2021b). IC depth profiles typically increase with burial depth, reflecting depositional regimes common to equatorial Pacific sediments (Archer, 1996; Jahnke et al., 1982). Total organic carbon (TOC) content at the sediment surface averages around 0.56%, comparable to BGR-E but higher than UK-1 Contract Area sediments, highlighting regional consistency in organic matter deposition (Macheriotou et al., 2022; Hollingsworth et al., 2021).

Carbon-to-nitrogen (C:N) ratios in surface sediments hover around 5, indicating mixed marine organic matter inputs consistent with mid-range values for unaltered phytoplanktonic material (Prahl et al., 1980; Redfield et al., 1963). Temporal stability in these ratios suggests consistent organic matter quality across seasons and years.

Seafloor pH and total alkalinity (TA) measurements in NORI Area D align with regional patterns observed in the eastern tropical Pacific, providing essential baselines for assessing potential acidification impacts related to mining activities (Jahnke et al., 1982; Fitzsimmons et al., 2024).

17.2.1.6 Benthic biological communities: Diversity, connectivity, and temporal variability

The benthic baseline studies conducted in NORI Area D represent one of the most comprehensive efforts in the CCZ, employing multidisciplinary approaches to characterize sediment microbial communities, meiofauna, macrofauna, megafauna, and nodule-associated fauna (Gooday et al., 2021; Lejzerowicz et al., 2021; Rabone et al., 2023).

Sediment microbial assemblages sampled via multicorer deployments during campaigns 5A, 5D, and 7A revealed diverse communities structured by sediment depth and substrate type. Foraminiferal studies identified over 900 species dominated by monothalamids, with diversity exceeding that reported in other CCZ Contract Areas, although densities were comparatively lower (Nozawa et al., 2006). Nematode genera richness was substantial, with 167 genera documented, showing spatial structuring and significant temporal variability exceeding spatial differences (Ingels, 2024).

Macrofaunal community composition exhibited complex spatial and temporal patterns, with significant temporal shifts between campaigns surpassing spatial heterogeneity among management zones (TF, EMS, PRZ). Species richness and community similarity analyses indicated high connectivity across NORI Area D, with many species shared between zones, underscoring ecological linkages within the lease area and potentially extending to adjacent CCZ regions (Glover et al., 2024).

Megafauna surveys using ROVs collected tens of thousands of images across multiple sites, documenting standing stocks, diversity, and community structure. Xenophyophores and other large benthic organisms showed spatial variation linked to substrate type and nodule coverage, with temporal monitoring revealing natural fluctuations critical for impact assessment baselines (O'Malley et al., 2023).

Nodule-dwelling fauna, examined through BC samples, yielded 259 species from 1,441 specimens, representing the largest quantitative dataset for this habitat in the CCZ.

Genetic connectivity analyses demonstrated significant gene flow among eastern CCZ Contract Areas, including NORI Area D, UK-1, and BGR, supporting the concept of a connected metapopulation across the region. However, genetic differentiation increased with geographic distance, notably between eastern CCZ sites and more remote locations such as IFREMER and Cape & Guinea Basin sites (Glover et al., 2024).

Megafauna surveys were also conducted in TOML B, C and D (Simon-Lledó et al, 2020). In this study, seabed image surveys were used to assess distribution patterns in invertebrate and fish megafauna (>1 cm) at multiple scales in relation to key environmental factors: food supply to the seabed varying at the regional scale (hundreds of km), seabed geomorphological variations varying at the broad local scale (tens of km), and seabed nodule cover varying at the fine local scale (tens of meters). Significant differences in megafaunal density and community composition were found between all study areas. Geomorphology and nodule cover appeared to exert strong control on local faunal abundance and community composition, but not in species richness. Local variations in faunal density and beta-diversity, particularly those driven by nodule presence (within study areas), were of comparable magnitude to those observed at a regional level (between study areas). However, regional comparisons of megabenthic assemblages showed clear shifts in dominance between taxonomic groups (perceivable even at Phylum levels) across the mid-eastern CCZ seabed.

17.2.1.7 Trace metals in sediments and porewaters

Trace metal analyses in NORI Area D sediments confirm elevated manganese and cobalt concentrations in surface layers, consistent with nodule presence and fragmentation. Solid-phase metal contents decrease with depth, converging toward regional background levels beyond 10 cm below seafloor (bsf) (Volz et al., 2018; Paul et al., 2024). Iron content remains relatively stable with depth, mostly present as reducible iron oxyhydroxides.

Porewater dissolved metal concentrations peak near the sediment-water interface, reflecting active redox cycling and metal mobilization. Although filter size differences complicate direct comparisons, trends in NORI Area D mirror those observed in the southeastern CCZ, with localized variability likely driven by microhabitat conditions and sediment handling artifacts (Paul et al., 2024).

Temporal and spatial variability in metal concentrations appears limited within NORI Area D, suggesting stable geochemical conditions over the study period. These findings provide a valuable regional benchmark for evaluating potential mining-induced perturbations.

17.2.2 Test mining

NORI conducted a comprehensive engineering and environmental Test Mining trial between September and November 2022 in the NORI area D. The test successfully collected over 4,200 tonnes of polymetallic nodules from depths ranging between 3,800 m and 4,200 m, with the test collector driving 84 km on the seabed and achieving a maximum sustained production rate of 24 kg/s and nominal rate of 18 kg/s. The test collector demonstrated good stability, maneuverability, and an average collection efficiency estimated above 80%, confirming the feasibility of the mining technology at scale (NORI, 2025a).

Environmental monitoring was extensive and multi-phased, covering pre-test baseline, active mining, and post-mining periods. Pre-test baseline activities included 33 BC deployments for nodule abundance and geotechnical data, 35 multicore deployments for biological communities and geochemistry, deployment of respirometer and baited trap landers, time-lapse camera landers, ROV cone penetration tests, acoustic and plume-monitoring assets, and high-resolution seafloor mapping via AUVs capturing over 650,000 images (NORI, 2025a). During mining, ten AUV transects monitored benthic plumes, multiple CTD deployments sampled dissolved oxygen, pH, trace metals, and particulate matter, while far-field and near-field ROV dives collected hundreds of water samples. Post-mining monitoring replicated many of these efforts to assess recovery and impacts, including additional box cores, multicore deployments, and extensive imaging campaigns totaling over 2.5 million images (NORI, 2025).

Key lessons learned from the Test Mining trial informed design improvements aimed at reducing environmental impacts. For example, modifications to the Coandă nozzle geometry and hopper design are expected to improve nodule pick-up efficiency and reduce sediment disturbance. The diffuser’s conical design was found effective in generating a turbidity current that promotes local settling of the benthic plume, thereby limiting sediment dispersion (NORI, 2025b) (Allseas, 2024). The return-water discharge depth was increased from 1,200 m during the test to 2,000 m for commercial operations, based on preliminary baseline studies and emerging evidence indicating that deeper discharge reduces the risk of ecological impacts.

Sediment plume modeling and monitoring during test mining supported establishing an exclusion buffer zone around sensitive environmental areas and project boundaries to contain secondary impacts such as sedimentation (DHI, 2025). Seafloor current assessments indicated highly variable directions without seasonal trends, suggesting no need for seasonally adjusted collector paths to manage sediment dispersal. Geotechnical analyses confirmed the seafloor substrate can support the 1st Gen Collector on slopes up to 4°, with no trafficability issues observed during the test (APYS, 2024 (Allseas, 2024b).

Overall, the test mining program provided critical empirical data validating the technological approach and enabling refinement of operational parameters to mitigate environmental risks. The integration of detailed environmental monitoring with engineering feedback loops ensures that the commercial-scale system is expected to operate within defined environmental safeguards, minimizing benthic disturbance and sediment plume spread while maintaining efficient resource recovery (NORI, 2025a) (DHI, 2025).

17.2.3 Summary and implications for the wider CCZ

The results of test mining and comprehensive environmental baseline studies in NORI Area D offer vital insights applicable throughout the wider CCZ. The geological, geotechnical, and sedimentological features observed here reflect broader regional patterns, enabling informed extrapolation to nearby Contract Areas. Hydrodynamic and circulation processes, such as mesoscale eddies and internal waves, impact benthic habitats and biogeochemical cycles across the CCZ.

Biological communities in NORI Area D are highly diverse, connected, and vary over time, underscoring the importance of long-term monitoring to distinguish human impacts from natural variations. Trace metal levels in sediments and porewaters help clarify the chemical environment supporting benthic life. Insights from test mining is expected to inform the design of mining equipment for other areas, reducing environmental impacts. Overall, these findings provide a solid foundation for developing EIA scopes for other CCZ Contract Areas.

17.3 Scope of baseline studies

TMC, through its NORI subsidiary, has conducted extensive baseline studies in the NORI Area D lease of the CCZ. These studies re planned to be expanded to include the areas covered in the TMC USA applications. A comprehensive Scoping Study is planned to identify gaps in the existing knowledge base. An outline of the baseline studies that are planned is provided below.

Physicochemical environmental baseline:

- Meteorology and air quality.
- Geological regional and site-specific setting.
- Seabed substrate characteristics:
  - Sediment physical properties .
  - Sediment mechanics.
  - Porewater properties.

Physical oceanographic regional and site-specific setting:

- Water masses.
- Currents.
- Tides and surface waves.
- Internal waves .
- Stratification and mixing.
- Mesoscale eddies.

· Bottom mixed layer.

Chemical oceanographic regional and site-specific setting:

· Nutrients water column.
· Oxygen water column.
· Carbonate system water column.

· Trace metals water column .
· Organic and inorganic matter water column.
· Nutrients seafloor.
· Oxygen seafloor.
· Carbonate system seafloor .
· Trace metals seafloor.
· Organic matter seafloor.
· Inorganic matter seafloor.
· Natural hazards.
· Noise and light.

Biological environment baseline:

· Biological site-specific setting:

  - Surface (from the surface to a depth of approximately 200 m):
    - Phytoplankton.
    - Zooplankton.
    - Surface fish.
    - Near-surface fish.
    - Seabirds.
    - Turtles and marine mammals.
    - Midwater (from a depth of approximately 200 m to approximately 50 m above the sea floor).
    - Zooplankton.
    - Nekton .
    - Mesopelagic and bathypelagic fish.
    - Deep-diving mammals.

· Benthic (from approximately 50 m above the sea floor to the sea floor's surface):

  - Benthic invertebrates (mega, macro, meio, forams, and microfauna).
  - Fish communities .

· Ecosystem models and trophic interactions between depths.

· Socioeconomic Baseline:

  - Social impacts on people, including:
    - Way of life (lifestyles, work, interactions, recreation, etc.).
    - Culture (customs, values and beliefs) .
    - Community (cohesion, stability, character and services).
    - Political and governance systems.
    - Environment (quality, food security and safety) .
    - Health and well-being (physical, mental, social and spiritual).
    - Personal and property rights (economic effects and customary rights).
    - Potential impacts on ecosystem services, including fisheries.

· Marine traffic.
· Tourism.
· Marine scientific research.
· Other uses of the area in and around the proposed Contract Area.

· Sites of archaeological or historical significance.
· Relevant area-based management classifications or tools established under subregional, regional or global processes.
· Workforce characteristics.

17.4 Post mining land uses

The NORI and TOML areas are located in the CCZ, a 4.5-million-km^2 region in the northern part of the Central Pacific Ocean, approximately 1,700 km to the northwest of Mexico. The western end of the CCZ is approximately 1,000 km south of the Hawaiian island group. From here, the CCZ extends over 4,500 km east-northeast, in an approximately 750 km wide trend, with the eastern limits approximately 2,000 km west of southern Mexico.

The mine site is located on the seabed at a depth of approximately 4,000+ m.

No post-mining land uses are anticipated.

17.5 Remediation

No remediation is anticipated for the mined site due to its inaccessibility and absence of potentially impacting post-mining land uses. The site are expected to remain undisturbed post-closure to allow for natural recolonization.

17.6 Tailings

Nodule collection does not produce tailings in the traditional sense. Tailings are typically the materials left over after the process of separating the valuable fraction from the uneconomic fraction of an ore. In the case of nodule collection, the process is designed to eliminate tailings by not chemically processing the material at sea. Instead, small amounts of residual sediment and abraded nodules found in the seawater used for nodule transport are more analogous to the removal and redeposition of overburden during a terrestrial mining operation. The sediment-seawater mixture returned into the midwater column is often mistakenly referred to as "tailings," but it should not be confused with the traditional definition of tailings, which are a by-product of processing.

17.7 Mitigation plans

Mitigation measures and implementation plans are planned to be developed based on the findings of the EIA. Based on the results of test mining conducted on NORI Area D in 2022 the key mitigation measures are expected to involve modifications and improvements to the mining system and operational plan to minimize the environmental impact of nodule collection.

18 Capital and operating costs

18.1 Introduction

The Project capital and operating costs were prepared based on the following execution strategy as described in the previous sections:

Nodule Collection and Shipping:

- Contract Mining basis (OPEX) with contractor capital recovered by the contractor over the first 10 years of operation.
- Specific sustaining capital related to the collection equipment is included for PV class surveys to de-risk initial Contract Mining assumptions and facilitate lowest cost incorporation of technology advancements and improvements identified during initial collection equipment operation and maintenance.

Processing (RKEF):

- Based on tolling through existing RKEF facilities with all capital modifications to those facilities captured in the tolling charge.

US Refining:

- All capital costs and operating costs included based on traditional owner build/own/operate model with assistance from strategic partners as required.

The Project capital expenditure (CAPEX) and operating expenditure (OPEX) estimates were prepared by specialists in the following areas:

- Collection CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by Allseas and TMC.
- Shipping CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by Allseas and TMC.
- Contractor (offshore) OPEX was estimated by Allseas and TMC.
- Consumables (offshore fuel) was estimated by Allseas and TMC.
- Processing facility OPEX was estimated by TMC.
- Refining facility CAPEX and OPEX were estimated by a global leading consulting engineering firm.
- Corporate OPEX was estimated by TMC.

All costs in this section are presented in US dollars (US$). The number of significant figures presented in this report is not necessarily indicative of the accuracy or precision of the underlying data or calculations. Significant figures have been used for clarity and convenience in reporting but do not imply a specific confidence level or measurement uncertainty.

18.2 Operating strategy

The execution strategy is based on the collection of nodules from high abundance and high metal grade areas first with bespoke 2nd Gen systems. Nodules are expected to be transported to Indonesia for processing to a matte product and manganese silicate through a tolling arrangement utilising existing processing infrastructure. Matte product is expected to be shipped to Texas, USA on market bulk carriers for refining through a new refining facility developed by TMC with support from strategic partners.

Operations are expected to commence in TOML-F with one PV producing 7 Mwmtpa coming online in 2037. An additional two PVs are planned to come online in 2038 and 2039 bringing total production from TOML-F to 21 Mwmtpa. TOML-F is scheduled to be mined before the PVs relocate to the west for collection in TOML-D and TOML-E areas. Areas outside of TOML-F have lower abundance and hence annual production per PV of 5 Mwmtpa was modelled. Another 5 PVs are expected to come online between 2044 and 2048 to increase total production to 40 Mwmtpa.

On arrival to Indonesia, nodules will be offloaded from the TVs for transfer to existing RKEF facilities for processing the nodules to a nickel-copper-cobalt matte and manganese silicate product. Using existing RKEF facilities through tolling arrangement reduces upfront capital and aligns processing capabilities with offshore production ramp-up.

The processed matte is loaded to bulk carriers and shipped to Texas. Manganese silicate is planned to be sold to market. The long-term refining strategy involves construction of two refining facilities (12 Mwmtpa nodule equivalent capacity each) in US which refine the matte and produce copper cathode, nickel sulfate, and cobalt sulfate. Processing is assumed to be on a tolling arrangement with TMC entering agreements with third parties that will operate the new refineries on behalf of TMC.

Environmental management is planned to be embedded throughout the operations. A robust EMMP will support adaptive management practices, allowing staged expansion contingent on meeting environmental thresholds and minimizing ecological impacts.

CAPEX on offshore operations and RKEF facilities are expected to be managed as capital-light, by TMC entering operating agreements with contract miners and transport providers who manage the collection and delivery of nodules to shore. Bulk carriers running between Indonesia and the USA are owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying through standard shipping charges agreed between the parties. All processing facilities in Indonesia are assumed to be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying for toll treatment per tonne of nodules. All refining facilities in the US will be a TMC asset.

18.2.1 Baseline operating assumptions

The following scope and execution assumptions underpin the CAPEX/OPEX estimates detailed in Section 18.3 and Section 18.4.

Offshore Operations vessel numbers:

- Ramp up to 3 x PVs, each with 3 x20 m collectors and associated equipment to achieve 7 Mwmtpa mining production each in the TOML-F area.
- Addition of 5 x PVs to the other NORI and TOML areas, each producing 5 Mwmtpa. The 3 x PVs also move from TOML-F to the NORI and TOML areas resulting in a total capacity of 40 Mwmtpa from year 12.
- Each PV serviced by 7 TVs in the high abundance TOML-F area and 5 TVs in the other lower abundance TOML and NORI areas.
- Ramp-up to 24 x SVs for personnel, supplies and equipment change out.

Production Schedule and capital cost :

- All PVs– Contractor Miner strategy; 100% capital cost recovered in operations over 10 years from PVs commencement dates.
- Total production 670 Mwmt.
- Life-of-mine of 23 years.

Nodule Processing:

- Indonesia
  - Existing Indonesian RKEF plants process all nodule production.
- Texas, USA

  - Matte is converted to nickel sulfates, cobalt sulfates, and copper cathode.

18.3 CAPEX

The CAPEX estimate (Table 18.1) is reported in Q2 2025 US$. CAPEX estimates are at an IA level of confidence and are prepared using the AACE International Class 5 estimate standards, with a contingency of 25%.

The estimate includes the cost to complete the design, procurement, fabrication, assembly, installation and commissioning associated with mining, transporting and processing nodules as per the Mine Plan. The estimate was based on a contractor, Allseas or equivalent, overseeing and delivering the engineering, procurement, fabrication, assembly and installation for the associated offshore infrastructure and equipment.

The estimate was derived from a combination of budgetary pricing, historical data and allowances. The estimates were based on a number of fundamental assumptions, such as indicated in process flow diagrams, general arrangements, scope definition and work breakdown structures.

Table 18.1 Total CAPEX summary

		Development	Sustaining	Closure
Item	**Total**	**PP5-Year 3**	**Year 17-30**	**Year 33-42**
Project CAPEX	8,852	8,852		
Sustaining CAPEX	5,318		5,318	
Closure CAPEX	805			805.3
Total CAPEX	**14,975**	**8,852**	**5,318**	**805.3**

Note: PP = Pre-Production

18.3.1 Production vessel #5-12

Total estimate for each PV is utilized to determine the payback costs under contractor mining strategy to be recovered over the first ten years of operating.

The PV CAPEX estimate of US$1,568M, is summarized in Table 18.2.

Table 18.2 PV recovered CAPEX summary

Description	**US$ M**
Production Vessel	915
Transport Vessel	180
Direct Subtotal	1,095
Indirect	159
Contingency	314
Production Vessel Recovered CAPEX	1,568

18.3.2 Refining facility

The refining facility CAPEX estimate of US$8,852M, is summarized in Table 18.3 .

Table 18.3 Refining facility recovered CAPEX summary

Description	US$ M
General/Infrastructure	234
Port Facilities	455
Hydrometallurgy	1,663
Direct Subtotal	2,352
Indirect Costs	930
Contingency	1,144
Refining Facility CAPEX per 12 Mwmtpa nodule equivalent	4,426
Number of 12 Mwmtpa refining facility	2
Total Project Capital	**8,852**

18.3.3 Sustaining CAPEX

The sustaining capital costs (dry dock) for the 2nd Gen PV is US$483M per occurrence totaling US$5,318M (Table 18.4). The sustaining capital includes replacement of collectors and risers during each 10-year dry docking cycle, as well as statutory maintenance required to maintain the vessels in class.

Table 18.4 Sustaining CAPEX

Sustaining Capital	UOM	Qty	US$ M
Collector Design life	Years	10	
Collector x 3 CAPEX	Lot	1	193
Umbilical Design life	Years	10	
Umbilical x 3 CAPEX	Lot	1	35
Compressor Design life	Years	10	
Compressor CAPEX	Lot	1	87
Riser System Design life (riser considered consumable)	Years	10	
Riser System CAPEX	Lot	1	106
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick Design life	Years	30	
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick service period	Years	10	
Vessel compounds incl LARs/Derrick CAPEX	Lot	1	63
Class Survey Intervals	Years	10	
Class Survey Duration	Months	6	
Estimated Total Sustaining Capital every 10 years per vessel (Class survey)	Lot	1	483
Total Class surveys across all PVs LoM	Units	11	5,318

18.3.4 Closure CAPEX

A closure cost of US$690M has been allowed between 2060 and 2064 for remediation of the onshore refining facilities. While US$115M has been allowed for post-closure offshore monitoring

The Closure CAPEX estimate of US$805M, is summarized in Table 18.5

Table 18.5 Closure CAPEX

Closure Capital	US$ M
Vessel Supply	6.8
Mobilisation	1.2
Other Cost	0.4
Fuel	0.9
Onboard personnel/Equipment	0.9
Other Cost	0.2
Third Party Cost	1.1
Total Closure Offshore Capital per year	11.5
Total Closure Offshore Capital 10-year post mining operations	115
Onshore Refining plant	138
Total Closure Onshore Capital per year	138
Total Closure Onshore Capital 5-year post mining operations	690
Total Closure Capital	**805**

18.4 OPEX

The OPEX estimate is reported in Q2 2025 US$. OPEX estimates are at an IA level of confidence and are prepared using the AACE Class 5 estimate standards. OPEX for the project are summarized in Table 18.6 and Table 18.7.

OPEX is summarized below for the LOM and average unit costs per wmt of nodules collected over the LOM:

- LOM collection costs are estimated at US$31,139M and average US$46.5/wmt of nodules.

· LOM shipping costs are estimated at US$6,066M and average US$9.1/wmt of nodules.
· LOM contractor (offshore) costs are estimated at US$3,584M and average US$5.3/wmt of nodules.
· LOM consumables (offshore fuel) costs are estimated at US$11,884M and average US$17.7/wmt of nodules.
· LOM processing costs are estimated at US$53,598M and average US$80.0/wmt of nodules.
· LOM refining costs are estimated at US$15,978M and average US$23.8/wmt of nodules.
· LOM G&A costs are estimated at US$3,926M and average US$5.9/wmt of nodules.

Table 18.6 OPEX summary

OPEX component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**LOM %**
Collection Costs	31,139	25%
Shipping Costs	6,066	5%
Contractor (offshore) Costs	3,584	3%
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	11,884	9%
Processing Cost	53,598	42%
Refining Cost	15,978	13%
Corporate Cost	3,926	3%
Total OPEX	**126,175**	**100%**

Table 18.7 OPEX unit cost US$/wmt summary

OPEX component	**Average LOM US$/wmt**
Collection Costs	46.5
Shipping Costs	9.1
Contractor (offshore) Costs	5.3
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	17.7
Processing Cost	80.0
Refining Cost	23.8
Corporate Cost	5.9
Total OPEX	**188.3**

18.4.1 Collection costs

The Collection Cost OPEX totals US$31,139M or US$46.5/wmt. The Collection Cost OPEX is summarized in Table 18.8, and considers the operation of the offshore mining system and SVs, as detailed in Section 13.6.1 and 13.6.3.

Table 18.8 Collection costs summary

OPEX component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**Average LOM US$/wmt**
Supply vessel	3,753	5.6
Production Vessel	12,391	18.5
Corporate - Production Support	1,199	1.8
PV5-12 CAPEX Recovery	13,796	20.6
Collection Costs Total	31,139	46.5

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

· Contractor operator.
· PV cost was provided by Allseas and includes:

- PV day rate provided by Allseas.
- Labor rates for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.
- Travel costs are estimated as an allowance.
- Other support costs including, ROVs and maintenance allowances.

· Production support – Allseas onshore salaries for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.
· SV cost was provided by Allseas:

- Labor rates for expatriate and nationals including base salaries, benefits, bonuses; and overhead burdens were provided by Allseas.
- Travel costs are estimated as an allowance.
- Other support costs including maintenance allowances etc.

· System #5-12 – contractor mining capital recovery as per Table 18.8 and cost of working capital (10%) for first 10 years of production of each PV.

18.4.2 Shipping costs

The Shipping Cost OPEX, covering operation of the TVs(see Section 13.6.2) and Handymax bulk carrier totals US$6,066M or US$9.1/wmt. The Shipping Cost OPEX is summarized in Table 18.9.

Table 18.9 Shipping Costs Summary

OPEX component	**Total LOM (US$M)**	**Average LOM US$/wmt**
Transport Vessel CCZ to Indonesia - Capesize	5,162	7.7
Transport Vessel Indonesia to Texas - Handymax	905	1.4
Shipping Costs Total	6,066	9.1

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Contractor operator.
- TV CCZ to Indonesia :
  - Market pricing used for all in day rate.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
- Bulk Carrier Indonesia to Texas – Handymax:
  - Market pricing used for all in day rate.
  - based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Loading/unloading of matte product.
  - Panama Canal fees.
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from Ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.

18.4.3 Contractor (offshore) costs

The contractor (offshore) costs OPEX totals US$3,584M or US$5.3/wmt. The contractor (offshore) costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.10.

Table 18.10 Offshore contractor costs summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
Performance Incentive Payment	3,584	5.3
Contractor (offshore) Costs Total	3,584	5.3

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- An assumed Contract Miner Performance Incentive

18.4.4 Consumables (offshore fuel) costs

The consumables (offshore fuel) costs OPEX totals US$11,884M or US$17.7/wmt. The consumables (offshore fuel) costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.11.

Table 18.11 Offshore fuel costs summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
Fuel - SV	581	0.9
Fuel - PV	1,452	2.2
Fuel - CVs	4,517	6.7
Fuel – TV CCZ to Indonesia - Capesize	5,334	8.0
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs Total	11,884	17.7

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

- Fuel – SV:
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.
- Fuel - PV (DP, auxiliary power consumers and accommodation):
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by Allseas.
- Fuel - CVs (compressor spread for the VTS):
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by Allseas.
- Fuel – TV CCZ to Indonesia – Capesize:
  - MGO fuel price of US$700/t, this is based on end of Q1 2025 data obtained from ship and bunker spot pricing.
  - Fleet sizing based on logistics cycle times calculated by TMC.
  - Fuel consumption was calculated by industry norms.

18.4.5 Processing cost

The Processing Costs OPEX totals US$53,598M or US$80.0/wmt. The Processing Costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.12.

Table 18.12 Processing costs summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
Indonesia Matte Toll Charge	53,598	80.0
Processing Cost Total	53,598	80.0

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

· Indonesia Matte Tolling Charge – All in tolling charge estimated by SMM Information & Technology Co., Ltd processing cost study. Benchmarked against known/published NPI processing cost in Indonesia. NPI processing is closely related to nodule processing for TMC's product. Refer to Section 15.1.2.5.

18.4.6 Refining cost

The refining costs OPEX totals US$15,978.4M or US$23.8/wmt. The refining costs OPEX is based on a global leading consulting engineering firm, which are summarized in Table 18.13.

Table 18.13 Refining summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
US Refining Toll Opex	14,704	21.9
Purchase of 3rd party Matte Feed	1,275	1.9
Refining Cost Total	15,978	23.8

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

· US Refining OPEX provided by a global leading consulting engineering firm cost study and includes:

- Plant Labor including supervisors, engineers, laboratory, site workers and operators.
- Plant equipment, materials, supplies, first fills.
- Maintenance materials.
- Plant management.
- Reagents including sulfuric acid, sodium hydroxide, anhydrous liquid ammonia, sulfur dioxide, oxygen, nickel and cobalt extractants, SX diluent, copper IX resin, granular activated carbon and flocculant & coagulant.

- Energy including electricity, natural gas, diesel.
- Water including makeup water acquisition, pretreated water, demineralized water.
- Other consumables including effluent treatment, manganese oxidation scrubber consumables, filtration consumables and additives, product packaging.

· Purchase of 3rd party matte feed:

- Based on payable terms from CRU.

18.4.7 Corporate cost

The Corporate Costs OPEX totals US$3,926M or US$5.9/wmt. The Corporate Costs OPEX is summarized in Table 18.14.

Table 18.14 Corporate costs summary

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
Overhead - Corporate	575	0.9
Campaign/EMMP	829	1.2
Offshore operations support	256	0.4
OPEX Contingency	2,267	3.4
Corporate Cost Total	3,926	5.9

Key inputs and assumptions used in the cost estimate were:

· Overhead – Corporate cost estimated by TMC based on actual and projected overhead cost.
· Campaign/EMMP cost estimated by TMC based on actual campaign and EMMP costs.
· Offshore operations support facilities cost estimated by TMC based on historical knowledge and actual costs of operations support facilities including:

- Contractor personal – office and site.
- TMC personal.
- Service contracts - waste, security etc.
- Office/laydown/warehouse lease costs.
- Office / laydown / warehouse material, equipment, supplies.

· OPEX Contingency.

19 Economic analysis

19.1 Cautionary statement regarding forward-looking information

The results of the economic analysis discussed in this section includes forward looking information and statements. TMC as the author of this Section, provides the following cautionary statement regarding forward looking information.

TMC is subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. The results of the financial and economic analyses discussed in this section represent forward-looking statements within the meaning of applicable securities laws relating to TMC. These statements by their nature involve substantial risks and uncertainties. Statements involving the foregoing results of financial and economic analyses are forward-looking statements. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, words such as "may", "anticipate", "intend", "could", "estimate", or "continue" or the negative or other comparable terminology are intended to identify forward-looking statements. Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize or should the underlying assumptions prove incorrect, actual outcomes and results could differ materially from those indicated in the forward-looking statements.

This economic analysis is based on Measured, Indicated and Inferred Mineral Resources and does not support a determination of Mineral Reserves. The outcomes presented are preliminary in nature, and no pre-feasibility or feasibility study has been completed. These forward-looking statements are subject to change based on additional technical work, permitting outcomes, financing availability, or market conditions.

Information that is forward-looking includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Assumed commodity prices and exchange rates.
- Proposed mine production plan.
- Projected mining and process recovery rates.
- Assumptions as to mining dilution.
- Assumptions as to geotechnical requirements for collector on the seabed.
- Proposed sustaining costs and operating costs.
- TMC's intentions on payback of LCR royalty.
- Assumptions as to closure costs and closure requirements.
- Assumptions as to environmental, permitting, and social risks.
- Assumptions regarding permitting timelines, including under both the ISA and the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA).

Additional risks to the forward-looking information include:

- Changes to the costs of production from what is assumed.
- Unexpected variations in quantity of mineralized material, grade or recovery rates.
- Geotechnical considerations during mining being different from what was assumed.
- Failure of mining methods to operate as anticipated.
- Failure of plant, equipment or processes to operate as anticipated.
- Changes to assumptions as to the availability of electrical power, and the power rates used in the operating cost estimates and financial analysis.
- Unrecognized environmental risks.
- Unanticipated closure expenses.
- Ability to maintain social license to operate.
- Accidents, labour disputes and other risks of the mining industry.
- Changes to interest rates.

- Changes to tax rates.
- Uncertainty in the legal, regulatory, or geopolitical frameworks that may govern deep seabed mineral production.

Other key considerations when reviewing the content within this Section:

- Calendar years used in the financial analysis are provided for conceptual purposes only.
- Notional model start date of 1 July 2025 and annual discounting combined with the assumption of mid-period cash flows results in effective model years commencing 1 July and ending 30 June.
- Totals may not reflect the sum of table contents due to the effects of rounding.
- Environmental approval must still be obtained in support of operations.
- The results do not demonstrate economic viability and should not be construed as such.

19.2 Methodology used

An economic model was developed to estimate annual pre-tax and post-tax cash flows and sensitivities of the Project based on an 8% discount rate. Tax estimates involve complex variables that can only be accurately calculated during operations and, as such, the after-tax results are approximations. The economic analysis was run in real, ungeared, post-tax terms.

19.3 Economic model parameters

The economic analysis was performed using the following key assumptions:

- Cost estimates with no inflation of escalation attributed.
- Valuation date of 1 July 2025.
- Commercial production starting 2037.
- LOM of 23 years.
- All cash flows discounted at an 8% discount rate representing the Registrant's assumption of the Project weighted average cost of capital (WACC).

19.4 Total development costs

The Project Cost estimate of US$8,852M detailed in Chapter 18 of this document.

19.5 Total sustaining costs

The Sustaining Cost estimate of US$5,318M during operations as detailed in Chapter 18 of this document.

19.6 Total closure costs

The Sustaining Cost estimate of US$805M as detailed in Chapter 18 of this document.

19.7 Total operating costs

The Project OPEX estimate of US$126,175M, is summarized in Table 19.1.

Table 19.1 Total operating costs

OPEX component	Total LOM (US$M)	Average LOM US$/wmt
Collection Costs	31,139	46.5
Shipping Costs	6,066	9.1
Contractor (offshore) Costs	3,584	5.3
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	11,884	17.7
Processing Cost	53,598	80.0
Refining Cost	15,978	23.8
Corporate Cost	3,926	5.9
Total OPEX	126,175	188.3

19.8 Commodity prices

Metal and sulfate price assumptions for nickel, cobalt and copper were provided BMI as of 30 June 2025. Manganese metal price assumption detailed in Table 16.1. Both sources provided long-term price forecasts based on a market analysis of supply and demand at the time of this report.

The average LOM commodity prices are summarized in Table 19.2.

Table 19.2 Average LOM commodity prices

Commodity	UOM	Price per UOM
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,530
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456
Manganese ore Price	US$/dmtu	4.7
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,530

19.9 Recovery rates

Recovery assumptions were provided by HATCH, which performed a series of mass energy balance recoveries calculation. The recovery rates are summarized in Table 19.3.

Table 19.3 Recovery rates

Recovery	Value
Nickel Recovery Nodule to Matte	94.8%
Cobalt Recovery Nodule to Matte	77.5%
Copper Recovery Nodule to Matte	86.4%
Manganese Recovery to Manganese Silicate	98.9%
Nickel Recovery - Nodule to Sulfate	94.6%
Cobalt Recovery - Nodule to Sulfate	77.2%
Copper Recovery - Nodule to Cathode	86.2%

19.10 Payable terms

Metal payable term assumptions were provided by CRU Consulting. This provides long-term payable terms forecasts based on the market analysis of supply and demand. The average LOM payable terms are summarized in Table 19.4.

Table 19.4 LOM average payable terms

Recovery	Value
Nickel Payable Factor for Matte	80%
Cobalt Payable Factor for Matte	60%
Copper Payable Factor for Matte	70%

19.11 Royalty / Payments

The economic model assumes that the TMC will be subject to three royalty/payment structures, as per below.

19.11.1 Nauru continuity benefits

The structure for the Nauru Continuity Benefits payment is based on the NORI Sponsorship Agreement. The Nauru Continuity Benefits is based on the payment schedule in Table 19.5. An annual US$0.5M administrative fee is allowed. The Nauru Continuity Benefits are only applicable to NORI Area A, B, C. In the first nine years of the project, all mining is expected to be in TOML-F, therefore no Nauru benefits would be payable in this period.

The total benefit payment has been capped at US$109.5M.

Table 19.5 Nauru continuity benefits payment schedule

Item	US$ M
Year 19-28	10.5
Year 29	4.5

Total undiscounted royalty payments to Nauru are approximately US$137M (inclusive of gross up withholding tax) over the LOM.

19.11.2 Tonga continuity benefits

The structure for the Tonga Continuity Benefits payment is based on the draft Tonga Sponsorship Agreement. The Tonga Continuity Benefits is based on the payment schedule in Table 19.6. An annual US$90K administrative fee is allowed. The Tonga Continuity Benefits are only applicable to TOML Area A, B, C D, E, and F. The total benefit payment has been capped at US$75M.

Table 19.6 Tonga continuity benefits payment schedule

Item	US$ M
Year 1	1.0
Year 2	2.0
Year 3	4.0
Year 4	8.0
Year 5+	10.0

Total undiscounted continuity benefit payments to Tonga are approximately US$75M over the LOM.

19.11.3 Low Carbon Royalty (LCR)

TMC entered a strategic partnership with LCR, a private royalty financing company, in 2023. Terms of the agreement include TMC paying a royalty to LCR[7]. The LCR royalty is only applicable to NORI Areas and based on 0.5% of total revenue.

Total undiscounted royalty payments to LCR are approximately US$684M over the LOM.

19.12 Taxes

It has been assumed that Project will be subject to a single taxation structure. The USA Federal taxation rate and structure assumed in the economic model is as follows:

- Federal taxation rate at 21%.
- Depreciation based on straight-line basis, based on the assumed system design life.
- Total undiscounted taxation is approximately US$33,753M over the LOM.

19.13 Economic analysis

The economic analysis was performed assuming an 8% discount rate, representing the Registrant's assumption of the Project weighted average cost of capital (WACC). Compared to the 9% discount rate used in the 2021 IA for NORI Area D, the discount rate of 8% reflects the Registrant's view that the achievement of de-risking milestones on the project in the last several years has lowered the WACC for the Project. De-risking milestones include:

- Successful pilot collection system trial (Test Mining) in 2022 in which over 3,000 wet tonnes of nodules were lifted to the surface.
- Improved confidence in the permitting pathway through the existing U.S. regulatory regime.

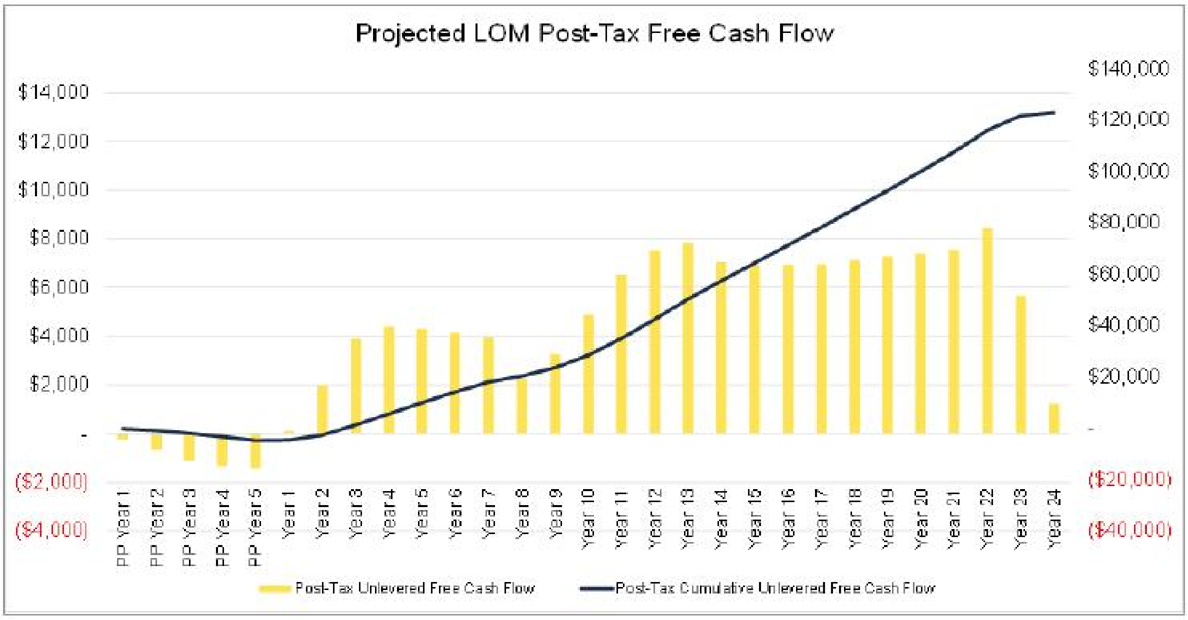
The post-tax NPV discounted at 8% is approximately US$18,100M.

The economic projections presented in this section are based on Measured, Indicated, and Inferred Mineral Resources and do not support a determination of Mineral Reserves or demonstrate economic viability.

A summary of forecast Project economics is shown graphically in Figure 19.1 and listed in Table 19.7.

7 https://investors.metals.co/news-releases/news-release-details/metals-company-and-low-carbon-royalties-form-strategic

Figure 19.1 Forecast project post-tax free cash flow (US$ M)



Source:TMC
Note:PP = pre-production

Table 19.7 Summary of forecast project economics

Area	Item	Units	LOM Total/Avg.
General	Nickel Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	20,360.0
	Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	62,529.6
	Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	Avg. US$/t	11,456.4
	Manganese Price	Avg. US$/dmtu	4.7
	Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	Avg. US$/t	21,835.0
	Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	Avg. US$/t	62,529.6
	Mine Life	Years	23.0
	Total Ore Collected (wet)	Mmt	670.0
Production (Nickel)	Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.40%
	Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.27%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	6,354.2
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%
	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	302.9
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5,759.8
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%
	Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	242.3
	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5,759.8
	Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	130,670
Production (Cobalt)	Resource Grade TOML F	%	0.13%
	Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	0.22%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,015.1
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%
	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	37.9

Area	Item	Units	LOM Total/Avg.
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	752.3
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%
	Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	22.7
	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	752.3
	Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	48,456
Production (Copper)	Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.25%
	Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.07%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	5,431.7
	Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%
	Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%
	Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	237.3
	Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4,485.2
	Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%
	Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	166.1

	Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4,485.2
	Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	53,278
Production (Manganese)	Resource Grade TOML F	%	32.21%
	Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	27.97%
	Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	141,788.7
	Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%
	Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	140,229.0
	Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%
	Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	140,229.0
	Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	66,078.1
Operating Cost	Collection Costs	US$/wmt	46.5
	Shipping Costs	US$/wmt	9.1
	Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$/wmt	5.3
	Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$/wmt	17.7
	Processing Cost	US$/wmt	80.0
	Refining Cost	US$/wmt	23.8
	Corporate Cost	US$/wmt	5.9
Royalty Cost	Nauru Continuity Payment	US$/wmt	0.2
	Tonga Continuity Payment	US$/wmt	0.1
	LCR Royalty	US$/wmt	1.0
Capital Cost	Project Capital	US$ M	8,852.1
	Sustaining Capital	US$ M	5,318.0
	Closure Cost	US$ M	805.3
Financials	Total Revenue	US$ M	298,923
	Post-Tax NPV8	US$ M	18,081
	Post-Tax NPV0	US$ M	122,364
	Project IRR (Real Terms)	%	35.6%
	Project Payback – Production	Years	2
	EBITDA	US$ M	171,852
	EBITDA per tonne (dry nodules)	US$/wmt	349
	Project Capital	US$ M	8,852

A cashflow on an annualized basis is provided in Table 19.8.

Table 19.8 Project cash flow on an annualized basis

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP Year 1 2032	PP Year 2 2033	PP Year 3 2034	PP Year 4 2035	PP Year 5 2036
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360.0	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,529.6	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456.4	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/t	471.1	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	4.7	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835.0	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,529.6	--	--	--	--	--
Revenue	US$ M	298,923.1	--	--	--	--	--
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(126,175.2)	--	--	--	--	--
Total Royalties	US$ M	(896.3)	--	--	--	--	--
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	171,851.7	--	--	--	--	--
Depreciation	US$ M	(12,029.2)	--	(8.7)	(34.5)	(77.3)	(127.8)
EBIT	US$ M	159,822.5	--	(8.7)	(34.5)	(77.3)	(127.8)
Taxation	US$ M	(33,752.7)	--	--	--	--	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	126,069.8	--	(8.7)	(34.5)	(77.3)	(127.8)
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	122,363.6	(221.3)	(663.9)	(1,106.5)	(1,327.8)	(1,438.5)
Project Capital	US$ M	(8,852.1)	(221.3)	(663.9)	(1,106.5)	(1,327.8)	(1,438.5)
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	(5,318.0)	--	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	(805.3)	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(14,975.3)	(221.3)	(663.9)	(1,106.5)	(1,327.8)	(1,438.5)
Production Summary							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	670.0	--	--	--	--	--
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	135.0	--	--	--	--	--
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	535.0	--	--	--	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	23.0	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.4%	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.3%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	6,354.2	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.8%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.6%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	302.9	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5,759.8	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	242.3	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5,759.8	--	--	--	--	--

Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	130,670.3	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP Year 1 2032	PP Year 2 2033	PP Year 3 2034	PP Year 4 2035	PP Year 5 2036
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	0.13%	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	0.22%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,015.1	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.5%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.2%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	37.9	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	752.3	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	22.7	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	752.3	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	48,456.4	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.25%	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.07%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	5,431.7	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.4%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.2%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	237.3	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4,485.2	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	166.1	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	4,485.2	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	53,278.3	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	32.2%	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	28.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	141,788.7	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.9%	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	140,229.0	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.0%	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	140,229.0	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	66,078.1	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	LOM Total/Avg.	PP Year 1 2032	PP Year 2 2033	PP Year 3 2034	PP Year 4 2035	PP Year 5 2036
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(31,138.8)	--	--	--	--	--
Shipping Costs	US$ M	(6,066.3)	--	--	--	--	--
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(3,583.9)	--	--	--	--	--
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(11,883.7)	--	--	--	--	--
Processing Cost	US$ M	(53,597.7)	--	--	--	--	--
Refining Cost	US$ M	(15,978.4)	--	--	--	--	--
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(3,926.4)	--	--	--	--	--
Royalty Costs							
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(136.9)	--	--	--	--	--
Tonga Payment	US$ M	(75.0)	--	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(684.4)	--	--	--	--	--

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 1 2037	Year 2 2038	Year 3 2039	Year 4 2040	Year 5 2041
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4
Manganese Price	US$/t	523.1	496.5	470.0	470.0	470.0
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	5.2	5.0	4.7	4.7	4.7
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Revenue	US$ M	3,408.4	6,340.5	9,309.9	9,309.9	9,164.0
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(1,426.8)	(2,544.8)	(3,778.3)	(3,778.3)	(3,753.8)

Total Royalties	US$ M	(0.1)	(1.1)	(2.1)	(4.1)	(8.1)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	1,981.6	3,794.6	5,529.5	5,527.5	5,402.1
Depreciation	US$ M	(181.7)	(221.5)	(243.2)	(242.8)	(238.0)
EBIT	US$ M	1,799.9	3,573.1	5,286.3	5,284.7	5,164.1
Taxation	US$ M	(327.6)	(750.6)	(1,110.6)	(1,110.7)	(1,086.2)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	1,472.3	2,822.5	4,175.7	4,174.1	4,077.9
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	104.5	1,981.4	3,905.3	4,393.0	4,314.0
Project Capital	US$ M	(1,106.5)	(663.9)	(110.7)	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(1,106.5)	(663.9)	(110.7)	--	--
Production Summary						
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	7.0	14.0	21.0	21.0	21.0
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	7.0	14.0	21.0	21.0	21.0
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products						
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 1 2037**	**Year 2 2038**	**Year 3 2039**	**Year 4 2040**	**Year 5 2041**
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	70.4	140.7	211.1	211.1	211.1
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	4.8	14.3	14.3	28.6
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	71.6	128.3	185.4	185.4	171.1
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	3.8	11.4	11.4	22.9
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	71.6	128.3	185.4	185.4	171.1
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	1,557.0	2,880.2	4,280.9	4,280.9	4,202.2
Physicals Cobalt						
Resource Grade TOML F	%	0.13%	0.13%	0.13%	0.13%	0.13%
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	6.7	13.4	20.1	20.1	20.1
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	0.4	1.1	1.1	2.2
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5.6	10.0	14.4	14.4	13.3
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	0.2	0.7	0.7	1.3
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	5.6	10.0	14.4	14.4	13.3
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	347.2	638.9	944.6	944.6	917.0
Physicals Copper						
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.25%	1.25%	1.25%	1.25%	1.25%
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	62.8	125.6	188.4	188.4	188.4
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	3.9	11.6	11.6	23.3
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	58.2	104.4	150.7	150.7	139.1
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	2.7	8.1	8.1	16.3
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	58.2	104.4	150.7	150.7	139.1
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	664.4	1,226.9	1,820.6	1,820.6	1,781.0
Physicals Manganese						
Resource Grade TOML F	%	32.21%	32.21%	32.21%	32.21%	32.21%
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	1,623.4	3,246.8	4,870.2	4,870.2	4,870.2

Macro Assumptions	**Units**	**Year 1 2037**	**Year 2 2038**	**Year 3 2039**	**Year 4 2040**	**Year 5 2041**
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	1,605.6	3,211.1	4,816.7	4,816.7	4,816.7

Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	1,605.6	3,211.1	4,816.7	4,816.7	4,816.7
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	839.9	1,594.5	2,263.8	2,263.8	2,263.8
Operating Costs						
Collection Costs	US$ M	(309.8)	(619.6)	(929.4)	(929.4)	(929.4)
Shipping Costs	US$ M	(64.2)	(126.3)	(188.4)	(188.4)	(186.3)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(28.4)	(56.8)	(85.1)	(85.1)	(85.1)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(107.3)	(214.6)	(321.9)	(321.9)	(321.9)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(560.0)	(1,120.0)	(1,680.0)	(1,680.0)	(1,680.0)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(276.7)	(300.0)	(438.8)	(438.8)	(416.4)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(80.4)	(107.5)	(134.6)	(134.6)	(134.6)
Royalty Costs						
Nauru Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--
Tonga Payment	US$ M	(0.1)	(1.1)	(2.1)	(4.1)	(8.1)
LCR Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 6 2042	Year 7 2043	Year 8 2044	Year 9 2045	Year 10 2046	Year 11 2047
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456. 4
Manganese Price	US$/t	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Revenue	US$ M	9,309.9	9,309.9	8,550.4	10,785.8	13,403.5	15,988.2
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(3,778.3)	(3,778.3)	(4,110.4)	(5,169.2)	(6,119.5)	(7,164.4)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(10.1)	(10.1)	(22.4)	(41.1)	(61.7)	(68.2)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	5,521.5	5,521.5	4,417.6	5,575.5	7,222.3	8,755.6
Depreciation	US$ M	(233.4)	(237.5)	(250.2)	(452.2)	(555.5)	(566.3)
EBIT	US$ M	5,288.2	5,284.1	4,167.5	5,123.3	6,666.8	8,189.3
Taxation	US$ M	(1,112.6)	(1,111.8)	(879.9)	(1,084.5)	(1,413.0)	(1,734.1)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	4,175.5	4,172.3	3,287.6	4,038.8	5,253.8	6,455.2
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	4,142.2	3,943.3	2,256.5	3,263.6	4,877.4	6,538.5
Project Capital	US$ M	(221.3)	(442.6)	(442.6)	(442.6)	(553.3)	(110.7)
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	(966.9)	(483.5)	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(221.3)	(442.6)	(1,409.5)	(926.1)	(553.3)	(110.7)

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 6 2042	Year 7 2043	Year 8 2044	Year 9 2045	Year 10 2046	Year 11 2047
Production Summary-							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	21.0	21.0	17.6	22.5	30.0	35.0
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	21.0	21.0	9.0	--	--	--
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	8.6	22.5	30.0	35.0
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.40%	1.40%	1.40%	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	211.1	211.1	170.5	210.2	280.2	327.0
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	14.3	14.3	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	185.4	185.4	179.8	217.8	265.1	318.4
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	11.4	11.4	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	185.4	185.4	179.8	217.8	265.1	318.4
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	4,280.9	4,280.9	3,908.9	4,744.9	5,788.7	6,946.5
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	0.13%	0.13%	0.13%	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	20.1	20.1	22.8	37.2	49.7	57.9
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1.1	1.1	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	14.4	14.4	19.6	31.5	38.3	46.0
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	0.7	0.7	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	14.4	14.4	19.6	31.5	38.3	46.0
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	944.6	944.6	1,222.6	1,965.1	2,397.5	2,877.0

Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	1.25%	1.25%	1.25%	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	188.4	188.4	148.4	177.5	236.7	276.1
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	11.6	11.6	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	150.7	150.7	142.5	167.7	204.0	245.0
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 6 2042	Year 7 2043	Year 8 2044	Year 9 2045	Year 10 2046	Year 11 2047
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	8.1	8.1	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	150.7	150.7	142.5	167.7	204.0	245.0
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	1,820.6	1,820.6	1,625.9	1,916.0	2,337.5	2,805.0
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	32.21%	32.21%	32.21%	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	4,870.2	4,870.2	3,857.4	4,646.6	6,195.5	7,228.0
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	4,816.7	4,816.7	3,815.0	4,595.5	6,127.3	7,148.5
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	4,816.7	4,816.7	3,815.0	4,595.5	6,127.3	7,148.5
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	2,263.8	2,263.8	1,793.0	2,159.9	2,879.8	3,359.8
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(929.4)	(929.4)	(1,101.8)	(1,480.3)	(1,858.7)	(1,996.1)
Shipping Costs	US$ M	(188.4)	(188.4)	(188.4)	(207.1)	(272.2)	(319.0)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(85.1)	(85.1)	(85.1)	(127.7)	(170.3)	(198.7)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(321.9)	(321.9)	(321.9)	(411.6)	(548.8)	(640.3)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(1,680.0)	(1,680.0)	(1,405.7)	(1,800.0)	(2,400.0)	(2,800.0)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(438.8)	(438.8)	(884.3)	(997.6)	(694.0)	(1,014.6)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(134.6)	(134.6)	(123.0)	(144.9)	(175.4)	(195.8)
Royalty Costs							
Nauru Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	(13.1)	(13.1)
Tonga Payment	US$ M	(10.1)	(10.1)	(10.1)	(10.1)	(10.1)	(9.1)
LCR Royalty	US$ M	--	--	(12.3)	(31.0)	(38.5)	(46.0)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 12 2048	Year 13 2049	Year 14 2050	Year 15 2051	Year 16 2052	Year 17 2053
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4
Manganese Price	US$/t	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Revenue	US$ M	17,456.2	17,456.2	16,598.7	16,598.7	16,598.7	16,598.7
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(7,698.5)	(7,526.0)	(7,168.1)	(7,168.1)	(7,168.1)	(7,168.1)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(63.3)	(63.3)	(60.8)	(60.8)	(60.8)	(60.8)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	9,694.5	9,866.9	9,369.8	9,369.8	9,369.8	9,369.8
Depreciation	US$ M	(559.5)	(548.6)	(366.1)	(367.9)	(455.4)	(541.3)

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 12 2048	Year 13 2049	Year 14 2050	Year 15 2051	Year 16 2052	Year 17 2053
EBIT	US$ M	9,134.9	9,318.4	9,003.7	9,001.9	8,914.3	8,828.5
Taxation	US$ M	(1,931.6)	(1,970.1)	(1,903.6)	(1,903.2)	(1,884.8)	(1,866.8)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	7,203.3	7,348.2	7,100.1	7,098.7	7,029.6	6,961.7
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	7,525.4	7,838.7	7,050.2	6,941.2	6,959.6	6,977.6
Project Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	--	--	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)
Production Summary							
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	40.0	40.0	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--

TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	40.0	40.0	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	373.7	373.7	350.3	350.3	350.3	350.3
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	35.4	35.4	13.3	13.3	13.3	13.3
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	28.3	28.3	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	7,523.2	7,523.2	7,162.7	7,162.7	7,162.7	7,162.7

Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	66.2	66.2	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	5.1	5.1	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	3.1	3.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	3,069.6	3,069.6	2,949.2	2,949.2	2,949.2	2,949.2

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 12 2048	Year 13 2049	Year 14 2050	Year 15 2051	Year 16 2052	Year 17 2053
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	315.6	315.6	295.9	295.9	295.9	295.9
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	27.3	27.3	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	19.1	19.1	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	3,023.7	3,023.7	2,887.0	2,887.0	2,887.0	2,887.0
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	8,260.6	8,260.6	7,744.3	7,744.3	7,744.3	7,744.3
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	8,169.8	8,169.8	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	8,169.8	8,169.8	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	3,839.8	3,839.8	3,599.8	3,599.8	3,599.8	3,599.8
Operating Cost							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(2,133.4)	(1,960.9)	(1,892.3)	(1,892.3)	(1,892.3)	(1,892.3)
Shipping Costs	US$ M	(357.3)	(357.3)	(338.2)	(338.2)	(338.2)	(338.2)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(227.0)	(227.0)	(212.9)	(212.9)	(212.9)	(212.9)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(731.8)	(731.8)	(686.0)	(686.0)	(686.0)	(686.0)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(3,200.0)	(3,200.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(216.1)	(216.1)	(206.0)	(206.0)	(206.0)	(206.0)
Royalty Costs							
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)
Tonga Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(50.2)	(50.2)	(47.7)	(47.7)	(47.7)	(47.7)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 18 2054	Year 19 2055	Year 20 2056	Year 21 2057	Year 22 2058	Year 23 2059
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0	20,360.0
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4	11,456.4

Manganese Price	US$/t	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0	470.0
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 18 2054	Year 19 2055	Year 20 2056	Year 21 2057	Year 22 2058	Year 23 2059
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0	21,835.0
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6	62,529.6
Revenue	US$ M	16,598.7	16,598.7	16,598.7	16,598.7	17,456.2	8,444.2
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	(6,995.6)	(6,823.2)	(6,650.7)	(6,478.3)	(6,663.8)	(3,264.9)
Total Royalties	US$ M	(60.8)	(60.8)	(53.3)	(47.7)	(50.2)	(24.3)
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	9,542.2	9,714.7	9,894.6	10,072.7	10,742.3	5,155.0
Depreciation	US$ M	(625.5)	(708.0)	(703.1)	(698.2)	(688.2)	(2,096.6)
EBIT	US$ M	8,916.7	9,006.7	9,191.6	9,374.5	10,054.1	3,058.4
Taxation	US$ M	(1,885.3)	(1,904.2)	(1,941.4)	(1,978.7)	(2,121.9)	(647.4)
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	7,031.5	7,102.5	7,250.1	7,395.8	7,932.2	2,411.0
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	7,117.4	7,270.7	7,413.1	7,553.6	8,451.6	5,664.2
Project Capital							
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Capital	US$ M	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	(483.5)	--	--
Production Summary		--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	40.0	18.9
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	40.0	18.9
Life of Mine	Years	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%	1.27%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	350.3	350.3	350.3	350.3	373.7	176.6
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%	94.76%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%	94.60%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	13.3	13.3	13.3	13.3	35.4	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	167.0
Payable Factor for Matte	%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%	80.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	28.3	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	318.1	167.0
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	7,162.7	7,162.7	7,162.7	7,162.7	7,523.2	3,646.9
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%	0.22%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	66.2	31.3
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%	77.54%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%	77.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9	5.1	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 18 2054	Year 19 2055	Year 20 2056	Year 21 2057	Year 22 2058	Year 23 2059
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	24.2
Payable Factor for Matte	%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%	60.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	3.1	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	46.0	24.2
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	2,949.2	2,949.2	2,949.2	2,949.2	3,069.6	1,510.4
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%	1.07%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	295.9	295.9	295.9	295.9	315.6	149.1
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%	86.43%
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%	86.20%
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	27.3	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	128.5
Payable Factor for Matte	%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%	70.00%
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2	19.1	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	244.8	128.5
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	2,887.0	2,887.0	2,887.0	2,887.0	3,023.7	1,472.6
Physicals Manganese							

Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%	27.97%
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	7,744.3	7,744.3	7,744.3	7,744.3	8,260.6	3,903.1
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%	98.90%
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	8,169.8	3,860.2
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	7,659.2	8,169.8	3,860.2
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	3,599.8	3,599.8	3,599.8	3,599.8	3,839.8	1,814.3
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	(1,719.8)	(1,547.4)	(1,374.9)	(1,202.5)	(1,098.7)	(519.1)
Shipping Costs	US$ M	(338.2)	(338.2)	(338.2)	(338.2)	(357.3)	(171.5)
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	(212.9)	(212.9)	(212.9)	(212.9)	(227.0)	(107.3)
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	(686.0)	(686.0)	(686.0)	(686.0)	(731.8)	(345.8)
Processing Cost	US$ M	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,000.0)	(3,200.0)	(1,512.0)
Refining Cost	US$ M	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(832.8)	(479.0)
Corporate Cost	US$ M	(206.0)	(206.0)	(206.0)	(206.0)	(216.1)	(130.2)
Royalty Costs							
Nauru Payment	US$ M	(13.1)	(13.1)	(5.6)	--	--	--
Tonga Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	(47.7)	(47.7)	(47.7)	(47.7)	(50.2)	(24.3)

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 24 2060	Year 25 2061	Year 26 2062	Year 27 2063	Year 28 2064	Year 29 2065
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	--	--	--	--	--	--
Revenue	US$ M	440.0	--	--	--	--	--
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Royalties	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	440.0	--	--	--	--	--
Depreciation	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
EBIT	US$ M	440.0	--	--	--	--	--
Taxation	US$ M	(92.4)	--	--	--	--	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	347.6	--	--	--	--	--
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	1,223.5	(78.6)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(11.5)
Project Capital							
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(11.5)
Total Capital	US$ M	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(149.5)	(11.5)
Production Summary		--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Nickel Products							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Cobalt							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 24 2060	Year 25 2061	Year 26 2062	Year 27 2063	Year 28 2064	Year 29 2065
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Copper							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Physicals Manganese							
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	--	--	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--	--	--
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Operating Costs							
Collection Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Shipping Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Processing Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Refining Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Corporate Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 24 2060	Year 25 2061	Year 26 2062	Year 27 2063	Year 28 2064	Year 29 2065
Royalty Costs							
Nauru Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
Tonga Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--	--	--

Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 30 2066	Year 31 2067	Year 32 2068	Year 33 2069
Nickel Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Copper Cathode Price (C1 LME)	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Manganese Price	US$/dmtu	--	--	--	--
Nickel Sulfate Price (100% contained Ni basis)	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Sulfate Price (100% contained Co basis)	US$/t	--	--	--	--
Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Total Operating Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Total Royalties	US$ M	--	--	--	--
EBITDA (non-GAAP[1])	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Depreciation	US$ M	--	--	--	--
EBIT	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Taxation	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Net Profit After Tax	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Free Cash Flow	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)
Project Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Sustaining Capital	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Closure Capital	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)

Total Capital	US$ M	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)	(11.5)
Production Summary					
Total Wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--
TOML F wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--
TOML A-E & NORI A-C wet Ore Collected	Mwmtpa	--	--	--	--
Life of Mine	Years	--	--	--	--
Physicals Nickel Products					
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 30 2066	Year 31 2067	Year 32 2068	Year 33 2069
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Nickel Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Physicals Cobalt					
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Cobalt Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Physicals Copper					
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Matte	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Sulfate	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Matte	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Sulfate	Kt	--	--	--	--
Copper Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Physicals Manganese					
Resource Grade TOML F	%	--	--	--	--
Resource Grade TOML A-E & NORI A-C	%	--	--	--	--
Contained Metal in Recovered Nodules	Kt	--	--	--	--
Recovery Nodule to Manganese	%	--	--	--	--
Recovered Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--
Payable Factor for Manganese	%	--	--	--	--
Payable Metal in Manganese	Kt	--	--	--	--
Manganese Products Total Revenue	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Operating Costs					
Collection Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Shipping Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$ M	--	--	--	--

Macro Assumptions	Units	Year 30 2066	Year 31 2067	Year 32 2068	Year 33 2069
Processing Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Refining Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--

Corporate Cost	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Royalty Costs					
Nauru Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--
Tonga Payment	US$ M	--	--	--	--
LCR Royalty	US$ M	--	--	--	--

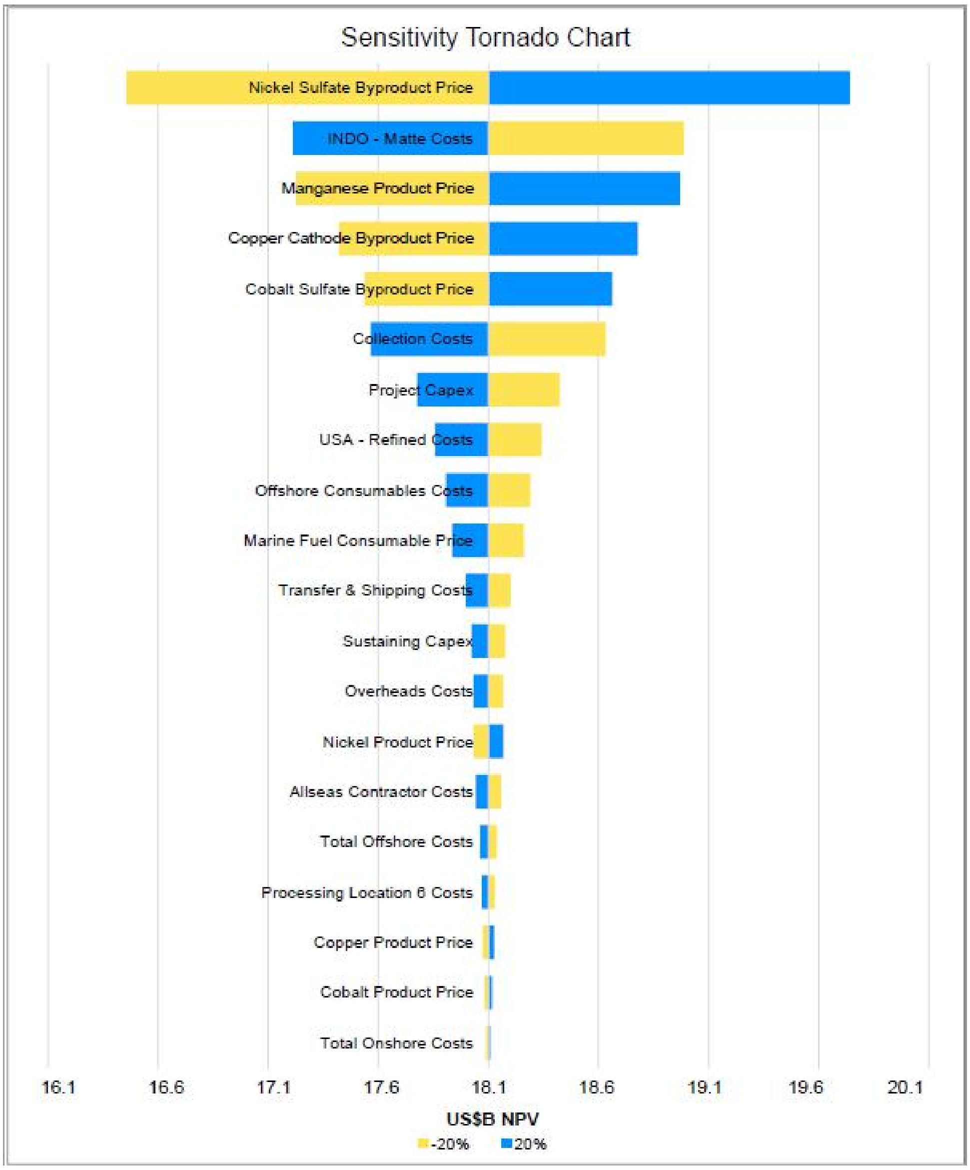
Notes: 1. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

19.14 Sensitivity analysis

To examine the impact of changes in base case assumptions, sensitivity analysis has been performed. The analysis performed allows identification of the critical components of the economic model, to determine which variables have little impact on outcomes and which have significant. To graphically display the relative impact and ranking of each variable on the post-tax NPV (base case NPV); the results have been displayed as a Tornado chart

Figure 19.2 presents a tornado chart which compares the range of each variable and calculates the NPV at each point. For each line item flexed between -20 percent and +20 percent, the length of the bar indicates the change to the NPV with the color of the bar indicating the direction of the relationship between the variable and the NPV movement. Upper variables (and longest bar) have the most effect and the lower the least effect to NPV.

Figure 19.2 Tornado Graph



Source:TMC

19.15 Cash cost analysis

TMC has selected nickel as the primary commodity for the Project and so unit costs are presented in terms of C1 Nickel Cash Cost. C1 Cash Costs are calculated as the total direct costs associated with mining, processing, G&A, and marketing costs. C1 Cash Cost is not a measure recognized by GAAP but is a standard measure used in mining as a reference point to denote the basic cash costs of running a mining operation to allow a comparison across the industry which may then be plotted on a global cost curve.

The cost curve is divided into four quartiles, with the lowest operating cost mines falling within the first quartile. In general, achieving a first quartile C1 cash cost means that the operation is expected to be resilient to all stages of the price cycles and remain profitable during these price cycles. The cost is typically expressed as US$/t nickel or US cents/lb nickel and is presented both exclusive and inclusive of by-product credits for other elements contained within the nodules (copper, cobalt, manganese). Table 19.9 presents the C1 Nickel Cash Cost (US$/t Ni) through the life of mine.

The NORI and TOML areas Cash Cost including by-product credits equals US$(6,939)/t nickel.

Table 19.9 C1 Nickel cash cost

Item	Units	Value
Collection Costs	US$'M	31,139
Shipping Costs	US$'M	6,066
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$'M	3,584
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$'M	11,884
Processing Cost	US$'M	53,598
Refining Cost	US$'M	15,978
Corporate Cost	US$'M	3,926
Total Operating Costs	US$'M	126,175
Total Nickel Production	kt	6,001
C1 Cash Cost excl. Byproducts credits	US$/mt Ni	21,026
Byproduct credits	US$/mt Ni	(27,965)
Period C1 Cash Cost incl. Byproducts credits	US$/mt Ni	(6,939)

Table 19.10 presents the all-in sustaining cost (AISC) in US$/t Ni through the LOM. The AISC is calculated using the same costs as the C1 Cash Cost, plus royalties and sustaining capital. This figure represents the realistic minimum revenue per unit of production that is required to continue operating the business and as such is a proxy for the operational break-even nickel price, subject to the pricing of by-products.

The NORI and TOML area all-in sustaining cost (AISC) including by-product credits equals US$(5,903)/t nickel.

Table 19.10 All-in Sustaining Cost

Item	Units	Value
Collection Costs	US$'M	31,139
Shipping Costs	US$'M	6,066
Contractor (offshore) Costs	US$'M	3,584
Consumables (offshore fuel) Costs	US$'M	11,884
Processing Cost	US$'M	53,598
Refining Cost	US$'M	15,978
Corporate Cost	US$'M	3,926
Total Operating Costs	US$'M	126,175
Total Royalties	US$'M	896
Sustaining Capital	US$'M	5,318
Total All-in Sustaining Cost	US$'M	132,389
Total Nickel Production	kt	6,001
AISC excl. Byproducts credits	US$/t Ni	22,062
Byproduct credits	US$/t Ni	(27,965)
AISC incl. Byproducts credits	US$/t Ni	(5,903)

19.16 Conclusion economic analysis

Based on the assumptions and parameters presented, the economic analysis shows positive economics supported by a post-tax NPV (8%) of approximately US$18,100M.

The project undiscounted LOM revenue of approximately US$300,000M, project capital of approximately US$8,900M sustaining capital of approximately US$5,300M, all-in operating cost of approximately US$126,000M, all-in royalty cost of approximately US$900 M, and closure costs of approximately US$800M.

20 Adjacent properties

From the perspective of exploration licensing, the seafloor in the CCZ can be considered in terms of five categories:

- Areas held by other parties under exploration contracts issued by the ISA under UNCLOS.
- Areas classified by the ISA as Reserved Areas. Under UNCLOS, the Reserved Areas are reserved for access by developing countries or the Enterprise (UNCLOS, Article 170, Annex IV and 1994 Agreement, Annex, Section 2).
- Areas of Particular Environmental Interest (APEIs) declared under UNCLOS and considered by the ISA to be excluded from mineral exploration.
- Areas within the central portion of the CCZ that are not classified by the ISA because there are exploration claims in place that pre-date the ISA. These include areas known as USA-1 and USA-4, for which exploration permits were granted by NOAA, under the DSHMRA of the USA.

· Other areas, generally peripheral to the CCZ, that are not reserved or contracted under the ISA or NOAA systems.

The ISA publishes a map of the CCZ Exploration and Reserved Areas for Polymetallic Nodules (Figure 3.1). NOAA does not publish a map of exploration permits or applications therefore the QP was unable to confirm the status of areas of the CCZ under the NOAA system.

The NORI and TOML areas that are the subject of this IA are spread across the CCZ. The adjacent properties are briefly described, from east to west, based on Figure 3.1 and historical information about the USA-1 and USA-4 areas. The descriptions of current status may not be up to date or accurate and should not be relied upon.

20.1 TOML-F

The eastern boundary of TOML-F is adjacent to the eastern boundary of NORI Area-D, held under an ISA exploration contract by NORI. Polymetallic nodule mineralization is well-developed in NORI Area-D and is the subject of a pre-feasibility study completed in 2025 (AMC Consultants, 2025). The NORI Area D Mineral Resource is reported at 30 June 2025 in Table 20.1 at an abundance cut-off of 4 wet kg/m^2. The average abundance and grades in TOML-F are similar to those in NORI Area-D.

Table 20.1 Mineral Resource for NORI Area D, at 30 June 2025, at 4 wet kg/m^2 abundance cut-off

Category	Tonnes (Mwmt)	Abundance (wet kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)
Inferred	11	15.4	1.38	1.14	0.12	30.96	5.46	6.92	0.16
Indicated	347	17.4	1.40	1.14	0.14	31.15	5.45	6.84	0.16
Measured	5	20.6	1.41	1.15	0.13	31.91	5.16	6.59	0.15
All	363	17.4	1.40	1.14	0.14	31.15	5.44	6.83	0.16

Notes:
1. Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 31 December 2024.
2. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid/(mass of solid + mass of water).
3. The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high-slope (>6°) domains were excluded from the estimate.
4. Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
5. Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
6. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies

The northern boundary of TOML-F is adjacent to the southern boundary of the area held under an ISA exploration contract by the Federal Institute for Geosciences and Natural Resources of Federal Republic of Germany (BGR). BGR completed multibeam bathymetry and backscatter mapping, BC sampling and geochemical analysis of nodules and used this data as the basis for an estimate of Mineral Resources in the eastern part of their Contract Area (~60,000 km^2) (Kuhn and Rühlemann 2021b). The Mineral Resources reported by Kuhn and Rühlemann are summarized in Table 20.2. The QP has been unable to verify the information. The average abundance and grades reported in the BGR area are similar to those in TOML-F.

Table 20.2 Summary of Mineral Resource reported for BGR exploration Contract Area

Mineral Resource Classification	M dry mt	Abundance (kg/m^2)	Ni (%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)
Measured	7.14	14.6	1.43	1.19	0.17	31.5
Indicated	11.21	14.2	1.32	1.18	0.13	30.8
Inferred	35.53	13.4	1.39	1.17	0.17	31.1
Inferred	486.2	10.1	1.39	1.17	0.17	31.1

Source: Kuhn and Rühlemann 2021b

Global Sea Resources (GSR, a Belgian consortium) carried out a mining trial in the BGR area with a pre-prototype, crawler-mounted collector in 2021. The trial demonstrated that the collector could be successfully maneuvered and nodules could be collected and stockpiled on the seafloor.

The western and southern boundaries of TOML-F are adjacent to Reserved Areas declared by the ISA.

20.2 NORI-C

NORI-C is an irregular-shaped area that abuts ISA exploration areas held by IOM and Global Sea Resources (GSR, a Belgian consortium). It is also, in part, adjacent to ISA Reserved Areas and areas that are not reserved or contracted under the ISA or NOAA systems.

GSR carried out a successful mining trial in the GSR area, as it had done in the BGR area, with a pre-prototype, crawler-mounted collector in 2021.

20.3 TOML-D and TOML-E

TOML-D and TOML-E are located about 100 km to the west of NORI-C. The southern boundary of TOML-D is separated from the northern boundary of TOML-E by a narrow strip of ISA Reserved Area. TOML -D and TOML-E adjoin the eastern boundary of the USA-4 area, licensed under the DSHMRA. Exploration rights to USA-4 have been held by forerunners and subsidiaries of Lockheed Martin since the 1970s.

The southern boundary of TOML-E abuts ISA exploration areas held by Marawa Research and Exploration Ltd, and the northern boundary of TOML-D abuts ISA exploration areas held by GSR and the Cook Islands Investment Corporation (CIIC).

20.4 TOML-C

TOML-C adjoins ISA exploration areas held by IFREMER and DORD. The area to the northeast is ISA Reserved Area.

20.5 TOML-B and NORI-B

The eastern boundary of NORI-B abuts the western boundary of TOML-B. The combined areas adjoin ISA exploration areas held by DORD and Yuzhmorgeologya. The area to the northeast is an ISA Reserved Area.

20.6 NORI-A

To the north and west, NORI-A adjoins ISA exploration areas held by Yuzhmorgeologya. To the east, NORI-A adjoins the western portion of USA-1. Exploration rights to USA-1 have been held by forerunners and subsidiaries of Lockheed Martin since the 1970s. The southern boundary of NORI-A is adjacent to Reserved Areas declared by the ISA.

20.7 TOML-A

TOML-A is located at the western end of the CCZ. Its northern and western boundaries are adjacent to Reserved Areas declared by the ISA. The eastern and southern boundaries are unallocated.

21 Other relevant data and information

No additional information or explanation is necessary to make this IA Technical Report understandable and not misleading.

22 Interpretation and conclusions

22.1 Mineral tenure

The mineral tenure for the Project is backed by exploration contracts granted by the ISA that provides exclusive rights to explore and a priority right to apply for an exploitation contract. NORI and TOML have complied with all contractual obligations to date with respect to the ISA requirements. To the extent known to the QP, there are no other significant factors and risks that may affect access, title, or the right to perform work on the Project that are not discussed in this Technical Report.

The ISA is currently working on the development of the legal framework to regulate the exploitation of nodules in the Area and at the time of this report the ISA has not finalized the regulations for Nodule Exploitation. TMC has submitted an application to NOAA under DSHMRA for an exploration license that covers the TOML and NORI areas described in this IA. At the time of this report, this application is still under review and not yet approved. As part of estimating the recovered resource in this IA, an allowance for appropriate buffer zones to prevent impact to areas outside the NORI and TOML areas and sensitive environmental areas within the areas is included. Other than those allowances, the QPs have not included any measures to comply with the yet to be approved commercial recovery permit conditions, and the impact of those conditions on the recovered resource and associated economic evaluation is to be confirmed.

22.2 Exploration and data verification

The exploration program for the NORI and TOML properties has been extensive, spanning multiple offshore campaigns conducted between 2012 and 2023, including significant efforts in 2012, 2013, 2018, 2019, and a collector system test in 2022. This is in addition to exploration data from Pioneer Contractors and explorers. The campaigns involved a combination of sampling methods such as free fall grab (FFG) samplers, box coring, bulk nodule dredging, and geophysical surveys including multibeam echosounder (MBES), side scan sonar (SSS), sub-bottom profiling (SBP), autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV) deployments, and photographic seabed imaging. The collected data provided geological, geotechnical, and environmental baselines critical to resource estimation and mine planning.

Data verification processes confirmed the reliability and consistency of the datasets. Assay results from recent campaigns by NORI and TOML validated historical Pioneer Contractor data, which underpin much of the Inferred Mineral Resource estimates for NORI Areas A, B, C, and TOML Areas A through F. QA/QC measures included the use of CRMs, duplicate samples, secure chain-of-custody protocols, and cross-comparisons between different sampling techniques and laboratories. Although original assay sheets from Pioneer Contractors were unavailable, the consistency across independent datasets and acceptance by the ISA support their adequacy for resource modeling at an Inferred confidence level.

Moisture content measurements, essential for converting wet abundance to dry metal grades, were assessed, with current estimates of 24% moisture for NORI-A, B, and C, and 28% for NORI Area D and TOML areas, based on BC sampling of nodules recovered during 2022 Test Mining. No significant correlations were found between moisture content and other variables such as nodule size or grade.

Geotechnical data, including vane shear strength classifications derived from box core locations, indicate variable sediment stiffness across the TOML areas but suggest that mining systems designed for NORI Area D can be assumed to be broadly applicable throughout the Property. Photo-profile analyses and long-axis estimation (LAE) methods further enhanced confidence in spatial continuity and representativeness of nodule abundance and grade distributions.

Overall, the integration of multi-method sampling, rigorous QA/QC, and detailed geospatial analysis provides a solid foundation for the Mineral Resource estimates presented in this report. The QPs consider the data sufficient to support ongoing project development and future refinement of resource classification as additional operational data becomes available.

22.3 Mineral processing testwork

TMC has completed an extensive program of metallurgical testing involving nodule characterization, process flowsheet selection, bench-scale and pilot-scale confirmation on a 75 t sample of nodules collected from NORI Area D. The selected RKEF flow sheet involves calcining and smelting nodules to produce a nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and a silico-manganese product. The alloy is subsequently converted into a nickel-copper-cobalt matte. The selected process involve near zero solid waste generation. TMC polymetallic nodules have very little variation in chemical and mineralogical composition and accordingly, samples selected for testing were representative of the mineralization and sufficient samples were taken so that tests were performed on sufficient sample mass.

Estimated recovery factors estimated are based on appropriate metallurgical testwork and are appropriate to the mineralization and the selected process route.

The metallurgical recoveries to matte are estimated at 94.8% for nickel, 77.5% for cobalt, 86.4% for copper, and 98.9% for manganese, with manganese being recovered as manganese silicate and nickel-copper-cobalt recovered as a matte.

22.4 Mineral Resource

Data collected by NORI and TOML is well-documented and was subject to satisfactory QA/QC processes. Documentation verified by the QP includes photographs, daily exploration reports, digital logging sheets and original assay reports. In the opinion of the QP the NORI and TOML Area data is of good quality and suitable for estimating Mineral Resources. These estimates rely on sample data obtained by Pioneer Contractors using FFG samplers and BCs, supplemented by more recent exploration efforts including multibeam bathymetry surveys, photographic seabed imaging, and geotechnical sampling.

For NORI Areas A, B, and C, the Mineral Resource estimate remains unchanged since 2012, reflecting a stable dataset with no new exploratory work warranting an update. The estimation process involved geological domain interpretation, declustering of sample data, and spatial continuity analysis using variogram modeling to support Mineral resource classification at the Inferred level. A nodule abundance cut-off was applied at 4 kg/m² to define Mineral Resources with realistic prospects of economic extraction.

Similarly, the TOML Contract Areas have been modeled using integrated datasets combining historical samples and recent BC and photo-profile data. Geological domains were delineated into polymetallic nodule-bearing zones and non-nodule zones based on MBES bathymetry and backscatter data, with zero abundance assigned to non-nodule domains. Spatial continuity was assessed through variogram analysis, enabling block model construction with sub-block resolution sufficient to capture grade variability and boundary definitions. A nodule abundance cut-off was applied at 4 kg/m² to define Mineral Resources with realistic prospects of economic extraction.

Moisture content assumptions of approximately 24% for NORI-A, B, and C, and 28% for TOML areas were applied to convert wet tonnage to dry basis metal grades, consistent with measured values from sampling programs. The homogeneity of nodule chemistry across the TOML areas supports the use of uniform metallurgical recovery factors in economic assessments.

Geotechnical data from TOML areas indicate sediment characteristics compatible with mining systems designed for similar seafloor conditions, supporting operational feasibility.

Overall, the Mineral Resource estimates reported for NORI Areas A, B, C, and TOML Areas A-F are of suitable confidence for this IA.

22.5 Mining methods

The mining methods developed for the NORI and TOML properties represent a comprehensive and technically advanced approach to polymetallic nodule extraction from the deep seafloor. The phased development strategy, beginning with prototype test mining and progressing to a second-generation production system provides confidence from validating operational concepts through practical experience and iterative design improvements.

The proposed offshore mining system, featuring a 20-meter-wide tracked CV equipped with Coandă nozzles, is capable of effectively recovering nodules across varied seafloor terrains, and assuming slopes up to 6°. Bathymetric surveys have been integrated into mine planning to identify and mitigate challenges posed by geo-obstacles such as lava flows and sediment drifts, ensuring collector path design includes maximizing resource recovery while minimizing unmined areas.

Operational planning incorporates realistic allowances for weather-related downtime, maintenance activities, and logistical support, resulting in productive operating time of 273 days per year, or 75% of the year. The coordinated use of PVs, TVs, and SVs, managed via a centralized offshore communication centre located at the Supply Base, supports safe and efficient operations with reduced offshore personnel exposure.

22.6 LOM planning

Buffer zones of 1 km around lease boundaries and environmentally sensitive areas have been incorporated into mine planning to mitigate potential environmental impacts.

Key risks identified include potential delays or interruptions due to adverse metocean conditions, equipment reliability challenges inherent in deep-sea mining environments, and uncertainties related to seafloor variability beyond currently surveyed areas. These risks will be addressed through robust contingency planning, adaptive mine scheduling, and ongoing environmental monitoring to inform operational adjustments.

Recommendations emphasize continued refinement of mining system designs, to improve reliability, maximize operability, reduce maintenance and increase durations between maintenance periods, reduce energy consumption and improve production efficiency, simplify operational procedures, transient to (semi-)autonomous operation. Geotechnical investigations are advised to validate assumptions extrapolated from initial survey areas to the broader NORI and TOML Contract Areas. Additionally, progressive reconciliation of production data against Mineral Resource models will be critical to confirming resource estimates and optimizing future mine plans.

In summary, the IA shows that the proposed mining methods are potentially technically feasible and with continued engineering development might provide that the basis for commercial-scale polymetallic nodule mining within the NORI and TOML Contract Areas. There are no Mineral Reserve estimates for the TMC Property outside of the NORI Area D, and the potential viability of the Mineral Resources has not yet been supported by detailed mine design or optimization processes nor a PFS or a feasibility study.

22.7 Processing

The results of TMC's bench-scale testing, piloting and commercial-scale demonstration have shown that RKEF facilities are well suited to process nodules. Calcining and smelting temperatures, throughputs, material handling capabilities and other key operating parameters are very similar to those for nickel laterites, which the RKEF plants in Indonesia were designed and built to process.

The outcomes from the bench scale processing at SGS indicate that sulfate products derived exclusively from polymetallic nodules are suitable for use in battery applications. The work at SINTEF not only shows that TMC's manganese silicate product is capable of rivaling conventional manganese ores as feed for silico manganese production but also offers inherent value due to its pre-reduced nature.

Outcomes from the commercial-scale trials are expected to inform any plant modifications that may be required in preparation for nodule processing. The modifications required will depend on the specific plant, but experience with plant preparation is assumed given the capacity required to process nodules from the NORI Area D.

22.8 Infrastructure

All nodules are assumed to undergo initial pyrometallurgical processing under a tolling arrangement in Indonesia. The Indonesian operations are assumed to require minimal plant modifications in preparation to process nodules. All pyrometallurgical unit operations, port facilities and drayage/materials handling equipment are assumed to exist. The nodules are assumed to be refined at a US-based facility, which have been previously constructed as part of the need for USA refinery capacity derived from matte processing from the NORI Area D.

22.9 Market studies

The market studies for the NORI and TOML projects provide a comprehensive analysis of the demand, supply, and pricing outlooks for key metals contained in polymetallic nodules, including nickel, cobalt, manganese, and copper. These studies are based on forecasts from reputable industry sources such as CRU and BMI, incorporating both short- and long-term perspectives to inform project revenue assumptions, and consider the marketability of the suit of products that TMC are expected to produce over the project life; manganese silicate, nickel-copper-cobalt matte, nickel sulfate, cobalt sulfate, and copper cathode.

Nickel remains the primary commodity driving the project economics, with detailed assessments of its market dynamics highlighting supply constraints and growing demand driven by EV battery production and stainless steel manufacturing. The forecast anticipates a sustained supply gap after 2032 that supports favourable price levels over the life of the project.

Cobalt's market outlook reflects its critical role in battery chemistries, with supply-demand balances influenced by geopolitical factors and increasing recycling efforts. Manganese silicate is evaluated both as a feedstock for silico-
manganese alloy and as a feedstock for value-added forms such as EMM and manganese sulfate ($MnSO_4$), which have expanding markets linked to battery applications and steelmaking.

Copper demand projections emphasize its essential function in electrification and infrastructure development globally. Supply-side analyses consider potential disruptions and the need for new sources to meet rising demand.

TMC's manganese silicate offers high-grade manganese content and favorable chemical properties, making it a strong contender for use in silico-manganese alloy production, as well as growing battery-related markets such as EMD and HPMSM. Its competitive pricing, manageable impurity levels, and strategic blending potential position it well to displace costlier manganese sources.

TMC's matte is compositionally similar to established converter mattes and is well-suited for refining at major facilities like Vale, Glencore, and Jinchuan, which together hold about 85% of spare global refining capacity. While growing supply may pressure payables, securing long-term refinery partnerships are assumed to help maintain value and ensure stable processing capacity for up to 200 Kt of contained nickel annually.

It is intended TMC US subsidiary TMC USA will construct refining facilities in Texas to produce battery-grade Ni and Co sulfate crystal, copper cathode and fertilizer grade ammonium sulfate. Forecasts for cathode and sulfate prices are based on forecasts from BMI.

Metallurgical recoveries and payable factors derived from these studies underpin revenue estimates used in economic modelling.

Overall, the market studies confirm robust demand fundamentals and supportive pricing environments for the suite of metals targeted by the project. This provides confidence in the commercial viability of the NORI and TOML resources and informs ongoing investment and operational planning.

22.10 Environmental studies

The environmental management framework for the NORI and TOML projects is grounded in extensive baseline studies, regulatory compliance, and proactive stakeholder engagement to ensure responsible development within the CCZ. The ISA serves as a regulatory body overseeing mineral exploration activities in these international seabed areas, mandating rigorous ESIA and EIS as prerequisites for exploitation licensing.

TMC, through its subsidiaries NORI and TOML, has conducted multiple offshore campaigns since 2012 to collect comprehensive geological, biological, and oceanographic data. These efforts include benthic and water column biological monitoring using ROVs, AUVs, and other advanced instruments, alongside geotechnical and sediment plume modeling to understand potential mining impacts.

Permitting processes under the ISA require submission of detailed five-year work plans and annual reports demonstrating adherence to environmental standards and contract obligations. Both NORI and TOML are currently compliant with their exploration contracts and actively preparing for the transition to commercial recovery permits, which necessitate further environmental documentation and adaptive management strategies.

Parallel permitting pathways exist under the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), where TMC USA has submitted applications for exploration licenses and commercial recovery permits.

Ongoing environmental monitoring programs aim to detect and manage any adverse effects on marine ecosystems, with adaptive management plans designed to respond to changing conditions throughout the project lifecycle.

In summary, the environmental and social program supporting the NORI and TOML projects reflects a robust commitment to sustainable seabed mineral development, integrating scientific research, regulatory compliance, and stakeholder collaboration to minimize ecological disturbance and support long-term ocean health

22.11 Capital and operating costs

The capital expenditure (CAPEX) for the NORI and TOML projects is estimated at approximately US$14.975 billion, encompassing Project development capital of $8.8 billion, sustaining capital over the life of mine (LOM) is projected at US$5.3 billion, with closure costs estimated at US$805 million.

Operating cost estimates are reported in Q2, 2025 US$. The operating costs are at an IA level of confidence. LOM and average unit operating costs per wet metric tonne (wmt) of nodules collected are estimated as follows:

- LOM collection costs are estimated at US$31,139M and average US$46.5/wmt of nodules.
- LOM shipping costs are estimated at US$6,066M and average US$9.1/wmt of nodules.
- LOM contractor (offshore) costs are estimated at US$3,584M and average US$5.3/wmt of nodules.
- LOM consumables (offshore fuel) costs are estimated at US$11,884M and average US$17.7/wmt of nodules.

- LOM processing costs are estimated at US$53,598M and average US$80.0/wmt of nodules.
- LOM refining costs are estimated at US$15,978M and average US$23.8/wmt of nodules.
- LOM G&A costs are estimated at US$3,926M and average US$5.9/wmt of nodules.

22.12 Economic evaluation

The economic analysis employs a real, ungeared, post-tax discounted cash flow model using an 8% discount rate over a 23-year LOM, commencing commercial production in 2037. Key assumptions include stable metal prices based on CRU and BMI forecasts, metallurgical recoveries, payabilities, and cost structures without inflation or escalation. The model integrates royalty payments under agreements with Nauru and Tonga, as well as a Low Carbon Royalty (LCR).

Results indicate a strong project economics profile, with a post-tax net present value (NPV8) of approximately US$18.1 billion and an EBITDA of US$172 billion over the LOM. Sensitivity analyses highlight the project's resilience to fluctuations in metal prices, operating costs, and capital expenditures, underscoring its economic robustness.

In conclusion, the capital and operating cost frameworks combined with detailed economic modeling provide confidence in the technical and financial viability of the NORI and TOML projects. Continued refinement of cost estimates and economic parameters are assumed to be essential as the project advances toward development and commercial production.

This IA indicates that development of the resource within the NORI and TOML Areas, termed the TMC Property, is potentially technically and economically viable and indicates a positive economic outcome.

Due to the low level of confidence in much of the Mineral Resource base, the need for more exploration, and the need for more detailed evaluation of aspects of the Project, such as seafloor bathymetry, environmental characterization, and mine planning, the technical and economic viability has not yet been demonstrated.

23 Recommendations

The QPs consider that the evaluation work to date on the TOML and NORI area including offshore exploration and data management, off-shore Production System concepts, Onshore Processing strategy, marketing, and environmental framework and scoping assessments has demonstrated the potential technical and economic viability of the Project.

The buildup of experience expected through development and operation of the 1st Gen systems in NORI Area D are expected to be important for derisking the Project.

The QPs recommend advancing the NORI and TOML projects through continued engineering development, environmental assessment, and operational planning to support a pre-feasibility study.

Key priorities include:

- More detailed bathymetric surveys.
- Detailed definition and increase in confidence in the Mineral Resources.
- Developing mine plans with more detailed data, aligned with expected Commercial Recovery Permit conditions.
- Design and testing of 2nd Gen CVs, VTSs, PVs, and associated infrastructure, informed, where possible, from learnings from 1st Gen systems.
- Refinement of CAPEX and OPEX estimates.
- Continue to expand and finalize onshore tolling capacity in Indonesia in order to match offshore collection volumes.
- Expanding engineering studies and design efforts for the hydrometallurgical plant capabilities to meet required plant availability to manage proposed production volumes.
- Refine product to meet market placement in the US at a pre-built hydrometallurgical facility.
- Explore opportunities for onshore RKEF optimisations (power, cost, emissions).
- Progress engagement and commercial arrangements with existing or emerging industry partners to validate the operating strategy.
- Environmental monitoring and adaptive management frameworks should be refined and aligned with expected Commercial Recovery Permit conditions.

These recommendations collectively aim to mitigate risks, improve technical and economic outcomes, and support responsible advancement of the TMC Property.

24 References

Agarwal JC, Barner HEM, Beecher N., 1979. The cuprion process for ocean nodules, Chem. Eng. Prog 75(1):59-63.

Alhaddad S., Mehta D., Helmons R., 2023. Mining of deep-seabed nodules using a coanda-effect-based collector, Results in Engineering 17

Allseas Base Specification 2024. Engineering specifications for the CV and associated systems. Confidential report.

Allseas Propulsion and Maneuverability Analysis 2024b. Assessment of Collector Vehicle operational capabilities on slopes and terrain Confidential report.

AMC Consultants, 2016. TOML Clarion Clipperton Zone Project, Pacific Ocean. Technical Report compiled under NI-43-101 by AMC Consultants Pty Ltd for Nautilus Minerals, March 2016.

AMC Consultants, 2019. NORI Area D, Clarion Clipperton Zone Mineral Resource Estimate, April 2019 Technical Report compiled under NI-43-101 for DeepGreen Metals Inc.

AMC Consultants, 2021a. Technical Report Summary--Initial Assessment of the NORI Property, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, for DeepGreen Metals Inc.

AMC Consultants, 2021b. Technical Report Summary-- TOML Mineral Resource, Clarion-Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, for DeepGreen Metals Inc.

AMC Consultants, 2025. Technical Report Summary of Prefeasibility Study for NORI Area D, for TMC the metals company Inc..

American Society of International Law. 1975. DeepSea Ventures Inc: notice of discovery and claim of exclusive mining rights, and request for diplomatic protection and protection of investment. International Legal Materials 14(1) (January 1975): 51-68.

APYS Subsea Ltd, 2024. Geotechnical analysis report supporting seafloor substrate strength and vehicle trafficability. Confidential report.

Archer, D., 1996. Global-scale dissolution of calcium carbonate in deep-sea sediments. Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 10(1), 103-116.

Baláž, P., 2022. Results of the second phase of deep-sea polymetallic nodules geological survey in Interoceanmetal Joint Organization licence area (2016–2021). Mineralia Slovaca, 54, 2 (2022), 95 – 118. Web ISSN 1338-3523, ISSN 0369-2086, https://doi.org/10.56623/ms.2022.54.2.1.

Benchmark Mineral Intelligence, 2025a. Forecast Reports June, 2025 for copper, nickel and cobalt Confidential report.

Benchmark Mineral Intelligence, 2025b. Q2 2025 Nickel Forecast Report, Technical report. Confidential report.

Bloomberg News, 2025. China-back $3 billion Indonesia nickel smelter risks shutdown. Available online at https://www.mining.com/web/china-backed-3-billion-indonesia-nickel-smelter-risks-shutdown/

CRU Group, 2019. Manganese market strategy. Technical report. Confidential report.

CRU Group, 2024. NORI Area D project: Preliminary market research report. Technical report. Confidential report.

DHI, 2025. Sediment plume modeling and environmental impact assessment. Confidential report.

Dunne, J. P., Armstrong R. A., Gnanadesikan A., and Sarmiento J. L., 2005. Empirical and mechanistic models for the particle export ratio, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 19, GB4026, doi:10.1029/2004GB002390

Earney FCF. 1990. Marine Mineral Resources. Routledge, p 387. Cited in: ISA. 2010. A geological model of polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and prospector's guide for polymetallic nodule deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone. International Seabed Authority Technical Study: No. 6.

Felix, D. 1980. Some problems in making nodule abundance estimates from seafloor photographs. Marine Mining, Volume 2 Number 3, 293-302.

Fiedler, P.C., & Talley, L.D., 2006. Hydrography of the eastern tropical Pacific: A review. Progress in Oceanography, 69(2-4), 143-180.

Fitzsimmons, J.N., et al., 2024. Dissolved and particulate seawater metal concentrations within NORI Area D. Texas A&M University Report. Confidential report.

Flanagan F.J. and Gottfried D., 1980. USGS Rock Standards, III. Manganese-Nodule Reference Samples USGS-Nod-A-1 and USGS-Nod-P-1. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1155.

Glover, A.G., et al., 2024. Genetic connectivity and population structure of benthic macrofauna in the CCZ. Deep Sea Research Part I.

Golder 2015. Preliminary economic assessment, NORI Clarion-Clipperton Zone Area D Project, Pacific Ocean. Report prepared by Golder Associates for Deep Green Resources Inc.

Gooday, A.J., et al., 2021. Abyssal benthos in the CCZ: Synthesis and perspectives. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 678, 1-25.

GSR 2018. Global Sea Mineral Resources NV 2018. Environmental Impact Statement. Small-scale testing of nodule collector components on the seafloor of the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and its environmental impact (ISA_EIA_2018_GSRNOD2019)

Henson, S. A., Sanders, R., & Madsen, E., 2012. Global patterns in efficiency of particulate organic carbon export and transfer to the deep ocean.*Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, *26*(1)

Hessler R.R., Jumars P.A., 1974. Abyssal community analysis from replicate box cores in the central north pacific. Deep Sea Research, 21, 185 209.

Hollingsworth, A. L., Jones, D. O. B., & Young, C. R., 2021.*Spatial Variability of Abyssal Nitrifying Microbes in the North-Eastern Clarion-Clipperton Zone. Frontiers in Marine Science, 8*.

Ingels, J., 2024. Nematode community structure and diversity in NORI Area D. Journal of Marine Biology.

ISA, 2001. Proposed technologies for mining deep-seabed polymetallic nodules. International Seabed Authority. https://www.isa.org.jm/ publications/proposed-technologies-for-mining-deep-seabed-polymetallic-nodules.

ISA. 2003. Establishment of a geological model of the polymetallic nodule resources in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone of the Equatorial North Pacific Ocean. Proceedings of the May 13-20, 2003, International Seabed Authority workshop held in Nadi, Fiji.

ISA. 2004. Marine Mineral Resources - scientific advances and economic perspectives. United Nations Division for Ocean Affairs and the Law of the Sea, Office of Legal Affairs.

ISA, 2010a. A Geological Model of Polymetallic Nodule Deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone and Prospector's Guide for Polymetallic Nodule Deposits in the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone. International Seabed Authority Technical Study: No. 6 ISBN: 978-976-95268-2-2.

ISA, 2010b. Environmental Management Plan for the Clarion-Clipperton Zone.

ISA, 2012. Report on the International Workshop on Environmental Management Needs for Exploration and Exploitation of Deep Sea Minerals. International Seabed Authority Technical Study: No.10.

ISA, 2017. Workshop on the Development of a Regional Environmental Management Plan for the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone. 2 0 1 7 . https://dredging.org/media/ceda/org/documents /projects/deep_sea_mining/05_isa_workshop_on_environmental_management_strategy_2017.pdf. Accessed July 26, 2025.

Jabber. R., et al., 2024. Polymetallic Nodules and the Critical Minerals Supply Chain: A North American Approach. Report produced for Wilson Center.

Jahnke, R.A., et al., 1982. Bottom water chemistry in the central equatorial Pacific. Deep-Sea Research, 29 (12), 1231-1245.

Kaluza P., Kolzsch A., Gastner M.T., and Blasius B., 2010. The Complex Network of Global Cargo Ship Movements. Journal of the Royal Society Interface, v7, pp.1093-1094. https://doi.org/10.1098/rsif.2009.0495 Kotlinski, R. and Stoyanova, V., 2006 Buried and surface polymetallic nodule distribution in the eastern Clarion–Clipperton Zone: main distinctions and similarities. Advances in Geosciences Vol. 9: Solid Earth, Ocean Science & Atmospheric Science (2006) Eds. Yun-Tai Chen et al. World Scientific Publishing Company, pp 67-74.

Kim, P.P., 2018. Reduction rates of SiMn slags from various raw materials. Paper, Norwegian University of Science and Technology

Kuhn, T., & Rühlemann, C., 2021a. Sedimentology and geochemistry of the southeastern CCZ. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, 295, 45-60.

Kuhn, T., Rühlemann, C., 2021b. Exploration of Polymetallic Nodules and Resource Assessment: A Case Study from the German Contract Area in the Clarion-Clipperton Zone of the Tropical Northeast Pacific. Minerals 2021, 11, 618. https:// doi.org/10.3390/min11060618.

Lee, G.C, Kim, J., Chi, S.B., Ko, Y.T and Ham, D.J., 2008. Examination for correction factor for manganese nodule abundance using the free fall grab and box corer. The Sea: Journal of the Korean Society of Oceanography, Vol 13, No. 3 pp 280-285.

Li, W.K.W., & Cassar, N., 2016. Satellite-based estimates of export production in the Pacific Ocean. Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 30(11), 1500-1515.

Lutz, M.A., et al., 2007. Particle fluxes in the CCZ. Deep Sea Research Part II, 54(23-26), 2243-2259.

Macheriotou, L., et al., 2022. Organic carbon content in CCZ sediments. Marine Geology, 450, 106-118.

McQuaid, K. A., Attrill, M. J., Clark, M. R., Cobley, A., Glover, A. G., Smith, C. R., & Howell, K. L. (2020). Using habitat classification to assess representativity of a protected area network in a large, data-poor area targeted for deep-sea mining. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, *7*, 558860.

Menard, H. W., & Fisher, R. L., 1958. Clipperton fracture zone in the northeastern equatorial Pacific. The Journal of Geology, 66(3), 239-253

Menard, H.W. (1955, 1966). Geological studies of the Pacific Plate and fracture zones. Journal of Geophysical Research.

Mero J, 1965. The Mineral Resources of the Sea. Volume 1 (Elsevier Oceanography Series).

NORI, 2025a. Area D-THEME-0200-MUL-RPT-00001 — Test Mining Report documenting the 2022 mining test and associated environmental monitoring. Confidential report.

NORI, 2025b. Technical Memorandum—CV Depth of Penetration — Document detailing design improvements related to the Coandă nozzle and sediment disturbance. Confidential report.

Novikov G.V. and Bogdanova O. Y., 2007, Transformations of Ore Minerals in Genetically Different Oceanic Ferromanganese Rocks, ISSN 0024-4902, Lithology and Mineral Resources, 2007, Vol. 42, No. 4, pp. 303–317.

Nozawa, Y., et al., 2006. Foraminifera diversity in the Kaplan East area. Marine Micropaleontology, 59(1-2), 1-15.

O'Malley, J., et al., 2023. Substrate composition and geotechnical soil classification in NORI Area D. Fugro USA Marine Inc. Report. Confidential report.

Olive JA, Behn MD, Ito G, Buck WR, Escartìn J, and Howell S, 2015. Sensitivity of seafloor bathymetry to climate-driven fluctuations in mid-ocean ridge magma supply, Sciencemag.org., Vol 350, Issue 6258.

Parianos, J., Lipton, I., & Nimmo, M., 2021. Aspects of estimation and reporting of Mineral Resources of seabed polymetallic nodules: A contemporaneous case study. Minerals, 11(2), 200.

Parianos, J., O'Sullivan, A., & Madureira, P., 2022. Geology of parts of the central and eastern Clarion Clipperton Zone. Journal of Maps, 18(2), 232-245.

Paul, S., et al., 2024. Porewater trace metal concentrations in the southeastern CCZ. Environmental Science & Technology.

Pegliasco, C., et al., 2022. Mesoscale eddy trajectories in the CCZ. Journal of Physical Oceanography, 52(3), 789-810.

Prahl, F.G., et al., 1980. C:N ratios in marine organic matter. Limnology and Oceanography, 25(4), 620-627.

Rabone, M., et al., 2023. Benthic biodiversity in the CCZ. Frontiers in Marine Science.

Rakhmat, M.Z., et al., 2025. The Fallout of PT Gunbuster Nickel Industry Closure: How Danantara Can Save Indonesia's Critical Minerals. Center of Economic and Law Studies. Available online at https://celios.co.id/the-fallout-of-pt-gunbuster-nickel-industry-closure-how-danantara-can-save-indonesias-critical-minerals/

Redfield, A.C., et al., 1963. The influence of organisms on the composition of seawater. In The Sea, Vol. 2.

Reuters, 2024. Indonesia says nickel reserves enough for expansion, despite moratorium call. Available online at https://www.mining.com/web/indonesia-nickel-reserves-enough-for-further-expansions-official-says/

Seton, M., et al., 2020. Age and spreading history of the Pacific Plate. Earth-Science Reviews, 203, 103-120.

Shanghai Metal Market, 2025. Both Indonesia's saprolite ore and limonite ore prices strengthen. SMM Weekly Review of Nickel Ore Market. https://www.metal.com/en/newscontent/103364124.

Shulse, C.N., et al., 2017. Nutrient distributions in the CCZ. Deep Sea Research Part I, 121, 1-14.

Simon-Lledó, E., Pomee, C., Ahokava, A., Drazen, J. C., Leitner, A. B., Flynn, A., and Jones, D. O., 2020. Multi-scale variations in invertebrate and fish megafauna in the mid-eastern Clarion Clipperton Zone. *Progress in Oceanography*, *187*, 102405

Skowronek, A., Macia˛g, Ł., Zawadzki, D., Strzelecka, A., Baláž, P., Mianowicz, K., Abramowski, T., Koneˇcný, P., Krawcewicz, A., 2021. Chemostratigraphic and Textural Indicators of Nucleation and Growth of Polymetallic Nodules from the Clarion-Clipperton Fracture Zone (IOM Claim Area). Minerals 2021, 11, 868. https://doi.org/10.3390/ min11080868

Spickermann R, 2012. Rare earth content of manganese nodules in the Lockheed Martin Clarion-Clipperton Zone exploration areas. Proceedings Off-shore Technology Conference, Houston Texas.

Sridhar, R., et al., 1975. US Patent #4,049,438, Filed February 14, 1975.

Sridhar, R., et al., 1976. Extraction of copper, nickel and cobalt from sea nodules. Journal of Mines. 1976;28:32–7.

Subarna, R.A., 2024. Smelter squeeze Indonesia's nickel ore supply. Article for East Asia Forum. Available online at https://eastasiaforum.org/2024/09/14/smelters-squeeze-indonesias-nickel-ore-supply/

The Star, 2025. Indonesia nickel boom is forcing its own smelters to shut down. Available online at https://www.thestar.com.my/aseanplus/aseanplus-news/2025/03/04/indonesia-nickel-boom-is-forcing-its-own-smelters-to-shut-down

Tilot V,, 2006. Biodiversity and distribution of megafauna. Vol. 1: The polymetallic nodule ecosystem of the Eastern Equatorial Pacific Ocean; Vol. 2: Annotated photographic atlas of the echinoderms of the Clarion-Clipperton fracture zone. Paris, UNESCO/IOC, 2006 (IOC Technical Series, 69).

Volz, C., et al., 2018. Metal cycling in CCZ sediments. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, 237, 1-17.

Volz, J. B., Haffert, L., Haeckel, M., Koschinsky, A., and Kasten, S., 2020. Impact of small-scale disturbances on geochemical conditions, biogeochemical processes and element fluxes in surface sediments of the eastern Clarion–Clipperton Zone, Pacific Ocean, Biogeosciences, 17, 1113–1131, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-17-1113-2020, 2020.

von Stackelberg U. and Beiersdorf H., 1991. The formation of manganese nodules between the Clarion and Clipperton fracture zones southeast of Hawaii. Marine Geology v.98, pp 411 – 423.

Washburn, T., et al., 2021. Organic matter and biogeochemistry in the CCZ. Marine Chemistry, 234, 104-115.

Xie, Z., et al., 2023. Near-inertial wave generation over seamounts in the CCZ. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans, 128(4).

XPS, 2020. Sea Nodules Converting Testwork XPS project 3019815.00, 22-Apr-2020. Confidential report.

25 Reliance on information provided by the registrant

In preparing inputs for this IA and the economic evaluation of the project, QPs have relied on information provided by the registrant, TMC, regarding the following aspects:

- Macroeconomic trends, data, and assumptions, (see Section 19).
- Legal matters outside the expertise of the QPs, such as statutory and regulatory interpretations affecting the mine plan (see parts of Section 3).
- Governmental factors outside the expertise of the QPs (see parts of Section 3 and Section 19).

The QPs consider it is reasonable to rely upon the information provided by the registrant in respect of the above factors as the registrant employs specialist personnel in these areas who have access to information to which the QPs do not.

Our offices

Australia

Adelaide
Level 1, 12 Pirie Street
Adelaide SA 5000 Australia
T +61 8 8201 1800
E adelaide@amcconsultants.com

Brisbane
Level 15, 100 Creek Street
Brisbane Qld 4000 Australia
T +61 7 3230 9000
E brisbane@amcconsultants.com

Melbourne
Level 12, 477 Collins Street
Melbourne Vic 3000 Australia
T +61 3 8601 3300
E melbourne@amcconsultants.com

Perth
Level 3, 1100 Hay Street
West Perth WA 6005 Australia
T +61 8 6330 1100
E perth@amcconsultants.com

Canada

Toronto
140 Yonge Street, Suite 200
Toronto ON M5C 1X6 Canada
T +1 647 953 9730
E toronto@amcconsultants.com

Vancouver
200 Granville Street, Suite 202
Vancouver BC V6C 1S4 Canada
T +1 604 669 0044
E vancouver@amcconsultants.com

South Africa

Cape Town
First Floor, Willowbridge Centre
Carl Cronje Drive
Cape Town 7530 South Africa
T +27 720 833 231
E capetown@amcconsultants.com

Centurion
Ground Floor (G05), Building 14, Block B
Byls Bridge Office Park
Corner of Olievenhoutbosch and Jean Ave
Centurion 0157 South Africa
T +27 720 833 231
E capetown@amcconsultants.com

United Kingdom

Reading
Registered in England and Wales
Company No. 3688365
Office 336a, Davidson House
Forbury Square
Reading, Berkshire RG1 3EU United Kingdom
T +44 1628 778 256
E unitedkingdom@amcconsultants.com

Registered Office:
Kinetic Centre
Theobald Street
Elstree
Hertfordshire WD6 4PG United Kingdom

Exhibit 99.1

TMC Releases Two Economic Studies with Combined NPV of $23.6B and Declares World-First Nodule Reserves

- TMC published two technical economic assessments prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of Regulation S-K highlighting a total combined project value of $23.6 billion, showing potential economic viability of its NORI-D Project and significant scalability across other NORI and TOML areas
- World-first Pre-Feasibility Study (PFS) for a polymetallic nodule project in the NORI-D area with a Net Present Value (NPV) of $5.5 billion

  - The PFS Technical Report Summary (TRS) marks a world-first declaration of Mineral Reserves for a polymetallic nodule project with 51 million tonnes (Mt) of probable mineral reserves;
  - Measured, indicated and inferred mineral resources exclusive of reserves of 274 Mt of wet nodules are expected to provide an additional 113 Mt of recoverable nodules once detailed survey and mine planning is complete;
  - In light of recent U.S. regulatory developments, TMC expects to commence commercial production in the fourth quarter of 2027 if we receive a commercial permit before scaling to an average targeted annual production rate of 10.8 million tonnes of wet nodules per annum (Mtpa) at steady state (2031 through 2043) production, with an expected 18-year life of mine (LOM);
  - Expected annual steady state production rate of 97 kilotonnes per annum (ktpa) nickel, 2,389 ktpa manganese, 70 ktpa copper and 7.4 ktpa cobalt
  - Expected low first quartile cost of production with cash costs of $1,065 per tonne of nickel including byproduct credits and All-In Sustaining Costs (AISC) of $2,569 per tonne of nickel including byproduct credits
  - Projected after-tax NPV of $5.5 billion and After-tax Internal Rate of Return (IRR) of 27%
  - Steady state average EBITDA margin of 43%

- New Initial Assessment details the economic potential of the rest of the 1.3 billion tonne resource across the NORI and TOML areas (excluding NORI-D) and a total estimated resource Net Project Value of $18.1 Billion

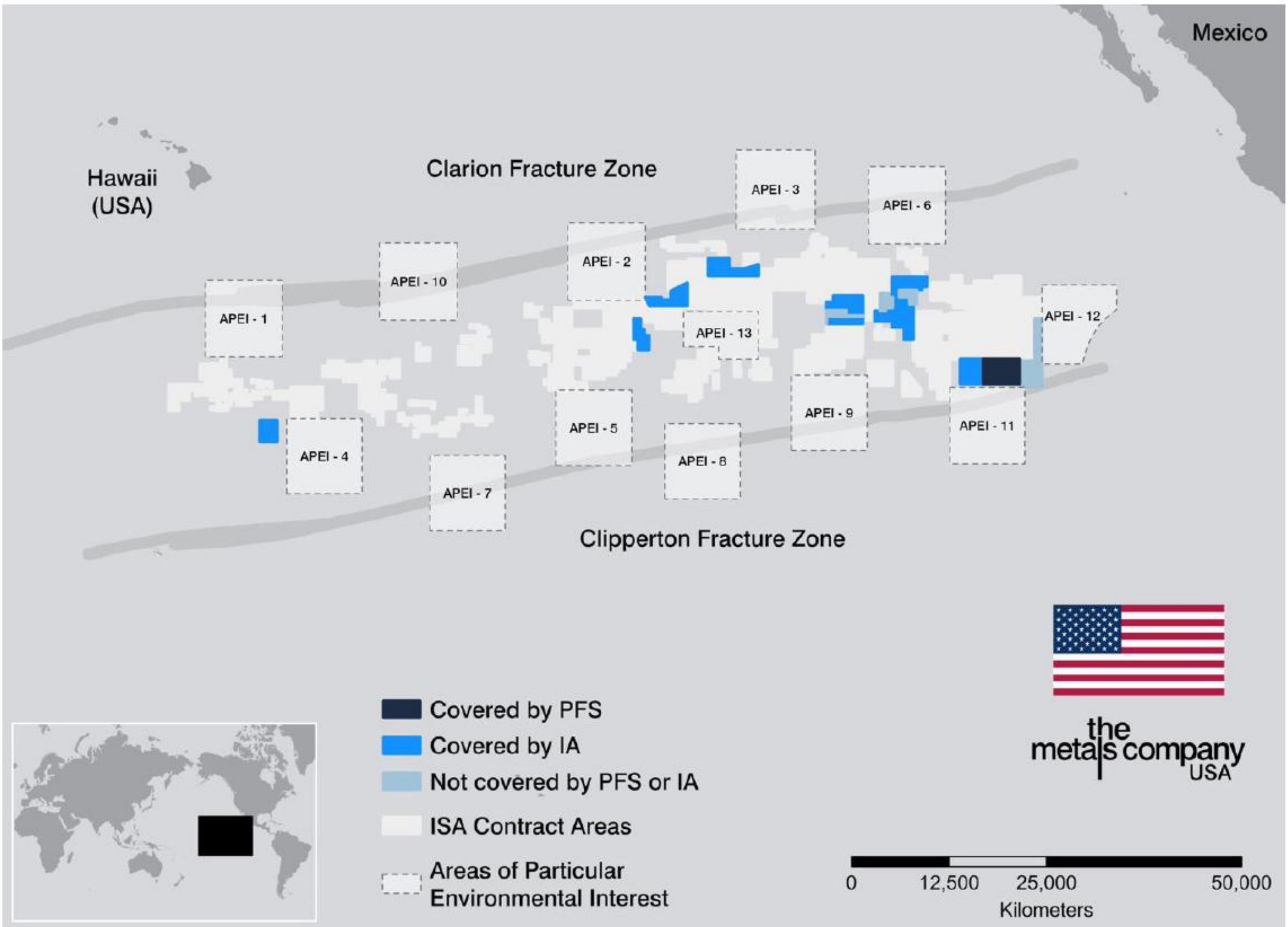
  - Projected After-tax NPV of $18.1 Billion and IRR of 36%
  - Projected steady state (2039 through 2058) average EBITDA margin of 57%

NEW YORK, August 4, 2025 - TMC the metals company Inc. (Nasdaq: TMC), a leading developer of the world's largest estimated undeveloped resource of critical metals essential to energy, defense, manufacturing and infrastructure, today announced the release of a Technical Report Summary (TRS) of the Pre-Feasibility Study (PFS) for its proposed NORI-D Polymetallic Nodule Project in the Clarion Clipperton Zone (CCZ) of the Pacific Ocean, prepared in accordance with Subpart 1300 of SEC Regulation S-K (SK-1300). The PFS marks a world-first declaration of Probable Mineral Reserves for deep-sea polymetallic nodules and was prepared and signed off by Qualified Persons, including AMC Consultants.

Alongside the PFS, TMC announced the publication of an Initial Assessment (IA) for the remainder of its resource in the NORI and TOML blocks in the CCZ, with a measured and indicated mineral resource of 73Mt of wet nodules grading 1.30% nickel, 0.20% cobalt, 1.2% copper and 30.2% manganese with an abundance of 12.8 Kg/m^2 and an inferred mineral resource of 1206 Mt of wet nodules grading 1.30% nickel, 0.20% cobalt, 1.1% copper and 28.7% manganese with an abundance of 11.6 Kg/m^2 supporting an After-tax NPV of $18.1 billion and After-tax IRR of 35.6%.

The two mineral resource reports follow TMC USA's April 2025 submission of an application for a commercial recovery permit under the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA), along with two exploration license applications. The reports also come on the heels of a strategic investment from Korea Zinc—one of the world's largest and most respected non-ferrous metal smelting groups. Together, these milestones reinforce TMC's first-mover advantage in unlocking the world's largest estimated undeveloped deposit of critical minerals and reflect growing confidence in the NORI-D Project's economics and development plan as the U.S. and allied nations work to strengthen critical mineral supply chains.

Follow these links to read the reports: Technical Report Summary for the PFS; Technical Report Summary for the Initial Assessment of the remaining NORI and TOML resource.



Gerard Barron, Chairman and CEO of TMC, commented: "The combined net present value of $23.6 billion of the two studies should give investors a better idea of the economic potential of our total estimated resource. The PFS takes our NORI-D Project economics up the confidence curve and contains the declaration of mineral reserves — these are our first 50+ million tonnes with a potential commercially viable path to production, with more to follow as we advance our mine planning work. The phased project development plan will target initial production from the Hidden Gem vessel, with an estimated $113 million of development capital expenditure each from TMC and Allseas. First production is targeted for Q4 2027. This PFS brings us one step closer to responsible production, potentially opening the door to new pools of capital from strategic and government sources, and reinforces TMC's leadership in this emerging industry."

---

*The tables below summarize key findings under the PFS and IA. The summary does not purport to be complete and is qualified in its entirety by the PFS and IA. Readers are encouraged to read the PFS and IA in their entirety.

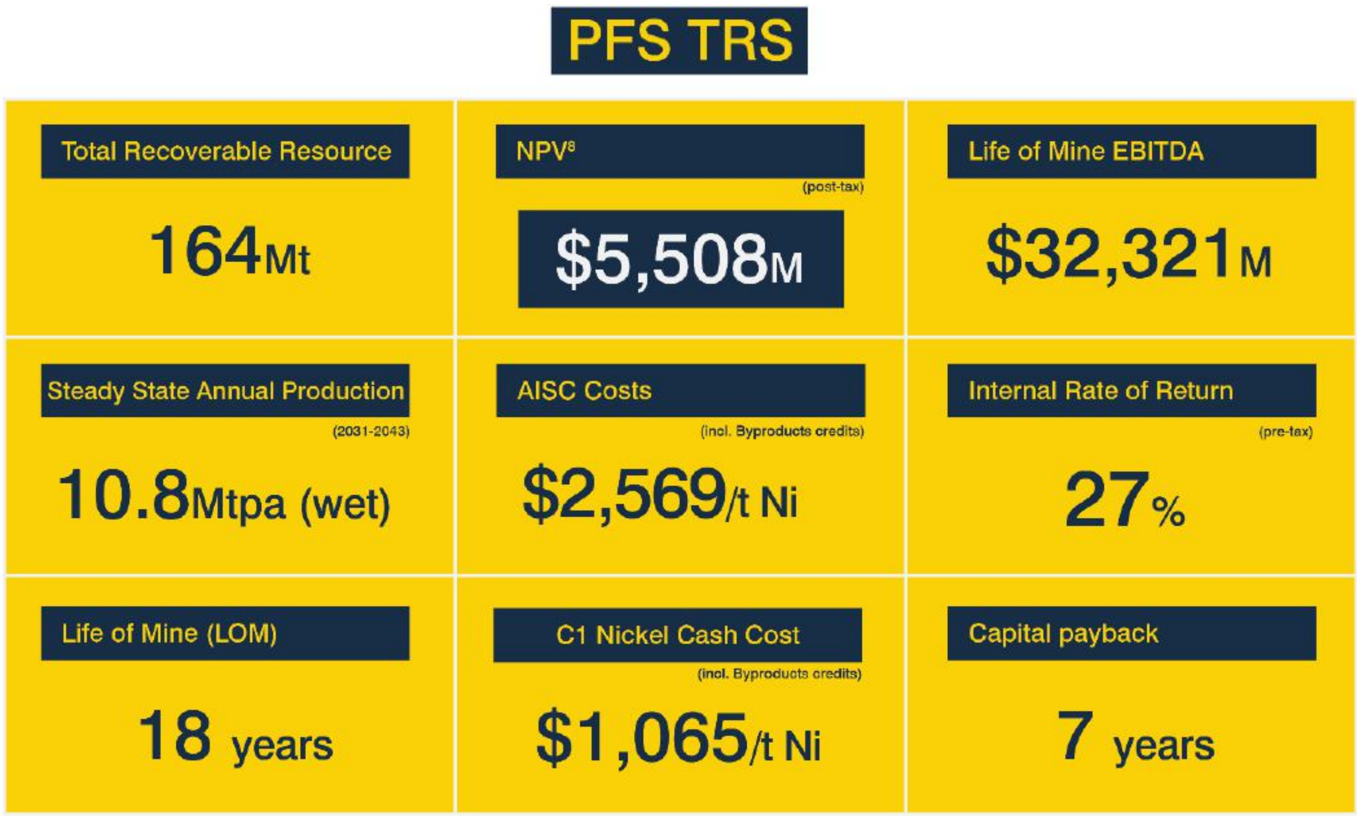
PFS and IA at a Glance.

	Unit	**PFS**	**IA**
Mine Life	Years	18	23
Total Nodule Production	Million tonnes (wet)	164	670
Nameplate Production Capacity	Million tonnes per annum (wet)	12	40
Average Nickel Grade	%	1.40	1.31
Average Cobalt Grade	%	0.14	0.19
Average Copper Grade	%	1.14	1.13
Average Manganese Grade	%	31.15	29.35
Average Nickel Recovery			
Nodules to Alloy	%	96.9	N/A
Nodules to Matte	%	94.8	94.8
Nodules to Sulfate	%	94.6	94.6
Average Cobalt Recovery			
Nodules to Alloy	%	93.1	N/A
Nodules to Matte	%	77.5	77.5
Nodules to Sulfate	%	77.2	77.2
Average Copper Recovery			
Nodules to Alloy	%	93.6	N/A
Nodules to Matte	%	86.4	86.4
Nodules to Cathode	%	86.2	86.2
Average Manganese Recovery (as Mn Silicate)	%	98.9	98.9
Total LOM Operating Costs	**US$ million**	**39,978**	**126,175**
LOM Offshore Collection	US$ million	12,344	31,139
LOM Transfer & Shipping	US$ million	3,071	6,066
LOM Contractor Costs	US$ million	1,855	3,584

LOM Consumables (offshore fuel)	US$ million	3,848	11,884
LOM Onshore Processing	US$ million	13,622	53,598
LOM Refining Costs	US$ million	3,254	15,978
LOM Corporate (G&A)	US$ million	1,985	3,926
All-In Sustaining Costs incl. Byproduct Credits (non-GAAP[1])	**US$ per tonne of Nickel**	**2,569**	**(5,903)**
C1 Cash Costs incl. Byproduct Credits (non-GAAP[1])	US$ per tonne of Nickel	1,065	(6,939)
Total Project Capital excl. Escalation	**US$ million**	**4,918 (492 Offshore +4,426 US refining)**	**8,852**
Valuation Metrics			
Price of Nickel Metal	Average US$ per tonne[2]	20,295	20,360
Price of Nickel Sulfate	Average US$ per tonne[2]	21,633	21,835
Price of Manganese Silicate	Average US$ per dmtu[2,3]	5.45	4.71
Price of Copper Cathode	Average US$ per tonne[2]	11,440	11,456
Price of Cobalt Metal	Average US$ per tonne[2]	56,117	62,530
Price of Cobalt Sulfate	Average US$ per tonne[2]	55,198	62,530
Discount Rate	%	8	8
After-Tax Net Present Value (NPV)	US$ billion	5.508	18.081
After-Tax Internal Rate of Return (IRR)	%	26.8	35.6

[1] Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
[2] weighted average based on production schedule and commodity prices
[3]dmtu: dry metric tonne unit

PFS Technical Report Summary Highlights



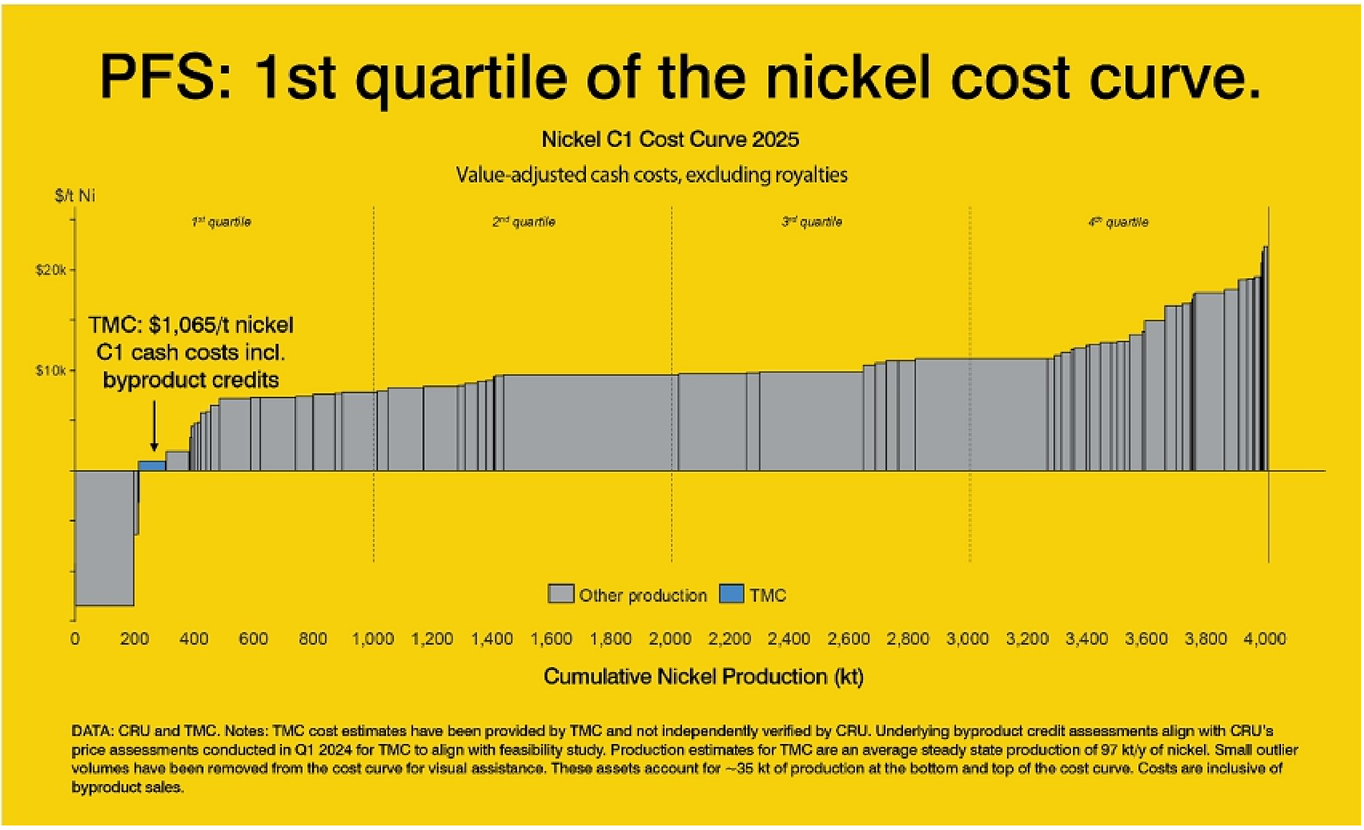
NORI-D Project Pre-Feasibility Study Overview

The Pre-Feasibility Study assumes that developing and operating the NORI-D Project is not only commercially and technically achievable but can begin with a capital-light approach by leveraging existing offshore and onshore infrastructure.

The PFS outlines a phased development plan for offshore collection and onshore processing of polymetallic nodules, targeting production ramp-up to 12 million tonnes per annum (Mtpa) of wet nodules within the first five years. This production rate supports a projected 18-year mine life for the NORI-D Project.

Initial processing is assumed to rely on proven rotary kiln electric furnace (RKEF) infrastructure in Japan and Indonesia to produce nickel-cobalt-copper alloy and matte intermediates, with final refining at future U.S.-based facilities to deliver battery-grade nickel and cobalt products.

With a first-quartile position on the global nickel cost curve, the NORI-D Project is expected to offer strong cost competitiveness. The project's low all-in sustaining costs is enabled by high metallurgical recoveries and the use of existing infrastructure. The efficient, near-zero solid waste process assumed in the PFS underscores the quality of the nodule resource and reinforces TMC's ability to deliver critical metals responsibly and at scale.



Lean, Focused, Ready: Starting with a Capital-Light Approach

The PFS highlights TMC's capital-light execution strategy which is designed for speed, scalability, and efficiency. By leveraging proven offshore vessels and established onshore processing plants, through tolling agreements, the PFS assumes the minimization of upfront capital costs to get started while streamlining development timelines and reducing operational risk.

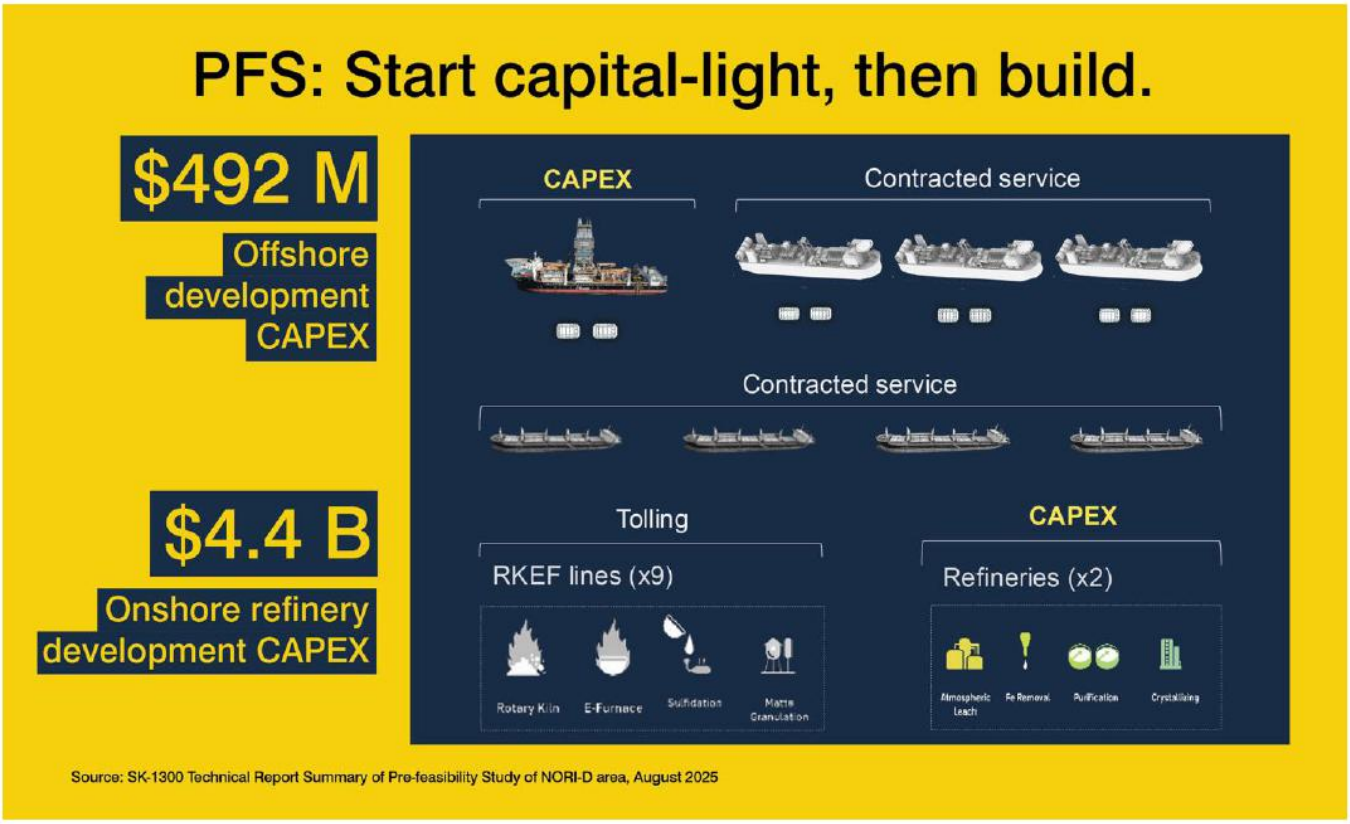
At sea, TMC's offshore production system is assumed to feature vessels equipped with dual 15-meter-wide collectors, vertical riser and transport systems, and onboard infrastructure for dewatering, storage, and offloading. Each Production Vessel (PV) is would be paired with a dynamically positioned Transfer Vessel (TV) to maintain continuous operations — enabling regular offloading of nodules without interrupting collection. Transfer Vessels would then deliver nodules to bulk carriers for shipment to shore, with Support Vessels (SVs) managing refuelling, waste, and crew logistics.

Initial onshore processing is assumed to commence under a 5-year tolling agreement with Pacific Metals Company (PAMCO) utilising existing rotary kiln electric arc furnace facilities at Hachinohe in Japan, allowing for the timely, near-term production of nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and manganese silicate without the need to construct new facilities. It is assumed that PAMCO would process up to 1.3 Mtpa of wet nodules, with TMC expanding capacity through additional tolling partnerships in Indonesia as offshore production volumes ramp up.

Looking ahead, the PFS assumes the construction of two dedicated refining facilities by TMC in the United States. These plants — designed for a combined capacity of 12 Mtpa of wet nodules — would convert intermediate products into high-purity nickel and cobalt sulfates, and copper cathode. TMC plans to own the facilities, with operations handled by experienced strategic partners, with 94% of refining capex spent in the 2030s.

The PFS assumes that Allseas — TMC's major shareholder and strategic partner — is expected to lead the offshore delivery of the project, overseeing engineering, procurement, fabrication, commissioning, and operations of the nodule collection system. Logistics support and shipping services are expected to be delivered by third-party contractors, using bulk carriers and support vessels under long-term charter and service agreements.

As part of its capital-light development strategy, TMC is assumed to contribute to the funding of the initial PV and TV with future vessels to be financed by contractors and repaid through long-term operating agreements over a 10-year period. All SVs are expected to be modified to meet operational needs but would remain under the ownership and operation of third-party providers under charter agreements. Similarly, bulk carriers are expected to be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying standard shipping rates. Onshore RKEF processing facilities are anticipated to follow a similar model, with third-party ownership and operations under tolling agreements, under which TMC will pay a per-tonne processing fee. Only the future refining facilities in the United States — assumed to produce battery-grade materials — are planned to be owned by TMC, with operations and maintenance managed by experienced strategic partners.



Initial Mining Area Holds ~51 Million Tonnes of Probable Mineral Reserves.

Covering approximately 25% of the NORI-D measured and indicated mineral resource, the probable Mineral Reserves of 51Mt are expected to support the first seven to eight years of operations. Probable Mineral Reserves were derived using sampling protocols involving box coring, autonomous underwater vehicle (AUV) surveys, and advanced geostatistical methods such as kriging and conditional simulation.

Classification	Tonnes (Mt)	Co (%)	Cu (%)	Mn (%)	Ni(%)
Proven	--	--	--	--	--
Probable	51	0.13	1.1	31	1.4
Total	51	0.13	1.1	31	1.4

Notes:

1. Mineral Reserve estimate in Initial Mining Area only with 1,000 m buffers for the lease and seamounts.
2. Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources are converted to Probable Mineral Reserves.
3. Grades are quoted on a dry basis.
4. Zero abundance cut-off used, with nodules <4kg/m2 used to define the Mineral Resource included as dilution to generate viable mining blocks.
5. Moisture content assumed to be 28% (mass of solid + mass of water).
6. Metal prices US$20,295/t Ni, US$21,633/t Ni sulfate, US$11,440/t Cu, US$56,117/t Co, US$55,198/t Co sulfate, US$5.45/dmtu Mn in manganese-silicate.
7. Nodule recovery by the Collector is estimated as 77% for Type 1 and 62% for Type 2 and 3 nodules.
8. Metallurgical recovery to sulfate is estimated as 94.6% Ni, 77.2% Co, and 86.2% Cu, and to matte is 94.8% Ni, 77.5% Co, 86.4% Cu, and 98.9% for Mn.
9. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Mineral Resource estimate for NORI-D exclusive of Mineral Reserves totals approximately 274Mt of wet nodules, classified into Measured, Indicated, and Inferred categories. The resource model excludes areas with slopes greater than 6° and volcanic highs.

The sampling campaigns followed standardized QA/QC protocols, including the use of certified reference materials, blanks, and duplicate assays. The remarkable consistency gives TMC strong confidence that the reported metal grades are not just accurate—but highly representative of what lies on the seafloor.

Category	Tonnes Mt	Abundance Wet kg/m2	Ni(%)	Cu (%)	Co (%)	Mn (%)	Si (%)	Fe (%)	P (%)	MnO:SiO2 (%)
Inferred	10	15.4	1.4	1.1	0.12	31	5.46	6.92	0.16	3.42
Indicated	261	17.4	1.4	1.1	0.14	31	5.45	6.84	0.16	3.46
Measured	4	20.6	1.4	1.2	0.13	32	5.16	6.59	0.15	3.73
All	274	17.4	1.4	1.1	0.14	31	5.44	6.83	0.16	3.46

Notes:

1. Effective date of the Mineral Resource is 30 June 2025.
2. The volcanic outcrop, volcanic high, volcanic cones, sediment drift, and high slope (>6%) domains were excluded from the estimate.
3. Samples collected by the Pioneer Contractors were excluded due to the lower level of confidence associated with this data and their replacement by box core data collected by TMC.
4. Abundance cut-off and assumption of reasonable prospects for economic extraction are based on the engineering, metallurgical, environmental, scientific and other studies presented in this report.
5. Si, Fe, P and MnO:SiO2 are not tracked in Mineral Reserve estimation and Mineral Resource averages are used.
6. Rounding estimates to two significant figures may result in computational discrepancies.

The Initial Mining Area defining the Probable Mineral Reserves contains approximately 25% of the NORI-D Mineral Resource and the conversion of Mineral Resources in the Mining Area to Mineral Reserves is approximately 45%.

Based on additional high-resolution seafloor imagery and detailed mine planning, the study estimates that a further 113 Mt of wet nodules could be recoverable from NORI-D outside the Initial Mining Area, bringing the total recoverable nodules in NORI-D to 164 Mt. Adjusting for moisture content, that represents an estimated 1.6 Mt of contained nickel— potentially enough to support the production of batteries for tens of millions of electric vehicles, manufacture specialty alloys for advanced defense systems, or build the backbone of next-generation energy infrastructure.

From Zero to One: Scaling Up to Full Production

The PFS highlights that initial operations could begin in the designated Initial Mining Area, with one, and later two, collectors deployed from the first Production Vessel to reach an early production target of 3 Mtpa of wet nodules. As additional PVs are brought online, the study anticipates that output will ramp up toward an average steady-state capacity of approximately 10.8 Mtpa (wet). The mine plan is designed for flexibility and responsible growth, incorporating real-time environmental monitoring and adaptive management practices. The Company believes this iterative approach allows for continuous refinement of collection paths and operational strategy — supporting an efficient scale-up while actively managing technical and environmental risks throughout the life of the project.

The PFS assumes that polymetallic nodules will be collected using self-propelled, tracked vehicles equipped with nozzles that direct a jet of seawater across the tops of the nodules to gently uplift them from the seafloor — without the need for digging, drilling, or blasting. Inside the collector, nodules are separated from the entrained sediment and excess water before being transported through a 500-meter flexible jumper hose to a riser system engineered by Allseas, which injects compressed air at a depth of 2,500 meters to lift the nodules 4,300 meters to the surface, enabling efficient transport to the production vessel.

Once at the surface, nodules will be dewatered and transferred to the hold of the production vessel, with all remaining seawater and sediment returned into the water column at a depth of 2,000 meters as recommended by independent marine scientists.

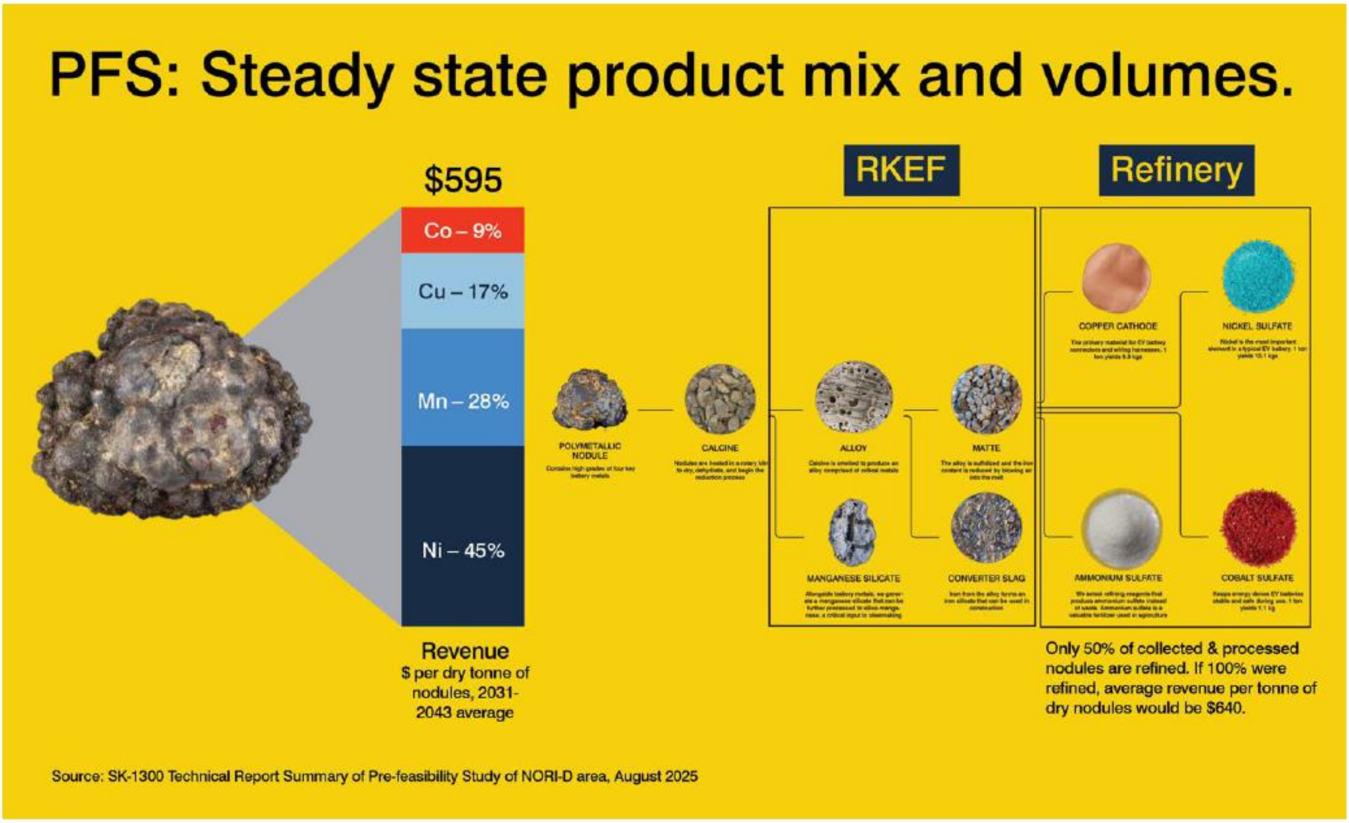
Far from a simple blueprint, the NORI-D mine plan is the product of years of advanced modeling, seafloor mapping, and geotechnical analysis. It weaves together exclusion zones for protected reference areas, environmental buffers around sensitive terrain, and slope-avoidance measures to create a meticulously sequenced extraction schedule—one that maximizes the recovery of valuable metals while minimizing disruption to the deep-sea environment. Each elongated mining block is precisely aligned with the natural contours of the seafloor and prevailing current patterns, guided by terabytes of bathymetric and sediment data collected over more than a decade.

Delivering Scalable Processing with Proven Technology

The PFS assumes that the NORI-D Project will employ well-established RKEF technology—commonly used in the processing of nickel laterites—to convert polymetallic nodules into high-value products, including nickel-copper-cobalt alloy and manganese silicate. TMC's flowsheet would then processes the alloy through sulfidation and converting steps to produce matte, which would be refined using hydrometallurgical techniques into copper cathode, nickel and cobalt sulfates, and fertilizer-grade ammonium sulfate.

By adapting proven industrial technologies for use with a new and abundant feedstock, TMC will pursue a pragmatic and capital-efficient processing path that maximizes metal recovery while minimizing solid waste. The Company believes this approach offers a clear and scalable route to responsibly deliver critical minerals into global supply chains.

*The table below outlines the anticipated steady state product mix and volumes of the wet nodules that would be recovered in the areas subject to the NORI-D Project.



Initial Assessment: Evaluating the Full Scope of TMC's Resource

In addition to the PFS, TMC also released an Initial Assessment (IA) outlining the potential of its remaining resource in the TOML and NORI areas outside of NORI-D.

The IA presents a development plan for the NORI and TOML polymetallic nodule projects, encompassing a 23-year mining operation that employs advanced second-generation offshore collection systems with remotely operated Collector Vehicles and Production Vessels.

The IA indicates collection of approximately 670 Mt of wet polymetallic nodules across the NORI and TOML contract areas, with average grades of 1.3% nickel, 0.2% cobalt, 1.1% copper, and 28.8% manganese. It outlines an After-tax Net Present Value of $18.1 billion and an After-tax Internal Rate of Return of 35.6%, with a steady-state average EBITDA margin of 57%. These findings underscore the massive scale and economic strength of a resource base that positions TMC to deliver on its long-term strategy to build secure, circular metals supply chains to support energy, defense, manufacturing and infrastructure for generations to come.

*The table below sets forth the anticipated recoverable polymetallic nodules, the anticipated costs, the anticipated revenue, anticipated return and anticipated net project value in the NORI and TOML contract areas, excluding NORI-D

IA

Total Recoverable Resource	NPV[8] (post-tax)	Life of Mine EBITDA
670Mt	$18,081M	$171,852M
Peak Annual Production	AISC Costs (incl. Byproducts credits)	Internal Rate of Return (pre-tax)
40Mtpa (wet)	$(5,903)/t Ni	36%
Life of Mine (LOM)	Period C1 Nickel Cash Cost (incl. Byproducts credits)	Capital payback (after pre-production period)
23 years	$(6,939)/t Ni	2 years

Deploying Next-Gen Systems to Drive the Next Phase of Growth

With a vast and scalable resource opportunity outlined in the Initial Assessment, we believe TMC is setting the stage for future growth. The development plan set out in the IA is preliminary in nature and intended to illustrate a potential scenario for future operations.

Nodules are assumed to be transported to Indonesia for processing into a matte product and manganese silicate through a tolling arrangement utilising existing processing infrastructure. The matte product would then be shipped to Texas on existing bulk carriers for further refining through a new refining facility developed by TMC with support from strategic partners.

Operations are assumed to commence in the TOML-F area with one PV producing 7 Mtpa of wet nodules and commencing in 2037. The IA assumes an additional two PVs would come online in 2038 and 2039 bringing total production from TOML-F to 21 Mtpa (wet). TOML-F is scheduled to be mined before the PVs relocate to the west for collection in other TOML and NORI areas that show lower abundance, reducing the production rate per PV to 5 Mtpa (wet).

Upon arrival in Indonesia, the IA assumes that nodules would be offloaded from the Transport Vessels and transferred to existing RKEF facilities for processing into a nickel-copper-cobalt matte and manganese silicate product, thereby reducing upfront capital and aligning processing capabilities with the ramp-up of production capacity offshore.

The processed matte would then be loaded to bulk carriers and shipped to Texas. Manganese silicate is planned to be sold to market. The IA refining strategy involves construction of two additional refining facilities (anticipated to be 12 Mtpa wet nodule equivalent nameplate capacity each) in the United States to refine the matte and produce copper cathode, nickel sulfate, and cobalt sulfate.

CAPEX on offshore operations and RKEF facilities are expected to be managed as capital-light, by TMC entering operating agreements with contract miners and transport providers who would manage the collection and delivery of nodules to shore. The IA assumes that bulk carriers running between Indonesia and the United States are expected to be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying through standard shipping charges. All processing facilities in Indonesia are assumed to be owned and operated by third parties, with TMC paying for toll treatment per tonne of nodules. The IA assumes that all refining facilities in the U.S. would be TMC assets.

Comparing the PFS and the IA

*The table below summarizes the key findings under the PFS and IA, and presents combined results. The summary does not purport to be complete and is qualified in its entirety by the PFS and IA. Readers are encouraged to read the PFS and IA in their entirety.

Approach	2025 PFS Capital-light	2025 IA Contracted	Combined
Resource base	363 Mt	1,276 Mt	1,639 Mt
Recoverable nodules in wet tonnes	164 Mt	670 Mt	834 Mt
Post-tax NPV_8	$5.5B	$18.1B	$23.6B
IRR (real terms)	27%	36%	
Revenue over life of a project	$69.9B	$298.9B	$368.8B
Revenue per tonne of dry nodules, steady state	*$595*	*$607*	
EBITDA over life of project	$29.2B	$171.9B	$201.1B
EBITDA per tonne of dry nodules, steady state	*$254*	*$347*	
EBITDA margin per tonne, steady state	43%	57%	
C1 Cash cost per tonne of nickel incl. byproduct credits	$1,065	-$6,939	
All-In Sustaining Cost (AISC) per tonne of nickel incl. byproduct credits	$2,569	-$5,903	

Note: 'Steady state' defined as 2031–2043 for 2025 PFS and 2039–2058 for 2025 IA.
Source: SK-1300 Technical Report Summary of Pre-feasibility Study of NORI-D area, August 2025; SK-1300 Technical Report Summary, Initial Assessment of NORI and TOML areas, August 2025

About The Metals Company

The Metals Company is a developer of lower-impact critical metals from seafloor polymetallic nodules, on a dual mission: (1) supply metals for energy, defense, manufacturing and infrastructure with net positive impacts compared to conventional production routes and (2) trace, recover and recycle the metals we supply to help create a metal commons that can be used in perpetuity. The Company has conducted more than a decade of research into the environmental and social impacts of offshore nodule collection and onshore processing. More information is available at www.metals.co.

More Info
Media | media@metals.co
Investors | investors@metals.co

Cautionary Statements Regarding the Pre-Feasibility Study and the Initial Assessment

The NORI-D Pre-Feasibility Study and the NORI and TOML Initial Assessment contain forward-looking information derived from preliminary economic assessments and conceptual development scenarios that are subject to significant uncertainty. The report for NORI-D does not represent a feasibility study and does not support a development decision. Similarly, the Initial Assessment of the TOML and NORI is not a declaration of mineral reserves and is not sufficient to determine the economic viability of a mining project. In addition, such Initial Assessment reports inferred mineral resources, which have a high degree of uncertainty as to their existence and to whether they can be economically or legally commercialized, under the SEC rules may not form the basis of an economic analysis and for which you cannot assume any part thereof will ever be upgraded to a higher category. Until mineral deposits are actually mined and processed, mineral resources and mineral reserves must be considered as estimates only. The estimates, projections, and analyses contained in the reports are based on numerous assumptions, including those related to recovery methods, costs, infrastructure, financing, regulatory approvals, and market conditions, many of which are beyond TMC's control. Actual results may differ materially from those presented. Investors are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these reports and are encouraged to review the full summaries and underlying assumptions.

Forward Looking Statements

This press release contains "forward-looking" statements and information within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and other applicable U.S. securities laws. These statements may be identified by words such as "believes," "could," "expects," "may," "plans," "possible," "potential," "will" and variations of these words or similar expressions, although not all forward-looking statements contain these words. Forward-looking statements in this press release include, but are not limited to, statements with respect to the results of the Pre-Feasibility Study (PFS) and Initial Assessment (IA), including estimated mine life, project economics, capital and operating cost projections, resource and reserve estimates, expected production volumes, recoveries and grades; TMC's plans to advance development of the NORI-D Project; the anticipated permitting path under U.S. law; the expected regulatory process with the International Seabed Authority; the feasibility and scalability of TMC's capital-light execution strategy; the potential timing of commercial production; TMC's ability to secure strategic partnerships, tolling arrangements, and refining capacity; and TMC's belief that the PFS and IA support the economic viability and long-term value of its polymetallic nodule resources. TMC may not actually achieve the plans, intentions or expectations disclosed in these forward-looking statements, and you should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. Actual results or events could differ materially from the plans, intentions and expectations disclosed in these forward-looking statements as a result of various factors, including, among other things: risks related to the accuracy of mineral resource and reserve estimates and technical assumptions in the PFS and IA; changes in demand for and prices of critical metals; risks related to TMC's ability to obtain necessary regulatory approvals, including those from the International Seabed Authority and under the U.S. Deep Seabed Hard Mineral Resources Act (DSHMRA); the outcome and timing of reviews by NOAA or other U.S. government agencies; uncertainties associated with TMC's dual-path permitting strategy; the availability and performance of future offshore and onshore processing infrastructure; risks related to environmental impacts and the ability to meet evolving environmental standards and obtain required environmental approvals; risks related to financing needs and the availability of capital; TMC's limited operating history; and other risks and uncertainties, any of which could cause actual results to differ from those expressed or implied in the forward-looking statements. For a discussion of these and other risks and uncertainties, and other important factors, any of which could cause TMC's actual results to differ materially from those contained in the forward-looking statements, see the section entitled "Risk Factors" in TMC's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2024, filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) on March 27, 2025, as well as in TMC's subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC. Forward-looking statements are based on current expectations and assumptions and reflect TMC's views as of the date hereof. TMC undertakes no obligation to update any forward-looking statements contained herein, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as required by law.